



OF THE

## GROWTH and DES

OF THE

# OTHMAN EMPLEE

### PART I.

CONTAINING THE

Growth of the OTHMAN EMPIRE,

Reign of OTHMAN the Founder,

Reign of MAHOMET IV.

THAT IS, From the Year 1300, to the Siege of Fiends, in 1682.

Written Originally in LATIN,

By DEMETRIUS CANTEMIR, late Prince of Moldavia.

Translated into ENGLISH, from the Author's pure Manufeript,

By N. TINDAL, M. A. Vicar of Great Waltham in Effect.

Adom'd with the HEADS

Of the TURKISH EMPERORS, Ingraven from Copies taken from ORIGINALS in the Grand SEIGNOR'S Palace, by the late SULTAN'S Painter.

### LONDON:

Printed for JAMES, JOHN, and PAUL KNAPTON, at the Crown in Ludgate Street. MDCCXXXIV.



OF THE

## SUBSCRIBERS.

HER MAJESTY the QUEEN.
His ROYAL HIGHNESS the PRINCE of WALES.

The Right Honourable the Earl of Arran. The Right Honourable the Earl of Ancram. William Allix, Esq;

B.

His Grace the Duke of Bridgewater. The Right Honourable the Earl of Burlington, The Right Honourable the Lord Bathurst. Sir Roger Bradshaw, Bart. Harry Burrard, Liq; William Burrard, Eiq; Mr. Blundell, Attorney in Lothbury. Mr. Baker, Attorney in Bread Street. Mr. Burgovne, in Great St. Helens. Reverend Mr Birch. Martin Bladen, Esq, Colonel Le Blanc. Mr Thomas Baker.

C.

The Right Honourable the Lord High Chancellor. The Right Honourable the Earl of Coventry. The Right Honourable the Earl of Chesterfield. The Right Honourable the Lord Carteret. The Right Honourable the Lord Cadogan. The Right Honourable the Lord Carpenter. The Right Honourable the Lord Carmichael. Mr. De Campos, Secretary of Portugal. Prince Cantemir William Cartwright, Esq; Reverend Mr. Clarke. Mr Thomas Chadburne. Mr. Clarke, Apothecary, St. James's Market. Mr. Crofs, Red Lion Street, Clerkenwell. Captain Thomas Corbet. Captain Crundal. Captain S. Cutts. Walter Cary, Elq; Charles Clarke, Elq, Mr. Peter Campart, in Spittle Fields.

## A LIST of the SUBSCRIBERS.

Dr. Coe, of Chelmsford. Mr. Cockran, in Laurence-Lane.

Mrs. Curgengen.

D.

The Right Honourable the Earl of Dyfart. The Right Honourable the Lord Viscount Deerburft. The Right Honourable the Lord Viscount Duplen. The Right Honourable Sir Conyers D'Arcy. General Domer. Colonel De Veil. The Reverend Dr. Samuel Drake. Captain Dent. Captain Dives.
Captain Durand. Mrs. Dunft.

E.

Richard Edgecombe, Esq;

F.

The Right Honourable the Earl Fitzwalter. Sir Thomas Fstzgerald. The Reverend Mr. Foster. Mr. Peter Farrett. Mr Gilbert De Flines. Mr. Felie in Angel Court, Windmill Street.

Mr. Samuel Fenwick.

G.

His Grace the Duke of Grafton. The Right Honourable the Earl of Granard. The Right Honourable the Lord Viscount Glenorchy The Right Honourable the Lord Viscount Gage. The Lady Elizabeth Germain. Sir James Grant. Mr. Anthony Ghrifelin. Roger Gale, Esq; George Gregory, Esq; John Goodrick, Esq; General Gore. Burrington Goldsworthy, Esq; H.

The Right Honourable the Lord Hardwick. The Right Honourable the Lord Harrington. Mr. De Hattorf, Privy Councellor to the King for Hanover. Mr. De Hattorf, Privy Secretary for Hanover. Nicholas Harding, Esq; Philip Holman, Elq. Mr. Holzendorf. Dr. Hollings. The Reverend Dr. Herring, Dean of Rochester Mr. Hyde, in Bridgewater Square. John Hedges, Eigi. Mr. Hoare. Mr. Hodgion, Mathematical Master of Christ's Hospital. Mr. Hilman. William Hucks, Efq,

4 ham -

## A LIST of the Subscribers.

Thomas Hanmer, Esq; Mr. Hills, Surgeon, at Woolwich.

I.

Mr. Imberti, Resident from Venice. John Jermy, Esq. William Jones, Esq. Thomas Jefferies, Esq.

K.

His Grace the Duke of Kent.
The Right Honourable the Lady King.
The Honourable Thomas King, Lsq,
Mr Ralph Knox, Merchant.
Mr King, at Brompton.

L.

The Most Noble the Marquis of Lothian.

His Grace the Duke of Leeds.

Mr Simon Lemon

Mr John Lee, in Doctors-Commons

Nicholas Lambert, L.L.D. Fellow of Peter House, Cambridge.

Captain William Lorance.

Mr. Lucas, at Chelmisford in Essex.

M.

His Grace the Duke of Montagu.
His Grace the Duke of Manchefter.
The Right Honourable the Earl of Macclesfield.
The Right Honourable the Lord Ducse Moreton,
The Marquis Montandre.
Mr. Oliver Mills.
Mr Malcher.
Mr Detleff Miller
Mr Henry Morgan.
Captain Medly.
Mr Monkman.
Mr. Solomon Merreter

N.

His Grace the Duke of Norfolk His Grace the Duke of Newcastle. Mr Norman, in Newgate Street.

P.

His Grace the Duke of Portland.
Her Grace the Dutches Dowager of Portland.
The Right Honourable the Lord Viscount Percival
Mr Putsy, Secretary of Florence.
Mr Charles Peers.
Mr Paramor, in Staples Inn.
Mr Philips, in Basinghall Street.
The Reverend Mr Pothlethwaite.
Nuthaniel Pailer, Esq,
Captain Purvis.
Mr. Richard Parker, Merchant.

R.

11

Mr. De Reub, Privy Secretary for Hanner Mr. Rodwell.

## A LIST of the SUBSCRIBERS,

Mr. Raufen, of Ham in Surry. Nichelus Robinfen, M. D. Mr. William Ruffel, in Old Swan Lane. Mrs. Rotherham.

S.

The Right Honourable the Earl of Salisbury. The Right Honourable the Earl of Shaftibury.
The Right Honourable the Earl of Scarborough. Sir Robert Sutton. The Right Honourable the Lady Sundon. - Schutz, Elq. Privy-Purle to the King. Colonel Schutz, Groom of the Bed-Chamber to the Prince. Charles Stanhope, Esq; General Sutton. Mr. Stephens, in Newgate Street. Edward Saintbill, Efq; Mr. Swinborne, Apothecary in Devonshire Street. Mr. Peter Siris in Broad Street, Sobo. Mr. Sloper, at Newbury. - Springal, Esq; Arthur Stert, Elq. Mrs. Sambrooke. T.

The Right Honourable the Earl of Thomond
The Right Honourable the Lord Viscount Torrington.
Mr. De Thom, Envoy from Saxa Gotha.
Mrs. Tollet, in the Tower.
Mr. Taylor, in Church Street, Spittle Fields.
Mr. Tiley, at Simonds Inn.
Herbert Tryfte, Esq,
Samuel Tufnel, Esq;
Captain Towry.

Mr. Vanbuften.

3

.tc

v. w.

The Right Honourable the Earl of Warrington.
The Right Honourable the Earl of Westmorland.
The Right Honourable the Lord De la Ware.
The Right Honourable the Lady Walpole.
The Right Honourable Sir Charles Wager.
General Wade.
The Reverend Mr. Wasse of Aynbo, Northamptonshire.
Mr. Samuel Wats, St. James's Market.
Colonel Williamson of the Tower.
Henry Worsely, Esq.
Mr. Wise, in King Street, Bloomsbury.
Mr. Wight, in Hand Court, Thames Street.
Mr. Walker, in Furnivals Inn.
Mr. Wynantz, in Bush-Lane.
Dr. Wigan.
Ms. Charles Watson.
Mse. Willis.
The Reverend Mr. J. Wyat of Felsted.

Z.

ŧ

# TRANSLATO

TO THE

I will be necessary for the more easy pronouncing the uncommon names in this History to premise a few observations concerning the Tuckish Orthography. In the first place, A and E are often used for one another, as are also O and

U, bence Soliman or Suliman, Allah or Ellah.

2. Ch is always to be pronounc'd like our K, except when it flands for the Turkish Chim (which read as the first syllable in the English word Chimney,) and then it must be sounded as our Ch in the word Church. Wherefore to avoid comfusion, the words wherein Ch is to be thus pronounc'd, are always markt with an Afterisk as Chorlu\*. Our Author expresses Chim by Cz (as Czorlu) which, 'tis to be supposed is the nearest sound to it in his language. Sch when it stands for Shin or Schin, is pronounc'd like our Sh, as Shah or Schah. Our Author, probably for the foremention'd reason, expresses also Shin by Sz, as Szah instead of Shah. When sh belong not to one Syllable, they will be printed thus, sh as Ashad, read As-had.

3. I consonant, standing for the Turkish Gim, may be pronounc'd in the beginning of a syllable, as in English; for example, Jenghiz. But at the end of a syllable like ge, in the word Age, as Yelvaj, as if it was Yelvage. So Hejra, as if it was Hedgri. If this he not exact, its however the nearest found we have to it. Our Author always expressed sign by Dz., as Dzengliz, instead of Jenghiz, and generally uses the I consonant for the Turkish Yc (which answers to our Y) because 'tis likely in his language, as in Italian, J is pronounc'd like Y. But this

would breed confusion to an English Reader.

4. D and T are often used promiscuously, for instance, Erdogrul is sometimes Er-

togrul. So Dugra and Tugra.

5 Words, or Names, that have been frequently, tho' corruptly used by us, are preferv'd in the Translation; fuch as Bajazet, instead of Bayazid; Mahomet, instead of Mohammed; Tamerlan, instead of Timurleng; and a few others, but then the

difference is always noted.

As there will be annex'd a short Account of the Author and his History, there 25 no occasion to say any thing more here, than that the Author's Latin Manuscript History was communicated to the Translator by his Son, Prince Antiochus Cantemir, Minister Plenipotentiary from the Czarina, to his present Majesty King GEORGE.

At the same time were communicated also painted Copies of the Heads of all the Turkish Emperors, taken from Originals in the Grand Seignor's Palace, and with great difficulty procur'd by the Author, as is related in his Annotations. These Co-pies are small, and will be ingraven just as they are.

Some few Additional Notes are diftinguish'd from the Author's Annotations, by being inclosed between two Crotchets [ ]

Efore the Reader proceeds to the following Hiftory of the Othman Empire, it will be requifite to explain fome Particulars, concerning which the Christian Historians feem to have been frequently and grofly mistaken. The principal of these are,

I. The reduction of the year of the

Hejira, to the Christian Era.

M }

II. The Name and Nation of the Turks. III. The Origin of the Othman Race, which now fills the Turkish Throne

### I. The Hejira compar'd with the Christian Æra.

Many Historians, and those of no little Credit, have, as I find, referr'd feveral material Occurrences to different years, for want of an accurate knowledge of the Mabometan Era, by the Turks call'd Hagret, and by us Henra Of this, I shall produce a remarkable instance. Nothing certainly, fince the removal of the Imperial Seat to Constantinople, has happen'd more memorable than the taking of that City by the Turks, whereby all Christendom was in danger. And yet, the year of that fatal period of the Greek Empire is so far from being known, that very learned Writers differ about it, some placing it in the year 1452, others in 1453. Hence it may be inferr'd how many errors have been committed in other points of the Turkish History, as the days of the Birth, and Death of the Sultans, and the like. To remove these mistakes, I have thought fit to inquire a little more accurately into this computation, especially as I have made use of it in my History I shall not stay to examine the Name, or whether it begins from Mahomet's flight from Mecca to Medina, or from his death, as some Mabometans affert. It fuffices for my purpole, to show how to reduce the years of the Turkyb Acra, to the year of our Lord, by some inftances taken from Christian Writings.

Recceolus very rightly places the begin-ning of the Hejira, in the year of our Lord, 622, whose words, (since Authors differ chiefly about the day) I shall here quote. The dispute (fays he, is concerning the "day. For the Astronomers, with Al"fraganus, Albutegnius, and Jordanus, " aftronomically compute the years of " the Immaelites and Turks from Thursday " the 15th of July, because on that day happen'd the true New-Moon But the Arabians themselves, and the Turks, and with them the Chronologers, Scalger and Petavius, politically compute from Friday the 16th of July, join'd with the " foregoing night, because in the night following the 15th day, Mahomet fled " from Mecca, and the fame night, first s appeared the New-Moon, and therefore " the Arabians begin their New Moon "on the fixth day of the Week or Friday, which with them is now reckon'd
Holy" As Ric 10/11s has here mention'd
two feveral ways of computing, without affigning the reason, it may not be amiss to inform the Reader, that Mahomet when he introduc'd his Religion into the World. gave this general Rule for the beginning of the New-Moon, to the People ignorant of Aftronomy : When you fee the Moon, begin the Fall When you fee the Moon, clebr ate the Bai-Now as the Moon is never feen on the first day but fometimes on the tecond, and iometimes (if the New-Moon h pput's at Sun-fet ) not till the third, 'tis no wonder, Mahomet himself, being illiterate, or the Nations infected with his Superfittion, who believe their Law-giver is to be trufted more than their reason, should take the second day of the Moon for the New Moon itself, and by that rule appoint the Months, Fasts, and Festivals. It is also very probable that Mahomet began the computation of the Hepra from his flight from Metta His Successors, not his flight from Mecca to derogate from the Law, or out of negligence, or ignorance, have fix'd the beginning of the Æra, not from the Astro-nomical New-Moon, (which by the Tes-timony of all the Mathematicians, hap pen'd on Thursday the 15th of fuly) but from the Political, which fell out on his day the next day, and so appointed that day to be the first of the Month Muharrem. What has been faid is confirm'd by their present manner of computing, of which I have been an eye-witness. For the now, not only the day and hour, but also the minute of the New-Moon may be pretty exactly known by their Epbemerides, by them call'd Ruznamche\*, yet they never begin either the Ramazan or Barram |, till fome have testified that they have feen the New-Moon. For this reafon, every year about that time, certain Persons are sent by the Sultan to a high mountain (nam'd Istrajadaghy, about twelve hours + diftant from Conftantinople towards the Euxine Sea) to observe the moment in which the New-Moon appears to their When they fee it, three of them inflantly repair to the Istambol Essendist or Judge of Constantinople, one of whom declares, he has seen the New-Moon, and the other two attest his declaration. New-Moon being thus prov'd by three Witnesses, (for without that number, the Grand Seigner himfelt will not be credited in this cale) the Istambol Effendist immedi ately fends Cryers, at whatever hour it happens, to proclaim thro' the whole City, the Ramazan or Bairam By which means, I have feen the Mahometans whilst they have been eating and drinking, fpit out what they have had in their mouths at the voice of the Cryer, and begin the Fast If a cloudy Sky hinders the Moon from being icen, or the Messengers are detain'd by the way, after waiting the first and second day, the People are commanded to abstain on the third from meat and drink, whether the Witnesses are come or not. In like manner, the haft is not ended till the same Perfons witness the appearance of the New-Moon of the Month Shevvel

I ho' this be fufficient to remove the Reader's doubt of the truth of Recciolus's computation, it may not be improper to confirm the same by fome farther instances. To this purpoie, serve the two memorable conquests of Constantinople and Rhodes. The tornier is faid, by the Constantinopolitan Patitirch to happen on Tuefday the 29th of May, 14.3, and the more accurate Turk-

M Historians, on the 20th day of the month Jemanual event, in the year of the Hejira 857. The Christians say Rhodes was taken the 25th day of Desember 1522, the Turks, the 3d day of the month Safer, in the year of the Hejira, 929, and add, that the same lasted size months, heavening. that the fiege lasted five months, beginning in the month Ramazan, of the year 928, and continuing the other three months of the fame year; namely, Shevvel, Zilcade, and Zilbije, with the two first months of the next year, 729, Mubarrem and Sa-fer, on the 3d of which it was furrender'd. To these, I may add a famous instance in the diploma of Sultan Murad III. to the Emperor Redelphus II, in which, both the year of our Lord, and of the Hejira, are expressly set down in the following words: "On the first day of Ja-" nuary, Anno Domini Jesu, (on whom be the divine favour and aid) 1584, which " will be the 27th day of the month Zilbije in the 991st year of the transmigra-" tion of our Great Prophet." But according to Ruccolus's Table, the year of the Henra, 991, begins on Tuesday the 15th of January, 1583, and ends on Friday the 3d of January, 1584; fo the 4th of January begins the year of the Henra, 992. Since then the month Zilbije is the last of the Hejira year, and consists of twenty nine days, it is evident that the 27th of Zilbije, is the first of Janua-ry, 1584 By means of these examples it will be easy for the curious Reader to compare the years of the two Æra's together, with the affiftance of a parallel aftronomical Table, which I shall annex to this Preface \*\*

Before I proceed to the 2d point, I shall endeavour for the fake of the Curious, to clear a doubt into which some famous Historians have fallen.

The first year of Othman I. Emperor of the Turks, is by tome, as Leunclavius, referr'd to the year of Christ, 1300; and

<sup>\* 11 ...</sup>h m all word, markt with an Afterisk is to be pronounced as in the Englife words, cheep, rich [Ramazan, or with Iraham with it, Ramazan, or the minth month of the Turkife year, during which the right if the early of the form meat, drink, and women, from Sun rifing till night. But upon the appearance of the new New Moon, the Barram begins which is a time of teating and joiling. In flort, the Ramazam anivers to

The Christian Lent, and the Barram to the Popula Carmaral

Our Author teems here to reproach the Fasts for reckning the New Moon from the fecond day, which after all, feet the purpose very well, and was a culton weld also by the Jews But I would fain know, what a learned Truk would think of our Entiplical or imaginary Full Moon by which we regulate dour Moveable Feafis. And for our Old Style, would be not think it redictions to hear us call that the first day of a month, which is really the cleventh e In a word, we knowingly and therefore abundly flick to an error committed by the Nicese Fathers thro ignorance, in I therefore in them the more exemiable. Sure a time will come when we shall be willing to reform as leaft tuch obvious and pulpible errors

<sup>1</sup> The Turks reckon the difference of Places by Flours, which are supposed to be each about three of our miles.
Our Author has annea'd no such Table in his Manuscript.

4

by others, at Calvifius, from Zacathi, to 1303. In order to clear this matter it must be observed, that by the consent of all the Turkish Chronologers, Orchan Son and Successor of Olbman, took Pruse the Me-tropolis of Bibynis, in the year of the Hepre 726, and was then fent for by his dy-ing father. That the fame year on the 10th of Ramazan, Othman dying, Orchan succeeded him in the Throne. But Ramazan is the ninth enouth from Mubarrem, the first month of the Hejira year. Now the roth of Ramazan fell that year, (as appears by the Chronological Table) on the 8th of August. Moreover it is affirm'd by the Turkish Writers of the greatest crodic, that Othman reign'd twenty six years, three months, and ten days, (tho' Leunclavins, by what authority I know not, afcribes to him, twenty nine Lunar or twenty eight folar years) and was succeeded by Orchan, the 10th of Ramazan, in the year of the Hejira, 726. Wherefore counting backwards from the 10th of Ramazan, to the year of the Hejira, 700, and to the 10th of the fame month Ramazan, we shall reckon twenty fix compleat years. In like manner, counting back three months, namely, Shaban, Rejeb, and Jemazull achir, with the ren days of Ramazan, it will appear that the first year of Othman's reign was the 700th of the Hejira, and begun the 1st of the month Jemaziul achir, answering to the 11th of February, 1301. 22 appears in the following Table

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE of the year of the Hejira, 700, answering to the year of our Lord, 1300.

H. 700.	A. C 1300.
LUNAR MONTHS,	SOLAR MONTHS
30 Mubarrem 1 29 Safur. 30 Rebiul euvel. 29 Rabiul achir. 30 Jemaziul evvel. 29 Jemaziul achir. 30 Resib. 29 Sbaban. 30 Ramazan. 29 Sbevval.	Sept. 16 Oct 16. Nov. 14. Dec 14. Jan. 13 A 1301 Feb. 11. Mar. 12 April 11. May 10. June 9.
30 Zilcade. 29 Zilge.	Jul. 8. Aug. 7.

Observe the Year of Christ, 1301, falls in this Year of the Heyra on the month

Jemazini evvel, whose first day answers to the 12th of January. But it was before shown, that Othman began to reign in the year of the Hojira 700, the first day of Jemazzul actur, which is the 11th of Fe-bruary 1301, tho in the Table, the year of the Hejira. 700, answers to the year of Christ, 1300; therefore what was faid of the beginning of Othman's reign in rightly meer'd. Hence, in my opinion, proceeded the mistakes of Leunclavius and others in their way of computing.

In the same manner the Hejira may in any other years be eafily reduc'd to the Christian Era, by only seeing in the astronomical Table on what day and year the beginning of any year of the Heira falls. For instance, the beginning of the year of the Hejira 699, which preceeded Othman's reign falls on Monday the 28th of September, 1299, which therefore is the first day of Mubarrem.

Having thus fufficiently prov'd the first year, month, and day of Othman's reign, by the same method may be found out the year, month, and day of the death of hradogral, Othman's Father, who according to Saadi, died in the year of the Hepra 680, (which begins on Tuefday the 27d of April, 1281) and therefore from the first year of Othman's reign to Frdogrubs death, there were inclusively nine-teen years, feven months, which being trac'd as before in Othman's case, it will appear that he died the last day of Shittal of the year 680, which aniwers to the 10th of February, 1281 So likewite may be found the time of Frdogrul's reign and Soliman's being drown'd in the Iuphrates, which is unanimoufly afcrib'd to the year of the Hepra 616, that is, fixty four years inclusively from 680, the time of Erdogrul's death, which being trac'd as before, it is manifest that Soliman was drown'd and Erdogrul began his reign on the first day of Zilbije in the year 616, which answers to the 6th of February

Thus likewise the year of Soliman's irruption may be found out, which according to Niferin, happen'd in the year of the Henra, 611, and confequently four years and eleven months before his death, or on the last day of Mubarrem, in the year 611, which aniwers to the 10th of

As Jengbizchan's irruption is men by the Turkifb Writers about the lame to a

with Soliman's, and as Christian Authors differ in that point, I shall endeavour to fix the time. Nicephorus Gregoras ( who is rather a Rhetorician than Historian) fays (Lib. II.) that Jengbizchan in the year of Christ, 1222, and of the Hepra 619, first came down towards the Caspian Sea. Lonicerus will have it to be in A. C. 1202. H 599. Calvifus in A. C. 1220. H. 611. Ricciolus in A. C. 1212. H. 609. But with the most learned Saads effends of Larifus, in his elaborate Synopfis Historiarum (publish'd in 1696, and dedicated to Sultan Mustapha, Brother and Predecessor of the present Sultan Achmet) collected from the most celebrated Historians, Mevlana Idris, Nelbrin and Saads Tajuttevarieb, and Pecheri \* and Hezarfen, I firmly hold that Soliman Shab, Father of Erdrogul, first departed from the City Nera, bordering on the Calpian Sea, in the year of the Hepra, ort, which answers to the year of Christ, 1214, and coming into Afia miner, with his Oguziane, Jengbizeban's irruption happen'd either the tame, or the next year (which of the two is uncertain, and Soliman thercupon remov'd towards Media. Hence therefore, on the authority of these Historuns it uppens this Tenghizean's invalion was one or two years after Soliman, in the vent of the Houra, 622 or 613, that is, of Child, 1'15 or 1216, in the 6th year of the reign of the Emperor Theodorus Lucin

II Concerning the Name and Nation of the Turks.

Among the many: Swarms that came from the cold regions of Scythia, the Turks were not the leaft noted, as the Prin Annalith abundantly testify, as well as the famous Author of the Othmas Annals Gamtterarnb, Saudi effendi, and what frems to be inferted from him in the Lexison-Perfico-Turcium Nimetullab to explain the word Turk, where it is faid, "By this name are call'd the Inhabitants " of Chata or Chuten (Kitahia or Great " Lastar v. who inhabit the Copebac\* Plains. 44 And because all of them have fair faces " and black eyes and eye brows, there" fore the Perfian Poets call Lovers and " Gallants, by comparison, Turks" But this name of Coschairs peculiar to a Tribe of the Tartars was after Jengbizeban's expedition given by the Perpans to the whole

nation of Scythians, their Conquerors, appears by the testimonies of the Persian Writers. Thus the Pact Shieb Saadi, in the Preface of his Guliffen or Rojary, declares the cause of his leaving his country Chorasan to this effect : " Are you igno-" rant, my Friend, why I fojourn'd for a time in foreign Climates? I departed because of the miquities of the Turks." Describing their manners, he says, in another place, " They are all the Sons of " Men, but are like bloody Wolfs. At 66 home they are adorn'd with good man-" ners like angels, but abroad are an ar" my of Lions." That he speaks of the Seythian nation of the Turks who follow'd Jengbizchan, is plain from the time in which he composed this Rosary, namely, (as he says himself) in the year of the Ha-jira, 656, in the reign of Ebubeker, Son of Saads, that is, forty four years before Oth-man, and forty eight after Jengbizchan's Ex-Nicephorus, mentions by the name of Turks, the People who in his time were subject to Azadinus (so he corruptly calls Aladin) Sultan of Iconium " To the " Emperor (Theodorus Lascaris the younger, in 1255) thus employ'd were brought (fays he) Letters from Nuca, fignifying Palaologus's flight to the Turks." That Michael fled to this Aladin Sultan of Iconsum, shall hereafter be shown by the unanimous testimony of the Historians. Since therefore it is manifest, the Name of the Turks was known to all Asia long before Othman, and chiefly attributed to the Scythian Tribes that follow'd Jengbizchan, and were dispers'd over Persia and Asia minor, it remains to show how this name came to be appropriated to the Othmanida. Soliman, Father of the Othman Race, Prince of Nera, treading in the steps of the great Jengbizchan, came forth from his Country with fifty thou-fand Followers, the flower of the Scythian youth, and overran not only the neighbouring regions, but all Azerbejan and Syita, as far as Aleppo. When the news of these Conquests was brought to the Per fran Court, immediately the name Turk common to the Jengbizchan Scythians, was given also to this Army. Another reason of this appellation, besides that before mention'd out of Tajuttevarieb and Nimetullah, is alledg'd by the best Persian Writers, namely, the ugliness of the Scythians if compar'd with the Perfiant, on which account Turk, the name formerly of the

beautiful nation of Copebacs, was by the Poets ironically given to them. After Poets ironically given to them. After Soloman's death their Forces being dispers'd, when upon Jengbizenn's Invalion, many Perfan Sairape or Governors, (who pre-fided over Syria, Armena, Paphlogonia, Cilicia, Mejopotamia, Phamcia, Phrygia, and the rest of the Affatick Kingdoms lying between Pontus Euxinus, the Cafpian Sea, and the Euphrates) had taken the op-Aladin Sultan of Iconium, the most powerful of these Princes, resolved also to de-stroy the remains of the Jengbizeban Forces, who continually insested has dominions. But being by them conquer'd and expell'd his Kingdom, he fled to his Friend Mirbael Palaclogus the Greek Emperor, and defir'd his affiftance. As he died in this exile, his Son Meleksbab (corruptly call'd by Nicepborus, Moloko) who afterwards affum'd the name of Aladin II. finding he was only amus'd by Palaelogus, and having in vain defir'd leave to depart, privately retir'd by the help of his People, into his Country; where being join'd by the Great Men of his Father's Kingdom, he not only freed them and himfelf by his valour from the Seythian yoke, but recover'd his paternal dominions, and forc'd many of his Enemies to fubmit to his Fmpire. These he deprives of their Arms, and to stifle their martial Spirit, mixes them with the Country Peafants to exercise agriculture, and calls them by the common name of Turks, whence it came to pais that he who before was call'd Sairapas of the Persians, or Sultan of Iconium was now ftil'd Sultan of the Turks About this time, Soliman, Grandfather of Oibman, being drown'd in attempting to fwim the Euphrates, Aladen appoints his Son Erdogral, famous for his warlike Virtues and Explotts, and after his death, his Grandson, young Othman, General of his Armies Aladin dying, (as the Turkish Annals relate) without Heirs, Oibman is unanimoully proclaim'd Sultan. Whereupon to banish from his People the ignominious and odious name Turk, he order'd it to be confin'd to the Pessants, and the rest to be call'd Othmanic or Othmans. Then removing his Seat from Icomum to Neapolis, (call'd by them Emsbert) he order'd himfelf to be stil'd Emperor of the Othmans, and not of the Turks. On these accounts the Othman Pert, will not at this day be called the Turkif Court, nor does it suffer

that word to be us'd but in reference to the language, as Turkije Vilurmijin ? Do you understand Turkije ? Oibmanije Vilurmijin being improper. For Oibmanije denotes pohteness of manners, as on the contrary, Turkije signifies rude and unciviliz'd. Hence the common saying, Turk Muddets um rinde: A Turk ibro' ibe whole course of bis life. that is, he will always be a clown, and never learn the politeness of the Oibmans.

Very probably to a Reader, vers'd in Hiftory, a doubt will here artie, fince he finds that Turkiftan, a Country lying between the Chagatasan Tartars and the Chinese, affign'd by most of the antient and modern Geographers for the Seat of the Turks or Turcomans. But as by a very gross-error, the Turks and Turcomans are confounded, fo by a no less mistake is Iurkijlan made the Seat of Both This is refuted by the most accurate Historian Sandi, when he expresly affirms, that the Princes who from the Chinese Provinces join'd Tamerlan, came from Turkistan. His words are " Of the \* Kings of Turkistan, twenty famous Princes join'd their forces with I mur. " and pitch'd their Tenis in his cam, But that the Twels are deteended from the Oguzian Tartars I shall demonstrate when I come to speak of the origin of the Ottoman As for the Turcomans, to whom the Race Grand Seignor now gives a Prince, and removes him at pleasure, they have no fixed habitations, but live in Tents, called O(1) and wander up and down is fir as li-1, thro' part of Armenia mign (formerly Iffyria) which even now is by io no C 1 211 Writers, call'd Ten ommin, a name un known to the Turkilli Annals. I or all the antient Turkifb Historians and Geographers call Armenia major by a synonimous name with ours, Ermeniyer Kubra, and Armen a minor they are us'd to call Ermertyer Sugra, which perhaps is a good argument that they are not originally Natives of that Country They all profess the Viati me-tan Religion, but for want of Houses, neglect many Precepts of the Kran, yat-ticularly, praying five times a day Some of these People, were by Sultan Mu rad IV. forced to remove into Euro i, and were put in policilion of the Plains between the mountains of Hemus, (call'd at this day Chenghe\* by the Turks) from Actos, (a noted Town at the foot of Hemio ) to Philippolis, where after the cultum of their Nation, they live in Tents, and cultivate

their lands, but however, are much more civiliz'd than those of Asia. But that the modern Turks should derive their original from this Nation, I don't find it so much as ronjectur'd even by the Historians of these People. Only indeed they are the same, who were first subject to Aladin, and afterwards to Oliman the first Suland of the Olimanida, of which more largely under the following Head. Hence we suffly infer, that the contrary common opinion is sounded more on the ignorance of the Europeans in the Eastern languages, and on the sound of the Words, than on the Truth of the Thing.

### III Origin of the Othman Race.

It stems peculiar to the most illustrious in the World, to have either a or fabulous Origin. If we view , amngs of the most noble Grecian, or Roman Families, what do we to with bur Fables and ridiculous Fiftions of the Po is, concerning their Origin If this was the case among the most polite nations of the World, what is to be ex-pected from Bularians, strangers to learning? Tho' foon itter the foundation of this Empire (everal linkijo Writers, composed tabulous Hiffories, for inftance, That call'd ferarion Alotoman, (from whence lone Clyplian Authors feem to borrow their Chronology of the Orbmani) they are not approved by the Ineks, and are bitterly inveigh'd against, in Tanut-tevarich. Thus we read that some derive the Rue of the Turkifb Empire from the downfal of the Tartarian Dominion, and others, from a Band of Robbers, and find but very few have discover'd the true Origin of the Race which now leigns.

I As for those who begin the Growth of the Turky trom the downtal of the Tartarian, Finders, least they should seem to affert it without grounds, they frame a long series of Tartarian Chans, but agree neither in their accounts of the years, nor in Facts. Nicepharia Gregoria says Jenghizihan (whom he calls Sitzischan) appeared about the year 1222 (more rightly in 1216 as we have shown) in the reign of Johannes Duias. Janghizichan dying, leaves two Sons, Chilass and Telepugas. Chalass leaving the Caipian Sea, and the river laxaries to the North, descended thro' lower

Afis, but Telepugas, having fertied his Empire, pais'd, towards the South, over the Mountains of Caucalus and the Caspian Sea, and marched thro the Territories of the Sauromata and Melliquia, fubduing not only them, but all the Nations inhabi-ting about the Palus Marsis and Tanais, Lonicerus, who places Jengbizeban's expedition in 1202, relates, that having overturn'd the Kingdom of the Indians, he founded the Empire of Great Tartary, and reign'd twelve years in Afia. He was succeeded (fays he) by his Son Hocatan, and he by Majuzchan who took Antiech from the Christians in 1260. Majuzchan dying, Heito, and after him, in 1280, Abulaga, reign'd. This last was succeeded by Tanagodorus, who embracing Christianity, was call'd Nicolaus, but returning afterwards to his old Superstition, took (fays he) the name of Mabommed. Battus was his Succeffor, but dethron'd by Cafan Son of Argo, who about the year 1310, overran all Syria. After Casan, came Carbadagrus, under whom the Empire of the Tarters in Afia falling to decay, that of Olbman was erected. In this feries of Tartar Kings, Lonicerus reckons one hundred and eight years, and others ninety eight. But to pais by all the forementioned Names, entirely unknown and foreign to the Turkifb Lan guage and History, it is agreed by all who have left written Histories of the Eastern Nations, that the Tartarian Princes, Sucreactions, that the National Princes, Successfors of Jenghizchan, were in the year of the Henra 656, and of Christ 1258, (forty-four years before Othman) subdued by Ebubekir Son of Saads, King of Persian, and their Provinces restored to the Persian Monarchy, except those which were held by some of the Sairaga, who in the expedition of the Tartars, took (as I have faid) the opportunity to fet up for them-felves, among whom were Aladin, Sultan of Iconsum, and Soliman, Grandfather of Othman. Hence it is evident that the Tartarian Kingdoms in Afia were overturned by the Persians long before the beginning of the Othman Empire, which therefore could not derive its Origin from thence.

II. There are also other Christian Historians, who, perhaps out of envy, say that Othman first Emperor of the Turks, was a Man of mean Estate, who gathering together a Band of Robbers and Murderers, fell upon his Neighbours, and by force or policy oppress'd all, both of his own and other (c) Nations.

Matiens. To this opinion, though it wants, Lythink, no confutation, as being in itself improbable, 'twill not be amis to oppose the auxbority of Chalcocondylas, who almost alone of all the Greek Hastorians that have writ of the Turkyh Affairs, deserves credit. In his first Book he affirms, "that "Othman first Emperor of the Turks both by his Fasher Erdogral and Grandfather Soliman, was among the Turks as well illustrious for his Birth as renowned for his Virtues."

III. Others there are who think a little more honorably of so great a race, and grant it was deriv'd from a noble Family of the Oguzian Tartars, but omitting its true Author, Soliman Shab Prince of Nera, introduce other names of Tribes unknown to the Turkifo Annals, as the Evrenefit, the Ebrenenses, the Turacambi or Turacans, the Michaloglienses and Malcochoglienses\* &c., &c. The four first of these names neither signify any thing etymologically, nor do I remember to have feen them in any Turk-1/b Historian, except Evrenus, or as several read it, Ornusbeg, General under Murad I. and the first that was call'd Prince of Greece, as will appear in the following History. The Families of the Michaelogis and Malcochogis\* are most certainly private Families only, and not very antient. For Michael Koffe was Head of the first, who being related in blood to the Comnenian Family, and abjuring Christianity fled, as the Turkish Historians say, to them. He flourished under Sultan Orchan, an evidence of which is the Stone-Bridge at Adrianople, built over the River Tunje by his Son or Grandson, which still goes by the name of Michalogli Kuprisi, that is, the Bridge of Michalogic Of the fame original is the Family of the Malcochogli, whose Author by the common opinion of the Turks is of Bulgarian or Sirbic Extraction, who changing his Religion went over to them, neither is the name of the Malcochoglians" heard of, but in Songs wherein the Turk, use to celebrate the Actions of Great Men. Histo ry is entirely filent about him He flourish'd under Mahomet who took Conflantinople.

IV. Moreover, some in numbering the Oguzian Race, seign such unheard of issues, that they may justly seem barbarous to the Barbarians themselves, as, Oguzaspis, who, they say, was Father to Er-

dogral, and Duzalpis, Father of Oguzalpis and Great Grandfather of Othman. Others no less barbarously divide it into four Branches, the Nambuci, Candelori, Cara-mani, and Othmani. Of these names only Duzalpis is Turkish. The Caramani, though very noted in the East, are however falfely numbered with the Oguziani For the Founder of this Family, Caramanogli, who gave his name to his Dominions and Race, was one of the Persian Satrapa or Governors, that on Jengbizeban's invasion, threw off the Persian yoke, but his Posterity are described by the Turkish Historians as Enemies to the Growth of the Othman Empire; nor was their Dominion entirely destroyed till the Reign of Sultan Mahomet, who took Constanting le in the year of the Hejira 572.

V. Having fufficiently examined the various opinions of the Writers in general, I shall now proceed to the Sentiments of fome particular Authors of Note. The first that occurs is Lamueus Chair mily's, a Man not only to be reckon d among the Claffick Authors, but to be deemed a very diligent fearther into the Orlinan Alfairs. He collects the various opinions concerning the origin of the Finke and thus briefly relates them in his first Book 1. Some (fays he) think, the Tack 'that is the Othman.) are derived from the ... thian, whom they also call Inini, and that whilst the Parthums Housinhid, they broke out feven times from Ima s, and is often laid waste Higher Apa They mugine this conjecture is confirmed to hence, because try they there are . to be feen, as 'tis reported, many of a Nation disperfed over Ans, retembling the Seythian Noman in their manners ar way of living, that is, they have no fix' Habitations He adds father, they are endeavour to confirm their opinion, this the Turks are of Southian extraction, by another argument, namely, because the barbarous Nations of Turks, which initial bit Lydia, Caria, Phingia, and C adres . are known to differ neither in I mayage nor Cuftoms from the Scythan inabiting between Tanais and Salmatia / There are also (fays Chalewondylas) who suppose the Turks to be descended from the Pirthians. For it is agreed (fay they in proof of their opinion) that the Parthians, where distress'd by the wandering &cylpians (who from changing pastures are call'd Nomada

cam.

came into Lower Asia, and live in the same manner with the others, and appear disperfed through their Towns, and from thence that race of Men happened to be called Turks, as much as to say, Nomada.

How weak this Interpretation of the word Turk is, abundantly appears, I think, from what I have before faid of the true Etymology of the Turkiß name. 3 Others imagine the Turks came from Turca, a large and rich City of Persia, and at last possess of the true of the true of the second are pleased to think that they came out of Calo-Syrsa and Arabia or Seytha (perhaps this should be Persia) having with them their Lawgiver Omares (more truly Omerss.) and at length acquired the Empire of Asia, living like the Nomada

After Chalcolondylas had thus shown the various opinions of feveral Writers, he in the end agrees with them who affirm the Turks to come from the Scythans. For, fays he, it is evident, the Scythans the live at this day in Europe towards the East, are exactly like the Turks in their Commerce, Customs, and manner of life.

VI. At last, Chalcocondylas being about to give his own opinion, rejects the almost dry Rivulets, and draws the Truth from the very Fountain. "I find (fays he) " when the Rice of the Turks was great-" ly increated, it was divided into feveral " Tribes, among which the Tribe of the " Oguzians was one Of these was born " their I eader Duzalpes, (the fame that " is called in the Turkifb Annals, Kiya Aleb, " Father of Soliman, Grandfither of Oth-" man: a Man studious of justice and county. This Person, I find to be " much praised for his fortitude, and to be fo just, that the contending pur-" ties chole him for Arbiter in every af-" fur, and both fides gladly acquiete'd in his " Sentence. The Oguzians feeing this " Man's equity, prevail'd by their repeat-"ed intreaties with the King of that "Country to make him their Judge" The explainer of Chalcocondy, wrongly interprets this King to be Atadin, Sultan of homum. | " After this, they delivered " themielves up to Duzalpes, to do with " them what he should deem beneficial " to the Oquations. Afterwards when his Son Oguzathes [he will appear prefently to be the same with Soliman Shah ] had " claimed the Rule of the Oguzuans, he

"" afpir'd to Royalty, and by warring on "the Greeks, foon grew to be very fa"mous in Afia. Moreover his Son GreboOguzalpes in our Soliman Shub, Prince of Nera] "having made himself illustrious "by his Actions in Afia, was at length "fent for by Aladin, and by him greatly "effectmed." Thus far Laonicus Chalcecondylas.

VII. After Laomeus, but not of so approv'd credit, comes Johannes Gaudier, no carcless interpreter of the Turkish Annals. Nevertheless, he has, as I think, too bold-ly afferted for truth what he has taken from fome Turkifb Chronicle, concerning the Othman Race In the first place, he fets down tome names very corruptly, and fometimes not in their true order, with fome inconfistencies as to times, places, names of Nations and particular Men. The first (fays he) that rul'd the Turks was Othman, Son of Erdogoul, Son of Soliman Shab, Son of Cabielpis, Son of Cafulbu-Thus far he was right, but then follow twelve corrupt names fcarce to be traced in the Turkifb Annals. After which, he adds that he recites only these seventeen Patriarchs of this Race, but that the reft, whose names are unknown to him, might in a continued Series be carried up to faphet Son of Noab Then he proceeds to declare the Origin of the Othman race, and afferts what in contrary to almost all the opinions, and especially to Chalcocondylas. Whill (fays he) the Family of the Oguzians reigned in continual fuccession over the Parthians, they were plain and uncivilis'd, but afterwards embracing the Mabometan Religion, they made the City of Machan the Seat of their residence. When Soliman Shabus reigned over the Paribians, [Oguziani] the famous Jengbiz made an irruption into Paribia, and deftroy'd Belcha and Chorafan, but Curifemis Shabus, Prince of Beleba, perished in his flight Sultan Aladines of Seljuki in extraction, flying from Parthia to the Country of Junan which this Author thinks to be the prefent Caramania, but in reality Junan, is longa] and leizing the City Savalla, [whence he should have this I don't know] affum'd royal Power. At the fame time Machan being totally destroy'd, Soliman Shabus giving way to the violence of the Tartars, and leaving Parthia (perhips this thould be Patria) repair'd to Erzinga [he

means Exerbigun] from thence penetrating into Romania, came to Amajia, [entirely contrary to Historical Truth.] Then altering his course, he goes to Chalepus, and when he incamped at the City Jahr; on the banks of the Euphrates, and first attempted to swim the River on horseback; is drown'd. Soliman had three Sons, whose names were Sungargensis, Gudogdis, and Erucules Father of Othman, Founder of the Othman Empire.

VIII Having thus given the Opinions of other Historians in this Affair, it remains now to show as clearly as I can, the true Origin of this illustrious Race. Soliman Prince of Nora, is by all the Hiftorians of his Nation, and also by the more accurate Christian Writers, affirm'd to be Fore-father of the Tarksh Emperors, the Glory of whole Ancestors, as it is but darkly fet forth by the Turkish Historians. I think it in vain to feek for a clearer account in other Writers. Nevertheless it is so far agreed by all, that Soliman was of the noblest Oguzian Family among the S., thian, and Head of a Hord or Tribe of Tariars near the Caspian Sea, whom they vulgarly call Conar Cocher Tatar tayfeli, that 15, fraying and going, as much as to fay, without fix'd Habitations. I am inclined to believe they dwelt between the Cajpian Sea, and the Lake now called by the Inhabitants Carabogaz, where at this day the Scotbians who are now called Caracalpak, lead a wandering life, and speak the Turkilb Language, though the Turks greatly differ from them in their manners and way of living By thefe, as well as by the neighbouring People, Soliman was proclaimed by the name of Shab. (By the way, Shab in the Persian Tongue is more honorable than Chan, and fignifies a Prince to whom the Chans are subject, hence the King of Perfia affects the title of Shab But Chan is the fame as a Governor of a Province, and much like a Vizir or Bass a, who has the privilege of three Horse-Tails) Whether Soliman receiv'd this dignity from his Anceftors, by Hereditary Right or acquir'd it by his own Worth, fince no Historian but Chalcocondylas, clearly mentions it, I fhall not take upon me to determine.

IX. Before I proceed, it will be proper to inlarge a little on what has been just mention'd, namely, that after Jenghiz, han's expedition, and the destruction of the Persi-

on Monarchy, most of the Satrapa, or Governors of the Persian Provinces between the Euphrates and Mediterranean, made themselves sudependent, and rul'd in their own names. This feems to be hinted by Nucephorus in his seventh Book. " But " (fays he) the Turks [note that he calls all the Satrage that revolted from the Perfian King, Turks ] " by agreement divided among them by lot all the Provinces of " the Roman jurisdiction" Then he adds the names of the Satrapa, but fo corruptly, that without the aid of History they could not be thought the fame with the forementioned Satrapa, whole true names thus occur in the Turkish Annals Churzem Shab (King of Calpia, for Chuizem among the Turks, fignifies the Calpian Sea, whose name the they do not mention, yet they fay he was subdued by Jenghizeban) Caramanogli, Azerbejan, Germianogli, Hamidogli, Kutrum Bayezsd, Ishindar beg, Ahmidbolamir, Tekkebeg, Zuulcadirbeg, and the chief of all, Aladin Sultan of Iconium, who alone enjoy'd the name of Sultan. I shall dwell no longer on these matters, each of which the Reader will find in its proper place, in my Annotations.

X When these things had thus happen'd, in the third year, (as I have shown) after Yengbizeban's Expedition, our Soman, Prince of Nera, and of a Fribe of Ogenous with fifty thousand select Southart, I its I the Mountains of Caucasia, and at once over ran all Azerbyan (or Mosay to the Lorders of Syria But I imagine it will not be unworthy the Reader's Carrosia to look back a little to the mainer, occusion, and time of the coming south of the Patriaich of a race at present so illustrious.

XI Saad: Effend: Author of the Annals, fo approved by the Othmans, thus describes the manner and occasion of Solman's repution. Antient Writers, stays he, wie have faithfully transmitted the Knowledge of things to posterity, relate, that when Alfuljuk, (i. e. the Soljukian Tribe) removed from Maverennubar (a Country beyond the Osus towards the Castena Sea, knows alto to our modern Geographers, to the Land of Iran (a Country below the Osus, reasoning to the Persian Sea, and on the West to the Tigris) with them also Kija Coan (Father of Solman Shab, Prince of the Osus, and, and possessed himself of the City Mannal o

chan.

## The PREFACE.

chan. But after Jengbizchan's Irruption, Soliman Shab Son of Kiya, or as fome write it, Kiya aleb Chan, whose Dominions now reached to Ablad (Part of Armenia major) when he saw the rage and cruelty of the Jenghizchan-Tartars to be intolerable, was forc'd to relinquish his Possessions, and with his people to move in quest of new Habitations towards Rum (so part of Anatolia or Afia minor was call'd by the antient Turkish Writers ) Thus far Saads Effends, concerning Soliman's leaving his Country, after which he relates the Expeditions of Soliman and his Sons, which the Reader will fee in their proper place.

XII. Hesters, a much older Historian than Saads, fays, the Oguzsans (who according to Chalcocondylas, choic Soliman's Father for their Prince) possels'd the Country of Ablad 170 years before Soliman, and in 611 of the Hepra made their first expedition, under Soliman, towards the Regions of Afia minor But the Jengbizchan-Tartars having left nothing undeftroy'd, Soliman with his followers delerting Afia minor, remov'd back to Azer bejan, and there for fome time lead a Country or unfettled life. At last in the year of the Higher 616, prefs'd with want of necessaries in those uncultivated Parts, he advances a second time with 50000 felect Men, towards Rum to recover his former possessions When he was come attended with fuccess as far as the Eurbrates, he attempts to fwim the River on horseback and is drown'd.

XIII Saiman left four Sons, Sungar tekin, fundogdi, Erdogral gali, and Dindar or Dumilar. Of their the two first returning to their antient Seits ire entirely pais'd over in filence by the Furkish Writers dogral and Dumdar with their part of the Forces, first pitch'd their Tents in a place call'd Syrmalucbukur \* Dumdar dying here in a few days, Fidogral moving towards Aj.a minor tubdued teveral Afratick Provinces, and from his compelling the vanquish'd to pay tribute or embrace his Religion, obtain'd the name of Zeletis, a name famous in those parts fetting the most moderate bounds to his good fortune, least he should seem tyrannically to defire the poffeshions of others, iends in humble manner his eldeft Son Saruyats (afterwards celebrated by the Epithet Savuchibeg\*) to Aladin Sultan of Lonium, deliring a Habitation fornewhere in

his Kingdom for himfelf and followers. Aladin readily grants his request, prudently thinking it better to make this powerful, though new, Neighbour, his Friend than his Enemy. Wherefore he honorably fends back Saruyati with. Ambassadors to Erdogrul, and promises, if by his valour the remains of the Jenghizeban Tartars are driven out of his Dominions, not only to place him at the Head of his Armies, but affociate him in his Empire. For this aged Prince did not so much want Soldiers, Courage, Riches, and Strength, as a good General against such troublesome Enemies.

XIV. Neither was Aladin deceiv'd in his expectations of Erdogrul For having affign'd him Karajedagy for his Habitation, and according to his promile, entrusted him with part of his Forces, Fidigral, by his conduct and wildom, foon vanquish'd the Tartars, and not only freed his afflicted Kingdom from all its imminent dangers, but also subdu'd other Countries, subject to the Romans, and annex'd them to his Empire. Aladin, mindful of his promises, royally rewards Erdogrul, and commits to his rule the whole Province of Ancyra, At last, worn out with wars and old age, Erdogrul dies in the year of the Henra 680, fays Saadi, but occording to Nishrin, in 687, whose Sepulchre in the Town of Suguebick\* is at this day honorably vilited by the Mabometans

XV. Erdogrul departing this life in the midst of his happiness, Aladin, to show his gratitude to to great a man, causes his Son Othman (who for his youth, 'tis faid, was wont to be call'd Othman k or hitle Orlman) to succeed his Father, and to be the Chief of all the Tecadaum or Satrapa. Moreover he allowed him in all the Towns and Provinces subdu'd by his Father, or to be subdued by himself, to use the Title of Sultan, and coin money with the infeription of his own name.

XVI. After this, Aladin the younger, (whose proper name was Aubofbrev) in the year of the Hejira 699, (which begins the 28th of September 1299) being driven into Europe by the Gizanenfian Tartars, his Satrapa, divide all his Dominions among them But Othman, being the most powerful of them, oblig'd the rest (in the year of the Hejira 700,) to seek his Protection and Favour. From hence some Histo-(d)

rians

## The PREFACE.

torisms date the fifft year of Othman's Reign, though Sandi, not without firong reason, commands his Reign began, when after the talking of the City Carajebifar, he appointed a Cadi or Judge, and a Chatyb or Deacos (who might pray for him by name as Sultan) and coined new money with the inscription of his own name, which was in the year of the Hepra 688, and of Christ Thus with the confent of the Great Men and the Army, Othman is chofen King, and joining his own with Aladin's Dominions, changes the name of Oguzians or of Turks (as they were commonly call'd under both Aladins) into that of Othmans, and lays the first Foundation of the Otoman Empire, which is now fo terrible to the World, The Actions of whose Successors will be more accurately related in the following Hiftory.

### Genealogy of the Othman Family.

XVII. Saadi the Turkift Writer su often commended by me, one not more zealous for the Oibman Glory, than for Historical Truth, willingly points at the burthen of so weighty and obscure an affair on other Men's shoulders. Since it is not manifest to him, he says in general, there are Historians, who carry the line of this race from Oibman to Japhet Son of Noab. As he has inferted the names in the Preface of his History, I shall transcribe them, that the Reader may not peruse them corruptly, as I have seen them, in some Christian Writers

Othman Son of Erdogrul, Son of Soliman, Son of Kiya aleb, Son of Kyzyl boga, Son of Baytemur, Son of Aykyilyg, Son ot Tugra, Son of Karaniv, Son of Sacur, Son of Bulgar, Son of Suncur, Son of Tostemur, Son of Tasak, Son of Chemeder, Son ot Kutluk, Son of Turak, Son of Karanban, Son of Tasur, Son of Telvay, Son ot Baybeg, Son of Tugra, Son of Tegmysh, Son of Cusbeg, Son of Tugra, Son of Tugra, Son of Kumari, Son of Chektemur, Son of Turay, Son of Kyzyl boga, Son of Tamak, Son of Bayboga, Son of Hormir, Son of Baysu, Son of Sun, +, Son of Boga, Son of Kurtulmysh, Son of Korchard, Son of Ballebyk, Son of Cumash, Son of Caraoglan, Son of Soliman Shab, Son of Corebiu, Son of Bulgar, Son Shab, Son of Corebiu, Son of Bulgar, Son

of Baytemur, Son of Turmylb, Son of Co kaleb, Son of Oguzchan, Son of Karachan, Son of Kaychan, Son of Ulyechan, Son of Takva, of the House of Japhes

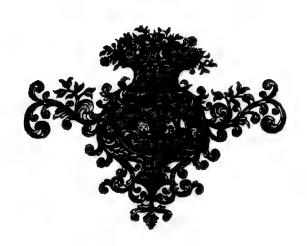
XVIII. Before I conclude this Inquiry, it will not be amiss to observe, it is the common opinion of the Turks, that there are two principal Branches deriv'd from the Oguzian Tribe, the Othmanida, and Aliengbizzans, which last branch has given Chans, in an uninterrupted Succession, to the Crim Tartars A strong proof of this opinion is the law establish'd by the Othman Sultans, whereby in case of failure of Heirs in the Alothman Race, the Emperor in to be chosen out of the Alsengbizian I amily, as being both manifefully deriv'd from the fame Stock Hence the Crim Tirtars have conceiv'd great hopes, that one day, the Aloibman race being extinct, they shall mount the Throne And that this law is not abolish'd, appears from a Sedition in my time, rais'd against Sultan Mulapha (which will be largely related in the fecond Part of my History ) At that time it was consulted in the Hippodrom, by the Soldiers, Citizens, and Ecclefiaftical Order, for feveral days, about dethroning Mustapba, and chuling another Imperor But fince Mustapha detain'd, according to cuitom, in fale custody with him at Adriansple, his relations, Ibravim Sultan Almed, his Uncle with his two Sons, and also his Brother Sultan Abmed, who now reigns, they were afraid, when their proceedings fhould be known, he would put them to drath, and by deftroying the lawful Heis of the I m pire, oblige the Pcople, whether willing or not, to honour him as Emperor Whilft they were perplex'd with this rear, the new-elected Mujti, with the rest of the Learned in the Law, stood up and faid, " Indeed to conter the I maire upon iny " not join'd in blood to the Othmin Rice, " is contrary to the I aws both him in " and divine But fince the Cr.m Ian in. 46 have Heirs of the fame blood with the " Oibmans, who may lawfully govern the " Othmanic Commonwealth, the People's 46 fears of Anarchy are vam I or should " Sultan Mujtaph's kill all his Relations, " he ought to be punish'd for parrieide and " diffurbing the publick peace, and a Sucse ceffor choten from among the Sons of " the Crim-Tartar, as being of the fame

<sup>†</sup> This j is to be pronounced like go in the English Word ago, and by the A. ho, it is talk expected by az

## The PREFACE.

"Family with the Othman" Nay so great is the force of this Law, that it excludes from the Throne, even the Men born of the Female Line. For when at the same time, it was said by some, that an Heir of the Empire was at hand, namely, the only Son of Saphia, Daughter of Sultan Mu-

rad, living in the Suburbs call'd Besonkiass, all the rest opposed it, publickly declaring, if the Othman Empire never falls to the Spindle, nor do they acknowledge other Heirs than those of the Male-line, and on their failure, the Aljenghizians, as being undoubtedly of the same blood."



S the Parallel Chronological Table mentioned by the Author in his Preface is not to be found in his Latin Manuscript, the Translator instead of it has inserted the following Method of reducing the Hejira to the Christian Æra, and the contrary.

The Beginning of the Hejira being fix'd to the Year of our Lord 622, July 16th, if the 621 pass'd years of the Christian Exa be substracted from any given Year of our Lord, the remainder will be the Hejira in Solar years, which being reduc'd to Lunar, will be the correspondent year of the Turkish Era. On the contrary, if any given year of the Hejira be reduc'd to Solar years and added to 621, the Sum will be the Year of our Lord. N. B. 521 Solar are equal to 537 Lunar or Turkish years.

### For Example,

What is the present Year 1734,	What is the Year of the Hejira
What is the present Year 1734, according to the Hejira?	1000 according to the Chri-
From-1734	stian Æra?
Substract — 621	537 : 521 :: 1000 : 970
	Hejira in Solar years — 970 To which add — 621
521: 537:: 1113: 1147 The present year of the Hej. 1147	The Year of our Lord 1591

N. B. The minute Parts of Days and Hours are here omitted, which, by reason of the different beginnings of the several years, must be observed in strictness of Calculation.



### HIST OR

Of the GROWTH of the

# Othman \* or Alothman MP

### In Three BOOKS.

### BOOK I. CHAP. I.

The Time of the Eruption of the Tartars under Soliman Shah. His Conquests and Death.

O great a diversity of Opinions, remarked by Us in the Pre-Cause of the face, and fuch a mixture of Fable by Foreign Writers, oc-various Opinicur to curious Inquirers into the Origin of the Alothman ing the Oth-Race, now on the Turkish Throne, that like Travellers on man Race. a divided Road, they can't without great difficulty diffinguish be-

tween

### Annotations.

B fore we proceed, it may not be amis to prefix to our Annotations forme of the most usual Titles of the Othman Court. For that Court, like the rest of the Fastern Courts, both assumes and expects the proudest and most pompous Titles. Hence in the Imperial Edicts call'd Fernan, there frequently occur; Babi bumayun, The sublime Port Babi adalèt, The Port of Justice Babi seadet, The Port of Majesty. Babi or Déri dentit, The Port of Felicity, from whence the Othman Empire has been wont to be call'd Deules Othmange, The Othman Majetty, or Felicity. If the Reader defires more of these Titles, he will find them collected by Meninskins, in his Turkifb Dictionary.

\* Othmin This Name, given to the Turkish Nation from the Emperor Othman their Founder, is gene-

the fecond Syllable, as Other others omitting the (h) and disa ling the (t) as Ottaman. Both very rally writ perversely by the Christian fallely. For the Arabic Tie of 4th, Historians, some inferting (o) in called by the Turks, Tibes Arabic R

f

the Truth for want of Oriental Learning and History, whilst a Tradition, envious perhaps of the felicity of this Race, has imposed upon others. From these troubled Streams our Christian Historians, ignorant, as we observed, of the Turkish Learning, have been forced to draw what should have been taken from the Fountain-Head. But we (without vanity be it said) justly preferring the Testimony of the domestick Writers to the Assertions of all others, have from Historians deem'd by the Turks the most faithful and accurate, collected our Materials.

of the on of t

There we learn, that about the Time when the renowned Prince Jenghiz (1) Chan (2) had not only laid waste the greatest part of Asia subject to the Persian dominion, raz'd the City of Balch the most opulent of the Province of Chorasan, expell'd from his Kingdom and slain Churzem (3) Shab (4), but also, by means of continual Incursions

### ANNOTATIONS.

exactly answering to the Greek Theta  $\Theta$  [or the Saxon  $\Theta$ ] ought doubtless to be pronounced in Latin [or English] as in Greek, 'Ospan, Othman [It must be observed the Turks pronounce the Arabic Tse, almost like our (f). Hence Othman

is by them call'd Ofman ]

This word is compounded of Al and Oibman, that is, The Sons or Posterity of Oibman, and ascribed not only to the Imperial race descending from Oibman, but to the whole Turkish Nation in general. Hence, Tevass Aloibman, the Aloibman Hords or Tribes. But the Emperors are wont to be call'd Aloibman Padishabi, that is, Emperors of the Sons of Oibman. For this reason, we have thought proper to ftyle our Lucubrations, The Alothman History.

(1) Jenghiz] He was, according to the Turkib Annals, Prince of the Oguzian Tartars, whose Actions and Fortunes are largely related in the Presace, to which the Reader is reserved. [This name is pronounced the Persians and Turki, as if it makes with in English, Chinghiz, or in Italian, Cinghiz. He is call'd by the Latin Historians, Cangius. Jenghizchan fignifics in the Mogul language, King of Kingi.]

(2) Chan This word perhaps pass'd form the Arabian, into the Pirjian, Language, and fignifies Lord or Prince, answering to the Arabic Word Sultan and the Turkish, Ulu beg, that is, Great Prince Chan. tho' ever us'd by the Turkiff I mperors, as Murad Chan, Scien Chan, &cc. was however chiefly afcribed by the Othman Court to the King of Crim or Little Tartary Hence he is usually flyled Kirim Chan, The Prince of Crim, or Cham Alissan, The Sublime Chan [Chan teems rather to come from the Persian into the Arabic The Reader must obferve once for all that Ch is to be pronounced like our K or the Italian Ch, except in words where it is to be read like the English Cb in cheap, rub, for then it flands for the Turkib Chim, which to avoid confusion shall always be noted.]

(3) Churzem] This word properly fignifies the Caspian or Hyreanian Sea, and from thence is applied to the Regions bordering on that Sea, whose Sovereign is called Churzem Shib, that is, King or Lord of the Countries situate on the Caspian Sea. It is sometimes called, even by the Turks themselves, Chuzrem, from the likeness of the two Letters, Ry and Ze without the distinguishing point, fre-

quently

•

cursions and their civil Dissertions, had weakened or dispersed the Princes of all those Regions, (then it was that) Soliman (5) Shah Son of Kiya Chan Prince of the City of Nere (6) and of the Oguzian (7) Tartars, Lord also of the Region of Merushahjam, excelling

### Annotations.

quently omitted in their writings by the more learned Turks. The Nubian Geographer (Part 7. Clim. 5) pretends this word is derived from Chofar, Son of Togarma who first peopled the neighbouring Regions, which opinion feems to be owing rather to a likeness of name than to a reality of fact. Meninskius fays it was also called Kulzum Dengiz but upon what foundation is uncertain, that name being chiefly appropriated by the Turks to the Red-Sea. It is however, from the City Bakuye standing on its Coast, by the Christians, usually called, the Sea of Baku, [It must not be understood as if all the Countries bordering on the Caspian Sea are fubject to one Sovereign, or that the whole Caspian Sea, is call'd Churzem, but only that part which wa-fles the borders of the Kingdom of Churzem, extending as is faid, to the mouth of the Oxus, which runs into the Caspian Sea. Kingdom is now subject to the Usbek Tartars, who took it from the Posterity of Tamerlan, by whom the Successors of Jenghiz Chan were ex-Churzem Shab, here menpell'd rion'd by our Author, was the Title of one Race of its Kings, the most powerful in Afia, which Jengbiz Chan put an end to, in the Person of Mabonmed Churzem Shab Chorasma is mention'd by Herodotus, io ancient is this Kingdom ]

(4) Shah] or Sheb is a Persian word answering to the Arabic, Sullan. Hence the Turkish Emperor is stried, Shahs Alem Penah, the Emperor Resuge of the World. It must however be observed, that Padishab is commonly esteemed a more honorable Title than Shah in the Othman Court, the latter being given absolutely to the Persian Kings, the former never. The reason of this will hereafter be

shown when the word Padifbab comes to be explained.

(5) Soliman He was Father of Eriogral and Grandfather of Othman, descended from the noblest Oguzian Family among the Scythians. Lanierus's mistake in making him King of Nice was remembered in the Preface. [It must here be observed that in the Turkish and Arabic Tongues, the same Mark stands for (a) and (e), and the same for (o) and (u). Hence the various ways of writing the same word in our Historians, as Shab, or Sheb; Soliman, or Suliman. &c.]

(6) Prince of Nere ] A City according to the Turks, near the Caf-pian Sea. The Name of this City is in vain look'd for in the Maps of the Christians, unless we understand by it the City of Herat, Metropolis of the antient Aria or Nurketzur in Majanderan, in the Province of Ghilan. The Turkilb Annals mention the taking and demolishing this City by the Jenghiz Chan Tartars in their return from the destruction of the Royal City of Balch. Our Opinion is confirmed by the Perfian Historians, who mention seven distinct Kings governing the Province of Ghilan at that time, one of whom was, probably, our Soliman.

(7) Oguzian] That this Tribe under their Leader Jengbiz Chan came forth from Great Tartary, the Founzain of numberless Swarms of Scythiams, is the common and conftant opinion of the Turks. Nor do we know of any Christian Writer who ascribes any other Country to Jengbiz. This our Opinion is supported by an evident Passage in Nicepborus Gregoras in the fourth Chapter of his second Book, where he thus speaks of the Irruption of these Tartars. "Many ages after, slowing out of the first scythia, as from an inethaustible." Fountain:

celling all the Princes of his Nation in Nobleneis of Birth, Glory of Ancestors and his own Virtues, in the Year of the Hegira according to Nifbrik's Chronology, 611, [and of the Cristian Era, 1214] A C. 1214 with about fifty thousand select Tartars of the Oguzian Tribe, encouraged by the Example and Fortune of Jengbiz-chan, forfook his old, and advanced towards Europe (8) in quest of new, Habitations.

His Conquells ;

In this manner Soliman Shab with equal speed and success entering Azerbejan (9), a Province bordering on Syria, by the force

### ANNOTATIONS

" Fountain, they divided into two Bo-" dies, one whereof penetrated as far as the Caspian Sea, and forgetting their Native Appellation were called by the Names of, the Sarmata, " Messageta, Melanchlam, Amazones, &c The others bending their 41 Course towards Furope over-ran all " the Sea-Coasts, &c." Again, in the of Section of the 5th Chapter, he fays, " John Ducas being now Em" peror, a numerous Swarm of Scy" thians, composed of many Myri" ads of Men, forsaking the Northern Regions came down to the Caspian Sea. Mean while, their Leader Sitzischan (by which Name we have shown in the Preface, Gregoras meant Jengbiz chan) being dead, 56 the Command of the Armies was divided between his two Sons, Cha-laus and Telepugas" Thus far Gregeras, on whose words it will not be foreign to our purpose to remark, that the mount Durbon or first Scytosa, as it is called by him, in the fame with what is now called Great Tartary, and tho' Historians have given Names to its Inhabitants, these Names are rather ascitttous and foreign than proper and peculiar to them, whilft they remained in their old Habitations. So that when, in the Preface to this History, the Reader finds the Princes of the Oguzian Family to be divided into two Branches, the Alothman and Aljengbiz, let him not imagine that this distinction prevailed during the Lives of the Founders of these Branches For as it is absurd, that the Alothmans under Soltman's Command, should receive a Name from

his Grandson, who reigned not till a hundred Years after, to with no less falsehood are the Princes of the Grim-Tariars vulgarly faid to have retained the Appellation of Aljengliz from Jenghiz Chan himfelf. For neither were they wont to be called by this Name till after they were subdued by the Othman Arms, nor do their Chans derive their Origin from Jenghiz Chan but from his Grandfon Gherai, who first conquered those Parts And these Princes feem in later times, in imitation of the western Emperors, (who from the Founders of the Empire, used to call themselves Calar and Augustur) to have taken and transmitted to their Postcrity the Names of their Heroic Ancestors, the Turks That of Othman, and the Tartare I hat of Gherai. I rom whence at this day the Chans of Tarian to their proper Names always add Gharas, as Selim Gherat, Kaplan Gherat, &c but of these things more in another Place.

(8) Lurope | or the European Parts, Rumi-le or limply Eurofe, Rum, 18 bounded with Siria by the Aramani, io that they who at this day go to Aleppo the Metropolis of Syria, are faid to enter into the Eurotean Parts. But the Turks own the fame Bounds to Lurope as we do, namely, the Be/phorus of Thrace, Tanais, and the

(9) Azerbejan] or Shirvan, or Buz duljebel, the greater Media, but not with the same Bounds as antiently. For the Tartais (who fcrupled not to extend the old Limits, and change the Names of their Conquests) have added to it the greatest Part of Northern As-

force of his Arms or the fame of his Exploits, possesses himself of every thing in his way to Ablad, a Province and City of Armenia major. But the Jengbizian Tarters with unbeard of fury and cruelty ravaging all before them, and advancing to Azerbejan, Soliman Shab, either giving way to the stronger, or reserving his Followers for a more prosperous fortune, was forc'd to assemble his People and from Afia minor to retire into the inmost Parts of Azerbejan. But a Nation born to war and rapine, being impatient of the indigence of an unactive Country-life, and the want of even necessaries in those Deserts, he departed in the year of the Hegira 616, from Azer- H 61 bejan, and led his victorious Forces a second time towards the Regions A. C. 11 of Lower Afia. Being crown'd with unexpected fuccess, he subdued many Cities and Towns of those Regions, and pushing his Conquestes to the Euphrates, wou'd, led on by inconstant Fortune, first attempt and Dead to pass the River on Horse-back, but being carried away by the violence of the stream, was drown'd in the foremention'd year. His Body being afterwards taken out of the Water, was buried by his Sons under the Walls of Jaber (1), not far from Aleppo (2). An anonymous Poet of that Age fung his Epitaph in the following Diffich.

Seu

#### ANNOTATION 8.

fyria, the reft of which goes at this day by the Name of Kurdijian (with some Cordiana) and joins it on the West. Azerbejan is compounded of Azer, Irr., and jan, Soul, with the Conjunction be, in, so that it may be properly rendered, Fire in or with the Soul [This Word is writ by d'Her-

belot, and others Erzengian.]

(1) faber or Baber] formerly a C1. ty near Alepso, at present a Tokkie or Convent of Two kish Monks called Sheg I bu b.kir, which in late Maps is, purhaps, corruptly writ Bir, and Elbu I his place of his Interment is vilited by the Turks with great Devotion, which, besides its Antiquity, is become more venerable by a Monument or Turbs erected there by Sultan Selim the Conqueror of Egypt. It is faid to have been raised to the Memory both of Soliman and Ebubekir, one of the four Expounders of the Koran and Mahomet's immediate Successor, who is believed to be buried here [D'Herbelot calls this Place Khaibar, and fays the Sepulchre of Soliman Shah is according to Saadi the famous Turkish Historian, nam'd at

this day, Mezar Turk, the Turk's Grave ]

(2) The Reader may, perhaps, think that we have been more concife in relating the Actions of Soliman than the dignity of the Subject, and the Memory of the Founder of fo great a Race, feems to require. But we who have made truth our fole aim, chuse rather to deliver a few well attested Facts, than impose upon the Reader with a long recital full of Fables, Barbarisms, and Anachro-nisms. With such things as these, we have often observed Christian Historians in their accounts of the Turkifb Affairs, to have loaded their Works, and have wondered that Men of Learning, and in other respects of great Penetration, could be ever induced to credit the indigested and absurd Narrations of Abulfarage, who among the Turks scarce merits the Name of Historian. There are indeed among the Turks themselves fabulous Books Alothman Tevaricht, and others which give us pompous Lifts of Othman's Ancestors, but are in no more esteem with the more learned Turks than the Arabian

Seu mezidi chu \* nebri faili ol, Nebri Sailde buldi meft ana yol.

That is,

Since he the river Sail did not love, He in that very river met his death.

### Annotations.

Arabian Nights Entertainments, lately published in Europe in French, nor do they scruple to own, that every thing in the Othman History before Soliman favours of Fables.

\* Chu is here to be pronounced as in the English Word Chuse.

[ It may not be amifs to add at the end of each Reign, a Catalogue of the Cotemporary Princes reigning in Europe, whereby the Reader will be enabled at one view to reprefent to himfelf what was transacting at the fame time in those two Parts of the World From the Time therefore of the Eruption o' So'iman Shab in 1214 to his Death in 1219 there reign'd in Europe as follows:

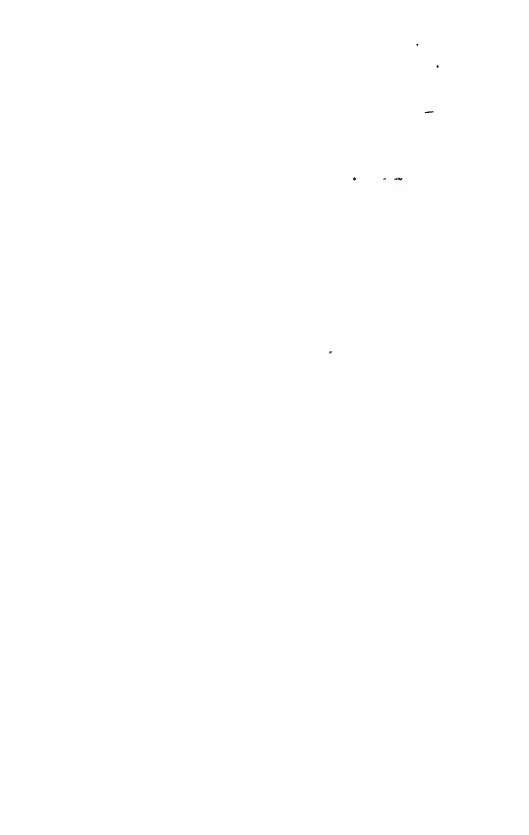
At Constantinople, { HENRY Earl of Flanders, 1206-16 PRTER de Courtenay, 1216-22.

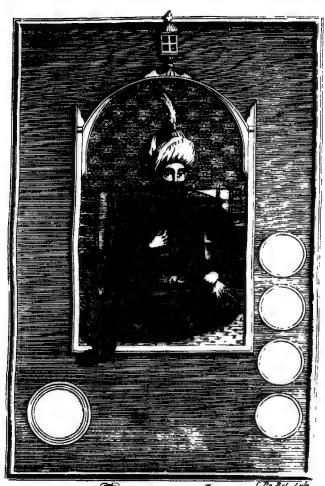
In the West, { O THO IV. King of the Romans, 1208-18.

In England, { JOHN, 1199 to 1216. HENRY III 1216-72.

In France, PHILIP the August, 1180 to 1223.7







ř



The REIGN of

## OTHMAN or OSMAN I.

FOUNDER of the

## Alothman EMPIRE.

### BOOK I. CHAP. II.

1. Soliman Shah's four Sons divide their Father's Forces among them. II. Ertogrul goes to Aladin. III. Falls upon, and vanquishes the Tartars, whilf they are ingag'd with the Turks. IV. Is made General of his Army by Aladin. V. After many prosperous Actions, dies; and, VI. is succeeded in his Dignity by his Son Otnman. VII. Who suppresses the Rebels and conquers many Cities upon the Grecians. VIII. Othman is dignified with more Honours. IX. He repels Fraud by Fraud, and Arms by Arms. X. Aladin deferted by bis People flies to the Emperor Michael. XI. Othman by the Suffrages of all the Princes is declared Sultan. XII. Sets his Sons over the Provinces. XIII. Removes the Seat of bis Empire to Jenghisheri. XIV. Attempts in vain to take Nicomedia. XV. Defeats the Grecians in a Battle, and takes Cotaia. XVI. Long befieges Prusa. XVII. Offers the Coran or Sword to the Christians, and by

Both fubduce many. XVIII. He adds many Cities . to his Empire. XIX. Conquers a nation of the Tartars, and compelle them to Mahometism. XX. Conquests of Orchan Son of Othman. XXI. He takes Prusa. XXII. and by his dying father is left Heir to his Empire.

divide among them ha Forces.

delimen's Sons Oliman Shab being thus taken out of the World, his four Sons Ertogrul or Togrul (1), Sunkur Tekin (2), Jundogdi (3) and Dindar or Dumdar (4), divided between them their Father's Riches and Forces. Sunkur and Jundogdi returning to their antient habitations, must be there left to their unknown Fortunes. Ertogrul and Dumdar with their part of the Forces, first pitch'd their Tents in a Place call'd Syrmalyzukur, where Dumdar within a few days, departing this life, Ertogral affembled his own and his Brother's Forces; and fubdued by arms or policy, all the Countries between Aleppe and Cafarea, with their Castles and Towns, introducing every where (5), the Mabometan Religion which he himself profesid.

Priogral goes

II. His Fame thus increasing, Aladin (6), Sultan of Iconium thought ıζ

#### ANNOTATIONS

(1) Togrul or Ertogrul] These Names fignify in English, a Man born, or, a just Man. Ertogrul was Son of Soleman and Father of Othman I.

(2) Sunkur Tekin] Sunkur according to its Etymology fignifies a kind of white Falcon, the most rapacious of all the feather'd Tribe, and found no where but in the Country of the Usbee Tartars, and by their Ambassadors brought to the Turkish Emperois for a Prefent It is but rarely taken and highly effectied by the Turks.

(3) Jundogdi ] Etymologically, the Sun is rifen, Or, the Morning bas appeared. For Jun with the Turks fignifies, Day or the Sun, Dogds is the Preserperice Tense from Dogarim, fignifying, to be born or to come into the Light.

(4) Dumdar ] According to the Etymology this Name fignifies, Sonorous or endued with the power of Sound, for Dum is the noise of the Drum called Kios. Dar, in the Per-

fian Language fignifies keeping or hang endued with. Whence the Words Vefadar, keeping Faith, Namdar, endued with a good Name or Reputation, Alèmdar, holding the Standard

or Standard-bearer, Go

(5) Introducing every where ] The Turks ascribe the fortunate Successes of the Empire, not to much to human Prudence, Policy and Valour, as that their first Emperors wag'd war not through Ambition and a Difire of Dominion, but through the Zeal of propagating the Mahomitan Religion, and by that means they procured the divine Affistance to their Undertakings

(6) Aladen Lord or Sultan of Icomium. He is always call'd the Second by the Turkift Historians Hence though they mention not a \mu\_il, yet it feems most agreeable to Truth, that the first Aladin was the Azaturi tpuken of by Nucepborus Gregorias B IV Ch. 1. Sect. 6. who (fays he, taking occasion from the Expedition of the Tartars, shook off the Persian Yoke,

ful dued

#### Othman or Ofman I. Book I.

it more adviseable to allure to him so brave and indefatigable a Warrior, and fet him at the head of his Army, than to cope with him as an enemy. Whilst he was thinking of these things, he was unexpectedly prevented by an Embassy from Ertogral, with his Son Sarujat at the Head of it, who in his Father's Name was to ask of Aladin some Place in his Dominions where himself and his People might live in peace and amity. Aladin receiving the Ambassy, and feeing, as the Proverb expresses it, that what he expected from Heaven, was come to him on earth, readily grants Ertogrul's defires; and with Ambassadors from himself, honourably dismisses Sarujat to his Father, defiring him to repair immediately to his Court, where he should meet with a reception worthy so samous a Leader. Induc'd by these promites, Ertogrul hastens to Aladin with the Ambassadors; Is receiv'd with great distinction, and obtains Carajedagy, in the region of Ancyra for his first Habitation.

III. Aladin had been long infested, and often brought to the last Erograf extremity by dispers'd Bodies of the Tartars, who surviv'd the quishes the great Jenghiz Chan's expedition. About this very time a numerous ingig'd the Turks Body of these Tartars happening, without opposition, to invade the region of Ancyra, Aladin, to check their fury, leads against them fuch Forces as cou'd be most speedily assembled. But the Tartars superior in number and arms, at the first Onset, put the Sultan's Army into diforder. Ertogrul hearing of the battle, comes opportunely in the heat of the Fight, with five thousand select Men. His Soldiers feeing Aladin's Forces dispers'd, and flying before their victorious Enemies, perswade their General to join with the Conquerors. But Ertogral answers, " It is not the part of a steddy man to violate " his faith, or of a brave warrior to draw his Sword upon the pro-" itrate, but rather to affift and relieve the desperate and weak." By these words distinating his Soldiers, eager to fall upon the spoils of the Run-aways, from their base purpose, he bravely charges the victorious Tartais, and quickly putting them to flight, unexpectedly recovers the day to the vanguish'd Aladin.

ANNOTATIONS.

fubdued inveral Afiatick Provinces, belonging to the Eastern Emperors, and with his Son Melek Shab was obliged to retire to Michael Palæologus after having been routed by the Tar-tars, in the Year of the Hegira 661, and of Christ 1261. For, it being

certain that his Son Melek Shab after the Recovery of his Father's Dominions took the Name of Aladin II, who can be (especially in so short a space as the Empire of Iconum lasted) the first Aladin, but the fore-mentioned Azetines of Gregoras?

4.7

10

him General of his Armies

IV. Sultan Aladin now an Bye-witness of Ertogral's Valour. which before had only reach'd him by fame, perceiv'd that he stood in less need of Forces than of wife Counsels and a good General, Wherefore pronouncing Ertogral most worthy in both these respects, he commits to his care the whole region of Ancyra, and appoints him Generalissimo of his Armies.

Ertogrul's Actions and Death.

H 580

V. Ertogrul therefore joining his Forces with the Sultan's, not only puts a stop to the incursions of the Tartars, but every where defeating and flaying them, compells them to retire from the Borders of the Kingdom. Thus he not only preserves, but also enlarges, the Sultan's Dominions. In the year of the Hegira 680, (accord-A.C 1281. ing to the accurate Historian Saadi) he crown'd his Victories with the Conquest of the famous City of Kutabi, upon the Greeks, and would have done greater things, had not death, unjust to the Glory of Heroes, taken him out of the World. For, worn out with old age, and the Toils of his Victories, he ended his life the same year, with great same indeed to himself and his nation, but to the greater grief of Aladin and the whole Kingdom. His Sepulcher at the Castle of Suguebick \* is still religiously visited by the Admirers of the Alothman Family.

Othman fucreeds to his I ather's dignity

VI. But however, the Fortune of his Race did not expire with Ertogrul. For there remain'd three Sons, Othman, Junduz, and Sarviz. Othman (7) tho' the eldeft, yet being a young man, receiv'd in Aladin's Family the diminutive appellation of Othmanjik or little Othman. His deceas'd Father had indeed left him by Will the Inheritance obtained of Sultan Aladin, but the Sultan in a grateful acknowledgment of Ertogral's Services, fends him the military Entigns, Tabl Alèm (8); that is, the Drums, Standards, and the other Ornaments

### Annotations.

\* Cb is to be pronounced here like

Ch in the English word Chick.

(7) Othman ] Ertogral's only Son according to the Turkish Historians, who (fay they) on account of the Herose Virtues of his Father succeeded to the Generalthip of Aladin's Army whilst a Youth, and from thence was

called Othmanulus, or little Othman.
(8) Tabl Alem ] All the Governours of Provinces are called Tabl Alem fabibi, fuch as Viziers, Bafba's, Begs and the like. Alem is a large broad Standard, which instead of a Spear-head has a Silver Plate, in the middle, bor'd in the shape of a Cres-

cent or Half Moon. Tubl is a Drum. from whence the whole military Accontrements with which the Turkish Emperors adorn the Great men, are called Tabulchana The Tabulchana of a Vizier confifts of nine Drums, nine Zurnezen or Players on the Zurnader or Fife, feven Bor azen or Trumpeters, four Zillezan or Players on the Zil or Brass Basins which being struck igainst one another make a loud and clear found) three Horic-Tails very artificially pleated, called lug, one Alem, one Sanjak, (or Standard, diftinguished only by the Colour from the Standard of Mubomet, Mahomet's being red and

ments of a General, with full power over his whole Army. Moreover, he permitted him not only to coin money (q), imprefied with his own name, but also in the Cities and Towns conquer'd by his Father, and in those he should himself conquer, to have the Chuthe (1) that is, to be mention'd by name in the publick Prayers. Some Hiflorians have from hence dated the beginning of the Othman Empire; but, as will hereafter be clearly shown, they are mistaken in their computation.

VII. Othman, invested with so many Honours, seem'd to want Othman sur nothing of the royal dignity, but the Title of Sultan (2), which bels, and co

however quers many Cities upor the Greeks.

### Annotation 5.

this green) to these are added two other very large Standards called Basrak Other Balha's who are not honoured with the name of Vizier and who are not inferior to them, the Princes of Moldavia and Walachia, have the privilege of at least two Horse-Tails, with the other Standards and Ornaments of the Viziers. A Beg with the Standards has but one Horse-Tail. There are moreover others of a much inferior order to Begs, who have no Horse-Tail, and but one San-jak allowed them by the Emperor, and these are called Sanjakbegs, whose Office at the beginning of the Othman Fmpire, was the most honorable, That of Basha being of later appointment.

(9) Money ] No Turk is allowed to coin Money or to be mentioned in the publick Prayers, but the Emperor alone For though Cairo in Egypt coins money by the Emperor's licenie, it is done not in its own, but the Sultan's, Name. The Turk sh Money has no Essignes stamp'd on it, but only the Sultan's Name in most elegant Characters Thus on the Money of Sultan Abmet who now fways the Turkifb Scepter, are thefe Inferiptions.

Sultan Abmet ibn Sultan Mabome! el Sultan ibn el Sultan. That is, Sultan Abmet Son of Sultan Mahomet, bimpelf Sultan and Son of a Sultan.

### On the reverse,

Sultan alberin vehacanulbahrin farb fi Constantante. That is, Emperor and Conqueror of the World, Lord of

the Seas; stamp'd at Constantinople, or fi Edrne, at Adrianople, or fi Mifr, at Caire, or fl Ifmyr, at Smyrna, For no other Cities enjoy the privi-lege of Coining But if the Emperor himself is in the Field with his Army, he carries a Mint with him. and the Inferrption is thus, fi orduit bumayun, that is, in the Tents of the most Sublime The Chan of Crim Tarsary, 12 permitted however to coin Money with his own Name inferib'd on it.

(1) Chuthe By this is meant an Acclamation or Petition in the publick Prayers for the Health and facred Majesty of the Emperor, and for Victory over his Enemies, particularly the Christians.

(2) The Title of Sultan ] It was observed that the Arabic Word Sultan answers to the Persian or rather Mogul] Word Chan. It is supposed by fome to be derived from Selatat, that is, Conqueror or Potent. It must however be remark'd that this word in common Discourse is applied with a Pronoun to any Person, as Sultanum, my Lord, just as in French they use the Word Monsieur without any distinction. But if Sultan be used abfolutely without a Pronoun, or with the Article el (the) it fignifies only the Emperor, though, as I have before observed, the Title Padifbab is accounted more excellent. The Sons of the Chans of Crim-Tartary are allowed the Title of Sultan, as Caplan Gherai Sultan Scc. [Ricaut fays when the Sultan writes to the Chan he uses this Style To the Government wherein flourisbes the Mass and Original of Regency.

however he did not think proper to assume during Aladin's life (3) He believ'd it more adviscable to wait that Prince's death, than, by an unfeafonable thirst of dominion, to hazard both his Kingdom and Himself, nor was he disappointed by this resolution. For preserving inviolable the Allegiance, he had fworn to Aladin, he arm'd in his defence; and leading his victorious Troops against the Princes who had revolted from the Empire, reduc'd them to obedience. Then he turn'd his Arms against the Greeks, and in the year of the Hegira 687, taking the Town of Culze, the First-fruits of his following Victories, added it to Aladin's Empire. The fame year he fought with the Captain of Carashers or the Black City, and defeating him in a sharp Battle, takes his Brother Calanos or Callinicus prisoner, whom he causes to be flea'd, and afterwards buried. Then he orders the whole Army to piss on his Grave; from whence the Field, call'd before Tomalida, retains, to this day, the name of, It shins or Dog's Pifs. Nor was this a bloodless Victory to Othman, for besides the Loss of many of his Men, his Brother Junduz was slain valiantly fighting. His Body was by Othman's order laid in his Father Ertogrul's Sepulcher near Suguebick \*. Immediately after this Victory he took also the city Carachifar and annex'd it to the Seljukian Dominion.

He is invested with more Honours by Aladia H 688

VIII. Aladin the fecond, being inform'd of Othman's Victories, invests him with the Government of Eskishehr, or the Old City. The next year 688, he expells the Mogul-Tartars, and suppressing on all sides the incursions of the Enemies, signalized himself by many Victories. At last, having affembled Inhabitants from all Parts and enlarged Carachijar with new Buildings and Walls, he made it the splendid Sear of his Residence.

There feems to be some difference in the Computation of years in the Seljukian Historians. For they fix Othman's Victory over the Mogul-Tartars to the year of the Hegira 698, namely, ten years later, which we therefore believe truest, because Saade, in the following Actions of Othman, uses also the same Computation.

IX In

## ANNOTATIONS

Regency, on which Fortune depends, and by which Felicity is obtained Pos-felfor of excellent Pox-er and established Glory, elested by the favour of that King from xibom Succours are to be demanded. The King of Crim, Chan, Beg, Ghirai, Chav, whose Height le for ever maintained. After respect had to those Blessings which are freighted with Amber, and Salutations persumed with Narcissus proceeding so the Imperial Grace, Be it known unto you, &.]

(4. During Aladin's Life? The prudent Othman refuted whillt Aladin lived to accept the offered I tile of Sultan, perceiving he could not fail of it after his Death. He choice rather to be called Serastic or General of the Arms, that he might not be suffected of afforming to the Throne. But after Aladin's Death, he threw off the Fox's and put on the Lion's Skin.

\* Pronounced like the English Ch.

IX. In the year of the Hegera 698, Michael firnam'd Kord, Orhman rethat is, Goat's-Beard, Prince of the City Bilejiki, being to celebrate with Fraud, the Nuptials of his Daughter, invites Othman as his Friend and the and Arms tron, to the Marriage. Whercupon the other Grecian Princes pri- H 698 vately concert measures to seize Othman. But this Treachery being A C 1798. discovered to Othman by trusty Messengers from the faithful Michael, he fugns ignorance of the defign, and using stratagem for stratagem, orders fome hundreds of Soldiers to conceal themselves near the Place, whilst forty well armed young Men, dress'd like Women, were to enter in the Evening, the Castle of Jarbifar, and in the Night set fire to the Houses about it. In the mean time he himself repairs to the Guests with a slender Retinue to Chakyrbunar, a Place so call'd in the Suburbs where the Nuptial Feaft was to be. The forty disguis'd Soldiers, (who, as we said, had entered the Town then without garrison) set it on five, and in the Combustion, seize the Gates and Fortifications. Othman perceiving by the Flames that his stratagem had fucceeded, gives the fignal for the Soldiers in ambush to take their Arms with a Shout, and charge the Enemies buried in Wine. The Signal is no fooner given than executed, and all, except Michael, Othman's faithful Friend, are taken or flain, without distinction of Sex Among the Captive Ladies was the Bride Holophira, of a noble Descent, whom Othman afterwards married to his Son Orchan, by whom the had Soliman and Murad, which last was Orchan's Successor in the Empire (1).

Prefently

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(1) This Story by reason of some militakes or omiffions in render'd very imperfect and obscure, and therefore it will not be improper to infert it here as related by the Christian Historians Muchael Copy Governor of Hirmen Kata, Great Friend of Othman, invites him with the Christian Governors of the neighbouring Castles to his daughter's marriage. Culman by his nobic Prefents to the Bride and Bridegroom, (usual on those occasions) raising both the envy and realouty of thefe Governors, they combine to destroy him by treachery To that end, the Governor of Bil nki, the most powerful of them, being shortly to marry the Captain of Jarbyjar's daughter, requests Oldman to grace the marriage with his Prefence, and acquainting Colli with their design, sends him at the time appointed to conduct Othman to the Wedding. Colli found

Othman very ready to go; but grieving that so brave a man should perish by treachery, discovers to him the whole Plot. Othman resolving to be revenged, bads Cossi tell the Governor, he would certainly come, but being at wars with a neighbouring Prince, and fearing a furprize in his absence, that he desires the liberry to lend to his Caftle of Bilejiki, his Mother-in-law and Wife with their Attendants, and fome of the best of his Goods This is readily granted, and Othman difguifing forty young-men like women, with fome others, pack'd up in carriages as goods, he comes to the place where the marriage was to be folemniz'd the next day, being an open Field, for the conveniency of room, at fome diffance from the Castle. After his compliments to the Governor, he obtains his order that the pretended Ladies and Goods may be received

Presently after this Victory, he takes the Town of Ainegiol, and also subjects many other Castles and Towns with their Territories to Aladin's Dominion.

Aladin desertple fires to the peror H 699 A C 1200

X. In the year of the Hegira 600, a Swarm of the Gazanenhan ed by his Peo- Tartars invading Aladin's Kingdom, his Princes and Great-Men, who obey'd him more out of Fear than Affection, deeming his Misfortune their Happiness, revolt a second time. By this Defection Aladin's Affairs growing desperate, he is forced to abandon his Dominions, and privately fly for his Life to Michael Palæologus the Grecian Emperor But when the Thread of the Destinies is spun, fruitless and vain are the Efforts of human Policy. For when he hoped to find a Sanctuary and Affisfance from the Greeks, he is most inhumanly thrown by them into perpetual Imprisonment. From whence though he is faid by Nicephorus Gregoras to be afterwards delivered by his Subjects, yet it appears by the unanimous Testimony of the Historians that he died in the year of the Hegira 703, and of Christ 1503.

Othman by all to choice bultan

XI. Mean while Othman far fuperior to the rest of the Princes unthe Suffrage of der Aladin's Dominion, in Valour, Reputation, Soldiers and Wealth, prevailed with them all, partly by great Profents and Assurances of greater, partly by the Favour of his Protection and a Communication of Power, and partly by threats, to obey and acknowledge him for Sovereign of the whole Empire. Wherefore by the unanimous Confent of all the Great-Men he is, in the beginning of the next year, that is of the Hegira 700, declared Sultan, and in the City Carachilar first affumes the Title of Emperor of the Othmans. From hence tome Historians date the beginning of Othman's Reign, though Saadi Elfindi strongly contends, that the first year of his Reign was when having conquered upon the Greeks the City Carachifar, he appointed there in Aladin's life-time, and with his Confent, a Cade or Judge, and a Chatib or Deacon to mention his Name in the publick Prayers, and also coin'd Money impress'd with the Title of Sultan, namely in the year before-mentioned 687. But we following the common Opinion in the

A C 130;

## ANNOTATIONS.

into Bilepkt. The moment they are enter'd the Castle, the Soldiers leaping out of the Packs with the help of their difguis'd Fellows, with fome difficulty seize the Castle. Othman, us foon as the Governor was retir'd to his Bed-chamber, supposing by this time the Castle was secur'd by his Men, immediately takes horse with his Followers and Friend Coss, and rides full speed to Bilepki. The Governor, inform'd of his fudden de-

parture, purfues and overtakes him. but his attendants, being for the most part, drunk, he is slim by Othman in the conflict, and the reft put to flight Having thus taken Bilenki, Othman with great dibgence forprizes also in the morning the Caffle of Jarbyfar, where he took prisoner the Captain, and his beautiful daughter the Bude, who were preparing to go to the Wedding

the first year of his Reign to the beginning of the year 700 [and of Christ 1300, as the clearer, in our Opinion, and more accurate Chronological Computation, as we have demonstrated in the Preface to the Reader.

XII. Othman being thus possess'd of an Empire which he had ra-Othman pl ther long expected than fought, and having fix'd the Imperial Seat in the Provin Carachijar, fets his Sons over the Provinces and Cities to govern and protect them. The Sanjak of Carajedagy, a City afterwards very famous by the Name of Sultan Onghi, was given to Orchan, of Eskishebrs to Junduz Aleb, of Asn Onghi to Asgud Aleb, of Jarby/ar to Hufan Aleh, of Amegiol to Dorgud Aleb, but Aladin his youngest Son with the Government of the City Bilejik, was committed to the care of his Mother and Father-in-law Baliad (2).

XIII These Governments being thus fill'd, and the City of Kupri- He remove bijar taken the same year, he removes the Imperial Seat from Cara-the Seat of the Empire chylar to Jenghishelri, which he adorns with Royal Palaces, Bagnio's, Jenghishel and other stately Buildings, enlarges with new Walls, and strengthens with various kinds of Fortifications.

XIV. In order to the more firm Establishment of his new Empire He attempt and Seat, he peateably spent some time in regulating his Domestick in vain to t Affairs. Having ordered these according to his pleasure, his next concern was to prevent the Soldiers from being corrupted with Luxury and Ease. To this end he leads his Army against the City of Izmmid (or Nicodimia, ) which though he annoy'd with a long Siege, he is unfuccessfully repuls'd by the Carrison. Wherefore raising the Siege. he builds over against it on a very high Mountain towards Jenghishebri, a strong Castle, which being well garrison'd and stor'd he commits to the Custody of the tamous Targan After that, he retires with the rest of the Army to Winter Quarters at his Royal Seat at Jenghishebri. It must be observed that the Chronicle of Meulan Ideis makes this Castle (call'd Targan from its Captain) to be built not by Othman hur his Son Orchan.

XV. About this time the Governours of the Greek Provinces, He defeats i among whom Ornus or Honorius Governor of Prusa was the Chief, Greeks and observing takes Kutak

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(2) Baliad] [It is plain from hence. that Mubael Kose was not Governor of Bilink, fince it is not probable, Othman wou'd deprive of his Govern ment, to faithful a Friend, that had lately fav'd his Life. Confequently

there must be some mistake in (SECT. IX ) where our Author makes him Captain of Biliyeki And therefore most likely to be, as related in the foregoing note ]

observing the daily Progress of Othman's Arms, and that Victory always attended him, privately agreed to meet with their forces under the Walls of Counbyfar in order to march and furprise him. But Othman's watchful Fortune discovers to him by scouts their Designs. Wherefore filently leading his Army into the Field, he unexpectedly attacks, vanquishes and routs his Enemies. The Prince of the City Kostel, with many others fell in the Battle. Ornus Lord of Prusa, and the Governor of Kutabi (whose Name is not mention'd) save themfelves by flight. Othman pursuing them, the Captain of the Castle of Ulubad, warn'd by the Example of his Allies, and fearing also to be expos'd to the Fury of the Othmans, on certain conditions opens a way to his Pursuit. But Othman, unable to overtake the flying Enemies, besieges Kutabi (lately recovered from the Turks by the Grecians) and takes it. But the Conquest of that Place was attended with a notable Loss to Othman. For passing his Army under the Walls of the Town, over a Timber-Bridge, his Grandson Dogres with some Soldiers were drown'd, the Bridge breaking under them. His Body being found, was, by Othman's Command, buried in the Suburbs of Coiunhisar.

Prufa, but raties the Siege,
H 717
A C 1318.

XVI. Most of the Cities of Bithynia being conquered, and his Empire now firmly established, Othman at last in the year of the Hegira 717 besieges Prusa (1) the Metropolis of Bithynia. But the City being strongly fortished and defended by a numerous Garrison, it was very difficult if not impossible to take it, and therefore Othman to prevent any fresh Supplies of Men or Provisions, from being thrown in, builds over against the City two Castles, of which he commits one to the Custody of his Nephew Artimur, and in the other places the samous Captain Balansis, with strict orders not to molest or injure the Inhabitants. By this means all the Subjects of the Prusian Territory, slying for safety and life to these Castles as to a Sanctuary, voluntarily submitted to Othman's Dominion

XVII. It

#### ANNOTATIONS

(1) Prùsa] [This City is of great Antiquity, and was the Seat of the Kings of Bithyma. It lies at the foot of Mount Olympus, and is said to be built by a King of that Name in the time of Crassus. It had been in the hands of the Greek Emperors since the year of Christ, 947. It is now call'd by the Turki, Bursab, or Burussab, in Natolia. This City is sa mous for its Baths of Mineral Waters, which draw thither a vast Con-

course of People from all parts of Turkey A Turkey Poet has made an Inscription in verse for the Bathrof Bursaic, to this effect it receive not be wondered that the great number of naked Person in these Bathroff very apily represents the general Resurrestion, since the Springs of the Uniter wherein they bath, slow from the Fountains of Paradye. When Prusa was taken by Orchan, he made it the Seat of his Empire, as will hereafter be seen.

XVII. It was Othman's Custom after the Conquest of a tertain Othman office Number of Cities, to check the rapid Course of his Victories, and re- are the Ker. pose himself and his Army some time in composing the Affairs of his or sword, at hy both wi late conquered Provinces, and restoring Peace and Tranquillity to the many to Ris Inhabitants. Having spent some years at home to this purpose, his Bounnaon Soldiers, accustom'd to Victory and Spoil, and impatient of Ease and Rest, humbly petition'd to be led to new Conquests upon the Greek Empire. The prudent, and, in the Administration of the publick Affairs, the most politick, Othman, readily promises to grant their Request, but however, fays he, the Propagation of the Mahometan Religion is not to be neglected, and puts them in mind that the Precepts of the Koran are to be preferr'd to Riches and Empire. Wherefore he proves to them by the Law of the Koran, that the Christian Princes ought first to be peaceably invited to the Mahometan Religion, and in case they refused to obey, were then, by the Divine Law, to be declar'd Enemies of God and the Truth, and for their Obstinacy to be subdued and chastised with Fire and Sword. Accordingly, an Edict is sent by the Chauses \* (2), figmifying to all the Princes of Asia Minor, that they must either embrace Mahomets sm, or pay tribute, or be subdued by the Sword. The News of this thundering Edict reaching the Ears of all, Michael Kofe, Lord of Bilejik, was the first that submitted to the Mahometan Superstition, which afterwards procui'd him and his Posterity for many ages great Honour and Credit with the Othman Emperors His Example was follow'd by the Prince of the City Libichiji, who, tho' he refused to turn Mahometan, became Vassal to Othman and delivered his Son to him in Bondage. The Lords also of Lefka and Chadarly \* Mary Culty fubjected their Dominions to the payment of a yearly Tribute.

are raded to his Empire

XVIII. About the fame time the Cities Mortan, Goinik, Tarakly Enguijeli, Kayabilar, Hejeji, Akbylar, Karachyn \*, Tekkurbanari, and fome others, whose Princes had contemn'd both the Religion and Do-

#### ANNOTATIONS.

\* The Reader is to take notice for the future, that the Letters Cb in all the Words mark'd with an Afterisk are to be pronounc'd like the English Cb, otherwise like K.

(2) By the Chaufes \* 1 These are (according to Ricaut) a fort of Meflengers who attend at the Prime Vizier's Palace, to carry Letters and Commands to any part of the Empire. There are now between five and fix hundred who have from twelve to Forty Aspers (about our Half-penny) a day. Their chief Officer is call'd Chaus Basbee to whose Custody Prisoners of Quality

Christian Renegaare committed. does for their Incouragement and Subliftence, are commonly admitted into this Rank, because, understanding other Languages, are most fervireable on Messages into foreign Countries, and fometimes are fent with the Title of Ambassador, as one was once into France, England, and Holland. They ferve likewife as a fort of Apparitors or Serjeshts to call the guilty Perion to Justice. Their Arms are a Scymiter, a Bow, and Arrows, and a Truncheon with a Knob at the End, call'd Topus. ]

minion of Othman, being weaken'd by the frequent Incursions of Chausoiber , formerly Ertogrul's servant, he at last takes them all, and annexes them to the Othmanic Empire.

Others ohler ges the Tartars to embrace his religion † Phrygia

XIX. Whilft Othman was employ'd in these Conquests, a nation gestine variars of Tartars call'd Chaudar \* coming from the Kingdom of Kermian +. unexpectedly invade his Dominions, and destroy all with Fire and Sword, to the very Walls of Carachyfar. Othman, then refiding at Yenghisheri, when he heard the unfortunate news, immediately leads his Army into the field. At Oinalb (a Town then in ruins near Caracbyfar.) he bravely attacks and routs the ravaging Tartars, killing great numbers, and taking more Prisoners. These upon their embracing the Mahometan Religion, were afterwards restor'd to liberty, and remain'd for ever within the jurisdiction of Carachysar (3).

The Conquests of Orchan Son of Othman

XX. Among the Sons of Othman, Orchan (his Successor in the Empire) excelled in Virtue and Bravery. With part of his Father's Army he conquer'd the Cities Garachebefh \* Alebfui, Pirgos, Tekinbifari. Then he returns to his father, leaving the Command of 1 is forces to Cognuzalbem, who storms and takes the Castles of Akari, and Tuzbazari, and dispatching the famous Captain Akije Coja, lays waste the Province of Iznigmid to the very Walls of the City. The Governor of Iznigmid complaining to the Emperor at Conftantinople of the Fury of the Othmanida, and informing him of the imminent danger the City was in, the Emperor fent fome thousands of well-armed Forces to his relief. But Abdulrahman another of Othman's Captains, having intelligence of their coming, suddenly meets them in the Field of Yailazova. The Greeks, when they could no longer withstand the Fury of the Othmanida, turn'd their backs to the Conquerors, but being purfu'd, many were flain, great numbers taken, and but very few efcap'd by an early flight, to carry the unfortunate news to their Emperor.

Othman being ferz d with the *thyma*, and takes Prufa the Metropo-

XXI and XXII. Tho' Othman, exhaufted with labours, continual HIZ WHIN the Expeditions and old Age, had been sciz'd with the tormenting diftemper overruns Bi- of the Gout, yet preferving the vigour of his mind, and perceiving a

## ANNOTATIONS.

(3) Othmanic Empire] Some Chriftian Writers afcribe many more Victories to Othman, particularly the Taking of Nice in Bithyma, Neapolis in Thrace, Ancyra in Phrygia and other Cities of Natolia. But fince the Turkish Annals expressly mention in what year and by whom these Cities were taken, namely Nuce in the year

of the Hegera 726, by Orchan, An. cyra in 761, by Murad I, and relate as it were with the same Pen, that Orchan first attempted to pass into Eurupe, we cannot be blam'd if we doubt of the Faithfulness of these Narrations, till they are confirm'd by the stronger Testimony of the Turkifb Historians

most prosperous success attended his Arms, he sends his Son Orchan with numerous Forces, to subdue the Province of Bythinia govern'd. as we observ'd, by Ornus, and if possible to take Prusa the Metropolis of the Kingdom. Ornus, unable to meet Orchan in the Field, is oblig'd to remain within the Walls of his Capital, a City otherwise very strong, and stor'd with eight years Provisions. Orchan closely belieging the City, and annoying it with continual attacks, met with a gallant relistance from Ornus and his Garrison. But, (to use the language of the Psalmist) except the Lord keep the City, the Watchman wakes in vain. For Michael, who had lately abjur'd the Christian Religion, and was now chief Counfellor to Orchan, artfully perswaded Ornus, after a long and obstinate Siege, to surrender at last upon Capitulation. on payment of thirty thousand Gold Crowns, the lives of the Inhabitants were spar'd, and the famous City of Pruja, without the effusion of one drop of Turkish Blood, was delivered to Orchan in the year of 11 726. the *Hegira* 726 (4).

XXIII. As human happiness is seldom pure and unmixe, Orchan, Orlyman dies, in the midft of his triumph and joy for the taking of this renowned his Kingdom City, receives the melancholy news that his Father was dying, and had to his son therefore commanded him to repair to him with all possible diligence. Orchan, obedient to his Father's command, leaves a strong Garrison in Prusa, and with few attendants returns to Yenghisheri, where he found his Father almost expiring. Othman giving him his paternal Benediction, and bequeathing to him his Empire, the same year Pruja was taken, in the month Ramazan, refign'd his last breath, in the 60th year of his age, after a reign of twenty fix years, three months and ten days (5).

OTHMAN'S

## ANNOTATIONS.

(4) As the Christian Historians for the most part say, this City was taken by old Sultan Othman himselt, so they pretend it was effected in the following manner. The Sultan after taking the Town, perceiving the Caftle to hold out, ordered it to be reported that he was dead and had just before his Death, defir'd to be buried in the Greek Convent in the Castle, with about forty Persons to attend his Funeral, and if this Request was granted, his Army was to retire. The credulous Monks very readily complied, and a Coffin full of Arms with Othman himself in disguise and thirty nine others being admitted, they feiz'd the Gate, let in more

Troops, and took the Castle. M. Lucus gives this Account in his Travels to the Levant, wherein he defcribes the Place with its Monuments of Antiquity; numerous Baths, Sepulchres of the Turkis, Sultans, and the Rums of antient Palaces, &c. by which it appears to have been a very confiderable Place. The Reader will fee prefently a probable Conjecture of our Author how the Christian Writers came to think this City was taken by Othman.]

(5) ten days ] Philippus Lonicerus. and other Christian Writers ascribe to him a Reign of twenty eight years, but we think the Turkifo Historians, as better informed and more accu-

## OTHMAN'S last Words to bis Son ORCHAN as CXtant in the Historian Saadi.

HEN these two Princes beheld one another, with Hearts inflam'd with affection, Orchan lamented and faid, " Oh! Oth-" man! Thou Fountain of Emperors, Lords of the World! Thou " Conqueror and Subduer of Nations!" The excellent King casting his dying Eyes on him, in a languishing voice, expres'd himself thus: " Lament not, O my Soul's delight ! for this my last Conflict is " the Lot of all Human Kind, common to young and old, who e-" qually breath the same Air of this malignant World. Whilst I now " pass to Immortality, live thou Glorious, Prosperous, and Happy. " Since I leave thee for Succeffor, I have no cause to grieve at my de-" parture. I will give thee my last Instructions, to which be attentive. ee Bury the cares of this Life in oblivion. I conjure thee, crown'd " with Felicity, lean not to Tyranny, nor fo much as look towards " Cruelty. On the contrary, cultivate Justice, and therewith embel-" lish the Earth. Rejoice my departed Soul, with a beautiful feries of Victories, and when thou art become Conqueror of the World, er propagate Religion by thy Arms, and exercise a just Friendship towards the Ruman Kingdoms (6). Promote the Learned to Honors. " So

#### ANNOTATIONS.

rate, are to be followed, who unanimoufly allow him but twenty fix Lunar Years, three Months and ten Days, that is, about twenty five So-lar Years, five Months, and feventeen days. [ When Othman's Coffers came to be open'd, no Treasure or Jewels were found there, he having liberally bestow'd his Money upon his Warriours, fo that the Wealth he left his Sons was, his Example to imitate, large Dominions, many Horses and much Armor fit for Service, and especially great Herds of Cattle and Flocks of Sheep. Of these last it is remarkable, that there are at this day in the Pastures near Prusa, Sheep belonging to the Grand Seignor which are faid to come from those of Othman. He lies buried at Burfab, where his Tomb is still to be feen in a certain Chappel of an old Monastery in the Castle. But whether this be so or no, it is certain the Tombs of the Sultans that were afterwards buried there, refemble Chap-

pels, and are lin'd with Marble and Jasper, and their Domes painted with Azure and fine Ornaments in Gold and Red, their Ploors are covered with Tapestry, on which hie the Cossins of the Sulturs with their I urbants and Arms about them }

(6) Rum an Kingdoms J Regna Ruma of un D'Herbelot observes, that Rum was a name given by the Arabians and other Eastern Nations to the Countries, which the Romans sirst, and afterwards the Greeks and Turks, reduced to their Obedience But more particularly, according to hebr Muards in his Geography, the Country call'd Rum begins at the Western Ocean and contains Gara'cea, Gallicia; Andaluz, Spain, Maria, France, Rumiah, Italy, Nemsiah, Germany; Ieb and Cheb\*, Poland and Bohemia, Inkitar, England, Majar, Hungary, to Constantinople and the Eustine-Sea, where he joins the Country of the Secaled ab or Slaves, and Sclavomans bordering upon the Ruj-

j.ans,

" So the Divine Law shall be established, and in what Place soever " thou hearest a Learned Man, let Honour, Magnificence, and Cle-" mency attend him. Glory not in thy Armies, nor pride thy felf " in thy Riches. Keep near thy Person the Learned in the Law, and " as Justice is the Support of Kingdoms, turn from every thing re-" pugnant thereto. The Divine Law is our fole Aim, and our Pro-" gress is only in the Paths of the Lord. Imbark not in vain Under-" takings or fruitless Contentions. For it is not our Ambition to en-" joy the Empire of the World, but the Propagation of the Faith was " my peculiar defire, which therefore it becomes thee to accomplish. " Study to be impartially gracious to All, and take care to discharge " the publick Duties of thy Office; for a King not diffinguished by Good-" ness and Bounty, belies the Name of a King, Let the Protection of thy " Subjects be thy constant Study; so shalt thou find Favour and Pro-" tection from God." Othman, Refuge of the Faithful, having finished these Instructions, his Soul departed to the Regions of Eternity.

## ANNOTATIONS.

fians And lastly, the Country still more properly calld Rum, viz Romania and Rumilia, that is Thrace and modern Greece. The Author of the Massabat alardh, or, Extent of the Earth says, that Rum, in which he includes Part of Asia Minor, is bounded on the West, by the Canal of the Black Sea, on the South, by Belad Sham and Belad Jezurah, Syria and Mesopotamia, and Arminiah, Armenia, on the East and North by Belad Kurg, Georgia, and Bahr Bonios, the Euxine Sea, and that in the Middle of this Country of Rum, is, Ghebal Carman, (the Mountain of Carumania or Mount Taurus, where inhabit many Turkish and Turcoman Families) the ridge of which Mountain extends from Tharsus in Cilicia to the Helles

pont. And in this Country of Rum properly so call'd, reign'd the Dynasty of the Seijussan Sultans, call'd by the Arabiani, Selajekab Rum, or, the Seljussaa of Rum, from whom the Oibmanide or present Turks deriv'd their Original, which is the reason that the Persians and Moguli still call the Turks to this day, Rums. From Ebu Aluarde's Description of Rum it appears that by the Regna Rumacorum, the Kingdoms of the Rums, here mention'd by Oibman, are to be understood the Christians of Europe, and by, enercising just Friendship towards them, he doubtes meant, obliging them to embrace Mahometism, which in the opinion of the Turk, is the greatest Kindness or Friendship that can be shown Christians.]

From the Death of Soliman Shab in 1219 to the Death of Ofman I. in 1326, there reigned in Europe, as follows.

At Constantinople, ROBERT (Son or Brother of PETER de Course-nay) 1222-29.

BALDWIN II. 1229-62.

MICHAEL PALEOLOGUS 1262-82.

ANDRONICUS PAL. 1be Elder 1282-1325.

From the Death of FREDERIC II. 1250 to 1273, From the Death of FREDERIC II. 1250 to 1273, yas a Sort of Interregium, in which time were effected Plener of Theringia, William of Holland, Richard Duke of Cornwal Son of King John of England, Alphonsus the Wife. During these twenty three years, were exinguished the great Families of Suadia, Austria and Thuringia.

Rodolphus of Habiburgh, 1273-91.

Adolphus of Nassen, 1291-98.

Albertus Son of Rodolphus, 1298-1308.

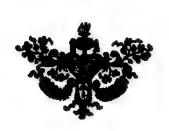
Henry of Luxemburg, 1308-13.

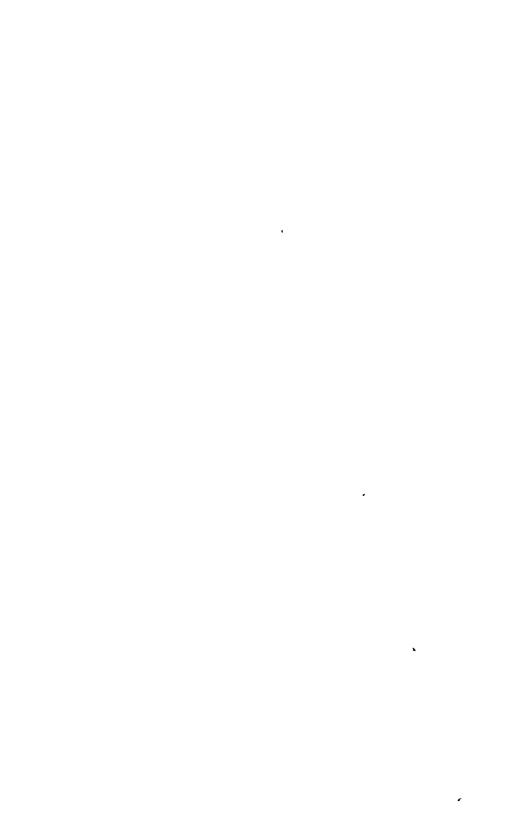
Lewis of Bavaria, 1313-46.

In England, EDWARD I. 1272-1307. EDWARD II. 1307-27.

LEWIS VIII. 1223-26.
LEWIS IK. 1226-70.
PHILIP the Hardy. 1270-86.
PHILIP the Fair. 1286-1313.
LEWIS X. 1313-15.
PHILIP the Long, 1315-21.
CHARLES the Fair, 1321-27.

The End of the Reign of OTHMAN 1.





ORCHAN Son of OTHMAN,

BECOND EMPEROR of the TURKS.

On the Year 1926

Efrom an Original Proteins in the Saraghan.



The REIGN of

# ORCHAN

Second EMPEROR of the TURKS.

## BOOK I. CHAP. III.

I. Nicomedia furrenders to Orchan. II. He removes the Seat of his Empire to Bursah, coins money in his own name, and models the Army. III. He puts his Army under regular Pay, and propagates his Religion. IV. He takes Nice after a long Siege, and marries the Grecian Widows to bis Soldiers V. He takes the strong Castle of Kemluk, and first founds Schools and Academies. VI. Having weaken'd the Grecians in Asia, he politickly gains the Musulman Princes to his Dominion. VII. He unites to his Empire the maritime Towns. VIII. He first fends bis Son Soliman into Europe, who with his fleet takes two European Ports. IX. Callipolis furrenders to Soliman. X. Orchan fends bis other Son Murad with a new Army into Europe, where, besides others, he takes the firong City Chorlu \*. XI. Soliman, Son of Orchan, is kill d by a fall from his Horse. XII. Ache-beg \* takes the

the City of Dydomothychon, which is restored to the Inhabitants by Orchan. XIII. Orchan's Death and Character.

THMAN being dead, his Son Oreban (1) in the thirty fifth year of Orches is faluted Emperor, to whom Nihis age, and of the Hegira 726, on the 10th day of the Month of Ramazan, was immediately faluted Emperor of the Othcomedia forrenden manidae. Orchan having in his Father's Life-time (as 'tis faid) taken H 726. A C. 1326 Prusa (2), and subdued the Territory of that City to his dominion. spends the first year of his Reign in settling the affairs of Asia, and establishing his new Empire. But the next year, he at once overruns A C 1327 the whole Province of Semendura, extending from the City of Aitos to Iznigmid or Nicomedia. Then he leads his Army against Iznigmid, which the difficult to be taken, he closely belieges and conquers. Calojanes the Governour, who rather deserted than defended the City committed to his care, when he saw Orchan's Army approach, flics away in the night to the Castle of Coiunbisar. Orchan hearing of his flight by fome Captives, fends part of his Army to invest that Castle alfo, which being eafily taken, and Calojanes flain with an arrow, he causes his head to be fixed on a Pole, and shown in terror, to the Nicomedians. They feeing the head of their Governor and General, fend Ambassadors to agree with Orchan upon Articles of Surrender. and so obtaining liberty to retire with their lives and goods to Conftantinople, they deliver up the City to Orchan.

## ANNOTATIONS.

(1) Orchan] Nicepborus Gregoras Book XV. Chap. 5. Sect. 2 calls him Hyrcanus or Orchanes, and fays, he married Maria, (or according to Cansacuzenus, Book III. Ch. 92. Theodora) Daughter of Johannes Cantacuzenus. Of this, the the Turkifb Historians are entirely filent concerning it, we are unwilling to doubt, because it is hardly credible that a Christian Writer, and Father of this Maria, should relate a Falsity which could be attended with nothing but difgrace, both to the Christian Reli gion and the Emperor himself, or should propose from thence any praise to himself. But whether he had any Children by this marriage or not, since no Historian, that we have seen, has informed us, we chuse also to pass it over in silence. [yebannes Cantacuzenus Guardian to the Emperor Andronseus's two Sons, ufurp'd the Throne in 1338, but be-

ing dethron'd, he retired to a Monastery on Mount Athor, where he wrote the History of his own Reign, which is reckoned the Masterpiece of the modern Greeks?

piece of the modern Greeks?

(2) Having taken Prusa? The Christian Writers refer the taking of Prusa fa to the times of Othman, who they tell us, died the following year. This mistake feems to arise from the Loss of Prusa, (which was a very great calamity) being known to Greece before the news of Othman's death could arrive there. For the usual in the Othman Court to conceal with great care the death of the Emperor, especially from their Enemies. Now the great exactness observed by the Turkys Writers in marking the days of the deaths of their Emperors, will scarce permit us to doubt of the truth of this Narration.

3 02 25 1

II. In the year 728, he took by Capitulation under the deaduck of H. 728 Aliber, the City of Herkie (call'd afterwards Karamufeke) Capital of A C 1328. the Province of Semendura. Orchan, when he had subdu'd all the for move ha Seat tified places of Bitbynia, except Nicee; the same year removes his to Prus, a models the Imperial Seat from Jenghisheri to Prusa, and by the advice of his Bros. Army. ther Aladin, abolishing the Seljuktan money, makes a new Coin, inferib'd with his own name. He orders the Inhabitants of Cities to be distinguish'd from those of Villages by different Habits; and also was pleased that the military Men should be distinct, who before differ'd in nothing from the Christian Soldiers. He inroll'd a new Militia of Foot, (of which there had yet been none among the Othmans) and taught them to make Engines, for taking of Towns, (which before they were entirely ignorant of) and made his Brother Aladin General of his Armies, and fet him over the Publick Affairs with the new Title, of Prime Vizir.

III. In the year 729, Orchan first assign'd the Soldiers (who before H 729. were all Volunteers) regular Pay, namely a Nikra a day, (so his new A C 1329 Coin was call'd, being in value about the fourth part of a filver He first gives the Soldiers Drachma.) However, when they were not upon duty, he appointed them Pay, and proto live peaceably on their own possessions, free from all contributi- liggon. ons. But this Infantry, being taken from the dregs of the Pealants, a rough and unciviliz'd generation, very frequently rais'd, or endeayour'd to raife, mutines. Orchan observing this, abolishes that Body, and puts in their room as many Christian youths as can possibly be procur'd; whom he first causes to be instructed in the Mahometan Faith. and then to be inroll'd. So, in a short time he not only got a numerous Army, but also greatly enlarged the Mahometan Superstition. If any of the Turkish Peasants, contented with his own possessions, was willing to be inroll'd, they were permitted to serve among the Horse, under the Sanjakbegs and Balukbashss, by the name of Musellem, that is, the Free.

IV. The military Orders, and a new Soldiery being thus re-esta- He takes No. blish'd, and the number of Forces greatly increased; Orchan this same con after a year befieges Iznik or Nicaa, which almost wholly destroy'd by a two and marries years continual Siege, Famine, and Pestilence, is compell'd to surrender the Greenen Widows to his at the mercy of Orchan; who, when the Inhabitants by their Deputies Soldiers. beg their lives with leave to retire to Conftantinople, very generously permits them to take also what riches they can carry with them. Whereupon, the Nicaans feeing Orchan's clemency, voluntarily become Tributaries to the Othmanic Empire, and remain'd free in their poffessions and houses. Orchan in the year 730, enters the City, and, H. 730 when the Wives of the Greeks, kill'd by famine and war, bewail their A C 1330 Widowhood in his presence, commands the Othmanic Courtiers and

# The Othman History.

Nobles to marry them, and treat them as honourably as Mufulman Women. By this means, many Womes of noble birtls, and also of inferior condition, received at once Husbands, and the Mahamatan Faith. After the taking of Nices, the Pame of Orcher's humanity to his Subjects flying over the neighbouring Regions; not only the Nicaons, of whom great Multitudes had by flight avoided the Siege, but also numberless Inhabitants of other Cities and Towns, not yet subdued by the Othmanic Arms, flock to Nicaea. By which means, in the space of one year, Nices to abounded with Inhabitants, that it feem'd to rival even the City of Constantinople.

班 734. He takes the firong Cattle of Kembuk, and founds Schools H 736.

\*

V. In the year 734, Orchen takes by capitalation the Caffle of A. C 1334 Kemluk, fortified by Nature and Art, after a whole year's close Siege. This Castle had been often, tho' in vain, attempted by Othman. In the year 736, Orchan adorns the City of Prula with a new Masch, Academy, and Hospital, Structures truly royal. But especially the Academy, which was founded in a Monastery, became so famous, and A. C 1336 illustrious for Professors of the liberal Arts, that out of Arabia and Perha, which before were looked upon as the Preceptors of the World, very many to purface their studies, slocking thither, disdain'd not to be the disciples of the Othmanida.

Having weak-Princes to his dominion.

VI. Orchan, after he had by his Arms fubdued upon the Greeks, the class of Afia, forementioned Cities and Territories, by his Policy and Art of Governticklygain the ment, for which he was famous; contrives how to unite to his dominion the rest of the Asiatick Provinces, which were in subjection to some Musulman Princes, the remains of the Seljukian Empire. He begins with the dominions of Ajilanbeg, who dying and leaving a young Son call'd Cashimber, Orchan under pretense of being his Foster-father and Protector, places him near his Person, and seizes his whole Province. Turfordeg, another young Prince, imitating his example, dedicates to the Othmanic Scepter the Cities of Andynjik, Minas, Balykefre, Bergame, and Ermid. Near to these, Ulubad, Kublius, and Eblius, which as yet acknowledged the Empire of the Greeks, were reduced by the force of his Arms. Michalche, \* the Son of Keramasteria a noble Macron, taking warning by their misfortune, delivers up his paternal possessions (which from his name are at this day call'd by the Turks, Muchalich \*) to be held of Orchan in Vallalage. Mean while a contention arises between Tursonbey and his Brother Hajelbeg; the former offers to Orchan, the Principality which he had before promis'd him, but the latter refuses to consent to it. A War from thence being kindled, they had recourse to Arms. Hajelbeg being the weaker, quitted the Field, and betook himself to the City of Bergame. Orches taking occasion from this quarrel of the Brothers to seize the Province; with a conning Hypocrity, says he, " it is not " just nor allowable by the Medometer Religion, that by reason of

" the rage kindled between the Brothers, even one drop of Mafalman " Blood fhou'd be spilt; yes rather it is a fin to contend with Arani " about what may be decided by Law." Wherefore he orders the Brothere to meet under the Walls of Bergame, and according to the pite." feription of the Law, to make an equal division of the Possessions. Both agreed to the Sentence of the Judge. But at their first meeting, Turfonber, stabb'd with a dart by his Brother, (who pretended to entibrace him) falls down dead before Orchan's Medianoss. Hajribeg, like enother Cain, being seiz'd with horror after the deed, and dreading both his own People, and the Othmanida, endervours to flut the Gates of the City, and oppose Orchan with Arms, but in vain, for the Citizens abhorring the marder and justly fearing Orchan's power, deliver up to him both their City and Prince; who, after languishing two years in prison, died at Burfab. The same face attended the Prince of Ulubad, who being falfely accused of a revelt, is put to death. Whereupon the whole Province of Carafus with Ukebad, acknowledge the Sovereignty of Oreban. These things were transacted about the end of the year 737, and of the Christian Era 1337.

VII. In the beginning of the year 738, the maritime Towns Ana- H 738. cher and Emrud, (which yet remain'd under the deplorable rule of the A. C. 1338 Christians) hearing Orches was preparing an Army against them, He unite to chase rather to furrender themselves to his clemency, than by their re- manume fistance to experience his fury; whose example being followed by Towns fome other Towns and Castles, they were united to the Othmanic Empire.

VIII. Orchan's Ambition seem'd rather to be inflam'd than satisfied, H 738 with the course of his Afatic Victories. Wherefore having conquer'd A. C 1338. all Bitbynia, in the year 738, he fends his Son Soliman to attempt a of Orchen is passage into Europe, joining with him the most famous Captains of his feat into Entime, Achebeg , Gazifazyi, and Ormufbeg, (or as other Writers are two Ports pleased to say) Gazifaryl, Yacubjebeg and Michalbeg (3). Wherefore

Soliman

## ANHOTATION &.

(3) Michalbeg] The Christian Writers have left nothing certain (as far as I find) concerning either his Birth or Fortune. But the Turkish Historians tell us, he was descended from the Emperors of Trabiasad, (perhaps of the Commeman race) and abjuring the Christian, embrac'd the Mahomeian, Faith, and was so belov'd (as they say) by Orchan,

his advice. At this day there reat Adrianople, built over the river Arts, a famous Monument of his Son, who after his Father was call'd Michal. This Bridge still retains the name of its Builder, being call'd, Michologic Reprefes that in, the Bridge of Mechal's Son. But whether he was of royal race I dose not venthat he would do nothing without ture to affirm, tho' the name of

Solimen taking with him eighty chasen men, under pretense of hunting, descends into the region of Aidinjik, and surveys the Afatic Shores. But as it was death by an Edict published by the Emperor of Confiantinople, and confirmed by the rest of the Christian Princes, for any one even in a little boat to go over on the Afiatic fide, or for an Othman to fail over into Europe; necessity whetting his invention, Solimen lays two Rafts on Ox-bladders tied together by the necks, on one of which he gets first himself, and in the night, the moon being at full, passes over more happily than he expected, from a village in Afia to the Castle of Hamni in Europe. Soliman having thus wasted over his followers, they first seize a Country-man, who thro' an underground passage showing them an easy entrance into the Town, destitute of Guards, they fuddenly furprise the People oppressed with sleep, and little expecting fuch an invasion. Wherefore Soliman taking the men prisoners, and judging it more prudent to deal gently with them than roughly, treats his captives very civilly, fwearing to give them their liberty with ample Presents, if any of them understanding Seaaffairs, wou'd conduct into Afia, the Ships which lay in the Harbours of Balair and Akchiliman\*. The Captives, allur'd by Ochan's clemency and promises, transport into Europe from Asia in a few hours, about three thousand Othmans. On the morrow he suddenly took the Castle of Hyasobonia, and supplying it with Provisions and a Garrison, gave it in custody to Achebeg\*, from whose name that Territory is at this day call'd Acheovafi.

Calhpolis for-

IX. Gelibelij or Callipelis, put indeed a stop to his progress. renden to Sah. The Governor, (who is mentioned by the Turkish Writers by the name of Callaconias) affembling as many of the neighbouring Youth as he could, endeavours to make head against Soliman. The fight was long and doubtful; but the Othmans, superior both in courage and number, are at last victorious, and force the Greeks to fly within the Walls of their City. Soliman confidering that he could not take the Town by affault, without the loss of his men, resolves to humble his enemies by a long Siege and Famine. Wherefore drawing the Garrisons out of the Castles already taken, and preventing all relief and provisions from entering, he closely belieges the Town Tho' the Governor and Garrison bravely defended the place committed to their care; yet tir'd at length with a long Siege, and weaken'd with frequent affaults, and moreover destitute of provisions.

#### Annotations.

Michael will hardly fuffer us to doubt of his former Religion; for to the best of our remembrance that name is ascribed to none but him and the Archangel by the

Turks. In the Koran or Alcoran. this name is written Mikail, but in fpeaking or writing to Christians, they are wont to fay Michal,

they deliver up by capitulation in the year of the Hegira 760, Calli- H. 760 polis with the whole Province of Chuireboli or Charipolis (4). The A C. 1359 Grecian Emperor, when he heard of the taking of Callipolis, which was justly call'd not only the Key of Confantinople but also the Bulwark of Europe, is reported to say, the Turks had only taken a Hogsty and a Pottle of Wine (5).

X. The next year Sultan Orchan fends a second Army into Europe, H -61 under the Conduct of his other Son Murad. The two Brothers uni- A C 1360 ting their Forces, Soliman subdues Malgara and Ibsalam, and Murad Orchan lends his bon Murad takes the Castle of Epibatos, about ten hours journey from Constant withan Arms timople, after which he lays siege to the strong City of Chorhu \* (or who takes Tyrilos) fituated between Conftantinople and Adrianople. The Inha-Charles bitants relying on the strength of their City by nature and art, despise the Army of the Othmans, and not only refuse to surrender upon the honourable terms offered them by Murad; but also in vigorous Sallies kill feveral thousands of their enemies; and often beat them from their Walls, 'till overpower'd with numbers, rather than vanquish'd, they were all flain to a man. In revenge of this flaughter, Murad having taken the Town, order'd it to be entirely demolish'd, and levell'd with the ground, fo that now there scarce remain any signs of it. By this act of Cruelty the Inhabitants of Pirges, (a Town between Adrianople and Chorlu \*) were frighted from their habitations, and left their empty Town a prey to the Enemy After these Conquests, Murad joyfully returns with his Army into Afia, whilst Soliman remains with his Forces in Europe.

XI. This year, however fortunate it was to the Othman Empire, Solimen 15 prov'd as fatal to Sultan Orchan. For Soliman (6), when under the kill'd by a fall colour of hunting, he was reviewing his Forces in the Field, and exercifing, according to the Othman custom, his Cavalry in darting their Spears, and shooting their Arrows, was by an unruly Horse run away

## ANNOTATION S.

(4) Chairéboli] It scems to be Chri-Ropolis, in which place Gregoras (Lib. VII. c. 6. Sect III.) says that the Emperor Andronicus built a Wall extending from the Sea to the Top of a neighbouring Mountain, (call'd by the Turks Defpès yalafi,) in order to obstruct the way into Macedonia. I wonder from whence Johan. Dunf. should have it, that Christophis is called by the Turks, Tanbols. For Tanbols is in Thrace, about seventy miles from Philipspe-

lis under Mount Homes, situated on the Banks of the River Tunje.

(5) [Alluding it feems, to the name of a Castle taken by the Turks,

which fignified Hog fty.]

(6) Soliman] Gregoras feems to call him by the name of a Trojan Leader, whilst he tells us (Lib. XIV c. 11. Sect. II.) that he married the Daughter of Johannes Batatzes, and first passed over from Asia into Europe. For the Turks make no mention of any man's passing into Europe before this Soleman.

with, and breaking his leg against a Tree, fell to the ground with fuch violence that he inftantly expir'd.

habitants by Orchan.

XII. Orchan, hearing of the unexpected death of his beloved Son, which a refto. was fo overwhelmed with grief, that he was feized with an incurable Illness, which shortly after laid him in his grave. However, least his Son's death and his own fickness should seem to stifle all warlike thoughts, he fends an Army under the conduct of Achebeg,\* to conquer Dydomothycon. This General approaching the City before he was expected, accidentally takes the Governour in the Neighourhood of the Place, where he had walk'd for his pleasure. The Governour, who was of the race of the Greek Emperors, impatient of a hard Captivity, purchases his freedom with the surrender of the City. Orchan however, mov'd at that time with the intreaties of the Grecian Prince his Friend, (this was Johannes Cantacuzenus, who had married his daughter to Orchan before his accession to the Throne) restores the City to its former possessors.

Orchan's Death and Character

XIII. The illness contracted by the death of his Son, continually preying upon Orchan's old Age, and daily increasing, he died the same year, two months after his Son's misfortune, and was buried in Manastyr or the Monastery of Pruja (7). He left his Kingdom to his

#### ANNOTATION 5.

(7) Manastyr] There was at Prufa or But fab, a large monastery, (now turn'd into a Jame or Temple, retaining its antient name) in which, it is reported, there were in the time of the Christian Emperors five thou fand Monks. Strange stories are told of these Monks by the Turks, in a Book call'd Yacobin Madian. Among the rest, one Story is, that those Monks from the top of Mount Olympus (call'd by the Turks, Kefbsfb dagy, or the Mountain of the Monks) flew thro' the air over the Propontis to the Church of Sancta Sophia at Constantinople, and that they eat only every seventh day one Olive or Fig. If any Christian questions the Truth of this Story, a Turk thinks it sufficiently provid, if he shows it to be written in his Book. For the illiterate among them, believe nothing false can possibly be recorded in their Books. I don't think it foreign to the purpose to relate here, as an in-

stance of this credulity a pleasant Story which happen'd at Conflanti mople in my time. In the reign of Sultan Mustapha the present Emperor Achmet's Brother, the Patriarch was one Callinicus, who was tolera-bly vers'd in the Greek learning, and of unblameable morals was continually dunn'd by the Proctors or Meteven of the Empreis l'alida's Temple, for the interest of money due to them from the Church. The Patriarch, having no money to discharge the debt, defires they would grant him a delay till the Monday of the following Week This term being expired, the Proctors are with him again, and more urgent for their money. The Patriarch intreating for another Week's respite, is thus taken up by the fenior Proctor. " To 46 what purpole (fays he) O Patri-" arch, are these lies? Our Books se tell us, and we certainly believe 46 It, that your Monks heretofore,

" not

Son Murad having lived seventy (8), and reign'd thirty-five years, according to Saadi's Computation. The Turks greatly extol this Sultan's Clemency, Valour, Justice and Liberality to the Poor; and affirm, that it was his constant practice to converse with the Learned, nor would be undertake any thing of moment without asking their advice; that he was the first of their Emperors that founded Moschs, Jams (9), Medrese (10), or Schools, and Imaret

#### ANNOTATIONS.

" not only were far from being 41 guilty of lying, or any ill action, " but also had attain'd to that de-" gree of Virtue, that being taken " up into the Air, they flew from " Mount Olympus [meaning Olympus in Bythman different from that in Grecie] " to Santia Sophia, and re-" turn'd the fame way, and were 44 famous for o hir miracles exceed-" g ill human power." The Patriarcii, as he was very facetious, replies, " of the antient Monks on-" oily did This, but we also daily " do the fame wonders. I mytelf " frequently take a flight from hence the was then at the Patriarchal Seat at Phanaram) " to Pera. In feed I " chuie to fly after Sun-fet, and not " very high, in order to avoid the " eye of the multitude, and the 44 imputation of Imposture or Ma-" gick " I o this the Turks only anfwered, " did not we tell you, our 44 Books, wherein we believe nothing untile is contained, fay as mu h ?" It must however be confefs'd, that in lo great a Nation, there are many of the learned Turks who do not implicitly believe all that is faid in the Koran, tho' they dare not openly express their Sentiments So on the contrary, the most learned Turk, Saadi Effends (to whom alone I am indebted for my Turkish learning) being one day asked by me, how he, bring a great Mathematician and vers'd in the Democratean Philofophy, could believe, that Mabomet broke the Star of the Moon, and caught half of it falling from beaven, in his speece. He replied, " that indeed in the course of nature it could not " be done, may was contrary to it, " but as this miracle is in the Koran

" affirmed to be wrought; he refign'd 
" his reason and embrac'd the Mira" cle. For, added he, God can do

" whatever he pleases."

(8) Seventy] From the years of his life, we gather the years of Orchan's reign. For it he succeeded his father Osbman in the thirty-fifth year of his age, and died in his seventieth, it is evident he must have reign'd thirtyfive years. Hence we think those mistaken who ascribe to him but twenty two years reign Historians also differ in the manner of his death: Some fay he was kill'd with an arrow at the fiege of Prusa, and others, that he fell in a battle with the Tartars. But without infifting that the Turkish Historians are to be most credited in these domestick affairs, it is agreed by all, that Pruja was taken in the first year of Oriban's reign, and confequently it would be ridiculous, to feek his death where he begun his reign. No Hiftorian mentions his war with the Scythians or Tartars, and therefore I think this to have no better foundation than the other opinion

(9) Jami I his is a Turkish Temple, priviledg'd for the Friday's devotions, called Jumanamazi, which it is not lawful to perform in the leffer Meschals or Moschs. It a Jami is built by the Sultan, it is call'd, Sela-

tyn or Royal

(10) Medrefe] These are Academies or greater Schools, and generally, if not in the Court of the Jami, they are always very near it. The lesser Schools where Children are instructed in the first rudiments of learning are commonly called Mekteb. The Persons set over these Academies are call'd Muderis, that is, School-

Mary St.

or Hospitals (11). That he had a red Face, blue Eyes, yellowish Hair, and was of a middle Stature tho' corpulent, appears from his Picture, which was copied by Leunichelebi \* (the Sukan's Painter) from an antient Original.

## ANNOTATIONS

Masters, who have an annual Salary, proportionable to the revenue of the Jami to which they belong. Hence it is, that some have three hundred, whilst others have but seventy Aspers a day. Out of these Schools are taken the Judges of the principal Crities and Towns call'd Molà, (for those of the lesser Towns are call'd Cady, who are of a different order; neither can they rise to higher degrees, like secular and parochial Priests) From the Molà, the next step is to the Cadilasker or Judges of the Armies, of whom there are only two, one for Europe, who is the chief, and the other for Asia.

Lastly, the highest ecclesiastical dignity is that of Mupbis, which signifies, the Interpreter of the Law. These several Turkish Orders may be compared to the Christian. The Mupbis to the Pope, the Cadiaister to a Patriarch, the Molà to an Archbishop or Metropolitan, the Cady to a Bishop, (except, as I said, the Cady cannot rise to a higher order) and the Imam to a Priest The Danishmend may be compared to our Deasons.

(11) Imare! This is a House near the Jami, for the relief and reception of the Poor and Travellers, like an

Inn.

During ORCHAN's Reign from 1326, to 1360, their reigned in Europe,

At Constantinople. SANDRON. PALEOLOGUS the Younger, 1325-54.

JOHANNES PALEOLOGUS, 1354-84

In the West. CHARLES IV. Son to John King of Bohemia, 1346-56.

In England. EDWARD III. 1326-77.

In France. { PHILIP de Valois, 1327-50. JOHN de Valois, 1350-64.

The End of the Reign of ORCHAN.

W W

•

.



Gon of Orchan thered Emperor of of Turker



The REIGN of

# MURAD or AMURATH I. Son of ORCHAN,

AND

Third EMPEROR of the TURKS.

## BOOK I. CHAP. IV.

I. Murad takes Ancyra. II. Then Adrianople and Philippolis. III. Founds a Jami. IV. Inflitates the military Order of Janizaries. V. Conquers Servia. VI. Marries his Son Bajazet, and receives by surrender the Dominions of Hamid. VII. Takes Bolina by his prayers. VIII. Invades Macedonia and Albania. IX. The Victory at Cossovia, the occasion of his death. X. Yacub \*Chelebi is strangled, and Lazarus Duke of Servia beheaded XI. Murad's Burial and Encomium.

**URAD** (1), the first of that Name, in the forty-first H 761. year of his Age, not only inherited his Father's Empire A C 1360. but his Virtues also. In the very beginning of his Reign days he assumes, in order to show his religious disposition, the name

## ANNOTATIONS.

(1) Murad] We should be in- with Amurius, the Lydian General, elin'd to believe him to be the same and Friend of Cantaswanius, so cele-

of Chedevendiker (2), which in the Perfice language fignifics, God's Labourer, and gives an instance of his Bravery by subduing in the first year of his Reign, the strong City of Ancyra, with several Castles in the fame Parts.

He takes also

II. When he had thus establish'd his Empire in Asia, he turn'd his Advicantle and Philippe. thoughts to his European affairs. And therefore the fame year orders his Prime Vizir, Etabeki Shabyn Lala (3), a General both valiant and

## Annotations.

brated by Gregoras, if the computation of years would allow it. But fince he fays America died of a wound receiv'd by an Arrow in the year of Christ 1348, and of the Hegira 749, at the flege of a Castle built by the Christians for the defence of Smyrna, and as Murad was not known in Europe till eleven years after; namely, in 760, and the next year afcended the throne, on the death of his father Orchan; we conjecture that Gregoras meant some other Persian Prince in Asia of the same name with Sultan Murad, whose dominions (because they are not mention'd in the Turks/b Annals) either fell to Another for want of Heirs, or were fwallow'd up, by fome powerful neighbouring Prince. However, the mose Cantacuzenu's folly is to be blam'd, for making use of an Infidel, not only to curb his Enemies, but to lay waste the Christian Territories. and thereby showing a way to the Mahometans into Europe; the more praife-worthy were the vurtues of Amurius, and the uncommon genesofity of the Furks towards those they call Gaur or Infidels. Certainly Amurius's inviolable Friendship for Cansacuzenus, which was the same in adthan those bestowed by the Antients on the Friendship of Pylades and Orefles. Gregoras, so frequently mention'd by us with tonour, gives us fin-gular inftances of this friendfhip in his thirteenth Book; which, as his Works are not in every one's hands, it will not be improper to infert here. The Emperor Campacumenus being ingag'd in the Triballic War. Amurius, when he faw he was not

attended with the defir'd fuccess, croffed the Hellespont in the depth of Winter, and came to the Emperor's Affiftance with a powerful Army. But being detain'd by the badness of the Weather, and the Ways near Dydomothycon, where the timpress Irene was left with a few Attendants, he pitched his Tents in the Fields; and would not enter the City, or embrace the opportunities given him by the Empress; neither would he, tho' defir'd, come into her prefence; laying, it was no less absurd to visit his Friend's Wife in his abience, than unbecoming and repugnant to Friendship, to enjoy the pleasures of life, whilst his Friend in a foreign Country was struggling with his adverse fortune

(2) Chodavendikar] This is a Persian word, and fignifies God's Workman, or addicted to divine things Why Sultan Murad affum'd this Appellation, is uncertain, tho' he undoubtedly took this as well as feveral Other Titles.

(3) Lala] This word fignifies crymologically, Tutor or Foster-father, who is appointed to be Guardian and Instructor to the young Princes. Thu name was first given to the Prime Vizir of Murad I. From that time the Turkib Emperors both in speaking and writing to them, have been wont to give the appella-tion of Lala as well to the Prime, as to all other Vizirs, as Lalam Ali Pasoa, and M: Lala Al: Pasoa. Befides these, the Agasi or General of the Janizaries, and the Bostansi Basha or the Chief of the Gardiners or Keepers of the Royal Palaces, have the same Title, tho' the last is of a



# Book I. 3. Murad or Amurath I.

wife, with some light-armed Troops to cross the Straits of Callipolis and take Adrianople, whilst he himself follows with a more powerful Army. The Vizir at the first assault takes Adrianople before the Sultan's Atrival; at the news of which, Murad, thinking his presence would be unnecessary, returns with a few forces to Prusa. But least a delay should be detrimental to his affairs, he appoints Haji Ornusheg to be Beglerbeg (4) of Rumels (5), or his European Conquests, after he had order'd the Prime Vizir to lead his most victorious Army into the inmost Parts of Thrace. This was done with such speed, that not only Felibe but Estimagena and other neighbouring Places were taken from the Greeks, and added to the Othmanic Empire.

III. The next year Murad gave a fingular instance of his Piety. H 762
Hitherto the Sultan had never been used to say the common Prayers, A C. 1361.
call'd Namaz (6), with the rest of the People. Menla Fenari the He erects a
Musti

#### ANNOTATIONS.

much inferior degree. This name is given to the first, because it is his Business to guard the Sons of the Sultans from being kill'd by Fathers or Brothers, and to the other, because he has the care of the imperial Palace, especially in the Sultan's absence, which Office among the Greeks was call'd, Curopalatis.

(4) Beglerbeg] This word signifies

(4) Beglerbeg] This word fignifies Prince of Princes, (as Shabin-shab, Emperor of Emperors) which title, tho' all the Vizirs who have three Horse-Tails, do enjoy, yet three are more especially honoured with it; namely, Rumels Beglerbegs, who resides at Sophia, Anadols Beglerbegs, who keeps his residence at Kulahia, and Sham Beglerbegs, who resides at Damascus; which City in Arabic, is Demesso, tho' vulgarly call'd Sham, and Shams Sherif, Damascus the Holy.

(5) Rumeli] By this name is underflood among the Turks, both Greece and Europe, and also all the European Provinces under the Turksh dominion. Hence Rumels Beglerbegs, that is, Prince of the Princes of Greece, or the European Regions. [See Note (6) p. 20.]

Note (6) p. 20.]
(6) Namaz These are the common and daily prayers, which the Turks by their law, are commanded to repeat five times in the space of

twenty-fout hours, and are thus diflinguished Sabab Namazi, or Morning-Prayers . Oile Namazi, or Noon-Prayers, Ikindi Namazi, or After-noon-Prayers, Achipam Namazi, or Revening Prayers; Tatzi Namazi, or Night-Prayers. Of thefe, Three are fix'd, namely, the Morning, Evening, and Night Prayers: and two are moveable, namely, the Oile and Ikind, according to the length or shortness of the day. For instance, at the Equinox, the Morning-Prayers are faid before the twelfth hour of the night; that is, the hour before Sun-riling, [or between five and fix of the clock in the morning,] Noon-Prayers at the fixth hour of the day, [or our twelve of the clock,] Afternoon-Prayers at the ninth hour, [or three of the clock,] Evening-Prayers at the twelfth hour, [or fix of the clock,] Night-Prayers at the first hour and half of the night, [or half an hour past seven.] Morever, in appointing the time of these Prayers, they are so superstitious, that after the prescrib'd hour they deem them vain and fruitless, and to be repeated here-after in Araf (or Purgatory.) Thus, to lay Morning-Prayers after-Sun-rifing. Noon-prayers at the ninth hour, Ikindi at the twelfth, Evening-Prayers in the night, and Tatzi at

Mufti (7), who at that time discharg'd among the Turks the office of Judge,

## Annotations.

day-break, they neither think lawful nor acceptable to God. In the Field, before a Battle, they are obliged to perform their Namez; but after the battle is begun, or if it continues beyond the hour, the Namaz may be omitted without fin, because they are of opinion that a more acceptable worthip cannot possibly be paid to God, than to fight strenuously against the Christians. [Friday or the Turkis Sunday, is distinguished from other days, only by their going on that day fix times to their Nauschs, the additional Prayers being faid between Sun-ning and noon, and are call'd Salab Namazi ]

(7) Mufti] He is also call'd by the compounded name of, Mufts-zeman, or, Shichulislam, or Sahihi fetva, the Maker of Laws, the Giver of Judgments, the Prelate of Orthodoxy. He is the Chief of the Ecclesiastical Order, and of the greatest Authority in the Othman Empire; for even the Sultan himfelf, if he will preferve any appearance of religion, cannot without first hearing his opinion, put any person to death, or so much as inflict any corporal punishment: In all actions, and especially criminal ones, his opinion is required, by giving him a writing, wherein the state of the Case under feigned names, is given in the following manner; Zaid, if it be prov'd by good " evidences that Titus has acted con-" trary to the Sultan's commands, " and has not obeyed, as he ought, " nor fubmitted to his Mandates, ss Is he to be punished or no 200 When he has read these Words, the Musti, according to the state of the Case, subscribes, Olier, (he shall) or Olmaz, (he shall not). But if the Musti is to appoint the punishment, the Writing given him is to this cffect: " If a man knew, his horfe " had loft his shoes, and had time " and opportunity to have new ones " fet on, yet without any compaf-" fion for his beaft, drove him thro"

" rough and flony ways till the evess ning, What punishment shall be inflicted on so merciles a Ma-" fter ?" To which the Mufts would fubscribe, He ought to be bastinaded: because that is the punishment appointed in their Law for fuch an of-fence, (for the Turks believe, that in the last Judgment, God will judge Man not only with Man, but also with Beafts, and Beafts with Beafts Sentence being given, all Animals indeed are instantly to dye again, and return to dust, but that God will eternally punish Infidels, and reward Musulmans, if they have been confpicuous for Good Works, with everlasting has piness, or if they have polluted themselves with fin, punish them for a time according to their dements in And or Purgatory, after which he will admit them into a state of Blifs.) After the fim manner, in every Caufe, Civil or Ecclefiaitical, and especially in the making War or Peace, the Tooks are bound by their law to confult the Michie [Such outward Honour is paid the Mufts, that the Grand S . . himfelf rifes up to him, and idvances feven steps towards him, when the Mufti comes into his prefence, who alone has the honour of kiffing the Sultan's left shoulder, whilst the Prime Vizir with a profounder reverence, kisses only the hem of his garment, and is met with but three freps. Recaut fays, the Titles given by the Grand Signer to the Mufit, are as follows. "To the Esad, who are the Wiseft of the Wise, instructet ed in all Knowledge, the most " Excellent of Excellent, abstaining " from things unlawful, the Spring of Virtue and true Science, Heir of the Prophetic and Apostolic " Doctrines; Resolver of the Proes blems of Faith, Revealer of the " Orthodox Articles, Key of the 66 Treasures of Truth, the Light " to doubtful Allegories, ftrength-" ened with the Grace of the fu-44 preme

#### Book I. 2. Murad or Amurath I.

Judge, not enduring this custom, took occasion when Murad once came before him to give in his evidence, to reject him as a Witness unworthy of Credit. The Sultan wondering at this strange Proceeding, and asking the reason, was answer'd by the Musto, that indeed he accounted his Teflumony true and unexceptionable as imperial, but of no force in judgment, as coming from a Man who never us'd to be present at the common Prayers with the rest of the Mujulmans (8). Whereupon Murad grieving for what was past, orders as an Attonement for his fault a spacious Jame to be built at Adreanople, over against the royal Palace, which at this day retains the name of Muradie (9).

IV. The year 763 is memorable for the institution of the military order of the Januaries. Ornus, the Beglerbeg, of Rumeli, had now A C 1364 taken Ipsala and Malgara, laid waste the neighbouring Territories Infimusion of with fire and fword, and from thence brought away a numberless rus multitude of Captives. Kara Halil Pasha (10), the Prime Vizir takes occation

## Annotations.

e preme Affister and Legislator of " Mankind May the most High "God perpetuate thy Virtues" Whatever inward reverence was once paid the Mufii, it is now become very little more than form. If he interprets the law, or gives fentence con-trary to the Sultan's pleafure he is immediately displac'd, and a more pliant Person put in his room. The Musti if convicted of Treason, and the like crimes, is put into a Mortar remaining for that purpose, in the prison of the Seven Towers at Confiantinople, and pounded to death.]

(8) Musulmans This word is a corruption of Musliman, Misliman, or Musluman, as is also Musurman, from whence Bujurman It fignifies one of pure and untainted faith, or as we thould fay, Orthodox. From the word Iman came all the observers of the Mahometan Worship, who follow the rites and ceremonies appointed by those great Turkish Saints, Imain Azèm, and Imam Shafi. They who receive any new rites, or fuch as are different from thefe, are call'd Mezbibi, Ritualists, or Hereticks, Kafir, and Infidels as the Perfiant, and Rafazi, which name fignifies fomething worse than Infidel. Hence the Mululman Turks say, that the divine clemency may be extended to other

Infidels, namely, Christians and Jews, but by no means to the Rafazi, and that their fin is feventy times more hemous in the fight of God than that of the others.

(9) Muradie] That is, Min ad's Temple, as Sulamanie, Soliman's Temple, Mubamediè, Mubammed's Temple, &c. It is the Prerogative of the Emperor alone to call any royal fami by his own name, the Prime Vizir himself, though he should by the state of the sta build ever to large a Jami, not being allowed to call it by his name as Mustafie, Mustapha's Temple. However, there are fome which retain to this day, the name of their Founders, as, Daud Pasha Jamisi, and Ali Patha famili. But in all these the word Jamisi ought to be added, which is commonly omitted in the Selatyn, or royal ones. Nor is it lawful for the Emperors to give their names to any other Buildings than those of the Hence it is that no Town, as far as I can remember, retains the name of its Founder, except That built by Othman, the first Emperor of the Turks, which is still call'd Othmanjik, and will be farther mention'd hereafter.

(10) Kara Halil Pafba] Halil is the proper name of this Pasha. Kaa, fignifies a black man. For gecocasion from hence to say merrily, "tho' it is a common Saying a"mong us, that all Spoils belong to the Emperor, yet let the number
"of Captives be ever so great, they are all ingrossed by private persons,
and none sall to the Emperor's share. Wherefore I should think it
both just and prostable that some one of the Emperor's saithful A"gavat (11), should be appointed at the Straits of Callipolis to seize
for his use every sisth Captive, of whom the more beautiful and robust may serve at Court, and in the Army." What the Vizir said
in jest, is seriously consider'd by the Emperor, who orders the Vizir
to puthis advice in execution. Accordingly an Edict being publish'd (12),
a great number of Captives are brought together, instructed in the
Art of War, and a brave Army form'd, which wayted only a name.
At that time, Haji Bektash (13), a certain religious Turk was samous

#### Annolations.

nerally those whose faces are blacker than ordinary, are wont to add this word to their name, as Kan. Mobammed, Kan'i Hajen, Kin'i Musicapia Passa, Sec This Hatil seems to be the fame, that in the Christian Writers is called Chairaddin and Caratinus, for there was no other of this name samous among the Tink, except Soliman's celebrated Admiral. whom the Christians usually call Hailadenus Barbarossis

(11) Agavat] vulgarly Agalas, is the plural derived from the fingular Aga, which properly fignifies Lord or Master, as any perion is wont to be call'd out of respect. But this word is never used with regard to God, who when he is addressed to by the Title of Lord, is call'd, Rebb, a name never given to man The word Aga, more especially fignifies the officers of the Court, or Port, and also some of the Army, as the Januzar Agasi, or General of the Janizaries, Kyslar Agasi, or Superintendent of the Women, who is always a black Eunuch, Spabilar Agafi, General of the Spabi, Sulabrad Agasi, of the Infantry

(12) published] Sultan Murad's law was, that every fifth Captive should be taken to serve in the Army. This custom in time being disu'd, it was ordain'd that for every slave, brought into the City to be sold, a Tax of sive Leannes should be collected, which tax from

the former number of five, is fill call'd Izpendz, that is, a ' if five, (tho' fome Turks now write it. I pendz, for iz in the Persian language, figurities out of, and fendz, five. Atterwards when the Sol hery was to be increas'd, a new law wis devis'd, whereby every tenth Son of the Christians was to be intoll'd among the Janizaries. This liw held to the time of Murad IV when God taking pity on the wretched flate of the Christians, it was entirely abolish'd The Moldavians and Halachians were never subject to this decimation.

(13) Hap Bektaff | The first Founder of an order of Derviles, or Monks, among the Turk, call'd from him, Bektafh: His Tomb is held in great veneration, at a Village on the Furopean fide of the Bolphorus, call'd Beshikiash, not far from Galata. The Monks of this order, the' they may marry, and dwell in Cities and Towns; are bound by their law to visit remote lands, and to falute every one they meet with Gazel (or Love-Songs, applied by way of Allegory to the divine love) and Esma (that is, with the invocation of the names of God, which with them, are reckon'd one hundred) and humbly to with him all manner of prosperity, which they are wont to do by the word Esvallab, a folemn exclamation us'd by Wrestlers, by which the conquer'd yields the palm to the conqueror, in order to show that they acknowledge

EVERY

# Book I. 3. Murad or Amurath I.

for his Miracles and Prophecies (14). (He was Founder of that order of Dervises (15), which at this day are call'd Bektashi) To this man

## ANNOTATIONS,

every one to be better and more excellent than themselves. [D' Herbelot says, the Musulmans reckon ninetynine names of God, which with Allab make a hundred, and therefore their Trabishs or Beads consist usually of a hundred; on each of which they invoke one of the names of God, and they have an antient Tradition assume them, that the Person who frequently invokes these names, shall find the Gate of Paradise open, for which reason some are continually everyther great the Badel.

telling over their Beads ] (14) Prophecies] The Tirks entertain a very particular opinion of Miracles and Foreknowledge of future I venus The first, they think, is bestowed on Prophets alone, without any preceding Merit, but the last may be attained by any one, by virtue of Good Works. Therefore when they affert, that Mahomet was the Achir Pergamber, or last of the Prophets, they do not believe it possible for any man after him, to work a miracle But the fore-knowledge of future events may, in their opinion, be acquired by any Mu/ulman in the constant practice of virtue, falling, and humiliation; and those who have arrived to this degree of virtue, are call'd Veli, and in the plural, Eulia, bliffed, boly, friends of God, or Visuliab, bleffed of God. They believe these men may be in two or more places at once, and tho' in their body they are at Constantsnople, yet in their mind they may perceive whatever is doing at Cairo. or any where elfe; fo that they have no occasion for the physical motion of the Body, but enjoy, even in this life, the divine beatifick vision. These are commonly call'd, Elishmyblerden, that is, among the Perfeit, or the Attainers to the fulness of the divine favour. Isaad Efendi, a Man of great learning, continued for fome time in this auftere course, till at length he was reduc'd to fuch

a weak state, that throwing aside his Superstition, he was forced to apply to a Physician for the recovery of his health. He was delivered from the Jaws of Death by the skill and diligence of Sycamus the most celebrated Physician of his age, at Constantinople

(15) Dervifes] Dervife is the common name of the Turkish Monks, tho' of various orders and inflirations. The most noted among them are the Bektashi, the Mevelevi, the Kadriand Seyab Of the Bektafbi, we have spoken in a foregoing note The Mevelevi, so call'd from Mevelana their Founder, are us'd to turn round for two or three hours together with fuch fwiftness that you cannot see their faces. They are great Lovers of Mulick, both vocal and instrumental For the last, they make use of a Pipe made of an Indian reed called Net, the sweetest of all musical In-In their Monasteries struments. they profess great humility and poverty, and if visited, they make no diffunction of persons, but pay the same respect to men of all ranks, treating them alike. They first bring them Coffee to drink, and if the ways have been dirty, they also wash the feet and sandals of their Gueft. When he goes away they devoutly accompany him, adding to almost every word or sentence, E:vallab, and with their tongues expreis the unfergred humility of their profession. The Kadre with a peculiar Superstition emaciate their Bodies. For going quite naked, except their uighs, they join hands and dance for fix hours, nay sometimes a whole day, repeating with great vehemence, Hu, Hu, Hu, (one of the names of God) till at last like Madmen, they fall on the ground, foaming at the mouth, and running down with Sweat. Indeed the prime Vizir Kupruls Achmed Pasha thinking this Sect superflittous, and unbecoming the Mabothe Sultan fends his new Army, desiring him to give them a Banner (16), pray to God for their happy success, and appoint them a Name. The Sbicb (17), when they were come to him, puts the Sleeve (18) of his Gown upon one of their Heads, and says, let them be call'd Janizaries (19), let their countenance be ever bright, their hand

## ANNOTATION &.

metan Religion, order'd them to be suppress'd. But after his death the Sect reviv'd, and is at prefent more numerous than ever, especially at Constantinople The Seyab are Wanderers, and the' they have their Monasteries, yet when once they depart from them they feldom return, but spend their whole life in travelling about. For their Superiors or Prelates impose upon them, when they are fent out, fuch a quantity of money or provifion, forbidding them to come back till they have procur'd it, and fent it to the Monastery. Wherefore a Seyab when he comes into a Town, cries with a loud voice, standing in the Market-place, or the Hall of the Jams, Ya Allah Senden best bin altun isterim, O God, give me I pray five thousand Crowns, or a thousand measures of Rice, &c. And when he has received the Alms of the People, he removes to another Town, and fo till he has collected the Sum impos'd upon him, he is forc'd to live in diffant parts. Many Indian Monks are of this order, and wander over the whole Mahometan World, entertaining the People wherever they come with agreeable relations of all the curiofities they have feen or heard of in their Travels, that they may both instruct them in foreign matters, and excite them to be the more liberal. What a grievance these Indian Wanderers for this reason are to the Othman Empire, the Reader may perceive by what happen'd in my time at Constantinople, in the reign of Soliman II. There comes at that time, a certain Indian with the character rather of a Messenger than Ambassador, and being admitted to the prime Vizir Kupruli Mustapha, delivers him letters from the Great Mogul, or (as the Turks call him) Padybab of India. Then he tells

him by word of mouth, that his mafter hearing the Othman Empire was in a declining condition, and that the Enemies of the Mahometan law daily grew stronger, had order'd him out of zeal for his Religion, to acquaint the Vizir in his name, that he was ready to affift him with either money or forces as there should be occasion. To this, the Vizir is reported to anfwer, that he thank'd the Great Emperor of India for his friendship to the Othmanide, and should endeavour to make a return for his Good will. But that at present the Othman I'mpire, having reviv'd the Glory of her Arms by the conquest of Alba Graca, could be honour'd with no greater favour from his Indian Majeffy, than his commanding his Boggars (meaning the religious Mendicants I have been speaking of ) not to enter the borders of the Olbman Dominions.

(16) Banner] The Januarus hear in their Banners a two edg'd Sword, bent like a ray of lightning, opposite to a crefeent on their heads they wear a hube\*, or white covering, in form of a fleeve. In other respects, they are drefs'd like the rest of the Infantry

(17) Sbub] or Prelate, like the Archimanhita in the Greek Monatteries, or the Abbot in Abbies. For, with the Turks, not only the Superiors of the great and royal Jana, but also the Heads of the Tekk of the Dermses, are call'd Sbuch Hence even the Mussi, who is instead of a Patriarch, is wont to be call'd, Sbuch-ulissam, i. e. Prelate of the Sav'd, and High Priess

(18) Sleeve] The Hats of the Jamezarus retain the same form to this day.

(19) Janizaries] or Tengicherie, the name of the Sultan's ordinary Mi-

litia,

hand victorious, their fword keen, let their spear always hang over the Heads of their Enemy, and wherever they go, may they return, with a white face (20). Hence it is, these Soldiers have ever since retain'd that Name and Covering for the Head,

V. This advice was answered by the Event. For by their means in H 766 the year of the Hegira 766, not only Batha in Afia, and in Europe, A C 1365 Zagara and Gumurjina are reduc'd to his Empire, but also the fame quired of the Othman Arms is render'd so great, that the next year Andronicus Palæologus the Grecian Emperor, defir'd Murad's aid against the Prince of Bulgaria. Murad confenting to his request, sends an Army under Lala Shahyn into Europe, who unexpectedly attacking the Enemy in a place call'd Zermen, easily puts them to flight. The same year in the street call'd Capluje at Pruja, he orders to be built at the royal Expense, a large Jami or Temple, a Medrese or College, with an Imaret or Hospital.

VI. Murad having hitherto given very notable proofs of his warlike Murad marvirtues, now show'd he was no less vers'd in the arts of peace. Certain Request, and petty Princes of Aha had often infested the Othman state, and obstruct-acquires Hamid's Domi ed the course of its victories. In order to divide these Princes, and nonwhen divided, gain them to his interest, and so open a way hereaster to greater Undertakings, Murad in the year 783, marries his Son H 783 Bajazet to a Daughter of Germian Ogli (21), with whom he receives A C 1381 Kutabia, Egrigoz and Taushanlyk With the same prudence, he so manag'd that Hamid Ogli (22) offer'd of his own accord (as several

## ANNOTATIONS.

litia, compounded of Engi, new, and Cherit, Soldier Their usual number is forty thousand, and they have precedence of all the other Soldiery in honour and dignity To Each of the Novices of this order, are allow'd three aspers a day, two loaves, 200 drams of mutton, 100 of rice, thirty of butter. These however are not given to the Novice himfelf, but are all at once delivered out of the itorehouse of each Oda or Chamber of which there are one hundred and fixty two at Constantinople, built in a flately manner by the Sultans, where the Janizaries live as in a College] to the chief Cook who dreffes them, and at dinner time fets them before tuch as are prefent. In vain do the ablent expect any thing after the time is elaps'd, according to Soliman's rule, Let those who keep their Oda be fed.

But of these things more largely hereafter.

(20) White face] The Terms white or black face, are common Terms of Praise, or Dispraise among the Turks. A Mafter commending his Servant, fays, Aferin Yuzun ac olfun, well done, may sby face be white or fbining, and blaming him, fays, Yuzun carà olfun, may thy face be black. But neither of these expressions is to be us'd by an Inferior to his Superior for example, if a Soldier has a mind to praise his Captain, he must only cry, Aferin, well done, or Esvallab.

(21) German Ogli] Prince of Phrygia major, one of the Persian Governours who revolted from his Sovereign at the time of Jenbizchan's Expedition.

(22) Hamid Ogli] He was also one of the Persian Governours who in the

others had done) to hold as Fees of the Othman Empire, the following Cities, Elvadz, Enifbebir, Arfberib, Karagais and Seidifbebri.

Prayera

VII. The affairs of Aha being thus settled, the next year, 784, A C 1382 Murad affembles a great Army, and passes into Europe by the Straits

Murad asses of Callipolis, where he besseges the Castle of Bolina fortified by Nature and Art; which not succeeding to his Wish by reason of the difficulty of the place and bravery of the Garrison, he is faid most humbly to implore the affiftance of Heaven to take fo strong a Castle. The same night, great part of the Wall is reported to fall down, and the Befiegers to enter thro' the Breach and pur all the Garrison to the Sword. It is added that a great number of red Hats was found in the Magazine, which Murad distributed to his Soldiers, and caus'd others of the fame colour to be made for his whole Army (23).

VIII. This year by the conduct of Lala shabyn, Iskenderic, Darme, Albania inva- and the strong Town of Cavalla with almost all Arnaud, is subjected ded. H. 788. to the Othman Empire. Moreover in the year 788, the Towns of A C. 1386. Zichne, Carapheria, and Monastyr are taken. In a word,

A C 1389 The Battle of Coffeea, the occasion of Murads Death

IX. The Othman Power grew to that height under this Emperor, that its increase could not but be look'd upon with a jealous eye by its Neighbours. Wherefore in the year of the Hegira 701, a League, (of which Lazarus Prince of Servia was Head) is entered into by the Walachians, Hungarians, Dalmatians, Triballians, with those of Albania that were not yet subdued, and with united forces, it is resolved to cut down this aspiring Tree before it takes too deep a root. Murad being

#### ANNOTATIONS.

ruins of that Monarchy, posses'd himself of part of Asia minor, and gave his name to the Province, which at this day in call'd Hamida in the Maps. But this does not feem to be the antient name of that Province, but to be given by the Turks after they were poffess'd of it. For it is customary with the Tarks, to call the Possessions after the name of the Possessor. Thus Servia is call'd Lafvilaseri, from Lazarus then Prince of Servia. (and not from Uladifians, whom Meniuskius will have to be Las) Thus Moldovia is call'd Bogdan, from a Prince of that Name who first made it Tributary to the Tarks. In like manner Hamid comes from Hamid Ogli.

(23) Red Hats Iskuf Jeems to have been formerly a military covering for

the Head, but is difus'd at prefent by the Turks For they make use now neither of Helmet or Breastplate, or other Armor, in a belief that thos a Man were made of Adamant he could not evade or escape the law of Fate. Every one, in their opinion, bears on his forehead in characters not legible indeed by Man, but infcrib'd by the finger of God, the appointed time of his death. Hence their common Sayings, Baflide yazılmysb olan Gelmek Vadzibdur, what is written on the forehead must necessarily come to pass. Acajak can damarda durmaz, the blood that II to flow out, remains not in the artery (that is, what God has preordain'd must be done in its time) Tacdır tedbiri bozar, Providence overrules all buman purposes.

# Book I. 3. Murad or Amurath I.

prepared for this storm leads forth his Army, and on the fourth day of Ranazan meets the Enemies in a place call'd Coffova (24). Here a fierce and long doubtful battle is fought; but at last the Christians, tho' they bravely sustain'd the charge of the Othman Soldiers, are put to flight, Lazarus himself is taken, his Nobles are slain, and the Runaways long purfu'd by the light Horfe. The Sultan as he was walking, after the Victory, over the Field of battle and viewing the Dead, turns to the Vizir, and fays, " It is strange that among the Slain of the Ene-" my I do not see a single old Man, but all beardless Youths" To this the Vivir antwers, " Hence came their misfortune, their being deflitute of the Advice of the Aged was the very cause of their o-" ve throw, for to oppose the invincible Sword of the Othmans sayours and the prudence of the Old, but the rashness of the Young." chan continuing the Discourse, is reported to say, " It is still drange how I shou'd be deceiv'd by a vision last night in for methought I faw my felf flam by the hand of an th las By chance a Christian Soldier that conceal'd himself among the dead, perceiving it was the Sultan that was talking, with thoughts of revenging his Country fuddenly starts up and plunges a dagger in the Emperor's Belly (25). The Triballian is instantly cut in pieces, and the Sultan dying within two hours, his Body is carried by the Vizir and Bashas to the royal Tent, and embalm'd (26). After which, the Great Men

## ANNOTATIONS.

(24, Cossova) is a Plain in Servia, where Sultan Murad was stabb'd by the hand of a Triballian.

(25) Most Christian Writers fay, this man was a Servant of Lazarus Prince of Servia, and call him Milosh Cabilovitz. In Chahocondylas, he is a Triballian Now from the Triballians fprung those Nations which held Bulgaria and Servia. It has more the all of Romance than History, what is related by that difgrace to all Hi-Storians, Orbinus Raguzaus, that Murad was run thro' the Body in his own Tent by Lazarus Despot of Serthat the Turks should be so impru dent as to admit one who the day before was a capital Enemy, and as he says, on horseback, to the Tent of their Prince, or that the Chamberlains and other numberless Officers, who fo religiously guard the Emperor's Person, should be so negligent as to make no relistance, if he intended any violence, nor give him any notice of his coming. To this may be added, that Orbinus as so o penly partial in savour of his Nation, that in honour of it he frequently and without scruple transgresses the bounds of Truth; particularly his afferting the Scytbians, Italians, Sweeds, Germans, Grecians, Macedonians, and Alexander the Great himself, to be all derived from his Sclavomans, evidently discovers the Vanity of the Man, and demonstrates that our Turkish account of Murad's death, is much more probable than His.

(26) Embalm'd] The Mabonetan Law strictly forbids every Person, besides the Emperor, to keep a dead Body in his House till the second day, or to remove them beyond the space of three Italian miles. So, should the prime Vizir die in a Journey, he is to be buried in the same place where he falls, or the next Town if within distance. But the Corpse of the Emperor, should he even die upon the utmost bounds of India, is by his Successor to be embalm'd, and

٠,

Men affemble about the choice of a new Emperor, and Ildirim Bajazet, Murad's eldest Son, is unanimously declar'd Sultan.

Yacub Chelebi\*

X. Yacub Chelebi\* (27) the younger Brother not being pleas'd with is frangled, and Lazaru this proceeding, privately endeavours to raise a Sedition against Baja-Prince of Ser. set; but the thing being feafonably discover'd, he is by the command of his Brother, and confent of the Chief Men strangled with the Bowstring (28). Lazarus also Prince of Servia being consider'd as the occasion of Murad's death, was by Bajazet's order brought before him and beheaded.

#### Annotation 5.

with the greatest speed to be conveyed to its Sepulchre, in the Jami, built by himfelf, or for want of that, into fome Sepulchre of his Ancestors. This is an indispensable Law amongst them. If a private Person dies in the City, he is first wash'd with warm water after that, his Eyes, Ears, Mouth and Fundament being ftopp'd with Cotton, he is plac'd on a Bier, and on the Shoulders of Men carry'd as quick as possible to the next Jami, in the yard of which he is immediately deposited, Prayers having been first faid in the Hall of the Temple Ask the Turks the reason of this hafte, and they tell you that as foon as the Soul diflodges from the Body, it is removed by Angels to the place deftined for the Sepulchre, and there detain'd by Them forty days in expectation of its body That the Soul therefore may not long wait in vain, the Body is to be convey'd with all possible dispatch. For this reason all mourning is forbid, except to the Mother, who may thrice lament the loss of her Son, and to do more would be thought a great Sin.

27 Chelebr\*] Eugewig, Nobly defeended This was formerly the name of the Sultan's Sons before they came to the Empire, as Yacub Cheleht. Musa Cheleht. But this not feeming lofty enough, was at last chang'd into Effends, from the Greek, 'Auserrige, which at this day is given to the chief of the Turkijh Youth, either with the Addition of their name or without it, 23 Shahzade Effendi, Son of the Emperor Effends, and with

the notation of their Office it is given to Doctors and Judges, as Iltambol Effends, Judge of Constantinople. Mussi Effends, Cadilasker Effends, &c But now almost all Merchants and Ci tizens of Constantinople Subjoin Chelelis to their own names, as Mehemed Chelebi\*, &c This appellation is like wife given to Youths of promiting hopes, whose generous disposition feems to discover the nobleness of the blood from whence they are fprung For the Turks do not measure Nobility from a feries of illustrious Anceftors, as well because all Othmans in their opinion are equilly noble, as because they think Honours are to be conterr'd not on those who are nobly descended, but on Those who are prudent, and by long experience have acquired by the culture of Virtues, a nobleness of mind. The Offspring of the Emperor therefore excepted, no Man has any right to claim a precedency or a distinction on account of his Ancestors Ilrabim Chan ogli, and especially Kupruli ogli are exceptions to this rule, of whose race four Vizirs, illustrious for their heroic Actions, and chiefly their extensive knowledge and uncorrupt justice, have acquir'd a high efteem with the Vulgar. I shall deliver their History at large

in its proper place.
(28) Bow-firing | This Death is effected the most honorable with the Turks, and only indulg'd to the Great. But to have the Head struck off is infamous, and still more so, to be hang'd or impal'd, the ordinary pu-

nishment of Theives.

XI. After this Victory purchas'd thus with the Emperor's blood, Ba-Marad's Ba-jazet distinisties the Army, and sends away his Father's Body to be baried reland Character distinisties to his memory a most elegant Marble Kubbe or Monument (29). The Turks greatly extell this Emperor. They represent him as a miror of justice, a Prince of invincible fortitude of Mind, ever regular in his devotions, and to love no conversation so much as that of the Learned. He is also prais'd for his remarkable abstinence, so that he was never seen cloathed in any thing but Sopb (30). He reigned thirty, and liv'd seventy one years.

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(29) Kubbe] This is a Tower and Monument beautifully built, and plac'd over the Graves of Vizirs, and other Great Men. People of a middle station have two stones always standing upright, one at the head, the other at the feet. One of these stones has the name of the deceas'd elegantly writ, sometimes in prose sometimes in verse, to which is added a prayer of this, or the like Form, at the direction of the Heir, Dam Alla buseala rabment, May God show eternal mercy to bim. If a Man

is buried, upon the top of the stone is a Turkish Turbant, if a Woman, another fort of Ornament is plac'd there: The stone at the feet is the same in both.

(30) Sopb] This is a fine Cloth made of Wool, as thin and light as can be. It is chiefly worn by Ecclefiafticks, to whom their Law forbids the use of Silk, which is permitted only to the Emperor and his Chamberlains. Hence the Person that wears a Garment of Sopb, is call'd Sopbi.

During MURAD's Empire from 1360, to 1390, there reigned in Europe,

At Confiantinople. {Andronicus Paleologus, 1384-87. Emanuel Paleologus, 1387-1417.

In the West. {CHARLES IV. Son to John King of Bobenia, 1346-78. WENCESLAUS, Son to Charles, 1378-99.

In France. SCHARLES the Wife, or V. 1364-80. CHARLES the Well beloved, or VI. 1380-1422.

The End of the Reign of MURAD or AMURATH I.

The



#### The R.RIGN of

# ILDIRIM BAJAZET I. (1) Son of Murad,

AND

Fourth EMPEROR of the TURKS.

#### BOOK L CHAP. V.

I. Bajazet's first Expeditions. II. Battle with the Moldavians. III. Victory of Caraman ogli. IV. His further Progress in Asia and Europe. V. Victory at Nicopolis. VI. Bajazet fortises the Straits of Nicomedia. VII. Is perswaded by his Vixir to desist from Constantinople. VIII. Sends Ambassadors to the Grecian Emperor. IX. And makes Peace on condition of a certain Tribute. X. Builds a Jami at Constantinople. XI. Tamerlane invading Asia. XII. Resules the offer of Constantinople made by Paleologus. XIII. Wages War with Bajazet, on the Grecian Emperor's account. XVI. Overcomes and takes him Prisoner. XV. Bajazet's Character, XVI. and Issue.

H. 792
A C 1390
Bajanet's first
Expeditions

In Turn AD being thus flain, is succeeded in the Empire by his Son Bajanet, who to show that his Father's Virtues were expeditions

not remov'd out of the World but descended to him, the next year

ANNOTATIONS.

(1) [Bajazet is in Turkish spelt Bayezul.]

takes





PAJAZET.1.

Son of Murad, fourth & inferer of i Furks

in the year 1300

### Book I. 4. Ildirim Bajazet I.

takes in Europe, Caratova and Isleib, and in Asia, Aidin, Sarichan, Kars, and Monteshe, and annexes them to his Empire. After this, a dispute arising between him and his Father-in-law, German ogh; he thinks Princes ought to decide their quarrels rather by arms than words, and their fore attacks and vanquishes him, and then dispossessing him of his whole Kingdom, banishes him to Issala. The Prince of Caramania wou'd have shar'd the same sate (who had married Bajazer's Sister) is the Moldavian expedition had not induc'd the politick samperor to turn his thoughts to weightier matters, and put off his design to a more convenient scason.

II. But as he was deterr'd from attempting by his Generals so war-Battle with like a nation, by a defeat the *Moldavians* had two years before, given the *Moldavians* had been so the Basha would give way to the royal Fortune. Wherefore having prepar'd all things necessary for the expedition, he transports his Forces into *Europe*, and making a bridge over the *Danube*, lays waste all *Moldavia*, and meanings at *Razboe* a Village on the banks of the River Stretas. At the same place comes soon after with an Army I lejan(2), Prince of *Moldavia*. A since and doubtful Battle is fought.

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(2 Illefan) Stepbanus Prince of Moldream, the greatest Hero of his ige. He overthrew the renown'd Marth as King of Hungary, and wrefted from him the Transionanian Ass, which at this day himit Mellacia to the West He added by several Victories, Propha and Pedelia to his dominions, and in a pitch'd Bittle with the Permear Cothan, timous for its generous Wines, he defeated their wrole Army with great flingater, and tool litteen thouland Pationers The's he put into yokes, and obhgo them to plough a fract of Ground two miles long, and one broad, and to plant two Groves of Oaks, which for that reason are call'd at this day by the Pous, Bu-, wina, but by the Inhabitints Dumbrava Reflue or Red Greves, because planted and water'd with Polish Blood He reduc'd all the Cities between 1 -2, 1'11 and Moldavia He fought two Battles with Bajazet Ildu in, in the first he was Victor, and in the second he routed Him with a memorable flaughter, which leven vaft piles of Turkish Bodies crected after the Battle, witneffed, by the Confession of Hezarf an himfelt, the faithful Turkish Historian. He subdued Walachia as far as Bucurestia, and made Vintilas Governor of that Province. He held Bafbaraha, now call'd Buik, the City Kill in the mouth of the Dinube, as also Akermin, Ala Gi ca, or the Oxia of the Ancients, and renown'd for being the place of Ozul's banishment, and in thort, he widely extended the Bounds of Moldazta, as shall be shewn more at large, it I live to finish my account of the antient and present Moldavia. in this posture he left his affairs when he was call'd out of the World, atter a reign of forty feven years, and hve months His Son Bogdan made Moldavia tributary to the Turks. Hence the Moldavians call'd formerly Ak Islac or vulgarly Ak vlach, or the white Walachians, are now by the Turks call'd Bogdam. But the Walachians even to our days have retained the name of Cara sflac, or vulgarly, Cara vlach, or the black Wa-

but at length the Moldavians are vanquish'd and dispers'd. Istefan himfelf to fave his life, flies to the City of Nemz, where he had plac'd his Mother with a strong Garrison, and arriving at break of day, commands the gates to be open'd. His Mother hearing of her Son's unexpected arrival, instantly repairs to the Walls, and denies him admittance, faying, "O Son! Since the time of thy birth I never faw thee " return from battle without victory. As thou art therefore unmindful " of thy former bravery, I had rather fee thee perish by the hand of an " Enemy, then be branded with the infamy of being fav'd by a Woman Fly hence then, and return either Conqueror or never " Illefan thung with his Mother's reproaches, departs from the City, more fwiftly than he came. In his way he meets a Trumpet, and bidding him found to Battle, draws together twelve thousand Moldavians, who by flight had escap'd the Enemy's Sword. These he conjures either to vanquish of die, and immediately falling upon the Enemies, dispers'd over the Field and intent upon the Spoil, defeats and puts them to flight. Then with the same fortune at Vasbluy, which is but twenty miles from Yelfiis, he takes the royal Tent, routs the Turkish Soldiers, and compells the Emperor, who before was the Terror of the World, frighted at fo fudden a change, to fly with a few attendants to Advianople

Victory of Caraman ogli.

III. Whilst these things pass'd in Europe, they kindled a much of creater stame in Asia. For Caraman ogh hearing Bajas et's Army we activoy'd by the Moldaniam, and believing he had a fair opportunity of crushing the Othman Power, assembles his forces, and in breach of his treaty with Bajazet, besieges Kutahia, and deshroys with one and sword the Othman dominions in Asia. Bajazet whom adverse fortune could not discourage, was inrag'd at the news. Wherefore rasing with his Usual speed (3) an Army in Europe, he leads them into Asia, and before his Arrival was so much as suspected, meets the Caramanian forces divided into many Parties, attacks and overthrows them in the sirft charge. Caraman ogli, after the deseat of his Army slying with his Sons to the Town of Acjami, is taken by the l'unsuers, brought before the Sultan, and by his command, beheaded By this means all Caramania sell under the power of Bajazet, who to destroy all the

#### Annotations.

(3) Usual speed] The Turkish Historians so extoll this Prince's expedition in assembling his troops, in executing his designs, and in vanquishing his enemies, that when they talk of the natural speed of the Tartars in comparison with his wonderful marches, they call the first, the creeping of a Snail. When he was believed to be engaged in his Asiatic assamples.

he was fuddenly from in a training in the Apatic Princes prover from a whilst in Europe, he appeared in the far with his whole Army belong his coming was heard of the infinite communicate his Counfels to no Man, nor to execute any difficult man by means of any Friends. Whence he is justly and deferredly each did by inc Turks, Ildirim or I to.

S eds of rebellion condemns Caraman's two Sons to perpetual Impriforment at Prusa.

IV Not content with this Victory, Bajanet takes in Europe, Nigeba-Bajanet farh, Silistre and Urushchyk\*, Towns on the Danube, and the next year in Asa and in Alia he compells to acknowledge his Sovereignty, Amalia, Tokad, Europe Niklar, Samlun and Janik, which were subject to Sultan Abmet Burban-Elledin (4) After this, turning his thoughts again to the European affairs, he had no fooner pass'd the Straits of Callipolis with a great Army, but he heard a new war was kindled in Afia. For Kutrum (5) Bujaset Prince of Coftamoni, imagining the Emperor too deeply ingag'd in his European defigns, to be able to return into Aha, had invaded and laid wafte the Turkish Provinces of Asia minor. Bajazet being inform'd of this, for fear he should lose his own, whilst he is feeking the possessions of others, leaves Europe to his Generals, and with the greatest part of his army, immediately comes into Afia. There before he tried the fortune of War, he is told that the flame is extinguith' I by the death of its author, Kutrum Bajazet, who died of a diffemper. His Son Isjindarbig instantly dispatches Ambassadors to meet him, who beg pardon for his Father's offence, and confess the Deceased had afted very rathly in turning his arms against the Othmant, and retarding the course of the Emperor's victories, promising in the Son's name that he would be the Emperor's future Vaffal and Slave and confirm this promise with an oath. The present situation of the Othmanic affairs not admitting of severe Counsels, Isfindarbeg is received into Friendship, and Giritions plac'd in his Towns of Collamont, Tarakliborli and Othmanjik (6) After which he instantly leads back his forces into Europy, and in the fame Campain takes Sclanik or Theff ilonica.

V. The expedition being ended, he returns to Prusa in order to Victor, at refresh his weary Troops. Whilst he is indulging himself, he is re-

#### Annolations.

one of the Republic from the been one of the Republic from Governors who in the time of fingles shook off the Perhan yoke. For it does not appear that there was then any other Empires of Kingdoms in Afia than those of the Gracian and Perhan. His Principality was part of Armenia major.

(5) Kutrum] Perhaps one also of the Perfun Governors before mention'd His Name seems to intimate that he was troubled with some distemper in his feet or joints like the Gout. For Kutrum in the Turkish language, fignifies one maim'd, weaken'd in his Nerves or a Paralytic.

(6) Othmanik] A City, according to Bushequius, in Bithynia beyond Mount Olympus, founded by Othman first Emperor of the Turks, and therefore very famous amongst them Nor is there any other City in the whole Turkss Empire besides this, which retains the name of its Founder, tho many were built by the order of the Sultans. But They give their names to the Jami only, as hath been observed.

recall'd by frequent messages from Europe, that Sigismund King of Hungary, having made a league with other Christian Princes (7), and rais'd an army of a hundred thousand Men, had enter'd the borders of the Turkish Empire, and was now besieging Nicopolis. Whereupon Bajazet believing the least delay dangerous to his affairs, assembles with the utmost speed, his Asiatic and European Forces, and tho' he had not above sixty thousand Men, passes into Europe, where he attacks with such furth the Camp of the Christians that they were defeated at the sirst charge with great slaughter. Sigismund's Partners in the expedition were all taken or slain, only he himself escap'd first to Constantinople (8), and from thence by water into his own Kingdom: After the Victory Bajazet sinds in the Enemy's Camp, many warlike ergines, and a very great treasure, with which he builds both at Adrianople and Prusa, a noble Jami and Madrese, and moreover orders a large Darush-shifa (9) to be erected.

Beganns fortifies the Strains of Missmales turns all his forces against Thrace, where he takes a Castle situated on H 797 the Euxine Sea, about sixty miles from Constantinople, and to deprive the Europeans of the means to pass into Asia, builds a new city, in a place call'd Bogaz Kesen, fortisses it very strongly, and gives it the name of Guzelbisar (10).

He is perfiveded by his incamps with a great Army under the very Walls of Confantifrom Confan-nople without any opposition (11). Preparations being made for an simple.

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(7) Christian Princes] All Christians are nam'd Iffeur, by the Historians and in Letters, by way of compliment, as the Prince of Moldavia, Kydvetul meras silisi milletue Mefibie, um detul Kuberai il tayfetil iffevie, i. e. " The " most excellent of the Princes of 44 the Sect of the Messia, the greatest 66 of the Nations believing in Je-66 fus." Otherwise the opprobrious name of Gaur, Infidel, is bestow'd on all Christians; and Kuafir or Blasphemer; and Kufere, a blasphemous Nation; as likewise in the plural, Kiuffar blafphemous Men, and also Nafrani, Nazarones, as Junans is given to the Greeks, and Ibrani to the Jews or Hebrews.

(8) Constantinople] It is the common tradition of all Christian Writers, but chiefly of Philip Loncer a dilugent Collector of the Turkib affairs.

that, after this shameful defeat, Sigismund retir'd to Constantino, and after various turns in his affaits, got at last into his own Kingdom

(9) Daruft-stufa] The Port of Health, from Dar, a Gate, and Stufa, a Remedy. These are beautiful Hospitals erected near the same, built by the Emperors, who have officers over them, and stipends allowed for the care of the sick out of the revenues of the Jams.

(10) Guzelbisar] or the beautiful Castle. It is now call'd Bogazgiechide, or the passage of the Straits between the Bay of the Propositis, and the Niewan Mountains, now call'd Izmid daglary, from whence Constantinople is supply'd with materials for Building and Shipping.

(11) Without opposition The

fault, his Prime Vizir, diffwades him from the fiege, representing in an elegant Speech, " that the Othman Empire, being now of fo great " an extent that it gives law not only to all Asia, but the best part of Europe, cannot without envy be look'd upon by any Christian Prince. " So many Provinces are added to his dominion that the Othmanidae " need not dread the united forces of the whole World; but it is " to be fear'd that the late conquered Cities, the minds of the Inha-" bitants not being yet fertled, may upon the least occasion shake off " their yoke to the irreparable detriment of the Empire. If to this ' " shall be added the news of the siege of Constantinople, all the Chri-" from Princes will undoubtedly join their forces and declaring war " with the Mululmans, strenuously endeavour to preserve the Greek " Empire, the downfal of which would feem to threaten the inevi-" table destruction of the rest of the States. For they are not so stupid " but they will fee, when once the Scat of the Greek Empire is taken, there will be no opposing the rapid course of the Othmanic " Arms. Wherefore the he did not despair of taking the City, yet it " was his opinion, it shou'd be deferr'd, least by grasping at too " much, there would be danger of losing what had been hitherto acquired with fo great labours. However that some advantage may " be reap'd from the terror which the Inhabitants of Constantinople " are under, Ambassadors are to be sent to the Istambol Tekkuri (12), " to impose on him what terms Bajazet shall please, which instead of " being rejected will, he supposes, be embrac'd as a bleffing from hea-" ven, fince he can scarce conceive any hopes of escaping his pre-" fent danger."

VIII. Bajazet approving this advice, fends Ambassadors into the Ci-Ambassadors ty to the Emperor Paleologus with a letter to this effect: "By the di-Arc tent to the Greek Emperor vine elemency, Our Empire, to which God has set no bounds, hath 101

" reduc'd to its obedience, almost all Asia, with many and large "Countries of Europe, excepting only thy City of Constantinople, for beyond the Walls thou hast nothing left. Hence, since thou thy

#### ANNOTATIONS.

Christians affign the raising of the Siege of Constantinople both to the intreaties of Emanuel Paleologis, and to the approaching expedition of Tamerlane. But as that expedition fell not out till seven years after, and as it is absurd to imagine that the Turkish Emperor would be so easily diverted from his purpose by the intreaties of an Enemy, what we have related from the Turkish Annals seems nearest to the truth.

(12) Istambot Tekkuri] Istambol feems to be corrupted either from the

name of Constantinople it selt, or from the vulgar phrase, dig the works. For the more learned Turks, and the Emperor himself in his Mandates, writes it Constantance. Tekkur, if we may offer our conjecture, is corrupted from two nunerous but they sometimes write, Cassar, Casar. Besides this, the name of Tekkuri is given to other Coristian Governors by the Turki, as Selanik Tekkuri, the Governor of Thessal.

" felf mayest easily conclude that a Crown cannot be worn without a " head, we amicably exhort, and admonish thee, shefore thou true? " the unhappy fortune of War, and art a fad Spectaror of the thaugh-" ter of fo many innocent men, and the inevitable destruction of the " City, of which thy obstinacy and hard heart will be rightly palg'd " the fole cause) to deliver up to us thy Capital on thy own terms. " If thou refuse, we are sure thou wilt, when too late, fruitlesly re-" pent the neglecting our admonitions." Thus much by letter, but he orders his Ambassadors, in case they should find the Greeks averse to the furrender of the City, to foften his demands, and conclude a peace for an Annual Tribute.

A Truce conbute

IX. The Ambassadors entering the City deliver the Letter to Palicola-Annual Tri- gus, who more terrified than he ought, readily complies with Baiazet's demands for the fake of preferving the City and Empire A Truce there fore is made for ten years on these terms. Paleologus is to pay yearly ten thousand Filuri altun (13) by way of tribute The Othne . shall be allowed to build in Constantinople a Jame and Men' ene, and appoint a Cady, whose jurisdiction shall be bounded in this manner: If a Christian at Constantinople has a dispute with a Mul 'ma, it shall be decided by the Constantinopolitan Patitarch, but if a Mahometan with a Mahometan it shall be tried by their own Cady In like manner if contests arise between Christians at Advanople, they shall be ended by the Metropolitan of that City, but if between a Christian and a Musulman, by the Ederne-molass (14).

X. The Truce being made on these conditions, the Otherais first A Jame built at Confiantine erect a Jami call'd at this day Daud Pafka (15), and a Mikkeine (16), whilst the Christians yet reign at Constantinople.

#### ANNOTATIONS

(13) Filuri altun] Is a peculur appellation of the Turkifb Rufps, or the Venetian Golden Crowns, in value three hundred afpers But filurs, de rives its name from the vulgar Greek, phop?

(14) Ederne-molasi The Ecclesial-tical Judge of Adrianople For Ederne is Adrianople, Mola is an ecclesiastical Judge, next to the Islambol effends and the Cadilaskers, the fi, has the power of the article 4, as if you should say, ε μολάς τῆς 'Αδριανοῦ πόλεως, ε ἀγάς τῶν 'Ιανντζάρων. The Mollabs have many places of residence, but she of Constantinople only has the title of Effends in honour of

the City Others have only the ti tle of Molla without any addition, as My : Mollage, the Mol do of Egent, Bunffa Moltage, the M and of Pruja, Hatep Mollati, the Modell of die 1. (15) Daud The Indies name Dr. vid, but us'd by the Tuels

(16) Mekkum | The Pratmum or Hall of Judgment, where Caules are heard and determined, from Mukkiem, strong and conjumit, or from Hinkin, the Sentence or Dierie There are more than twenty of their Mickkieme at Constantinople, of which the chief is That call'd Mekkiemet Mebemed Pasha, from its Founder, of the same name, and one of the prime Vizirs.

XI. The Rites of the Mahometan Religion, and the Ensigns of the Tamerlane in-Othman Empire, being thus introduc'd into the very Capital of the vades Afea, Greeks, it seem'd as if the imperial line would soon be extinct, and all the Provinces in subjection to the Greeks be posses'd by Bajazet with their Metropolis. But whilst he was meditating these things, the same fortune that had rais'd him, began to pull him down. For when Bajazet had settled his affairs in Europe to his wish, and was now as-piring to the Empire of the World, Tamerlane (17) from a low rank being made King of the Scythians, assembled a numerous Army of east-ern Tartars, and overran the Asiatic Provinces that were subject as well to the Persans as the Turks.

XII. To Tamerlane Ambassadors had been sent by Paleologus in his and rejects the distracts, representing the injuries offer'd him by Bajazet and imploring flaminople, his affishance for which he promis'd to hold his Empire of him (18)

Tamerlane is reported to answer, that he would indeed protect and defend him from his enemies, but made it a point of conscience to defire another man's property. O unparallell'd generosity tho' in a Barbarian'

XIII Indeed this seems to be one of the reasons why Tamerlane makes war turn'd his thoughts and arms against Bajazet The Turks themselves read why? and why? late that in the year of the Hejira 800, Abmed Halamir, (19) Chan of H 800 Bagdad, A C 1397

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(17, Tamerlane) He was born of the Chigu it orda or Tribe, and indeed by his birth, was a Birbirian, but his manners were politic and civiliz'd Temus leng (corruptly Tamerlane) in the Per/124 language, fignifies one lame in his thigh, which tradi-tion fiys, was his cite. A proof of this is a flory told of him by the Tuck Amongst other Projun Pritoners (tay they a Painter being led to execution defir'd timurleng that he would not firler the whole art of painting to die with Him, for he could eatily evince the excellency of that irt to belong to himself. Te-murling having heard his request, or-der'd him to draw his picture. The Punter observing that Prince to be lame of his right thigh and blind of his left eye, drew him with his right leg bent or inclining, his left eye thut and a bow apply'd to the other, as if he had been shooting at game.

Temurleng admiring the ingenuity of the Painter pardon'd and fet him at

(18, of him] Wonderful certainly was the Magnanimity of the Barbarian, and his answer worthy to be transmitted in letters of Gold. Paleologus offers his City and Empire; Temurleng takes both under his protection but refuses the Empire with this generous answer, " That it was " not right to change so ancient an " Empire, and to put a Family fo " eminently illustrious as to have " reach'd the Tartars themselves by " its fame, under the yoke of a fo-" reign fway," It was this greatness of mind, which put him upon fighting fuch bloody Battles, and raising fuch a mighty army, which if com-pared to those of Darius or Xerxes will be found to be equal if not supe-LIOL.

(19) Abmed Halamir] He was one

Bagdad, who was under the Sultan of Egypt, revolts from him on account perhaps of some injuries received, and turns to Bajazet, who by his conduct wrests from the Egyptian, Illistian, Malatia, Divurge and Nebbi, and annexes them to his Empire. In his return from this expedition he enters the Province of Azerbejan (20) subject to Tahrinbeg (21), and vanquishing the Satrapas or Governor of that Province lays on him a heavy annual Tribute. However, Ildirin Bajazit either thro' clemency or on account of the Tribute, restores the Province to Tabrinbeg. Shortly after, Bajazet suspecting this Prince's fidelity, tho' he paid that year's Tribute, carries away to Prula his Wife and two Sons in hostage, or as others (who are of lefs in thority with the Turks) fay that being enamour'd of the Woman takes her by force from her Husband's embraces Tabrinbeg not bearing entler the adultery or injury, immediately goes from Bajazet, and flying to his friend and protector Tamerlane, complains of the injury done him, and for raifes a fierce war against Bajazet.

Vanquishes and takes him prisoner of Paleologus or of both, leads a strong Army of Scattering in the prisoner H 804 year 804, against Bajazet, by whom he is nict no. Projet 122' in the proble

#### ANNOTATIONS.

of the Persian Satrapa so often mentioned before The name Ilasamo imports in the Arabic language, as much as present or perpetual Lord Both Persian and Turkis Instoriographers agree that from his time the seat of the Persian Empire was removed from Babylon, to Revan, and from thence to Islaban The present Babylon (or Bagdad of the Turks) stands not on the Eastern bank of the Lupbrates where so many ruins, besides the consent of Historians shew the seat of the old, but over against it, on the Western bank looking towards Europe. In the Last Indus in yet to be seen a certain small Tower called by the Turks, Kuzeahskis or the Tower of Burds.

(20) Azerbejan See Note p. 4.

(20) Azerbejan See Note p. 4.
(21) Tabrinbeg] He was one of the Perfian Governours who shook off the yoke of the Perfas Empire, weaken'd by the incursions of the Tartars.

(22) near Prusa] Most Christian Writers tells us that this battle was fought upon the banks of the Euphrates. But the unanimous consent of all the Turkish Writers that Ta

merlane immediately after it. But le enter'd Press the Mr. o. b. themes, electly private and the contought in the plains of the park. But their diffance from heart is well known to Geograph at Tais opinion of curs is full trace at "d by the fame risk mass in a rebefore the argagem " pitch'd his Tents near / 11 / 11 Neapolis of Ana minor, and there with the Imkills Asjan, National Interior three days, who fo delighted him with his Lables that he left the City free and untouched For the fike of the curious I shall by way of dentilion, extract fome particular cliff. Min from a Book written in the y k/b language The Citizens of Triffebir (where liv'd Natrition prepar'd to defend their City, when they heard Tamerlane was coming against Nairuddin earnestly diffwarled them, and offers to go himfe'f. I mbassador to Tamerlan. As he is leaving his house, he is in some suspence. what Present would be most proper to appeale an Enemy, and render him benevolent to himfelf and his I'cl-

### Book I. 4. Ildirim Bajazet I.

noble City of Bithynia. A fierce battle is fought with equal bravery but with unequal fuccess. There fell on both fides above three hundred and forty thousand Men. At last after a long conflict the Turks are vanquish'd, Bajaxet's eldest Son Mustapha, who had behav'd with great bravery, is slain, the Sultan humself is taken, and being shut up in an iron cage, as a notable instance of the sport of fortune, ends his days. The Conqueror Tamerlane presently after the victory enters Prusa, and forces the rest of the Asiatic Countries to submit to his yoke. Thus the Mighty who think themselves superior to fortune, are at once reduc'd by her to the most wretched estate.

#### Annotations.

low citizens. At lafthe refolved upon firsit, but fays he, Advice is good in tives of neeffity. I will therefore confult my Wife. Accordingly, favs he to her, "which will be most " gractul to "revine, figs or " quinces" Quinces, replies the, as " Leing larger, mo b multil, ind " tacretore in my opinion likely to " prove more ice, tibl. Whereupon fays he so how good toever advice \* may be in dubious iffairs, a Wo-"man's advice is never good, and "therefore I will prefent figs and "not quinces" Having gather'd the figs he laftens to Ting are who being told that the famo is Narndd n Heri was arrived in his Chiap, as Ambaffidor, orders him to be introduc'd, bare headed, and of ferving his bildness, commands his figs to be thrown at his heid His fervants punctually excelling his order, National at every blow, cries out, very composedly, Gd be fraged Tamerlan corrous to know the reason of this expression, is answer'd by him, "I think God that I followed " not my Wife's counfel, for had " I, as the advis'd, brought quinces " instead of figs, my head must "have been broken." The same Nufruddin growing afterwards more familiar with Tamerlane makes him a prejent of ten early and fresh gather'd cocumbers, for which he receives from him ten crowns in gold. Some days after, when cucumbers were more plenty by the advance of the leafon, he fills a cart with them, and drives it to Tames lane. The Porter

refuses him admittance 'till he had a promife of going halves with him, remembring the former prefent for the ten cucumbers. Nagrudden being introduc'd to Timerlane, is ask'd the reaton of his coming, and telling him he had now brought a much larger prefent of eucumbers than before Tameriane orders from a buttinedo for every cucumber The number II found to be five hundred. Nufruddistrictives half the haftmadoes very pitiently, but then cries out he has his full thare, and hop'd the King would do justice to his Poiter - The King isking what he meant? I a-greed, fays he, with your porter, that he should receive hilf of my exp. fled prefent for introducing me The porter being call'd, and owning the agreement is forc'd to re-ceive the remainder of the baltinadoes Some time after Nasruddin being encouraged by Tamerlane to ask boldly what he would have of him, as affured of no denial, he only ask'd ten Golden Crowns to erect a building memorable to all posterity. The money being given him, he immediately erects a Stone gate in the middle of the field, and faften'd it with locks and bolts. Being asked to what purpose so extraordinary a Gate, he answers, the same of this Gate shall be no less transmitted to latest posterity than I imeriane's victories, and whilst the monument of Nasruddin's actions shall move the laughter of those that visit it, Tamerlane's exploits shall draw tears from the remotest regions.

Bajanet's Cha-

XV. This Sultan memorable for his good and bad fortune reign'd fourteen years, three months, and liv'd fifty eight. He was of an invincible mind, a politick observer of times and seasons. In expeditions, in raising of Armies and marching them to distant places, Bajazet never had his equal for dispatch. Hence he acquir'd the firname of Ildirim or Lightning. Prone to anger, the failing of great minds, but the first emotions being quickly appeas'd, mercy prevail'd. So great a lover of Architecture that Moschs, Jami, Medrese and Imaret are faid to be erected by him every year of his reign. He is reported to have been very regardful of the studious and religious. He was the first of the Othman Emperors that wag'd naval wars, having built about three hundred long veffels for that purpose (23), and perhaps would have acquir'd the dominion of the Sea, if he had not unhappily, in open war, enter'd thelifts with Tamerlane.

Hu Iffue

XVI. Concerning his Sons (24), under the corrupted names of Erdogul

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(23) for that purpose Christian Writers tell us that Murad, Father of Bajazet first introduc'd the use of Ships among the Turks. The Turks on the contrary, fay it was Bajazet, and tell us that his Anceftors when they cross'd the Straits of Callipolis did it on rafts, or in hir'd Ships. I rather incline to believe

them than foreign Writers.

(24) his Sons] George Phranza Mafter of the wardrobe to the Greek Emperor has given us a still more confus'd account of the fons of Bajazet. He was indeed a contemporary Writer, but he may easily be allow'd to mistake in the Turkish affairs, who fo frequently contradicts himself in the Gracian, that is, in those of his own country should we fasten this reproach upon him, did not he himself acquaint us in the conclusion of his History that he composed it now worn out with years, a banish'd man, and consequently from his own memory, and not from Memoirs or publick Re-cords. Besides that his Books have been corrupted and interpolated by fome more recent hand, is at least very fuspicious to me, when I reflect that in B. I. Ch. 31. he mentions Bogdama as then a Province, and iributary to the Turks in the

time of Mubammed, when it is by all agreed, that Country 'or Muidavia as it was then call'd, made a voluntary furrender to Souman I, and from that time was known first to the Turks by the name of Bydina from its Prince Bogdar Not with less reason are these accounts suspected of forgery which gives us the civil wars of the Sons of Bajazet with Circumstances equally unknown to Turkis and Christian Writers He gives us five Sons of Bajezt!, Woles, Jusuph, Jesse, Mujulman and Mebemed The tour last of these, he relis us, pass'd into Europe, Mojes being taken in the battle fought with Tamerlane, Jusuph (continues he) became a Christian, Jesse was at first prosperous, and fell upon the Hungarians and Servians, but engaging with his brother Mujulman [perhaps Soliman] in a battle in the fields of Captadocia, he was defeated, and, being taken in his flight put to death by his brother. Tamerlane oppos'd Mi fa to his brother Musulman, which Musa passing into Europe, by the assistance of the despot of Servia subdued all the European Provinces in Subjection to the **P**thmans Mujulman return'd by Constantinople into Europe, and engaging with his brother Musa was defeated, and put to death by him.

dogul, Isso, Calepin, Cyricclebis and Cibelin (25), many things are related by the Christian Writers, which both the course of the History and the testimony of the Turkish Authors demonstrate to be fictions. For these unanimously ascribe to Bajazet four Sons, Mustapha (26), who fell in the battle with the Tartars, Soliman, Musa, and Mahomet. Tho' three of these, namely, Soliman Chelebi\*, Musa Chelchi\*, and Mahomet sway'd the Turkish Scepter, only Mahomet is reckoned among the Othman Emperors as will be shown at large in the sequel.

#### ANNOTATIONS.

After this, Orchan Son of Mujulman was called into Eurof by Manuel Paroton Fimperor of Constantino le, and put in Aims against Muja, but 1 lin c after betriy'd by his Vizir Simi in, and depriv'd of his eyes. Mula brought a fleet against Constanti vile, but bing beaten at fea, he defitted from that war Millemed first skulk'd about and got his living by manual fabours, but being afterwards aided by the Prince of Canpadocia, he proclaim'd wir agunft his brother Muja, and defeated by him in two engigements, he again renew'd the wat by the affiftance of the Princes of Servia and Bulgaria, and corrupting the officers of Muja at last obtain'd the victory Mojes was taken in his flight, and kill'd by one of his own Generals Such is the narrative given us by George Phianza, all which fuccessive actions he crowds into three years and two months, with an abfurdity obvious to all who have any tincture of Chronology, without my exposing him any tircher

(26) Calepin, Cyricelebis and Celebin feem all corruptions from the Turkifb word Chelebi<sup>†</sup>, which, as I before took notice, the chief of the Turkifb youths subscribed formerly to their own names, as Soliman Chelebi<sup>†</sup>, &c The word Cyricelebis seems to be a corruption of the vulgar Greek word, Kopir ja (a diminitive of Kopi<sup>®</sup> or I ord) since Phranca gives Mahomet I the appellation of Cyritzis, B I Ch 82

(27) Mustaphal eldest fon of Bzjazet, and stain in the bittle with Tamerlane by the confession of both
Christian and Turkish Writers. His
Body sought with the greatest care
after the engagement, could no
where be found, nor did he ever afterwards appear either amongst the prisoner or elsewhere. This procur'd
him the epithet of Nabedid or the
lost Some Christian Writers call him
Es dogul, for what reason I know
not. Certain at least it is that only
four sons of Bajazet are nam'd in the
course of the History, but no Eraugus.

There reign'd in Europe, Cotemporary with BAJAZET.

At Confuntinople. SIGNANNES PALEOLOGUS, 1341-88. LEMANUEL PALEOLOGUS, 1388-1418.

In the West New Cestaus, 1378-99.
ROBERTUS of Bavaria, 1399-1410.

In England. {RICHARD II. 1377-1399. HENRY IV. 1399-1412.

In France. CHARLES VI. 1380-1422.

The End of the Reign of BAJAZET.



#### INTERREGNUM Under

# SOLIMAN CHELEEI Son of ILDIRIM BAJAZER

#### BOOK II CHAP. 1.

I. Soliman faluted Emperor by the Furopeans II affront To cittude Ambassadors III. Tamerlane makes Musa Cledes To of Asia, IV. who is expelled by Soliman, V will not to do it induces. VI. Soliman distinguished an Ambassa of Administrative put to flight by Soliman IX who gives limitly to the formal Extraord X. He is at last betrayed by his friends and show XI Estimate life and manners.

Soliman E ia- I. luted Lmperor

I. THE great Bajazet being thus taken and inclo 'a m. e. e., and and his eldest Son Mustapha kill d in the buttle of the Tartars, his second Son Soliman Chelebr\* (1), who with his lawer's prime Vizir Ah Basha had escap'd by sight, seeks resuge against his ill fortune at Nicaa. When he had recover'd himself, he crosses the Projective

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(1) Soliman Chelebi\* The names of Calepin, Cyruclebis and Cibeliu, given to this Prince by Christian Writers, are neither Turkish proper names, nor fignify any thing etymologically, unless they are corruptions from the word Chelebi\* as was before shown. But that our Soliman is delign'd by these names, is manifest from this, that Calepin, escaping out of the battle against Tamerlane, was faluted King by his Subjects at Adrianople, which can agree with none but him. But altho' Soliman

and his Brother rul'd the Turk /h af fairs eleven years, yet n tither of them are rank'd amongh the I mp rors, or diftinguish'd with the titl of Padishab the usual name of the ortan. The reason of this is, trainte-ther of them had the Fingure entire to himself, but one govern'd in In the other in Eurofe, and both fa'lling by mutual flaughters and frattricide, Mabonet ferzed the whole Empire, and was call'd the fifth Ising or Emperor.

oponics and with a few Courtiers comes to Adrianople, where he is

aluted Emperor by the remains of the European Army.

II Whereupon Tameriane after the victory (2) entering Prula, sends Affronts Ta Ambaffadors with a Letter to Soliman, telling him, " he is forry for baffadors " his father Ildirim's fortune, which was not only unexpected but " scarce to be conceived. However these and the like things are by "God deffin d for Men blinded with pride, and so elated that they " deem just and lawful whatever is fuggested by their Wills. He " himself indeed has hitherto been so fortunate that it is liaidly pos-" fible for the mull of man to imagine a greater prosperity than His, " but now taught by his enemy's example, he is willing of his own " accord to give a check to his good fortune before he is forc'd to fet " bounds to it Wherefore (provided they wou'd only acknowledge " the Conqueror's clemency,) he wou'd instead of an enemy be a " friend, nay a father, to Bajazet's family For he is fatisfied with " his Conquests, and will never rely on the allurements of inconstant " fortune." However prevalent with others, the flattering promifes of a Conqueror might be, they made no impression on Soliman who remember'd he was fprung from a Father more us'd to give than receive law And therefore he unworthily treats the Ambaffadors, and fending a proud answer (3) to Tamerlane, becomes by his unfeafonable arrogance the occasion of his own calamity

III For Tanerlane, when he heard Soliman's answer, thinking fa-Muja made vours were not to be fore I upon the unwilling, sends for (4) his Bro-finger of Affa by Tather Muja Cleache and generously conferring the Empire on him, medane. "Receive, (says ht) the father's Inheritance, for 'tis not Kingdoms," but a Kingle Mind that I seek (5)." Thus Muja Chelebr\*, when regardful of Tamer and the that departed the next day from the Affatic forces, who were tay d by fortune and the Conqueror's bounty, being created Sultan obtain'd the Empire of Asia (6).

IV But

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(2) after the victory.] This clearly proves that the Battle was fought not in Monjotamia but Bithyma as was before observed.

(3), a proud answer! The tenor of these letters is not given us by the Turkish Writers, but they own that Tamerlane was justly offended with Soliman

(4) fends for Some Christian Writers say that Muss taken with his Father in the battle against Tamerlane, was inmediately set at liberty and advanc'd to the Empire. Which account we dare the less charge with salfity, because it is certain, the Turkish Writers carefully palliate,

and, if possible, bury in profound silence every circumstance which seems to cast any odious restexion on the Othman Race

(5) I feek] a Saying worthy of e ternal praises, and tho' coming from the mouth of a Barbarian, yet no way barbarous. Nor fince Alexander the Great who restor'd his kingdom to Porus, after he had vanquish'd him, do we any where meet with an instance of such uncommon generosity in giving away Kingdoms.

(6) Empire of Asia] The Christian

(6) Empire of Afia The Christian Writers who mention Musa (as Phranza B I Ch. 30) make the Commencement of his reign, not in

Afia

But expell'd by Soliman.

IV. But his Brother's Ambition fuffer'd him not to enjoy his Empire in peace. For Soliman, the moment he hears his Brother Mu/a was made Sultan in Afia by Tamerlane, affembles the European forces (who had not fuffer'd so much by the late slaughter) passes into Asia, and marches directly to Prufa. Mufa Chelebi\* being much inferior in strength (for the Afiatic Army could not in so short a time be renew'd) is seiz'd with a panick fear, abandons his royal seat, and flying to Caraman ogli (7), stays with him some time. But not thinking

#### ANNOTATIONS.

Afia but Europe, and give to Mujulthe Afianc Empire. But as these Writers confound not only the Deeds but the Names of those Brothers infomuch that it cannot be guess'd who is meant by Muja, Isa, Jesse, Kasem, Estimal, Calerin, Cibelin, Cyriclesis, Mulu'man, Julujb and Mehemed, no hody will blame us if in fuch objeurity of Chronology and History, we prefer the accounts of the Turks to all others, as supported with greater

perspicuity and probability

(7) Caraman ogli] The King of Caramania a Country of Ajia minor known by that name at this day. It contains the greater part of the old Cappadocia and Galatia. Caraman, the Persian Governor here before the Invalion of Jengbizchan, gave his name to the Province and its Kings, and was the first who usurp'd an abfolute fway over it, after the Perfian Kingdom was subverted by the Tartars, and was the most powerful of the Allies next to Aladin Sultan of Josnium. On this occasion we cannot but take notice that Nicepborus Gregoras, George Phranza, and other Christian Annalists very wrongfully refer the division of the Persian Provinces to the time of Othman, and give us tedious catalogues of these divitions, which it is by no means worth while to transcribe. Turks themselves, who, affuredly, omit nothing which can be pick'd up, with the least shadow of probability, to do honour to the Othman Race, deny not that the Caramanian Kingdom is much more antient than their own, and conval with That of Iconsum, out of whose ruins the Othman Empire arose. Moreover if (as they will have it who place this division

in Othman's time' only that part of Bithynia which was jubiced to the Perfian (a country certainly of 10 great extent, fell to his fhare, how could be in to short a time wrest fire a the Greek Emperors, then not 's weaken'd, and engag'd in no forcign wars, Nice, Niche , Provand other well fortified Cities of at the fame time citry on a wir vitir his Neighbours and College's But to fay nothing of the other att other ties of this Scheme, the feres of the Oriental History refutes all their Fables In the the time of / here chan there were no other kingdoms between the Agean Sea and the I dies, but Thole of the Remain and Perf ans, and of the latter great part was fwallowed up by his arms Seat therefore of the P. 10 Kingdom and these Provinces which exrend eaftward being over in by the Tenghil ban Sexthiain, the Provinces which lay weftward must accordingly have submitted either to il / chan, or the Greek I inperors, a treen govern'd by their own Satiage. But fince neither the one nor the othei was done, nor indeed could be from the shortness of the time which the Tartars held Perjia, we must neceffarily come to the Turb accounts, and believe that the Satriple or Governour of those Provinces, taking the advantage of their tumulti and contufions, fere'd every man his own Province, and affum'd the regal title To purfue thele things more largely is not within our defign, who only defire to furnish Those with an Introduction, who shall at any time be defirous to deduce more accurately the Oriental History from its Fountain.

hunself safe, he resolves to go to Islandarheg (8), in expectation of e-

teaping by that means falling into his brother's hands

V. But even in this, Mufa finds fortune averse to his endeavours, for He is not received by Inhadar hig, inform'd of Mufa's coming and intention, sends Ambassa-findar hig dies to him on the Boiders of his Dominions, defining him not to enter his Territories, or if he has enter'd them, inflantly to depart, for he is et ud, Solman will thence take occasion to overrun his whole Kingdon Upon this, M /a Chelchi' being in great anxiety and not knowwitch way to turn, accidentally lights on a little boat near Nicea, and in it piffes this the Propontis into Europe Isfindar beg hearing of 3rd win's approach, acquaints him by Ambassadors, that according to ", order he had forbid Muja to enter his borders or to see his face, by when he hop'd he had merited a confirmation of their Treaty of Friendship and Peace Soliman receiving the Ambassadors very gracioally, confirms the Treaty, and diffiniting them, returns to Prufa, where contemning his Brother's attempts, he gives himfelf up entirely to gluttony and dinnkennets (9).

VI Every thing succeeded to Soliman's wish. His Brother Make- Solimandine met (10) Prince of Amaha, the only Person he had to sear after Musa's bull from he light, fends unhaffadors to Poula to falute him as Emperor in his name, Poula Maand offer him noble Pretents. Solimon, as he could not govern himtelf or profestity, speaks very tharply to the Ambaffadors and fends them

#### ANNOLATIONS.

est Islandaring The quality and condition of this Prince is much controverted, whether he was one of their P yan Suraya lo often in nt m d, or i C / far ind I 'er n of to rate, till to neighbouring Placc. His Lamer has the Tarkijh imegiven in st I i B gett, In his own near les no meaning in

eth rim L " Pris or Labratons. For the People never no two comes no suggested in the to local majord, except in rach will be it or for ign extraction, in Hamilton orde, and the like I should believe him the I amor or Gray Jather of that & mattar, who, according to Gorge Phrinais, loft San verto Wramm d II in the Year of Christ 1402, of the Hegi-11 800, especially since Castamonium, of which he was acknowledged Sovereign by the Turks, her in the Neighbourhood of Sinopium, if the destruction of Isfindar beg's dominion under Muhammed I, in the year of the Il gira, 814, was not related by the Inikish Annals. What is to be determined in fuch an ambiguous allair, is left to the Reader's judgment

'a' Drunkenness The Turks only acknowledge three of their Emperors stidicted to Wine and Drunkennels, this Solimin first, next Sultan S. lim, who from thence obtained the name of Meil, or drinkard and thirdly, Sultin Murad Conqueror of Baby'on They boaft of the reit as perfectly tobet ind rigid observers of the Law, which is likewise taken notice of in the publick Monuments

(10) Mahomei] The Turks fay that Soliman Chelibit and Muhammed Chelebi\* were brothers by the same mother; but that Muja Chelebi\* was indeed the Son of Bajazet, but by another Venter, Mubammed in revenge of his Brother Soliman's murder unjustly committed by Musa made war upon him, overcame and put him to

death.

away without any answer, which alienated from him his Brother's affection and prov'd extremely prejudicial to him in his following Calamity.

Muse becomes matter of Adrianople.

VII. Mean while Musa Chelebi\*, having after Ishndarbeg's refusing to admit him wander'd thro' several Countries of Europe, stops at last in Walachia. There affembling a great number of Soldiers of his Parry and affifted with Walachian forces he re-enters the Turkijh Empire and passing the Danube without opposition, becomes Master of the royal City of Adrianople.

He is put to flight by Soli-H 800 A C 1406

VIII. Soliman when he hears this, rouzing himself as it were out of fleep, affembles in the Year 800 the Affatic Army, and paffes into Europe. Neither here does Mula dare to try the chance of War, but either out of a natural timorousness(11) or distrust of fortune, chuses rather to fly than stand a battle, and so returns to Walachia.

Soliman gives hunfelf up to

IX. Soliman arrogantly ascribes these good Successes to his Bravery his pleasures and Prudence, and not to the favour of Fortune. So thinking himself out of her reach, he drowns himself in Luxury and Drunkenness, adding the European to the Afiatic vices. Military discipline, by which the Othman Empire rose to such a height, is neglected, Honours are conferr'd on Wine-fellers and Panders, in a word, the Court has the appearance of a Brothel-House rather than a School of Virtues, which cou'd not but alienate from him the Minds of the Generals and Great

He is betray'd by his Friends

X. Musa Chelebr\*, who still remain'd among the Walachians, thinking he ought to turn his Brother's Intemperance to his advantage, privately fends messengers with letters to exasperate the Great Men. who, offended at Soliman's Actions, are eafily perfuaded to revoluwhilst he, buried in luxury knows nothing of it Whereupon Mula re-affembles an Army and with long marches comes to Advianople There he finds his Brother unprepar'd and ignorant of what pas'd abroad, who when he could neither draw his forces together, not any other way repel the unexpected enemy, refolves as the only course in his desperate state to save his life by flight, and implore the affishance of the Greek Emperor at Constantinople. Accordingly he almost seem'd to have escap'd the Enemy's sword and to be out of danger, having got twenty miles on his journey before he was purfued. But he whom fortune wou'd have fav'd, is betray'd by his favorite vice. For thoughtless of his affairs, when according to custom he made himself drunk at every house, and in his cups despis'd his Brother's power, he is taken in a Bath (in a certain Village (12) between Constantinople and Adrianople)

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(11) Timorouspels] It is matter of aftontihment to the Turks that Solsman immers'd in every vice was to fuocelsful in his affairs whilft Mufa, en dow'd with fo many virtues, was very unfortunate in war, fo that either

out of pulillanimity or caution, he never durst come to a pitch'd battle

(12) Village] Its name is not extant any Annals. Nevertheless it seems in any Annals. to have been Chorle\* the Tyrilois of the Ancients, or fome Village in the neigbourand flain by one of *Mufa's* Soldiers (13). His Body is brought to his Brother, who tho' glad of his rival's death, orders it to be buried in the Sepulchre of his Grandfather *Murad*, call'd *Chodavendikar*.

XI. Soliman governed the Turkish Affairs seven Years and ten Months. His Characher He was a young Man far exceeding all the rest both in good and bad qualities, a valiant and most fortunate General, of an invincible much, a Prince of great elemency and generosity, on the contrary, when he came to relax, and imagin'd he had nothing to fear, he degenerated into vice, and funk into luxury, by which means, he was not only deserted by his constant companion Fortune, but forfeited the deep-rooted affection of his People and Great Men, and turn'd it to Musa. This was the cause that with his prosperity he quickly lost both his life and reputation, and sullied with his Vices (14) the Othman race which had been render'd illustrious by his Virtues.

#### ANNOTATIONS

neighbourhood of it, because that is twenty two miles from Constantinople, and equally distant from Adrianople

(13) Soldiers] Some Christian Writers relate that Soliman, or, as they call him, Cyricelebi, intent upon an expedition against the Depot of Servia departed this life. But they seem to contound him with his Brother Musa, who was'd war against Sigimund King of Hungary and the Serviani. We therefore deem the Turkish account nearest the truth.

(14) Vices The Turks only acknowledge five of their Emperors to

have been remarkably addicted to vice, namely, the three before-mentioned in this Chapter, with Musta sha I who unfit to govern, was twice advanced to the Throne, and twice deposed, and Ibrahm, boundless in his luft, and for that reason after a short reign deposed and strangled. Of all the rest, the Turks make honourable mention, and boast of their virtues as superior to all description: and even in those whom they speak reproachfully of, they say that it is the vices, not the Emperors, that they blame.

The End of the Interregnum under SOLIMAN.

Ž.



#### INTERREGNUM Under

## MUSA CHELEBI\*

Son of SULTAN BAJAZET.

#### BOOK IL CHAP.

I. Musa in Europe, II and Mahomet in Asia created Emperois, III devide the Empire between them. IV. Mula advances towards the Morea. V. Routs the Hungarians. VI. Mahomet turns his Arms against Musa, VII and dreves him into Servia VIII Musa assisted by the Servians takes Adrianople, IX. against whom Mahomet leads bis Army. X He is bonourably receiv'd by the Greek Emperor, XI. and is faluted Emperor by the Europavans XII He conquers takes and kills bis Brother. XIII. Why call'd an Interregnum?

Mufa 15 faluted Fmpc-

USA CHELEBI\* after having undergone many hardthips, thro' various Scenes of Fortune and Battles fought with ror in Europe, great ardor arrives at a Crown, and on his brother Soliman's acuth is inluted Emperor at Adrianople by the whole European Army

and Mahomet in Afa

II. Whilst these things are transacting in Europe, Malomet Lord of Amaha, Soliman's uterine brother, but Mula's by another mother (1), hearing of Soliman's murder, affembles in order to revenge the fratricide, as many forces as he can, and seizes Prusa, where he is created

#### Annotations.

(1) Another mother ] That he was Brother of Soliman Chelebi" and Son of Bajazet by another Venter is out of all aifpute. Here indeed is intro-duced by foreign Writers Orchan Son of Calepin or Soliman, and faid to be than by his Uncle Moifes for Mufa Chelebia at the river Hebrus which washes Adrianople. But the falfity of

these Stories is sufficiently exposed by the teltimonics of the domeffic Writers, who know nothing of any Orchan Son of these Parents. They tell us that Musa Chelebi" was taken Prifoner by a Soldier of Muhammed's of the regiment called Seraje, and put to death by the order of his brother, as will be feen hereafter.

Emperor

Emperor by his Army. But being taught by the example of his unfortunate brother, he applies himself to settle the Afiatic affairs before he published his resolution to dethrone Musa. For since Tamerlane's Expedition, Asia weaken'd by the Tartars, had been invaded by so many and such strong bands of robbers and insested with constant incursions, that her former wounds could by no means be heal'd. These plunderers Mahomet Chelebi\* vigorously attacks, routs, kills and takes, and so with great same restores peace to Asia.

III. His Exploits reaching Adrianople struck such terror into Muja They divide Chelebi\* that instead of claiming his father's whole Empire as he the Empire had resolv'd, he was now assaid of losing what he possessed, and durst not contend with his brother. Wherefore to divert Mahomet from any thoughts of revenging his brother's murder, he offers by Ambassadors to resign to him all Assa and promises to be contented with the Eu-

ropean dominions.

IV. And that he might remove from his brother all suspicion, he Mu/a invade, turns in the year 814 his arms against the Christians, and finding the the Morea, fortune of war, which he had ever dreaded, more favorable, takes in Ch 1411 the Morea the Towns of Peraverd and Matrune, where having plac'd garrisons he sends his army into winter quarters.

V. Muja, exalted with the success of this year's expedition, attempts Routs the greater things the next year and assembling a stronger Army, marches Hungarians against the Hungarians (2), govern'd at that time by King Sigismund. These near the City Samandria situated not far from the Danube, he attacks and defeats in such manner that scarce a man is left to carry news of the slaughter. It is said, nothing incumber'd the enemy so much as the immense riches they brought with them. For such a quantity of gold and silver is reported to be found in their tents after the victory, that the Janzaries measured the money in Bowls and Hats, and the rest of the spoils supplied the charge of building a large Temple (3) called Janu Atyk, the soundations whereof were laid the same year.

ANNOTATIONS.

2, Hungarian Philip Lonicerus (with almost all the Christian Writers) ascribes this expedition to Cyricelehi or Soliman, Tom. I. p. 28. He tells us that Cyricelehi rais'd forces sufficient to insest the neighbouring Bulgarians, Servians and Macedonians, in a tumultuous Incursion: That to check his attempts Sigismand King of Hungary affished by the Bulgarians and Bobemians, led out a numerous Army against him, and engag'd him in a bloody battle at Columbacium, a Town of the Servians near Samandria, not far from the Isee, in the year of Christ 1409. This

Battle the Turks affign to the year of their Hegura 815 or 1412 of Christ. But fince the Turksh Annals expressly ascribe this expedition to Musa Chelebs, this error also seems to be owing to the consustion of Names.

(3) a large Temple] This likewise confirms our opinion. For an Inscription on the gate of this Mosch, call'd at this day Jams Atyk, or the Old Jams, testifies that it was begun by Musa Chelebs\* out of the spoils taken in that battle, and dedicated to God as a perpetual Monument of his Victory.



VI. Hitherto fortune had smil'd on Musa, but was soon going to frown on him. For to no other cause can be ascrib'd the calamity which befell Muse Chelebi\*, otherwise a Prince of an excellent disposition, great juffice and moderation. About this time, his Prime Vizir Korsbab Muluk (4) and the famous General Orausbeg (5) without any provocation revolt to Mahomet and by private letters fignify to him " that the Othman Empire something weaken'd by civil diffensions " wou'd not bear to be govern'd by two Heads (6), and that the whole " Army seeing Musa's timorous nature, were of opinion the Empire " should be confer'd on him alone. If therefore he would hasten into " Europe with his forces they promis'd to deliver to him not only the " whole Army, but his father's Throne."

and drives kim into Serves.

VII. Mahemet Chelebi\* at the receipt of these letters instantly prepares to pass into Rumelia. On the other hand, Musa incourag'd by his late fuccesses, diligently affembles his Army, in order to secure the Straits of Callipolis before his brother's arrival. But finding his Generals only made a show of fighting, and that nothing was done as he defired, perceiving moreover the treachery of his Men, in the very heat of the battle, privately withdraws out of the field, and escapes into + Or Service. Lazvilaieti +. Mahomet, prevented by the Season from proceeding any farther and establishing his Empire, returns with his army to winter at Prusa.

Muse affilted by the Sormu taken Adreamopie.

VIII. Musa Chelebi\* affisted by his old friend the Prince of Servia (7)

#### Annotatinos.

(4) Korshab Muluk Muluk seems to be his proper name. Kor Shab in the Persian language signifies a blind or one-ey'd Prince. Hence it may be concluded, that he was a Perfian, tho' it is not certain.

(5) Ornusbeg Or as others read, Everenus +. Foreign Writers give a fabulous account of this name, which fee in the Preface. It feems to be no Turkish name, but corrupted from the Latin Honorius, which it is known was the name of a Greek Emperor. If this were proved, we must believe that Ornus was once either himself a Christian, or born of Chrifian Parents, who abjuring his Religion, embrac'd the Mahometan Superfition. However this be, the Turkijh Annals are full of his Heroic Actions.

(6) By two Heads They had no good reafon for their revolt from Muja Cholohi, a just and merciful

Prince. They pretended therefore a fingular concern for the fafety of the Othman Empire, whose ruin they, as good and faithful Counfellors, were to provide against, by electing the most worthy of the Brothers, and io putting an end to the Schifm. But what Traytor will ever want a colour for his perfidy before he reduces it to action?

(7) Prince of Servia] The Turkish Writers feldom give us the names of Christian Princes in their Narrations, but commonly fignify them by their Dominions, as, Majar Kyrali King of Hungary. Nemche\* Kyrali King of Germany. Rum Tekkur: Emperor of the Greeks, &c But it is gathered from Christian Historians that this was George, Defpot of Servia, whose two Sons Murad II, depriv'd afterwards of their Eyes, having married the Daughter before.

[† The English Render may perhaps wonder how Orms can be read Everens, but it must be observed that this word in Taring begins with in Elif and Fave, which may express either s or eve, consequently by interting an safter the r, Orms becomes Everens ]



with warlike Stores and Forces, returns the fame winter, into his Butpire, and becomes master of Adrianople destitute of a garrison. There he finds Korshab and Ornusbeg, defignedly left by Mahomet in Europe, and either because he saw they could not effect their intentions, or out of his merciful temper, pardons and receives them into favour.

IX. But what has establish'd the Kingdoms of other Princes, prov'd his against whom destruction, whilst he unseasonably shows Mercy to the ungrateful, and Mahometle his Army. Muja by a repeated example has demonstrated, that an enemy is sooner to be trufted than a newly reconcil'd friend. For these Generals, unmindful of the favours bestowed on them, and perhaps spurr'd on by the fear of future punishments, invite Mabomet again to seize the Empire, who coming from Nicaa with a greater Army, passes the Bospharus by the Greek Emperor's permission (8) under the very Walls of Con-

stantinople (9).

X. The same day he enters Constantinople, and is received by the Ern- He is honoraperor in a very honorable manner, and presented with rich presents by the Greek worthy the Giver and Receiver. After which, on the third day, he Emperor, pursues his march to Adrianople.

XI. He had scarce been two days (10) from Constantinople, when he and faluted is met by Shab Muluk and Ornusbeg, who had withdrawn in the Emperor by night from Adrianople. They immediately fall proftrate at his feet, permitted

#### Annotations.

(8) Emperour's permission] His name is not expressed by the Turks, who only call him Istambol Kaifari. But it may be inferr'd from the time, that it was Manuel Palcologus.

(9) Walls of Conftantinople] The passage of this Muhammed Chelebs\* thro' Constantinople, and the honours pay'd him there are not mentioned by any Greek or Latin Writer, except George Phranza, who after his cuftom contounds this Mubammed Chelebi\* with Soliman. What credit the Turkifb Historians deserve is left to

the Reader to judge.

(10) Two days] It was either the Town of Epibata, twelve hours di ftant from Constantinople, and the Seat of the great General Apocaucus, the most implacable enemy of John Cantacuzenus, or Sylebria, about the fame place, and two hours nearer to Conftantinople, in which are feen at this day pompous ruins of Palaces, which Gregoras fays belong'd to John Cantacuzenus. In these ruins, under a great heap of Stones, I found on a piece of Porphyry a foot and a half iquare, ingraven the Statue of a Woman fitting upon a Chariot drawn by four Horses, crown'd with Laurel, her hair flowing as if thrown back by the wind, a Palm in her right hand, and in her left the reins of the horses, with this Inscription, δῦς Αφιεροῦται Όλυμπ ξδ The name is unhappily loft, either by age, or in the heap of the ruins, her nofe and right car are mutilated, all the other parts are entire. The Antiquity of the Stone was sufficiently manifested by the notation of the 64th Olympiad, or five hundred and twenty years before Christ. I pre-ferved that Monument in my Palace in the Suburbs of Constantinople on the Bosphorus, built in a place the most agreeable that can be imagined. But I hear that fince my departure, it fell with the whole Palace, and the other Monuments into the hands of the Daughter of Sultan Abmed.

## The Othman History.

and kiffing, according to cuftom, the ground (11), falute him Emperor in the name of the European Army.

He conquers and takes ha Brothers.

N :

XII. Muss Chelebi\* deserted by his own people, and destitute of counsels and forces, thinks of repairing to his old Sanctuary Servia. But he is scarce out of the Suburbs with a few attendants, when he is surprized by Mahomet, who was come before with a select band of Soldiers. Despair rendering him valiant, since he finds he must conquer or die, he draws up his people and sights with great bravery, Valour however giving way to numbers, when he sees his attendants vanquish'd and dispers'd, he himself also takes to slight, with intent to prosecute his design. But not far from the City he is overtaken by a horseman of the Regiment call'd Seraje (12), and brought alive to his brother, who instantly puts him to death, he having administred the Turkish affairs in Europe three years and six months (13). Mahomet

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(11) Kiffing the ground No mortal is thought worthy to kifs the hand of the Emperor. So that if the Prime Vifir comes into his Prefence, either going to or returning from an Expedition, thrice bending his right knee, he puts his right hand to the ground, and then applies it to his mouth and forehead. He does the fame when he withdraws. It is likewife the cuftom to walk not with a flow, but with a fwift pace in prefence of the Emperor. For a flow pace shews fomething of Majesty, which is thought to have too much prefumption in fo sublime a Presence.

(12) Seraje It was the first and oldest Regiment or Legion of Horse amongst the Arabians and Turks, from which the word Sararen feems to be corrupted. For of any Arabian Nation by that name there is no mention in their Annals, nor has Saracen either in the Arabic, Perfian or Turkifb Languages any meaning. Into the place of Seraje the Spabs have succeeded, as into that of the Segban, or ancient Foot the Jansfaries. To this day the Foot under the Bafba's are call'd Segban, the Horse Seraje. But this word is derived from the Perfian Seranjam, i. c. oppos'd to danger, or over whole bead danger bangs, compounded of Ser, the Head, and enjam, Danger, or any unfortunate accident. As bashime gelan Seranjam, Danger, or some unbappy event which hangs over my head. There is at this day another body of Turkish torces call'd Serdin Geebst, or the forlorn Hope, whose Institutions shall be spoke to hereaster. Segban is likewise a Persian word, and signifies Keeper of the Dogs For Seg in the Persian I anguage is a Dog, ban, a Keeper, as Bigsian, Keeper of the Vines, Ruhban, Keeper of good Wass, by which name they denote the Greek Monks, as Ruhban Zabiduzabid persit, a unerstitions (or abstruction) Monk, and observer of Superstituon.

(13) Six months] The number of the years affign'd by Chizilian Writers to these three Sons of Banazet agrees not at all with the Turkish account. The Christians fay that Seli man reign'd fix years, Orchan, Mich the pretended Uncle of Orchan, at Mahomet fourteen together. But t Turks assign seven years and a months to Soliman, three years i months to Musa, and to Maw met lone, eight years ten months, which added together make twenty ye. two months. It is evident that the Christians relying on no authority have given to Mahomet that time in which his brothers also reign'd. The computation of Phranza, who affigns only three years to the civil diffentions of the brothers, has been already taken notice of.

1. 14

amply rewards (14) the Soldier's diligence, makes him one of his Comifellors, and at last advances him to the Prime Vizirship. This man became afterwards a famous General among the Turks, and erected a . noble Medreje at Callspolis.

XIII. Before we proceed, it will be proper to observe that neither why call'day of these Princes whose Lives we have been relating, is acknowledged for Emperor by the Turks, but that whole space is called an Interregnum The reason they alledge is, that neither Soliman Chelebis nor Musa Chelebi\*, ever posses'd the whole Othman Empire, but whilst one rul'd in Europe, the other always reign'd in Asia. Wherefore neither do they reckon the three foregoing years, in which Musa Chelchi\* was yet alive, to Mahomet's (15) reign, but fix the beginning of it H 816 to the year of the Hegira 816, in which Muja Chelebi\* as we faid, was Ch 1413 put to death by his brother's command.

#### Annotations.

(14) Amply rewards] As a reward, they fry, he was admitted amongst the privy counfellors called Musabib, and afterwards advanc'd to Prime Vizir. There is at this day at Calls polis in the Cittadel a fine building faid to be from him, cilled Bagazbifar, as likewife a Market place at Conftantinople called Ser ije Pasha, which seems to have deriv'd its name from him or his Son For there is no other emi-

nent Basha of that name amongst the Turks

(15) Mahomei] It must be observ'd, that during the life of Mahomet, Musa took the appellation of Chelebre only, but after his death he was call'd Sultan. The eleven years and four months in which his brothers held the Sceptre, are only an Interregnum with the Turks.

The End of the Interregnum under MUSA CHELEBI\*.



製作す



The REIGN of

# MAHOMET Son of BAJAZET,

AND

Fifth EMPEROR of the TURKS.

#### BOOK II. CHAP.

I. Mahomet created Emperor of Asia. II Clears his Dominsons of Robbers. III. Musa being killed, he obtains the whole Empire IV Attacks Caraman ogli. V. Makes Peace with bim VI Attacks him again, guilty of breach of faith, and forgives him VII Subdues Itfindarbeg. VIII. Makes the Walachians tributary IX A fulle Mustapha appears in Asia, X. who is vanquish'd and hang'd XI. Mahomet's death conceal'd by Ibrahim Chan XII IIIs Character.

ated Emperor of Afia

Mahimut cre- I. HO' we have related in the foregoing Chapter, Mahomet's (1) actions whilst his Brothers were alive, a recapitulation will be necessary for the better carrying on the thread of the History The common faying, that whilft two are contending for a thing a third comes and runs away with it, was verified by this Emperor. For whilst his elder Brothers excited by ambition and an immoderate thirst of dominion, were fighting for the Kingdom, and by civil diffensions wasting their forces, with which, had they been friends, they might not only

#### ANNOTATION 5.

(1) Mahomet The first Emperor of the Turks of this name. It is a doubt amongst some Christian Writers whether he was the Son of Bajazet, or spute. Of his first name Muliammed

the Turki, b Writers almost unanimoufly make him the Son of Bajazet, the thing feems to me out of all ar ha Grandson by Solsman; but fince Chelche I have spoke in another place.



JON of Bujuzet, Jifth Emperor of y Turks, in the Gur to Beragle



have defended their borders but enlarged their Empire, he remain'd quiet in Amaha of which he was Prince, intent only upon clearing his Provinces of the plundering Tartars, and restoring peace and tranquillity to his People. For the fake of which, when he heard his eldoff Brother Soliman was escap'd out of the battle by means of Alipasha, Bajazet's prime Vizir, and created Emperor at Adrianople, he fent Ambassadors to congratulate him and promise in his name all faithfulness and subjection. But afterwards being told that Soliman was taken by Mula and kill'd, he resolves to explate fratricide with fratricide (2) and leaving the Arts of peace which he had hitherto exercis'd, feizes Prula, where in 813 he is declar'd Emperor by his People.

II. Things fucceeded thus profperoufly, it was by many thought Clears has Do adviseable to carry war into Europe, but the politick Mahomet was of Robbers another opinion. For the' by the good Success, he had hitherto been attended with, he knew his subjects to be well-affected to him, yet he eafily faw, if he should now attack his brother Muja, it would both incourage the plundering Tartars not yet quite expell'd, and render the future war more difficult; with an enemy prepar'd to receive him. On the other hand, if he conceal'd his intention, and defeir'd his defigns till a more convenient feafon, he shou'd more easily subdue both his Afiatic and European Friences. Wherefore the fame year he obtain'd the Empire, he unexpectedly turprizes, takes and beheads Cara deulet Shah (3) the only furviving leader of the Tamerlanian Tartars, who relying on the Emperor's absence, was destroying with fire and fword the Countries about Amalia The rest of the Plunderers are kill'd and dispers'd, so that in a short time, peace is restor'd to his dominions.

#### ANVOIATION 5.

(2) Fratricide | Altho" the Turk allow that their I imperor may kill every day fourteen of his Subjects with impunity and without impeachment of Tyranny, because (say they) He closs many things by divine impulse, the reason of which is not permitted them to know Yet Fratricide and Parricide under whatever pretences committed have never been approved by them. And in the two first ages of the Othman Empire, they think the Brothers and Kinfmen of their Emperors were never justly put to death by Them, unless for rebellions in their Sanjacs, or when it was done with the confent of their Nobles. But in the third age thefe Sanjacs were taken away by Soliman, memorable for his fruitless siege of Vienna, and it was or-

duned by law, that the Emperor's relations, should not be kill'd, but to prevent confpiracies, closely confin'd Althor after that law by the conne vance of Fathers or Brothers fome of the Sons of Sultans retain'd their Sanjac, yet now all that distribution of Apannages has entirely ceas'd, and the Sons of the Sultans, according to the humour of the Prince upon the I brone, are more strictly confin'd as Soliman II, and Ahmed II, or with lets nigor as under Mustapha, the prefert Sultan Abmed III The place of their confinement is the imperial Palace

(3) Cara deulet Shah] A name compounded of cara, black, and deulet, bappy, (which at this day is us'd by the Tartars not the Turks,) and Shah

King or Lord.



He kills Mu-

III. After being thus in tranquillity, at the instigation of his Great so, and is sole Men, he passes into Europe in the year 816, and having taken and put to death his brother Mula, is proclaim'd at Adrianople Emperor of all A C. 1413 the Alathmen dominions, in the 39th year of his age. At the fame time he orders the Eskijami founded in that City by Mula, to be finish'd.

He is attack'd agh,

IV. Whilft Mahomet is thus employ'd in Europe, an unexpected flame is kindled in Asia For Caraman ogh thinking himself able to crush the Othman Power (which he had always look'd upon with a icalous eye) whilst the Emperor is busied in his Europæan wars, assembles his forces, and laying waste all Bitbinia, encamps under Prufa, burns the Suburbs, and closely belieges the City itielf one and thirty days. Mabomet hearing this, passes his army into Alia by the Straits of Callipoles to chaftize his infolence, and to that and strengthens his forces with those of Sabbeg and German ogli

who fues for peace,

V. But the perfidious Caraman ogli could hardly withfland the fame, much less the sword of Mahomet For being inform'd of his coming, he instantly departs from Pru/a, and chusing to hazard his honor rather than his life, puts on the Nickerchief (4), and humbly entering the Emperor's Camp, confesses his fault on his knees and begs pardon. The Emperor's elemency fuffer'd him not to refuse it, and therefore receiving him into favour on certain conditions, he returns to Pruju, where he the next year orders to be elected, a large Jumi, Imaret and Madreje, with a very spacious Clan (or Exchange for the use of merchants) being refolv'd to inlarge by peace the Empire obtain'd by war.

which he breaks, and is vanquish'd and pardon'd

VI. But Caraman's perfidiousness, did not yet suffer the I miperor to be quiet. For hearing that Mahomet's victorious forces were difmis'd, he breaks the treaty without cause, and it vades the Otl man Empire. Mahomet full of Indignation, instantly meets him with a icicit Party, and attacking him, puts him to flight, tho' he fought with great bravery. Caraman with his Son are taken prisoners, and being

#### ANNOTATION S.

(4) Neckerchief ] A Turkish Phrase fignifying Surrender, or a Petition for grace and favour, called Aman, from whence the faying bogazine Mabrama talldi, be put on the neckerchief, i. e. he declar'd himself his future Subject. The law exempts fuch from punishment according to the præ-icript of the sentence or Fetua, Egi-lan bash kifil mez, let not the bended bead be struck off, unless where the number of Prisoners is so large that danger may be feared from Them, or where the irruption of an enemy prevents their being carried off. In ei-

ther of these cases they may be kill'd with impunity to leffen the number of Christians Thus if any Mujulman has married a captive Christian Woman, he may not he with her out of the limits of the Empire, as well because while he is on hostile ground, the event is yet uncertain, as because if by any accident the should make her elcape before the is brought tobed, there is danger that the child will be brought up in the Christian Religion, which with them passes for a mortal Sin.

brought before the Emperor, he is thus reproach'd by him for his breach of faith: " I, says he, no less just than victorious, will and " command Thee, unjust and vanquish'd to be fav'd: for it is incom-" fiftent with the imperial Honor to return like for like to wicked and " profligate Men. It was thy part to commit the treachery suggested " by thy mind, and it is mine to act agreeably to my Majesty and Mag-" nanimity" (5). Thus reprimanded he dismisses him, and restores him his Provinces, only placing Garrisons in Sivribisar, Nukteydak, Enishebri, Sedishebri, Numad, Saidul and Ain.

VII. Caraman being thus kept in awe, Mahomet thinking it proper Islandarber to chaftize Islandarber Prince of Castamoni, his Ally in the Conspiratory put to death. cy, turns his Arms against him, and takes the principal and best fortified Towns of the Countries of Castamoni and Janik. The next year with a greater Army, he subjects to his dominion Burs, Jiga, Tosia, Bakyrkurefi with Changyri\* where Isfindarbeg resided, and distributes that Prince's great Treasures among the Soldiers (6). At the same time he

builds a stately Palace at Amasia (7).

VIII. After weakening all his Enemies in Afia, Mahomet affembles Mahomet his European and Afiatic forces, and departs from Prusa to Adrianople, make the Wa-From thence he marches against the Walachians, routs their Army, may lays waste great part of the Province, takes Severia (8), where is a H 820 A C. 1418 bridge said to be built by Trajan, and the Castles Sakche\* and Cale (9).

#### ANNOTATION &

(5) Magnanimity] It will perhaps be aftonishing to some to find so much elemency, and a mind fo truly royal in a Barbarian Prince; but it has long pas'd into a Proverb, that Greece 15 no longer in Greece, and that as many Barbarians greecize, as Greeks barbarize For I call not them Greeks who are born in Greece, but those who have transferred the Grecian Learning and Institutions to themselves. It is justly said by 16crates in one of his Panegyricks, I had rather call them Greeclans who are Partakers of our Discipline, than those who only share with us the same common birth and nature.

(6) among the Soldiers.] It is cuftomary with the Turkib Emperors to promise their Soldiers all the Goods of the Enemy unless the City is token by furrender, the Walls only and the Government of it referred to Themselves. It is not to be empressfed what fire this gives to Men naturally greedy of Plunder and Rapine.

(7) at Amasia] He seems to have erected this Palace at Amafia not to

fix the Seat of his Empire There, but only for a place of retirement-and diversion. The Seat of the Sultans never was there; it having been only an Apennage (as they call is) for

younger Princes. (8) Severial A Tower now decay'd by time, and retaining its name per-haps from fome Roman Prefect, or other Prince of the fame name as Founder. In the place where it is now feen, Trajan, when he march'd against the Scythiaus threw a Stone Bridge over the Danishwof admirable Workmanship, whose Foundations appear at this day so the bottom of the River. I shall enlarge more upon this in my description of Molds.

(9) Cale] No City of this name is now to be met with in these Regions.; But as it is plac'd between Sakehen! and Girgista Towns upon the Daniel. the field bordering upon Walachuschie: latter upon Moldevin, Limagino the Town Inc or the Caftle Tubbet 261

be intended by it. U

Simile the that the the file him be, and forthes Girgion with new Works and a good Garrison; so that the Wishebians could not any most pick the Daniel Fent up its this manner, and prefs'd by the food of the Enterty and the want of warlike Stores, defpairing also to pick the liberty, they purchase their fastery with the promise of an admitte things the first with the promise of the Piblic and of three Great Men are given to the Emperor in hostage. After which he returns to Aliriample.

A faile Mafapha appeara in Ma,

IX. The fruits of these victories obtain'd with so much blood and history were like so be wrested from Mahomer, by the fraudulent hand of the Rapostor (11). At this time were rais'd in Afia great tumults by a riam of low fortune belonging to the family of a certain petry Prince, Poder Ulledyn (12). Mustapha, eldest Son of Bajazet fell; (as we have related) in the battle with Tamerlane; but it was said to be uncertain whether he was carried away captive, or slain with the sword of the Enemy. The Person above-mention'd falsely assume the name of Prince Mustapha, and being affisted by the advice of Peder Ulledyn, gather'd together a numerous band of profligate Men, with whom he laid wattle Zagara (13), and the neighbouring Countries. The next Spring attempting greater things, he besieg'd Nicaa, and perswaded the Eshabitance to join in the Rebellion.

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(10) annual tribute) It cannot be desied that the Whitchians are fairly for the Turks by right of Arms: and therefore the Sale-pits and Cultoms were fairly say each to be fold out of the Imperial Established. But the annual Tribute being increased under Primes Matthew of 50000 Imperial Crowns; they were reflected to the Primeipality. But the Moldevians who malantarily gut themfolves under the Protection of the Muldevians who malantarily gut themfolves under the Protection of the Muldevians who malantarily gut themfolves under the Protection of one Pater formand Rarss only made a Barrier Pfiliphi, or, as we finally fay, on Enforcement Rarss only made a Barrier Pfiliphi, or, as we finally fay, on Enforcement of the same she filith terminating regulated with the filiphic or fixed the filiphic or the filiph

retir'd into Transilvania, the Turks obtain'd their demands, and appointing a Successor to Him, so enlarg'd them by degrees that the unhappy Moldavians, besides 75000 Imperial crowns, are oblig'd to pay 50000 Lamines in lieu of the Jeziye Mali, or the Eafer-Offering.

(11) Impostor] He is not the Impostor Majsapha, whom the Christian Writers make to have rebell'd in the tune of Murad II, encouraged by af-issuance from the Greek Emperor. For this made his appearance in Russia, otherwise call'd Romania, the other in Asia, being a Pleberan and subject of one of the Persian Reguli or petty Sovereigns.

(12) Peder Ulledyn Seems to be one of the perty Sovereigns who revoked from the Perfiant in the time of Jenghanden.

(12) Zagara] A Town of Asia miser different from that placed near Philippuls in Europe, and call'd the Eski Zagaraius old Zagara. X. This Sedition daily increasing, seem'd to threaten great took who is taken chiefs to the Orbinson Empire, especially as Pader Ulledgen, to deceive and hanged the rest, was seen to reverence his Servant as his Lord. Wherefore the Emperor thinking it of the untook importance to the Orbinson to stifle the rebellion in its birth, immediately leads his sorces from Advisances into Asia, and finds the Impostor still intent on the Siege of Nicea. The Counterfeit Mustapha raising the Siege boldly marches with his Followers against Mahomet, but at the first Charge is vanquish'd by the Imperial Army, and put to slight. Part are slain, and part taken, among whom the Impostor with his Lord Semidene ogli (14), attones for his crime on the Gallows.

XI. The rebellion being thus quell'd, Mahomet in the year 824, Mahomet's takes Eski Gelibali (15), Tarkly, and Herge. Returning from this death is conceal'd.

Expedition he is feiz'd with a flux, of which he died. He had ap—H 824 pointed by Will his eldest Son Marad for Successor. But as Marad was Ch 1421 then waging war with part of the Army in Rumelia (16), the prince.

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(14) Semidine ogli] a Patronymic of the foremention'd Peder Ulledyn, and is the same as Son of Semadine.

(15) Eski Gelyboli] The ancient Callipolis feems to have been a Fortresa placed at the Hellespoot, and now, either destroyed or lost under a new and barbarous name.

(16) Rumelia] The meaning of this word amongst the Turks has been explain'd above in Ch. IV. Here it will not be improper to give a more exact account of this name. The Chalifes of the Anabians (or as they are commonly call'd by Christans, of the Saracens) whilst they remain'd about the Euphrates, and had not extended their limits thro' Natolia, call'd all those Countries which belong'd to the Roman-Greek Empire Rum-yis (i. e.) Part of the Romans, probably because the Greeks, the Positions, call'd themselves analises of mans, as their Successors do at this day. To this my opinion, besides the consent and testimony of domestic Writers, is added a corroborating Proof from the name of the City Exzivam, which City, (in Armenia major) as a Bulwark long withstood the facility in the Alignan Regions Invaders, and divenced their rage from the rest of the Alignan Regions Invaders, and divenced their rage from the rest of the Alignan Regions Invaders, and divenced their rage from the rest of the Alignan Regions Invaders, and divenced their rage from the rest of the Alignan Regions Invaders, and divenced their rage from the rest of the Alignan Regions and Regions Invaders.

Land and Rum, Rome, as if you found fay, the Land or Territory of the Roman. But after They had finding an opportunity from the Ware watch the Greek Emperora was if with the Latina reduced all Nations to their obedience, with the diminution of the Roman Empire, the Apellation of it was likewife reduced, and at length contined to that part of Europe which is lubject, to the Empire of the Othman. However with the Turkib Geographical it is childway to call all Europe by the name of Rum; for instance, Rumden anadology geobnes, i.e. to gall out of Europe into Afta, Sp on the contrary, pure to fall all Europe. Home in the more antique for all Europe. From hience a fixeful figurification of this word Rum-yis, or, as it is call d. Rumelia has acole. With Geographics if is comprehends all those Provinces which he from Errors in the more antique for all Europe in the comprehends all those Provinces which he from Errors in the finess Europe in much of it as is subject to the Cipman Empire, formetimes Europe to much of it as is subject to the Cipman Empire, for extenses and Paypangus, but they for Elifa without Paterpangus, but they are for the first the is the meaning of it better, I am periwaded from the analysis, I am periwaded from the analysis of the Fifther.

# The Othman Hiftory.



Visit Ibrabin Chan (17) conceals the Emperor's death one and forty days, transacting affairs as if by his order. Afterwards at Murad's return, he delivers up to him the Army and Kingdom. Whereupon being fakuted Emperor by All, he fends his father's body to Prusa to be buried in the Jami he had founded.

Mis Chandler

XII. Mahomet lived forty seven, and reigned eight years and ten months (18), a Sultan, great in War and Peace, and fam'd for Justice and

#### ANNOTATIONS.

yet living) made an expedition into the Mores, tho' with what success both are silent.

(17) Ibrabim Chan] The Turks call him their Ulyffes. Wherefore also Sultan Murad II, gave him the Appellation of Chan, never bestow'd on any but the Princes of Persia and Tartary, for his concealing the death of the Emperor forty one days in fuch manner that not one of the Lords of the Court had the least intimation of it, whilft himself directed every thing. The same name is given to his Defcendents at this day, being call'd Ibrahim chan ogli, a Race the most illuftrious, powerful and wealthy in the whole Turkish Empire. You will scarce find a City of any account in those Countries which obey'd the Turks Empire in the days of Ibrabim chan, but what glories in him as the Founder of its Jami, and Revenues belonging thereto. And indeed fo many and fo magnificent are the Structures of this Race, that it is not exfy to conceive where their Founders cou'd find money for fo vaft an expence. The Posterity of this Ibrahim, have no legitimate Wives, in the opinion that no blood is worthy of their own, and therefore like the Sultans, they chuse to themselves Concubines out of the Captives as well for Offspring as Pleasure. By the precept of their great Ancestor, they court no offices civil or military, nor enjoy any befides the Trollyes or inspection of the Jami founded by themselves and Anceftors, on pretence indeed that it is unworthy of their defcent, but in reality, because they fear felt being advanced to the degree of Vizir they fhould experience the fate to common to the Vizirs, and be deprived at once their Wealth and Dignity can the Sultans themselves compel

them into any public Offices, from which They were exempted by the peculiar indulgence of Sultan Murad II, an Indulgence afterwards confirm'd by Soliman Canuni in honour of Ibrahim Chan, and in force to this day. But if any necessity of the empire calls upon them, they voluntarily fend a supply of forces into the Camp, levy'd and arm'd at their own expence They have the greateft honours paid them by the Sultan, who makes them two annual visits, eats with them at a coftly entertainment, and allows them more frequent access to his Person than any others. When they enter, it is cuftomary with the Sultan to rife a little from his Seat, and to their Salutation of Selamunalykum (peace be with thei) to answer, Alykum es-felam (peace be alfo with you) Then, as they are standing with a submissive silence, the Sultan lays to them, Saffa geldinuz, or Chofb geldinuz, you are welcome. Sometimes he bids them fit down, and talks with them of ordinary affairs which he does only with the Mufti, or, rarely, with the prime Vizir. Of this Race I knew one Ibrabin beg a man of few words, grave, and of a majestick carriage. Twice or thrice in the year I was vifited by him in my Palace on the Bespherus, and when he took leave of me, he always faid, with a low voice, Eyucal! may you continue in bealth! At his entrance, the Salutation was Chair ola, may it be well of peace to Christians in the usual form of Selamunalykum is a crime with them. Hence Christian Princes may cally imagine how infirm is the Peace they can promife themselves from the Turks

(18) ten months] This is to be remembred in order to fettle the confus'd and Clemency. He is chiefly extell'd for ribing the Othern Bi from the law condition it was reduc'd to by the Tenerlanian flaughter, and the more destructive quarrel of his Brothers (19). Neither did he retrieve it only from ruin, but left it both enlarg'd and the blish'd to his Son and Successor.

#### ANNOTATIONS

fus'd calculation of the Christian Historians. See more concerning it, in the Note at the end of Book II. Ch. II.

(19) his Brothers] The Christian and Turkish Historians agree that, after the terrible blow given to Bayless by Tamerlane, the Turkish Affairs were reduc'd to that low ebb, that, could than bring them under our Censure.

but their discord have united the Christian Princes, the Othman Power might have been, if not wholly de-firoyed, at least easily expelled out of Europe. But fince the Judgments of God life beyond the fathom of our reason, we had better in silence adore,

During the INTERREGNUM and Mahomet's Empire, there reign'd in Europe,

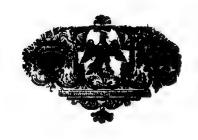
At Constantinople, EMANUEL PALEOLOGUS, 1387-1421.

In the West. STOISMAND King of Hungary, \$410-37.

(HENRY IV. 1399-1412. In England, HENRY V. 1412-22.

in France, CHARLES VI. 1381-1422.

The End of the Reign of MAHOMET L





The REIGN of

# M U R A D II. Son of MAHOMET,

AND

Sixth EMPEROR of the TURKS.

# BOOK II. CHAP. IV.

H 825
A C 1422
A false Mustapha appears

The/Julenica

I. MAHOME T, as I have said, dying in the year of the Hejira 825, was succeeded by a Son worthy of so great a Father, Murad II. in the eighteenth year of his age. In these his younger years he gave a no less signal than difficult proof of his Virtues. An obscure Person (different from the other Impostor) (1) impudently assumed the name of Mustapha Son of Bajazet, who perished by an unknown fate in the battle with Tamerlane. This Man first lurking about Selanik, soon gain'd so great a reputation by his name, that he perswaded not only the common People but the European Soldiers, with many Officers, that he was the very Person he pretended to be. So when he had allur'd to his Party almost all Rumelia, and assembled a considerable army, he passed thro' the Straits of Callipolis (with the connivance (2), as 'tis said of the Greek Emperor) into Asia, in order to seize Prusa the Sest of the Othman Empire.

II. Murad,

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(1) different from the other] This was an European, and made his first appearance in Thessal, a distinct Perfor from that Asiatu mentioned before The Christians pardonably take him for the true Mustapha, as they could at that time have no Intelligence of the Turkish Assars but from

the Greeks, who to avert the last danger would probably have embraced even a Beggar for a King.

(2) with the connivance I should take this for a Calumny of the Turks upon the Grecians for a pretence of War against them, did not Phranza (Book I. Ch. XXXIX. and XL.) tell

us



MURAD or AMURATH II

Son of Mahomet, seat Emperor of the Turks

•		
•		
•		
•	•	

II. Murad, taught by his Father's example, sends the prime Vizir He defeated Bajazet into Asia (3) with chosen Troops to stalle the slame in its Vizir birth. But the Vizir was not crown'd with the same success as had attended Mahomet. For the counterseit Masapha with his army bravely meets Bajazet, and joining battle, vanquishes and kills the Vizir, and routs his forces destitute of a General.

III. The sad news of this defeat being brought into Europe, Murad Murad ap not at all discourag'd, says, "This misfortune has not befallen me by by Seed Be" the virtue of these Impostors or by my Vizir's fault, (whom I have char, often experienc'd to be both a brave Soldier and excellent General) but by some just the unknown indignation of God against his People, which, if we would have our affairs to prosper, must first be

"appeas'd by true repentance, hearty prayers, and fervent tears (4); and then I shall think my self sure of Victory, and of being reveng'd

# Annotations.

us that Mustapha (whom he supposes to have been the real Son of Bajazet) was brought by John Paleologus out of Peloponnesis to Callipolis, and set over the Western Parts of the Empire, tho' Murad earnestly desired the Greeks not to lend him any affist-

(3) into Afia] Phranza in the place above mentioned gives us this Relation inverted. For he fays, that the Battle fought by Mustapha with Bajazzi, Musac's Vizir, (an expert, fays he, and able Warrior) was near Adrianople, but that Mustapha after the Victory moved into Afia against Amurath, by whom being defeated he returned into the West, and was purfued, overtaken, and killed by Murad, with the affistance of some Genosse Vessels. But as it is undeniable that Muhammed I dy'd at Adrianople, and that Murad II his Son returning out of Rumelia, there first assumed the Ensigns of the Empire, I had rather accuse Phranza, than the Turkish Writers, of an oversight in this Affair.

(4) tears] The Turks afcribe every Victory not to Multitude, Valour, or human Industry, but folely to divine Providence; and therefore they always feek a just Ground of War, that they may not feem to take Arms against the Will of God. But they call those Wars just, (and only those) which are undertaken for the

Propagation of the Mahometan Religion: On the contrary, unjust Wars with them are fuch as are enter'd into for the enlarging the Bounds of their Empire, or the Royal Revenue. From whence it may be easily imagined that they can never want a just pretence for a War. Thus their Opinion was dextroully laid hold of by Kuprili Mustapha Basha, prime Vizir to Sultan Soliman II, Uncle of the present Emperor Abmed. For when the Turkish Soldiers, struck with former disafters, refus'd the Service, he in a Council gave this Opinion;
That the Victories of the Germans, and their own Defeats, were ow-44 my, but to the Sins of the Muful-" mans, therefore the Gold and Sil-" ver Furniture of the Emperor was to be fold, and the Militia to re-" ceive their Pay out of the Money " arising from the Sale; and by a " Proclamation of the Emperor it " was to be declared, that he under-" took the War against the Germans " for no other Cause but merely the 6 Propagation of the Faith 5 and " therefore they who were obedient " to the Laws of the Geran ought to " follow him, not an fort'd anto the " Service, but as Volunteers; for if " he had only 12000 true Observers " of the Coran, he affuredly pro-" miled himfelf a speedy recovery of " whatever had been wrefted from

" on our Exemics." He concluded with this common Turkish Saying. Virminje Machud ne eile sun Mahmud? i. c. When the Creator opposes, what can the Creature do? (5) At that time flourish'd among the Turks for virtue and holines Seid Bechar, who in the common opinion of the Othmans could obtain of God whatever he pray'd for. To this man, living in a Cell, far from the allurements of the World, Murad humbly directs his steps, and having declared the news of the defeat, he adde, " The increase and victories of our Enemies are a sufficient et argument to me that our Nation by innumerable transgressions of the " Law have incurred the wrath of the eternal and omnipotent God. My " own fins hinder me from expiating their offences and begging par-"don: for when I confider my own unworthings, I readily confess, I " neither can nor dare stand before the divine Majesty. Wherefore I " for a necessity of thy mediation, by means of which I may approach " the throne of mercy, appeale the spirit of our most holy prophet, " and render him propitious to my felf and the whole army of Mu-" fulmans." Seid Bechar yielding to Murad's request, is by way of extary (pardon the fable) fnatch'd up the following night into heaven, where he sees the pure and immaculate spirit of Mahomet (6), and

# Annotations.

the Empire by the Germans." And accordingly in the first Expedition he retook Shehirkin, Nissa, Semendria, and Alba Graca, but in a second he lost near Salankemen almost the whole Army, with his Life and Reputation.

Creature do?] The Turks afcribe this Saying to Sultan Murad II, by which is meant that, without God Man labours to vain. Maabud is one of the apot Names of God (for fo many the Turks give him) and fignifies his having a Care of his Servants and Worshippers. Mubmud is a proper Name and has regard to Maabud, so that the Proverb may be literally render'd, Maabud not giving, what will Mabmud do?

(6) spirit of Mahomei Satan (who apes the divine Works and Mysteries) while by the Mahomeian Religion he was desirous to overthrow the Doctrine of Christs twofold Nature, invented something like it with regard to Mahamei, but so fabulous, that it seems a greater Paradox than that Doctrine even to human Reason which more easily fathoms other Fablos than the Abyss of divine Mysteries. For who can without laughter hear what his Bio-

graphers fay concerning the Spirit of this false Prophet, and which his Followers affert with no less Warmth than we do Christ's Divinity. They pretend that feventeen thouland years before God decreed the Creation of the World, he planted in the same place, where the World now 18, Paradife, and in the middle or it a lofty Tree called Tuba, in whose Branches he lodg'd the Taus or Peaceck, and put into its Heart the Spirit of Mabemet, to be there carefully preferved. At length, when he had determined to create this visible World (which according to them will be the laft,) and to give it to Man for his Habitation, he took fomething out of the Spirit of Mabomet, and with it animated the first Man called Adem, and placing him in Paradife, caution'd him against cating of Wheat. Adem, when he rang'd the Garden at full Liberty, and unmindful of the divine Precept, fell to eating of Wheat, immediately perceived, he had swallowed fomething deadly, but however felt the Spirit of Mabonet living within him, and knew it would prove the Cause of a future Resurrection. After this Adem dy'd, and was infenthrice kiffing (7) the dust of his feet, humbly befeeches him to obtain of God by his powerful prayers, victory for Marad over his profitable enemies. To this petition repeated three times, Maboner at length answers: " for my sake (says he) the divine Wajesty has heard Muridit's prayers, and therefore tell him, God will be with him and give him victory." Early the next morning, Seid Bechar in obedience to the Prophet's command, fends Murad word of the welcome- mellage he had received, who transported with joy, pays a second visit to the Saint. Whereupon Seid Bechar with his own hands girds the Silltan with a fword (8), faying, " Go on and profper, most august Emperor, for " victory attends you."

IV. Murad, incourag'd by the words of the Saint, returns God'and miracuthanks, and leads his army with great marches against the counterfeit quibe the Mustapha. Mean while the Impostor had assembled his forces near impostor Ulubad, where having broke down the bridge, he undauntedly wanted the coming of Murad. The Emperor arriving, encamps on the other fide of the River, in expectation of the promifed affiftance from Heaven, and perhaps to extinguish by delay the first heat of fedition which is usually very great. This method succeeded to his wish. For when both Armies had remain'd fix days without motion, and the Generals anxious of the event, had continued in their posts, on the seventh, the Impostor was seized with a violent bleeding at the nose which lasting three days, made him so weak that his life was almost despatr'd of. This extraordinary and unexpected accident caused the enemy's army

#### ANNOTATION 8.

fible as well of his Birth as of the Death of his Posterity, till Mahomet was born, when the particle of Ma-bomet's Spirit leap'd within him, and as by Sympathy, declar'd to him and his Posterity eternal Salvation, and the bleffing of a Refurrection. Whereupon Adem broke out into Thankigiving, and faid-After fo many Ages my Posterity have at last brought forth my only true and genuine Son, who 19 that last Prophet for whom God created the World and me-After Mahomet's Death (or as the Turks fay, his Hejret or Flight out of this World) his pure and immaculate Spirit was translated to Heaven, and there enjoys the beatific Vision of

(7) kiffing] The Turks, tho' they are of Opinion that the Dead, even the very Saints, give no affistance to the Living (from whence the Hereticks of our Age have fuck'd their Posson) yet grant that Mahomet's No. V. Soul hears and conveys the Prayers of Men to the Throne of God, and believe this Privilege to be peculiar to him amongst all the Creatures; in this they feem to agree with the Or-

(8) with a fword] From that time it is a fort of Law with the Turks, for the Emperor the fecond Day after his Advancement to the Throne, if he is at Constantinople, to visit with great Solemnity, the Monument Eyubenfart, (of which more hereafter) standing in the Suburbs called Eyab, and there to be girded with a Sword Sheikh Tekke, or the Prelate of the Monastery, who concludes the Solemnty with these Words - Yurs nufret Semundur, Go, Vistory is yours, enly yours from God. But if the Emperor is at Adrianople or elsewhere, he is obliged to perform this Solemnity at his return to Constantinople, as if he was enjoin'd it by fome divine Law.

to imagine God was some to blast the counterfeit Mustapha's stellings. Accordingly the Impostor's followers dreading the distinct wrath, defert him is the night and sty for their lives. He himself follows quickly after, but not with the same speed, by reason of his weakness caused by loss of blood. Marrad hearing what had happen'd, immediately pursues the cun-aways, and taking the counterfeit Mastapha extremely ill in the Town of Gara Agada, commands him to be instantly beheaded.

Caramin ogli Ilam,

V. The Impostor being thus miraculously destroy'd, it remained to quench the sparks of this slape which were flown into the neighbouring countries. For when Bajazet, Murad's Vizir was vanquish'd by the counterseit Massapha's forces, Caraman agli Mehemed beg thinking the Otionan assairs in a desparate state, resolved to seize at least some part of Murad's dominions. Wherefore assembling as large on army as he could, he besieges Andalia, in hopes that being destricte of relief it would quickly surrender. But the garrison, whilst they are bravely desending their walls, accidently kill Mehemed beg himself with a cannon-ball. The Caramanians terrified by this disaster, and despairing to take the town, chuse another General of the same name, and with great precipitation raise the Suege.

and his Ally Osbman beg VI. Gamze beg Governor of Andalia, seeing the enemies retiring in disorder, couragiously sallies out to pursue them. Othman beg Sovereign of Tekke (9) was come, perhaps the evening before, to Caraman's assistance, but at the same time, was seized with an acute distemper (10) and deserted by his men. Gamze beg in taking the enemy's camp, finds this Prince breathing his last, and cutting off his head sends it to Murad in token of his victory, to compleat which he moreover addall Orbman beg's dominions to the Othmannic Empire.

*Muftapha* rebels, VII. To celebrate this noble victory obtain'd without hazard or toil, Murad returns in triumph to Adrianople. There whilst he is thinking to cultivate the arts of peace, and settle the state of the Empire, which the times had not yet suffer'd him to do, he is again disturb'd by civil diffention. For his younger brother Mustapha (11) a youth, allur'd

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(9) of Tekke] It is known that this Country belongs to Afia Manor, and lies not far from Kutabia (probably so called from some Tekke there) but its ancient Name does not occur As to Othman big he seems to be one of the Posterity of those Persian Satrapse so ofcen mentioned.

(10) with an acute diffemper] The Turks will have this to be a Miracle in confirmation of the promife of their Lawgiver, and the Prediction of Sheikh Seids Bechar. So ftrangely are

Men prepoficifed with any prevailing Superfittion.

(11) brother Mustapha) The same whom Phranza, Book I Chap XL. calls Mustaphopulus Brother of Amera, and who, he says, came into Confantinople after the Siege was raised by Murad. But I cannot comprehend his meaning, when he there says, that the Turks which came out of Asa, full of admiration afferted that he was like the Founder of their Religion Mahomet, and might by his looks

aliun'd by the deceitful counsels of the Greeks, and perhaps incited by an unfeafonable thirst of dominion, rebols in Afia, seizes Nickly weakly garrison'd, and being amply supplied with all necessaries by the Greek. strongly fortifies it as the seat of the future war.

VIII. Murad to stifle this rebellion in time, leads a great atriny lifth and a taken Afia. Mustapha Chelebi\* as he did not dare to muset his brother in Death the field (for befides the Greek foldiers he was join'd only by a few plunderers) shuts himself up in Nices. But walls prove no lifeguard to him. Murad affembling his forces closely belieges and valiantly affaults the town, and on the 25th day takes it with his brother, whom he immediately orders to be strangled in his presence.

IX. To repair the wound given by this execution to the Alothman Munad erace, Murad in the year 827 marries the daughter of Loz ogli (12) footes Loz betrothed to him before, a Lady excelling all of her time in beauty, ter
H 847 and the Helena of the Servians.

d the Helena of the Servians.

X. The next year 828 afforded Murad a fingular occasion to display Islandaring his virtue and enlarge his dominions. The growth of the Otheran rebels. Empire had been long looked upon with an evil eye by Isfindarber Prince of Siphab (12), who fearing to be dethron'd, was meditating to weaken it by his utmost endeavours. That it would be in vain to attack to warlike a Nation, the unfortunate attempts of his Predeceffors had convinc'd him, and whether it was to be destroy'd by policy, he had refolv'd to try. Wherefore he had not only made peace with Murad, but also a league, and to remove all cause of suspicion, given him his Son Cashmbeg in hostage. Nay, he had observed the agreement, whilft he knew a numberless army was ready upon the least motion. But hearing Murad had taken a Wife, disbanded his army, and laid afide all thoughts of war, he imagin'd he had a fair opportunity to effect his purposes, and therefore like a lurking Tyger, with forces he had long been preparing, he rushes forth and cruelly destroys with fire and fword the neighbouring Cities Tarakly and Burni, to compel the unwilling to obedience, and terrify perhaps the Inhabitants from making a Defence.

#### Annotations.

Looks alone be known to be Emperor. For not to infift that fuch Expressions could hardly be spoken by the Turks who have no Picture of Mahomet, the Words themselves agree much better with the countertest Mustapha, whom they allow to have so exactly resembled the Mustapha whose Name he assumed, ther they who had before been about him as well as his Guards, affirmed that he was the same. I am apt therefore to believe that Phranza impair'd in

his Memory by age, cares, and calamities, when he began to write his History, ascrib'd what he had heard in his youth concerning the counterfest Mußapha, to the other Mustapha Brother to Murad.

(12) Laz ogli] of the Family of Lazarus, Despet of Servie, from whom likewise all Servie has received the Name of Lazogla Vilaseti, or the Land of Lazarus.

(13) Siphah] A Country in Afia

XI. Murad



9 5

. XI Muned upon news of this rebellion, instantly assembles his forces and paffer from Europe into Afia. When he came to Bolova, he is met by the Nobles of Siphab, detelling the daring and rash enterprize of their Prince, and humbly imploring him to depose Isfindarbeg and make his Son, whom he had in hostage, their Governor. When Isfindarber hears of ship unforeseen proceeding, not knowing what to do, he also comes to Murad, begs pardon, and offers both his second Son in hostere and his only Daughter, of incomparable beauty, in marriage to the Emperor; with which the Sultan being appeared, promifes to forgive his past offence.

Murad's expeditions in

XII. In his return from this expedition, he takes the famous City of Izanr, a place of great trade at this day; and fubdues not only that Town but the adjacent Countries Montesbe (14), Aidin (15), and Sarichas (16), with all the dominions belonging to Hamid ogli (17). The East being thus quieted, in the year 830 he turns his arms against the A. C 1436 Venetians, lays waste the Island of Janta (18), takes the Castle of Gio. gerjinlik (10), and with great spoils collected from the adjacent Countries on the Continent, returns victorious to Adrianople. The same year, near Ergene (a marshy place half-way between Constantance and Ederne) he orders to be built at a vast expence a Bridge of square stone, with seventy-two arches, and on the West-side, a Jami, Bath, Imaret and Chan.

Gierman egis fubjecks his dominions to Mural H 831

XIII. In the year 831, Gierman ogli (so often mention'd) taught by the examples of his neighbours, whilst he reflected on his former narrow escape, thought it safer to calm the Lion's rage with a peaccable Cession than have to do with his Talons. Wherefore he comes with A C 1427 profound respect to Murad's Court, and voluntarily delivers to him the keys of all his Towns. Murad gives him a very honorable reception, loads him with royal Presents, and makes him perpetual Sanjack of Ipfalam.

Murad invades Greece

XIV. After this, in order to subdue what yet remain'd in Greece, under the dominion of the Emperor of Conftantinople, he affembles both his Afiatic and European forces, and leads them into Greece As he met with no opposition, he takes Selanik, Atine + and Karline, and with a great number of Captives and Cattle returns with his victooious army to Ederne.

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(14) Montesbe] A Country known to Geographers by this Name.
(15) Aidm A Town of the Pro-

vince of Montefbe.

(16) Sarichen] Or Citron-Inn, a

Town of the fame Country, and the Country it felf.

(17) Hamid ogli] See Note, p. 41.

(18) Janta] An Isle of the Adriatic Sex subject to the Venetians, now called Zante, and formerly Zacynthus.

(19) Giogerynlik] A Fort on the Borders of the Morea whose ancient Name is forgot. It fignifies Etymologically a Pigeon-House.

XV The

XV. The next year 832, Greece being fubdu'd, he marries Isfindar-marnes Isfinbeg's daughter, betroth'd to him four years before, of whom after fix daughter beg's daughter, betroth'd to nim tour years belove, or whole and H 832 rears was born the great Mahomet, vanquisher of Constantinople, and H 832 A C. 1428 courge of Christendom.

XVI. At the time of this Hero's birth in the year of the Hejira 838, Caramangli Caraman ogli (20) rebels in Afia, as if with defign to crush in his in-rebels ancy the Conqueror of one half of the world. Murad immediately A C 1434 eads his forces into Afia, and at the first assault takes Akshebri (21) nd Conia. Caramanius Ibrabim beg finding himself too weak to resist he Imperial Army, goes to Menla Gamze (22), a Monk of great fame or virtue and fanctity, and intreats him to make his peace with the Emperor. The Monk readily undertook the office, and by his piety, everenc'd by all the Musulmans, or eloquence, (in which he is faid to lave excelled) so wrought on Murad, that forgetting the injuries done nim, he freely pardon'd Caramanius and restored him to his former state.

XVII. The Afiatic affairs being settled, in the year 839, a new ene-Murad delen.

ny arises in Europe, Morakraly brother of the Greek Emperor (23) As the Morea. his man was belieging Geogerfinlik, a Town on the borders of the Moea, Cassim Basha, Beglerbeg (24) of Rumelia, with a select band of

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(20) Caraman ogli] The fame Prince of Caramania who furrended his Country to Sultan Murad, and maried his eldest Sister. But how he came to fly out of Rumelia into Afia s not known.

(21) Aksbebri] Or White-Town in

Afia Minor.

(22) Menla, or Mola Gamze] At that time the most celebrated Saint amongst the Turks, whose Cell even to this Day is in Caramania, religiously visited by them.

(23) Morakraly] He feems to have been the Despot Demetrius, who about that time, according to Phranza govern'd the greatest part of the Morea. He is called Brother of the Grecian Emperor from the affinity he had with him

(24) Begierbeg] What the Word fignifies etimologically has already been shewn But it must be observed, that tho' all Bashaships where Governors are honour'd with three Tugs, are called Beglerbeglies, yet by way of eminence only three Bashas have at this Day the Title of Beglerbeg, namely, of Rumelia who resides at Sopbia, of Anadol who lives at Kiutabia, and of Damaseus, formerly also Nº 5.

the Basha of Buila. The rest, tho their Flatterers fometimes give them the Appellation of Beglerbeg, yet at Court have no higher l'itle than that of Desdur-mukerrem, 1. c. Plenspotentsaries. That Word is derived from Dura, by which a Character expresfing the Imperial Name is fignified, to bear which and to propole in the Emperor's Name Mandates in their Jurisdictions is allowed to these alone next to the Vizir. Such is their Authority in the Othman Empire, that, as long as they bear that Name, if they go from the Metropolis into the Provinces allotted to them, or are fent from one Province into another, in their Journey (without the Walls of Constantinople, where alone they have no Jurisdiction) they have a Power over all their inferiors, of whatever Province, equal with that of the prime Vizir They can at pleasure hang, behead, or punish with any other Death, the Guilty, nor can the Basha of the Place give them any Obstruction. His redress is only complaint to the Court against any abuse of Power in these Plenipotentiaries.



ħ

European foldiers unexpectedly attacked him and put him to flight The Conqueror having taken and slain most of his enemies, return'd laden with the spoils of their Camp.

War with the Bangerians

XVIII. Mean while, a fierce war breaks out with the King of Hungary. Battles are fought with doubtful and various fortune (25). fometimes the Hungarians, and more often the Turks, are defeated. At last the brave General of the war Michal ogli Alibeg (26), assembling a Gronger army, like an inundation over-runs the richer Provinces of Hungary; carries away captive the Inhabitants, little expecting fuch an incursion; and with great booty and fame returns to Adrianoph, in which City Sultan Murad orders to be built in the year 840, a flatch A C 1436. Jami (27) and Imaret, Structures worthy an Emperor

Belgrade befieged in vain

XIX. Whilst these things are transacting, the Hungarians taking All beg's departure for a flight, ruth again into the Turkift dominions destroying all with fire and sword. Murad to check then boldness and keep them more in awe, paffes the Danube near Vidin, and lays wait the country wherever his forces could march. At length he befiege the great Bulwark of Hungary, Belgrade (28), in order to secure his own People from the inroads of the Hungarians and to weaken his encmies by continual incursions; but fortune did not favour his designs For the brave defense of the besieged, and the approach of Winter force him to raife the Siege when he feemed to be very near taking the City But in his return he subdues Sophia (29), with some other Towns of Bulgaria.

Valak ogh 18 disposiesid,

XX. Murad was however vexed at his disappointment before Belgrade, and ascrib'd it not so much to the valour of the enemy is to treachery. Valak ogli was nearly allied to the Sultan in blood and friend-

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(25) various fortune] The Christian Annals ascribe glorious Victories in those Days to John Humades General of the Hungarians.

(25) Michal ogli] Of this Family I have spoken in the Preface. His Irruption into Hungary, and the Calamities thence brought upon the Christians, are passed over in silence by Christian Writers.

Corifian Writers.

(27) Jami] A large Mosch commonly known at this Day by the Name of Eiki Jami or the old Moseb, it is the largest of all those of Adviance and stands near the Place where the Vizir holds his Court.

(28) Belgrade] Alba Graca, formerly Taurunam, universally known and now limiting the Tarkis Empire on the side of Sungary. Whether the Turkis Losses in the Suge of thu Lity.

were fo great as the Christians relate, may justly be doubted by him, who reflects that after the raising of the Siege, the Turks in their return aifaulted and took Sophia and other Towns in the fame Country, perhaps Nuffa, Scepia, Novemani, or Shebirkiel) by the Confession of the Chrifrom themselves They indeed tay. that these Places were taken before the Siege of Alba Grara, but the Turks lay afterwards.

(29) Sopbia] The Metropoles of Bulgaria, and Residence of the Beglerbeg of Rumelt, a City without Walls. It feems to derive its Name from a Church built like Santia Sophia at Configurationaple, thu' not of the same largeness, and now turned into a

74mi.

thip (30), and had always to behav'd that it would have feemed a fin to question his fidelity. But upon a closer enquiry, it appear'd that he had not only discovered the Othman counsels to the King of Hungary, but also done his utmost to prevent the taking of Belgrade. Wherefore to punish so unexpected a treachery, the Emperor commands the eyes of his two Sons, whom he had in hoftage, to be put out, marches himself with an army into Servia, takes the City of Semendre on the Danube, seizes the territory of Zerin ogli (31), and thus dispossessing the Prince, subjects all Servia to his dominion,

XXI. Valak ogh happy only in escaping by flight the due reward of his and flies to treachery, applies to the King of Hungary (32), excites him against Hungary the Turks, and breaks off a treaty of peace; by which means, as if fortune had conspir'd against all his places of refuge, he became the occasion not only of the following flaughters, but also of that King's death.

XXII. In the year 844, the Mosch called Esks Jams (33) begun at caraman of Adrianople by Musa Chelehi\*, is finish'd The next year Caraman ogli "nel but Ibrahimbeg, inveterate enemy of the Othman Empire, kindled a new H 8; war. For breaking the conditions of peace, he had lately confirm'd by A C 111 oath, he enters with an army the Apatic Provinces definite of a defense, and miserably lays them waste: At the first notice of this affair Murad flies into Afia, offembles an army at Prula, and that the flate might not in the mean while fuffer farther damage, fends before tome choien forces he had brought with him. These are met in their march by Caraman's wife the Emperor's elder fifter (34) (given him formerly in marriage for the stricter band of their alliance,) who bids them halt and lay afide warlike thoughts, promifing to be arbiter of peace, and to end the war to her brother's fatisfaction. Accordingly the goes to her brother, fets forth in an elegant speech her husband's offence, begs pardon with tears, adding, her husband should bind himself by oath, never to act in the least against the Othman Empire, nor his soldiers on any account, just or unjust, ever set foot in the Emperor's dominions, and

# ANNOTATIONS.

(30) blood and friendship Christian Writers also relate, that George, Despot of Servia, gave his Daughter in Marriage to Murad for a Confirma-tion of the Peace And as these are more accurate in giving the Names of Princes than the Turks, I fee no reaion for questioning it, especially since they add, that the Sons of George, after the rupture between their Father and Murad, were deprived of their Eyes, which is acknowledg'd also by the Turks,

(31) territory of Zerin ogli] With the Turks, the Country along the River Save from its conflux with the Danube us far as Peterwaradin, 13 known by this Name.

(32) King of Hungary] This was Ladiflaus King of Hungary and Poland, more known by the Varnesian Slaughter than any other action (33) Esks Jams] Etymologically the old Mosch, of which, See Note a-

bove (27)

(34) elder fifter] The time of this Marriage is not afcertain'd, but it feems to have been after the furrender of the Caramanian Prince, in the Year of the Heitra \$21.

that the would be the pledge of those conditions. Her eloquence, and his brotherly affection entirely reconcile the angry Emperor. Wherefore on these terms Murad receives him into friendship, and confirming the former league by an Abd-name (35), returns into Europe.

Marad religns the Empire H 847.

XXIII. The Empire being now in profound peace, its enemies reduc'd, and a treaty concluded with the Hungarians (36), Murad tired with cares and expeditions, voluntarily refigns, in the year 847, the A. C. 1443. Empire to his Son Mahomet, and retires to Magnefia (37) with defign to lead a private life.

XXIV. When this was known, Caraman ogls who but the year before Caraman exCites the King had by the intercession of Murad's fister, obtain'd his pardon, thinking league against it a proper time to be reveng'd, meditates again the destruction of the Othman Empire. So discovering the treachery which he had long harbour'd in his bosom, he privately sends a letter to the King of Hungary, faying, " Murad, that old destroyer of the world, has abdicated the " Empire, and refign'd his scepter to his Son Mahomet, a youth un-" qualified by his age and understanding for the administration of civil " or military affairs. Wherefore if you ever intend to revenge the in-" juries you have receiv'd, a fairer opportunity will never offer. For " if I on the Afiatic, and you on the European fide, invade at the fame " time the Othman dominions, we shall doubtless very quickly rout out " the whole Othman race, and restore the injur'd and disposses'd Princes " to their former happiness."

Invasion of the Hungarians, &c

XXV. The King of Hungary, who had lately, with his hand on the Gospels, sworn by the immortal body of Christ to observe the conditions of the peace, would not have readily liften'd to this advice, if he had not been perverted by the authority of the Pope of Rum (38) his instigation therefore and absolution from his oath, he assembles an

#### ANNOTATIONS

(35) Abd name] an Arabian Word compounded of Abd, a Covenant or Condition, and Name, a Letter. By this Name the Letters are fignified which foreign Ambassadors, after a Peace obtain'd, procure from the Sultan, to their respective Princes, containing the Terms of the Peace (which the Arabians call Mevad) and ratified with the Dura, or Character of the Imperial Name.

(36) with the Hungarians] Shamefully broke by Ladiflaus, as shall be related in a following Note out of the

Turksh Historians. (37) Magnefia J No Christian Writer, whom I have feen, mentions this first Abdication of Sultan Murad. With the Turks it is clear that the Varagian War happen'd under Ma-

bomet II, of which Murad was only General, not being then Emperor, and that he, the War being finish'd, retired a second Time to Magnesia, and Mahomet from the Year of the Hejira 847, reign'd to the Year 850, when Murad being recalled by the Nobility, Mahomet by reason of his Youth, was fent to Magnefia to live privately till the Death of his Father, which the Series of this History will more amply deciare

(38) of the Pope of Rum] The unfeafonable Zeal of this Man has been fufficiently deplored by the Christians But the common Turks (not the more learned) believe the Pope to be immortal, and in proof of their Opinion relate a Fable, That a Pope being required in the Face with a second ing wounded in the Face with a Sword army and being joined by the Bobemian +, Polonian, Latin, Bulgarian + Chicks
Valak ogli's auxiliaries, who had all conspir'd the destruction of the
Othman Empire, he leads them into the Musulman dominions.

XXVI. So great armies confifting of such warlike nations, inspir'd Morad retience the Christians with as much courage as they struck the Musulmans with Empire terror. Their fear was increased by the youth and unexperience of their Emperor, and therefore they unanimously resolve in counsel to recal Murad to the Empire Whereupon Ambassadors with Makomet's consent are dispatch'd to Murad, beseeching him to resume the reins of the Government, and defend the State with his counsels and sword, so terrible to the enemies Murad rejects this ambassy, saying, "You have both an Empire and Emperor, do whatever you shall deem for your welfare and advantage: but env, me not the quiet and peace able life which after so much toil endur'd for your sakes, I think, "I have deserv'd." The Ambassadors returning a second time and urging him more vehemently, he at length consents, and with the utmost speed passes this Cal'spolis into Europe.

XXVII. At Adria tople having consulted with his Son and Great Men The battle about the flate of affors, he takes up n him (tho' unwillingly and after many intreaties) the office of General. To discharge which the more happily, he leads out his arms the third day, and with long marches proceeds towards Varna (39), where he was inform'd the Hungarian King

#### ANNOTATIONS.

by Invert the Caliph, the Scar of the Wound has been observed by Captives in the Popes of the present Age. I has acceptated even to their own dishonout

(39) Vaina] It is a Tradition of the Turl, that Mural calling a gener.l Co neil at Advianople before the Bittle of Parna, spoke thus, "We " (fays he) believe the Haziret Ifa the Holy 'fessis') to be, as indeed the is, the Rub Ulish (the Spirit of " Goal) born of a Virgin Mother, a Prophet highly beloved of God, " yet alive, but preferv'd from the malice and rage of the Jows and ' convey'd into the third Heaven, to reprove them for their trea thery, and the Nazrans (the Chri-(rolpel, and for exhibiting him whom we acknowledge to have been a very great Prophet, but " Days before the End of the World) " as the Son of God begotten from "I tern y and of the fame Majesty

" and Power with the World's Crea-" tor Moreover, amongst their o-46 ther Superstitions, they firmly be-" lieve fome Mysteries as they call " them, for instance, that Ifa Mehb " (Jejus Chrift) has endued his Priefts " with a Power of converting as of-ten as they please, Bread and Wine " into his real Body. Upon this " Mystery, and upon the Injul Sherif " (the Holy Gospel) they lately swore " a Peace with me; wherefore it is " not to be doubted that God whose "Gospel they have bely'd, whose Mysteries they have trampled upon, will certainly punish them" It is moreover related, that in the very Fngagement Murad ordered the Writing which he had received from the King of Hungary in Confirmation of the Peace, to be hung from the Point of a Spear and carried through the Ranks by an unarm'd Person, crying, out, "Let the Gaurler (Infidels) come es on against their God and Sacra-" ments, and if their belief of these "Things be certain, let them, O just 90

King lay incamped. That his speed might not be retarded by the Poot, he goes before with the Horle, and in three days coming in fight of the Hungarian Camp, immediately falls upon the enemies, but not with the facters he expected. For the right wing, defitute of Infantry, being unable to withfand the first shock are put in disorder and pursoned above a mile. But this prov'd the safety of both the Sultan and his Empire. For the young King of Hungary excelling the rest in valour, whilst he is resolved to complete the Victory which he now thought his own, in the heat of the battle challenges Murad to single combat (40). Murad accidentally meeting him; pierces his Horse with a Jirid (41), whereupon the King falling to the ground, the Janizaries (who were now arriv'd) instantly cut off his head, and putting it on the

#### A'NNOTATIONS.

God, who causes thy Sun to rise upon the Good and the Bad, declare
themselves their own Avengers,
and the Punishers of their own Ig-

" nominy."

(40) fingle combat] Whether the Turks forged this in honour of their Emperor, or the Christians are filent concerning it in order to conceal the rathers of Ladilaus, is left to the determination of the Reader. I am however more inclined to believe the Turks, because our Christians, and particularly Phranza, Book II. Ch. KIX, tell us, that the King penetrating as far as the Tent of Amera, fell there, his Horse being first wounded by a Janizary named Cha-

(41) Jirid A fort of light missive Javelin much used by the Turks. They who are expert in the use of it carry three of these Javelms in a Case hung from the right side their Horse, with which they hit the Mark with an exactness scarce to be match'd by the most skilful Gunners. Of this I shall give an Instance which, had I not been an Eye-witness I shall give an Instance which, had I not been an Eye-witness I shall sive an Instance which, had I not been an Eye-witness I shall sive of the former War before the Porces departed from Zenta, some of the Emperor's Chamberlains exercised this Sport before him on a Platin near Philippins. The Javelins they used were not pointed him blunt at the End. Che Militade Laga a Circussian, and Masker of the Stables, (4 Place of great Dipnity with the Thirt) was antong thems. One of the

Company hit him, un wares up on the Back with a Juid fent with great force. Mebemed asham'd, and perhaps enrag'd with the fmart, gave the reins to his Horse of the Ar Ap tian breed, and furtously purfied the flying Enemy, who tensible that it be rid directly or he could not escap-his pursuer, turn'd his Horse to the right, when Mchem I with a Javelin fent after him, blunt as it was, pierc'd the Jaws of his Horse, and threw both Horse and Rider to the Ground. The Lamperor feeing it, forbad Mehimed using that exercise I saw the same Man in oftentation of his Strength flrike an ordinary and pointless Juil through the outer Gate of a Monaftery in Moldavia, made of Planks three Inches thick The Turks accuftom their Bodies to this exercise in the following manner. They begin with the Iron Jirid (or Lobut as 'tis call'd) weighing 12 Occa's, (an Occa's is four hundred Drams) They fix the Thumb of their left Hand in their Girdle, and with their Feet in a right Line, throw the Javelin at a Heap of Mud as long as their Strength lafts, and fometimes hold out even to feven hundred Throws , they afterwards take a wooden Javelin, twice as large as an ordinary one, and when they have fix'd it two thousand times in the Mud, they then come to the common Javelin, which in respect to the Iron one feems a Feather, and thus continual practice makes them able Darters.

point of a Spear, show it to the enemy, crying out, Beheld: the bead of your King! At the same time they rally the scatter'd Horse, and the fight being renew'd, they break at the first charge, their enemies ranks and disperse them. The Christians make some stands, but night coming on (42) and wanting a Leader, they are entirely routed. Some few escape in the dark, and the rest are all slain, or made captives. Murad leads back to Adrianople his army not much lessen'd, and laden with the spoils of the enemies camp.

XXVIII. The glory acquir'd by this expedition would have been per- Murai rehaps to others an inducement to greater undertakings, but to Murad it figus agum was an instance of the uncertainty of human power. He had seen the Hungarian King, furrounded with so many armies, reverenc'd by so many nations, when he thought himself sure of victory, fall by one stroke of fortune, and his victorious forces put to rout. From whence he infer'd what might possibly be his own fate, after having enjoy'd so long a prosperity. Wherefore pursuing his former purpose he again delivers the scepter to his Son, and resolves upon a private life at Magncha.

XXIX. But neither there is he fuffered to be quiet. In the year 850 He is again the Janizaries, instruments formerly of many victories over their ene- recall'd by mies, now of the ruin of their fellow citizens, raife a great fedition on Sedition of fome flight occasion. Hence it came to pass, (as it usually happens in H 850 civil diffentions,) the houses of the citizens as well as of foreigners are Ch 1446 plunder'd, all persons that come in their way, without distinction of age or fex, are robb'd or murder'd, as if those who ought to defend the citizens had conspir'd to their destruction. Scarce any other cause of this rebellion could be affign'd but the Emperor's youth or too great clemency, on which relying these plunderers thought they might do what they pleased. Wherefore the great men to put a stop to this mischief send to Murad, intreating him by letter, " To take upon him " again the Government, for his Son Mahomet is young and not of " fufficient authority to appeale these tumults, wherefore they hope he " will have pity on the Othman State, and not fuffer an Empire he had " so well establish'd and enlarg'd to perish like a ship without a pilot. " nor the riches of the citizens acquir'd with so much labour, to be " seized by the rapacious hand of the Janizaries. In a word, so great " is their reliance on his prudence and approv'd management, that they " hope not only the peace of the Empire will be reftor'd, but render'd " much more illustrious under his conduct." Murad touch'd with the

#### ANNOTATION 8.

(42) but night coming on] Tis related that those who thought to escape thro' unknown ways, and in the dark, tell unexpectedly upon Mount Chemgie" (the old Hamus) and there were taken by the Country People in Cou- Writers.

ples and Leashes like so many wild Beats, but of the Princes and Generals of the Army, scarce Hannindes himfelf efcap'd; concerning whom, See the large Accounts of the Christian

present danger, remounts the throne (43) at Advianople, and fends la son to Magneha,

He fubdues Greece and Epirus, and expells Scanderbeg H 851

XXX. Murad being again at the helm, eafily appeales the civil dusensions, and the next year turns his arms against the schellious Cartriot, Iskenderbeg (44), and not only drives him out of his langdom and lays waste all Greece and Arnaud (45), but also takes by astaul, in the Morea, Balibadri and Akchebijar\* (46) Morcover be and I must-A C 1447 beg had without reason deserted the Mahometan religion, and recaches oully broken his faith, he converts all the Churches or striker I mit Yami and Moschs, and orders all the Epirots either to be circum and, a expiate his treachery with death \*. By this means all Aina... was in a short time initiated in the Mahometan faith

Defeats the Hungarians at Cossonia

1

XXXI. Whilst these things pass in Greece a new war is kindled on the borders of Hungary. For the King of Hungary (48) to revenge

#### ANNOTATIONS

(43) the throne] Christian Writers themselves tell us that Murad, after the Battle of Varna, retired to a monaftic Life at Prufa But his quitting this way of Life in by them aicrib'd to the Successes of Hunniades in Hungary, and the Rebellion of Scanderbeg, not to the Sedition of the Janizaries, or the Intreaties of the Bashas

(44) Iskenderbeg] The famous George Castriot Son of John, Prince of Epinar, whose warlike exploits are the subject of Volumes of the Christian Writers In his younger years his eminent Virtues procured him his Name from Murad, which is a corruption of the Greek Word Alexander, and, as I before observed, given to very scw Turks. The Turkish Historians mention only two Iskenders (or Alexanders) besides this Castriot, Iskender Rumi Ibnifelikes, or Alexander the Macedonian Son of Philip (whom they are in doubt, whether to place amongft Prophets or believing Princes, Heathen they will not allow him to be) and Iskenders Zuul Carnesn or Alexander Corniger, otherwise by them called Sabib Kiran Monarcha. By this Name we may conjecture that Hercules is understood, because they write that he carried no other Arms but a Club, which with them is called Gines | B | r this by the wi

(45) In 11 1 1 1 1 18 Col -F 12 1 11 Name are figured -(46, Anthebrat 1 . . .

whole meant Name I kit 48 King of Itro-1 (1 (\* determine who is here means to the Turks. For the lawful Prince of a gary at that time was I am nam'd Pollhamus, detain'd by L. deru Duke of Aufiria, and difown'd by the Hungarians I therefore conpecture, that fobn Hunmades, General of the Hungarian Army, is the Perfon here spoken of That he receiv'd fome defeats from Murad is not denied by Christian Writers, they aid indeed, that this was with fuch not i ble lois to the Turks, that Murad declared he should be unwilling to repeat his Conquests at so dear a prince The difference is, that the Christian Historians affirm their thing, happened before Green was lubdued, but the Turkifb afterwards

saclo

th

<sup>\* [</sup>Googs Caftrest was Son of John King of Epiral, or I or allbaria the was function put avoid his sons into Marial's Hands as Holtages. Of these the young, "was the Geogre, whom Marial was so such of these he exercilly trained him up in the Mohametan Religion, and the Turryly Discipline, and give him the Name of Skanderbeg, or Lord Alexander But whilst Mus and was in girl in the Hangerian Wars, Scanderbeg took an opportunity to withdrive mo Epirus, when he said by the Christian Historians, to perform Wonders against the Turks. He died at I said, it is the said Dominions, Jan 27 1467 being Survethee Years of Age.]

the death of his predecessor, in conjunction with other Princes famong whom was also the Prince of Walachia who had lately revolted from the Sultan) enters the Othman dominions. Marad, who was employed rather in fetling than fubduing Greece, hearing of this invafion, goes to Sophia quicker than could be imagin'd, and from thence with his Veterans and other troops raifed in Rumelia, marches against the enemy. But before the armies came in fight, the Beigher, certain Mufulenane, whom Murad had order'd to come to his affittance, whilst they are marching to his Camp, meet the Walachians at a diffance from the reft of the army, and attacking them, eafily put them to rout. Merad interpreting this as an omen of Victory, leads on his forces to Colleva (48), a Plain near Nigromonte, chiefly famous for that here the valiant Chodavendikar after his victory over Laz ogli was crown'd with Sebadet or Martyrdom. Immediately after his arrival at this place, he begins the battle, but not with the fuecess he expected, because the enemies being covered with armour, are proof against the sword. The Sultan seeing this, draws back his forces, and orders them to lay afide their light arms, and strike at the enemies heads with pole-axes and clubs. The Christians being furrounded on every side, and perceiving they could not withstand the Musulman's fury in open field, hem themselves in with their carriages, and retreating with a flow pace, valiantly fight from thence with various fortune till Sun-fet. At last, the King seeing his men discourag'd and scatter'd, assembles the bravest of his Horse. and exhorting the rest with a short speech to renew the fight, promises to go and fall upon the rear of the enemy, and by that means easily gain the Victory. Accordingly he withdraws from the battle; but more follicitous for his own than his people's fafety, instead of attacking the enemy's rear, takes to flight. The Soldiers finding themselves deserted by their General, despair of Victory, and leaving their Camp, turn their backs and shift for themselves. The Turks pursue them with cagerness, kill great numbers, and take many prisoners. There fell in the battle, except the King himfelf, all the German, Bobennan, and Polish Generals, and about two thousand made captives.

XXXII. Murad having gained the Victory, returns with honour to Marnes has Adrianople, and there marries the same year his Son Mahomet to the and dies Daughter of Soliman beg Prince of Elbisan (49). After which, in the H 855. vear 855, on Monday the seventh day of Muharrem, when he had A. C 1451. struggled some time with a light distemper, he departed this life.

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(48) Cossova A Place near Nigron. nie, famous for two mighty Battles, in the first of which Murad I,
gun'd a Victory over the Bulgarians
with the loss of his own Life, the second fought with the Hungarians by
Murad II. This Battle is to be met
No. 5

with in the Walachian Annals, which describe it so fierce and bloody as to exceed all before it, and not likely to be equalled by any to come after it.

(49) Elbisan A certain Country

of Ajia Miner mention'd before. Its ancient Name is not known.

B b XXXIII. Such



His Character and Mac. XXXIII. Sultan Murad lived forty-nine, and reign'd thirty years, fix months, and eight days. He was a just and valiant Prince, of a great Soul, patient of labours, learned, merciful, religious, charitable, a lover and incourager of the studious, and of all who excell'd in any Art or Science, a good Emperor, and a great General. No man obtain'd more or greater Victories than he. Belgrade alone withstood his attacks. Under his reign the Soldier was ever victorious, the Citizen rich and secure. If he subdu'd any Country, his sirst care was to build, Jami, Mojebs, Imaret, Medrese and Chan. Every year he gave a thousand Filuri to the Evladi resul allab (50), and sent two thousand five hundred to the Mahometan Monks at Mekie, Medinie, and Kudssheris (51), He had sive Sons, Mahomet, Aladin, Hasan, Orchan and Abmed.

#### ANNOTATION 5.

(50) Evladi reful Alla] i. e. Sons of the Prophet of God, properly called Emir, that is, Lords; they derive their descent from Fairma, a Sister of Mabomes. In former times they were, like the Levites, destin'd to the Worfhip of God, and received a yearly fripend out of the Treasury. They are now dispers'd over the whole Empire, and are diftinguish'd from the other Musulmans by wearing green Turbans instead of white. They may be tried before ordinary Judges, but are to receive their punishment from no Man, not even from the Emperor himself, but only from their own Head of the same Extraction called Nakib or Nakybul esbref, Chief of the Saints, and of the same Race. A Circumstance hardly credible, but however true, is observed in this Family, that the Emirs before their for-tieth Year are Men of the greatest Gravity, Learning and Wildom; but after that, if they are not quite Fools, yet they discover some sign of levity and stupidity. The this is interpreted by the Turks as a fort of divine impulse in token of their Birth and Sanctity, it is nevertheless a common Saying among them when they fee any stupid Person, Emir Soidur,

be is of the Race of the Emirs.

(51) Mekiè Medsmè and Kudssbersf Mecca, Medsma, and Jerusalem, are the three Places to which the Turks go in Pilgrimage. Mekiè or Kasbè is a City of Arabia, where stands a large Mosch (in the Place where before stood a lesser) buikt by Sultan Selim

Conqueror of Egypt. The Turks have a Tradition, that in this Place Abrabam pitched his Tents in such manner that no Traveller could pass by without being feen by him, and refresh'd with a draught of Water, and the third part of a Loaf. I hat Muhammed afterwards transported hither from the Celeftial Paradife a square black Stone, and plac'd it as a Mikrab, i. e Altar or Mark of the Place where God is to be worthipped. He that takes a Pilgrimage to Mecca, in the opinion of the Turks receives from God a full remission of even his reatest Sins. They likewise go on Pilgrimage to Medina, as to a Place made facred by the burial of their Lawgiver. They believe his Body to be preferv'd there uncorrupted and entire, except one Tooth, which in a Fight was, they fay, crown'd with Martyrdom. In the Book called Mubammedyé, containing the Life of Mabomet, it is related, that the Archangel Gabriel never stood in so much fear of the divine Wrath, as when a club of the Enemy striking the Mouth of the Prophet, beat out a fore Tooth, that therefore to prevent its falling to the Ground, the Arch-angel immediately dropp'd from Heaven, received it in its fall, and reftor'd it to the Prophet, but not to its former Situation. The Sultans have a human Tooth which they believe to have been Mahomet's, and preserve it a-mongst their choicest Treasures. They likewise with great care preserve a Robe of his in the Treasury, whose Border Abmed. Of these only Mahomet ascended the throne, all the sest died in his life-time of distempers. Hasan and Orchan were buried at Adrianople. Abmed met with death and a grave in Amasia (of which he was Lord) Aladin, who had succeeded Abmed as Sanjak of Amasia, died also there but was buried at Prusa.

you fool, it was

Annotations.

Border the Musti three days before the Ramazan (or Month of Fafting) after some Prayers, dips in Water, which from thence is believed to become holy and exempted from corruption. The Water called Abs Hyrcal Sherif, or The Water of the boly Robe, is put into small Glasses seal'd with the Seal of the Treasury, and fent by the Emperor to the prime Vizir, and the other Grandees, as a Mark of his Favour. When the Turks first break their Fast after Sun-fet, they pour a drop of it into a large Glass of Water, and after three sips, fwallow the whole at a Draught. They think that Kudssberss (or Jerusalem) is a venerable Place, so that he who in his visit to Mecca, passes by Jerusalem, is, according to them, no perfect Hays or Pilgrim. Their chief Devotion there is pay'd to the Church built by Justiman, by them falfely supposed the Temple of Soliman. They pretend besides that thereis a fquare Stone of three Cubits hanging in the Air, and miraculously suspended by Mahomet. For as he was ri-

ding on the Als (called Burak in the Koran) he was ordered by Gabruel to Assurated. ascend into Heaven, and immediately was taken up on high with his and the Stone whereon his Als flood, which the Arch-angel observing, faid, that his Command extended only to the Prophet, not the Stone; upon this Maho. met faid to the Stone, Dur ya Mubarek, Stand, O bappy Stone, and immediately the Stone rested in the place where it was. It is not permitted to Chriflians to enter into any of these three Places; and therefore when a Dutch Ambassador, by what means is not known, had obtained from the Emperor a Mandate to the Governor of ferusalem for his entrance into the Mosch, the Governor refused to obey the order. The Ambassador asking him the Reason of his Disobedience, his answer was, That he would strictly comply with the Mandate, which indeed allowed him an Entrance, but not a Return; he was therefore at his liberty to go in, if he was willing never more to come out. This stop'd the Ambaffador's Curiolity.

Cotemporary with MURAD II. in Europe.

At Configutinople, SONN PALEOLOGUS, 1421-45.
CONSTANTINE PALEOL. 1445-53.

In the West, SALBERT of Austria. 1437-39. FREDERICK III, of Austria. 1439-92.

In England, HENRY VI. 1422-60.

In France, CHARLES VII. 1422-61.

The End of the Reign of MURAD II.



- The REIGN of

# MAHOMET

Seventh EMPEROR of the TURKS.

# BOOK III. CHAP. I.

Mahamet grants peace to Caraman

. 41°42.

TE are now come to Sultan Mahomet Fatib (1), than whom the Othman Empire, not to say the whole world, never saw a more illustrious or more fortunate Prince. What several had wished, and few had ventured to accompte, was accomplished by him, namely, the conquest of Configuratinople; which City, fortified by Nature and Art, open to two Seas, and desended by a more numerous army than his, was by him taken and made the Scat of his kingdom, to the utter fubversion of the ancient vestern Empire. But so return to our history. Murad being dead. Mahamet II, now in the twenty-first year of his ago, is crown'd a fecond time (2) on the 10th of Mubarrem in the year 855 A C 1451 That very sugarage he leads our his forces against Caraman ogli, who never miffed an opportunity of raising diffurbances, and infesting the adjacent Countries. Caramian, when he hears of the Emperor's approach, perceiving himself too weak to oppose him, has recourse to his usual artifices, and fues for peace on any terms. The the Sultan knew the treacherous temper of the man, yet, not to be detain'd by so inconsiderable an enemy from greater undertakings, stifles his resentment, and grants the defir'd peace.

#### Annotations.

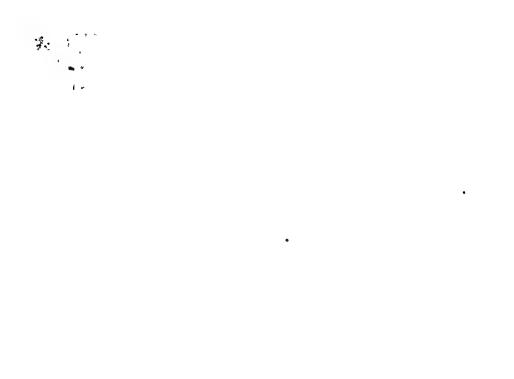
(1) Falib] An Arabian Word fignifying an Oponer for Vananther. This Lafe of his Father, but had refigned Name was given to Mahomet for his to him when he re-affum'd the Scepassault and conquest of Constantinople. (2) a second time Hence it is evi-

ter, of which we find no mention among the Christian Writers

dent he had been crown'd during the



( Thuhomet II Sernamid Futhe SON of MURAD, we worth EMPEROR of TURK in the Year 1451



II. The next year he makes greater preparations, orders Cannon to He belieges be made, and affembles out of all his Provinces an army, with which made, but on he marches to besiege Constantinople. The Greek Emperor, terrified at a peace he de fo great danger, fends Ambaffadors to the Sultan, and humbly begs peace on whatever conditions he should please to impose Mahomet tells the Ambassadors, "That he pities the Emperor's case: and there-" fore cannot in conscience deny peace to the humble. But least he " should be blam'd by his own people, for having been at so great an " expence, and for arming almost all Afia, without any advantage to the " Othman affairs, he defires Cafar to give him for ever a little spot of " land on the European bank of Bogaz +, no bigger than an Ox-hide (3). + The Bog-"On this condition he would immediately withdraw his forces, and phorus " ratie the Siege." The Greeks readily confent, thinking it great gain to redeem themselves from such danger with so small a matter. The terms therefore being confirm'd on both fides, he fends his army to Adrianople.

III. Mahomet, after raising the Siege, shows the Grecian Ambassa- He shats up dors a rocky place (4) on the bank of the Bosphorus, and demands the acastle possession. Upon their consent he orders an Ox-hide to be cut into small thongs, and with them inclosing a piece of ground five hundred paces in circumference, seizes it to his use, the Greeks not daring to gainsay it. Here he builds in forty days a castle with thick walls, and fortisted with five high Towers, representing the letters of Mahomes's name (5), and immediately after runs up another (6) to answer it on the Asatic bank. Moreover he provides these Castles with great Guns, and other warlike Stores, and strengthens them with a good Garrison, ordering the Governors not to let the Vessels pass which daily brought provisions to Constantinople from the Euxine sea. This done, he returns under the appearance of peace to Adrianople, and on the third

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(3) Ox-hide.] Mahomet feems to have imitated Eliza Queen of Carthage, whose Fraud is to be seen in Justin, Book XVIII. Chap. V. For not only Turks, but Lonicerus himself (Tom. I. p. 37) allow him to have been studious of Antiquity, and particularly delighted with reading the Expeditions of ancient Kings and Generals, as of Alexander the Great, of Scipio Africanus, of Hannibal, of Julius Casar, &c.

(4) rocky place] It is on the European fide of the Bofphorus, about fix Italian Miles from Constantinople.

(5) of Mahomet's name This is a Tetragrammaton or Word of four Letters with the Turks, namely, Mim, Hha, Mim, and Dal, which with the Telbdid over the latter Mim to show it No. 5.

must be doubled, make sive Charactera in all. As so many Towers fortisted the above-mention'd Castle, these Towers are said to have had by accident some resemblance of those Letters; from whence the Emperor drew a certain Presage, that he should take Constantinople, because the Castle built by himself had a fortuitous Inscription of his own Name. It is at this day called Rumeli Hisare, i. e. the European Castle.

(6) another] It stands on the Asiatic side over against that just mentioned, where the little River Gioksia (or blew Water) falls into the Bosphorus, and is at the Day called Anadolusars, or the Asiatic Castle.

Cc

day after his entrance, lays the foundations of that stately Palace, which is at this day called Jiban Numa (7).

Befieges Con-

IV. In the third year of his reign, and of the Hejira 857, Mahomet Reminople a at last discovers the designs which he had hitherto conceal'd in his breast. For raising as great an army as possible, he marches from A-A. C. 1453 drianople towards Conflantinople, and closely belieges it In this expedition, besides other Engines hitherto unheard of, that was particularly worthy of admiration, by which from the North-fide some Vessels were brought over hills and declivities, into the inner Haven, and occafion'd the taking of the City (8). For doubtless, vain would have been the efforts of the land-army, which tho' they strongly assaulted Ederne Capu (0) and Egrs Capu, could not prevail against the Greeks, render'd valiant by despair, had not the Sea-forces thro' the gate Phonar (10) taken

#### ANNOTATION &

(7) Jiban Numa] 1. e. Watch-Tower of the World, because from the Women's Apartment built to a great height, there is a Prospect into all

(8) the City] The Turks fay, that the Sultan observing that his Ships could not enter the Haven, which extends as far as Blacherna, and that it would be very difficult to affault and take the City from the Continent, he order'd some Vessels to be built on the Continent, and carried over Land the Space of several Italian Miles, from the Village Besbiktash to Galata, and fent into that part of the Haven now called Cajim Pajha, from which being apply'd to the Wall, his Soldiers first took the Gate called Phenar

(9) Ederne Capu] 'Tis a Gate, on the Continent opening towards Adrianople, and from thence called Adrienople Gaie. To the North of it the next Gate is Egri Capu (Oblique Gate) memorable for the most satient Palaces in Conftantinople. Their are reported by fome to have been built by Belsfarius, first the Avenger of Italy, and afterwards the Sport of Fortune, by others they are afcrib'd to Constantime the Great, but erroneoully For the present Palation (in the Turkijh Language Balat) which Name the Region about them has retain'd, fufficiently eventer, that these stately Structures were Imperial, and built by later Emperors. In the Ruins of these, in the time of Sultan Mabomu, was found by a Boy, a Diamond, frid to weigh 120 Scruples A Spoon

maker purchased it for twelve woo den Spoons, and ignorant of its value, shew'd it to a Jew The crafty Tew, well knowing its worth, pretended it was only a Chrystal, and offered a golden Crown for it, and upon the Man's infifting upon three, very readily told out the Money The Spoon-maker wondering the Jew offered to much Money for a Chrystal, changes his Mind, and demands ten Crowns The Jew agrees to it, which made him think it a precious Stone, and therefore told him. he was only in jeft, that the Stone was not his own, otherwise he would have fold it for a Crown The The perceiving the Fellow knew the Stone was fomething more than a Chrystal, prefers a Petition to the Emperor, and discovers what he had teen The Sultan without delay fends for the Spoon maker and his Diamond Amaz'd at the Lustre and Size of it, he handfomely rewarded the Jew and the Spoon-maker, and threw it a-monght his Jewels It was afterwards called Kashikchi\* Tashi, the Spoon-maker's Stone, and is believed by the Turks not to have its fellow in the whole World. But that Palace is called by the Turks. Tekksur Seras, or the Palace of the Gracian Emperors.

(10) Phenar] Vulgarly Finer, a Gate looking to the lower Haven of Constantinople, and particularly celebrated at this Day, because in the neighbourhood of it, the more noble and wealthy Greeks have their Residence. taken great part of the City, and compell'd the rest to surrender to Mabomet. These things happen'd on the fifty-first day of the Siege, the negligence

ANNOTATIONS.

Here stands also the Patriarchal Seat and Cathedral Church, famous, as for other Things, fo for its containing the Sayings, Writings, and Acts of all the Patriarchs fince Confiantinople was taken by the Turks, accu-Not far from hence rately written is an Academy built for the Instruction of Youth, by one Manolaki a Greek, who had nothing ignoble in him but his Blood. In this Academy are taught Philosophy in all its Branches, and the other Sciences in the old uncorrupted Greek In my time there flourish'd here Prelates and Doctors of great Plety and Learning, namely, Johannes Carcophyllus an excellent Divine and Philosopher, afterwards the celebrated Preacher of the Cathedral-Church , Balifius Scaviphylan, Antonius and Spandonius, Perspatette Philosophers, Jacomius an accurate Grammarian, from whom, during my Residence at Constantinople, I learned the Flements of Philosophy, Sebastus, sufficiently known by his Controversial Writings against the Latins, and his Ecclesiastical Calender; Dionyjius Ilieromonachus, and Alexander Maurocord uus, celebrated by the learned World on many accounts, Professor of Philosophy, Divinity, and Physic, afterwards Interpreter to the Othman Court He writ, belides a Tract on the Circulation of the Blood, printed ieveral times in Italy, a large History from the Foundation of the World to our I mes, also Letters, and other little Works innumerable, which I now hear are published in Moldavia, by the care of his Son Nicolaus Maurocordasus, a Man well vers'd in the Oriental and Occidental Learning. For we are not to imagine, with the generality of Christians, that Greece is to far funk in Barbarifm, as not in thefe latter Ages to have produc'd Men little inferior to the most learned of her ancient Sages. To fay nothing of Times more remote from us, even our Days have feen three Patriarchs of eminent Reputation for Learning, one of Con-

stantinople, and two of Jerusalem. He of Constantinople was Callinicus, a very eloquent Orator, who, which feldom happens, died in his Patriarchate. Those of Jerujalem were, Dositheus, and his Kiniman and Successor Cbryfanthus, yet, as I hear, alive. From the first, belides other Monuments of his Learning, we have three printed Volumes of Controversial Writings against the Latins. Besides these, there flourish'd at Constantinople, Meletius Archbishop first of Arta, and afterwards of Athens, a Man skilled in all Parts of Learning, but chiefly studious of the Helmontian Principles (or rather those of Thales) which he also explain'd to me for the space of eight Months, Elias Minian Hieromonachus, a most acute Philosopher, and eminent for his Knowledge of both dogmatic and icholastic Divinity, afterwards Bishop of Messene in Peloponnesus; Marcus Larissaus an excellent Grammarian ; Metrophanes Hierodiaconus, chiefly studious of Poetry, and a happy Imitator of the Ancients; Lucinius born at Monembasia or Malvasia, Philosopher and Physician, and both ways eminent. He was chief Physician of our Court. His Skill and Experience in the Medical Art, pro-cured him both Efteem and Authority amongst the Turks. He after-wards left Constantinople, and in his own Country was honoured with the Title of a Count by the Republic of Venuce. About a year after he was taken in Monembasia by the Turks, and, as I am inform'd, publickly hanged in Constantinople for a Literary Commerce which he had before held with the Venetians. Constantine Son of Ducas, Prince of Moldavia, superior to most in the ancient Greek, and in Philosophy, a Scholar of Spandonsus; Andronseus of the noble Race of the Rhangavi, justly praised for his Knowledge of the Greek Tongue in its purity, and for his reading the Fathers. To these I might justly add Jeremias Cacavela, a Cretan by birth, Hieromonachus, and Preacher of the

negligence or treachery of the Vizir (11) (who was faid to be corrupted by the Christians) preventing the City from being sooner taken. But I shall relate the particulars of this affair more largely from the Turkish Historians.

The City taken by af-

V. The Christians after fifty days Siege, tir'd with continual labours fault next the and watchings, when they see but few, tho' brave, defenders remain, their Walls full of Breaches, their Batteries destroy'd, in a word, the City block'd up by sea and land, and destitute of all assistance, believe, upon mature deliberation, that there is no fafety but in a furrender, being perswaded that the Vizir, whom they knew to be corrupted by them, would be very serviceable in the affair. The Emperor himself approves of the advice, and fends Ambassadors to Mahomet to make his own terms. As they are coming out of the City with white Streamers in their hands, the tokens of peace, they are civilly receiv'd by the Sultan, who promifes to give the Inhabitants their lives and goods, with liberty to remove wherever they pleas'd. The Ambassadors offer the surrender of the City on these conditions, and are sent back to give their master an account of their proceedings. But before they reach'd the walls, Sultan Mahomet, having fomething to communicate to them, orders them to be recalled. The Messengers accordingly pursue the Ambassadors (who were now some way before them) with full speed. The haste of this Turkifb band caused the Centinels on the Ramparts to suspect that Mahomet would fraudulently attempt to enter the City with the Ambaffadors. Wherefore they fire upon the unwary Turks, to hinder their nearer approach. The Turks, when they unexpectedly see some of their companions grievously wounded, found a retreat, and coming to the Sultan, declare what had happen'd. Mahomet imagines the Greeks had repented of their agreement, and treacherously wounded his people. Wherefore, full of indignation, he orders his army to be ready. and by their bravery to destroy the remains of the perfidious enemy. On the other hand, the Greek Emperor being told by the Centinels,

#### Annotation s.

Great Church at Confiantinople, from whom I drew the first Precepts of Philosophy, Anastasius Condoids, a Coregran by birth, Preceptor to my Sons; as likewise Anastasius Nausis a Macedoman, a Man whose eminent Knowledge in Greek render'd him fufficiently known both in England and Germany.

(11) of the Vizir] He feems to be Haul Pasha, whom Phranza, Book III. Chap. XIII. names as chief of the Council, and the most approv'd of all, and says he advised Mahomet to defift from this War, not only before the Siege, but even repeated and con-

firm'd his Advice afterwards, when Things succeeded not to his wish, but his Opinion being rejected, he privately betray d the Resolutions of the Council to the Greek Emperor, for which reason he was, a few Days after the City was taken, put to Death. We are not to expect fuch Discoveries from the graver Turkifo Historians, who tho they are not ignorant of the Treachery of their own Ministers, yet never clearly express it, as well not to pay so much regard to the Memory of Traytors, as to spare the Honour of that eminent Degree in which they are placed

that

that the Turkish army attempted to take the City by fraud, and were now approaching the walls, commands his people to arm and exert their utmost in this extreme necessity. The Greeks are animated by their present danger, and seeing despair to be their only refuge, are refolutely bent to defend the City. Whereupon there enfues a fierce and bloody conflict, one fide fighting for religion, liberty, and life, and the other for Victory and Empire. But whilft the Greeks valiantly fight on the fide of the Continent, those that defended the City from the Haven, being beaten from the walls by the enemy's darts, give the Turkish forces an opportunity to enter the Town

VI. In this affault the Emperor himself falls whilst he is bravely act- The Finging the part fometimes of a General, fometimes of a Soldier, and in tor huntel the greatest dangers animating his men by his presence. By his fail, the whole glory of the Greek Empire is laid in the dust. His headless body was found on that of an Enfign-bearer, from whence the place to

this day has acquir'd the name of Sanjakdar Yokushi (12).

VII. When these things were known to those who yet bravely re- The other pelled the attacks of the Turks/b land-forces, they refolve to feek their put of the City furrenlast hopes of safety in the surrender already agreed on. Wherefore deri erecting on the walls the fignal of peace, they cry aloud from the Ramparts, " Why do you without the fear of God, causelessly, and " for no fault of ours break your promise? The agreement for the " furrender of the City is now made and order'd by both Emperors to " be satisfied. Desist therefore from fighting, nor assault those who " have promifed to be your future subjects." Mahomet hearing these words, and ignorant perhaps of what had passed in the Haven, commands the battle to cease, promises to stand to the former conditions. and so receives the other part of the City by surrender.

VIII. Next day, Mahomet enters by the gate called Topkapu, and to Mahomet ex the Greeks, anxious about their religion and lives, makes the following plans the Conditions of determination. " I promised you in our agreement, that if you chose the surrender 6 to remain here, all the Churches and Monasteries should be un-" touch'd, and your religion fuffer no damage. But fince I have re-" ceiv'd half the City by force of arms, and half by furrender, I think " it just, and accordingly order, that the religious Houses and " Churches which stand in that part I have conquer'd, be converted " into Jami, and the rest left entire to the Christians." So from Akleras (13) to Sancta Sophia, all the Churches were turn'd into Jami,

## ANNOTATIONS.

(1') Sanjakdar Yokushi] 1 e. Aj- which the Turks have left to the Chricents or Ilills with Enfigns upon them. It is a high Mount, on whose Top a Temple is erected, not far from the the Street called by the Turks which Cathedral Church, in honour of the looks to the Propontis, where now Virgin Mary, the only ancient Church are feen beautiful Chambers of the Nº 5.

strans.

(13) Akseras] Whste Palace, fo is D d Janizaries but from the Temple Suly Monastyr (14) to Ederne Capu, all remain'd to the Greeks.

He goes in Procession to

IX. After this, the land and fea-forces being affembled in the marketplace Akferai, he goes in a triumphal procession to Sancta Sophia, and there orders the Ezan (15) to be fung, and Namaz to be perform'd. After prayers he goes to the Imperial Palace, and as he is entering, being addicted to Poetry, he is reported to fay an extempore Diffich in the Persian Language (16). The taking of Constantinople (17) happen'd

#### ANNOTATIONS.

Janizaries called by the Turks Yengudalar, or the New Mansions, thro' this Street it is not permitted even to the Women of the Janizaries to pass. For whatever injuries they receive from them here go unpunish'd. But if any Whore voluntarily comes into it for the embraces of a Man, it is customary to hang her Turban on a knife, stuck in the Wall at the entrance of the Street, on fight of which all passing that way turn off to another Street.

(14) Suly Monastyr] The watry Monastery. It was in the times of the Christians, a Church of the Arminians, who took up all that quarter of the City. It is now a Jami, and owes its Name to the Springs which flow from the Foundations of the Church.

(15) Ezan] A Hymn containing the Profession of the Mubammedan Faith, repeated five times a day to call the People to Prayers, from the highest Tower of the Jams called Minare, by the Chanter Muezin. On Friday is added a fixth Ezan called Sella, two hours before the Noon Namaz, which is followed by no Prayers, as neither does the Tempid which is fung before the Morning Prayers, immediately precede these Prayers, for it is as it were a Doxology to God, the Giver of Light, and Sanctifier of the facred Day There are but two Heads of Confession, namely, There is no God but God, and Mubammed is bis Prophet To the Ezan is usually added, "God is the most high, there " is no God but God, and Mubam-" med is his Prophet; (which is twice " repeated) come to the Place of " Tranquillity or Integrity (meaning Mecca) come to the Afylum " or Salvation" As the Christians

when they take a City fing their Te Deum; so the Turks for the like Success thunder out their Ezan in the Churches, which they immediately

convert into Jami,

(16) Persian Language The Diftich was, Perde dari mikuined ber kyfr Caifar ankebut Bumi neubot mizenedber kiumbeti Efrafiyah, that is, "The Spider has wove her Web in the " Imperial Palace, the Owl has fung " her watch Song upon the Towers, " of Efrafiyab," (a Palace of the King of Perfia, celebrated in the Tur-his Fables) This Oracle feems to intimate the downfall of the proud Majesty of the Grecian Emperois. For as we see Spiders throw their Webs over ruinous and deferted Houses, in like manner, the Grean Empire, subverted and wrested from its ancient Possessors, is likely to become as the Palaces of Etinfiyab, in which, instead of Guards, Owls make their Nests, and scream out their direful Notes. A true Prediction, and fulfilled in every Circumstance 1 For at this day, as I before observed, the Palace of the Grecian Emperors is become the Residence of Owls and Bats, a lively Emblem of the destroy'd Empire

(17) of Constantinoph | I am not ignorant that almost all the Christian Historians, both Greek and Latin, give a different Account of the taking of this City, and make the whole to be acquir'd by Arms. But many Confiderations (by which the Truth of what is here related is evidently supported) hinder me from being mov'd by their Authority. First, the concurrent Testimony of all even the gravest Historians amongst the Turks. Of them both ancient and mo-

in the year of the Hejira 857, on the 20th day of the month Jemaziul

X. The

## ANNOTATIONS.

dern, however disagreeing in their Narrations of other Facts of their Emperors, when they come to this head, with one Mouth as it were declare, that half of the City (and indeed the greatest part of it) was furrendered to Muhammed on covenanted Terms, which they have also transmitted to us. Now as it is customary with most Oriental Writers, not the Turks alone, to magnify their own Affairs, and as much to depress and fink those of others, I can hardly believe they would affert a Lye to their own dishonour For to take a City by force of Arms, is by all Nations, which have any sense of military Prowess, esteem'd much more honourable, than to receive it by furrender A fecond, and still more strong Argument is, the Greeks were quiet Pofleffors of their Churches in the furrendered part of the City under three Emperors, Mahomet II, Bajazet II, and part of the Reign of Selim I, who indeed afterwards took them away. The Acts of these Churches during those times are to this day preserv'd in the Records of the Patriarchal Church. How they came to be taken away, I shall relate from a grave and co temporary Historian of the Turks, All I ffends, a Native of Philippopolis, who held the Office of Chazne Kiatibi. or Secretary of the Treasury under the celebrated Ferbad Pasha Testerdar, or Treasurer to Sultan Selim I. This account will ferve to confirm my Opinion concerning the furrender of the City Selim I on a Time zenlous for the Propagation of his Fifth, fent for the Mutti, and talking familiarly with him on indifferent Matters, at last artfully turn'd the Discourse, and seriously asked him which he thought would be most pleasing to God, and most redound to his Honour, to fubdue the whole World to the Othman Empire, and make the Followers of Iffevi (Jefus) and Musavi (Moses) tributary to himfelf, and fo bring into the Treasury of Bestulenal Muslimin, of the Musulman

State, the Wealth of for many Kingdoms, or, despising so great a Treasure, convert all Nations to the Mubammedan Faith? The Mufti, not comprehending his meaning, answered, that one lost Soul (and such was that of every Christian and Jew) recovered to the true Faith, was of infinitely more value in the fight of God, than the Riches of the whole Earth. The Findered by this Fetva being confirmed in his Opinion, a few Days after fent for the Prime Vizir, and ordered him to convert all the Churches of the Christians into Jami, to forbid them the publick Profession and Worthip of their Religion, and by all means use his endeavours to reconcile them to the Profession of Muhammedifin, with even capital Punishment of fuch as disobeyed the Imperial Mandate. The Vizir, thunder-struck with this Innovation, and the Command of an attempt fo contrary not only to the Mahometan Law, but to the good of the Empire it felf, knew not what to reply; but hearing that the Mufti had confirmed the Emperor in this by his Fetva, he immediately leaves the Court, and going to him, sharply reproves him for the Counsel he had given. The Musti owns himfelt over-reached by the Emperor, but with an Oath promises his Endeavours to repair his Mistake, and recover the Emperor to a better Mind. They then consult together, and privately dispatch a Perion to the Greek Patriarch, to furnish him with an answer to the Imperial Mandate when there should be occafion. Next they opened the Mandate to the Caimacan, ordering him to convert all the Churches of the Chrifinant into Jame, and compel all the Inhabitants of Confinatinople of another Faith by all means to embrace Mabometism. He receiving the Mandate, fummons the Patriarch and all his Clergy to the Palace, and reads to them his Instructions. Patriarch, as taught before by the Vizir and Mufn, answers, that he would

End offer. X. The City being thus settled the third day after it was taken, Monument is the Sultan is told, that a certain Mahometan General Ebv Eyub En-

### ANNOTATIONS.

would try the Matter with the Empefor, and plead his Cause before the Mufti, and others learned in the Law. and whatever the Sentence of God fhould determine according to the Law of the Coran, by that he would abide. But should he be denied this Justice, he would require the Souls and Sins of himfelf and all his People, in another World, and before another Tribunal. The Caimacan fent the Patriarch's answer to the Vizir, inclosed in a Letter according to order, and with it the humble Petition of the Christians. These being received and read, the Mufti with the Vizir goes to the Emperor, tells him that the Patriarch of Constantinople refused Obedience to his Mandate, and gave for a reason of his Disobedience, a Trial which must first be had between himself and the Emperor. But, added the Musti, as at the Voice of Emrisheriyn, let the Will of Righteousness be performed, flowing Waters ought to stop; so I think it but just that your Majesty should hear his Complaints, and vouchfafe them an Answer. The Emperor, fensible that he could do nothing by force, contrary to the Opinion of the Mufti, replied, let it be fo, and ordered the Patriarch, the Metropolitans, and fome others of the Seniors to attend him at Adrianople. When they stood in the Divan, they complained that the Emperor's Mandate was not only injurious to themselves, but rashly violated and trampled upon the Covenant entered into with his Anceftors, and confirm'd by an Oath The Emperor's Testerdar Effends (for he always pleads the Sultan's Caufe) asking them what Covenant it was that they talk'd of? The Patriarch anfwer'd, " Be it known to your Ma-" jesty, that our Ancestors volunta-" rily furrendered one half of Con-" ftantinople to Muhammed Fatth, on " Condition, 1. That the Churches of " the Christians should not be turned " into Jami. 2. That Marriages, Funerals, and other Rites of the

" Christian Worship, should be so-" lemniz'd as usual, without Lett or " Molestation. 3. That the Feast of Easter should be kept with full 66 Liberty, and for that purpose the " Gate Phenar left three days open " for the Christians to come from the " Suburbs, and join in the noctur-" nai Devotions of the Patriarchal " Church. On these Conditions (I " fay) did we furrender the City to 45 your Majesty's Grandiather, with \*\* the tender of the Keys in golden 66 Bowls, and by his Sentence were " confirm'd in the possession of our \*\* Churches to this day, and religi-" oully protected by two of your " Ancestors from all Violence, which 66 Rights your Majesty is now wrest-" ing from us, with what Injustice to " us I need not fay. To the other " head of your Majesty's Mandate " which orders us to quit Christia " mily, and embrace Mahometi/m, be-" fides what is before elledged, I " have to fay, that it contradicts the " Law of the Coran, which expreisly " tays, No Person who from his " entrance into Manhood, to his ic-" ventieth Year, annually " thirteen Drams of pure Silver in "the name of a Tribute, shall be forc'd into Mahometrim" I o the Mufti confirming by his Testimony that fuch a Law was owned by Commentators on the Coran, and even to be found in the Text it felf, and ought to fland inviolable, the Imperial Advocate answered, That it was a doubt with no Man, that what the Patriarch had produc'd out of the facred Coran, and the Mutti confirm'd, was true and highly venerable, but his Account of the furrender of Constantinople appeared neither true nor probable. The Patriaren being asked by the Mufti, whether he could produce the Instrument of this Covenant, was answer'd by him, that it perish'd in a Fire, but that he had three Eye-witnesses amongst the Janizaries themselves, on whose Faith he durst rely for the Confirmation of

fari (18) had long fince foretold that he should be crowned with Martyrdom under Constantine, but that an Emperor of the Mullimans who should take the City, would by revelation discover his Monument. The Sultan, desirous of fulfilling the prediction, asks Sheich Akshems-iddyn,

#### Annotations.

what he advanc'd. The three Janizaries, each almost 100 years old, were produc'd, and before the Mufti, owned that they were present at the taking of Constantinople, and with their own Eyes faw the Greek Nobles come out of the City, and prefent the Sultan, yet in a Tent without the Walls, the Keys in golden Bowls, and require and obtain the Grant of the three mentioned Conditions Here -Notwith the Emperor interpos'dstanding, fays he, these Conditions were granted to the Christians by our Grandfather, yet since neither Justice, nor our Law, allows fuch beautiful Buildings destin'd to divine Worship, to become Butchane, Houses of Idols, we cannot confirm the Conditions. Wherefore, according to the Prefcript of the holy Koran, we give all Christians leave to make a publick Profession of their Religion; but it is our Will and Pleasure, that all Churches built of Stone, and hitherto possessed by Christians, be entirely turn'd into Jami; with liberty nevertheless to build wooden ones in their room, or repair any fuch as are worn out with time. According to which Mandate the Patrisrchal Church called Panmacaristos, (which on the West looked to the Palace of Mol-davia, called Bogdan Seras, on the East to the Walachian Palace called Cara Iflak, corruptly Ulab Seras) was then converted into a Jame by the Name of Fethiye, and shortly after all the rest. I thought it proper to produce these things out of the before-mentioned Turkish Historian, which deferve the more regard, as no other Turkish Writer delivers the Christian Affairs with greater Care and Modefty. I found the Book at the House of a Greek at Philippopolis, nor did I ever happen to fee any other Copy of After my departure it remained at Constantinople, and came, as I hear, into the Hands of John Maurecorda-Nº VI

tus, who is now Interpreter to the Othman Court, with other Collections of mine concerning the Affairs and Manners of the Turks. And of all the Churches which for almost a whole Century the Christians were in Possesfion of after the calamitous Conquest of Constantinopie, only one was left them by Selim, and that in favour of a certain Greek Architect, who had built for Selim at Adrianople, a large and elegant Temple. He was Nephew of another Architect, whom Sultan Mabomet II, intrusted with the care of a Jam: which he built at Constantinople, and for his faithful execution of the Defign, prefented him with the Church above mention'd, together with the whole Street in which it stands; of which Grant an authentic Record is to this day preferved in the Treasury of that Church. Near that quarter, when I was at Constantinople, I raised a Palace on a high Hill called Sanjakdar Yokushi ; the Building was elegant, and afforded a Prospect over almost the whole City and Suburbs. Under Sultan Mahomet IV, my Father-in law Serban Cantacuzenus, Prince of Walachia, having raifed from the Valley Walls of 25 Cubits high, levelled the Ground for a Garden, and had now raifed the first Wall of his House at an expence of 35000 Imperial Crowns, when he received an order to proceed no farther, because he could already look into the Imperial Palace called Terfane Serai. At length, by the Intercession of the prime Vizir Ali Passa, I obtain'd leave of the Emperor to carry on the Building of my Palace on the old Foundations, which I had hardly fi-nish'd, when I was, as it were, thrust into the Principality of Moldavia.

(18) Ebu Eyub Enfari A Suburb fo called from the Monument Eyub Enfart, fituated at the head of the mner Haven, where the River Kiagyz chane discharges it self. Near this

who by a divine impulse, (as 'tis pretended) always accompanied the Emperor, to prevail with God by his prayers, to reveal to him the Monument of Eyub Enfari, that so great a testimony of the divine original of the Mabometan law might not be lost. Sheich being told the place in a vision, carries the Sultan into the Suburbs, which from that General's name is at this day called Eyub, and in a certain spot orders the ground to be dug up; by which means a great stone is found with this Inscription, Hexa Cabri Sabibi Reful-allab, Abi Eyubi Chalidin Zidul-ensari, which may be thus render'd: "This is the Sepulcher of the lasting friend, or counsellor, and of the never dying Apostle of God, Eyub, whose aid be increas'd and prevail." Mahomet gives God thanks for this discovery, and commands a Turbè (19), Janu, and School to be erected over the Tomb.

Mahehet's farther Progress.

H 858.

H 860.

H 860. A C 1455.

Oak crushes all the neighbouring Trees, the adjacent Towns, particularly Syllivri (20) and Burgaz, offer their keys to the Sultan, chusing rather to make him their gracious Sovereign than Conqueror The next year the Emperor builds in the center of Constantinople the great Palace called at this day Eski Serai (21). In the year 860 he goes with

XI. About the same time, just as the downfall of an old spreading

# ANNOTATIONS.

Place frood formerly the Monastery of the Blacherna, dedicated to the Virgin Mary, and famous for many Miracles, now given by the Sultan for an Habitation to the Cingari. Nothing remains of the Church besides a Fountain, which bubbles out with falutary Water to the Faithful, and now in possession of a certain Turk, who for Money allows the Christans to draw out of it.

(19) Turbel Ls a Turret commonly placed over Sepulchres, of which I have fpoken elsewhere. They are usually built open at the Top, after the form of the Kiabe, or Monument at Mecca. This is done to let the Rain come at the Flowers and other odoriferous Trees there planted; the Top is guarded by a brazen Net, to hinder Birds from getting in.

(20) Sylliuri Syllebria a City on the Propentic Shore, between Conftantinople and Adrianople, ten hours diftent from the latter. It is a Metropolitical See, and has a most beautiful Church built in the time of the Christian Emperors. Here are preferv'd the inture Remains of St. Emphymia, visited by the Turks out of Cursofity, and called by them Cadid. Here like-

wife are feen the ruins of a large Palace, built by John Cantacuzenus, concerning which fee Nicephorus Gregoras, Tom. II.

(21) Eski Serai] The Old Palace A vait Building furrounded with high Walls, and separated into several Apartments. It is the usual Residence as well of the Mistresses of the de ceas'd Sultan, whom the Fyes of a Successor (if a Son or Brother of the deceas'd) cannot behold without impiety, as of the Sultaneffes who have had Children, with their Courtiers and little ones, and likewife of old Virgins who have no longer any Charms, and are maintain'd rather out of the Sultan's Clemency, than for any Merit of their own. The Walls built in a Square, are in compass about an Italian Mile. Of four Gates, two are always shut, the other two are guarded Night and Day by five hundred Ballage. The Doors of the inner Palace are kept by white Eunuchs, to whom the black ones, as the more noble, commit the Care and Attendance of the Women. Their head Officer is called Esks seras Agasi, or the Governor of the Old Palace.

a great army against the King of Hungary (22), defeats and pore the Christians to rout. In the battle, the King himself receives a wound,

of which he is faid to die shortly after.

XII. Having obtain'd this Victory, by which his enemies were more Belgrade is casily restrain'd, he besieges Belgrade, the great Bulwark of Hungary. vain But he meets with no better fuccess than his Father. For the Siege being prolong'd beyond expectation, he is obliged to raise it by the approach of winter, and the loss of his men. The same year he circumcifes his Sons Bajazet and Murad, and makes sumpruous feasts on that occasion.

XIII. In the year 861 he subdues the rest of the Morea, and the The Morea next foring attacks and routs the Greeks, who were endeavouring to re-fuldu'd cover what they had loft, and repair Altymil, whose Walls he demoliftes, and leaft they should make any future disturbances, he places strong garrisons in Akkerne and Beldez, and lays waste the Island Korfes (23)

XIV. In the year 863 he affaults and takes Semendre, of which the Mahomet fub-Christians had some years before made themselves master. In a word, dues above within two years after the Conquest of Constantinople, he reduces by two years

arms or capitulations above forty Cities (24) to his obedience.

XV. In the year 864, in Afia he feizes the dominions of Kyzil Kywil Ahmed Abmed (25), by means of his brother and betrayer Ismael beg. Abmed is deprived of being thus disposses'd, flies to Uzunbasan (26); but instead of finding mions there an end to his miferies, he proves the cause of many mischiefs H 864 to his defender. For Mahomet hearing his enemy was received and A C. 1459. protected by Uzunbafan, passes into Afia with a great army, and routing Uzunhasan's forces, takes Synope, a town on the Pontus Euninus. From hence leading his victorious army towards Trapezond, he receives in the way Coumlubefar by furrender from Husein beg, who had married the King of Trapezond's daughter. Then closely belieging Tra- Trapezon pezond, David Comnenus the King, by the perswations of his Mother-the Turk. in-law Sarecban, delivers up himself and whole Kingdom to Mahomet, by whom he is honorably receiv'd, and fent with all his family to

# ANNOTATIONS.

(22) King of Hungary] This was Ladiflaus Postbumus, Son of Albert Emperor of Germany, whose death Christian Writers place the 21st of November 1458, of the Hejira 863.

(23) Korfes The name of the Activities of the Activiti

driatic Sea, commonly called Golfo di Venetia, in appearance the life of Corfu, the Corcyra of the Ancients.

(24) forty Cities] This is only to be understood of the two years after the taking of Constantinople. For that Mabomet in his whole Life fubdu'd twelve Kingdoms and two hundred Cities, is confessed by the Gbristean Writers themselves.

(15) Kyzil Abmed Abmed Rafus, who first gave occasion to the War between Uzunbafan and Mahomet. He feems to have been a Perfian Satrapas.

(26) Uzunbafan] L e. Hafan the Tall. King of Cappadocia, and famous in the Turkifo Wars. The Series of this History will more amply describe him.

Constantinople.



Gateflantinople. Soon after the victorious Sultan himself returns into Eurabe.

Metylene 13 taken, and the defeated.

XVI. The countries which had been subject to the Greeks, having all fince the conquest of the Imperial City submitted to, or been subdued by Mahomet, the Islands alone, which thought themselves sufficiedely defended by nature from the Othman power, feem'd to affert their liberty. Wherefore to conquer their obstinacy, the Sultan in the year 86 c prepares a great fleet, and for the first tryal of his fortune by A C 1460. feat actacks Mitylene, and the bravely desended by the Islanders, takes it by the valour of his Men, and annexes it to his Empire. The rest of the Islands of the Archipelago would have shar'd the same fate, if about this time Cazyklu Veda (27) Prince of Walachia had not attempted to shake off the Turkish yoke, and denied the tribute he had been used to pay every year. Mahomet thinking the nearest danger first to be averted, influently turns his arms against Walachia, and expelling the rebellious Prince, makes his younger brother Governor of the Province.

Malomet 16ftrums the rebellious Greeks H 867 A C 1462.

XVII. In the year 867 the Sultan orders Catinga Ilimani (28) or the three-ear'd Port, to be made towards the South within the walls of the City, that a magazine for naval expeditions, and a fafe harbour for his Ships against all events, might not be wanting. Whilst he was employ'd in this work, the Greeks, in conjunction with the Venetians, raise commotions in the Morea, take Gingerjinlik, Sada, Giuzelje bijar, Durai (20) and Exernia, and try to expel the Turks out of all Peloponejus Madenes being inform'd of these things, immediately sends Mehemmed Pales with a good army to chastise the rebels, who not expecting his coming defert their Camp, by which means they give Mebemmed an opportunity not only to recover the lost Cities, but to subdue the counury of Koje berfek (30).

builds a Ya-

XVIII. Mahamet, to return God thanks for the great Victories he had hisherto obtain'd, and to leave a Monument of his piery to postezity, orders this year in the month Jemeziul Achyr, the Church of the

## ANMOTATION &

(27) Cazyklu Voda] He was Prince of Walachia, and a bloody Tyrant. He empal'd fix thousand Men for a triffing orcafloss, and from thence personned attought his Welachians the nick-name of Capaliffs, or Pule-Muker. their Canaday or rich in Pales. By the Obriftians he is called Druckle, but why I know not, because that name is plantly foreign to the Middlevian Language, Deago bidged a fall to be the first Prince of Middlevia, but Discussions long wifele him; but of thefe things elfewhere.

(28) Catirga Ilimani] The three-oar'd Port, fituate between the Gates Chatladi\* and Cumcapu, in the Southern Quarter towards the Propontis. It is now filled up with Earth, and made a Kitchen-Garden called Vlanga, in which grow the choicest Cucumbers.

(29) Duraj Formerly Dyrrachium, the most celebrated Mart of all Rumelia, situated on the Shore of the Addriatic Sea, and in the Confines of Dalmatia and Albania.

(30) Koje bersek] The ancient Illyria, for Koje is Old, and bersek Ivlyria

holy Apostles (31) to be demolish'd, and a large Jame to be built in its room, which called after his own name, Mubamedie, he adorns with eight schools, and as many hospitals. This work, scarce to be parallel'd by the wonders of Antiquity, was finish'd in the month Rejeb of the H 876 year 876.

A C 1471

XIX 'In the year 868, affembling a great army, he moves towards Suduce Bof the East, to reduce the Provinces of those parts which refus'd to sub-H 868 mit. His design was crown'd with success. For having vanquish'd A C 146 and slain the Prince of Bosnia (32), he places strong garrisons in the castles, and in his return from this expedition, strengthens the borders between Bosnia and Albania, by erecting fortresses in the narrow passages of the Mountains.

XX. The next year, Caraman ogli Ibrahim beg, inveterate enemy of Mikes Cana the Othman race, dies, and leaves behind him fix Sons: Of these Ishah man egits So beg, having expell'd his brothers by force and policy, seizes alone his Father's dominions; which the rest not enduring, sly to Mahomet, befeeching him to forget the injuries done him by their Father, take pity on Princes oppressed and expelled by a tyrannical brother, and declare another Prince whom he pleased, for to his pleasure they commit themselves and their fortunes Mahomet readily grants their re-

## Annotations.

(31) of the holy Apostles] It was a Church built by the Empress of Justinian the Great It is now a Place or Mount lying in the middle of the City, but nearer to the inner Haven than to the Continent. It is higher than the fix others, where a Jami built by Mabonet Fatib of 120 Cubits fquare, is thought to be the largest Temple next to Santta Sophia The Architect was, they say, a Greek Christian named Christodulus, who in reward of this vast and wonderful Work, was prefented with a whole Street, and other Imperial Gifts. They add, that being asked, whether he could build another Jami larger and more elegant, he answered, he could if Materials were plentifully supplied. This being told to the Emperor, he ordered him to be impal'd, that his Successors might want an Architect capable to raise a nobler Jami than his own That to this purpose an Iron Pale was fix'd to the Gate of the outer Hall of the Jams which looks to the North, and by a little Tower thrown round it, not to be feen by those without, excepting the Point of it, which to this day appears. How-

ever, that the Mubamedie is the Work of Christodulus, and that he receiv'd in recompence the Street before mentioned, I am induc'd to believe from the Writing given by Mahomet to Christodulus on this occasion, which I my felf read, and afterwards lodged in the Treasury of the Church of the blessed Virgin Mary at Muglotissa. For when under the present Emperor Abmed III. the Turks commenc'd a Suit against the Christians of that Street, with intention to take away from them both the Street and the Church, I undertook their defense, and amonst other Hujet, or Testimonials which they had of their being legal Proprietors of their Houses, I shew'd this Writing to the Prime Vizir Choruly Als Pasha, which after he had carefully read, three times killed, and as often rubb'd his Face with, he gave it back into my Hands, and ordered the Turks to give the Christians no farther Molestation.

(32) Prince of Bossias From Christian Writers I gather, it must have been Stephanus, whole Seat was Yaz-

yga.

quest, names Abmed beg, one of the brothers (with the consent of the others) for Prince of Caramania, and fends him with a good army to take possession of his father's inheritance. The rest of the brothers he keeps with him, promotes them to great honours, and orders them noble falaries to be paid yearly out of the Treasury. Mean while, Abmed beg marches with his army into Caramania, vanquishes his brother Isbak beg, and forces him to fly to Uzunbasan. Being thus possessed of the Caramanian Kingdom, and having appear'd the intestine diffentions, he honourably fends back to Makemet the imperial forces laden with presents.

Takes some towns of Al 11 870

XXI. In the year 870, Albania gave fresh occasion to warlike expeditions. His father Murad had before vanquish'd Scander beg the rebellious Prince of this country, and subdued most of the fortresses. But 1 C 1465 as Murad by death, and Mahomet by other expeditions, had been prevented from conquering the whole, the garrifons of the rebels had infested the neighbouring countries with frequent inroads. Whereupon the Sultan invades Arnaud, takes all the towns of the rebels, some of which he demolithes, and to prevent any future commotions, commands a new and firong City to be built at the entrance into the Province.

XXII. The Sultan having now subdued almost all his intestine ene-

Males h. Son Mustapha King of Cas amania

mies in Europe, turn'd his thoughts towards his Ahatic affairs. Caramanta had frequently obstructed the attempts of the Othman Empire. and more than once stopp'd the victorious progress of the Turkish forces, Mahomet, mindful of this treachery, resolves to extirpate that race. that the Kingdom might be more peaceably deliver'd to a Successor. Wherefore in the year 872 he invades Caramania with a great army, 4 C 1467 Subdues the whole Kingdom, and expelling the Prince with his brothers, makes his eldest fon Mustapha King of Caramania year he again marches into that Kingdom, and conquering the towns which refus'd to subtract, or tried to shake off their yoke, places strong garrifons in Akferas (33) and Giulluk (34), and returns to Constantinople.

TakesEgribez.

XXIII. Caramania being fubdued, the only place in Europe that il 874 seemed formidable to him was Egriboz (35). To draw this thorn out 1 C 1469 of his fide, Mahomet in the year 874 goes in person with a strong army and ficet into Greece, and takes in the space of a month the strongest City of that age. The Venetians indeed came with a confiderable fleet, and promis'd to affift the belieged, but as if they had fail'd fo far, not for the fake of fighting, but only to be spectators of the Sultan's Vic-

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(33) Abferdij i. c. White Palace, (34) Gsulluk] "Rosetum a Town of

the fame Province.

(35) Egriboz] The Isle Negropon: in the Archipelago, anciently Eubea, whose Metropolis Chalcis is by the Turks likewise called Egriboz.

tory, they retir'd, to their great dishonour, without firing a gun. Mabomet after taking the City stays a few days to repair the ruins, and then leads back his victorious army to Constantinople.

XXIV. By these conquests Mahomet caus'd not only the hostile Cities Kyzul Arslan which had not yet felt his sword, to submit themselves to his mercy, his ternories but also in the year 876 the Lord of Alae (36), Kyzul Arslan beg vo- to Habmet H 876 luntarily surrenders his dominions to the Sultan; who admiring his A.C 1471 faithfulness and obedience, gives him a very honourable reception, with the Province of Giumuljina (37) for ever.

XXV. About the same time, Uzunhasan's General Yususche\* beg, in Uzunhasan's conjunction with a great army of Tastars, enters the Othman dominide detacted and one, burns Tokad, and threatens destruction to the adjacent Country taken Attempting the same things in Caramania, he is met by Mustapha, Mahomet's son, with what forces he could assemble, and by him, after a long and bloody battle, deseated, taken and sent in chains to the Sultan his father in token of Victory.

XXVI To revenge this blow, Uzunba/an himfelf the next year Uzunba/an with a powerful army invades Mahomet's European dominions. The billioning by Sultan had foreseen this, and for that reason, least he should be sur-Mahomet, prized unprepar'd, had to placed his army in winter-quarters, that they A C 1470 could easily be affembled by found of trumpet. Being therefore inform'd of Uzunbajan's proceedings, he immediately passes into Afia, and meeting the Persians at Payas (38), orders them to be attack'd. The battle is fought with various and doubtful fortune, both fides contending for Glory and Empire, and incourag'd by the examples of their Geperals. At length Mustapha, the Sultan's eldest Con, in the left wing. which he commanded, meets Zeinuldin, Uzunbajun's son (who led the enemy's right wing) Immediately the two Princes hercely engage, and at last Zeinuldin is by Muslapha thrown off his horse, and before he can recover himself, or be rescu'd by his men, run thro' the body (30). His fall feem'd to draw after it the destruction of the whole army. For when the Othmans saw the right wing of the Persians slying in disorder, they all furrously attack the left, which still bravely resisted the charges of the Mululmans, compel them first to give ground, and at last take to open flight. Many are flain, and not fewer made prisoners. Thus Mahomet with the spoil of the Camp obtains a glorious Victory. Uzunbajan, when he saw the battle was lost, escapes with a few attendants by often changing his horfes.

## Annotations.

(36) Alac] A Province of a petty Prince, called Kyzul Arfian beg (red Lion,) its ancient Name unknown, but of fome part of Afia Minor, as may be icen from the tenour of the History. Perhaps the Philadelphia of the Ancients.

(37) Giumuljina] The Turkish Name

of a Province and Town in Rumelia, near Lariffa.

(38) Payds J. A. City and noble. Mart of Paphlagonia.

(39) the body] The Christian Writers say that he was killed by a Musket-ball. Which are we to believe?

XXVII. The

and feveral Cities taken from him

XXVII. The difficulty of the Country would not fuffer the flying enemy to be purfued, and it did not feem to be for the Othman interest to waste the time idly; so giving his Troops but two days to breath, he besieges on the third Karà bisar Sharky (40), takes it in a short space, and destroys the neighbouring Country with fire and sword. After this he returns in triumph with part of the army to Conflantinople, leaving the rest under the command of his Vizir Gredyk Ahmed Paska (41), by whom not only Ermenak and Zilifke are taken, but the whole Province of Varfak (42) is subjected to the Othman Empire.

Kieffe and Crimea are taken H 876

XXVIII. The next year, under the conduct of the same Gredyk Abmed Pasha he wrests Kreffe, the strongest place of Crimea from the Genoese, and by that means reduces to his obedience all Taurica-Cher-A C 1471 fonefus. Here he found Mengely Gierai, descended from the race of the Copchak\* Princes (43), who after a long war with his brother was vanquish'd and forc'd to fly to the Genoese. This Prince the Sultan not only appoints Chan of Crimea on certain conditions, but fends with an army to recover his Country. Mengili Gierai (44) entering his King-

## ANNOTATIONS

(40) Carà bifar Sharky] A noted City of Paphlagonia near Payas, perhaps the Arfenga of the Ancients.

(41) Geedyk Abmed Pasha? A famous General, and afterwards Prime Vizir to Sultan Mahomet. He was called Gudyk, because he had lost a fore Tooth, which whoever wants, or has a Hair-Lip, is always by the Turks called Giedyk But properly Geedyk fignifies a Chink or Cleft, and metaphorically any Military Order, as Giedyk Sabibi, inroll'd in fome Military Order, and Guedyk lerinden airilmadiler, They have not deserted their Ranks, or have left no void in them. There is likewise in Constantinople a certam quarter called Giedyk Pasba, which took its Name from this Basha, either from his building a Market-Place, or having a Palace there.

(42) Varfak] It feems to be Paph-

(43) Copchake A Scythian Nation near Usbek in the Confines of the Chagatæan\* Tartars, beyond the Cafpian Sea Eastward, from whence the Turks and Tariars deduce their Origin. It is perhaps that Country which in the prefent Map is called the Kingdom of Thibet, or Turcheftan.

(44) Menguly Gueray] The first who committed Crus Fartary, under certain Ripulations, to the Protection of

the Ahothman Empire, which he had before wrested out of the hands of his Brother According to both 9mkish and Christian Historians, he wis deicended from the Race of the Alijengbiziane But the latter intermix to many Fables, that a Man who has the least Tincture of the History of that Pcoyle, cannot forbear laughing at their Accounts, which nevertheless are pretended by them to be given after the strictest Faquiry and Exami Above all the rest Michalo Lathuanus deserves my notice and cenfure, who when in his Tartary, p. 296, he owns the first Prince of the Crim to have descended from the Alijenghizian (or as he corruptly calls it the Cyngijan) Race, yet, from what Authority no Man knows, names him Lotherius, and p. 193, removes his De-feendents into Lithuania, and deduces a long Succession of Lithuanian Ca. fars or Chans, from the same Race. The last of these, according to that Historian, was Achkieras (perhaps Han Gierai) who was born at Troki, and fent by St Withcrode to feize Taurua Chersonesus. To him, after he was in possession of that Principality, was born Menglikierai (Mengli Gierai). This last was father to Mebemed Kierai, Sadet Kierai (Seadet Gieras) Chas Kierai (perhaps Shah Giedom of Copeback\* by the help of the Turks easily overcomes and kills his brother, and then takes possession of his dominions. This was she first Chan of Tartary appointed by the Turks, and the first who in Crimea order'd the Chuthè in the name of the Othman Emperor to be used in the prayers.

XXIX. Whilst these things passed in Chersonesus, Soliman Passa Turk defeated leads a considerable army into Moldavia. Stephanus, Tekkiur of Mol-kevian.

## ANNOTATIONS.

rai) and to Sapkierai (perhaps Sefaigieras) the youngest of all, who fucceeded in the Kingdom, and at the fame time was Prince of the Tartars. For thus all the following race, being Princes, also enjoy now the noble appellation receiv'd from their Ancestor, namely Achkieras Faility of this Narration requires, I think, no long deduction to prove it, fince it contains such evident Contradictions, that it is at first light obvious that it has no support from any Monuments or Testimonies of the Tartars, but merely from the Conjecture of the Historian For to fay nothing that the united confent of the Turkish Historians makes not Lothanks, but Giera first Conqueror of Crim Tartary, and that he transmitted his Name to the Princes descended from him, it is certain that the Lithuanian Tartari were neither Grimaans nor Oguzians (the Root of the Alijenghizian Family) but Cheremiff, from whence our Countrymen at this day call them Chirimulb\*, though with the Turks they are known by the Name of Lipka Tatars, the first Word being corrupted from Live. Moreover the Race of the prefent Chans of the Crim did not begin to reign there, or affume the Name of Gieras under Murad II, where this Historian places Achkier ath, but, as is inferred from Turkish Histories, and the constant Tradition of the Tartars, was prior to the Oibman Empire, as is largely prov'd in the Preface. But it may not be foreign to our purpole to take notice here that amongst the Tartars themselves there is a dispute who are the genuine and who the fpurious Offspring of Gieras. For belides the Race which at this day rules the Grim-Tariars, N°. 6.

and by way of eminonce is called Gurat, there is another commonly known by the Name of Chohan Gieras, or Gieras the Shepherds. For they relate, that the Wife of a certain Chan, whose Name I have forgot, had an unlawful Commerce with a Shepherd, that from thence a Son was born (the Mother after the Birth being convicted of Adultery and put to death) who was delivered to one of the King's Servants, with orders to kill him, that the Servant put a Trick upon his Mafter, convey'd the Child into Cherkafia, and there had him privately educated. From him they derive the latter Family, and make his Posterity faifely assume to them-selves the Glory of so illustrious an Ancestor. The Choban\* Gierai retort the same Calumnies upon the other Gierai, and then leave it very difficult to determine which fide is genuine or legitimate, and which not, fince neither have any thing to appeal to be-fides Tradition. The Turks, altho they think the present Race of the Chase to be legitimate, yet deny not the Appellation of Gurai to the other, and allow them to live at Jambols (formerly Janopols) the deftin'd Seat of the Tartarian Princes. One of these, by the Name of Kiergierai, was after the Battle of Vienna, advanced to the Dignity of Chan by the Turks, distructing the Faith of Selim Gierai, but after a few Months depos'd, and the ancient Race of Gierai replac'd on the Throne. is at thought that the Cheban's Gierai will ever again rife to the same Honour, tho' they may enjoy the Offices of Galga Sultan, Nurradin and the like, which are in the Power of their Relations. Gg davia

david (45), meets him near Palchy (46), on the banks of the Prut. They long fight with great courage and doubtful fortune. At last, by the negligence of their General, the Musulmans are overthrown, the General himself falls in the battle, many are slain, some are made Captives, and the rest escape by slight over the Danube.

Moldavia laid wafte by the Turks. H 877.

XXX. At the news of this defeat, Mahomet full of indignation, marches in person the next year into Moldavia with all his forces, and when the enemy, unable to withfland fuch an army, did not appear, A C 1472 he lays waste all but the mountainous parts, and carries away an infinite number of Cattle and Captives,

Mahomet's expeditions

XXXI. In the year 882 he takes Skanderun, and the next builds 2 new Palace, which is now the Emperor's Court. In 884 Aladin beg who had implor'd his affiftance against his father Baddak beg (47), pre-A. C 1477 pares an army, by whose help he vanquishes his father, and compels
H. 884 him to fly to Cherkassus King of Mysr.

A C 1479 He defeats Apulia

XXXII. The following year having vanquish'd the Venetians (48) the Festivani, at the River Sontium, he equips a great fleet under Giedyk Abmed and lays waste The Congress of Pasha, to lay waste Apulia, and if possible all Italy. This General having ravag'd Apulia, and taken some forcresses, is in the midst of his progress recalled on account of the motions of the Perfians, and new attempts of Uzunbasan, which seem'd to require the presence both of the General and Army. He is foon followed by a Venetian Ambassador (49) humbly suing for peace, which the Sultan, incumbred with other affairs, readily grants.

#### Annotations.

(45) Tekkiur of Moldavia] : e. King of Moldavia. This is Stephanus firnam'd the Great, of whom I have spoken in a former Note. Moldavia it felf is frequently called Bogdan by the Turks, from Bogdan Son of this Stephanus, of whom more largely in another Place.

(46) Falcby\*] A City and Country of Moldavia, upon the River Prat, diftant from Huffi (where Peter Emperor of Russia after four days Engagement made Peace with the Turks in the year 1711) ten Miles Southward from the Banks of the Ister. Upon recollection that I had fome years ago read in Herodetus of the warlike Nation, and large City, of the Taipbali beyond the Danube, I out of Curiolity dispatch'd some Perfons thither to fearch whether they could discover beyond the River any remains of Buildings. At their recurn they brought me word, they had discovered near this Town of Falcby,

in the thick Woods, the ruins of Walls, and Foundations of Houses, in a right Line From hence I doubt not but the Town Falcby\*, was built in room of the ancient City of the Taipbalt, on which I shall more en large in my particular account of the ancient and present Moldavia.

(47) Baddak beg It feems to be the Province of Sina, or the name or firname of fonie King of those times, unknown to us.

(48) Venetsans] The Christian Historians mention a defeat received by the Venetians at the River Sontium, but, in the room of Gredik Abmed Passa, they substitute one Alabecchus or Marbecchus; by what Authority I know not, for the Names have nothing of a Turkish Sound in them.

(49) Venetian Ambassador] This Wildem and Authority amongst the

Venetians.

XXXIII. But it was neither firm nor lafting. For in the 100 Re is republiful. Mefib Pafba (50) is fent by Mahamet with a great flest to take Mahamet. H 886

The General having landed his forces, closely befores the Constant C 1481 by the vigilance and bravery of the enemies he is repuls'd, and at his forc'd to raise the siege with great loss, dishonour, and danger of his life-

XXXIV. That fummer he affembles all the forces of the Othman dies at Mal-Empire, not only to curb the insolence of Uzunbasan, but also to acquire the dominion of all Afia. Wherefore passing the Bosphorus near Yuskinder, he pitches his tents under Maltepe (51), and already thought himself master of the furthermost bounds of India. Perhaps this immoderate transport of mind threw him into a fit of the Gout (52), which being attended with other fymptoms, after short, but sharp pains, carried him off the fifth day of Jemaziul evvel. He left the Empire to his fon Bajazet +.

XXXV. Mahomet liv'd fifty-one years (53), and reign'd thirty, and His Chambles. three months, exclusive of the time he rul'd in his father's life. Befides his warlike virtues, of which he gave great proofs, he was famous for learning, languages, defire of knowing things curious, wisdom, and patience in labours. He was also very religious, in short, an accomplish'd Prince, if he had made a conscience of breaking his word for the good of the State.

Annotations.

(50) Mefib Passa] The Christians make him a Gracian, and descended from the Race of the Palaolgi: The Turks are filent as to his Race, but Mefib feems to come from the Hebrew Mefiab, from whence Jefus Christ is called Isfa Mefib.

(51) Maltepe] A rich Mountain, or Mountain of Riches. It is a very high Mountain not far from Nicaa, at whose Root a Treasure once found gave it the Name. Ships in the Eurine Sea when they come within eighty Miles of the Bolphorus, first discover and direct their Course by this Mountain, tho' it is nearer the Propontis than the Euxine Sea

(52) the Gout] Christian Writers

fay, he was feized with the Cholick three days after he had begun his Expedition, which agrees with the Turks, who allow more causes of his death than the Gout.

(53) fifty-one years] This must be understood of Lunar years, which reduc'd to a folar Computation, make about forty-nine years, feven months, and feven days. Here the Turks and Christians disagree. The latter ascribing to him fifty-one years of Life, and thirty of Reign, the former make him live fifty-three years, and reign thirty-two. The dilagreement I think may proceed from this, that the Christians include the three years of his Reign during his Father's Life.

† Mustapha his eldest in said to have been strangled by his Father's command for ravishing Abased Pasha's Witt

# Cotemporary with MAHOMET II. reign'd,

At Confiantinople, Constantinus Paleologus, last Chri-

In the West, FREDERIC III. 1440-93. HENRY VI. 1422-60. EDWARD IV. 1460-83. CHARLES VII. 1423-61. LEWIS XI. 1461-83. in England. In France,

The End of the Reign of MAHOMET II.

The REIGN of

# BAJAZET II.

Eighth EMPEROR of the TURKS.

## BOOK III. CHAP. II.

Bayanest thinks of a Prigrimage to Mecca I. A 8 the Othman affairs about this time were in a flourishing condition, Mahomet had set his sons Bajazet and Jem over Provinces, the former being made Sanjak (1) of Amasia, the latter of Iconsisse, that they might not only have wherewithal to maintain a Court, but also give inflances of their prudence, and art of governing in their younger years. Bajazet was now at Amasia, and was thinking of Haj (2) or a Pilgrimage to Mecca, when an unexpected message came to him from the Vizir, that his father was dead, and had appointed him his successor. He receiv'd also a letter sign'd by the Vizir, and the rest of the great men, exhorting him to come and take possession of the throne, and leave his intended Pilgrimage to men of lower birth and more besture, it being much more for the advantage of the Mahometan

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(t) Sanjak] Before Passas and Begherbess were inflituted, all Governours of Provinces went by this Name, which is at present pseudiar to those who are set over Provinces without the Diffunction of Isg or Horses Tails. So a Sanjak is under a Bag, a Bag under a Passa, a Passa under a Beglerbeg.

(2) Haj] Is a Pilgrimage to the Holy Places Mecca, Medina and Ysrufalem; he who performs this Pilgrimage is called Haji, or Pilgrimage is called Haji, or Pilgrima. Every Turk once in his Life, as ob-

lig'd by his Law to undertake this Journey, and that at a time when his Substance is such, that half of it will suffice for the expences of the Pilgrimage; the other half is to be left behind for an honest Subssitence at his return. But for a safe and commodious passage to the Pilgrims thro' those desert and dry Piaces, the Sultan commonly orders the Baska of Danielows to attend them with Soldiers and Water-bearers, and to take care that their Numbers never fall short of sources thousand.

religion,





BAJAZET IF.
Cight Emperor of the Turks
on the Hear 1581
From an Original in the Straglic



religion, to prevent, by his valour and counfels, his enemies from mecovering their courage and strength.

II. Doubtful and furpris'd at this meffage, Bajazzet remains uncertain delives the what he should first do in this case. Piety called upon him to perform for Coreal his Vow; and it feem'd dangerous to leave the throne fo long vacant. At last Religion gets the better of the care of the Commonwealth, and fortune affords an opportunity to preferve both. He had a Son nam'd Corcud, of fuch fweetness and modesty, that he not only excell'd all of his own age, but also his seniors. His Grandfather Mahomet had two years fince fent for him to celebrate the Sunnet (3), and from that time, allur'd by his good qualities, never suffered him to depart. At the time of the Sultan's death he was in the army. This Son, Bajazet purposes should supply his place, hoping the prudence of Counsellors would make up the defects of his youth. Wherefore he answers the Vizir, " It is not in his power to lay aside his more than blessed Pilgri-" mage, and had rather forfeit the Empire of the whole world than " leave his Vow unperform'd; but least the Othman State might suffer " any detriment, it is his advice, that they reverence as Sovereign his " fon Corcud till his return." Presently after, without staying for an answer, he sets out for Mecca, to seek from God an auspicious beginning of his reign. Whereupon the Great Men invest his son Corcud with the Government, which for nine months he happily administers, causing his name to be mention'd in the prayers, and stamp'd on the

III At the end of which space, Bajazet returns from his Pilgrimage, The Vicin and fends letters to his Son and the Great Men, defiring him to keep the calls the Sultan at his res Empire, and them to obey, and fuffer him to live privately at Nicaa, turn to the It can hardly be determin'd, whether Bajazet was led to this contempt Empire of a Crown by a stretch of religion, and a zeal for the divine worship

## ANNOTATIONS.

(3) Sunnel The Turks make the Precepts of their Law of two kinds, Sunnel, where observance may on some occasions be dispensed with, and Fars, which are absolutely necessary to Salvation. To Fars belong, fay they, Salavat, 1. e. Confession of Faith, which is never neglected or omitted by a Man who has the use of Speech, without forfeiting Salvation it felf; Zekkiat, or bestowing yearly the fiftieth part of their Goods upon the Poor, and the like. But Sunnet they call Circumcifion, and the Sunnet Diuguns, the Solemnities of Circumcifion, and other Ecclefiaftical Rites, which to omit is a Sin indeed, but venuel. The omiftion of these

upon any preffing Necessity they think to be no Sin at all. They therefore never circumcife till the feventh year, and think a Child dying uncircumcifed before that time, may nevertheless be received into Paradise, Thus if for the five Prostrations in the Noon Prayers, three only are perform'd, which are the Fars, or immediate Command of God, and the other two, which are only Inflitutions. of the Prophet, and authoriz'd by Ecclesiastical Practice, are omitted, the omiffion is a Sin indeed, but not mortal. But he that does neither of these is to expirite his Crippe in suffering for many years the Torments of Purgatory.

H &

kindled

kindled at Maces, or fearing his son's power, ambition, and popularity, chose by hidden arts to undermine his son at Nices, rather than by an unseasonable demand of the Kingdom, hazard both his Empire and Life. But the prime Vizir reading the letter, assembles the rest of the Great Men, asks their opinion, and after some debate, decrees, with their consent, that Mabones's appointment should be firmly adher'd to, and Bajazes alone acknowledg'd and proclaim'd Emperor.

Corcud agrees to it,

IV. But to effect this openly, the same obstacles occurr'd to them as to the father, violent counsels not seeming safer than decrees. Wherefore they resolve, first to sound Corcud; and the prime Vizir Ali Pasha having obtain'd an audience, says to him, "Your Majesty's resplendent " father, by the divine aid, is return'd in safety from Mecca, and we " hear, is arriv'd at Aleppo, which we thought it our duty to tell your " Majesty, in order to know your pleasure concerning him, and his ar-" rival." Corcud upon this information replies, " The fervices you have done the Empire ought justly to be so many testimonies of your " fidelity; but whilft by fo artful a speech you endcavour to shake " mine. I can scarce refrain from taxing you with treachery. For you " know my father did not absolutely, and for ever resign the Crown to " me, but only commanded me to rule in his stead, till his return " from a Pilgrimage undertaken for his own and the publick advan-" tage. This have I done because I would not disobey a father's commands: Let him, being return'd, receive his own Empire, and I re-" figning the Scepter, will eternally profess my felf both his Son and " Vaffal."

and refigns the throne to his father. V. A few days after, hearing of his father's approach, he passes the Bosphorus, attended with all his Vizirs, and the rest of the civil and military officers, and meets him near Nicea. He immediately pays him obeysance, and commands the rest to follow his example, and the Mimber (4) to be raised. Which done, Corcud himself taking his father by the hand, leads him to the throne, and turning to the spectators says. "This is indeed my Father and Lord, but the Governor and Emperor of the Othmans. I have hitherto been his shadow, now the light is come, the shadow vanishes. To him alone therefore pay obedience and reverence." Having said these words, he waits on his sather to Constantinople, where arriving on the 29th day of Jemaziul Achyr in the year 886, Bajazet is invested with the Imperial Crown. Next day Corcud, with an allowance sit for an Emperor, departs to Magnesia.

H 886 A C 881 Jem rebela,

VI. Bur this feem'd very hard to Jem (5), who from Carcud's age, had entertain'd great hopes of seizing the Empire, but upon Bayazet's

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(4) Minder] A Chair much like a Bithop's Throne, on which raifed with the Steps, both the Imperial Throne, and in great Churches Vaidz, the Steps throne Tulpit is crecited.

(5) to Jem Jem in common Language figaifics a kind of Grapes more delictous than all others, but with the Avable Tefdid addied, Jemm magically fignifies the fabulous name

mounting the throne, thought his expectations entirely fruitivited. He pretended the Crown belonged to him, because Bayanet was born at Mahomet before he was Sultan, and declared it a dishonour that the Empire should be given to the Son of a private man, in prejudice of the imperial Offspring. He charged his Father's Will with falthood, to not being written, but only coming from the mouth of a treacherous Vizin By these discourses he perswaded not only several Cities, but also meen of the Asiatic forces, that he was the true Heir, and caused hamself to be proclaim'd Emperor at Prusa. Presently after, assisted with money by the Citizens of Prusa, and others who were in his interest, he raised a considerable army.

VII. But his dominion was neither firm nor lasting. For Bajaset and being hearing of his brother's proceedings, instantly passes into Afec with a flies to Cal great army, and meeting him near Pruja, after a fierce and bloodly ubar: battle, puts him and his followers to rout. Jem escaping with a few attendants, flies first to Aleppe, then to Sultan Castebai (6) King of Mifr +, fets forth his brother's tyranny, in not only feizing the Em- + Egy/ pire due to him, but in taking and unjustly putting his children to death, and earnestly implores his affistance. Castebas on the contrary gives him more wholfome advice, bids him lay afide all enmity to his brother, because civil wars can never be wag'd without detriment to their holy Religion, which will be wonderfully promoted by brotherly love and agreement. So, that the heat of his indignation might in that time be allay'd, he perswades Yem to go in pilgrimage to Mecra, and by fuch a bleffed journey, convert the image of his misfortune into a a true happiness. For the present state of affairs would not admit of any attempt against Bajazet, who had great armies at command: but if at his return, the face of things were alter'd, he would to the utmost of his power endeavour to restore him to his right.

## Annotations.

of Solomon, or Alexander the Great, as Chatemi Jemm, the Seal or fignal Ring of Solomon, Jami Jemm, the Looking-Glafs of Solomon, or Alexander, which in another Greekifo Fable is attributed to Leo the Wife, Son of Bafikus the Macedonian, and Emperor of Greece. From which of these Significations this Sultan drew his Name I cannot say. However, I have neither read nor heard of any other Turk diffingush'd by it. The Christian Writer's without doubt drew from it their Zemes and Zimm Words, which etymologically have no meaning

(6) Castebai] Not Castebas, or Castebas, as the Western Writers give it. For it is no Turkish Name, nor

to be derived from Caith and Beg, a Prince but merely Tartarian, compounded of Cait and Bas added to aword the ill found of Liftun, which commonly has the sower of our vowel of Cait in the Estatura Language figuries Conversion, and bai rich. The more honorable Tartari are accusted to add the monofyllable to slice Names, as Tumanhai, Manhabes, (for Mahamad has, Mahamad in the Tartarian Language being protoune'd Mambel) as the chief Pathan of the Turtarian Language being protoune'd Mambel) as the chief Pathan of the Turtarian Language being protoune'd Mambel) as the chief Pathan of the Turtarian Language being protoune'd Mambel, as the chief Pathan of the Turtarian Language being protoune'd Mambel, as the chief Pathan of the Severengney by Baicon, she same the Hammbal of the Turkyh Empire.

VIII. With

to Farfal.

VIII. With such speeches as these Caitebai strove to appeals Jem, but he had other defigns. Jem had long fince contracted a strict friendship with some of the great men of Varsak (7) and Turgad, which had been confirm'd by so many proofs, that he did not question they would do what they could for him. To these he writes from My/r, complaining of Bajazet's injuries to him and his children, and intreating their sid. In answer, they detest Bajazet's impiery, and unanimously promise to stand by their Lord and Shebzade (8) with their lives and fortunes. Flush'd with these promises, and eas'd of his care, whilst he sees Gaitebai's assistance doubtful and remote, Jem seigns to approve his advice, and defires him to supply him with necessaries for his pilgrimage. Caitebai gladly and plentifully furnishes him with every thing, and at his departure gives him an attendance suitable to his quality. But it was not devotion, but a kingdom Jem was feeking. Wherefore he defifts the first opportunity from his pilgrimage, and leaving his attendants, flies with a few followers to his friends. There affembling the forces of those Countries, with some Gionulls (9) tumultuously raised, he tries a second time the fortune of war.

Being again defeated, he flues to the Christiani

IX. But he meets with no better fuccefs. For Bajazet being informed of his brother's fresh Motions, sends an army against him, which easily vanquishes and routs his undisciplin'd troops. Jem after his defeat, for some time wanders in disgusse without servant or companion about the maritime places, and at length gets a ship bound for Italy. He first sails to Rhodes (10), and afterwards in company with some Rhodians visits the Pope (11), by whose recommendation he is very honourably

## ANNOTATIONS.

(7) Varfak and Turgad I have before faid, in the last Chapter, that Varjak is thought to be Paphlagoma, Turgad feems to have been a neighbouring Province to it.

(8) Shebzade] Son of the Emperor from the Perfian Sheb by Syncope from Shab, Emperor, and Zade, Son. But the Sons of the Emperor are to called, when out of respect their proper

Names are supposed.

(9) Gioniulii They were formerly
Volunteers, and followed the Camp at their own expense. At this day, they are an Order of Horse under the Vizirs, who in publick Solemnities precede the Agavat, or Military Officers of the Court, and wear the Hungarian or Bosnian Habit. Their Colonel is called Giowinthi Agafi. Something like these m'another. Cohort of Horse called Deliler, i. e. the Foels or Madmen. These for merly were under no Discipline, but blindly rush'd on, and fell upon the Enemy from every quarter. Afterwards they were redue'd to order, and by that lost their ancient Valour, with referve of only the Name Nor have I heard of any thing memorable perform'd by them of late times, or feen in any Battle

where I was prefent

(10) to Rhodes] The Christian Winters tell us, that he was there well receiv'd by the Great Master, who, furnishing him with a good Retinue, fent him to Pope Innocent VIII, and that he was afterwards furrendered to Charles VIII King of France, then preparing for the Neapolitan Expedition. Whereupon Alexander VI, (fay the fame Writers) porion'd him in the fear that Charles delivering him to Bajazet might merit too highly of him.
(11) the Popel This was Inne-

cent VIII, mentioned in the last Note.

nourably received by the King of Naples (12). Here in an elegant and polite speech, he declares the causes of his slight, imploring the affistance of the Christian Princes to recover his paternal inheritance, and promising with an oath, that in case he obtained the Empire by their help, the Othmans should never set foot in any Christian dominions, and that he would religiously observe the treaty of peace between them and his deceased father. The Christian Princes (13) who had been struck with great terror at the Othman arms, bid him be of good courage, assuring him they would exert their utmost, and omit no opportunity to restore him. The King of Naples also, as a farther instance of his good-will, gives him an honorable pension.

X. But neither here did Bajazet suffer him to remain in safety, for where he is fear he should give the Christians counsels destructive of his dominion structherously and the Othman affairs. One day as he was familiarly talking of these bases things, there happen'd to be present a certain Italian Captive who had been initiated into the Mahometan religion by the name of Mustapha, and for his notable skill in shaving, promoted to the office of Berber bashi (14). This man being full of craft, hearing what the Emperor said, falls at his feet, and says, "If your Majesty will vouchfase to commit so weighty an affair to my management, I will free your mind from all care, and dispatch your brother, tho' he lurk'd in the most secret corners of Italy." Bajazet not only readily gives him power to commit this deed, but swears by the holy Souls of his Ancestors (15) to advance Mustapha to the dignity of Prime Vizir, if he accomplish'd an undertaking so divine (16) and advantagious to the whole Othman Empire

ANNOTATIONS.

His Successor was Alexander VI, innocent of the Crime with which the Christians impeach him.

(12, king of Naples) Here the Tucks are militaken. For he was not delivered to the King of Naples, but to the French King Charles VIII, then preparing for the Neapolitan Expedi-

(13) Christian Princes All Christian Princes in general are usually still by the Turks, Umeras Milletuli Mestibu, Princes of the Nation of the Mestiah, Kubes as Tassetul Islevie, Sovereigns of the People of Jesus.
(24) Berber bash Chief Barber, the

(24) Berber bafbi] Chief Barber, the fixth great domestic Officer, of whom the Reader will find an account in

another Place

(25) Ancestors] The Emperors never bind themselves by any other Oath than this, Esdadum eruab sheristers schun", by the blessed or boly Souls of my Parents, or in the singular, Jen' No. 6.

dum rubi ichun\*, by the Soul of my Grandfather But in all their Covenants with the Christians they vie to add, By the Name of the most bigh God, Koran baki ichun\*, by the Truth of the Kotan, Peigamberin Pak rubi uhun\*, By the pure Spirit of the Prophet, &c.

(16) divine] The Emperor's Orders, of whatever kind, are received by the Turks as coming from the Hand of God, and to disobey them is reckon'd the highest Impiety. Wherefore, if ever the prime Vizir is to be put to death, the Emperor commits the Execution of his Sentence to none but the Vizir himself, which he does in a Writing to this effect. "Whereas for such or such Facts "thou deservest to die, it is our "Pleasure that, after having per- form'd the Abdest, i. e. the washing of Head, Hands, and Feet, and made the accustom'd Namaz,

pire. Mußaphe incourag'd by these promises, throws off his Turkish habit, and as a fugitive goes to the Franks (17) dwelling at Peru, where with feign'd tears he laments his having abjur'd his religion, and conjures them to protect and affift him to make his escape into his own country. He adds, he had rather live in the utmost misery among Christians, than enjoy, with the hazard of his Soul, the highest honours of the Turkifb Court. The Franks readily believe him, and pitying his condition, get him on board a ship bound to Italy, in which he arrives in a few days at Naples. Jem, who happen'd to be there, hearing an excellent Barber was come from Turky, and curious perhaps of knowing what passed at Constantinople, orders the man to be sent for. When he comes, being ask'd about the present state of the Turkish affairs, he answers, he had followed for some years at Constantinople the business of a Barber in the publick shops, and never troubled himself about any thing but the improvement of his art, and how to procure his liberty, which after long waiting he had obtain'd by the help of fome good men, so that now he could freely enjoy his country, and profess the Christian religion. To this Jem replies, concerning your way of worship and religious profession, I am not follicitous. For God has given every man a free-will (18). But as I live in a land where Barbers

## ANNOTATIONS.

" (or Prayers,) thou deliver thy " Head to this our Meffenger Capuschi+ Bafor." And tho' the Vizir might have it in his Power to relift, yet he pays a ready obedience for fear of being accounted (as a transgressor of the Imperial Mandate) an Insidel, and cut off from the Jemaat, or Unimes Muhammed, in Christian Language, the Church. This happen'd in my time to some great Men who resused their Obedience to the Emperor's Mandate, and tho' by slight or arms they rescu'd themselves from the danger, had ever afterwards the nickname of Firari, or Fugitives, as, firari Hasan Passa, the Insam is derived upon their Sons, who for an eternal Ignominy, as it were, are called Firari Ogullari, Sons of Fugitives (17) Franks] It is customary with

(17) Franks] It is customary with the Turks to call almost all Coristian Nations (the Poles, Hungarians, and others excepted, who wear long Habits) and especially the Italians, by the name of Ifren, vulgarly Fireng But to each Nation they likewise appropriate particular Names, as to the Germans, Nemebe<sup>8</sup>, to the French,

Firansiz, to the Spaniards, Ispaniol, to the English, Ingilis, to the Duteb or Flemings, Nidirlanda, or Filemeng, to the Saxons, Saks, to the Saxons, Infinitely, Leb, or Leih, to the Hungarians, Majar, to the Ruhans, Major, to the Cossist, Cazuk, and so to the rest.

(18) free will] Itadett Juzy, or Juzy Liviar Altho' the Turks from the Koran believe, that nothing either good or evil can happen contrary to the divine Decree, according to that faying, Chivufheru min allah, Goni and Evil are from God Yet they allow a tree-will in Man for this reason, that Kinffar (Infidels, namely, Christian and all Mahometans, not Musulmans may not at the last Judgment excuse their not embracing the Mahometar Doctrine from a Plea of their wanting free-will I asked some of the most learned Expounders of the Koran, called by the Turks, Teffire Koran, whether a Man could speak or act any thing contrary to the DivineWill, or not? But I could never obtain a direct answer from them, they used to sav, Jennet bac, Jibennem bac, Paradise is certain, and Hell is cer-

san,

Barbers feem to me very unskilful, I only wish you to be my Barber. For fince you have fojourned fome time among my countrymen, who, you know, fliave with fo light and pleasant a hand, that a man can fcarce forbear fleeping under the operation, I hope you have acquir'd fome share of their art. Mustapha, the better to deceive Jem, at first declines the office, but being ask'd again, confents at laft, pretending he could not in conscience refuse the honour of serving so great a Prince. and thaving the head of one whose face all good men defired to fee at Constantinople. Whereupon he is receiv'd among his Chamberlains to shave him on the usual days, according to the custom of the Turks. When he had discharg'd this office some time with great appearance of fidelity, Jem happens one day to fall afleep as he is thaving, and thereby gives Mustapha an opportunity of executing his premeditated design. For perceiving none of the fervants in the room, he cuts the Prince's Wind-pipe with a sharp Razor (19), and to prevent the wound from bleeding, binds it very hard with a handkerchief. Then he goes out of the chamber, and tells the fervants in waiting, that their Lord was afleep, bidding them to be quiet and not difturb him. This done, he posts to a ship, which lay ready to receive him, and fails first to Crete, and from thence to Constantinople

XI. At his arrival, he instantly repairs to Bajazet, and acquaints who is made him with his brother's death and the manner of it. The incredulous Prime Vizir Sultan is convinc'd by a report spread shortly after, that Jem by the treachery of some Christians was murder'd (20). Whereupon Bajazet mindful of his promise, promotes Barber Mustapha to the dignity of Prime Vizir. After this, he sends to Naples for his brother's body. The Ambassadors are honorably receiv'd, and the body is deliver'd to them, which by Bajazet's order is buried at Pruja, near the Tomb of Murad, among the sons of the royal Othman race.

## ANNOTATIONS.

t in, neither wis the latter made by God in vain, but to fome use, if to some end, that end could be no other than the punishment of those who are destin'd to it is again they are asked, how their Opinion of free-will is reconcileable with this Reason, they beg the Question, by saying, that all may be saved who will, but that no Man is saved whom God has not destin'd to Salvation. They conclude with this Axiom, Tachir Tedhiri boxar, i. e. Divine Providence destroys but and Appointments or Purpose. From this Contrariety of Sentiments it is that free-will is highly valued by some, and as little esteem'd by others.

(19) Razor] The Turks here acquit Pope Alexander VI from the execrable Crime charg'd upon him by Christian, and even Catholick Writers, and believed for fo many Ages. I leave the Reader to embrace which Side he pleases.

(20) murder'd] This contrary Report helps to confirm the Turky account of Jem's death. The Place is disputed. Christians by he was poton'd in his march to Naples with Charles VIII at Teracina; the Turks that he died at Naples by the Razor of Berber Ibrahim. Which is true, the Reader is less to judge

XH. This

Yen's Cha-

XII. This was the end of Jem, a Prince of great hopes and good dispositions. Nothing was wanting in him that could be called virtue, prudence, magnanimity, fortitude and wisdom. He had no equal of the same age. He is chiefly praised for eloquence (21) and rhetorick, because he gain'd men to his interest more by his speeches, than his money or pensions. To fay all in a word, he would have been (according to the Turks) a most accomplish'd Prince, and worthy of so illustraous a birth, if he had not eclips'd the light of his virtues by his shameful flight to the Christians. But even there he was most observant of the Mahometan rites, and not only faid the due prayers five times a day, but finish'd Telavets Koran (22) every week.

Bajazet ftrengthens Greece with Caftles.

XIII. The rival of his Empire being thus removed by fratricide, and the State fettled, Bajazet's martial spirit, which had hitherto laid dormant, excites him to enlarge his dominions with the ipoils of the Chriflian Princes. But to strengthen, before he increased the Commonwealth, he goes into the Morea in the year 887, and fortifies the Ishmus A C 1482 with two strong Castles towards the Corintbian Bay, built with materials design'd for other uses by the Christians. These he provides with good garrifons and all manner of warlike stores, that the enemies when from that fide they invaded, as they frequently did, the Othman dominions, might be reftrained, and time given him to come to their affiftance.

Takes two davia.

XIV. The next Spring he orders to be built in a pleafant fituation on Cives in Mol-the river Tunje at Adrianople, a Jami, Medrele, Darulfbya, Imaret, and publick Bath. Then he moves with all his forces towards Moldavia (23), govern'd at that time by Stephanus, and takes the Bulwarks of

#### ANNOTATION &.

(21) eloquence] Ilmikieliam, the Science of Speech, or the Art of speaking well, as Ilms Mantyk, the Art of Reasoning, Ilms Sarf, the Science of Grammar, as Ilms Nabum, the Knowledge of Syntax, Ilm: Hikmet, the Knowledge of fecret Things, or of Philosophy, Ilm: Illabs, Divine Knowledge or Theology, Ilm: Fikyb, Knowledge of the Law, the noblest of all others with them, as turning to another's Advantage, Ilms Niujum, the Knowledge of the Stars, or Aftromomy, Ilmibendese, the Knowledge of Measuring, or Mathematics, Ilmi Rografie, Geography, Ilmi Recam, Arithmetic, Ilmi Shir, Poetry, Ge (22) Telaveti Koran The reading

of the whole Koran. This is perform'd at the Funeral, and the Tomb for forty Days, as in fo many Days with us the Pialter is reading over the dead. The Turks believe that the

Soul of the deceased hovers about the Grave for forty Days, and that the reading of the Korry is very affifting to the Archangel Gabriel, that he may guard it from the Devils, and quickly convey it to Paradile. They more over affert, that the finful Soul is much advantag'd by the Prayers of the Living But they invoke no Saints or Prophets belides Mahomet To all others they deny any Compassion for human Miteries, as thinking it would be a hindrance to the perfect Felicity to which they are arrived

(23) Moldavia] I could never fuffi ciently admire, as often as I look'd into Maps of Hungary, whence it was that the Limits of Walachia and Mo'davia are to abfurdly and erroneoufly mark'd in them Nor have I feen one ancient or modern Map which does not abound with gross Mistakes. So the Towns Kill and Akkierman, vulthe whole country, the strong cities of Kili (24) on the Danube and Akkierman (25) near it on the Euxine sea. By this means he not only prevents the Moldavians from exercising pyracy on that sea, but gets an opportunity of annoying, with frequent incursions, a Province often attempted in vain.

XV. The same year, under the conduct of the Beglerbeg of Asia, some Cities of are taken the famous cities of Tarfus (26), Kur/hunly (27), and Kofun-Mia are taken ly. At Adrianople the great General Giedyk Abmed Pasha is accused of Hiskinmity to treason, and put to death (28). About the same time, are sown be- Carteban. tween Bajazet and Castebai King of My/r the feeds of war, which after numberless battles, ended at last in the Subversion of Caitchai's Kingdom. They had long beheld one another with a realous eye, but neither had dar'd to attack the other, believing both Empires fo firmly establish'd as to be hardly conquerable by human counsels or strength, The Othman was superior in extent and number of armies, the Egyptian was strengthen'd by the yearly accession of Chercassian\* Troops, the most warlike of all Nations. Bajazet indeed had a plausible pretence for a war, because Castebas had not only receiv'd his brother Jem, but also supplied him privately with money (29) to enable him to raise new commotions But as this did not seem a sufficient reason to ingage his Empire in a war, he thought proper to hide his intentions,

# ANNOTATIONS.

garly plac'd in Walachia, are distant more than three hundred miles from the Walachian Borders, nor ever belonged to Walachia, but to Moldavia. I shall explain this more at large in another Place

(24) Kili | Cilia by the Moldavians, the ancient Lycoftomor, a City situate at the Northern Mouth of the Danuve, larger and deeper than the other four It is distant from Galack\*, a confiderable Mart of Moldavia, on the banks of the Danube, thirty eight leagues, or hours.

(25) Akkierman J Formerly Mon-cafter, the Ožía of Herodotus, now call'd by the Moldavians, Czetate\* alba or White Town, which is likewife the meaning of its Turkish Name. It is a most antient City, and famous for the Exile of Ovid, from whom also a Lake near it, call'd Ovid's Lake, frems to have receiv'd its name from the later Moldavians. But of this I shall discourse more largely in another place.

(26) Tarjus | Tarjus of Cilicia, the Country as is believ'd of St. Paul, Nº. 6.

(27) Kursbunly ] Or leaden, but the following name Kosunly neither has any Etymological meaning, nor know I any thing either of the Town or its Situation. But there is another Curfounly in the Crim, called Toluva by Herodotus, or, as others will have it, Chersonesus, from which the whole Peninfula derives its name.

(28) death | Gredyk Abmed Pasha was accus'd as is reported of a defign to dethrone the Emperor, to make great alterations in the State. and of folliciting Bajazer's eldeft Son Abmed to rebel against his Father; but that his Innocence appear'd clear to the Sultan after his death, who often lamented that he had fo rashly put to death, an innocent Man, an able Counsellor, and a fa-mous General. Thus the Crocodile sheds his tears over the Victim slain

(29) money] This feems to lignifie that Money which the Sultan of Egypt furnish'd him with for his Ex-

pences to Mecca.

K k

141

Ì

till a more favorable opportunity presented itself. This was shortly after offered him by fortune, and in a manner beyond his expectation. Maideulet (30), a petty Prince of some Provinces in Afia, led by an unfeafonable defire of increasing his dominion, endeavours to wrest certain Cities in Afia from the Chercassians\* (31). By these being shame-

## Annotations,

(30) Alaideulet ] One perhaps of the Persian Princes of whom the Turkif Annals fay nothing farther, though he left his name to his Territory, which fome Maps corruptly ascribe to Aladuli. It is a Country thut in with the Taurus and Antitau-

rus, or Cappadocia.

(31) Chercassiania ] The most noble of all the Scythian People, inhabiting a mountainous and rugged Country between the Euxine and Calpian Seas. They are by the Russians call'd Czerkiessi Patigorici, and by that name diftinguish'd from the Cozac Chercaffians. For all the Ukrain Cozacs are in the Ruffian Tongue call'd Chercassians, but chiefly those who dwell upon the Banks of the River Donetz, and live in Slobods or Colomes. But of these Chercassians thus distributed into Colonies there are five Provinces, whose chief Cities are Izium, Charcousa, Ochterca, Rebenska, and Sumy. To these is added the most antient Russian City call'd Czubutow, once the Fortress of the Rushan Empire against the Tartars, when that Empire was contain'd within narrower Bounds. It stands upon the Doneiz. The Petigoric Chercassians acknowledge no Deity, have no Worsbip, no Religion. They have a thick Grove lying in a Plain furrounded with high Mountains. It is well water'd, and has a large Ditch thrown round it. Hither the whole Nation repairs about the End of August, as if to the Olympic Games, and infliture a Traffic amongst themselves, by an exchange of their respective Commodities. Thus affembled, in compliance with a Tradition of uncertain Origin even amongst themselves, they confecrate and hang upon fome Tree of that Grove the best of their arms. they cleanse at their return the next ear, and killing them, restore them their former place. Hert Without

any guard these Arms remain 'till they are eaten up by Rust of Time Many Historians of these Nations have left it upon record that they were once converted to the Christian futh by the Genoeic, then I ords of Caffa, but that after the taking of the Crim by the Turks, being deprived of their Priests, they relaps'd to then former Ignorance. In proof of this opinion it is alledg'd, that before the Cabric: were infested with Mahametaniin, the Name of one Peter was highly reverenc'd amongst them, and that it was permitted to them to eat Swint s Flesh, from which some at the day abstain. They are under obedience to no Laws, have no Judges, affur d that the Conscience of the guilty Perfon is a full and adequate Punit ment. Formerly they were without all Learning, but not long ago fome of them embracing Malionatigm, were initiated in the Arabian Literature. The rest continuing in their old Gentilifm, retain to this day their former Savage Manners. The whole Region is diffributed into three Principalities, of which Cabasta is the head They yearly remit to the Chan of Crim-Tartary two hundred young Men and a hundred Virgins by way of Tribute. These are not chose at pleasure, but by Lot. Those of them who are even born amongst the Tartars have neither the face nor make of that People, and frould a Man call them the most be untiful of all the Oriental People, he would not much transgress the truth, are always deviling fomething new in their Habits and Arms, in which they are so passionately sollow'd by the Tartars, that they may well be call'd the Iren.b of the Tartar. Their Country is the School of Education for the Tartars, every Man of whom, who has not learn'd War and Behaviour, in this School, is reputed

fully repuls'd and feeing himself unable to withstand them, sues to Bajazet for assistance, promises to stam phis name on his coin, and have

## ANNOTATIONS

for a Tentek, a worthless insignificant Fellow. The Sons of the Chans of the Grun, the moment they fee the light, are fent to the Chercaffians for their Nourishment and Education. The Infant being brought into Chercassia\*, he who finds a Nurse for it, is call'd A'a, or the Sultan's Tutor, and ever afterwards he with his whole Race has an exemption from Taxes, because he has a fort of Fraternity with the Sultan. Wherefore it is earneftly fought by all the Chercaffians\*, that a Wife or a Sifter may once at least give the breast to the Chan's Son, and thereby purchase a freedom from Tribute. This is often attended with A Man who is stronger privately or forcibly entring the house where the young Sultan is nurs'd, and having feir'd his Person immediately carries him to his own House, and delivers him to a Wife or a Sifter to fuckle him. The two years in which he is at Nurse affords more than one inflance of this kind. The Prince when he is grown up is carefully taught to ride, shoot with arrows, to bear arms, together with the whole Science and Equipage of War, and then fent home. Women are here efteem'd noble from their having fmall langers and fhort leet. But a Virgin who is fo corpulent, and has unlizeable Feet or Fingers, be her Birth ever fo illustrious, is reputed ignoble, nor without a very large Fortune, has any chance for a Hul-band. Wherefore a Gul of feven years of age is brac'd in with an Iron Curdle of four or five Fingers breadth, her feet are cramp'd with wooden Shoes, both which Engines the is obhg'd to wear till fhe is full grown. So that what is effected by the French Women with Whalebone and other Arts with no fmall pain, is here acquir'd without any trouble in a tender age, and enjoy'd with ease the rest of their Lives. Neither the Boys nor Girls ever lie on a bed, but on Planks or Pavements cover'd with Hay or Straw, to prevent their grow-

ing fat, or effeminate, which they not imprudently conclude, is attended with floth and cowardice. The People are fo valuant and firong, that by the confession of the Tartars themselves, as ten Crims are more than a match for fifteen Bujakians, fo five Chercafnans are more than equal to ten Crimi. Of this Fortitude I shall give my Reader only one instance which happen'd about fix years ago, and is not much unlike those exploits for which the old Gracians were fo renown'd. the annual Tribute due to Selim Gicrai then Chan of the Crim (a Perion of great wildom and valour, an old Soldier, ) was not paid, he the following year fent his Son Shabbaz Gierai Sultan to demand the Captives for both the years. He was honourably received, as coming with no formidable Retinue, and had the Tilbute immediately put into his hands by the Seniors, as due But he had by chance feen a most beautiful Daughter of a Chercassian, whom, not appearing in the Lift of the Captives, he forcibly feizes contrary to custom, and carries off to his own House. Her Brothers, two very brave Youths, diffembling at first the forrow occasioned by this accident, comfort their Father, and affwage his grief with the flattering Prospect of her one day riling to the honour of the Sultan's bed But waiting their opportunity, they at last unexpectedly break in upon the Prince, fecure and alone with the ravish'd Virgin, his Guards being partly difmis'd and partly drunk, stab both him and their Sifter, and kill the Guards to a Man. The Sultan's Father hearing of the Fact, suppresses his refiniment, and declares that the Chercaffians had done well in punishing a Man, who had thus attempted a rape upon a Virgin feiz'd contrary to cuftom. To him being dead succeeded his el-dest Son Deutet Gierai, a bette after dethron'd by the Grand Seignior, and fent mto Banifiment. But Capian Gierat him mention'd in the publick prayers, and thus subjects his territories to him as a fief. On these conditions, Alaideulet obtaining some auxiliary

## Annotations.

Gierai his fucceffor and younger Brother, by leave from the Othman Court, marches against the Chercassians at the head of eighty thousand Tariars, threatning them with entire destruction. Having cross'd the Tanass he was joyn'd by fifteen thousand Cu-banensians. Prince Cabarta recetbanenstans. ving the news of this expedition, retires with feven thousand foot and three hundred horse to the top of a high Mountain adorn'd with the Ruins of a very large and ancient City, and fortifies the Clefts of the Walls with trees and ramparts of Earth. Cailan Gierai, fensible of the difficult attack of this Mountain (which had but one avenue) fends a trufty Messenger to the Prince to tell him that the Sultan had undertaken an expedition against the Usbeks, and defir'd three thousand of his Chercasfians\*, that besides, himself wanted a personal Conference with him, and therefore defir'd him to come down from the Mountain. Cabarta perceiving the deceit of the Enemy, answers the Messenger, that he was now confin'd with a fevere Fit of the Gout, but that within three days he would either on horseback or in a Litter (they have those with two Wheels) attend the Sultan. Messenger being gone, Cabartas calls the Chercassians together, and thus addresses them .- " What is your opi-44 nion, Country-men, concerning the " present posture of our affairs Do " you think it best for us to deliver " our selves in chains to the Sultan, to " be slaughter'd by him, our Wives " and Children to be carried into per-" petual Slavery, or like our felves, " to conquer or die? If we die, we 66 shall prevent the detestable fight of " a Tyrant raging over us, if we overcome, the confequence will be " the delivery of our felves by one " ftroke from the insupportable cruel-" ty of the Tartars." - Their Answer was unanimous, that it was better to die than to put themselves into the hands of the Enemy; upon this he obliges them

to their Resolution by the accustom'd oath taken by their Swords and Arms. Things being thus fettled, Cabarta in the evening fends one of his Men to the Chan to tell him that his Gout was now easier, and that the next day he would attend him as a suppliant with the Seniors of his army. Caplan Gierai, transported with this Meffage, order'd his Horses to be turn'd to pasture, and resolves to dedicate the whole Night to Rest Chercassians\*, acquainted with what pass'd in the Hords of the Tartars, bind the Bark of Trees into little Bundles well pitch'd, and tying them to the Tails of their Horses drive them down with great filence to the Kofb or Tents of the Tartars, and there put fire to the Bundles. The Horses, terrified at once with the flame and the pain, run with the utmost precipitation, and in a very daik night, throw themselves like Lightning among infinite numbers of Tartarian Hories, who likewise terrify'd, break their fetters, and with great noise disperse themselves every where, The Turtais awak'd by this noise, neither fee nor hear any thing but the Flames flying over the Plain, (for either the darkness or their fears prevented them from feeing the Horfes ) and thinking fire was come from Heaven, the Foot like men out of their senses run about in disorder. Chercaljians feeing this, quit all Arms besides their Swords, and kill every Man they meet, so that 'till the morning appear'd it was rather a than an Engagement. Butchery When it was day the Chercassians, gathering together almost a 100000 Horses of the Enemy, with the Loss of scarce five Men, return back in triumph. The Cubanensian Tartars fall on the other dispers'd Tartars, and put them to the Sword the two following days. For they had follow'd the Sultan by compulsion, ha ving always before liv'd in ftrict friendship with the Ghercassians\*. Caplan Gierai escapes with a handful of liary forces re-attacks the Chercassians, and after several battles fought with various success, takes from them Giullek (32), Sues, Adana, Kai-farie, and Antab. Caitebas perceiving Basazet's policy in designing to weaken his forces by the sword of another without hazard to himself, thinks he should use the same method, and opposes Kiorshab his neighbour to Alaideulet. These two petty Princes, supported by the aid of both Sultans, contend for some time with such doubtful fortune, that it was hard to determine which had the advantage. Whence it happen'd that these Countries were subject sometimes to the Chercassians, sometimes to the Othmans.

XIII. Taught by these events, Bajazet finds the dominion of the His Expedicional Chercassians in Egypt could not be subverted by arms, nor so flourish—tioninto Chering an Empire weaken'd, unless their Country was destroy'd, and the way shut up by which they were wont to convey into Egypt so many forces every year. Wherefore pretending to make peace with the Sultan of Egypt, he recalls his troops, and in the year 889, in the month 11 889 of Jemaziul achyr, unexpectedly invades Chercassia\*, overruns the A C. 1484 Country, and carrying off a great number of Captives, shuts up the

## ANNOTATIONS.

his Men into the Crim, leaving behind him forty thousand flain, and the rest all dispers'd. Accus'd to the Court of Constantinople of Rashness and Imprudence, he is depos'd from his dignity, and fent in banishment to Yanopolis a Town of Mysa. Deules Gierai, an exile in Chios, who com-manded the Tartarian Cohorts in the last engagement with the Rushans, was appointed his Successor. But of what esteem the Chercallians are with the Turks, may be guess'd from the Price which the Sellers put upon their Captives They value them in the first place, because their Virgins are more beautiful than all others, better proportion'd in their Bodies, capable of Instruction, and of great modesty, and their young Men, as they think, more sharp in their Wit, and capable of making the belt artificers. The next in their effeem are the Polanders, then the Abaza, then the Ruffians for the hardness of their Bodies and their enduring of Labour, which considerations often fend them to row in the Grand Signior's Gallies, then the Cof facks, then the Georgians, and last of all the Mengrelians The Germans, Venetians, and Hungarians (whom they are wont to call by the fame name of Nº VII.

Ifrenk) are by them thought incapuble of all drudgery, by reason of the softness of their Bodies, and the Women of giving pleasure pro-per to their Sex from the hardness of theirs. So that were Slaves produc'd in the Market out of all these Nations of the same age, firength, or beauty, a Chercaffian, Man or Woman, would be fold for 1000 Imperial Crowns, a Polander for 600, an Abazà for 500, a Russ or a Cozac for 400 a Georgian for 300, a Mengrelian for 250, a German or Ifrenk for still less. But in Egypt, Chercassians" and the Abaze are fold at double value, because there they alone fucceed to the Rights and Properties of their Masters, even in prejudice of the legitimate Sons. This indeed is against the precepts of the Koran, but is nevertheless allow'd from a fingular and fuperstitious behef of Joseph's praying to God whilst he was a slave in Egypi, that that Nation might be in perpetual subjection to Slaves, which by the secret judgment of God afterwards came to pass.

(32) Giullek] This and the rest that follow, are Cities of Syria, unknown to no European Travellers into the

East, except Giullek.

L I entrances

Moore 12 Spain.

H 891

entrances of the Mountains (33), by which it is furrounded, with Cafiles, and entirely hinders the Inhabitants from coming out. The morfery of foldiers being thus obstructed, Caitebai scoing his own daily diminish, and his Enemy's forces increase, is faid to fall fick with grief, and thortly after he dies.

XVII. The same year, Abdullab, Bajazet's son, Prince of Iconium. Other Expedeparted this life. In 890 he fends an army into Moldavia to the great ditions H. 890 flaughter of the Inhabitants, and the next year fubdues again the rebel-A. C 1485. lious country of Varfak.

XVIII. Whilst the Othman affairs thus slourish'd in the East, the He affifts the Mahametan Religion receives a grievous check in the Kingdom of Endelos (24). After several desears, the Musulmans are every where expell'd, put to the torture, and compell'd to abjure their religion. In this diffress they send ambassadors to Bajanet to set forth the rage and cruelty of the Spaniards, and from him, as head of the Mahometan commonwealth, to defire affiftance. Bajazet readily grants their request; and to perform his promise, sends the next summer a great sleet into the A. C 1486 Mediterranean under Kiemal Ali Pasta, who defeats the fleet of the Christians, lays waste the Island of Malta, and plundering the maritime

countries of Spain and Italy, returns laden with spoil. XIX. Flush'd with this success, he resolves to try his fortune again

Subdues Bofma and Crea- with the Christians. Wherefore in the year 894, he sends General Yacub with an army into Croatia and Bosnia, to subdue there what still A C 1489 oppos'd the Othman dominion. After he had taken several castles and march'd triumphantly over the whole region, he meets the Chriflians in arms, and defeating them with a memorable flaughter, fends many noble prisoners with their leader Jeneral yami (35) to the Empefor. The same year Bajazet marries his daughter to Abmed Myrza (36) Ogyrogli (37).

XX. In

#### Annotations.

(33) of the Mountains] At this day the Mountains of Arzirum, De murcapu, and Derbent, that is, the Iron Gate or Guard in which Tomyres Queen of Scythia intangled Cyrus King of Persia, and, as it is faid, cut him off with his whole army.

(34) Endelos ] Andalufia. By this name is all Spain call'd by the ancient Turks which fell under the dominion of the Moors, probably from the first Province, they feiz'd. But at this day the Turks, as well as we, diftinguish Spain into two parts, Spain and Lusitama, call'd by them also

(35) Jeneral yamı] This is the most famous Count John Torquatus, whose

fate is fo differently related by Chrifinn and Turkifb Writers. The first fay that he dy'd in this engagement amongst the thickest of the Enemy, not vanquish'd but tir'd with victory; the latter make him to be taken alive, nor know we which to believe

(36) Abmed Myrza] That he was either a Relation of the King of Tibris, or illustriously descended, is plain from the Sirname Myrza. For although the Etymology of this word is un-known (unless you should derive it from Myr a Prince, and Zad to denote a Race, born as it were of the Essence of the Forefathers, or Zade a Son ) it is nevertheless certain and confess'd, that this name never is, or

2

XX. In the year 895, the King of Azerbejan Sultan Name dies, whole Expeditions death proves the destruction of many others, by being the occasion of H 895.

## ANNOTATIONS

can be, given by the Tartars to any Person who has not receiv'd an immemorial Nobility and fome Hord from his Ancestors by hereditary The Reader will perhaps wonder how the memory of a Nobility can be preferv'd among a People fo barbarous, and strangers equally to politeness and learning, especially fince it is confess'd that no part of History lies in greater confusion and disorder than Genealogy. But it is a thing clear and beyond all controverfy, that no Nation in the World more accurately enumerates their Nobility and the Series of their Ancestors than the Scythians. For it is a Law with them facred and inviolable, that no Tariar, who is not descended from the first races of the Nobility, can obtain the appellation of Myrza or Noble, though he should alone retrieve the whole Nation from deftruction, or recover a loft battle, or perform any the like actions exceeding human powers nor can a Cazan or Cost (so they call ignoble families) by gift or purchase acquire a Title. So that the Races which have stood from the beginning diftinguish'd with nobility, enjoy it lingly and for ever-Of these you will hardly find a hundred in all Scythia Crimly, Orakogly, and Orumbetogly, are the three great Or the two last I shall Branches fpeak hereafter The Crims are fubdivided into two Branches, the Skirini and Myrza. The first, though they are of the same stock with the latter, are accounted more noble, because to their juffrage the Election of a Chan is committed, as that of the Emperor of Germany to the Electoral Princes. As their Race is widely differs'd over the Crim, the Chan deputes four Semore with authority over the reft. These only have power of electing and confirming the Chan, of deciding Causes, and governing the Commonwealth, and this power is fo great, that without their Voices neither can the Chan when he is elected be received, or do any act of Royalty His

only power in fuch case is to depose the disagreeing and offinate SHFIAG and fishfiture others in chier rucing who nevertheless seldom contradict the Acts of their Predecessors, as they are of the same Race and Family. Formerly, while they retain their freedom, upon the death or expulsion of a Chan, they elected at pleafure one of his Sons or Brothers ( but full with regard to the Jengizlan race) and confirm'd him with peets har ceremonies. But being now fubjected to the Turks, they are obliged either to obtain a confirmation of the Chan elected by them from the Oldman Court, or receive one fent from thence. The Ceremonies of their confirmation are very lingular. They have an attent and figure piece of Tapestry, destin'd, they believe, to this use by Jengischaft, and now almost eaten up with tittle and rottenio ness. In the middle of it they otder the new elected Chan to sit down, whilft all bare-headed cry as foud as they can, Cop yasha, or, in our way of speaking, long live the Chan. After this, the sour semor Skirini take the Tapestry by the four corners, and railing the Chan upon it, proclaim him Chan of all the Tartars. The other Myrzæ likewife had formerly large Poffessions, but are now, except a few, all extinct For in the Reign of Selim II. Emperor of the Turks, all the Myrze ( the Skirmi excepted) rebell'd against their Chan, Mengily Gierai, and dethron'd him; but at the intercession of the Skiring they again receiv'd, and faluted him Chan. He, to revenge this injury and prevent any future rebellion, at first suppress'd his resentment, and publish'd an Amnesty. Two years after he made a great entertainment, and invited all the Myrze to it. He regal'd them with great magnificence, and protracted the Banquet till Midnight, when all of them, made drunk with fweet Wine and Boza (a kind of liquor amongst the Tariars made of Millet-feed, ) were by his orders put

Expt. Caiteba's Successor, are concern'd, every one striving to seize the Provinces destitute of a Governour. So the Armies, though the Trumpet silently sounds to battle, ingage, and the victorious Turk for fix years roams into almost every corner of Asia. At last, after many constitue in the year 901, all those countries, for which Bajaxet and the Chercassians had hitherto contended, are annex'd to the Othman Empire. In the year 902 the Rhodians are deseated with great slaughter by the Turkish General Nasubeg. At the same time Abmed Myraa, whose sidelity Bajaxet had purchas'd seven years before with

H. 901 A. C. 1496. H. 902. A. C. 1497.

## ANNOTATIONS.

into Waggons to convey them home, but in the way they were murder'd by Soldiers plac'd for the purpose, whilft they lay wallowing in their in-temperance. This Tragedy has quite deftroy'd the Race of the Mirza within the Crim, and reduc'd it to a few who were then abroad. But the other Nations of Scythia have their Myrze still, chiefly in Bujak, the Bessarabia, of the Ancients. The Daughters of these Myrza marry to none but a Myrza, but the Sons have the privilege of marrying Slaves, and their Children are as legitimate as if they were born of a female Myrza. The Betrothing and Nuptials are attended with peculiar rices When both Parents are agreed upon the marriage of their Children, the Bride's Father orders a little house to be built, with the door opening into his own bed-chamber, and with a win dow fo small that it will scarcely re-ceive the head of a Man. Through this it is permitted to the Bridegroom to kis his Bride in the night, and to concert measures with her concerning her escape. The Parents and Brothers are careful fpies upon the Bride, whilft the Bridegroom endeavours to convey her off either by flealth or force. It often comes to a skirmish, but only with Fifts and Whips call'd Camebi, and the Bridegroom, if taken, is not difmis'd without a ranfom. But if in the scuffle the Bridegroom can come at the Bride, he boldly enters, carries her off, ftrips her little Lodging, and retains whatever he finds in it for a Dowry. Her Brothers purfue her thus taken away at-

tended by their Relations, and if they can lay hold of her before the arrives at the Bridegroom's Pavilion, he is either to redeem, or accept, her without a Portion. But the moment the reaches his Tent, the War ends in a Marriage. Things are told of the Daughters of these Myrza equally memorable and worthy of admiration. When they become Women, and have their monthly fluxes, let them have been ever so strong and healthful before, they are immediately feiz'd with a fort of Lunacy. This gives great joy to the Parents, who congratulate each other upon it as an evident token of Nobility, and an acquittance of the Mother from Adultery, of which she would stand accus'd should her Daughter mis of this indisposition. An entertainment is immediately provided, to which all the Daughters of the Myrze are in-vited. This Ceremony being over, the Lunatic Virgin, is oblig'd to dance three days and so many nights to the found of a Monochord (taken notice of by Pliny) without any refreshment from eating, drinking, or fleeping, till the falls down as one dead. The third day they fet before her Meat and unfeaton'd Broth made of Horse flesh, with which when she is refresh'd she is again call'd to the Dance. This exercise being thrice repeated, her Malady immediately goes off, and troubles her no more during her life.

(37) Ogyrogli ] s. c. Son of a happy Omen, from Ogyr, happy Omen, and Ogul Son. It fignifies also, Son of a Thief,

the marriage of his daughter, on pretence of hunting, goes out of Confiantinople and flies to Tybris (38), where he is chosen King.

XXI. The next year Bajazet lays at Constantinople near Eskt Seras the Warninthe foundations of a Jami, Hospital, Taalimchane, and School, which are si-Greece, and nish'd in eight years. In 905 he moves with great forces into Greece, and makes peace with his in the first assault takes Annebacht, and the next summer on the 4th day Neighbours of Muharrem becomes master of Mothone by storm, and Coroni by surrender. In 907, the Ifrense with a great sleet besiege Mitilin (39), but H 907 sister Gallies coming to the relief of the besieged, they retire. About A C 1501 the same time, Bajazet having made peace with all his neighbours (40), orders the soldiers, tir'd with so many expeditions, to rest and exchange their martial toils for the pleasures of the city.

XXII. But how dangerous to this Empire is repose, the transactions Sheitan Culy about this time in Afia plainly demonstrate. Sheitan Culy (41), a Ma-Prefian with gician his Heresy

#### Annotations.

(38, Tibru] By the moderns call'd Tauri, once Metropolis of the Persian Fmpire, and now to be numbred amongst the chief Cities of Persia.

(39) Mitilin] Christian Writers relate that the Mitylene was besieg'd by a French sleet. This I easily believe, since the Turks call all the Western Europeans Isrens.

(40) with all his neighbours The Peace made between the Turks and Venetians by the affiftance of one Andreas Grittus, then a Slave in the Court of Bajazet, by which Leucas and Nertits were restord to the Turks, and Cephaloma to the Venetians.

(41) Shettan Culy ] 1, e. Servant or Slive of Satun, the first Hæresiarch amongst the Mahometans. The Turks gave him this name from a belief that he was a Magician and Conjurer. The Persians on the contrary affirm him to be a most learned Man, and full of a divine Spirit, who not only corrected the Koran, but prov'd his Doctrine by Miracles, and from thence he has obtain'd from them the name of Sofi or Sophus (1 e. wife ) The Persians and Turks, with no less disagreement, relate the story of the propagation of his doctrine. For the Persians say, that Soft being expell'd the Othman Dominions by Bajazet, retir'd to Ismail King of Persia, and there whilst he exercis'd the function of Præceptor to his Children, especially in Mathematicks, finish'd the Correction and genuine Interpretation Nº 7.

of the Koran, and drew the King and the Nobles to his Sentiments. But as neither his Preaching nor Exhortation could gain the common People, he obtain'd a Mandate from the King fignifying, that whoever refifted his Doctrine, if rich, should forfert his Wealth and Honour, if of inferior condition, his Life. Perfia, mov'd with the terror of this Edict. faw her Sons in multitudes running into the neighbouring Kingdoms, with the lofs of their Riches and Estates, as in the last Century the Huguenois sled out of France. The King, struck with this slight of his Subjects, call'd the Sofi to him, and told him, that as for himself he was perswaded of the truth of his Doctrine, but could not on its account fuffer his Kingdom to be deprived of its Inhabitants. The Soft's answer was, that in this necessity where the Truth of Doctrine clash'd with the fafety of the Publick, the proper re-course was to Miracles: that he had fuch confidence in God and the Prophet, that a Miracle would be granted to confirm and establish his Doctrune in the minds of the ignorant. Upon this the most learned Inter-preters of the Koran were conven'd out of the whole Kingdom, when the Soft deliver'd to them a Book, fair and unwritten, and faid ... If " ye have yet any doubt of my Doc-" trine, God will confirm the truth " by a Miracle, fuch as was never Mгm

gicien, and a men full of diabolical arts, had now lurk'd some time near the Town of Beg Baser; and finding the people after a ten year's peace greedy

## ANNOTATIONS.

" feen or heard of before." He then lodg'd in an old hollow Tree the Blank Book, and another of the Keran as formerly receiv'd. The Mouth of the Hole, through which the Books were convey'd, was fecur'd with Iron hoops, which had three Seals put to them, of which the King kept one, and the adverse party the two others. He offer'd under the Tree publick prayers every day, and on the fortieth order'd the Seals to be broke open, and the Books to be drawn out The unwritten Book was found fill'd up from beginning to end, and entirely agreeing with the copy revis'd by himfelf: the old Copy was every where defac'd in the Writing, and only the Margin left untouch'd. On light of this all the whole Company cry'd out, Allab, Allab, God, God, and immediately embracing the Doctrine deliver'd by the Soft as true and free from all fuspicion, sought every where for the ancient Copies of the Koran and committing them to the Flames, transcrib'd new ones from this miraculous Book. They moreover chang'd the Character; for whereas the older Copies of the Koran were written in Nifebi (retain'd by the Turks to this day) it was his order that all the Korans from that day should be transcrib'd in Taalik, to diffinguish the genuine from the spurious copies. Thus the Persians tell the story, whilst the Turks give it quite another turn. For they fay, that Sheitan Culy, whilft he was Præ-ceptor to the Sons of Ifmail King of Persia, led the youngest Son (whose name I have forgot, for I am oblig'd to rely on my memory for feveral things transcribed from the mouths of the learned Turks and other Monuments. now facrific'd to the Malice of Fortune) frequently into a Wood, and thew'd him an old Plane Tree, with command, that if at any time his Father should bid him name a Tree to him it should be that. In this Tree he had lodg'd a year before the Book of the Koran, as reform'd by humfelf, writ in an unknown but elegant Cha-

racter, and another transcrib'd from the received copies, but all foully blotted. The Hole of the Tree was fo ftop'd up by Nature and magical Arts, that no traces of it appear'd. The Soft being afterwards feverily chid by Ismail for the fedition is'd by him, had recourse to his pre-meditated fraud, and offer'd to confirm his Doctrine by a Mira-cle The King upon this offer call'd Multitudes together to witness the Miracle. The Conditions were, that if the Truth had the confirmation of a Miracle, all without exception should be oblig'd to receive it, if not, Death should be the portion of Sheitan Culy as an Impostor. All, as ignorant of the Fraud, contenting, the King went out to the Grove attended by numbers of learned Men and of the common People. The Impostor addressing himfelf to the King, that all fuspicion of fraud, says he, may be remov'd, order your little Son to show you any I ree he shall please. This being approved by both King and People, thow me, faid the King to his Son, fome I ree in this The Boy, as he had been Grove. instructed, pointed to the old Plane Tree, and immediately the stoppage being remov'd from the cavity of the Tree, Shertan convey'd the un-written Book and the old Koran, as is before faid, into the Tree, and after the mockery of hypocritical Prayers, left them both there, the Hole being fecur'd by Iron Plates and Seals. On the fortieth day, the People again came to the Tree, when the Impostor (with bare hands and previous Prayers to remove all fufpicion) went to the Hole, and taking out, not the Books last put in, but two others plac'd below them then held them up to the Pcople, and ask'd whether they were not the fame put in by him in their fight. The Binding and Shape being exactly correspondent, the People answer'd, they were the fame, and upon the delivery of them into their hands, found the Impostor's unwritten Book fill'd

greedy of novelties, in the year 916 vends his long meditated herefy H 916 in the Koran, supports it with miracles, and therewith so bewitches A. C 1515 the credulous vulgar, that in a short time he is able to bring an army of followers into the field. Whereupon Bajazet instantly sends Alt Pasha with forces to disperse these riotous assemblies; who vanquishing the Impostor in battle, forces him to sly to Ismail Shab (42), where

## ANNOFATIONS.

with fair Characters, and comparing it with the new Koran, discover'd every where a perfect agreement Aziz allab, or glorious God, was now the Cry, and when the old Koras was found foully stain'd with Ink, they again cry'd out, Hak allab, Sub-ban allab, just God, merciful God To suppress for ever all suspicion of his fraud, the Turks say the Soft so bewitch'd Ismail by his Incantations, that he order'd the Tree to be immediately burnt, on pretence of hindring any superstitious Adoration of it by the People Thus, fay the Turks, the Impostor propagated his Religion amongit the Persians. From that time the Turks and Persians have fiercely disputed about Religion. The Summ of the Controversy lies in this, that the Persians pursue with the most direful imprecations three of Mahomei's Successors, Ebubekir, Omer, and Othman, and call them Impostors, Falsisiers, and Robbers, and acknowledge only Ali at true Successor of the Propher, who they pretend was murder'd in a Jams by the treachery of his Collegues. The Turks acknowledge all four as the Prophet's true Successors, and pay an equal respect and reverence to their Memories Another Cause of quarrel between the two Nations is, that the Turks as foon as they rife out of their Bed, before they perform their Sabab Namaz, are oblig'd by their Law to wash their Feet with water, and after they have put on their Mest or Shoes, to rub them with their hands. The Perfians on the contrary think it sufficient only to rub the foot with the bare hand, at their rifing, and that any other washing is needless. This Controverfy, trifling as it may feem, is thought

of confequence enough to fet the two Nations at enmity, and engage them in the blackest reproaches and injuries against each other The Turks call the Persians, Blasphemers, Impious, Infidels, Kyzsl bash, or Redbeads, and say they are worse than the Christians. The Persians in their turn retort the fame opprobious names upon the Turks. And to such height is this enmity carried between the two Nations, that whereas the Turks firmly believe that for every Enemy of a different Religion (Subjects being put upon another foor) flain by them, God will amply reward the Service. in this computation they make one Persian slain equal to feventy Christians. Hither we are to refer the manner us'd by both Nations in fending Ambassadors. The King of Persia, when he sends one to the Turk, amongst other Presents, first offers him the Koran, as well to boaft the Truth of his Law, as to engage the Turk to the reception of it by this, as it were, filent Preaching. The Sultan after he has received the Ambaffador, and heard a Recital of the Presents read to him by the Resful Kiutab (vulgarly the Reis Efends or first Chancellor) when the name of the Koran is mention'd he kiffes his own, plac'd by him on a Cushion, then reverently returns it to its former place, by this ceremony filently afferting the Truth of his own Koran, and the Fallity of the Persian.

(42) Ismail Shah King of Persia, Cotemporary with Basazet, the fierce and everlasting Enemy of the Othman Race. His inperior Knowledge has plac'd him amongst the most learned Princes, and probably procur'd him the Sirname of Soft, or the wife, +

<sup>+</sup> He was Founder of the prefent Royal Family of Perfia, and from him they have retun'd the name of the Great Sophy to this day

But of this, and other the like observations, more largely in the additional Notes

meeting with more liberty to forced his poison, he turns the King with the whole Nation from the true paths of the Koran.

Bajazet defigns to delibon Abmed

XXIII. About the same time, whilst Bajazet in the midst of peace, was rolling in pleasures, the inconveniences of approaching old age, Empire to his and the sharp pains of the Gout in his hands (43), contracted by luxury, inspir'd him with a resolution of smitating the example of his Grandfather, and voluntarily refigning the Empire. To this end, he fends for his eldest Son Abmed, whom he had set over Cony, declares him Heir of the Empire, and chuses to lead a private life at Magneha, the place of his Grandfather's retirement.

Selim refenting it, is de feated by his Father

XXIV. But having discover'd his intention before he had gain'd the great men to Abmed's interest, it does not succeed to his wish, and what he defigns to be for his advantage, turns to his detriment For Selim, who was Governor of Trapezond, hearing of these tranfactions, with the forces of his Province, crosses the Pontus, marches to Adrianople, and that he might not alienate the Minds of his People by the name of rebellion, pretends he is come to pay his duty to his Father (44). From hence with twenty thousand men he goes directly to Confantinople, hoping the Janizaries, whom he knew to be in his interest. would join with him. Bajazet perceiving his Son's defigns, affembles what forces happen'd to be at Constantinople, and bravely meets Selim. in the month Jemaziul evvel of the year 917, near Chorlo\* at a Village A C ISH call'd Ogrifs. The battle is long doubtful, but at last Scien is vanquish'd and forc'd to fly. Bajazet forbids all pursuit, hoping, as he said, his fon would lay aside his sierceness, return to a sound mind, and be convinc'd by this fatherly correction, that God approves not the rebellion of children against their Parents. But if he would not even now repent, he should be left to the divine wrath, which never suffers rebellious Sons to go unpunish'd. Thus Selim, escaping by the goodness of a father, comes to Varna (45), and from thence fails to Kaffa, a maritime Town of Crim-Tartary.

#### ANNOTATION S.

(43) Gout in his hands The Chriflians fay it was in the feet that Bajazet was troubled with the Gout. Both parhaps right, fince this diftemper generally visits both hands and

(44) To his Father] The Turks are enjoyn'd by their Law to visit their Country and Parents, if in their power, after a long absence from them. And to neglect this is with them acting against a divine precept. From hence the Proverb, "To visit "Country and Parents in due time, es is not of less moment than a reli-

" gious Pilgrimage to Mecca." For this reason, if any Servant asks leave from his Master to visit his Country, the Master cannot deny him; or if he does, is chargeable with the Sin. and not the Servant. This was Selim's pretence when he had only in view the dethroning of his Father For fince Bajazet had ascended the Throne, Selim had not once feen him.

(45) Varna] A City of Pontus, memorable by the defeat and flaughter of Uladiflaus, King of Hungary and

Poland.

XXV. Freed from this danger, Bajazet, who reflected not that Who again of Crowns are given by God and not by man (46), thinks of meeting of to his San no farther obstacles to his conferring the Empire on whom he had in-Abmed tended. Wherefore he again fends to Abmed, relling him, his Enemy and Rival, was conquer'd and expell'd the bounds of the Kingdom, and therefore he should come, and with universal consent take the crown with his father's benediction Ahmed, more cautiously considering the offer, answers, that his father in vain attempted to confer this favour on him, fince he knew not only the Janizaries, but all the great Men were inclin'd to Selim, and wish'd him alone Emperor, and therefore it was not a rival brother, but his adherents the foldiers, that he fear'd.

XXVI. Bajazet seeing Abmed dislik'd his intention, and desiring Bajazet is not to debar Selim from the Throne for his insolence and immoderate thirst languages to of dominion, thinks of taking another course, and of deferring his return the purpose at present, in hopes of easily finding an opportunity to effect it. But it seem'd difficult to revoke his declar'd resolution of resigning, because whatever is said or done by the Sultans, is believed to be so firm (47), as not to be retracted on any human account. Wherefore

## ANNOTATIONS.

(46) not by man ] Although the Turks affirm, that nothing, either of good or evil can happen without the will of God, yet it is their belief, that God can relule nothing to a Milliman, ferroully petitioning him according to the Oracle of the Koran, "O ye Angels, my Servant has touch'd me with Shame," or, "I am " asham'd that I have not fulfill'd his " Petition. Two things however are, according to them, never to be obtain'd by Prayers, Prophecy, and Empire For these God will never grant to any other, fince they are already limited by his Decree, Prophecy to Manomet, and to none after him, and Empire to the Othman Race alone, which feems to be infinuated by many expounders of the Kuran Thus the jubile Impostor pronounc'd himself the last of all the Prophets, and deftroy'd in all others the ambition of Empire. So that should a Man only hypothetically tay, If God would grant me Empire or Prophecy, I would do this or that, he would be immediately thought to have deny'd God, and communicated with Infidels, which Sin is only to be abolish'd by the Tesdid Iman, or the renewal of his 16 :

faith, by which, as a new Convert, he is to appear before the Imam or Priest, and in the presence of two or three Witnesses declare the Profession of his Faith.

(47) to be fo firm] Amongst the Sultan's most haughty Titles, that of Zellullab, or Shadow of God, holds the first Place, as it commands an obedience to his Edicts, as if they were divine, and never to be relisted. In proof of this opinion, I shall produce a particular which happen'd in my Father's time. As Mabomet IV. was marching his Army in May thro' Moldavia to the Siege of Caminiei. recollecting that it was the Scafon for ripe Cherries at Constantinople, he ask'd the prime Vizir, why Cherries were not brought to his Table. The Vizir immediately dispatch'd a Capus basha to the Prince of Moldavia, with command that he should instantly provide Cherries for the Emperor's Table. The Prince excusing himfelf, by faying, that no Cherries could then be had, nor hardly in June, the Capuji basha reply'd, "O Prince, " when the Emperor commands, " there is no faying a thing is not,
" or cannot be done" Wherefore the Prince, to make himself believ'd,

he privately endeavours to induce the Great Men to petition him to alter his mind. But these, on the contrary, encourage the Janizaries. (to whom quiet, and a ten years pacific (48) Emperor, was ungrateful) to favour Selim, and easily lead, where they please, the soldiers thirsting, after so long a peace, for nothing but intestine wars and commotions.

Who call home Selim, and bring him to Con fluntinople

XXVII. The Great Men privately fend Letters to Schim, acquainting him that they have all unanimously resolv'd, to salute him Emperor, and not fuffer Bajazet to depart from his declaration of refigning the Crown. Terrified perhaps by his former danger, Selim at first refuses his consent, and tells the Conspirators, that indeed he is so far from despising the Throne offer'd by them, that he is ready to shed his blood for any, even the meanest foldier, but is unwilling to do any, the least thing contrary to his father's pleasure, especially since he had been taught by late experience, that the hand of God is against him. The Janizaries receiving this answer, repeat their instances to Selim by Zemberekcht\* Pashi (49), affirming they would all bind themselves by oath, not to defift, till they see him rais'd to the Throne, even against his father's will. Perswaded at last by these promises, Selim departs from Kaffa with a few attendants, and under the former pretenfe, goes to Constantinople. On news of his arrival, the Janizaries flock together in Companies in the streets, and joyfully meet him at the Gate Top Kapu (50), Selim furrounded with a band of these, enters the City, and goes into

#### ANNOTATIONS.

ient by the Capuji bafba fome Branches of Cherry Trees yet in the bloffom; on fight of which, Mabonnet is faid to have cry'd out, Gaur vilauett foub im/fb, "the Regions of "the Infidels are cold," which admits of two interpretations, either of the natural coldness, or of any thing execrable and contrary to the Mabonnetan Religion.

(48) ten years pacific] That Peace and Quiet are not for the Interest of this Nation, has been prov'd by constant experience. Wherefore if they have no foreign Enemy upon their hands, they turn their rage against the Emperor, and like Crabs devour one another. To this purpose, they have a faying, alberekitul berekiet, Motion is Happiness, that is, every Alteration brings with it some Happiness. For besides their natural propension to commotions, which prevents their having almost any peace amongst themselves, they are by their Law commanded to keep no long

peace with the Christians, or any other Nation not believing in Mahamet. This would at once hinder the propagation of their Religion, and give occasion for everlating civil distensions. The Turks here say only Halizeman, i. e some time, but I compute it at ten years Christian Writers agree with them, whilst they affert that Bajazet lay some time quiet under the consinement of the Gout

(49) Zember ekchi\* Pafbi] He was formerly Superintendent of the Battering Rams, and other military Machines, from Zemberek, an Engine to throw Stones, and Bafbi, one that prefides. This Office is now grown into diffuse.

(50) Top Kapu] Etymologically the Gate of the warlike Engines. It is in the weftern part of the City, in the high road between Ederne Capufi, the Adrianople Gate, and Syllium Capufi, the Syllebrian Gate. In that Row are large Towers, where the Turks lodge their Gun-powder to be distributed out to necessary uses.

the Mead Enibagehe (51), where the Janizaries had prepared Tents for him.

XXVIII. Bajazet is troubled at the news of this unexpected affair, Sehm's near and perceiving nothing could be done by force, studies to soften his son answer to h by gentle expressions. Wherefore on the eighth day, when he thought bullador the violence of his ardor abated, he fends for his Prime Vizir, Coja Mu/tapha Pasha (52), and bids him in his name tell his son: " If my son de-" fires to visit me, and obtain my benediction, why does he delay? But " if under these proceedings he only conceals his impiety, why does " he vainly found the time?" The Vizir executes his commission, and with due adoration delivers the Sultan's commands. Selim perceives Bajazet's policy, and returns a no less ambiguous and acute answer, " Tell " my Father, (fays he to the Vizir) I will not in the least disobey his " orders, and am ready to go wherever he shall send me, if he will but please to satisfy some doubts I have entertained concerning the present " administration of affairs Soft ogli (53), a man of no account is risen " up in the East, and with a sudden and swift progress, has laid waste " the Othman Empire, carrying his arms as far as Cafarea, whilst you " instead of defending the Provinces, are an idle spectator of his vic-" tories. On the other hand, a Chercassian\* (54), of obscure birth and " name, who ought to be proftrate under the fword of the Othmans. " has made himself master not only of Egypt, but of many other " countries in Syria, formerly subject to our dominion, and holds them " even to this day, as if they were his lawful inheritance. To fuch " contempt, the Majesty of the Empire, rever'd under our Ancestors. " is fallen, and they, who formerly under the name of Bajazet, were " fear'd as invincible Heroes by the neighbouring Nations, are now " under the same name, as men unactive and effeminate, scorn'd and " provok'd. Where is now the honour of the Aliothman Scepter! "Where the military Discipline! Where the zeal of propagating the " Law! Where the arts of Government! Is it thus, the Empire is in-" larg'd? Is it thus, we deal with our enemies? Is it thus, the ardor of " our hitherto invincible foldiery is preserv'd? Certainly by such me-" thods our glorious Ancestors neither establish'd the Throne, nor ex-" tended the bounds of the Empire. These things duly weigh'd, let " my father himself judge, whether they, who by their consent (55),

### ANNOTATIONS.

to death.

(51) Embagche\*] Etymologically New Garden. It is a space of almost a mile in compass, but at present Meadow where Horses go to pasture, and call'd by them Chair.

(52) Coja Mustapha Pojha] or Old Muslapha. A large Stone Exchange for the convenience of Merchants,

t

built by him at Constantinople, and which still retains his name.

(53) Soft Ogli] Ismail King of Persia.
(54) The Chercassian. The King of Egypt.

(55) By their confent] The perfidious Son is feeking excuses for dethroning his Father, and putting him or permission, or negligence, have been the cause of these mismanagements, can escape punishment? For unless a timely remedy be
applied to these corruptions, we shall be oblig'd to ascribe the approaching and almost unavoidable ruin of our Empire to our sloth,
and not to the bravery of our enemies."

y*azet re*ins to Selies, d retires to smotres

XXIX. The Vizir returning to the Sultan, and reporting his fon's answer, Bajazet, is said to reply: " I too plainly see, my son's business is not to visit his father, but right or wrong to seize the Empire " However that it is defign'd for him by heaven, I am convinc'd by my " dreaming (56) last night, that my Crown was by the foldiers plac'd on Selim's head. Wherefore fince I deem it impious either to at-" tempt, or act any thing contrary to God's will, in an humble refigna-" tion to divine providence, I lay down the Enfigns of Government, and will and command Selim to be by all faluted Emperor" Accordingly he instantly acquaints Selim with his resolution, and defices his permission to live privately at Dymotica. Selim intreats his father to remain in the new Palace, for that he will be contented with the Empire in the old one. Bajazet still urges his request, alledging, one feabbard can never hold two fwords (57). So prevailing at last, and taking with him the most precious things out of the Treasury, he departs from Constantinople, in company with Yunus Pasha (58) and a few friends, the 18th day of the month Sefer in the year 018.

H 918 C 1512 elim 15 rown'd,

XXX. Selim with the Great Men attends his father to Kuchuk\* Chekmeje\* (59) two hours distant from Constantinople, talks to him about
establishing the State, and as if he had a mind to expiate by his present
obsequiousness his past disobedience, desires his Blessing. After which,
he bids his father farewell, and returning to the Palace, receives the imperial diadem with the usual solemnities.

# Annotations.

(56) dreaming] The Turks are very fuperfittious about Dreams, and think, that the pure Soul of a Mufulman forefees, and is admonish'd of fome things in a Dream. They have a Book call'd Vakaà namè, or the Interpreter of Dreams, to which they apply on these occasions. But they say, Diusk giorendè degil dur yoran dedur, That is, the Event of the dream depends not on the Seer but the Interpreter. For this reason, as soon as any one says, I have had a Dream this Night, all the Company cry out, Chair ola, by which they think, that though the Interpretation of the Dream is of bad portent, yet it is now averted.

(57) Two Swords ] He feems to have alluded to the faying of Alexander

the Great, "That the World could "not be govern'd by two Suns," nor with fafety to its State be sub-

" ject to two Emperors"
(58) Yunus Pasta] From the Itebrew, Joebanan or John So John the Prophet is by them call'd Yunus

Peigamber

(59) Kuchuk\* Chekmeje\*] A little Draw-Bridge, afterwards turn'd into one entire Bridge, but still retaining the name of Little, to distinguish it from a Greater. Kuchuk\* Chekmeje\* is the Town formerly known by the name of Athyra in the high road which leads to Adrianople, distant from Censtantinople: two hours, and from Bujuk Chekmeje\* (Great Bridge) six.

8. Bajazet II. XXXI. Mean while, Bajazet pursues his intended journey, but so and community

flowly, that he halted, on pretence of indisposition, in almost every Marrow

village, and thereby bred a suspicion in his son, that he hop'd to be recall'd to the Government, (which he had unwillingly refign'd) by some popular commotion. Perhaps this was the cause, that when he was scarce forty miles from the City, he ended his days by an unexpected Matyrdom (60). Selim having notice of his death, orders the Vizir and Great Men to remove his body to Constantinople. He himself in a mourning habit meets them on foot in their return without the City. and with great pomp, like a triumph, introducing the funeral into the town, commands the body to be buried in the Jame founded by Bajanet.

XXXII. Bajazet liv'd fixry two, and reign'd thirty two, years. He had Bajazet's Issue five fons, Abmed, Selim, Shebinshab, Alemshab, and Corcud, whose for- and Characte tunes will be related hereafter. He was a Prince if the Turkish Historians are to be credited, valiant, active, of an invincible mind, even in advertity. and had by exercise acquir'd such strength, that sew could equal, and none excell him. A punctual observer of the law, and a great patron of the learned, to each of whom he not only gave every year ten thousand Akche\* (61), but also bountifully supplied them with Softa + and provisions according to their respective conditions. He was himself fo well vers'd in all parts of literature, that he was effected by his people, as well the Prince of learning as of the Empire. By his conduct or good fortune, the Othman Empire, was not only not impair'd, but grievous wars wag'd with great honour, and large Kingdoms subdu'd. He expended great part of his revenue in buildings rais'd to the Glory of God (62). He repair'd the walls of the City demolith'd in many blaces by an Earthquake, and in the Braffer's Market (63) built a stately Jami of admirable workmanship, with another at Amasia not indeed so large, but equally beautiful and elegant. I fay nothing of the many Medrefe, and Imaret erected by him in several places. Besides these structures destin'd for the divine service, he built near Ofmannek, over the river Kyzyl irmak (64) a marble bridge of nineteen arches, and

#### ANNOTATIONS

(00) Martyrdom] From hence may be inferr'd that what Philip Lonicer relates of his death out of Anthony Manevin, is not a fiction. In Tom. I. Part v. c. 22 He tells us that Bajazet was murder'd on his journey by the hands of a Jewifb Phylician, tho' the Turks do not avowedly confess the deed

(61) Akthe\* ] White, interpreted from the Grack word gozpey It is a piece of money less in weight and value than all others (the brass halfpenny's called Mangyr, excepted) 120 of this Coin make a Leonine, 300 a Venetian Grawn.

(62) Glory of God ] Whatever is dedicated to God, is vulgarly faid to be built to the Glory of God, Ilakk yoluna, or in the Arabic, filebil ullab, or fi tavyk ullab, in the way of God. (63) Brafier's Market Not far

from the old Palace, call'd anciently LEAKOTPÉTYS.

(64) Kyzyl Irmak ] Red Stream.

in the Province of Sarichan over the river Giozfui (65), another of square stone with the same number of arches.

A fingular infance of piety

XXXIII. But before I proceed, I shall relate a fingular instance of piety much praised by the Turks. He is said through the whole course of his life, to have carefully preferv'd the dust, which in his expeditions, fluck to his Cleaths, and in his last hours conjur'd the By-standers with direful imprecations to make a large brack of it, and place it in his monument under his right arm inflead of a cushion, adding he had always regarded the Hadis (66), or faying: Igburetu Caddemabu febilullab baram aleibi ennare: that is, " If any man's feet have been " sprinkled with the dust in the path of the Lord, him will God " preserve from Hell-fire."

#### ANNOTATIONS.

or Eyes, metaphorically Tears, as Gioz yafbi, the humour or fpring of the Eyes.

(66) Hadis] Is properly the Ora-cle of a false Prophet, pronounc'd according to the opinion of the Turks with a prophetical Spirit. For they

(65) Giozsui ] Water of the Eye distinguish the Prophecies of the Koran into divine, or distated by the Archangel to Mabomet, which they call Hadifi Kudus, and into Prophetical, which Mahomes pronounc'd by a divine Spirit, and these they call Hadisunnebevi.

Cotemporary with BAJAZET II. reign'd in Europe.

In Germany, FREBERIC IV. of Austria. 1439-93.
MAXIMILIAN III. 1493-1518.

EDWARD V. 1483.
RICHARD III. 1483-5.
HENRY VII. 1485-1509. In England, HENRY VIII. 1509-46.

CHARLES VIII. 1483-98. LEWIS XII. 1498-1515. In France,

The End of the Reign of BAJAZET II.



SELIM 7 Henth EMPEROR of the TURKS; in the Gen 1513



# The REIGN of

# S E L I M I.

Ninth EMPEROR of the TURKS.

# BOOK III. CHAP. III.

I. SELIM, firnam'd Yavuz (1), was born in the year 872, in his Abmed rebells.

Grandfather's life-time, whilst Bajazet was Lord of Amafia, and in 918 on the 19th of the Month Sefer in the 46th year of his H 918.

age, A C 1518

# ANNOTATIONS.

(1) Yavuz] This word properly fignifies fierce or favage, and from thence passionate. This name ('tis faid) was apply'd to Selim for his rage and tyranny, with which he purfued not only the Criminals, but also the innocent, even his Father and Brothers, as if they were Enemies. They report of him, that once ordering his Prime Vizir to erect the Horse-Tails before his Gate as the fignal of an expedition, and to pitch the Tents in a proper place, the Vizir only asking him to what quarter he would have the Tents pitch'd, he was, without any answer to his question, put to death by him that a Successor met with the same sate the fame day, but that the third, made wifer by the examples of the other two, pitch'd the Tents to the four quarters of the World, and took care to have every thing ready that was necessary to the expedition. He being afterwards ask'd by the Sultan, whether and to what quarter the expedition was prepar'd, answer'd him that every thing was in a readiness

let him move which way he thought fit, to which the Sultan's reply was,
"The death of the two first has " fav'd the life of the third, and procur'd me a good Vizir" He alone of to many Turkillo Emperors shav'd his Beard after he ascended the Throne, contrary to the Precepts of the Koran and the received custom. For the Sons of the Emperors are order'd by the Law to shave their Beards before they come to the Empire, but afterwards to let them grow. Selim being on this account one day gently and facettoufly reprov'd by the Mufti, answer'd that he did it to prevent his Vizir's having any thing to lead him by The Turks relate of him, that he had always by him, or in his hands, a Club call'd Topuz, of which they fay this was the occasion. In the time of his Father fome Provinces bordering on Persia paid yearly to that Empire for peace sake by way of Tribute a certain number of Carpets call'd Chul\*. His Father being dead, the Governours of these Provinces, sent to St-

age is appointed Emperor of the Otherns, after the expulsion of his faller. His brothers, either because of his interest with the foldiery. or in dider to appear his fierce temper, did not dare to contradid it. Only Abmed, who was perfectly acquainted with his Brother's disposition, and certainly knew he should no where be safe whilst he was on the Throne, resolves through despair, either to remove his brother, or die in the attempt. Wherefore allur'd by a fide expectation, that fome Great Men, who favour'd Selim only in appearance, would espouse his cause, he raises all the forces of Amasia, and thinking it best to enter his brother's dominions, prepares to pass into Europe.

and is defeated

II. Abmed had scarce taken this resolution, when it was discover'd to and firangled Selam by his fpies, whom he every where incourag'd In order therefore to excinguish this flame, and furprise his brother before his whole army was affembled, he leads his forces over the Bosphorus into Asia. Abmed. though he perceiv'd his defign was too early discover'd, yet when he faw he must either conquer or die, bravely meets his brother at Ensilvebir with what troops he had Morcover, he valiantly fights in the foremost ranks, so that he more than once railied the broken wings, At last his army, overpower'd with numbers, after a great slaughter is entirely routed. Most chuse to cover the place, where they stood. with their Bodies, few endeavouring to escape by flight. Among these. Abmed being taken alive, is immediately ftrangled, and buried at Prufa.

Corcue is put to death without caufe

III. Having refresh'd his men, a few days after this victory, he leads them against his brother Corcud, whom his father had fet over Marnefia. Corcud, though he had hitherto chosen to reverence his brother, and fee what fortune would allot him, rather than imbrue his hands with fratricide, yet when he finds his submission disregarded, and his blood thirsted after, meets Selim with what troops were under his command, that he might not at least die unreveng'd. But Selim. with his disciplin'd and more numerous army, easily vanquishes and disperses his brother's forces rais'd in haste. In this desperate state, Corcud escapes by flight, but deserted by his people, without servant or companion, he wanders alone in the night through by-ways and deferts.

#### ANNOTATIONS.

lim to know whether this light Tribute was to be continued or not. His answer was, " Tell the Infidel " Red-head, that the Father of the cc Carpets is gone, and the Father of the Clubs come in his room? This Phrase, Father of the Chebs, has by the Turks been borrow'd from Hebrew and Arabic, and fignifies a Man abounding with any thing, as Ebul Iman, Father of Faith, or endu'd with Faith, Ebul Suleb, Father of Peace. or abounding with peace, quiet, Altun

babasi, the Father of Gold, that 15, abounding with money, Deulet babafi, Father of Happineis, or old in Honours. So Selim calls his Father Bajazei, Chulne babafi, the Father of Carpets, because he gave Carpets to the Persians, and himself Father of Clubs, because instead of Carpers, he defign'd them arms and clubs. The Turks are full of fuch stories of their Selim, which for brevity are omitted by us.

and

and by day conceals himself in dark and horrible caves. He was said to do this, that he might after the example of Jem (2), fly to the Chrifrom and be protected by them from his brother's power. Whereupon Selim, fearing he might give them advices detrimental to the Othman affairs, commands him to be more diligently fearch'd after. At length, fuch was his fate, he is found by a foldier, drawn from his shelter, and brought to Selim, who without giving him an opportunity to speak for himself, though he earnestly defir'd it, delivers him to the executioner to be strangled.

IV Selim having thus destroyed the Rivals of his Empire, as well Schminsold as some domestick Enemies (3), turns his thoughts to foreign conquests. consults with Amongst his enemies abroad, the chief was doubtless Sultan Gauri, his vivus be torchebre! King of Egypt, with whom, after many disputes, Bajazet had made a peace Bur to attack him before Kyzilbajb fbabi (4) was vanquish'd. seem'd neither safe nor adviseable. This last had sufficiently discover'd his enmity, and therefore it was to be fear'd, the Persians would come upon the Othmans intent upon the Egyptian affairs. The breach was widen'd by the late heretical alterations of the Koran by Sheitan Culy, which with the King's approbation had infected all Persia, and render'd her an enemy to the true followers of the Koran. Upon these confiderations. Selim refolves to humble the Persians before he proceeds to other undertakings. So in the year 920, he leads a numerous army H 920 into Asia, and at Tybris (5) one of the principal Cities of Persia on a A C 1514 plain call'd Chaldiran' (6) he finds the enemy's army not inferior to his own. Whereupon he instantly assembles the Vizirs and the rest of his friends, to confult what was to be done. All agree, things were not to be hurried, least the foldiers fatigu'd with their march, might afford the enemy an easy victory, that the battle therefore was to be defer'd till next day, and time given the troops to recover themselves. This advice being unanimously approved of, Selim alone is against it, and says, " the counsel you have given is no less advanta-" gious to the enemies than to us, for are not they equally fatigu'd with

# Annorations.

(2) of Jem ] This I take to be rather ironically ipoken by the Turks, who well know that Jem was murder'd amongst the Christians.

(3) domestick Enemies ] Namely fome great Courtiers, who privately tavour'd Bajazet, and were all put to

death by Selim

(4) Kyzılbafb fbabı ] King of the Redbeads. This was Ismael Sofi the wifest and most learned of all the Persian Kings He was deem'd a Saint by his Subjects, because in his time happen'd the Reformation of the Koran, as has been related in a former note.

(5) Tybris ] This City was shortly after recover'd by the Persians, and is in their possession to this day

(6) Chalderan\*] According to the opinion of many it is a spacious Plain under the Walls of Tybris, and still retains this name. Others think it a fmall Town not far from Tybris. Etymologically it fignifies a Man who exposes any thing to Thest, from the verb Chalarum\*, to steal, from whence Chaldirirum to cause to steal. And also causing him to knock.

Pp " their " their march? Wherefore I do not fee why we should allow them time to resist and prepare the better for battle. And indeed I now perceive our error in not attacking them at first sight, and in consulting before, not after the battle, about refreshing our men."

He approves of Pire Pa-Ma's advice .V. Having faid these words, he dismisses the Council with orders to prepare for battle, and immediately sending for his Desterdar (7), Piri Passa,

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(7) Defterdar] A word deriv'd from the Persian Defter, Accompts or Book of Accompts, and Dar, keeping, or if you had rather from the Greek, Aiplipa, the Skin or Vellum, on which they wrote. It is a very high Office in the Othman Court, and the Person invested with it, has the management of the whole external Revenue. But if a Secretary or Effends enjoys this office, he can do nothing without the confent of the Vizir. But if managed by a Pasha with three Tug, he draws the Tura along with him, even without the privity of the Vizir, and in his own name publishes the Ferman. This feldom happens but when the Vizir being stupid or ignorant, the Emperor is pleas'd to commit this Trust to a Man of greater authority. The Defierdar greater authority. The Defterdar has under him twelve Chancelleries call'd Calem, in which the whole Income, Tributes, and Customs of the Empire are collected, and the military stipends distributed, but under different superintendents The Defterdar holds the first, out of which are issued all Mandates, as well to the other Chancelleries, as through the whole Empire for levying the Tribute and Customs. Over the second is the Reis Effends, High Chancellor of the Empire, the third is under the Defter Emin, who inspects the Books and Accompts of all the Revenues. The Beglikeby is over the fourth, who issues out Mandates to the Passas, and the letters of the Passass, Principalities, and other Offices. The Russamess has the fifth, and audits all the diurnal Supends throughout the whole Empire Bash Muhasebeji is over the fixth; he is Accomptant General, and in his Office all Accompts are made up The feventh is under the direction of the Anadols Mubasebeys, who is at the

head of the Afiatic Revenues . Over the eighth is the Haraj Muhafebeji, to whom is committed the care of leyving the Tributes rais'd upon the Jews and Christians The ninth is held by the Mevkufat, who has under his direction the Moneys expended for pious uses The Malie Diskiereji holds the tenth, to whom belongs the Chamber of Poffessions and other Revenues. Over the eleventh, is the Mucabeley, as if you should say, the Counter-juste, he manages the I ifts of the Soldiery, shows who is dead or fuperannuated, to that the pay may not exceed or fall fhort of the number of foldiers and has two Deputies, the Yaya Mucabeless, who takes account of the Infantry through the whole Empire, and the Ally Mucabelegt, who looks after the & abs and the other Cavalry, or Stipenina-ries dispers'd in the Tomai zames Over the last the Teff rifatebi\*, whom we should call Master of the Ceremontes In all these Chancelleries the Mandates indeed are writ in the Turk-1/b Language, but all the Accompts in the Persian, and in the Character Kyrma, 1 c broken, (not legible by any Person who is not us'd to it) with fuch concisencis, that the Revenues and yearly expences of the Limpire are laid before the Emperor in twenty four Pages The Director of every Chancellery has his Kalla vulgarly Chalife, under him, or, as we should fay, his Secretary. The chief of these are the Maden Kalfa, who has under his inspection all the Revenues from which any certain and limited Sum arifes, as from Mines, Provinces with an annual fettled Tribute &c. and the Achir Kalfa, who takes an account of the Emperor's Stable. Besides these Chancelleries there are other Offices, the Emanet, as if one should say the Concreditory, because their

Passa, who was not at the Council, bids him give his opinion in the case. Though he did not know the Emperor's mind, yet his advice was agreeable to his will, "The reputation (says he) of the Othman arms " is not so to be exposed, that the eyes of our enemies accustomed to " the fight of us, may learn first to bear and then to contemn our varulour. It is a good Omen (8) to attack the enemies at first sight, a hand fall upon them before they can open their eyes. Besides, if a battle be not hastened, it is to be fearld, a delay may breed a sedimed dition in the army. For since many, who serve under the Turkish Banners, have long contracted friendship and affinity with the Persistans, very possibly, if time be given for mutual discourse, they may be corrupted, and the unstable vulgar be induced, if not openly to revolt, yet certainly to sight with a double heart, and (as the Proverb says) with the tips of their singers only (9)." Selim, when he had

## ANNOTATIONS.

their Accompts cannot be given in with accuracy, but must, for the most part, be lest to the honesty of the Officers. The Desternar cin iffue out no Mandates to thefe in his own name, though they are oblig'd to make up their Accompts in his Chancellery. These are, 1. The Terfana Emini, who has the care of building and repairing the Ships, and whatever relates to the Navy. 2. The Giumruk Emini or Master of the Customs 3. The Zarbchane Emini, or Master of the Mint. He does not like the rest give an account of the Receipts and Disburiements, but farms the Bullion at the rate of delivering so many purses daily into the Treasury, after which he has the power of coining as much Money as he can for his own advantage 4. The Matrach Emin, or chief of the Grand Seignor's Kitchen. 5. The Topchana Nazyri, Super intendent of the Ordnance and other warlike Engines. 6. The Arpa Emini, who lays in the Provision of Barley for the Royal Stables, and Officers belonging to them 7. The Mubaes or gene ral Purveyor. 8 The Shebir Emini whose business it is to see that the Walls and Fortresses be kept in sufficient repair. 9. The Grumish Chane Emini, who furveys the Metal Mines, and either collects the Profits arifing from them, or lets them out to farm at a yearly Rent. To conclude, next to the Prime Vizir the only Officer in the outer Court superior

to the Defterdar, is Kietchuda beg, or, Kubaya, Licutenant of the Prime Vizir, who is next in rank to the Vizir. Of all the money brought into the Imperial Treasury, the Defterdar has the twentieth part, from whence, I know for certain and by experience, there accrues to him at haft two hundred thousand Imperials, of which he delivers fifty thousand to Kietchuda beg. But the Prime Virir may justly get every year fix hundred thousand Imperials, not to mention the Prefents and other Arts us'd by the Vizirs to fatiate their Avarice. This may feem incredible to fuch as have not feen the Othman Court, but those who know better, will think otherwise Of these things more largely elfewhere

(8) good Omen] Ogur The Turk; are periwaded, if they make the first onset, the Victory will be theirs. Hence the Proverb, "He that "firkes first is a good and perfect" Archer" But in the last war with the Germans, the better and more prudent Turkish Generals were entirely of another opinion.

(9) tips of their fingers] It is a Turkish Phrase, "To take a thing "with the extremity of the Hand" instead of saying, "To go about an safair unwillingly." Thus they say, Harbe up the Virmek, to give with the extremity or point of a Speat, speaking of Borderers relying on the assistance of another.

heard this speech, cries out, "Lo! in my whole army with much diffi"culty have I found one prudent and well-advis'd Man, whose opinion
"shall be of more weight with me, than the Heads, Hands, and Arms
of so many thousands. Assuredly to my own and the Empire's great
the detriment has this man, I think, been hitherto uninvested with the
"Prime Vizirship."

Defeats the Perfiam with great Slaugh-

ñ

. VI. Selim thus approving of his advice, instantly commands the Enemies and City, which was furrounded with their forces, to be invefted, and the Perfian army rather pompous than well array'd, to be attack'd. The battle begins with the great guns, which are discharg'd by the European Troops in the left wing, fo unhappily station'd, that an opposite Hillock either receiv'd the Balls or sent them without execution over the Perhan Camp. But the Afiatick forces, under the command of Sinan Pasha (10), move towards the Persians with close ranks, and draw their field pieces after them. Sinan, when he comes within Cannon-shot, orders the foremost ranks to open to the right and left, and give room for the great guns behind them, which being difcharg'd make such a slaughter among the enemies, that the Perlian troops, who before were like a wall, feem'd now to refemble fireets and lanes (11). The enemies ranks being thus broken, the figual is given to charge them hand to hand with fwords and javeling, by which means, one half of the enemies left wing is flain, and the rest forc'd to fly. Shab, when he sees the left wing of the Persians in danger, leaves the right, and with his best Regiments coming to their relief, bravely repulses the Turks now intent upon the utter destruction of the remains of it. Selim, on the other hand, perceiving his right wing to be press'd with multitudes, places thirteen thousand Janizaries on their flank, with orders, first to charge the enemies at distance with ball, then attack them fword in hand, and by bearing the brunt of the battle. give the others time to rally. His orders are diligently executed, and the Persians so siercely attack'd that they slowly give ground, and at last take to open flight. The Persian right wing, which still bravely fustain'd the charges of the Turks, perceiving this, and despairing of victory, fly also for their lives. Thus every where vanquish'd, and shamefully put to flight, the Perhans are by the Turkish soldiers slain, taken, and branded with eternal dishonour. Shab himself hardly escapes by the swiftness of his horse, which would not have snatch'd him

# ANNOTATIONS.

(10) Sinan Pafba] A very famous General among the Turks. At Confantinople a flately building of his flands on fifty marble oftangular Pillars, in the entrance of the inner Port over against Pera. In this edifice Bostansi Basha is wont to reside in the Spring. For near it, is a Gate

leading to the Imperial Court, deftin'd for the habitation of the Bostanpt, where is also another Stove call'd Yala Koshki

(11) Streets and Lanes ] Socak be Socak, Street by Street. It is a Turk if Phraie, fignifying confus'd heaps here and there

from

from the danger, if the night coming on had not put an end to the pursuit. The Perfiant lost in the battle, besides many thousands of flain (12), the leaders of both wings, Mebemed Chan and Tekielichan the bravest and stoutest Generals at that time in Perfia,

VII. This victory would have been much greater and more compleat, duminies the had not Selim thought it dangerous to purfue in the night, through dif-Mufulman ficult and narrow places, the enemies not fo broken but they might still venture to make a fresh attempt. Wherefore founding a retreat, he plunders the Camp, where he finds the immense treasure and rich furniture of Ismail Shab. After which, he declares Piri Pasha, (the advisor of the battle) Vizir, and orders it to be proclaim'd, that no Nifa and Sabian Captive should be detain'd, but all dismiss'd, adding, " it is unjust to make Captives of men, who are Sunni (13), and

# Annotations.

(12) Thousands of slam ] Tho' this was a fierce and bloody Battle, the number of flain on either fide is not mention'd by the Turkiff Histo-

(13) Sunm ] So the Turks call themfelves and the rest of the Musulmans in respect of the Persians and other Hereticks. They think it unlawful to detain like Slaves the Sunni, tho' taken in war, but if they are Rebels, they are to be punish'd with death, if not, to be releas'd. This is indeed an inviolable Law with the Turks, but with the Tartars, though they are Mahometans, it is not obferv'd. To this purpole, I shall re-late a story, which plainly shows the disposition of the Tartars to the Turks, and of which I was my felf an eye-witness. When my Father Constantinus Cantemyrius govern'd Moldavia, the Seraskier or General of the Turkifo Army, Aineji Solyman Pasha (afterwards Prime Vizir) staid at Babadagy a Town of Mylia fixty miles beyond the Danube, whilft he was affembling the European forces and preparing to store Cameniee, where a Famine rag'd, with Provisions order to be inform'd of the condition of the Castle and the Camp of John III. King of Poland, he fends a Letter to my Father by Ismail aga (one of his Officers called Agaler, ) in which he order'd the Bearer to be fafely guarded to Cameniec and convey'd to Cabraman Pasha, who commanded the Garrison of that Castle Nº. 7.

My Father giving him a Guard, he happily enters the Castle, and difmisses our Men, intending to return with fome Soldiers of Cameniec. Having inform'd himfelf of what he was order'd, he departs with ten Turkifb Soldiers. When they come to Stephaneft: a Town of Moldavia on the Banks of the Hyerafus, he meets a Hord of of the Hyerajus, he meets a Hord of Tartars going to ravage Poland Having ask'd them, who was their Leader, he wishes them a prosperous expedition and proceeds in his journey. But presently after he sees himself pursued full speed by about fifty Tartars, as if they had forgot to make some inquiry. The Tarks being under no fear of the Tarks their Al under no fear of the Tartars their Allies, unfortunately halt and wait their coming. The moment the Tartars overtake them, they draw their Swords, and bid them difmount. In vain do the Turks ask them, what they meant, they are immediately bound with thongs, stript to their shirts, and threaten'd with death, unless they did what they were order'd. Terrified at this unexpected and prefent danger, they promife to do whatever is enjoin'd them. In the first place therefore, the Tartars unmercifully fcourge their Captives, then shave their Beards and Mustachios, and teach them to answer in the Russian Language to the question what Countrymen are ye? Neznain, ya Rufak. "I know not, I am a "Ruffian." Having thus instructed them, they bring the Turks a few days 榔

\* forc'd into arms; the victory is fufficient and the vanquish'd are rather to be treated with elementry than cruelty. And as for Shab he
"may

## ANNOTATIONS

after, with their hands tied behind them, to Ifmail a Town in Bujek on the Danube, and there cruelly use them all night, that they may not discover themselves to be Turks. Which when they had fwore to con-Sale. The Purchasers of Captives (for there are many in that place who transmit to their partners at Confrantinople Slaves bought of the Turks) asking what Countrymen they are, the Tartars immediately shake their Whips at their Captives, that mindful of the Lashes they had receiv'd, they may speak Russian. So felling them for ten Imperials a Head (for they did not defire a great price for such vile wares) the Tartives within two or three hours speaking in the pure Turkifo Language beg for God's take fome Victuals and Drink. The Merchants, furpris'd at hearing the pure Turkish Dialect, (which is extremely difficult to be pronounced by the Russian) ask how they that were born in Rusha came to speak Turkish so elegantly? The Turks showing the marks of their firipes, these, say they, with the Tariarian cunning, converted us from Turks into Russians. At last, the Merchants finding they had bought Turks instead of Russians, and so lost their money, give them their liberty. But Ifmail aga the Officer, a man of wit and humour, delires his Purchafer to carry him as a Slave to Babadagy (where the Seraskier waited his return) and expose him in the Market to fale, and that he would there pretend to run away. The Merchant being taught his lesson, leads the Officer difguis'd by his stripes and loss of beard, through the midst of the Camp, (for the army was in the field in Tents) mean while, the Officer rakes to his heels, and runs directly to the General's Tent. The Merchant bawls out, stop him, stop him for God's fake, my Captive as fled, the Infidel Russian has escap'd out of

my hands. Whereupon a great noise is made in the Market and Camp, all running up and down after the Fugitive. The Officer when he comes to the Entrance of the great Tent, which is call'd Divanchane, confesses (in broken Turksh, that he might feem by length of time to have forgot his native Tongue) that he was indeed the Merchant's Captive, but a Turk and Musulman lately escap'd from Poland, and therefore unjuftly expos'd to fale. Adding he had many discoveries to make to the General, as he was come but fifteen days from Leopoli, and therefore perfeetly acquainted with the state of the Polisto affairs. When the Seraskier hears this, he orders the Captive to be brought into the Obs or inner lent Being come there, he pays his obeyfance to the General, and, Cabraman the Camemec-Pasha, says he, salutes you my Lord. The General knowing indeed the voice, but feeing a strange face, who art thou, fays he, and how knowest thou these things? Don't you know (answers he) your Officer Ismail aga, whom you lately fent to Cabraman Pasha, Neznaesh po rusku, don't you understand Russ ! The General says to him, "What " Rafcal has thus maim'd thee?" He replies, Our Tartars made me a Russian, and at Ismail fold me to a Merchant, from whose hands I have escap'd to my Lord When he had afterwards related the Particulars of what he had fuffer'd from that rapacious and treacherous race, the Seraskier could not sufficiently wonder at the Cunning of those Plunderers, especially when the same things are told him by Ismail aga's Companions who arrived the next day. The General indeed order'd the Tartars to be diligently fearch'd after, but among to many Hords they could never be discover'd. He promoted however the Officer, after his Beard was grown, to the dignity of his Master of Horse, and loaded him with prefents. In like manner the Tartars

" may learn by this Prelude of Victories, as by an experiment, what " success the Others arms will hereafter be crown'd with."

VIII. The next day, the Inhabitants of Tybris finding themselves The being deserted by their King, and despairing of relief, try to purchase winter at the Conqueror's mercy, by the offer of the Keys of their City. Another Selim grants their request, enters the Town, and refreshing his soldiers a few days, orders, according to custom, the divine service to be perform'd on Friday in the Temple, and Prayers to be faid for himself and whole army. His farther progress is obstructed by the great fearcity of Corn, occasion'd by the enemies laying waste the neighbouring countries, in order to deprive the Turkish army of subfiftence. Wherefore seeing he could not remain in that place without great inconvenience, the Conqueror leaves a strong Garrison at Tybris and returns to Amafia. The forces are sent into as narrow winter-quarters as possible, that they might be more ready for the ensuing expedition. From hence he fends to Confiantinople, as a token of his Victory, Hiusein (14) Son of Bicarar, born of the noblest Persan family, with many other Captives famous above the rest for Birth, or Learning.

IX. Selim

## ANNOTATIONS.

Tartars frequently steal Turkis Children, and afterwards fell them for Russians. For in point of Perfidiousness and Cunning, that Nation is not to be parallell'd in the World.

(14) Hiusein ] The Macenas of the Oriental Musicians. He had the greatest regard for Hoje Musicar, the Orpheus of the Persians, and his Scholar Gulam the Arabian. All Turky and Persia were delighted with their Melody and Songs till the time of Sultan Mabomet, in whose Reign the Art of Musick almost forgot, not only reviv'd, but was also render'd more perfect by Ofman Effends a noble Constantinopolitan. He left many Scholars, among whom for the voice were famous, Chafiz firnam'd Kiomar (Coal,) Bubiurji ogli, Memish Aga, Kiuchuk Muezin, and Despiblich Emir, but for Instruments two Greeks excell'd, Kiemani Abmed, a Renegade, and Angels Orthodox, (both my Teachers for fifteen years,) and also Chelebics to nicen years, and also Chelebics a Jew, with the Turks, Berush Olbman, Curfunji ogli, his Scholar, Fashchi\* ogli Sinek Mehemmed, and Bardakchi\* Mehemmed Chelebi\*, which two last, when they had have searched the complete the search by one Complete Mehem. been taught by one Cambofo Mebemmed Aga, were afterwards with Ralaks Eupragiote a noble Greek of Conftantsmople, instructed by me in some parts of Musick, particularly in the Theory, and a new method of my own invention of expressing the Songs by Notes, unknown before to the Turks I had also for Scholars in the Theory and Practice of Mulick, Daul Ismail Effendi, first Treasurer of the Empire, and Latif Chelebi" his Haznadar. By their requeft, I compos'd a little Book of the Art of Musick in Turkish, and dedicated it to the present Emperor Abmed II. the Precepts whereof are, they fay, follow'd to this day by all the Students in Musick. It will perhaps feem strange to the European Reader to fee the fludy of so noble an art prais'd by me in a Nation accounted barbarous by all Christendom. Such indeed it was in the Infancy of the Othman Empire, when the Sultans were wholly employ'd in extending the bounds of their dominion, but in process of time, when a ceffation of war allow'd the Arts of Peace, to be cultivated, they fo far departed from their former fierceness, and became fo civiliz'd, that scarce any signs of their antient Barbarousness now appear. I may certainly venture to fay, that the Turkish Musick for metre and proportion of words is more perfect than any European, but withal fo IX. Selim had learnt by this year's experience, that nothing could

He takes fome

H 921

Gide with the refrected in those cold and mountainous regions, by which the Perfian dominions were bounded, unless by early expeditions. Wherefore in the year 921, he leads his army in the beginning of the Spring out A. C 1515 of Amafia, and fuddenly takes Giumab and Basburud from the Perfians, by whom the Turks, were not yet unexpected. When he finds no reliftance, he thinks it fruitless to employ so great an army in such a vile Place, and therefore fends part of his forces, under Ferbad Patha, against Alaideulet Son of Zuulcadır, because he was believ'd to favour the Persians. Ferbad surprises this Prince unawares, routs his forces, and cuts off his head. Whereupon Selim gives his dominions to Ali ber (15) Son of Shah Suvar, who had faithfully ferv'd him at Court, on condition his name should be mention'd in the publick prayers. Thus Selim no less magnanimous than victorious, returns about the end of the year to Constantinople.

The Diarbe*kerians* expel the Perfians, and offer themich as to Selim

X. The next year, a fresh opportunity offers of inlarging his Empire. The Nation Kare-Emid (16), inhabiting the Province call'd at this day Diarbekir (17), and govern'd by Karachan Deputy of the King of Perfia, were by reason of some civil diffentions male-content, and had long been endeavouring to throw off his yoke. What they perceive could not be effected by force, they resolve to attempt by stratagem. To this end, they so manage that a counterfeit Letter from the King of Persia is brought to him, by a Messenger, containing the following order. " Thou who art (18) Karachan, the moment our " Mandate shall reach thee, know, that we have resolv'd to send thee

## ANNOTATIONS.

hard to be understood, that in the spacious City of Constantinople, where relides the greatest Court in the World, among so many Mu-ficians and Lovers of Musick, you will scarce find above three or four, who thoroughly understand the grounds of this Art. The scarcity of complete Musicians is owing to the difficulty of comprehending all the parts of the founds call'd by the Arabians, Terkib, which Hoje Musicar, after Ptolemaus, affirms to be infinite by this Axion Emma hi Terhibate nibayet yok, i. e. "But because there is no end of composing parts" To inlarge on these things is foreign to my present purpose, but if God grant me life and leifure, I will explain in a separate Treatise the whole Art according to the opinion of the Eastern World.

(15) Alibeg] One of the noble Per-

fian Refugees to Sultan Selim, an instance of fidelity among the Turks.

(16) Kare-Emid | The black Mids, who inhabit the country between Urpha and Van in Afia.

(17) Diarbekir | Etymologically, the Province of Bekir. It is a country on the borders of Kurdiftan, whose name appears in almost all the Geographical Maps. It contains at present all Mesopotamia to the Con-

(18) Thou who art ] This is the usual form of the Turkish and Perfian Letters. For having premis'd the honorable Titles they give the Vizirs, they close the Letter, with the Phrase, Thou who art. As Abmed Pasha Lalam sen sinks. 1. e. My Lala, Then who art Abmed Pasha. So, Son kı Kırym chani olan caplan Gierai. i. e. Thou who art Chan of Crim, Caplan Gierai &cc.

" with

" with thy whole army against the enemies who are about to invade " these parts. Wherefore with as great preparations as possible, march " out of the City within five days, and pitch thy Tents in a place " call'd Kavakilder, in order to be ready on our second notice, to go where occasion requires, or to come to us instantly." Karachan, ignorant of the treachery, thinking it unlawful to disobey his Prince's command, departs from the City with all his forces and whole family, and incamps at the place appointed. The Citizens, when they imagine their Jailor to be too far off to affift the few he had left behind, thut the Gates, and putting the Garrison to the Sword, send 2 letter to Selim, declaring what was done, and promifing to furrender their City, with a request that he would appoint for their Prince Mebemmed beg Son of Birkly ogli (19) their Countryman, who was then in Selim's Court.

XI. This proposal was very agreeable to Selim; but as he was ac- who suspected quainted with the deceitfulness of that Nation, he suspected some them fraud. So chusing to lose them rather than hazard his troops by too great a credulity, he defers fending an answer a whole year. Mean while, there are daily and fierce skirmishes between Karachan and the Citizens, with which when they were tired, Chemfid\* beg, a rich Nobleman of the country, possessor of above three hundred villages, after feveral messages to Selim, gains credit at last for his Nation, and obtains what was defir'd.

XII. The conditions of the treaty being ratified on both fides, Selim But at last creates Mebemmed beg Son of Byskly, Beglerbeg of Dearbekir, with grants their request, and Sovereign authority, and gives him Malskiane (20) the whole King- makes Mebemdom, allowing him moreover out of the imperial Treasury an annual med bog King pension of forty Yuk (21), on the sole condition of being faithful.

After

#### ANNOTATION 4.

(19) Byskly ogli ] Of the Family of fome Prince of the Kurdi Byskly is a name given to fuch as have prominent Whiskers.

(20) Malikiane ] This word properly fignifies poffessively, by which name are called those lands that are not Vakuf, 1 e. dedicated to Jami This manner of possessing Lands had now been dilus'd for fome ages, But, when about fifteen years fince, the Revenues of the exhaufted Treasury were to be increas'd, Sultan Mustapha II, who then reign'd, commanded the antient Tenure Malikiane to be reviv'd under certain conditions. There are however fome free Regions or Cantons, which in the month of ney us'd in the Accounts of the pub-Nº, VIII.

March are wont to pay an yearly Tribute call'd Mukaiaa This Tribute by the name of a Possession was publickly fold in the Marketplace call'd Mezad, so that the best Offerer held it for life, but on his death it return'd to the Treasury. It was moreover granted in favour of the Sons of the Purchaser, that the Tribute should not be fold to a Stranger after the Father's death, if they were willing to pay three fourths of the money offer'd by a Stranger. By this means there accrued to the Treasury above 1200 Purses every

(21) Yuk ] Is a certain fum of mo-

After which, Mehemmed beg goes with speed to Diarbebir, and with the consent of all orders and degrees annexes the City and Kingdom to the Othman Empire.

Karachen 13 defeated and kill'd. H 922

A C 1516

XIII. But as the Emperor easily imagin'd that Karachan's ardor would not be extinguish'd by Mehemmed's presence alone, sends in the year 922 a good body of troops to his affiftance, and that Mehemmed might be the more excited to behave valiantly, orders an expostulating letter to be deliver'd to him, upbraiding his backwardness in the following manner: " When I made thee Prince of Diarbekir, I expected " much greater matters from thee than have yet appear'd. Why stand-" est thou idle? Wherefore is Karachan's insolence unchastis'd? Why " does thou not discover thy latent bravery by deeds worthy a generous " mind, to my joy, to thy enemies forrow, and to thy own glory. If " thou exert thy felf in this manner, thou will undoubtedly gain my is highest favour, confound thy enemies with fear, and be invested " with due honours" Mebemmed was stung with this reprimand, and thought it a grievous thing to be accus'd of indolence by him to whom he ow'd his life and fortune. Wherefore without staying for the Imperial forces, he joins his Courtiers to the army he had rais'd in that Province, and pitches his Tents against Karachan. Whilst he is thus employ'd, the enemies fuddenly appear in fight; whereupon he orders his men to be drawn up, though he is yet uncertain whether he should instantly attack them, or stay till the morrow. On the other hand, the Rafazi (22), perhaps in the same uncertainty, remain, after the exam-

#### ANNOTATIONS.

lick Treasury, confishing generally of a hundred thousand Aspers +.

a numered inclusion is commonly given by the Turks to the Persians, because (fay the Turks) there are indeed among them Persons who in name are Mabometans, but in reality Professors of hornible Doctrines. Thus there are (fay they) who deflower their own Daughters before marriage, pretending a divine Law for it, namely, The Planter ought to taske first the Fruit of his own Trees. To consist that a certain Person deliver'd to Alt (Mabomet's Successor) a Festod penn'd in this manner. "If a Man gathers the "Fruit of a Tree planted by himself, "and joyfully eats it with Thanks-

" giving, is he to be accounted a " Transgressor of the Laws of God " and the Koran?" To which Als replied, "By no means" Something of this Kind are the Mum for unduren, who at a stated time meet together for forty days, and putting out the Candles, promifcuoufly he with one another, neither do they think Incest a Sin at that time. But the forty days being past, they live in fo chaft a manner, that whoever is caught with a Woman, is punish'd with death This Herely has many Followers in the Mountains Kazdagy. There are who worship Fire, Aiest perest, vulgarly call'd, Ateste tapan, the Remains of the old Persians. There are also Kielb perest, Dog-worshippers, and Giau perest, Bull-worthippers,

<sup>†</sup> Four Mangers and as many Ghedels make an After Three Afters make a Pera Five, a Bellek Ten, an Olik Twenty four, a Salata (or Floris) Two hundred and fixty, a Serty of Hungary. A Puric is her hundred Rivelolars, which are received by the Fort at eighty Afters each, and paul away at one hundred and twenty But of this more largely in the Appendix

ple of the Turkish army, without motion in battle-array. Mean while, a great cloud of butterflies appear in the air, and flying over the space between the armies, divide themselves in two parties, the white going to the Turks, and the red to the Perfians. Presently, the white charge the red, and after a fierce conflict vanquish and rout them. The sword could hardly have effected what these insects produc'd in the minds of both fides. The Turks inspir'd with courage by the good omen, bravely fall on the Perfians fill'd with terror, and easily slay and rout an army entirely dispirited by superstition. Among the Captives is found Karachan himself, whose head is instantly struck off by Mebemmed beg's order.

XIV. This great and unexpected Victory was to Mehemmed beg an Mehemmed beg argument of the divine aid and protection. Accordingly having by his takes fome Cifoceches incourag'd his foldiers to greater undertakings, he closely befieges the strong City Mardun (23). This place would have been almost impregnable both by fituation and the valour of the inhabitants, had they not been forc'd by pestilence and famine to purchase the Conqueror's mercy with a furrender of themselves and their City. A few days after, he besieges Muful (24), and taking it in the first assault, subducs it with fire and fword. These two Bulwarks of the whole country being conquer'd, the lesser towns easily follow'd, namely, Anne, Hadife (25), Hegets, Sujars, Hasinkessi, Jemssbyerg, Amadic, Sudck, Jeidjeon, Baldyr, Ham, Zerbak, and Chaizan, and within a short space the whole Kingdom of Kiurdi (26) and Jezire (27) is annex'd to the Othman

XV. Mebemmed thought the reproach cast on him by Selum, might He is provide be easily wip'd off by so many exploits, and liberty more madily given by Schim him to remain quiet. To this end he dispatches his brother Uvers Pathe with a letter to Selim, fetting forth his performances. Selim rejoicing at the good news, highly extolls, in the presence of his Vizirs,

#### ANNOTATIONS.

shippers, and others, who by the Turks are call'd by the common name of Rafazi, Giebr, or Terfa, in the Perfian Language But these Herefies are slanderously ascrib'd to the Perfians by the Turks, on account that the Knowledge of them first came from Perjia

(23) Mardun Wulgarly Mardin.
A very noted City of Mejopotamia

(24) Muful] A famous City in almost every Map, and supposed to be the Nineveb of the Antients

(25) Anne and Hadise ] Towns in the Neighbourhood of Muful.

(26) Kiurdi This Kingdom (if I

rightly remember) extends from the Confines of Syria to the Cities Shebrezul and Van on the borders of Persia. The Inhabitants are call'd Kiurdi, and speak broken Persian.

(27) Jezire Etymologically an Island, it is Mesopotamia, lying between the Rivers Frat, Murad, and Shat. Frat is the Lupbrates, Murad a Branch of the Eupbrates, and Shat the Tigris. Both the Euphrales and Tigris are by the Inhabitants commonly call'd Firatat, and the Euphrates also by another name, Nebr Esfelam, the pacific river.

Mehemmed's

Mebemmed's bravery, and dismisses Uveis Pasha laden with honours and

presents to his brother.

his mind and attacks the Egyptiam: H 923

XVI. The rapid course of his victories inspires Selim with the project towards the Persian, sid of subverting the whole Persian Empire, or, if that could not be done, dealy slies of entirely weakening it. Wherefore in the year 923 he departs from Constantinople to execute his designs with a more numerous army than before, and incamps near Aleppo (28). Not far from the same place, - the Chercassian\* King of the Egyptians, Sultan Gauit (29) meets him

### ANNOTATIONS.

(28) Aleppo] The most noted Mart of Syria and almost all Afia, well peopled not only with Inhabitants, but also foreigners. Here reside the French, Dutch, and English, Consuls. Many Europeans purchase here Houses and Country Seats, and marrying Wives are in a manner accounted as Natives. Here is also the Seat of the Patriarch of Antioch, For at Antioch, whose Inhabitants were first call'd Christians, the name of Christ is not

so much as heard.

(29) Sultan Gauri | Sprung from the Chercassians, the noblest race of the Scythians, among whom none are counted ignoble. Their Cuftoms and Manners I have shown in a former Note (p. 126) Palestine being taken by the Crusade-expeditions, Saladin, Sultan of Egypt, much spoken of in the Christian Annals, about the year of the Hejira 583, and of Christ 1187, that he might have a better disciplin'd army than he found could be rais'd among the effeminate Egyptians, bought Chercassian Slaves, and instructing them in the Art of war, by their valour quickly fubdued the Holy Land. But after his death. thele very Soldiers rebell'd against his Successors, and in the year of the Hejira 642, dethroning Elmutan the lawful Heir of the Kingdom, not only feiz'd all Egypt, but in process of time greatly inlarg'd the bounds of their dominion, which by introducing every year Soldiers of their own Nation from the utmost corners of Afia, they defended with wonderful bravery till Selim's Reign. An antient Superstition, though deriv'd from the fountain of Truth, possesses the Egyptians, that it is decreed by fate, that Captives shall reign, and the Natives be subject to them this was caus'd by the benediction of the Patriarch Joseph, both Turks and Arabians understand, and though it be contrary to the Law of the Koran, ftrictly observe it to this day For although Fgyps be subject to the Othman Empire, and a Basha given to it or remov'd at the pleasure of the Port, yet all the state-assairs are administred by twenty four Begs or Princes, none of whom, unless they have been Slaves, can inherit or come to the Empire. These publickly indeed profess to obey the Othman Mandate, but in reality are guided by their own Counfels Very often a Basha given them by the Sultan is depos'd by their Authority, thut up in a Tower call'd Kiofhki Tinif, Jifeph's Palace, stript of his Effects, and fent out poor and naked, however, that the Majelly of the Oilman Empire may be preferved, they after wards fend to the Port for another Sometimes when depos'd, they call him to an account, and for the greater contempt, lend to him the Saraf Bashi a Jew, Master of the Mint, who with a previous Sc-lam, (falute) fays, 41 The Lords ss the Princes order you to refund fo " much money, which you have un-"juftly heap'd up contrary to law" The Basha refusing or making some excuse, the Jew formerly repeated his demand with more infolence, "You shall refund indeed, most auspicious Basha." This was their way heretofore of dealing with the Batha, which they so constantly practis'd, that scarce one Basha in Ten escap'd out of their hands with honour. But now fince in the memory of our Fathers, the Egyptian Princes with equal forces, and fending him ambassadors, offers friendship with a promise of affistance against the Persians. Whilst both armies remain without motion in their Tents, it happens that some Chercassians. either with their Sovereign's connivance, or through the usual infolence of the Soldiers, intercepted fome laden camels going to Schm's camp and plunder'd them. Selim was provok'd at this, and construed it as done in contempt of him. So he instantly resolves to pour the indignation he had conceiv'd against the Persians, on the heads of the Egyptians, and declaring war with the Chercaspans\* for affronting him without cause, is bent to subdue all Egypt.

XVII. Selim thus relinquishing the Persian invasion for that of whom he Egypt, receives letters from Chambeg Governor of Damaleus (30), and the treachers Gazeliber of Aleppo, (between whom and Sultan Gaw t there was of their G mortal though private enmity,) wherein they fot forth their services to Gaurs and his tyranny, ingratitude, avarice and scalousy, which prompted him to a defign against their lives, they promise to defert the Chercaffians\* in the heat of the battle, and be his Subjects for the future: they require no other reward than that one of them should have for life the government of Egypt, the other of Damajous To allure these

## Annorations.

were humbled by the Management of lindum Pafor, the Basha's live there a little more fafely, though not without fear. The manner of inheriting in Lgypt is as follows. The dying Person excludes from the in-heritance all his Sons, and makes some Slave or Captive of approv'd Virtue and Probity fole Heir, who immediately after his Master's death, enjoys all his Effects, and makes the Deceafed's Sons his Seiz or Grooms, with which condition they are forc'd to be content, and obey their father's Slave all their lives. This is vulgarly Merib'd to Juseph's Benediction on Slaves in force to this day, neither can it be alter'd without great detriment to the Commonwealth, because the Native Egyptians are naturally fo unapt for civil Government. Many Egyptian Princes have frequently tried to polish the uncivilized Manners of their Sons, but perceived their labour was in vain. Since the inheritance thus defeends not to the Children but to the Slaves endued with Virtue, the Turks take care not to commit the Office of Basha to a Captive, especially to a Chercallian\*, but to fome Turk or other free Person converted

to Mahometism. For they think it is decreed by fate, that the Kingdom of Egypt cannot be wrested from them, unless when rul'd by a Slave.

(20) Governor of Damaseus | Or as he is now cill'd Sham Beglerbegit, " Sec Note 4 which name, though by flattery P 35 given to all Basha's who have the privilege of three Horse-tails, yet properly belongs only to four, Sham Beglerbeg, Beglerbeg of Kutahia, who presides over Natolia, and Beglerbeg of Sopbia, who governs the European Provinces, and Budun Begler-beg, Governor of Buda, whom in our days the Emperor Leopold craz'd out of the lift. The Turks reckon Damasus among their Holy Places, because Mahomet, after his being fnatch'd up into the ninth Heaven from 'ferujalem, and receiving the Koran from God, descended there. Moreover they believe the general Judgment will be at Damajeus, and that City the Metropolis of the ever-lafting Kingdom, which will there have its beginning. These and the like particulars are more largely handled in a Turkish Book call'd Mubammedie,

Generals to his fide, was so much for Selim's advantage, that he could not think of denying them any request Wherefore he not only confirms the conditions with an oath and the subscription of his name, but \ also instructs the traitors how they might best execute their purposes. They take his advice, and with various reasons, egg on Sultan Gauri to a battle. They expose the effeminacy of the Turks, magnify the valour of the Chercassians\*, and beg the Chercassian\* name may not be dishonour'd by suffering the Turks to dare to incamp long unpunish'd in their fight. Gaurs ignorant of the treachery of his Generals, thinks what they say the dictates of their bravery, and therefore draws up his forces immediately in a place call'd Bury Vaik (31) and marches against the Turks. Selim hearing what had happen'd, so places his men near Aleppo, that they might bravely receive the enumies from what part foever they come. The Chercaffians\* with a flow pace approach within bow-shot, then rushing with a great cry, on the Turks, furiously charge them, and notwithstanding their gallant resistance, force them to give ground. But whilft they are in the greatest hopes of obtaining the victory, Chairbeg in the right, and Gazelibeg in the left wing, unexpectedly revolt, and joining their forces with the Turks, strike the Chercassians\* with the utmost terror. However chusing rather to die than be vanquish'd, they renew the battle, and so fiercely press their enemies, that notwithstanding the numbers against them, victory seem'd inclin'd to their fide. Whereupon Selim perceiving the Chere afficians\* by their nimbleness and agility of body to avoid the strokes of swords, spears, and darts, orders the horse to halt, and placing the Janizaries in the front, commands them to fire on the enemies. His orders are fo well executed, that the Chercaffians\* aftonish'd at the fudden flaughter of their men, fall back to close their ranks. The Turks feeing this give them no time to renew the fight, but rushing on them like a deluge, easily rout the broken troops Sultan Gauri finding all hopes of victory vanish'd, resolves to lose his life with his Empire. So running into the thickest of his enemies, he overthrows all he meets, and flies through their ranks, as if they were so many sheep. He looks and calls for Selim, challenges him to fingle combat, in order to give or receive Death and Empire. Fortune not throwing him in his way, he returns as he came, and imagining he flew Selim in every Turk, makes a horrible flaughter. At length, not wounded amidst so many fwords, (which is wonderful,) but tir'd with wounding, and his breath failing through heat, he falls down dead among his flaughter'd foes.

### Annotations.

(31) Bury Vaik] A place near the Tursets of their Fortresses, because as the Zodiack surrounds the the Tower or Fortress of Vaik. For the Turks use to give the mame of Bury or Zodiack metaphorically to Bulwarks surrounding the City.

XVIII. After the victory, the inhabitants of Aleppo humby meet Se. He is posses of Alepso and lim with their keys, who receives them very honorably, and prefents a Damague Chylaat (32) to each of the principal Citizens. The next Friday, going to the Jami, he hears his name mention'd in the Prayers, and commands the Reader, whilst yet in the Pulpit to be cloath'd with a vesture wrought in gold, and alms to be distributed liberally to not only the Ecclefiafticks but Perfons of all conditions. This clemency caus'd not only the leffer Towns in that region to offer themselves to the Conqueror, but also the inhabitants of Damascus on Selim's approach, to fend their Elders to meet him and implore his mercy and goodness. These he receives not only with a pleasant countenance, but after twice reading their petition, promifes to do every thing they defire.

XIX. After so many instances of elemency, Selim thought proper He discoverto gain the hearts of the superstitious people by some testimonies of the Monuhis piety. Wherefore the first day of his entrance into Damascus, he Sheikh Muhid orders divine fervice to be perform'd in the Jami call'd Beni Umnie (33), and prayers offer'd for his welfare. In the next place he religiously visits the Monument of the famous Mubyddin (34) without the walls of

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(32) Chylast ] A Robe of various Colours, diftinguish'd with a gold or filver border, and usually given by the Sultan, as a token of honour, to the Vizirs, Bashas, and Great Men or others at their entrance into their Of fice, or for some notable service or good news. There are three forts of Chylaat, the first is Chylaat fabire, given only to Vizirs and Pathas of three Tugs However it is fometimes bestow'd on the Roman Emperor's Ambaffador extraordinary, as to Count Oetingen, after the peace of Carlovitz After which, Monsieur de Feriol Ambassador extraordinary from the King of France, that his Master might not seem inferior to the Emperor, spar'd no pains or cost to be honourd with the Chylast, but could never prevail. The Czar's Ambassador Poter Tolston, though otherwise a great Favorite of the Prime Vizir Chorluly\* Ali Pasha, met with the like repulse. This honour, though unfought, was for particular reasons not to be divulg'd, confer'd on me, when I was put in possession of the Principality of Moldavia by Sultan Abmed. The second fort is the Ala, commonly given to Pashas, Turkish and Christian Princes, and Ambassadors extraordinary from

Christian Potentates. The third fort, which is fometimes call'd Evsath (middle,) fometimes Edna (meaner,) is given to Persons of inferior rank. Chylaat is also commonly call'd Caf-

(33) Bent Umnte ] This is commonly faid to be the name of the Saracen General, who first took Damascus from the Christians, and turn'd the famous Church there into a Jami, though the Christians ascribe that Expedition to Omer, Mahomet's fecond Successor

(34) Mubyddin ] Chalife of the Saracens, who first possess'd Spain and is undoubtedly the fame whom the Christian Writers call Musa and iay that by his General Tarich in the year of the Hejira 92, he first carried the arms of the Seracens into Spain For the Chronology agrees, fince the Arabic Historians say Mubydden yet reign'd in the year of the Hejira 99, (which coincides with the year of Christ 718,) in which year Vasaus relates that Moses, Emir of the Saracens suffer'd a great saughter from Pelagus King of the Afturias, But where they had this name I cannot comecture. It cannot be a firname, both because it is prophetical which the Mahometans use to add to

the City. The old men could hardly remember to have heard their fathers mention the burial of this Hero, and the monument itself was not only laid in a vile place, but so cover'd with filth by such as were ignorant of the precious Relicts it contain'd, that it look'd more like a Dunghill than a religious place. Selim having express'd a due abhorzence of the impiety of the inhabitants, orders the place to be instantly cleans'd and finds a Marble-stone, with an inscription to this effect: This is the Monument of Sheikh Mohammed beni Arebi Conqueror of Spain. The Emperor being satisfied by this inscription that the Hero's body lay there, erects over the Monument a large Kubhe, and near it a Jami with an Hospital, where he orders the poor to be daily supplied with a sufficient quantity of meat and drink. He moseover exempts the charges from taxes, and consirms these constitutions with a Chatisheris (35). These pious works were, the Turks believe

#### ANNOTATION &.

the first name, and because according to the nature of the language, Mubyddin is more like a sirname than Musa (Moses) And I can hardly believe it his proper name, since he is call'd in the Epitaph Mobammed ben Arehi. Mobammed, Successor of Abdallab Sultan of the Saracens, is also to be distinguished from him, in whose reign the Saracens deseated the sleet of the Christians, laid waste Dalmatia, burnt Ancona, but at last being about to take Rome, they were vanquished with great slaughter by the Roman Citizens at Osium in the year of Christ 849.

(35) Chassibers 1 Holy Charaster,

under which appellation is properly compriz'd the Sultan's name, confirming any Mandate or Letter, and from thence the whole imperial Letter. Formerly fuch Mandates were wont to be penn'd by the Sultans themselves. and that in vulgar Schedules with the common Character, an instance whereof is the Chatisheris of Sultan Mahomet 11, full extant in the Church of the Virgin Mary, Magulutifa. But afterwards when the Luxury and Pride of the Emperors increas'd with the Bounds of the Empire, they deem'd it beneath the Imperial Majefty, that the Sultan should either write or fign a Mandate. Wherefore they appointed the Nifbanji Pafba, who takes care of the Confirmation

of the Imperial Mandates and in-

scapes the character of the Sultan's

name artificially made, and commonly call'd Turre, not at the bottom as is customary to other Nations, but at the beginning over the first line of the Mandate. But if the Emperor intends a more than ordinary Confirmation over the Turic he ules to write with his own hand, Mupbinge amel oluna, that is, " Ac-" cording to the underwritten be it done." Such a Chatifbery (ufually call'd also Chats humayun, 1 e the fublime Character; is held in to great Veneration, not only during the Fm peror's life, but even after his death, that no Turk dares to touch it before he has religiously kis'd it with his Mouth and Forchead, and wip'd off the dust of it with both Cheeks. which I observed the Prime Vizir Chorluly\* An Pasha to do when I deliver'd him the Chatifber if of Sultan Mabomet II. It will not be improper to infert here for the fake of the curious the whole Mandate at large, which ran thus: " O thou who art allied to " Honour, Subalbs of Constantinople, " fince We out of our jublime cle-" mency have granted to Christodu-44 lus the Architect, as a reward for " his perfect work, the Street call'd "Kinchuk" faser, Thou going to " the Temple Maguliotifa, describe " and mark it out with the adjacent " void places, and pur the faid " Christodulus in policition, giving " credit to this our facred Mandate." From this writing, it may also be remark'd



believe (36) amply made up to Selim, fince they ascribe to the virtues of this Sheikh and his favour with God the victories obtain'd in so large and powerful a Kingdom.

XX. When

#### ANNOTATIONS.

remark'd, that under Sultan Mabomet Fatib the manner us'd by the Turks in governing Cities was very different from what is now practis'd. For at that time one Imperial Mandate to the Subasti (an Officer now of the lowest order and little authority) was fufficient for whit in our days cannot be effected without feveral Mandates, and the interpolition of Persons of other orders For if but a fingle House be granted to any man by the Sultan, it is notified by a Chatilliers to the Prime Vizir, who, if the House is in the middle of the City, fends a Mandate to the Mimir Aga or chief Architect, by which he 19 ordered to go and measure the House, and describe the Rooms and Court yard in a particular manner But if the House be near the Walls of the City, the Mandate is directed to the Such crims or Inspector of the Walls and Streets. And whether the Mimar Aga or the Shehremini execute the orders, he lends for the Naib or Deputy of the Judge of Confiantine-fic or Pera (if the House be in that City) and by him fends the defeription and delineation of the House to Inambol Effendisi or supreme Judge of Constantinoste, Lastly, A Copy of the Mandate and the Architect's detemption are laid up in the Archives, cill'd by the Turks, Sigyl, and thus the possession of the House is confirm'd to the Person, to whom it was granted by the Sultan.

(,6) Turks believe I Though it is the common opinion of the Turks that the Souls of the Deceased can give no affishance to the Living, yet we trad in the best Mabonetan Divines, that the Dead appeared by the Privers of the Living, interceed with God to grant their Petitions. They likewise own it to be meritorious and decent to reverence departed Saints, and religiously visit their Monuments. But they are chiefly commanded by their Law to invoke the names of No. 8.

Mahomet and his Successors, as Ya+ Mubammed | Ya Ebubeker ! Ya Omer ! I a Othman! Ya Ali! and write them on boards in very neat Characters, which they hang up in the Jami and other Buildings, and also describe them in large letters against the walls in the following manner. In the middle of the board they deferibe Mabonet, namely, that he had a ruddy Countenance, long Vilage, straight Noic, blewish Fyes, black Beard eight inches long, broad Cheft, flender Waste, round Hands, long l'ingers, streight I egs, broad Feet, with longish Tocs, &c. T'hough Maromet's picture might easily be drawn by this description, it is unlawful to paint any thing but his hands and feet, to draw any other part is reckon'd a fin But the Perfiancare not so superstitious, they paint whole Pictures, and commonly infert them in their Historical Writings. Of this I saw an instance in a Perlian Book which I had at Constantinopie. containing the History of the Persians from the Creation to Shab Ismail, wherein the Portraitures of all the Prophets and Emperors were drawn. though not with great symmetry, yet with great elegance Among the Turkiffs Emperors, only Murad IV. who conquer'd Babylon and was given to wine, order'd the walls of his bed chambers in the Palace to be adorn'd with painted pictures, but even these were eras'd by his successors. There is a fingle house on the Bosphorus near the village call'd Bescozs, in which still remain some Pictures drawn by that Emperor's command, namely, of men hunting and shooting at wolves, stags, and also eating and drinking and the like But the Turks firmly believe that Angels can enter no house where are dogs or portraitures of men. Wherefore they preferve no face-paintings, unless of the Emperors, whole Pictures for many ages have been carefully kept in the Sultanic

He behends Heufan Pafba

XX. When he had thus spent some days in civil and sacred affairs, he leads his forces big with the hopes of victory towards Cairo. In this march

# ANNOTATIONS.

Sultanic Library, from whence with good presents, by means of my friends at Court, I got them to be copied by the Sultan's Mujevoir or chief Painter Leun Chelebi\*, and have them still by me +. Whilst I am writing these things, a discourse I once had with a learned Turk concerning Pictures occurs to my me-He objected to us that even at this day we worship Idols and Images and Pictures the works of men's hands. When I told him there was no difference between a Mululman and a Christian as to the worthip of images, he wonder'd and declared his abhorrence of image worthip which I replied, I would prove my affertion if he would liften to me " Dan't you, (faid I) on your Ta " bles describe in gold Letters the make and shape of your Prophet? "Don't you paint in lively colours his 44 hands and feet with the Rose which " you say sprung from Mahomer's sweat as it was dropping to the " ground? Don't you inscribe on Ta " bles of wood or gold the names of " the Ashabi (that is of Mahomei's four fucceffors) and hang them up on the walls of your Jams and Houles " towards Ayble (the region looking " towards Mecca between the East and south) and when you rile in the " morning, don't you, after faying " your prayers, devoutly kifs them
" and wipe off the dust with your " face? Now when you do this in ho " nour to them whose names are " mention'd in the Tables, do you pay this reverence or worship to the "Colours, Lines, or Tables? Not at all, fays he" Whereupon I replied. " But it any Turk or Christian should " fpit upon or otherwise show his " contempt of these Tables, does " not your law pronounce such a " person worthy of death? Without doubt answered he." Then said I, " It is the same with us Christians in

" respect of the worship of Images " For we worship neither the image " nor the wood nor any work of " man's hand, but reverence the per-" fon represented by the Image. If fo, replies he, it is certainly wrong " to call Christians Put perest or Idolworshippers. Admiring the candidness of the Turk, I ventur'd to add, 44 Is not your Prophet's Tooth " preserved in the Royal Treasury, which you deem inestimable, and " the Sultan himfelf with great reve-" rence, every year before the first " day of Ramazan, offers to be kiss'd " by the Great men after publick prayers on the occasion? Do you " not religiously keep Mabonet's San-" jak or Standard and Hireat Sherif
or Holy Robe, the border of " which you dip every year at the " fame time in water, and think that 46 water to be hallow'd and incorrup-" tible, calling it Abi bireai Sherif, " the water of the Holy Robe, and " diffributing it to the Great-men " that on fast days at Sun-fet, they " may infuse one drop of it into a large draught of water, with which after thrice tafting they quench their thirft, by drinking it " at once? Don't you reverence, of preferve, and worship the Tooth of your Prophet though dead? " fince these things are openly done " by you, tell me I pray, whether " you honour an manimate thing, as " a Tooth, or Water for its own fake, " or in reference to your Prophet's " immaculate Spirit (which you " talk off) and his Trust in God?" Certainly, fays he, all thefe things " refer to him, for whose sake they " are accounted Holy and fanctify-" ing." Wherefore I concluded with faying, " Much less can Christians be charg'd with idolatry, fince "they refer the honour paid to the "Images and Relicts of Saints pri-" marily to God himself, and but \*\* fecondarily

march when he was come to a certain place call'd by the Inhabitants Chani yunus (37), and there talk'd familiarly with his officers. Hiufan Palha, one of his Vizirs, with more boldness than prudence, asks him, " Most auspicious Emperor when shall we enter Cuthusur Cais (28)?" The Emperor perceiving his too great familiarity with his friends bred contempt, replies, " We shall enter indeed when God " pleases, but for thee it is my pleasure that thou stay here." And upon these words, orders his head to be instantly struck off.

XXI. From thence he marches to Gaza, where hearing Kudfler-He value Kud rif + was not far off, he was extremely defirous to see a City, the fountain tike some of fo many Prophets, and the scene of so many miracles According + genulatem ly he goes thither with a few Attendants, and in three days performing what Religion requir'd, he returns to his army at Gaza. Then he pursues his march directly to Elkair (39), and by the way takes Siftdulbabr (40) and Chanuljum. But he did not think it adviseable to place there any Garrisons, because these towns would not shake off his voke if Conqueror, and if vanquish'd, would not be a safe retreat. Wherefore leaving only fuch as were disabled by wounds or the length of the march, he goes on. When the people of Gaza fee this, and imagining the Emperor would never return but be cut off with his whole army by the fword of the Chercaspans, they kill the fick and their Physicians committed to their trust.

XXII. The fresh efforts of the Chercassians\* for the desense of the Vanquilles Kingdom had perhaps prompted the Inhabitants of Gaza to rebellion, the Chinaffi-For those who had escap'd out of the former battle when they come to Cairo call a Council, and creating Tumanbai King, sprung from their noblest family, style him in the inauguration Muluk Esbref (41), and swear either to defend the Empire from Selim's unjust tyranny or die valiantly fighting, and fell their lives and extensive dominion as dear

# ANNOFATIONS.

" fecondarily to the Prototype or Per-44 fon represented. For they do not " worthip Saints, as Saints, or Holy " Men, but as God's Servants or as \*\* they may be call'd, God's Saints." This plain and intelligible explication of our Doctrine pleas'd the Turk but could not reclaim him from his Error

(37) Cham yunus ] John's Inn. 1 can't fay, whether they believe this to be the House of John the Prophet.

(38) Cuibuiur Cais] A village or fuburbs of Cairo, and feems to have been some narrow and difficult place, but in what quarter I can't find.

(39) Elkair ] It is commonly by our Countrymen falfely writ Alkair, fo Alkeran instead of Elkuran. This

is the chief City of Egypt, and univerfally known, call'd also by the name of  $M_{\chi}/r$ . I purposely omit the Turkish kables concerning this City and Joseph rayundes, fince they are largely fet forth in many books publish'd of the Egyptian affairs.

(40) Stfidulbabr &c. ] Properly fignifies White Sea. Thele are two Cities whose antient names are to me unknown. For I have not yet been able to discover all the old appellations of the eaftern Cities, which for fo many ages have been conceal'd under the modern barbarous names.

(41) Muluk Efbref ] that is, Most Holy, or Most Auspicious.

23 possible. Under this General, they assemble all the remains of the Chercassians with some auxiliary troops of wandering Arabs, prepare great guns and other warlike Engines, and with a felect army of about forty thousand men incamp in a place call'd Ridanie, fortifying themselves with various stratagems, in expectation that Selim, slush'd with his former fuccels, would instantly attack their camp, and by being taken in their toils afford them an easy victory. But Selim, inform'd of their fnares by his fpies, as he was superior in number, orders part of his forces to march round the enemies camp near Mount Jebels Maktab (42) and at a given fignal to fall on their rear. So in the first days (43) of the month Jemaziul evvel in the year 923 was fought fuch a bloody A C 1517. and obstinate battle, the Chercassians\* being surrounded on all sides, as can hardly be describ'd. The Chercaspans\* are frequently overpower'd by numbers, fometimes repell'd, and as often renew the charge, the King himself fighting always in the front and animating his soldiers by his example. The battle is continued fome time with broken ranks. when at last Tumanbai sees part of his men taken, part slain, and victory no way to be gain'd, with a felect band as a body-guard, he opens a passage with his sword through the thickest of his enemies, and flies to Sheikh Areb Son of Becaar (44). Thus the Turks, though not with-

### Annotations.

(42) Jebels Maktab ] I think it should be Machtab, not Maktab, which signifies a Hill or Mount, on which the Monuments of the Antients and the famous Pyramids are plac'd

(43) first days &r ] The Tarks are wont in letters and especially in imperial mandates to fet down fonictimes the days of the whole month, fometimes to divide the month into three decads, and if any thing is dated in the first ten days, they say Evvailinde (in the first days, ) if in the second decad, Evasisynde (in the middle days,) if in the third decad, Evachirinde (in the last days) of the month Thus Jemazsul evvels evvaslinde, in the first days of the month Jemuziul evvel, that is, on fome day of that month between the first and And so of the rest, the tenth

(44) Sheikh Areh &cc ] He feems to have been one of the Arahan Sheikhs or Prelates, who are more concern'd in the ecclefiafical than civil form of Government, and pretend to be the lawful fucceffors of Mahomet Of these there are seven races chiefly celebrated among the Turk, whose names I have forgot. For I live in a

Climate destitute not only of Aracian, but all polite learning, where the name of a compleat Library, much lefs the thing itielf is not to be found. But however it not from hence be interred that the'c Sinkle are highly severenc'a by the Fraperor lamicif, because their head, (who refides at Micca, and though he is confirm'd by the Sultan, yet transmits his dignity to his Children) whenever he writes to the Sultan after the enumeration of his other proud Titles, calls him the Propher's and his Vekilimuz (or Vicar) in the Empire of the World He is faid to use the same form in his letters to the Emperor of Intra. I law one of these Speikbs when he came to Sultan Mustas La Brother of the prefent Emperor (who was then in a Tent in a village call'd Akhunar near Adrianople) fit all the while and familiarly converse with him. He was lodg'd with Cherkies\* Meherred Aga Mafter of the imperial Stables, an intimate friend of mine, who told me that this Sheikh whenever he talk'd of the Sultan, us'd to call him his Bizum vekil, Vicegerent or Lieute-

out the flaughter of their men, obtain a complete victory. On the Turkish fide fell the chief Hero of his age, the renowned General Sinan Pasha, whose death was so grievous to Selim, that he is said long after the taking of Cairo to lament in this manner: Myfri aldyk emma yufafi aldyrdyk, Yusuf siz, Mysr-den ne olur " Egypt have I taken, but Joseph

" have I lost, without Joseph what signifies Egypt?"

XXIII. Thus so fertile a Province seem'd to be subjected to the Oth- He first use, man Empire, but King Tumanbai, who was still alive and ready in the norably, and neighbourhood for any commotion, inspir'd a fear of losing it. He afterwards hang him was known to be fled to the Arabians, and there to wait Selim's departure out of Egypt in order to attempt a change Wherefore to prevent the danger threaten'd from that quarter, he fends ambaffadors with noble Presents to Sheikh Areb Son of Becaar, desiring him to deliver up his fugitive enemy, and advising him rather to gain his friendship by good offices than incur his indignation by fruitless obstinacy Sheikh either fearing Selim's power or gain'd by his Presents, shamefully delivers up Tumanbas, whom he had taken into protection, contrary to the law of Nations, and particularly against the Arabic Ras (45). But the bravery which could not affect the mind of a base friend, appeas'd the wrath of a generous enemy. For Selim, when the King was brought bound into his presence and his fortitude plainly seen, could not refrain

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(45) Arabic Rai ] Rai Arebi, with the Turks, Fmam, vulgarly amam, but the Arabic word is most us'd With the Italians it is Parola, ( with the English and French, Parole) the given word of fecurity, peace, covenant, protection, as Berai of the Arabians, which with the Turks is, El emam uzre, Securely ! Mercy ! Quarter! But the Arabians boast them-selves to be of all Mortals the stricteft observers of their Parole, and per-haps, very justly. For if any one even in the heat of a battle kills a man to whom the Ras was given, he is by the Laws of the Arabians punishable with death. If they have taken an enemy (for they are continually at variance amongst themselves) they give him the Rai, and draw a circle round him, with a command not to fiir out of it, which he dares not do, though he should perish with hunger or thirst. But the Conquerors acquaint the Enemies that such a one is taken and in fuch a place included within the Rai circle, wherefore if they will release him they must

pay the ranfom promis'd by him. Which being done, tome one of the Tribe which had taken the Prisoner, goes to him and erazes the circle with his foot, whereupon he is free. But being once within the circle he cannot purchase his liberty but by paying the ransom. For though his Fellow-soldiers afterwards rout the enemies and have it in their power to free the Captive from the circle, yet if he dare go out of the circle without the confent of the person to whom he had given the Ras, he will be accounted all his life, both by friends and foes, a man of no honour, neither will he be able ever after to regain his credit by any action. But if he has dar'd to go out of the circle himfelf and run away, he is by his own countrymen fent back bound to his Enemies, to be fentenc'd either to death or perpetual flavery as they shall think fit, nor can he be redeem'd at any rate. For, fay they, a man, who values life more than Rai, is unworthy of liberty, neither is he to be called a man, much less an Arab.

giving him liberty, and bidding him daily eat at his table. Thus Tumanbai having purchas'd his freedom with his virtue, convers'd publickly and privately with Selim, and inform'd him of the state of the Egyptian affairs, with the laws, genius, and manners of the people. But the miserable Tumanbai shortly after demonstrated by his sad example how fortune sports in human affairs. Selim could not but admire his heroical virtues, fingular fortitude, found counfels, and grave manners. He thought it base to put such a man to death, and as he seem'd to free him from all danger, he had refolv'd to take him into his friendthip and fet him over the Kingdom of Egypt. Whilst he was thinking on these things, it was talk'd among the people that Tumanbas had found great favour with the Emperor and obtain'd the Government of Egypt, and therefore it was hop'd that with the remains of the Chercassians\* and Arabians, he would, soon after Selim's departure, expell his garrisons and restore the Chercassian\* dominion. These discourses could not be conceal'd from Selim, a watchful observer not only of what was done, but of what was faid: he was unwilling however to give credit to the reports, as thinking them rais'd by enemies. At last, when by the continuance of the rumour he suspected some treachery, he order'd the fon of Sheikh Suvar Alibeg, whose father had been lately fasten'd to an iron hook by the Chercassans, to hang up the miserable King in the gate of Caire, call'd Zavil, with these words: " How great " my mercy was, is already declar'd, but what the malignant speeches " of the vulgar though on his fide can effect, let the wretch himfelf " experience." The order is gladly executed by Alibeg as it gave him an opportunity to revenge the murder of his father, and the unfortunate Tumanbai hang'd on the 10th of Rebiul evvel in the year before mentioned, in the Gate Zavil. The terror infus'd into the Egyptians by this unexpected death of their King, is inexpressible. They who before with conceal'd indignation bore his unjust dominion, now run all in a suppliant manner to Selim, intreat his elemency and promise perpetual and faithful fervice to the Othman race. The Emperor pardons them on the condition that if they know of any lurking Chercashan\* they would instantly produce him in bonds. He had scarce made this declaration, when the common people, greedy of novelty, in expectation of obtaining pardon, fearch every where for the Chercalhans\* their former Lords, and drag them bound to Selim to be hutcher'd. The next day, Selam orders a Theater with a Throne on it to be erected without the City on the bank of the Nile, and all the Prufoners to be beheaded in his presence, and their bodies thrown into the river. Their number is faid to exceed thirty thousand. The second day after, in order to humble entirely the minds of the vanquish'd by a demonstration of his power, he makes a triumphant entry into Cairo, but after a few hours stay departs the same day, and pitching his tents in a place near the Nile call'd Ruza, allows his forces fome time for refreihment. A

certain witty Arabic poet has mark'd the Epocha of this butchery in the following line:

> Hui shevi Sultan Selim! Alas! this is Sultan Selim!

XXIV. The same year, on the seventh day of Jemaziul evvel, he Hetakes Alexmarches to attack Iskenderie (46), which avoiding the Conqueror's in- subjects the dignation by a furrender, he fettles the affairs of that city, and returns drabant to the inland parts of Egypt, from whence, having made Chairbeg Governor of the Kingdom, he begins his march in the month Shahan towards Constantinople. In his way, to revenge the perfidiousness of the inhabitants of Goza, he put them all to the fword without diffinetion of age or fex, and raz'd their City to the ground. Afterwards going to Damascus he delivers that City with the other adjacent towns in Palestine and Syria to be govern'd by Gazelibeg according to agreement. In short, within the space of one year, and in the same expedition, Selim added more territories to his Empire than any of his Predecessors had been able to subdue in their whole reign. For he not only conquered all the dominions of the Chercassians in Asia and Egypt, but also reduc'd to his obedience as it were by the by, other strong and famous Cities of Afia, Mulatye, Dierbegi, Derende, Behtifi, Kierkieb, Kiachte, Berejik, Antab, Antakie (47). Besides these even the Sherif of Mecca (48) brought the Keys of his City to Selim whilst he was about Cairo, and openly acknowledg'd his Sovereignty. Whereupon he was honorably receiv'd by Selim, who appointed his fon, famous for virtue, piety, and learning, his fuccessor in the principality. By this man the tribes of the wild Arabians, (Beni Ibrahim (49), Beni Sevalem.

ANNOTATIONS.

(46) Iskenderse] Alexandria, a most noted Mart of Egypt, much frequented by foreign Ships, built by Alexander the Great, and given for an Habitation to the Greeks.

(47) Malatye, &cc ] Of these Cities Malatye, Derende, Berejik, Antab, and Antakie or Antioch, are indeed pretty large, but the rest are rather Towns than Cities.

(48) Sherif of Mecca ] He was before Selim, a Sovereign Prince, and govern'd Mecca and some other Arabian Cities with absolute power. But from Selim's time he has acknowledg'd the Turkish Emperors for Guardians and Protectors of the Musulman affairs.

(49) Bent Ibrabin There are above feventy Nations or Tribes fprung from different Branches, which however all boaft their extraction from

Abrabam, and range the spacious Defarts of Arabia with unfettled habitations. All speak Arabic, but in so different a dialect, that they can hardly understand one another. Hence the Arabic Tongue is justly call'd the most copious and almost boundless. For the same word sig-nifies a hundred things of a very disferent Nature, and the same thing is express'd by as many words which have not the least analogy to each other. Moreover there is scarce any quality of a thing but what procures its subject a peculiar appellation. Me-ninskius's Thesaurus of the oriental Languages affords numberless inflances, which to copy is foreign to my purpose. Of the Flowers of all these Dialects the Koran is compos'd, and from thence it was believ'd by its

lem, Beni Ata, Beni Afrit, and Beni Saud, with many others (50), to whose very names I am a stranger, who inhabit the Desarts between Mecca

#### ANNOTATIONS.

followers to be penn'd in a divine not human Language. For neither can any of these Tribes understand the whole, nor will any the most learned of the Arabians pretend to explain all the words. They add a pleafant story on this subject, which is firmly believed by them. They say, that in Mahomet's time the Arabic Tongue was arriv'd to the greatest perfection, and very elegant poets flourish'd, who, as in the Olympic Games, when any one produc'd a witty diffich, af fix'd it to a Pillar in the Forum erect-ed for that purpole. To answer this with an opposite distich Nazyre, three months space was allow'd to some other Poet. On the appointed day all the Poets affembled and examining each performance, gave the preeminence to him whose distich was most approv'd of, and call'd him Prince of Poets, honoring him also with a new Machlafe or firname. Mahomet taking the opportunity of this custom, fix'd up also on the Pillar one of the Nazmi's or Verses of the Koran, which all the Poets labour'd for nine months to answer, but the victory was unanimously assign'd to Mahomet, his verse declar'd divinely inspir'd, and his Doctrine from thenceforward embrac'd

(50) Many others] Among the rest were the Monks inhabiting Mount Sinas. Of these something very particular is related, which, fince I don't think it mention'd any where but in a fabulous treatile of a Sinastifb Monk, I shall here intert. They fay, though fabuloufly, that Mahomet being of mean birth, us'd to drive in his youth hir'd Camels from place to place. In these journes, as he one day approach'd Mount Sinai, the Abbot faw a cloud hovering over Mahomet's head as he lay affeep in the open field, and defending it as It were from the Sun-beams. The Abbot thence conjecturing there was fomething more in the Youth than was promis'd by his outward appearance, because so singular an omen, in his opinion, could only happen to the future Lord of those Regions, and therefore he went and faluted him very civilly, inviting him into his room and bidding him take his reft quietly. When he thought he had gain'd his good-will by all kind of civilities, he ask'd him, if ever he should become Sovereign of those parts what his pleafure would be concerning the Monks? Mabomet answer'd, "He " would free them as Rubban, (Keepers " of Life or Course) dispersed through "the World from all Tribute, and hold them in great honour" He gave him this promife in an Arabic writing, and confirm'd it, for want of a Scal, with the Palm of his hand dipt in ink and impress'd on the Paper Long after, when Sultan Selam was in Egypt, the Abbot of Mount Sinas humbly came to him with Mabomei's true or forged Instrument, which the Emperor purchased of the Monks for four thousand Gold Crowns, with a declaration of their being free from all 1 ribute, and a confirmation by his Chatisherif of this and their other privileges. Selim's Charter as translated out of Arabic into Turkish I read at Advianople, and remember it to be as follows Since the Monks of Mount Sinas " are come to our fublime Divan-" and have humbly represented, that " Muhammed el Muflapha, God's " Holy Prophet, (on whom be " Peace and Health ) being hereto-46 fore by their Monastery hospita-" bly receiv'd in his travails, and ac-" cording to their flender abilities " ador'd with all kind of honour " and reverence, graciously exemptes ed this community of Nazaraan 44 Monks from their annual Tribute, " and in confirmation of it was " pleas'd to give an Holy writing " figned with his own hand, after " his Example We also out of our 66 great clemency do ordain that " the foremention'd Monks be free " from the yearly Tribute paid by " the rest, and be fuffer'd without

" molestation

Mecca. Cairo, and Damascus) were induc'd to subject themselves voluntarily to Selim, and deliver him a writing for a testimony of their fidelity, with some of their principal countrymen in hostage.

XXV. Whilst he was returning from this expedition, and was now Receive in arriv'd at Aleppo, in the month Ramazan of the year 925, he is met from the Poby a Persian Ambassador sent under the pretence of friendship to de-1en king H 925 ceive the Sultan, and by a feigned submission divert the storm which VC 1519 threaten'd the Kingdom of Persia To gain his ends the more easily, besides noble presents worthy both Emperors, he tries to sooth the ambitious Selim with the addition of new titles, and flatteringly ftyles him. Shehin Shahi Alem, ve Sahih Kyrani beni Adem (51), that is, " The Emperor of Emperors, and fole Conqueror (or Autocrator) of " the fons of Adam."

XXVI. So many and great victories, such flattering congratulations, Schim Pride not only from the vanquish'd Nations, but also from the neighbouring Princes, fwell'd Selim with fuch Pride, that as if he was now Sovereign of the whole World, he look'd with didain on earthly Kingdoms, and even imagin'd that coelestial ones, if they could be reach'd, were to yield to his fword. Wherefore, after his triumphant entrance into Constantinople amidst the people's acclamations, he publickly binds himfelf the next year (as if the unconstant fortune of war had been at H 926 his command) by an oath (52) not to recede till he had entirely fub- A C 1520

#### ANNOTATIONS.

" Molestation to enjoy their Churches " and Rites according to their oblo-" lete Law To this end, we have " graciously order'd them an authen-" tick copy of the Instrument of " God's Holy Propher, confirm'd " by our Infcription. We therefore " enjoin every Person exercising do-" minion or jurifdiction throughout our whole Kingdom, not to bur-" then the fuld Monks of the Tribe " of Jesus with Tribute or other Po-" litical contributions And who-" ever shall act contrary to our Cha-" tifterif and Mandate, know that " he shall be certainly punish'd and chastis'd Given at Cairs, &c" 'Tis certain the exemption of these Monks from Tribute remain'd in force through all the Turkish domi-monstill the time of Soliman II Great-Uncle of the present Emperor, when the Turks began to collect the Haraj upon them, and that by means of Kioprils ogli Muftafa Pafba, who made no scruple to charge the whole Diplona with forgery. To prevent this, tome of the Monks of Mount Sinai Nº. 8.

were fent to Adrianople with the instrument of Exemption, in whose hands I both read and transcrib'd it. They indeed preferv'd by their peti-tions to themselves and Society, a freedom from Tribute, but could not prevail for the reft of the Monafteries

(51) Shehm &c ] Though all the Turkish Emperor's Titles are very lufty, yet Zilullah, God's Shadow, is accounted higher than the rest, because given, as I have observ'd, by the King of Perfia. However at Court, when mention is made of the Sultan, these are never us'd, but the common appellations are, Padybals Alem penab, Emperor, Refuge, or Protector of the World, and Aliothman Padifbabi, Emperor of the Sons of Othman. For by this means they pretend to show, that the whole race of Turks acknowledge no other fountain of Nobility, than their first Emperor Othman.

(52) Oath J The Turks believe, their Emperor can fay or think nothing, unless by divine instinct, and X x therefore therefore verted the rival Empire of the Perfions, and utterly extinguish'd a Nation perfidious to God and hateful to man, in a belief that he should afterwards subdue also, without obstacle, the Christian Princes. But how deceitful are man's defigns without God, and how frail is a clod of Earth when swoln with pride, the supreme Governor of the universe demonstrated for a warning to others by the following Instance. Want of money, both the external and internal Treasuries (53) being exhausted in the Egyptian expedition, obliges Selim to defer the first year his intended war, and turn his thoughts to raising new supplies upon the conquer'd dominions. As this proceeded also the next year more flowly than he wish'd, and as by the approach of winter he sees the time for warlike expeditions to be over, he refolves to visit the monuments of his Ancestors at Adrianople. To this end, he sends all his Great men before, except Ferbad Pasha his fister's husband, who was Casmecam Pasha (54), and departs from Constantinople. journey,

# ANNOTATIONS.

therefore what he confirms with an Oath, ought and may be done, but how falle thefe notions are, experience has often demonstrated.

(53) External &c. ] The Turks have two Treasuries and two Coffers, in which the publick Money is kept The Defterdar or High Treasurer ( mention'd in a former note ) prefides over the external, call'd Difbebazine. This money is call'd bestulmals Muflimin, or the publick money of the Mufulmans, of which the Emperor himself without the utmost necessity cannot expend any part at his pleafure, nor put to his private use without danger. For whenever he does fo, the people always murmur, and fometimes openly rebel Ich\* chazine, or the internal, is also call'd the Imperial Treature, which the Sultan may ule as he pleates without the leaft murmur or obstacle. Over this prefides the idajoular baffer, who in the women's Apartment is next in degree to Kyzlar Agaji. For he is also an bunuch, and usually succeeds upon a vacancy to the Place of the Kyzlar Aga. In my time there were yearly brought mto the two Treasures twenty feven thousand Purfes, each containing five hundred Rigdolars.

(54) Cuimecam Pasha] He is the Prime Vizit's Lieutenant, and created by the Sultan out of the Vizirs enjoying the privilege of three Horfe-tails. When the Emperor is at Constantino-

ple or Adrianople, the Caimecam has no Authority, nor, like the rest of the Vizirs, has he any thing to do in publick affair, except to advise. But if the Sultan be only eight hours absent from the City, his Authority is almost the same with the Prime Vizu's. Moreover when the Empefor undertakes my expedition, thos the Vizir be present, a Caimeiam is appointed, who, on the Vizit's departing from the Emperor eight hour's spice, has full power to act, ordam, alter, any thing except that he can't derogate from the Vizit's Mandate, nor depose or behead the old Pasha's I observ'd there was never a good understanding between the Prime Vizir and the Cameram For Agreement between Rivals in power is rare. Besides this, there is another Camecam, to whom the Emperor, when he goes to Adrianople or on some expedition, commits the care of the Royal City He is in-deed next to a Vizir in degree, but in authority on the fame foot with a Pasha in his Government, except however, that in what relates to admunitring juffice and civil affairs, he can do nothing without the Prime-Vizir's Mandate. He has for affiftants, though of an inferior degree, Bostans bash or Superintendent of the Royal Serat + Palace

and Gardens, with the Suburbs without the walls, and Segban

valbı

journey, he had scarce reach'd the village Suashtdy (55), when he perceives his blood to be in a ferment, and himself seiz'd with a light sever. Next day there appears in his thigh a mortal imposshume, which so tormented and weaken'd him, that all the sinews of his body and seet (56) were contracted and dried. The Imposshume was indeed open'd by a skilful Surgeon, and remedies applied to remove the malignity of the distemper, but his death was perceiv'd to be inevitable; for the obstinate ulcer bassled the care of the Physicians, and so infected his whole body with a pestilential poison, that after forty days of torture rather than of sickness, the splendor of the Othman Empire expir'd on Sunday the ninth day of Shevval about Sun-set.

# ANNOTATIONS

bash the next to Tinguber. Agai, or Aga of the Janizaries, and General of the Foot, to whom the custo dy of the City, and command of its Garrison is committed. By these three persons the whole civil government of the city is managed. But the ecclesialitical is under the care of Istambol Fit, white, Judge of the Clergy, and next in degree to the two Gaddiaskers, one of whom (as I have faed is universal Judge of ecclesiastical affairs in Europe, the other in Asia.

(55) Suafitaly ) 1 e He has fwam over the river. I he name of a Village on the road (the' not the great one) from Conflantinople to Advianople They tay this name happen'd to the Village on the following occision A little river runs by the Village, which twells in fuch manner by the melted inows and Autumnal rains, that it or ciflows all the adjicent fields, and renders it very difficult for I 1avellers to pais. A certain inferior tho' very rich Pasha, to remedy this inconvenience, builds a very handfome as c-bridge over the River When Briggs II, Som's Lather, can with his whole army to this place, he wonders to the a flately Brioge, and defires to know the Build r When he was in his preferce, Bajazet defires him to receive the money he had expended, and granthen the reward to be expected in the next world for fo great a benefit to Nortals (It must be observed ac ering to the Law of the Koran, a and may either give or fell to another all his good Works, Charities,

Building erected to the Glory of God or Benefit of Mankind, fo as the reward which he merits of God in the life to come, passes to the Purchater ) The Builder affirms he can't do it, because he had no other work to qualify him to appear before the divine Majesty For, says he, I did not build this Bridge to gain the applause of Man, but for the publick advantage and the falvation of my Soul. The Sultan thrice renewing his intreaties, is as often denied by the Pafha. Inrag'd at this refusal, Bajazet puts the Pasha to death, rushes with his Guards on horfeback into the rapid I orrent, and with great danger of his life fwims over, ordering the reft of the army to stay till the Waters were abated, and at the fame time pronouncing this Best or Diffich.

Minet ile Kokma giuli al Eline Susami Giechme\* namera Kioprissii Ko aparsun su seni

#### That 15,

It is better to carry Pepperwort than smell to a Rose got by intreaties. Pass not over the Bridge of a sordid discourteous man it is better to be swallowed up by the Waters.

(56) Feet] The Turks feem here to reflect on Selim"s oath, that he would not draw back his foot till he had fubdued the whole Persian Empire. And that therefore the divine vengeance first punish'd his feet by the contraction of the Sinews, as well to humble the Pride of the Man as to demonstrate its Justice

XXVII. When

Conceal'd by the Visits

XXVII. When Selim had thus render'd famous by his death a village before little known, Ferhad Pasha, who alone had staid with him, conceals the Emperor's decease from the people, but tells what had happen'd to the rest of the Vizirs, who were anxiously waiting his coming to Adrianople, intreating them to feign him alive, and transact affairs in his name, least any commotion should arise before the succeffor's arrival. Moreover he acquaints Soliman, Selim's fon, who then resided at Trapezond, with his father's death, and advises him to come with speed and assume the reins of the Government. Soliman upon the receit of the letter haftens to Constantinople: Which being known, the Vizirs openly declare the Emperor's death, difmiss the army, and all except Mullapha Pasha, who is left alone to guard the Treasury, go with the whole imperial Court to the royal City to adore their new Sovereign.

Ealiman 15 ta late | Empe ror H 026

XXVIII. Thus all the Vizirs, cloath'd in mourning, falute Soliman Emperor at his arrival at Conflantinople in the last days (57) of Shevval in the year 926, and express their grief for his father's untimely death. Soliman himself the same day in the afternoon goes out to meet his father's funeral with all his Courtiers, and conducts the body in great pomp to the Jams built by Mahomet Conqueror of the City, and there orders it to be interr'd. The following Epitaph is inscrib'd on his Tomb.

Beka Mulkine azm idup Sefer kyldy budir Tarich Kosup Sultan Selim baky jihan Miulkin Sulimane, " This year Sultan Selim departed " to an everlasting Kingdom, leaving the Empire of the World to " Soliman."

Silin Chi 1390

XXIX. Thus fell Selim, the Defender of the Othman Empire, after he had reigned nine years and eight months, and liv'd fifty four. The years of his Reign indeed were few, but fuch whose acts are hardly to be parallell'd. For by his diligence and valour, not only the Apatic Provinces were freed from all incursions of the Enemies, but ample room given to his successors by the establishment of the East, to increase their dominion to the West. He had all the qualifications of a Hero, with an able head, strong arm, and great contrivance; he was indefatigable where the fafety of the state was concern'd, very fit to manage affairs, and extremely quick-fighted in discovering hidden factions and other practices. He frequently walk'd in difguise about the forum, streets, camp, night and day, and whatever he perceiv'd contrary to the publick good or his laws, he punish'd feverely. Where he could not go in person, he sent his spies, eminent for their cunning, who mixing with all companies, daily reported to the Sultan what they

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(57) last days That is, some day of computing the day of the month, between the 20th and 30th of the See Note p. 64. month Sieval. Concerning this way

had heard or feen. By this means he was fo fully acquainted with every thing that pass'd, that it became a common saying in his time: " The " Emperor will know to morrow what paffes in the chamber between " man and wife." However this proceeding was of fuch fervice to the Empire, that in fo remote expeditions, which in his time were undertaken, there was no rebellion but what was flifled in the very birth. By these things he would have merited everlasting praise, if he had not by his proness to anger and cruelty sullied the lustre of his virtues and caus'd himself to be distinguish'd from the Emperor's of the same name by the appellation of Yavuz (58). It will not be improper before I close this larger account of his actions, to relate a fingle instance to this purpole. Two years before Selim's death, there appear'd in Taxcomanus a certain Free-booter who infested not only that and the ne robbering countries with his robberies, but having gathered together a confiderable band of companions, he attempted to become mafter of those Provinces. To extinguish this flame Selim sent Ferbad Pasha with good part of his forces, who when he came to Amaha, hears the the whole band with their Ring-leader were routed by Ilbistanbeg Mehmed, Son of Sheikh Savur. So being unwilling to fatigue his army in vain with fo long a march, and not daring to return without the Emperor's order, he incamps about Amasia, expecting an answer to a mestige he had sent the Sultan. Mean while, a malicious slanderer comes to him, pretends he could not forbear, out of due fidelity to the Emperor, to discover a projected rebellion of the inhabitants: for, sava he, there lurks among the Citizens of Amaha a certain counterfeit Murad, who boasting himself to be the Son of Sultan Abmed, has drawn the whole City to his fide, with above feven hundred Robbers. Ferhad Palha, without examining the truth, acquaints the Emperor with what he had heard, and defires his orders in this imminent danger. Selim trusting perhaps to his General's prudence, commands without any inquifition that all the chief men of the country should be impal'd. Ferbad executes the orders, and impales above fix hundred innocent Persons of note, others he beheads, and the rest drags through the fireets at horfes tails.

## Annotations.

See Note p 143 There is extant a word of Flattery This Book is very fearer among the Turks, from which tans, Mahomet II, Bajazet II, Selim, and Soliman, written by Ali Effendi to my subject. so often prais'd by me, an Author no

(58) Yavuz] Concerning this name less grave than itudious of Truth and

Cotemporary with SELIM in Europe.

MAXIMILIAN I. 1493-1518. In Germany, CHARLES V. 1518-58.

In England, HENRY VIII. 1509-46.

LEWIS XII. 1498-1525. In France, FRANCIS I. 1525-47.

The End of the Reign of SELIM I.



# The REIGN of

# SOLIMAN I. Sirnam'd Canuni,

Tenth EMPEROR of the TURKS.

# BOOK III. CHAP. IV.

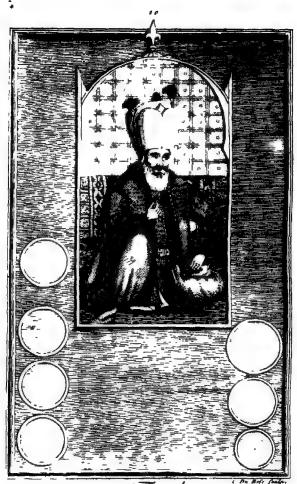
G*andiby* reselling a flain.

I. SOLIMAN Canuni (1) had fearer mounted his father's throne when a great rebellion broke out in Afia. Gazelibeg, Beglerbeg of Damafeus (by whose Treachery Selim obtain'd his victory over the Chercaffians\*) when he is inform'd of Selim's death, imagining all the virtues and fortune of the Othman Empire to be buried with him, revolus from his sworn fidelity, with a resolution to assume to himself the full Sovereignty of the countries of which he was Governor. To this

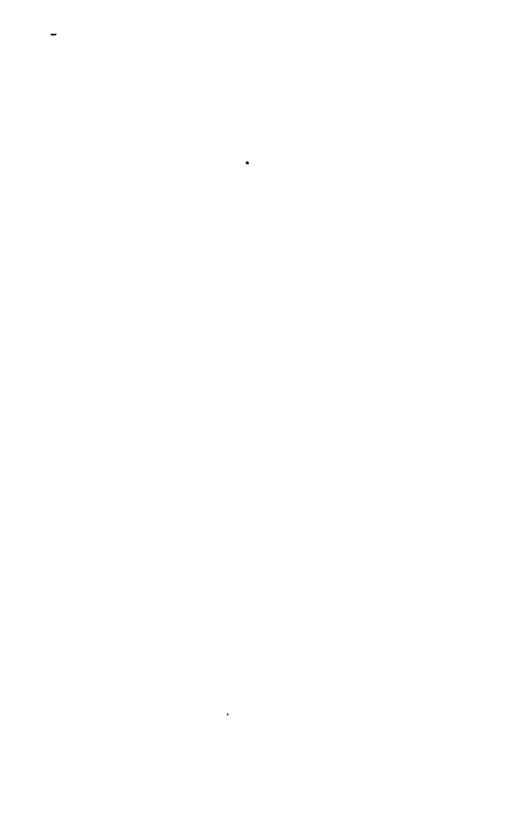
#### ANNOTATIONS.

(1) Canun: ] From the Greek Cano. myta, Institutor of Rules. For the the Othman Empire before Soliman was not govern'd without certain Constitutions, they were founded rather on custom than written law, or to fay more rightly, the will of the Prince was instead of law. But Soliman first distinguish'd the civil and military offices, assign'd to each its degree of dignity, establish'd the Laws of the Court, Palace, Forum, and Army, and inftituted what body of Laws there now is in the Othman Court and Common-wealth. fuccessors are so strictly oblig'd to observe these laws, that whenever any doubt occurs, they think recourse must be had to Soliman's Canons, call'd Teforifat. Thus for instance, in a confutation about war, regard is had before all things

to these Canons. If they believe they fee a just cause of war express'd there, they decree it to be proclaim'd, if not, to be avoided. If a peace is to be made with some Christian Prince, the same Canons are consulted, least any thing be done contrary to the Law of the Koran or the Othman Empire. But his Canons order, that a peace is not to be made at Constantimople or other Royal City, but in the Confines, in the Field, under Arms, that the Peace may feem, not to be made out of fear, but granted to the Enemies by the Emperor's clemency and his care for the quiet of his Peo ple. And by reason of these Constitutions, he is feen in the imperial Library, among the rest of the Sultans, painted with a Book in his hand, from which Picture his Effigies prefix'd to has life was copied by my care.



SOLIMAN I Tenth EMPEROR of the TUKKS, in the Year 1520 From an Original in the Geraglio



end, he affembles his forces, and so suddenly and unexpectedly besieges Aleppo, that a messenger sent to the Orbman Court with news of this rebellion could hardly escape. However the Town, defended by Coja Musiapha Pasha (2), made a brave resistance, and gave Soliman time to extinguish the flame before it fpred any farther. Soliman not to deceive the expectation of his Subjects, fends into Afia, under the conduct of Ferhad Pajba (3), what forces were ready, and also orders them to be joined in their march by Afiatick Troops rais'd on every fide. Gazelibeg, whose ardor was cool'd by the unexpected bravery of the befieged, when he sees himself too weak to meet in open field the army marching against him, raises the fiege, and goes and incamps near Damajous in a place call'd by the inhabitants Mustaba, which he fortifies with strong works, hoping the imperial army would be forc'd by the f reity of corn and feafon of the year to march back, and afford him another opportunity to invade the neighboring Provinces. But Ferbad Pasha, though he found Aleppo free from the rebel, yet mindful of the Emperor's order, he bravely follows him, and at last, contrary to the opinion of all, on the 27th of Sefer in the year 927, attacks him in his fortified camp. A fierce and doubtful battle is fought A. C. 1520. for ten hours, the Tarks being obstructed more by the situation of the place than the fword of the enemy. At length, the difficulties of the place being furmounted by the valour of the Turkish foldiers, the whole rebel army with their leader are flain. The Conquerur Ferbad Palbe enters Damascus, appoints Asas Pasha Beglerbeg of the City, and setling the affairs of those parts, returns with his forces to Confiantinople.

II. Aha being in peace, Soliman resolves to turn his arms against Eu- Soliman takes rope, in order to extend his dominion as far to the west of Constantinople as it reach'd to the cast. To this end, that he might not, in the midst or his progress, be disturb'd by commotions elsewhere, as had often been the case of his predecessors, he leaves to Ferbad Pasha, with good part of his army, the care of Afia, sends a fleet into the Archipelagus, orders another for the Black-fea, confifting of fifty ships of war, with four hundred of Burthen to take care of the provisions for the Hungarian expedition. He himself departs from Constantinople by land with a great army to subdue all Hungary. But before he sets out he sends to Tabiabeg, Son of Balybeg, Governor of Semendra, to befiege, with what forces he had, Belgrade on a fudden before his arrival.

# ANNOTATIONS.

(2) Coja Mustapha ] Old Mustapha. Coja also figuratively signifies a Per-fon of Gravity and Wildom, as bir Coja adem, an experienc'd, grave, prudent Man. So alio bir haba adem, denotes, a benevolent Man, because as a baba (or father) he is a wellwisher to All.

(3) Ferbad Pafas A very famous Turkyb General, of great valour, fortitude, and wifdom, by whefe conduct Solman did great things in Afia, and took many Provinces from the Persians. He is call'd Farates by Lonicerus and other European Writers.

and hinder provisions or a stronger garrison from being thrown in. Whilst Tabiabeg closely belieges the City, Solsman arrives in person, and incamping in the field call'd Zemin, fends his Vizir Mustapha Pasha and Abmed Pasha (4) Beglerbeg of Rumels, with part of his forces to Yabiaber's affistance. These two Generals, the more to gain Soliman's favour, to whom they knew the taking of the City as foon as possible would be very grateful, that he might have the way open to Buda the Metropolis of the Kingdom, by battery and undermining destroy the walls, renew their assaults every hour, and so weary the befieged, who make a brave refistance, that at length they are forc'd to yield to the fury of the Turks, and furrender (fuch was God's pleafure) on the 5th day of Ramazan, the bulwark of Hungary, which had often been attack'd but never fubdu'd Mean while Soliman, not to be idle, with the rest of the army takes partly by assault, partly by capitulation, Burgaz +, Barij, Tiruje, and Biugurdlen, and overrunning the adjacent country, firmly lays the feat of the future war beyond the antient bounds of the Othman Empire.

formerly Pyrges

Orden Shib Savar to be

III. After these conquests, in the month of Ziulcade, returning to Constantinople, he is inform'd that Sheh Suvar ogli Prince of Marash (5) was raising disturbances in Asia in order to shake off his yoke, but deferr'd the execution of his purpose, because things were not yet ripe for rebellion. Wherefore he instantly sends orders to Ferbad Pasha, who had the custody of Afia, to behead the treacherous Prince. To attempt this openly feem'd dangerous to Ferbad, and therefore thinking it best to effect it by stratagem, sends him a friendly letter, telling him, he was by the Sultan appointed his affiftant, and defiring him to come and confult with him about the publick affairs. The Prince ignorant of what was transacted, falls into the snare, and coming to Ferbad's tent, is with his two fons, by foldiers planted for the purpose, put to death.

He takes H 928

IV. This rebellion being stifled in the birth in the year 928, Soliman having prepar'd a great fleet, sends the Vizir Muftaplia Pasha be-A C. 1521 fore to take Rhodes (6), whilst himself goes by land to Thessaly, from whence taking ship at Marmaros, he sails over to Rhodes on the 4th day of Ramazan. At his arrival, he closely presses the City, and sur-

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(4) Mustapha Pasha] whom I before mention'd left by the rest of the Vizirs at Adrianople to guard the Treasures at Selim's death. See p 172.

(5) Prince of Marafb ] Marafb is a City fet down in the modern Mapps by the same name. But the Family of Sheb Suvar ogli, though of no great account at Court, boafts even at this day the antiquity of its nobility among the Afrancks.

(6) Rhodes The Metropolis of the Island of Rhodes was thus call'd also by the Antients. The Turkish name is Rodos Out of her Ruins arose Malta, an instance of the divine love to Christians not being yet extinct, and hateful to the Othman Power, which daily threatens it with deltruction, by reason of the deplorable discord of Christian Princes.

rounds it with strong works. In this siege are us'd, all the arts of assaulting and defending, hitherto invented by the wit of man. The Turks bravely attack, and the Christians no less gallantly repel their assaults. Thus they fought five whole months with fuch fury, that the dispute feem'd to be for the Empire of the World, and not for a fingle City. At length, the Christians, exhausted with continual slaughters and watchings, are forc'd on the 3d day of Sefer the next year, to furren- H 929. der to Soliman that renowned City, famous under the Grecian and Ro- A C 1522 man Empires, fruitlessly attempted by his Great Grandfather Mahomet. The taking of Rhodes was follow'd by the voluntary furrender of the

leffer neighbouring Islands Iskanktoy (7) and Butrum.

V. During the fiege of Rhodes, Chairbeg (8) Governor of Egypt He fends Muf happen'd to die and leave an immense treasure behind him. On news Egypt, and of his death, as if the great support of the Othman dominion was re- cicus lbra-him Vigur mov'd, Jumun-Kiashuf (9) stirs up the Egyptians, tells them an opportunity presented itself to recover their former liberty, and shake off their fervile voke, and by his speeches and presents, perswades the whole Nation unanimously to resolve upon an attempt to free themfelves from flavery. But Soliman hearing of these transactions, sends his Vizir Mustapha Pasha with five ships into Egypt, to stifle this slame before it broke out. Mustapha Pasha with a fair wind arrives in a few days at Eskenderse +, surprises the rebels unprepar'd, who did not think + Alexandria. their defigns so much as known to the Sultan, and entirely routing and dispersing them, restores the Othman dominion in Egypt to its former luftre. But as it took him up fome time to collect Chairbeg's riches and fettle the Egyptian affairs, Soliman, to whom the whole adminifiration of the Government, feem'd too great a burden, made Ibrahim Ara, from a common Janizary of the ninth Company (10), Prime Vizir.

VI. The news of this promotion, could not but grieve Mustapha, Mustapha 19who imagin'd his late victory deferv'd rather an addition of honour bils in Fight, and is value. duith,q

 $\mathbf{Z} \mathbf{z}$ 

Annotations.

(7) Iskanktoy] The Island Ka, corruptly by the Greeks etc Tip Ki, as Istambol from sig Thy Tokin Indeed Mich. Langius does not like those derivations, who icems to follow fuch as are more strange than true, deriving for instance Istambol from Istadibol, 1. e a City abounding with Artificers. But I should advise him not to mix with what he calls the Gracobarbarous Idiom, more Barbarifins, whilst he gives Etymologies in a Tongue unknown to him For fuch a proceeding plainly discovers his ignorance in both the Turkifb and Gracian Learning which he boafts of.

Nº. IX.

(8) Chairbeg A Persian by extraction, Governor of Damafeus under Sultan Gaurt, whose revolt to Se-

(9) Jumun-Kiasbus ] An Arabian Sheikh, who in Selim's time submitted to the Othman Empire.

(10) Ninth Company ] There are reckon'd one hundred and eleven Companies of Janizaries, call'd by the Turks, Oda, (or Chambers.) The eleventh Oda has the precedence, the first Oda holds the second rank, and the one hundred and eleventh Oda the third, the rest follow in order.

than

lim has been related

than fuch an affront. But reflecting that he was fervant to a Prince whose will was a law, he craftily conceals in his breast the wound he had receiv'd, and as if he was entirely ignorant of what had pass'd at Rhodes, fends the Emperor an account of his proceedings, requesting him to give him as a reward for all his past services the Government of Egypt. Soliman readily grants his petition, telling him, he referv'd nothing in the whole Egyptian Kingdom but the royal name and coin: every thing else he most willingly gave him. Mustapha being invested with this power, and inrich'd with Chairbeg's treasures and the effects of those he had conquer'd or proscrib'd, aspires to sovereignty, and resolves to subject all Egypt to his dominion. But the old axiom, nothing violent is lasting, was verified by his example. For whilst he was meditating on these things, he imparted his design to Mchemmed Effends scribe of the Divan (11), and created him Vizir, as thinking him a man of fense and his particular friend. Mebenmed, either out of conscience or detesting his Lord's wicked purpose, resolves to revenge treachery with treachery, and free Egypt from a tyranny, and the Sultan from a rebel. To this end, he endeavours with fome accomplices to kill Mustapha as he was bathing. But Mustapha being inform'd of the danger by a faithful fervant, escapes out of their hands through a back door, and flies with a few attendants to the Sheikh of the Arabians (12). There, by means of great promises, he easily assembles a numerous band of Arabi, and wages war with the feribe, whom for his unexperience he despises. Mean while the scribe had acquainted Soliman with what was done, and for a reward of his service obtain'd the government of Egypt. Wherefore to show his fidelity to the Emperor. he incourages the foldiers with a large distribution of money, and leading them against his former Lord and the Sultan's enemy, vanquishes him after a bloody battle, and cuts off his head.

*Ibrabım* marrıcı *Səliman*'s Sıfter. VII. Mustapha's treachery, and Ibrahim's virtues, caus'd Soliman not to repent of committing the highest office in the Othman Empire to a man of so mean a condition. Wherefore to render him the more

## ANNOTATIONS.

(11) Scribe of the Drvan Divan Kiatibs Such an Officer belongs to every Pasha, and his business is to recite with a clear voice the complaints deliver'd in writing to the Pasha's Drvan. They have now a more honorable name, Drvan Effends. For Effends is an appellation of the learned The Prime Vizir has two, who are not call'd Kiatib, Scribes, but Teskierij Effends, that is, Secretaries. Teskiere evvel, vulgarly, busyak Tekieres, the first or great Secretary, and Teskieres fant or Kiuchuk Teskieres, the second or minor Secretary. When the Vizir hears causes in the Divan,

the first stands at his right hand, the second at his lest, and read with a loud voice by turns the Petitions or Arzubal received from the Chaush's Bashi. The same also is done by them in the Galibe Divan before the Sultan. If the Sultan orders any thing to be done, they write it in a little book, which is afterwards confirmed by the Vizir's hand, who usually does it with the word Sab. But the Sultan's confirmation is by a Chaushert, or the Holy Character, of which I have before spoken.

(12) Sheikh of the Arabians] His Name is not extant.

faithful,

faithful, he gives him, in the year 930, his fifter (13) in marriage, and H 930. whilft he is gracing the nuptials with his presence, the joy is doubled A. C 1523 by the Sultana being deliver'd of a fon, who was nam'd Selim (14).

VIII. Shortly after Ibrabim Pasha, with some gallies, departs to Hensentine fettle the Egyptian affairs, but being beat back by tempessions weather he coins falls be anchors in the December 11 the Decem he anchors in the Propontis under the Island Kyzyl Ada (15), about fe- Ducan. venteen miles from Constantinople Whereupon Soliman in his royal barge, instantly goes to the Vizir, views the fleet, and advising with him about the publick affairs, returns to Conflantinople Ibrahim having got a fair wind, fails out of the Hellespont, but in the Archipelagus meets with a fecond storm, which forces him into Rhodes with the loss of fome gallies Finding the sea not propitious to him, he leaves there his thips, and goes by land to Aleppo, and from thence to Cairo. At his arrival, he composes the troubled state of the Kingdom, disperses by his authority the rebels, and taking the Ring-leaders, the fons of Omer and Becaar (16), orders them to be hang'd, and their estates confiscated. As among their effects was found a great quantity of Gold, he coins Ducats like those of Venue, but of less value by thirty Aspers, which to this day have retain'd the name of Ibrahims (17). After this, he delivers

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(13) His fifter ] The Trrkiff Sultans are wont to marry then Sifters and Daughters to the Passias and Vizirs, though not of a ht age, nay fometimes whilft in their Cridles, of whom as Husbands they are to take care, and be at the charge of their Education, nor can they cipoule ano ther wife, before their marriage with the Sultana be confummated When the Sultana is of mature age, she is conducted with great pomp and magnificence from the Signi, with her portion to her Husband's Palace. But if, in the mean time, her Hus band happens to die, or lose his head by the Sultan's command, the is instantly betroth'd to another Pasha, who fucceeds to the right and charges of the former Murad IV's Sitter had four Husbands in one year, and not one of the Marriages appears to have been confummated. For as foon as the Nuptials were celebrated according to custom, they were ac cus'd of fome crime, and put to death by the Emperor, and their Riches with all their effects affign'd indeed to the Sultana as his lawful Wife, but in reality brought into the royal Treasurv

(14) Selim ] This is he who fucceciled his Father Solumin in the Empire, fumous for the memorable deicut of his fleet by the Christians near Nupartust, and for his drunkenness. + Leganto

(15) Kyzyl Ada | Red Island, fo call'd from a Red Stone which is found there. It lies in the Propontis teventeen Italian Miles from Constantinor l- This is the greatest of three Iffinds which he together, and are by the Turks call'd by the fame name Kyfyl addler || Here are three Mo- | hr 182 plural nufteries, Olz. of the Holy Tribilly, termination the Virgin Mary, and Si George, fill'd with Greek Monks The leaft of these Islands breeds such quantities of Hares spotted with various colours, which they call Mescovitici, that when they come out of their holes to feed, they fill the whole Island like sheep 'Tis faid, there were great numbers of them in the time of the Christian Emperors. To hunt them is prohibited.

(16) of Omer and Becaar ] They feem to have been of the Egyptian Race of Chercassians, who, after Sultan Gaurs, had escap'd Selim's cruelty.

(17) Ibrabimi ] It is a coin refembling the Venetian Gold Ducats, but

2. 951. delivers up the Government to Soliman Pasta, and in the year 931, on A. C 1524 the 30th of Sheban, arrives at Constantinople.

IX. The next year, Soliman resumes the war he had hitherto deserr'd. king of the against the Hungarians, and with a great army, on the 30th day of Rejeb, comes to Belgrade. He orders a bridge to be thrown over the Savus, and leads his forces over it into the plain of Serem. From hence he moves towards Buda, and in his march takes Suliuk and Ofek, under the conduct of Balybeg, and commands the bridge to be demolish'd, which afforded near Ofek a passage over the Dravus. Soon after, the Hungarians with the same design come thicker; but when they see the bridge already destroy'd, they first wonder, and then are feiz'd with fear, because it was a demonstration to them, that the Turks had pass'd the river, with a resolution to conquer or die. Ladosh (18) himself, King of Hungary, to prevent the devastation of his country, marches with incredible speed, and incamps in fight of the Turkish army in a place call'd Mohaj. The next day, being the 22d of Ziulcade, both armies ingage, and so fiercely contend the whole day, that it was long difficult to perceive, to which fide victory would incline. At length, about Sun-set, the Hungarians take to flight, the

a prey to the Othmans. and takes Buda

X. After this victory, Soliman marches directly to Buda, Metropolis of Hungary, which, dispirited by the late slaughter, is easily taken the ad of Ziulbije, and the next day Pejthe opposite to Buda on the other side of the Danube, voluntarily surrenders to the Conqueror. Whilst Soliman is thus employ'd, fome Hungarians, who had escap'd out of the late battle, fet upon and kill some Turks dispers'd over the fields in quest of prey. Upon this, Soliman immediately runs a bridge over the Danube, and orders his troops, divided into parties, to go in fearch of these Hungarrans. His commands are so diligently executed, that some are slain, and others brought prisoners to Soliman, who by that means clear'd the country of these enemies. Winter approaching, he leads back his army, and by the way takes by affault Baj on the Danube, with Segedin and Titels on the Tija. Having thus laid waste the neighbouring

King himfelf falls in battle, and the rest with the whole camp become

#### ANNOTATIONS.

by the confession of the Turks themfelves lighter by thirty Afpers. So great a quantity was coin'd at Cairo, as would fuffice to pay two years tribute of Egypt. They are still to be met with at Constantinople and other Places, though most of them have

been melted down by the Emperor's

(18) Ladofb] This in Ladiflaus King of Hungary, whom the Christian Wilters do not deny to have receiv'd at Mobatur a great overthrow from the Turks, and to have perish'd in the battle. +

<sup>†</sup> Our Author is mistaken as the name of this Prince, for Louis II. was then King of Hungary But of this more largely in the additional Notes

regions, he enters Constantinople in triumph, the 3d of Mubarrem, in H 933. the year 933, with his victorious army laden with captives and spoils. A. C 1626

XI. Whilst these things pass'd in Europe, a falle report of his death Suppresses the is spread in the farthest parts of Ape Whereupon many free-booters and in the country of Zuulcadir (19) miterably harrais all the neighbouring Provinces with clandestine depredations and open incursions. Pire Pasha indeed, Governor of Adana, bravely relists, kills many, and punishes all he takes with death, but for want of a sufficient force cannot quell the rebellion which had taken fo deep root. Calenderbeg (20) Son of Haji Bectaft the Arch Rebel, rejected all offers, nor would be perswaded to submit. To conquer his obstinacy, Soliman sends the Vizir Ibrahim Pasha with a good army into Asia, who finds Calenderbeg near Kaifarie (for fo far had he penetrated) and bravely attacking him, after a bloody conflict, the plunderers valuantly fighting for their lives, defeats him, and kills above thirty thousand of his men.

XII. The next year is begun with religious diffurbances. For there A Turk for appears at Constantinople one Cabyat Ajem, a man of great learning the Goipel is among the Twks, and well vers'd in the law and several sciences, put to death H 934 who not only privately in schools, but publickly in his discourses in ; the Jami, endeavours to perswade the people, that the Christian doctrine stands upon a firmer foundation than the Mahometan. This so unexpected an opinion of a man of his wisdom could not but offend the ears as well of his biethren as of the common people. Wherefore when they find he is not to be brought by private admonitions to a recantation, they feize and carry him before the Mufti. There he not only openly and freely repeats what he had inculcated on the people, but strives to demonstrate, by a comparison with the Koran and other strong arguments, the excellency of the Christian law and precepts of the Golpel. He is again admonth'd to forfake his opinions, and not fully by a foul defection from the law, a life hitherto adorn'd with

# ANNOTATIONS.

(19) Zuilladir] It is falfely writ by the Christians Dulcadir, by the change of the Turkish letter Zal into Dal, the first being distinguish'd from the last by only having a point over it ] It is also call'd by another name among the Iurks, Alaideulet Memlekieti, the Province of Alaideulet. This country is bounded on one fide by the Cappadocian Mountains, and people, call'd by Cedrenus, Manzures towards Syria by Aleppo antiently Beraa (with a lingle p Bupoia to distinguish it from Buppoia in Macedonia) towards Perfia by Armenia Major, towards the Othman Dominions at that time by Amafia, towards Nº o.

Carimania by Adans, which fome think to be the antient Thurfus, tho at prefent Terjus and Adana are diftinguish'd by the Turks

(20) Calenderbeg] Who Haji Bellash was, in unknown. But his ion Calenderus, the Turks own, brought the Othman affairs to fuch extremities, that the Empire feem'd to be on the brink of destruction. For all Turky in Afia as far as Cafaria being fubdu'd at once by him, acknowledg'd him for Sovereign. But the blind fortune of the Othmans was able to reduce to nothing even the most sharp-fighted Warriors Wonderful are the fecret works of Providence!

> Aaa fanctity.

¥ ,

fanctity. But difregarding both exhortations and threats, he is at last by the Emperor's command punish'd with the loss of his head, and an edict publish'd, that whoever should, even by way of dispute, prefer the Doctrine of Christ before Mahomet's, should undergo the same penalty.

man: at Con-fantimple put to a Christian Merchant's house near Selim's Temple (21), murder the to death Merchant, and not only correct areas. XIII. About the same time, some thieves at Constantinople break in-

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(21) Selim's Temple ] It stands on the Mount which hangs over the Gate Phenar. Elegance and Art so fhines in the whole Structure, that to describe its proportions would be acceptable to the fons of Dædalus It is fquare, and built with fquare Stones, the length of the fide being fifty, and the height feventy, Cubits. The Roof contains the same space with the Floor No Arches are drawn from the Angles, but the roundness of the Roof rifes from the walls themselves, so that from the point of the Angles is drawn the Arch of a Circle almost Horizontal. In this whole spacious building, (which is wonderful) there is not they fay any iron to be found. The Architect was a Greek of Constantinople, who besides this built another and more flately Temple at Airia-nople, in which are nine hundred and ninety nine Windows The Sultan indeed had order'd a thousand, but the Architect designedly left out Wherefore when the one Window Windows were counted at the finishing of the building, and found to be one less than the imperial Mandate, the Sultan in a passion commanded the Architect to be hang'd. He petitions for leave to plead his cause, af-firming he would readily undergo his fentence, if the Sultan after hearing his reasons should think fit to condemn him. His request being grant-ed, " If (says he) O Emperor, there can be found in the whole " World an Architect, who, with-" out infringing the Rules of Archi-" tecture, can open another window ss in this building, let me be put to " death, but if not, then am I wor-\*\* thy your royal clemency. Besides

"there was also another reason " why I left out the thousandth window, because a thousand may apso pear to the illiterate vulgar to be of less value than nine hundred " ninety nine" The Architect was not deceiv'd in his expectation, for he was not only pardon'd his omiffion, but royally rewarded In this magnificent building, among other remarkable things are four Towers, where the Ezan is cried, feemingly too fmall for their height, of which two only can be feen at a distance from the four great roads but by very high winds they were observ'd by their thadow to be moved. I wo very lofty and thick Porphyry-Pillars adorn the larger Portico before the Gate, in both which is teen a white line from the top to the bottom, as if drawn with a Pencil How this should happen is feared to be conceived, unless both Pillars are supposed to be cut out of the fame piece of Porphyry, and fo the white line which lay conceal'd in the middle appear'd on bo h Superficies. There were alto other Pillars in this Portico plac'd oppolite to one another, which agree in variety of colours They were brought from Troat, whose Ruins afforded large Materials for other Tuikifb Buildings. Jame I am speaking of, is a square of seventy Cubits. For that is the figure the Turks are fond of in their Structures But the Porticoes are generally Quadrangular When the work was finish'd, the Architect being ask'd by the Sultan, in which Building he had shown most ingenuity and art, is faid to reply, that he had employ'd on that of Adrianopte, most expence, but must skill on that of Constantinopie.

· 🛊 ,

Next morning complaint is brought to the Emperor's Divan, and upon a strict enquiry it appears, that the fact was committed by some Albamians. Whereupon the Sultan, fince the names of the actors were not discover'd, and the circumstances of the thing show'd many more guilty, orders that the Albanians, whether inhabitants of Confi.intinople, or fojourners only on account of trade, should be all search'd after to a man, and put to death for this fingle murder (22).

XIV At the same time this butchery was acting at Constantinople, Inhabitants of a great quarrel arose at Aleppo between the ecclesiastical Judges, Molla night for kiland Kaziler +, which the Citizens despairing to see an end of, enter ing the into a conspiracy, and kill them in the very Jame at the morning 1 Sec Note

# Annotations.

(22) fingle murder | The Sultan feems here to have acted more than tyrannically, though not against the laws For it is ordain'd among the Turks, that if one thouland and one men tuntultuoufly kill any perion, and refuse to confess who gave the first blow, all the thousand and one are to die. I faw an instance of this in my time. At Canstantinople under Caimecam Mustapha Pasha (who being taken near Gran by the Poles, was after teven years releas'd by my Father's intercession) a Greek Countryman coming from Kittchuk\* Chekmeni\*, a Town about two hours distant from Constantinople in the road to Adriano rie, meets eleven Janizaries, who first reprimand him for flowly alighting from his horfe, and then flab him to death with knives. Other Turks accidentally riving that way, (for the Janizaries had been on foot to dri k wine ) when they fee what they are about, civilly admonth them not to commit fuch an heinous and illegal deed upon a jubject of the Emperor The Junizaries alto give them abusive language, who, when they come to Constartinople infor the Caimecam of what they had fren For the Turks believe, that as God will reward them hereafter for giving a voluntary evidence, so he that refutes his evidence against his confcience will be in the fame state with the guilty person himself. The wife also of the murder'd man exhibited a Petition, imploring Juffice of the Judge with a torrent of tears. Wherefore the Jinizaries are fought for and taken drunk in the village

Next morning, when they are come to themselves, and understand they had kill'd a man, and many witnesses had appear'd against them, ignorant of the laws, they refolve, when the Judge should ask which of them kill'd the Rays or Subject, to aniwer they did it all together, not imagining it possible, that for one man, especially a Christian, eleven Musulmins and Janizaries would be put to death. Being therefore brought into the Divan, they confe is they all kill'd the man, and when ask'd which of them stabb'd him first, reply, they know not, but remember that they all at once ftruck at him with their knives. Upon hearing the cause, the Judge states the case in this manner to the Mufti " If cleven Muful-" mans without just cause kill a " Gauri | , that is, a Subject of the | Inade! 44 Emperor and pays tribute, what is 44 to be done? 3 The Mufti fubferibes with his own hand, " Though " the Muiulmans should be one thou-" fand and one, let them all die The Judge reading the Mutti's for tence, and pitying to many Janizaries, asks the woman whether the would accept of a price (call'd Dust) for the blood of her Husband, and offers two thouland Crowns for the life of the eleven Janizaries. The poor woman aniwers, that by the Sultan's auspicious Government and clemency the wants not money, but juffice; and with wonderful firminess refuses the offer. So when the could not be perswaded to accept the ransom, the ekven Janizaries were put to death.

prayers. Seliman being inform'd of this deed, instantly orders some Pathas to lead thither an army, and put all the inhabitants guilty and not guilty to death. But Ibrahim Pasha the Vizir interceeded, and by his great interest with the Emperor, obtain'd that the chief men and heads of the conspiracy only, should be punish'd with various kinds of death, and the common people, as being rather led on by the conspirators than guilty of the crime, banish'd to Rhodes.

Soliman's expedition into Hungary pre-

H. 935

XV. Whilst Soliman is thus employ'd in domestick affairs, about the end of the year, Alaman Kıraly (23) takes Buda from John King of Hungary (24), and strengthens it with new works and a German gastifon. Whereupon Soliman, to revenge the injury done to a King under his protection, in the year 935 marches from Constantinople with A C 1528 a great army, and near Filibe on a spacious plain incamps with design to affemble his European forces. In this place the Mufti, without just reason, incurs his displeasure, and with reproaches is deprived of his office; but the innocence of the holy man, which the Emperor could not fee, is made appear by heaven stielf! For God displeas'd (25) at

# ANNOTATIONS.

(23) Alaman Kiraly ] The name formerly given by the Turks to the Emperor of Germany But now he is honour'd in their letters with the appellation of Nemche\* Kiraly, King of the Germans, and Chafar\*, Cafar,

and also Ruma imperadur:

(24) King of Hungary ] How treacherously Soliman executed the Guardianship committed to him, and how banishing the Queen with her Son Lebessus or Logosh Sanjac, he quickly serz'd the Kingdom of Hungary, is too well known to be much inlarg'd upon. However it will not be improper for understanding the heinousnels of this treachery, to insert the following narrative as related by the Turks themselves. For when Soliman was invited after King John's death to deliver Buda from the Ger-' mans, the young King with the Noblemen of Hungary, came in a submisfive manner to meet him in his camp. The Sultan ordering an entertainment to be prepar'd, bid the Vizir invite the Nobles, and his Son Selim to invite the young King to dinner, faying, "Remember, Son, I am "thy natural and his Actores, (s. e. of the other World or) Spiritual "Father. And if I die, do you 46 cherish him as your Brother, and " readily take care of him and his " Kingdom." The entertainment being ended, the Vizir fays to the Sultan, " Behold | most potent Em-" peror, it is this day in thy power st to subject the whole Kingdom of "Hungary by one stroke of the Sword" The Sultan was highly offended with this Speech of the Vizir's, or at least pretended to be to, and faid, " Certainly the Olbman " Empire is not to be inlarg'd, by "treachery, deceit, perfidiousness, or by the unjust slaughter of " Princes fuing for Protection, but " by arms and open war, but that " Hungary will one day be subject to \*\* the Othman dominion, what is now " transacting, fufficiently presages" The Turks are naturally so fruitful of fine fayings, but withal to barren of good actions, that it is a common faying among them. Othmanly eyu foiler, fena isbler, the Othmans lay well, but do ill.

(25) Displeas'd J Of all the Nations in the World, the Turks are the most given to superstition. Neither is there any where greater veneration paid to Ecclesiasticks than among the Turks. The Emperor may indeed banish but not put them to death, and of all the Sultans, Murad IV. alone commanded a Mufit to be pounded to death in a marble

Mortar,

this proceeding, fends that very day as a punishment for it, such terrible and lafting rains, that they not only fwept away like a deluge, Coffers (26) full of treasure, but even endanger'd the lives of the bultan and his whole army +.

XVI. All the warlike provisions being thus destroy'd by the violence He retakes of the torrents, he is forc'd to defer his intended expedition. However German. he appoints his troops to winter in the neighboring provinces, that the army might be the readier in the Spring. Mean while, he makes new collections of money and fresh preparations, greater than what were destroy d. Every thing being ready, he marches the next year with speed H 936 through Hungary to Buda, and incamping under the very walls, close- A C 1520. ly belieges the City. Having fortified his camp, he batters the walls with his Engines, and by continual affaults fo weakens the garrison. which made a brave defense, that they promis'd to surrender on condition of having their arms and lives. Soliman accepts of the terms, and affures them of fafcty, provided they deliver up the Town; but whilst they are going out, they are revil'd by the Turks, and especially by the Januaries, for their cowardice, A certain German toldier not bearing these affronts, " I do not command (says he) but am " commanded," and with that, draws his fword and stabs the Janizary who was reproaching him. The reft cry out, the articles are violated and against the Sultan's order, (fay the Turks in excuse of their countrymen) fuddenly fall upon the Germans, and before the tumult could be appeas'd, put them all to the fword (27) Thus whilft for the fake

#### ANNOTATIONS.

Mortar, faying, "The Heads, " whole dignity exempts them from " the Sword, ought to be itruck with " the Peffle" An inftance of this fuprifition hoppen'd in the \*laft Till with the Emperor of Grans under Abmed II, which I five with my own eyes, and have re-Irred in the eccond part of my Hif-

int, Coffers] The Turks usually 111 Circ money carried with them in a exp daton, in the I ents of the but in and Vizir in the middle of the comp, and good it with Spabiler or Hot, who reheve one another. The Conces are often empty, but however in y are always exposed, covered with Airas, to the view of the foldiers, I ift they fhould think the Emperor without money, and fo behave the

more remissly in a battle. This in my opinion is certainly a great means to infpire the foldiers with courage. Befides the Turks fay, that the Enemies, in the Reign of Egre Sultan Mebemmed, penetrating into the camp as far as the Treasure, the Olbman soldiers slew thither to its affiftance, and from vanquish'd became victors

(27) to the fword | We frequently read in History, the Turks upon a furrender either kill'd or made Priioners the Garrisons contrary to the Capitulations confirmed by oath, as hap pen'd to the Garrisons of Constantinople, Buda, Babylon. The Turks, fince they can't deny it, because they are convicted of it by living proofs, yet, that they may not feem to have been guilty of breach of Faith, affirm nothing was ever done by them

I It must be objected, that in this and many other places where mention in made of any miraculous the polition of Herren, the lathor gives it in the words of the Turkifo Hillorians, whom he faith-N 9.

fake of preserving their liberty and effects they surrender so strong a City to the Turks, they lose both with their lives.

Moldovia made a fiel of the Empire.

XVII. Whilft Soliman after the taking of the City, staid in the neighbourhood some days to refresh his army, Teutuk Lagotheta (28) is sent in ambassy by Bogdan (29) Prince of Moldavia to the Turkish camp. Having

## ANNOTATIONS.

contrary to Agreements without just cause. For this people, most subtle in deviling excuses, presently recur to the Koran, where they easily find a hundred passages to their purpose. Thus, for instance, suppose a Garrifon furrenders on condition of being difmis'd without arms, if but a knife or ax be found upon any one foldier, they cry out the articles are violated by the Christians, and use them as they depart with great feverity. And if it be agreed, that the Garrison shall march out with their arms, cannon, and baggage, and they happen to do it a little beyond the appointed hour, or give a rough answer, or afford any the least frivolous pretence, the Turks make no conference to break the capitulation, and violate their oath Hence it is more adviseable and better for Christians to perish within their walls by famine, fire, and fword, than experience the treachery and barbarousness of the Turks

(28) Lagotheta] He was of the noblest Moldavian race, from which even at this day five hundred families derived their original, though many of them are so fallen from their former splendor, that they look more like Husbandmen than Nobles. He understood the Greek, Lavin, Polific, and other neighbouring Tongues to perfection, was well fkill'd in politicks, and of great wildom. Being fent ambaffador to the Othman Court. and admitted to the Prime Vizir, he is faid to bid his fervant bring his fhoes with him into the audienceroom; whereupon the Vizir asking him whether he was afraid they would be stole, he replies, from those who defire all things, every thing must be kept, and when the Vizir tells him he need not fear, for the Turks were now friends not enemies. I with, (lays he) they were as well friends to the head as to the feet!

He built at Confiantinople a Palace call'd at this day Rogdan Serai, the Moldavian Palace, in which is a Church dedicated to St Nicolas.

(29) Bogdan | This is a Sclavonic name taken from the Greek Ocodwoing. The Moldavians gave him the firname of Negrul or Black. The Moldavian annals fay, that Stephanus the Great, after a Reign of forty feven years, five months, after so many exploits, and famous victories obtain'd over the Turks, Hungarians, Polanders, Walachians, and Tartars, when his body, not mind, was now impair'd, and death approach'd, fent for his only fon and heir of the Kingdom with his Nobles, and spoke to them in the following manner " O " Bogdan my ion, and you my fel-" low foldiers, witneffes and parta-" kers of so many and great rri" umphs! See, I have now minsh'd " the course of my frail nature, and " have before my eyes the fetting of " my life like the evening shadows. " I shall not return through the Paths, which as a mortal, as a worm I have trod, Death is at 46 hand, but that is not the object of " my fear, ( for I know I have been " haftening to the Grave from my " birth) the danger which hangs over this kingdom from that " fierce and roaring lion, Svirman, " who to greedily thirsts after Chi-" frian Blood, is what disturbs my st thoughts, and creates my dread · He has already fwallow'd up by " stratagem and crast, almost the " whole Kingdom of Hungary, fub-" du'd by his arms and bound to " him by the Mabometan superstition Crima i and the hitherto un-" conquer'd Tribes of the Tartars, " overrun our Beffai ibia, impos'd " his yoke on the Walachians, who, " though our enemies, are however " Christians; in short, he holds in " iubjection

Having obtain'd an audience, he declares his mission from the *Meldavian*Prince and People, to offer the Sultan both *Meldavia's* (30) upon honorable

# Annotations.

" fubjection the nobleft part of Eu-" rope and Afia with the imperial 46 Seat, nor content with this, he " extends his threatening arms on " every fide, fers no bounds to his " power, and thirst of dominion. 66 Since things are thus, can it be " thought that after the furmounting " of so many obstacles, he will with-" hold his hands from Moldavia fur-" rounded with his Provinces? It is " rather to be fear'd, that when " Hungary is entirely jubdued, his " whole forces will be turn'd against 44 us. For he is prompted to a mortal hatred of the Christians, not sonly by his deprav'd nature, but s by the laws of the Koran 1 look round on my neighbours, I " am forc'd to deplore the wretched " ftate of our affairs The Polanders " I know to be inconstant, and une-" qual to the Turkish tury "Hungarians already groan under his yoke. The Germans, it is my " opinion, are io embioil'd at home, that they will not or cannot, look abroad. Since this is the melan-6 choly fituation of all around us, I "think it adviscrble, of to many evils to chuic the haft. For to " (pread the fails against storms and " tempefts, is the part of a mid, " not prudent pilot. Our forces " are interior, affiffunce uncertain 
" and remote, the danger certain 
" and nigh. Wherefore I judge it " better to forten this riging wild " Beaft than rouze him by the noile " of arms. For I do not lee our ca-46 lamitous flate c in be any other way " reliev'd, than by moderating the 44 unquenchable flame of his fury 44 with the dew of Jubmission. And " therefore in thele my laft hours I " exhort you, as a Father and Brother, if with the prefervation of " your civil and ecclefiaftical laws, " you can obtain peace on honorable " conditions in the name of a fiet, " that you chuie rather to try his " elemency than his fword. But if " he prescribes other conditions, it

" will be better for all to perish by " the hand of the enemy, than be " idle spectators of the profanation of your Religion, and calamity of your Country But the God of your Fathers, who alone performs "wonders, will one day pour upon you his inexhausted Grace, and " mov'd by the tears of his fervants, " raife up one who will reftore you " or your posterity to their former power and liberty " Begdan, in obedience to his Father's last will, fends in the feventh year of his Reign Ambaffadors to Soliman, and first subjects to him Woldavia by the name of a fi.f; but now alass! there is no man of letters, I believe, who is a stranger to the miscrable; tyranny Mal luvia groans under

(30) Both Moldavia's ] Moldavia is divided into Upper and Lower. Lower Moldavia extends from Jaffy, the prefent feet of the Prince eaftward to Bender by the Moldavians call'd Tigine On the South it is bounded by Galatium on the Danube. on the West, by Walachia and the Trangloanian Mountains, which run along the road call'd TetPas, and belong to the Moldsvians, and not to the Tran, loanuus Upper Moldavia begins at fully, and has the fame caftern bounds with the Lower, bur on the weil is bounded by the Franciscinian or Carpatian A'ps to Snyatim a Cown of Padalia. To Lower Mildavia belong'd formerly all B Jarab. 1, call'd by the Tartars Bujak, where he the two famous Cities Akkierman, (by Elerodotus nam'd OEla, by the Moldavians, Czetate Alba, by the Romans, Julus Aiba, noted for Ovid's binishment, rear which at this day is feen a Lake call'd by the Moldavians, Lucul Ovidulus, Ovid's Lake) and Kilia, antiently Licostomon, near the mouth of the Danube, where it falls into the Black Sea Besides these in Lower Moldaria, which is now fubject to the Moldavian Prince, were the tortified Towns, Tigine on the Banks of the Tyras [or Niefter] (fhamefully furrender'd

rable torms, particularly that their Religion should be preserv'd entire, and the country be subject as a first to the Empire. Nothing could be more grateful to Soliman, whose more weighty affairs hinder'd him from turning his arms that way, and yet the deseats receiv'd from the Moldavians, oblig'd him to have always an eye to their motions. Wherefore readily accepting the offer'd terms, he confirms them with his own hand, and delivers him the instruments to be curried to his Prince at Sociava (31) Asterwards in his return from that year's expedition he is met near Sophia a City of Sersia by Begdan with some of his Barons, and presented by him with some thousand gold Crowns (32), forty bred Mares, and twenty some Fasteris with

## ANNOTATIONS

furrender'd to the Turks by Hero a certain Moldavian Prince, and by them call'd Bender ) Giergins on the Streius near Galattum, in whose Ruins were found iome antient coins. That it was built by the Emperor Trajan, appears from a marble-stone dug up in my time, with this infeription Imp. Cafari, Drv. filio Nerva Trajano, Augusto, Ger Dacico, Pont Max. Fel. B dist XVI. Imp VI. Conf VII PP. Calpurnio, Publio, Marin, C. Aurelio Rufo There was also on the river Milkow, which parts Moldavia and Walachia another Town commonly call'd Craczuna, with the Taipbalia of Herodotus on the river Prut not fir from Falczy, whose largeness is demonstrated by the ruins discover'd in my time. Soroca, formerly Olchiomia, on the Tyras, furrounded with a flint wall, and Jaffy on the river Bahlay tour miles from Hierafus. Upper Moldavia contains the ftrong Towns of Soczava, formerly the Metropolis, Nemcza, Romanus, and Chounus The inhabitants of Upper Moldavia are noted for their riches, of Lower, for their warlike bravery, and both after all their losses for their hospitality. But thefe things, if God grant me life and leifure, will be more largely explain'd in a separate Trea-

(31) Soczava] Before the Turks turn'd their arms against Europe, this was the Metropolis of the principality and seat of the Prince, but after the taking of Constantinople, the Muldavian Despots, that they might be nearer the Turkis borders, removed

their Throne to Jaff. It is indeed no large City, but very strong by nature and art, an I still remarkable for the turns of the Palace fides other things worthy of note. whereas there his not been found in any Town of Mondavia, any inteription or mark, by which the names of the founders or antiquity of the place can be discover'd, in the walls of this alone appear ingravid on a very large stone seren Lewers co. ver'd with an Impered Crown pubel? by two I tons. Protect is the foundations of the Towers is at Arc on which are feel two at the least with their has plied a for oran wards, or had a fire me ner upwa and the term of the head of a wild Rull budge of weah alfo a fign that thek thing were not plac'd here by the first founcer, because the head of a wild Bull began long after to be us'd in the aims of the Province. But of this more fully eliewhere

(32) Crowns | The Tatks therafelves dare not deny that American
was subjected to them by the name of
a fiel. The instruments of the Salam,
by which they rapided the conditions,
were formerly lept among the publick records of Molacina, but in my
time by the command of permission
of John Sobie by King of Penald, in
his invation of Molacina in the year
1686, they were talen, and I now
not whether very witely, burne publickly at Juffy, with the Delaration
to the crowds of people, "Echola!

mise to send yearly to Constantinople the like present in token of his secured subjection. The Emperor admits the Prince to his presence, and again ratifies the conditions made with the Ambassador, gives him a larger Cucca (33) adorn'd with jewels, with a Chylast fabire+, and + A Robe. a horse with all the imperial trappings. Moreover he orders four of vid p. 159 his guard (34) to attend him, which custom is still observed whenever the Prince of Moldavia comes to the Othman Court.

XVIII. About

## ANNOTATIONS.

his royal Majesty thus frees you " from the Turkifo yoke." Among other numberless privileges granted them according to the times, the chief was that wherein it was expressly faid, that Moldavia voluntarily and without compultion offer'd her obedience to the Turkish Empire, and therefore it is the Sultan's will that all her Churches, religious Rites, and Laws be untouch'd, and rothing more requir'd of the Prince, but that he fend every year by faithful Boyars to the resplendent Port four thousand gold Crowns, forty bred Mares, twenty four Falcons, in the name of Pishkielb, a prefent or gift. The Turks punctually kept their agreement to the time of Peter Rares, in whose administration, they requir'd both an Ilaras or greater fum in the name of a Tribute, and that he should once at least in three years falute the 'I hreshold of the sub-lime Port Peter boldly refus'd this, and that the feeds of future calamities might not be fown in his name, he refign'd the Diadem and retir'd to Cziczeu, a City of Tranfylvania, where he purchas'd no inconfiderable estate with his money But Stephanus Junior, chosen in his room, either out of ambition, or with the confent of the Senate, promis'd to pay annually twelve thousand Crowns, and in time, out of too great thirst of rule, his succeffors fo increas'd the fum, that tho' at prefent there are paid in to the imperial Treasury fixty thousand Crowns by way of Tribute, and twenty four thousand as an Easter Offering, many more are exacted by these insatiable Blood-suckers. For as there is no law against avarice, so there is no end of the Turkish demands and extortions. All depends on the will of the Prime Vizir, and to make any Nº 9.

remonstrance against his pleasure is deem'd Capital.

(33) Cucca It is a Crest or ornament of the head made of Ostrich Feathers, with which are adorn'd only the Bulkagalars (or Tribunes,) the Segban bashs or chief officer of the Segban, who is next to the Aga of the Janizaries, and the Princes of Moldana and Walachia. A lesser Cucca is set on the heads of the new Princes of Moldania or Walachia by Mubzur Aga, (who is about the Vizir, Keeper of his Court, and his Deputy over the whole Militia of Janizaries,) after which a robe is put on them by the Vizir himself, because they may be said to belong to the Ojac or Regiments of Janizaries

giments of Janizaries
(34) of his guard | Neither Pasha's nor Vizirs in general are created with fo much pomp as the Princes of Moldavia. For Pasha's as soon as the Prime Vizir has put on their robe, immediately go home, and next day receive the Patents of their Pathalate, with the Standard call'd Sanjak. But the Prince of Moldavia, after receiving the robe from the Prime Vizir in token of his power, in conducted with the whole Divan and with the acclamations of the Chaushi to the Patriarchal Church, where the Conflantinopolitan Patriarch, attended with all the Clergy and Greek Nobles, waits to confecrate the Prince. When the Prince comes into the Court of the Church, he alights from his horse on a square stone plac'd there for that purpoie, all the Chaushing repeating with a loud voice the Prayer usual on these occasions. "May the most "high God grant a life of many " years to our Emperor and our " Prince Effendi (a corruption of the

Ccc

Befogen Vin. XVIII. About the end of the year, Soliman fecuring the Cities he had taken, goes with all his forces to Vienna, and lays close fiege to the

#### ANNOTATIONS.

Greek ablerty;) and may he long the live in prosperity." Then the Prince's whole company honorably wait in the Court and Street his coming out. Mean while, the Singingmen, the moment the Prince treads the Threshold of the Church, sing ation to 's, a Hymn compos'd in honour of the Virgin Mary, which ended, the Prince afcends a Throne appointed for the Princes of Moldavia. The Deacon in reciting THE ENTEYRE Mentions the new Prince in this manner. "We pray also for our most pious, most ferene, and most excellent " Lord N. N. may he be crown'd with " ftrength, victory, ftability, health " and fecurity, and may the Lord our God farther co-operate with \*\* him, guide him in all things, and
\*\* put all his adversaries under his " feet." After this, the Patriarch in his facred veftments, with four or more Metropolitans goes up to the Altar. The Prince also approaches the royal entrance to the Altar, where, being fign'd by the Patriarch with both hands in the face with the fign of the Crofs, he lays his head on the Holy Table, which the Patriarch covers with an Homopher, and reciting the Prayers that were us'd at the inauguration of the Orthodox Emperors, anoints his forehead with the holy oil. After these ceremonies the Prince returns to his Throne, the fingers chanting this Polychronion "Grant, O Lord God, long life to our most pious, most screne, and most excellent Lord N N. " Lord of all Moldovlachia, preferve him, O Lord, many years "Then the Patriarch also goes from the Altar to his Throne, and commanding filence, preaches a short Sermon to the Prince, which is follow'd by the foregoing Polychronion, pronounc'd by the Patriarch. At last, when all is over, the Patriarch and Prince, accompanied with all the People, go together out of the Church. In the Porch, the Prince after killing the Patriarch's right-

hand, and being confirm'd by him with hand and voice and the fign of the Cross, he mounts his horse, and with the fame Parade as he came, returns home, and difmiffes his attendants with prefents. After fome days Mir alem Aga, the Emperor's Standard-bearer, brings the larger Standard call'd Sanjak, with the imperial Musick, Tublebane, from the Palace to the Prince's house, and is met in the Porch by the Prince. There he takes the Standard, and kiffing it, according to cuftom, with his mouth and forehead, delivers it into the Prince's hands. The Prince upon receiving it, kiffes it in the fame manner, and gives it to his Standard-bearer to keep, faying, " May the " bleffed and great God grant the " most potent, most gracious, and " most just Emperor long life, and " multiply his days." Then the Prince gives the Mir alem Aga, a robe, and difmiffes him with the utual prefent. After spending a few days in dispatching his affairs with the Court, he is conducted to the great Divan, where the Prime Vizir with the reft of Kubbe Fizirles and the two Cadiuleskies fland at the Emperor's right-hand Capuchilar\* Kuthudafi or chief Porter, arrays the Prince with a Robe in the Porch of Aizodali or Audience room, Mubzur Aga bids him put the Cities on his head, and cloaths all the Prince's Barons, which are usually twenty eight, with new Robes. Thus adorn'd and supported on each fide with two Capunbafbi's, with the chief Porter before and the Court-Interpreter behind, (who is commonly a Christian Greek) he enters the Audience-room with four of his Ba-At the entrance he bows his head to the ground three times, and stands upright when he comes to the middle of the room, which is not extraordinary large. Then the Finperor from the Throne (lachi) turning to the Vizir, bids him tell him, " Since his faithfulness and sincerity " has reach'd the ears of my Majetty, the City He affaults it forty days with various engines, blows up part of the walls with mines, and commands his men to enter the breaches.

#### ANNOTATIONS.

\*\* I graciously confer on him as a re-" ward the Principality of Mord cua. It is also his duty not to ful to his " fidelity and fervices for the fusture. Let him protect and defend " the Provinces under his tubjection, " and dread to commit any thing ase gainst or beyond my Mandate" To this the Prince replies, " I vow " on my life and head to lay out my " whole endervours in the lervice of " my most just and gracious Empe-" ror, fo long as he does not withdraw the aipect of his clemency 44 and Majesty from the Nothingness of his Servant," (i e from his unprofitable Servant ) Upon these words the Prince goes out of the room, accompanied as when he enter'd, and mounting an imperial horse at the inner Gate of the Court, falutes the prime and other Vizirs as they depart, who answer with a nod, after which, the Barons and his whole Company leading the way, he returns home. When he is about to go to his Principility, whether the Sultan be at Constantinople or Adrianople, one of the Court officers as Sylabilar aga, Chocadar\* aga, Miriachoraga, Cajunlar Ki 'anifi, or one of the Senior Capupwashi's, is order'd to set him on the There are also two Peiki or imperial Guards, equipp'd with their Gold ind Silver ornaments, and two Akkullablu, (to call'd from the white Hat they usually wear,) and also as many Capust's and Chaushi's as the The office of thefe Prince pleafes is, when the Prince mounts or alights from his horie, to make the utual acclamation alkyb, and in the towns and villages to take care of necessaries for the Prince's Court. The Chaushi\* go a little before him on foot, when he enters and leaves any town, and the Capul's hold his ftirrup when he mounts or difmounts. In this manner he is attended till he arrives to the place of his relidence, where all the great men both civil and military to the number of two thousand come to meet him To all thefe the

Prince gives his hand on horseback to be kits'd, and having inquit'd of their health bids them all remount, Then the Barons attending him on each fide according to their rank, and the military officers going before, he enters the City with a flow pace for the greater pomp, and first unlights in the Court of the Cathedral Church dedicated to St Nicolas. The Metropolitan, accompanied with three, Bishops (for Moldavia counts so many Sees, whereas Walachia his but two) and the rest of the Clergy, offers the Crois and Holy Gospels for the Prince to kits, the imperial Mulick being filent during this ceremony. When the Prince comes into the Church, after the akion ich is fung, and Tac interac read, he approaches the Altar, and when Prayers are over, is anointed by the Metropolitan with the Holy Chrysm, unless he has been maugurated by the Constantinopolitan Patriarch, happens when he is promoted to his dignity at Advianople, or the Patriarch of Constantinople is abient. For he is, and in call'd, God's anointed. all is over and the Polycbronion shouted, he repairs with the found of Trumpets and Drums and other Mulick to his Palace, and alighting at the Divan, stands before the Throne plac'd there, whilft the Birons who came with him take their places, Then the Officer appointed by the Emperor to attend him, gives the Chatisherif or imperial Mandate to Divan Effendist or the scribe of the Court, who is a Turk, to be read, He rehearles the Mandate with a loud voice, fentence by fentence, which the great Postelnik interprets to the reft in their native Tongue. After that, the imperial officer arrays the Prince with the robe he had brought with him, and helps him with his right hand into the Throne, at which moment the guns are fir'd, and the Chau-/b: make the usual acclamation. The Prince in his turn gives the officer a Robe lin'd with Ermin, but to the furthe only a plain Caftan Thus establish'd

breaches. But as often as they attempt it, they are repuls'd by the valour of the garrison, though not without loss. The Christians would at last have been forc'd to yield to the conquering fword of the Turks, if they had not by fraudulent promises (35) deceived the politick Soliman himself. For by an ambassador they send the salutation Eyuvalled to the Emperor, own themselves exhausted, and promise to be his subjects and vassals. On this account they defire a truce, and prolong, under various pretences, the confirmation of the articles of the treaty; by which means they not only gain time to recover their firength, but also incourage the drooping garrison with hopes of the autumnal rains. Neither were they disappointed. For whilst they are vet busied in treating, the rains at the usual scason suddenly fall in such abundance, that the besieg'd are inspir'd with hopes of preserving the City, and the Turks so annoy'd, that they despair of success, and are even in danger of their lives. Many of them perish'd with cold and moisture, and more whilst they faintly assault, are destroy'd by the (word and fire of the enemy,

He railes the fiege XIX. These continual calamities and daily slaughters, induce Soliman to raise the siege (36). But there was need of no less wisdom

# ANNOTATIONS.

establish'd in his Throne, the Prince admits the Nobles to kis his hand, and after faluting them, retires to his inner room. Then follows a splendid entertainment for the imperial officer, who is conducted to it by some of the Prince's Courtiers. This suffices to show the manner of confirming the Princes of Moldavia, they who desire a larger account may consult my History of Moldavia, which, I hope, will shortly be publish'd.

(35) promises] The Turks say that the Christian Garrison of Vienna perceiving the City could be no longer defended, sent to the Sultan to delire a ten days cessarion of arms, in which fpace they could inform their Sove-reign of their circumstances: for they were bound by their military oath not to open their Gates ro Strangers without his privity but if in that time they should receive no an fwer, they were freed from their oath, and would even against his will furrender the City to the Sultan, intreating moreover that he would not any more batter St Stephen's Tower, nor deftroy to famous and beautiful a structure to no purpose. The Sultan yielded to their intreaties; and to give his own men also some respite, granted a Truce both for the City and Tower, on condition that they would instead of the Cross, place a Crescent on the top of it. This indeed the besieg'd did do, but deferr'd the promis'd furrender.

(36) raile the siege ] The more fabulous Turkish Historians say, When Soliman was itill intent on the fiege, but doubtful of the good success, Mahomet appear'd to him in a dream, and told him, unless he appeas'd the angry Deity with the factifice of for-ty thousand rams, he would not escape the danger. Soliman interpreting the dream in a literal fense, fent to the Vizir to get forty thousand rams. The Vizir said it was impossible, for in fo long a fiege all the provisions were very near confum'd, and the remainder would hardly fuffice to fatisfy the hunger of the foldiers. Belides the neighbouring country was fo ravag'd by the incursions of the Tartars, that there was no hope left of collecting a new stock of provisions. Whereupon Soliman affembled all his officers and told them his dream. They answer'd, the Letter of this divine to lead back his army with fafety. The enemy's forces were at hand, to whom after so great losses in the slege he saw himself infesion. On the other hand, his army was incumbered with great numbers of captives of both sexes, which the Tartars and other light horse had taken as far as the bridge of Iskender (37). To keep these, seem'd dangerous, to send them away, imprudent. Wherefore, to be freed from this apprehension, he orders all the captives without distinction of age or sex to be kill'd in his presence. After which he unexpectedly commands the Tents to be unpitch'd, and so before his retreat was known to the enemies, he leads the remains of his forces to Buda. There he allows the army some days of refreshment, and receiving of the Vayvod (38) of Transylvania (whom they call Ban) the tenths of the tribute he had rais'd in Hungary, confirms him in his principality.

#### ANNOTATIONS.

divine revelation was not to be confider'd, but the internal tenfe, namely, the forty thousand rams signified forty thousand Musulmans, who under the walls of the City should suffer Martyrdom for their faith When the Sultan came to Buda, he review'd his army, and found just that number miffing, and for that reason bound his fuccessors by the strictest curse (Lanet,) never to beliege Vienna for the future. This itery, though it wants the testimony of their more accurate Historians, is so firmly believed by all, that they do not feruple publickly to affirm, that their defeat at Vienna in my time was entirely owing to their treading the ground forbidden them by Soliman's curse, and thereby raising God's in dignation against them, who is the avenger of broken vows.

(37) Iskender This is certainly the bridge of Ratisbon, which for its famouines and the elegance of the building, the Tartars seem to denote by the name of Alexander I can't forbear here to say something of the Geographical studies of the Tartars. It seems a paradox, but however is sounded on truth and experience, that no nation in the world has so good a knowledge of all places as the Tartartan Flords. Geographical Books or Maps they have none, but by tradition alone have an exact knowledge of all narrow Passages, Mountains, Valleys, Towns, Villages, Rivers, Bridges, Fords, Lakes, and talk of them to one another so often, though

they never faw them, till they are firmly implanted in their memories. Hence very justly the Turks have made it a proverb Tatarun kylavuze ybitaji yokdur The Tartars never want a guide, and yet never lose their way. Where they have once been, they know the way as perfectly as if they were natives of the place, and hand it down so exactly to their posterity, that even they, after several ages, will readily find it. In this they employ their whole study, as in a point, without which they could never successfully perform their daily incursions. But to all places they give particular names according to their fancy, so that Strangers, though ever fo well acquainted with the countries, cannot without great difficulty understand what they mean by their imaginary names.

(38) Vayvod This is a Sclavonic word, fignifying the General of an army, but by the Poles given to Governors of Provinces. As Vayvod Knowsky, Posniansky, &c. The Turks are wont to call by this name the Christian Princes of Moldavia, Walachia and Transylvania, who are Tributary to them, especially in the imperial Mandates and Letters of the Prime Vizir, as Bogdan Vayvodesi, Islak or Erdel Varvodesi, though formerly the Princes of Moldavia were, as appears in Historians, call'd Tekkir or Kings Sometimes this Title is given to Governors of large Cities, which are not Bashas, as Pera Varvodesi, Galata Varvodesi, &c.

D d d XX. From

Nº. 9.

+ Preceptor

XX. From thence returning to Constantinople, he celebrates with great pomp in the month Rebuil evvel the circumcision of his three sons, Muftafu, Mahomet, and Selim. At this solemnity are projent not only all the Vizirs and Bashas of the Empire, but also the Ambaffadors of the Christian Princes, and of Perlia, with great and valitable presents, so that almost the whole world seem'd to be got together to congratulate the Sultan. The ceremony being over, a very splendid entertainment is made for all that are present. The Empezor bida Muft: Ksemal Pasba zade and Cazrulasker Kadr: Chelebi\* fit (20) on his right hand, and on his left, his Hoje + and Muhi illedin Chelebi\*. A fecond table is prepar'd for the Vizirs, a third for the Bathas, a fourth for Ulema or the learned in the law. The rest of the civil and military officers were order'd to place themselves according to their rank: a feparate table is provided for foreign ambalfadors, among whom at that time the Persian and German had the precedency (40).

Bude besieg'd by Firindes. ‡ Bohemsans.

XXI. Whilft Soleman was thus employ'd, a fudden meffage from Hangary disturb'd his mirth. For Firendos (41) King of the # Chekhi\* thinking the Emperor taken up with these affairs, unexpectedly besieges Bude, and for twenty seven days attacks it with all his forces the Janizaries, who were left there in garrison, bravely repulse the aifaults of the enemies, and give Mehemed beg, fon of Yahin Pasha, Governor of Semendria, time to come to their relief with the forces of his Sanjak. But as he found himself too weak, he endeavour'd to elude the enemies strength by stratagem. To this end, he ipleads a report among the captives taken from the bordering countries, that he was Ibrahim Pasha the Prime Vizir, and that the Emperor was coming in three or four days with the rest of the army; and with this information, he fuffers them to make their escape. Whereupon they instantly repair to the Camp of the Christians, acquaint them with what they had been told, and by their report firike them with

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(39) fit ] This Cuftom began to be difus'd under Soliman, and at prefent the Emperors fuffer no man to fit

with them at table.

(40) Precedency A Letter of a certain learned person to Dav Chytraus, inserted by Lonicerus in his Turkif History, largely describes the diversions us'd on this occasion, par-ticularly the conflict between a Lion and a Hog, which I shall relate in his words. "Wild beafts (fays he) is also fought. Among the rest, a "Hog brought from the German " Ambassador's house so battled it with three lions one after another, 44 that he not only withstood their " attacks in a notable manner, but 44 if he had not been tied by one leg, " would perhaps have got the bet-" certainly he receiv'd the last in " fuch a manner with his mout, that " he tumbled him over and over, and " made him fhamefully run away, to " the great confusion of the Turks, who compar'd themselves to Lions, " and the Christians, especially the Germans, to Hogs"

(41) Firindes | Feedinand at that time King of Hungary and Bobensa. But the Turks, as I think, have heedlessly put the Emperor's name for that of one of his Generals.

fuch terror, that leaving their great ordnance and other warlike provisions, they raise the siege, and think themselves very happy in being able to avoid the danger by a feafonable retreat (42).

XXII. Thus Buda was reliev'd, but that the King of the Chekhi\* Who is a feated by & should retire without loss was grievous to Solsman. Wherefore to Lines. be reveng'd for this affront, in the year 938, he invades his Kingdom H 038 with a great army, and where-ever his feouts could penetrate, defiroys A C 1531 all with fire and fword. On news of this invasion, Firmdos speedily comes with no inconfiderable army, gives him battle, and for fome time bravely maintains the fight. But at last he yields to the Othman valour, his army is routed and forc'd to fly for refuge from their purfucts to Grads/ca his feat (43). This victory not only added to the Turksib Empire above twenty Cities and Towns, but so terrified the petty Princes of the Sclavi and Hirvati (44), that they voluntarily submitted to Soleman

XXIII. Mean while, before this victory had reftor'd peace to the The Italian Othman borders, the Italians (45), affisted by other Princes, with a of the Morea great fleet, invade the Morea, take the City Coron, and miserably lay waste the whole Province. Soliman being inform'd of it, made Mehemed beg Governor of Semendria, Son of Tahia Pasha, (who had lately given him a great instance of his prudence and bravery in relieving Buda) Beglerbeg of the Morea, and giving him good pare of the army, bids him go and wrest the City out of the enemy's hands. and with Musulman resolution (46) attack and be reveng'd of them.

#### Annotations.

(42) retreat] Some Turkish Historians, but of little authority, fay the City was reliev'd in another manner. For the Turks being beat from one of the Bulwarks, a Jewish woman, when she sees the Germans crowding through one of the Gates, tears off the fleeve of her shift, and lighting it, fires off a great gun, call'd by the Turks, Baltemez, which made fuch a flaughter, that the Turks had time to recover themselves, repulse the enemies, aftonish'd with this unexpected blow, and renew their defense Gun was afterwards by Soliman bound with a filver-circle like a Crown, and the Jewish woman with her whole family declar'd free from tribute.

(43) his feat | Gradifea, is a noted Town of Sclavonia, which is erroneoufly, I think, faid by the Turks to be Ferdinand's Seat, fince no Christian Writer mentions Ferdinand's reliding

there any time.

(44) Sclavi and Ilirvati] There are one and the fame Nation. However the Turks call them Hirvati, who are under the dominion of the Chrifrans, as on the other hand, those who have embrac'd Mahometism or obey the Othman power, are commonly nam'd Serbadly, that is, Of the Borders.

(45) Italians ] In Turkib, Ifrem. by which name are generally call'd the people of any part of Italy.

(46) Mululman resolution ] that is, resolve to conquer or die. Both which they deem pleasing to God, for they believe the dead person to be crown'd with Martyrdom, and the Conqueror to be rewarded for his labour in the next World. Hence this faying is often in their mouth, when they are going upon an expedition, ya tacht, ya hatcht, either a Throne or Happiness. Ya Shehid, ya Gazi, a Martyr or Conqueror.

Mehemed beg spurr'd on by thirst of glory and the words of his Prince, swiftly marches to the place where he was sent, belieges the City on a fudden, and preffes it so ciosely, that at length the Italians, despairing of relief, furrender their City on condition of having their lives, and are forc'd to march out of the Morea.

fian H 940 A. C 1533.

Olome ftin up XXIV. Two years after, Olome Prince of Azerbejan, hitherto sub-Soliman 1-gunft the Por- ject to the Persian, flies for refuge to Soliman, puts himself under his protection, and fuggetts the means of taking Babylon. Perfwaded by his reasons, Soliman fends Ibrahim Pasha with forces into Asia, with orders to winter about Aleppe, and execute his deligns the next fpring. Ibrahim did as he was commanded, but finding more obstacles in taking Babylon than he expected, turns to Van (47), which he takes in the first assault.

Chairndáin 18 made Saliman's Admi-

+ Amers.

XXV. Mean time Chairuddin Pasts, who had hitherto exercis'd pyracy in the White-Sea, offers his service to Soliman, and petitions to be Admiral of a ficet, that he might subject to the Othman dominion the Kindoms of Tunez and Jezair +. The Emperor bids him repair to Aleppe, and consult with Ibrahim Pasha (48), for that he had committed the affair to his direction. Whereupon Chairuddm departs, and having perswaded the Vizir that the conquest of these Kingdoms was both easy and advantagious to the Othman power, is made Admiral of the fleet.

Some Perfian Princes turn to Soleman H 941

A C 1534

XXVI. The next year, Soluman marches with the rest of the army to the affiftance of his Vizir Ibrahim Pasha, who was still about Van. Departing from thence, when he was come to Tigris (49), Sultan Muzaffer King of Gelan (50) with ten thousand men, and Mehemed chen, join with him against Persia, and promise to be his future Vassals. Soliman incouraging them with the promise of his favour, leads his army to Sultanea, and after a short refreshment, marches towards Bardad about the beginning of winter.

He takes Bagded, and hangs his DefXXVII. Tekksels Mehemed chan (51) Governor of Bagdad under

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(47) Van ] a City belonging to the Turks on the borders of Persia, too well known to be describ'd.

(48) with *Ibrabim*] The *Turkijb* Sultans, if they have granted the Prime Vizir full power to administer the affairs of the Empire, especially when he is sent into any expedition, are wont to transact nothing without his privity, and if they do, his authority is immediately believed to be finking. Hence if the Emperor or-ders any thing which should be commanded by the Vizir, that common faying u instantly heard at Court, Semeri yere urdi, The Trappings are thrown to the Ground, that is, he is fallen from his honour and dig-

(49) Tigris ] formerly Tauris, or as others fay Persepolis, the antient refidence of the Perfian Kings, and Metropolis of the Kingdom.

(50) Gilan J tormerly Hyrcania. (51) Tekkielu Mebemed ] A famous Perfian General, and Governor of Bagdad, by whose management Soliman's Vicir and Defterdar are faid to be corrupted, which danger he escap'd merely by the favour of blind fortune.

the King of Persia, being inform'd of this march, and finding himself too weak to withstand the Othman forces, abandons the City, leaves the country to the mercy of Soliman, and retires with his men farther into Persia. Thus Soliman without opposition enters the City, and whilst he is spending some days in viewing the monuments of the antient Heroes, he takes notice of a place dedicated to Imam azem (52), from whence not only the City could be defended from the affaults of the enemies, but also the inhabitants casily restrain'd, should they endeayour a change. This place he immediately orders to be firongly fortified, well flor'd, and garrifon'd with Janizarice. After this, having leifure, he carefully examines the Defterdar's + accounts, and finding + Treasurer he had not only converted to his own use several bags of money, but prompted by avarice, had also be ray'd his designs to the Persians, orders him, accus'd of High-Treason, to be hang'd The Defterdar being brought to the gallows (53), asks for pen, ink, and paper, faying he had fome matters to impart to the Emperor before he died. Pen and paper being brought him, he writes a letter to Soliman, acquainting him, that Ibrahim Pasha the Prime Vizir was also guilty, and brib'd by the Persians to make an attempt upon the Emperor's life. This letter, though at full it was suppress'd (54) by the Sultan, was the cause of that famous and prudent Vizir's losing, shortly after, his life.

XXVIII. Whilf he thus flaid at Babylon, frequent medages come He deters the from the borders, that the Shah of Persia was marching with a great ar-the sleepe of my to beliege Van. Whereupon he returns without delay to Tybris, Van. and entering into the great Jams built at the immense charge of Sulran Hassan, hears the mention of the names of Mahomet's four suc. cessors (55) with his own by the Chatyb (56). Next day he goes and

## ANNOTATIONS.

(52) Imam azem ] It is suppos'd to be the burial-place of that founder of the ceremonies of the Mufulman Sect, whom they commonly praise under this name. His successor was smam Shafi, who though not rejected, yet is not fo much follow'd as the other by the Turks

(33) to the gallows ] The Teftimonies of dying persons find great credit with the Turks For they believe whatever is confess'd in his last moments by a man going to die a natural or violent death, to be fo true, as not only to exceed the evidence of torty witnesses, but even to re-move all doubt, though the whole World should be of a contrary opinion Hence it is no wonder, Soliman flieuld credit this testimony, and Nº. 9.

though other proofs are wanting, put his Vizir to death

(54) suppress'd] It is universally known how artfully the Othmans can diffemble, especially in cases of treafon, or where their enemies are concern'd. Hence it is a common faying among them, Ksefilmen El, uprulmek gerek, We should kiss the hand we can't cut off

(55) fuccessors] See their names p. 135. Of these the three first are denied by the Persians, and only Ali

acknowledg'd.

(56) Chatyb ] A Reader, as in our Churches the Deacon, also a Preacher, who from the Pulpit makes mention of the Emperor's name in the prayers.

Ecc

incamps

4,7

incamps at *Dergejine*, to be more ready to oppose any attempts of the enemies. By this means, he not only deters the *Shah* from the intended siege, but strikes him with such terror, that he instantly sends ambassadors to the Emperor to sue for peace. Soliman calmly hears them, but dismisses them without an answer.

Leads home
his forces, and
puts Ibrahim
Palha to
death
H 942

A. C. 1535

**XXIX.** In the year 942, when he sees nothing more to be feer d from the *Persians*, in the month *Sefer* he leads his victorious troops through *Chavit* towards *Derzise*. Here the Chan of *Bytlis* (57) comes to the Emperor's camp, and obtaining an audience, not only promises suture subjection to the *Othman* Empire, but humbly offers the Keys of all the towns in his jurisdiction, and in return is highly ho nour'd by *Solman*. After his departure, the Sultan pursues his march through *Amze* towards *Aleppo*, and at length in the month *Reselventers Constantinople* in triumph, but on the third day, orders his formerly belov'd and brave General *Ibrahim Pasha* to be put to death.

Takes Giurzistan by Mebemed chan H 943 IXX. The next year feem'd to require a fresh expedition into Persia, to prevent the loss of his late conquests. But the length and fatigue of the march discouraging the Emperor himself, he seed Mebened chan, who had lately submitted to his dominion, with a good army into Ginristan (58). Mehemed, to demonstrate his side my and difference

# ANNOTATIONS.

(57) Bytlu ] A noted town of Perfia on the borders of Georgia, on a river of the same name. Thu river abounds with a fort of fish call'd Morana the largest of the river-kind, which are no where elfe to be found, except in the Danube and Volga. They never winter in this river, but in the fpring they go into the fea, and in autumn return into the Volga, nor is there one to be found in winter in the Caspian-Sea. The Rushans, who are possess'd of the mouth of the Volga, knowing this, stop up the pas fages with fences made of reeds, in which they catch innumerable quanticies of these fishes as they are going into the fea early in the fpring. But the Inhabitants of Bytlis, when they faw their yearly prey to be thus kept from them, agreed with the Russians, that on the day before Palm-Sunday, for the take of the Christians of Bytlis, one fence at least should be open'd, and left fo for three days. By which means even on the second day great plenty of Moranas are taken in the river Byths. If these things be true ( as they were told me by an eye witnels a Tark, inhabitant of Tiffig) the

fwiftness of this fish is very wonderful, fince it can swim over the whole Caspian-Sea within twenty four hours

(58) Giurjijian | A famous nation inhabiting between Pontus and the Cafpian Sea, antiently call'd 1,204-1, now the Georgians. Some believe this name to be given them by their Patron St George after their embracing the Christian faith but the fallencis of this opinion is from hence evident, that long before the times of St. George, mention is inide of the Georgians by Pliny and Mila. They profefs the Greek and Orthodox Religion, but except the art of hunting, throwing the dart, and stealing, you will hardly find any other art of lu-ence among them. But about three years fince they are reported to lave brought Greek Types from Holland, printed a Book, containing the praises of the Puga Mary, and to apply themselves now to Grek Learning Their Chan or Prince also professes Christianity, yet cannot without a previous profession of Mabomesifm afcend the throne but afterwards obtains the King of Perfia's licence to fay prayers either in a Jami or Christian

diligence to the Emperor, instantly leads the forces where he is order'd, enters Georgia, and by many bloody battles so humbles the inhabitants, that ambalfadors are fent to the Emperor, and the whole country put in subjection to him on certain conditions.

XXXI. About the same time, a great number of Moldavians, Poles, Hafrulber defeats the Chris Bohemians, Germans, and Spaniards, voluntarily affemble, and inva-francin Bofvading Bosma, besiege Sulven. These Hasrud beg the brave Governor ma. of Bolma, without staying for the Emperor's assistance, suddenly attacks, though with a small force, and strikes with such terror, that raising the siege, they only think of faving themselves by flight. But Halrnd beg, not fatisfied with relieving the City, briskly pursues the Runaways, and overtaking them near Kilis, vigorously attacks and puts them to rout. After the victory he belieges Keles, takes it in a few days, and by that means adds to the Empire a whole Sanjak, of which he fends the joyful news to Constantinople.

XXXII. Whilft the Empire is thus inlarg'd in Asia, it is no less Chairuddin augmented in the West. For Chairuddin Pasba (59) ( who as I have double. faid, was by Soliman made from a Pyrate, High-Admiral) lays waste all the African Coasts in the Mediterranean, takes the towns which refuse to submit, and destroys the countries with fire and sword. Having thus subdu'd all the strong places of those parts, in his return, he arrives in Apulia, takes the town of Cullube, and overrunning the adjacent country, carries away a great number of captives.

XXXIII. About the end of the year, the Emperor equips another Kingle atfleet, and fends it into the Adriatic fea under the command of Lufti tempted in

#### ANNOTATIONS.

Christian Church. From whence he may justly be faid to be amphi-bious as to his Religion One of thefe Chans was forc'd on fome account to fly the last century into Ruffia, whose fon, being master of the ordnance in the army of Peter the Great, was then by the Sweeds and died at Stockbolm. When I came to Mosco in 1712, I found him there, and received from him, translated into Greek, the Genealogy of the Chans of Georgia, intermix'd with strange fables. In this Genealogy David King of the fews is made the founder of the race, one of whose Grandsons by Solomon went from Judea to Georgia, and there chablish'd a Kingdom, and at last, I know not how, was baptiz'd by his father in the name of the Holy Trinity. Periwaded of these idle ftories, he boldly affirm'd himfelf to be related in blood to our

Lord Jesus Christ as man. Hence the Reader will eafily infer the ignorance

of this people.

(59) Chairnddin Etymologically,
the Goodness and Grace of Fasth: a famous Pyrate, and afterwards High-Admiral of the Othman Empire, the terror of the Christians, by whom he is commonly call'd Barbaroffa. After him the Turks had another famous Capudan Pafba under Sultan Muftapha, Mezomorius, to whom the Turk-s/b Navy owes all its reputation. Though, as Capudan Passa, he enjoy'd three horse tails, with the honour of a Vizir, he never laid afide his Sea-habit, faying, the Turkifb drefs did not fuit with failors, and fine cloaths were the greatest reproach to a Mariner. So from his time, all the Admirals and Captains of shipshave been us'd to wear only the fea† Corfu n Consyna Pass, (Ibrabim's successor in the Vizirship) and Chairuddin Capudan Pass, to take Kierfes + from the Venetians. He himself accompanied with his Sons Mustapha and Mahomet leads the land forces through Aulonia (60), in order to chastise in the way the Arnaud.

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(60) Avlona A Country and City of Albana, which with Epirus is call'd by the Turks Arnaud The Inhabitants of this Country are oblig'd to follow the Turkyb camp with Their foldiers eight thousand men. are very warlike and flout, and excel in shooting with the Musket Formerly they were Orthodox, but now fo funk in Mahometisin, that they exceed the Turks themselves in superstition. No fort of hterature is cultivated among them, but such of them as apply themselves to any art, are found to make good progress in it. Among the arts, they excel chiefly in two, Aquæducts, and the cure of rupzures. As for the first, their skill will not be questioned by any that have feen the Aquæducts of Conftantinople. And yet without any Mathematical Learning, Precepts, or Instruments, they make these Aque ducts, measure the height of Mountains, distance of places, more exactly than a Geometrician can, and judge very well of the quality and quantity of water. When they are ask'd of the grounds of this art, they know not what you mean, nor can explain themselves. They perfeetly cure by a method as rough as fuccefsful, ruptures in persons of any age. When I was at Constantinople, in order to fee their method more exactly, I caus'd my Secretary, now in years, to be cur'd of this diftemper in any Palace. Accordingly the price of the cure being agreed upon, they bound the Patient to a pretty broad board with fwathing bands from his breast to his feet; then with a fort of razor they open'd the Hypodermium under the belly, and drawing out the inner coat a hand's breadth, thrust up in their place the injestines that were fallen down into the Cods. After this, they fow'd up the Hypodermium with a coarle thread, and when they had made a knot in the

thread that it might not flip out, they cut off with the fame razor the part of the Hypodermium which hung over the statches, and anomiting it with Hog's greaft, burnt it with a hot iron. After the burning they left the wound in the belly still open, and litting up the legs of the Patient almost dead, pour'd the whites of nine new-laid eggs into the wound. This as it bubbled up or work'd in an hour or two, they took for a good fign of a cure. For if after the third hour no chullition or yor' ig appears, they deem it morral, because from thence the Patient's weakness is apparently fo great, that he can't postfibly receive any benefit from the Medicine though fearer one or two in a hundred happen to die, and this they afcribe rather to well n is or age than the injufficiency of their art. On the second and third day they repeated the infusion, the Parant being kept all the while on his bid, fo deprived of his finites, il t he feem'd really dead. Norther diff they allow him any thing to cat or dill, fuppoling it fufficient, it his conque was frequently moulten'd with a drop of water. On the fourth day they laid the patient bound to the board on the floor, where he foon recover'd his fenics, and complain'd of his pains with a weak voice. They refresh'd him with a moderate draught of warm water, and the three next days gave him a little broth made of any thing, only taking care not to overload his ftomach with meat. The feventh day the bands v re 'oos'd, and the Patient gently laid in a bed. But that he might not draw up his legs or move himfelf, two of them flood by him continually, and repeated the infulion of whites of eggs every day. From the ninti. to the twitch day the wound received only fix vinites, which as foon as infused, feemed to bubble up more than before. The nfteenth

Arnaudi, who had rais'd disturbances. But they would have render'd Soliman's passage very difficult, if they had not, by the perfwafions of their countryman Aias Pasta, submitted to the Emperor. Arnand t being thus subdu'd without blood-shed, he stay'd almost a t Albana. month to fettle the affairs of the country, after which he passes into the Island of which he was now master. When his forces were landed, he commands all the towns and villages to be burnt, and closely befieges the City. At length after many conflicts and mutual flaughters, the City is reliev'd by the approach of winter, and the Suitan forc'd, the fea growing tempethous, to retreat and fail back to Constant inople

XXXIV In the year 944, an army of twenty thousand men of Mehemed in different Nations under one Cohpan (61), enters through Serem (62), Christians the Othman borders with delign to beliege Semendria. But before they H 914 got thither, they are met by Mehemed beg, the Governor of the City, A C 1,37 who fuddenly attacking them, difperfes the whole army. Having thus clear'd his territories of the enemies, he sends his son Arslan bee to acquaint the Sultan with what had happen'd, who rewards him for his news with a Sanjak (63)

XXXV. These victories, obtain'd by his Generals, lead the Sultan Soliman title to greater undertakings. Wherefore the next year he fends his Ad. General mural Chairuddin and Soliman Pasha General of the foot, with a con- H off siderable army into India (64), where they diligently execute his or. A C 1538 ders, and annex the whole kingdom of Temen (65) with the adjacent Provinces to the Othman Empire.

XXXVI While

#### ANNOTATIONS.

fifteenth day the wound scarce held the white of one egg, yet they re-peated the infusion as long as they perceiv'd any to go into the wound and bubble up. When this ceas'd, they laid to the wound a plaister of putch, oil, and other mixtures, and fuffer'd the Patient to move his feet, and he on his fide Mean while, they conflintly in the morning before the Patient (wallow'd any thing gently drew the end of the thread which hung out, to try whether the band niight be broken. After the twentieth, thirtieth, or fortieth day, according to the age or ftrength of the Parient, they drew out the thread, and with another plaifter made a perfect cure By this rough method, of which I was an eye witness, these illiterate people are us'd to cure fo difficult a diffemper.

(61) Cobpan Who he is can hardly be trac'd. That the Turks gave Nº. X.

the name of Spansards to the Germans, was occasion'd, I believe, from the Emperor Charles V. being alfo King of Spain

(62) Serem By this name came to the Turks the large Plain, which beyond the Savus, his between Alba Graca and Peterwaradin, whole inhabitants are also commonly call'd Serın ogli.

(63) Sanjak] This was formerly the most honorable office among the Turks, but fince Soliman's civil and military regulations, it is the lowest fort of Governments, because they that are invested with it, have no Tug or Horse-tail, but only a Standard which is call'd Sanjak

(64) India] The borders of Arabia Falix. For I have not read that a Turkish army was ever in India

(65) Yemen ] A large Kingdom widely extending between the Perfian Gulph and Red-Sea, which both an-Fff

and hys walte *Meldevia*.

XXXVI. Whilst these things were performing by his Generals, he himself with numerous forces, as a friend (66), enters Moldavia, but contrary to the expectation of the inhabitants, from the Danube to Secrava, then the Metropolis, destroys all with fire and sword Moreover pitching his tents near the City, he demands the yearly tribute. The Moldavians seeing no way to withstand so great a storm, humbly sue to him for peace, and promise the payment of the annual tribute, only they petition that the choice of a Prince may remain in the state (67), and that he may, as before, be invested with regal authority

#### ANNOTATION S.

tient and modern Geographers make part of Arabia, and have usually call'd it Arabic Eudulpus or Fulix. But no Turkish or Arabia Historian ever reckon'd the Inhabitants of Temema among the Arabians, from whence I may conjecture, that the opinion of the European Geographers, though confirm'd by fo many ages, does not rest upon firm grounds. For the better understanding of this matter, it must be observ'd all the inhabitants of Afia and Africa are divided by the Arabians into three Tribes, Tariars, Persians and Zengi Under the name of Tartars they include all the Nations between the northern Ocean and the Mountains of Caucasus, viz. Tartars, Calmuks, Siberians, Chinese, &c. By Persians they mean the present inhabitants of Perfia. By the common name of Zengi, they call whoever have fix'd their habitations about Perfia from the very borders of China to the western Ocean, in Asia and Africa, the Indians, Arabs, Egyptians, Abyf-finians, Ethiopians, Inhabitants of Morocco, Tums, Tripoli, and Fez, the Moors, with the Negroes, and whatever other barbarous Nations poffess that Tract of land, and derive the name from the short curl'd Hair, with which all these Tribes, and these alone are distinguish'd by nature, from whence also such Hair was wont to be call'd Mus zengs by the Persians who have long Hair, (as for Afia Minor, I have shown in a former note, that they commonly reckon'd it part of Eurofe or the Roman Empire. ) But the name of Arabians is afcrib'd only to those Tribes, which wander in the defert plains between Aleppo,

Damaseus, Mecca and Bagdad, the fame that in the modern Maps are call'd Arabia Deferta and Petraa If therefore in the former fense, the European Geographers understand by the name of diabians, all the Zengs. they must describe Arabia larger than has been usually done in Maps and Commentaries But it in the latter fenie, they call those only Arabians, who call themselves by that name, it is evident, that what they term Ara-bia Falix is beyond the bounds of Arabia. For their very name Sarihindi, yellow Indians, which is given them over all the East, abundantly shows the Tememans not to be of Ara bian but Indian extraction Turks allign a twofold reason of this appellation Some think them cill'd Yellow, on account that their I mue. for is wont to wear only yellow gar ments, which are forbid to private persons, as the green colour must not be worn among the Turk by Foreigners Others imagine, their natural yellow complexion, which appears whitish in respect of the Estinopians gave birth to this name, in which dispute to know what is nearest the truth, is, I think of no great moment, fince it fuffices that thefe are unanimously call'd Indians, and not Araham, and therefore that Itmen also is not properly part of Aiabia but of India

(66) friend ] The Mo'davian Annals iav, that the Tarks, on pretenie of a Polyb expedition, only defir'd a passage of the Moldwians, and iterwards turn'd their arms against them, and miserably laid waste all Me'ere a.

(67) in the ftate The Trik for almost a whole Century permitted according

authority (68). Soliman grants their requests, confirms the Prince (60) chosen by them, and restoring the captives, assembles the Nobles next day, and severely reprimands them, saying, that unmindful of the fayours receiv'd from the Mululman Emperors, they had dar'd to draw the fword against so powerful an Empire, and not only burnt the Town of Kele, but flain many Musulmans. Though for this proceeding all by the Mahometan Law were guilty of death, he as a demonfiration of his elemency, was ready to give them life and liberty, on condition they would deliver up the Treatures of their late Prince (70). As the wretched Moldavians could retuse nothing, the Defterdar with a company of Janizaries comes into the town, and plunders both the publick and the Princes private Treasury (71), where are tound besides great quantity of money, the diadems of the Princes. icepters, croffes, and holy images adorn'd with precious jewels, which Soliman abusing as he pleas'd, leads back his forces to Constantinople. In his return, he orders Kills (72), destroy'd by the Moldavians, to be

### Annorations.

according to agreement the Molda vians to chuse their Prince, but in process of time, they began to appoint them Princes themselves, and usually out of the Sons of the Princes whom they detain'd as hoftages at Constantinople At length they granted this dignity to some Conftantinopo litan Greeks, as forty years ago to Demetrius Cantacuzenus, thirty years fince to Antonius Roffeta, and in my time to Ducus Ramehota, and Nicolaus Maurecordatus, Son of the famous Alexander Maurocordatus first Interpreter of the Othman Port, and Collegue of Ram Millimed, Reis Effendi at the peace of Carlowitz. But of thefe things more largely in the Deicription of Moldav.a, which I intend fhortly to publish to the World.
(69 regal authority] This re-

(69 regal authority] This remutally ditherto inviolate to the Princes of Moldavia and Walachia. They fill at pleafure all the great offices, make new laws, and have full power of hit and death over all. For after the Prince is authorized, no complaints of the death of any Perfon, Baron or other, though ever fo innocent, are heard at the Othman Court. But if he has exacted any thing tyrannically and illegally from his Subjects, he is accountable for it.

(199) Prince The Moldavian Historians call him Stephanus jumor, natural fon of Bogdin.

(70) lite Prince ] It is the way of the Iurks always to fix crimes upon those they intend to punish. That the Moldavians had burnt Keh, 'tis certain, but not with the confent of the flate, but through the revenge of iome private persons, neither were these to much to blame as the Bujak Tartars. For a dispute about felling woods ariling between those Tartars, in conjunction with other new colonies of Turks and the Inhabitants of Kiegerry, these last drove the Turks out of the woods, and upon their making a second attempt, put them to flight, and pursuing them to Kili, set the town on fire Thus the Moldavians formerly contended for their privileges, but now the Tyranny of the Turks forces them to submit not only their Tumber, but also their Heads to the How long, O Lord, shall Wickedness reign

(71) Treasury] Hezar fenn, an accurate Turkiß Historian, says, great riches were found in this Treasury, and among the rest he mentions a gold cross adorn'd with so many precious Stones, that no man could pre tend to value it. I am told it is still preserved entire in the imperial Treasure.

(72) Ksh! By the Moldavians call'd Cilia, formerly Lycoftomon; it is fituated on the largest Mouth of the Danube on the north, through which

3

rebuilt, and because there was no woods in those parts, he gives them the timber of a bridge he had run over the Danube.

Chairuddin defeats two Christian Acets

XXXVII. Mean while, Chairuddin, in his return from the Kingdom of Temen, unexpectedly meets near Crete, the enemy's fleet confifting of three hundred thips, and after a fierce and oblimate battle, gives them a memorable overthrow, takes many of their ships and finks most of the rest. Next day, he finds another fleet of the enemies confishing of several Nations under the conduct of Andrevirius (73) in the port of Prevela, and couragiously attacks them. The enemics aided by the advantage of the place, behave with great bravery, and render the victory long doubtful, but at last the Christians, perceiving themselves overpower'd, make off in the night, but are forc'd to leave fome of their flips to the Turkish Admiral as a reward of his pains. Whilf he is returning after these victories to Constantinople in a too great security, Andrevirius, now out of danger, belieges Nova, and taking it, puts all the Mahometan inhabitants to the fword to appeale the discontents caus'd by his late descat. But Andrevirius's conquest was short liv'd, for Chairaddin the next year attacks Nova with a tresh fleet, and recovering the loft Town, kills in revenge of his countrymen all the Christians there, without distinction of age or fex

H 946

The Germans Buda H 947 A C 1540 + Stephanus

XXXVIII. In the year 947, war is rekindled in Ilungary. John are repuli'd at de zapol King of Hungary, who had under Soliman's protection manag'd his affairs with good success, departing this life, left an infant fon call'd Istefan + Heir of the Kingdom The King of Germany (74), thinking it easy to dethrone a child with an army of eight thousand chosen men, besieges Buda. King John's widow instantly acquaints Soliman, who was made the young Prince's Guardian, with this unexpected invasion, and implores his affiftance Whereupon Soliman fends before his Vizir Soft (75) Mehemed Pasha with a good army

#### ANNOTATIONS.

alone thips must pass into the Euxine Sea, not far from Akkierman. Both these Towns belong'd formerly to Moldavia, but now to Bujak, call'd Bessarabia by the Moldavians

(73) Andreversus This feems to be the name of some Christian General corrupted by the Turks. But who he was I have not been able to find | (74) King of Germany Not Charles V. who was then Emperor of Germany, but his Brother Ferdinand King of the Romans and Bobemians, who by reason of his affinity (for he married Ann Daughter of Vladi-

flaus VI, Sifter of Lewis II. who was

kill'd in the battle of Mcbach\* ) thought he had a Title to the Kingdom of Hungary But when he taw he could do nothing by force, agreed with Johannes de Zapol, that he should hold the Kingdom during his life, and after his death yield it to Ferdinand (75) Soft Soft among the Turks lignifies the more strict observers of the Laws, but those that carry their obfervance to excess are call'd Zabid, that is, Hypocrites However the word feems to come from the Greek soper, hence pixouspos is with them pronounc'd, f.ilufuf

Whom our Author here calls Audrewiress, was the famous Audress Derie (call'd by Jocius, Aures) a Generic, and at the time here mention'd, in the service of the Empirer of Gomuny.

and in a letter to the Queen incourages her with a promise of coming in person with all his forces to her aid. Mehemed Pasha, in pursuance of his orders, marches with all speed to Bada. Though he found the enemies strongly intrench'd, yet not discouraged by that obstacle, he comman is his men to attack them. The German King finding by his scouts that the Turks were not very numerous, divides his army into two bodies, and with one carries on the fiege, with the other oppoies the affaults of the Othmans So about the end of the year for thirty days there were continual skirmishes, with such doubtful success, that neither fide could boast of the advantage. But Soliman perceiving the town would not by this means be reliev'd, but was rather in danger of being taken, as the Germans had now destroy'd the fortifications, comes in person with the rest of his forces in the spring to his Vi- H 948 zir's affiftance. The Germans hearing of Soliman's approach within A. C. 1541. tour days march of their camp, rane the fiege without hazarding a battle, and leaving their great ordnance, retire in the night. Mehemed Pasha deeming it a dishonour to suffer the enemies to depart without flaughter, vigorously purfues them, and getting before to the place where they were to imbark, takes tome, and kills others, as they were negligently approaching. Some few throwing away their arms, fav'd themselves by flight. The enemies being thus dispers'd, Soliman enters Buda, lends into Transilvania, Stephanus the heir of the kingdom with his mother, because he believed them incapable (the one for his youth, and the other for her fex) of defending the kingdom (76). and affigus them a Sanjak for their subfiftence. After this, he places a strong garrison of Janizaries in Buda, under the command of a governor of his own name, Soliman Pasha, and converting the Churches into Jami, and appointing a Cady, returns with gloty to Constantinople.

XXXIX This ripid course of victories, not only inspired his sub. Soliman makes pets with reverence, and his enemies with terror, but also induced the milliance with the Christian Princes to implore Soliman's aid against the unjust oppressions fions of then neighbours. To this end Firanche\* Padishahi (77) in

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(76) the kingdom | What I took notice of in a former note, that the Othmans try well, but do all, is here verified by Soliman When he had under the appearance of virtue acqur'd the good will of all the Hungarran Nobility, having now got an opportunity, he shows his cloven foot, and like an infamible monfter, fwallows up the Kingdom belonging to an Orphan. The Christians may learn by this instance, what is to be got by the protection of the Othmans. I wish Charles XII. of Sweden, ( in Nº. 10.

other respects one of the Heroes of his age, ) had duly weigh'd this before he committed himself to the faith of the ever perfidious Othman Court Certainly, the event has inf-ficiently demonstrated how prejudicial his proceeding has been to his Kingdom and all Christendom, and it is to be fear'd will still prove more detrimental.

(77) Firanche\* Padishabi ] The Othman Court gives the title of Padishab to no Christian Prince but the King of France. The occasion and Ggg rife

# The Othman History.

Part I.

200

the year 949, when he could no longer withstand the Spaniards, A. C. 1542 fends an Ambassador extraordinary to Solsman, with a letter, setting forth the injuries he had received from the Spannards, and humbly intreating the Sultan to free him from the power of his enemies Soliman admits the ambafiador, makes an alliance with Firanche\* Padishahe, and to gain credit to his promises, sends Chairuddin Pasha with a numerous fleet to Spain, whilft he puts his army into winter quarters about Adrianople. in order to an early invalion of Germany

Takes forme Towns in Hungary

XL. The French being thus affifted, annoy the Germans on one hand, whilst on the other, Soliman enters Hungary with a great atmy, and immediately takes Lipola, Beezovi, and Shoklovals, which had been two years before recover'd by the Germans. Then penetrating farther into Hungary, he becomes mafter of Usturgun Beligrad (78), Tatarby fars (79), and Ustuni Beligrad (80), converts the best churches into Jams, and fortifying the towns with firong garrisons, mai his back to Constantinople in order to triumph. But when he approach'd the City, and had now commanded the Alay (81) to be prepard, he

## ANNOTATIONS

rife of this title is very remarkable, as reported by the Turks. They fay a Grand-Daughter of the King of France having vow'd a pilgrimage to Jerusalem, was taken near Cyprus by Turkift Pyrates, and prefented to Soltman. On account of her birth and beauty the was plac'd among the most beloved Concubines, and to attracted the Sultan's affection by her Fremb airs, dancings, and love-verfes, that fhe had an abiolute influence over him, and manag'd all affairs Not long after there arriv'd ambaffadors from France, who feeing it impracticable to get her out of the Scraglio, made a virtue of necessity, and told the Emperor, " the King of Iran c 41 esteems it the greatest happinels, \* that providence has deftin'd his "Daughter (for so they say he call'd 66 her, not Grand-Daughter) for the " bed of fo potent an Emperor, and III hopes the band of perpetual al-44 hance and amity between the two " greatest Monarchs of the World " will be confirm'd by this union of " blood." So by the infligation of this Sultana, Soliman not only granted all the French King's requests, but also gave him the Title of Padifbab, and order'd that the French Ambaffador should have access to his perfon before all others. This indeed

feems to be a table, especially since I do not find it mention'd in any Chieftian Historian or Genealogist However the I rench do not kruple to houft at Constantinople their King's affinity with the Othman race, and on thit account claim the precedency of all Chantians I or this reason the I'mperor of Germany has never in Ambaffador extraoremany at the Off ... Port, but only a Refid of a med or affairs of greater moment happen, as the confirmation of a peace, or prolongation of a truce, a Plenipotentiary ( Almachas) is fent, who takes place of all

(78) Liturgun Belgiad | Str.gonium. or Gran

(79, Tatarbifari) : c Castle of the Tartais At the fame time feems to be taken the City of five Church , in German, Funf Kirchen

(80) Uftum Beligrad ] Alba regili. call'd by the Germans, Stulweffenburg

(81) Alay ] Alay is not fo much a triumph as the marshalling of the foldiers in a certain minner, which is always done when the Emperor arther departs from or returns to the City But a triumph after a victory is call'd Donanma bumayun, a majefiick triumph. In a battle, when the foldiers are drawn up, the Alay is also laid to be made, which as I shall have no occasio

receives the melancholy news of the sudden death of his son Mahomet, which so affects Soliman's otherwise invincible mind, that laying aside all triumphal pomp, he enters the City mournfully like one that was vanquish'd. In remembrance of his son and for his soul's health, Soliman afterwards built at Constantinople, in the way leading to the gate Engi Capu (82), a large Jami, and adorn'd it with a College and Hospital, which to this day is call'd Shehzade Jami.

XII. In the year 954, Elkasib Mirza being greatly injur'd (83) by Mirche 1the Persians, flies to the Sultan, and shows him how he may easily functive Persubdue all Persia. He offers to be Guide and General to his forces,  $\frac{11}{360}$  954
and represents matters so plausibly, that Soliman, perswaded by his A C 1547
discourtes, supplies him with a large sum of money to raise an army
and recover his dominions (84). Early in the spring the Sultan him-  $\frac{11}{1540}$ self moves towards Persia with numerous forces. In this march the A C 1548
Emperor is met by his sons Bajazet Governor of Iconium, and Mustiala Governor of Amalia, who having kits'd their fathers hand, are
sent back to their governments (85).

XLII. After

#### ANNOFATIONS.

occasion to mention elsewhere, I shall describe in this place. The whole army is divided into five parts, namely, Sandor the right hand, Solkol the left hand, D'rain the mun body of the army, Charlant the forerunners (or vanguard, ) and Dindar the bringers back (or rear,) who are commanded to force those that run away or give ground to rerew the battle. In the front are the Serien chia\*, who are followed by the Jam tries led by their age. After their are drawn the great guns guarded by the Injulian and 1 14, or Ke alsof the Artill ry Then comes the Prime Vizir with his Court and Service. On his right hand thand the I'an horte, on his left the Larofrom After the Vizir comes the Emperor, if he is prefent, furrounded with his Courtiers and Bojlanji On his right hand are the Stahi of the red Standard, and on his left, the Spala of the yellow, who are cill'd alto 'a edari. After the Empartite crited the money-coffers, with innumerable waggons and camels liden with provisions and other necessaries Last of all are the above-mention'd Derdar. Much the fame order is objerv'd in the heat of a Dattle I he Seeder gischdi\* charge loss, then the Januzaries and the rest

of the foot. Mean while the horse endeavour to attack the enemy in flank, and when repuls'd are feconded by the Spabs of both wings. Then succeeds the Vizir with his horse. The Aga of the Janzaries takes notice of the weak part of the toot, and supports them with new supplies. The Emperor at a little diffunce from the bittle with his men, has an eye to the whole army, and if any part is prefs'd by the enemy, fe ds aid from his own and other Regiments The Egyptim foot give place to the Albanian, and the Albanian to the Purofaan But of thefe things more largely in another place. Be-fides thele, the company of Merchants and Artificers are by the Turks call'd Urdi alai, who by the imperial mandate follow the camp, that nothing may be wanting there, of what is found in a City.

(82) Eigit Capu ] One of the twenty eight principal gates of Constants nople looking towards Sylvers, of which ellewhere.

(83) injur'd] They fay his wife was ravish'd by the King of Persia.
(84) dominions] The name of

(84) dominions ] The name of which is not mention'd by the Turks, nor can I find it elsewhere.

(85, lent back &c. ] Some of the Turkifb Chronographers fay, Soliman

Recovers Van, and routs the Perficies

XLII. After this, he enters the borders of Azerbejan, in order to carry war into the Persian Provinces. Whilst he remain'd here a sew days, Sultan Burban (86), descended from the antient Sultans of Shirwas, comes to the camp, and furrenders himself and territories to the Emperor. Presently after, he commits the custody of Tibris to Elkafib Mirze, the author of this expedition, but he feeing himfelf neither fafe from the attacks of the Persians, nor able to effect any thing for the Othman advantage, demolishes the Palaces of the Shah, and leads back his forces to the imperial camp, which was now before Van. Soliman, with this addition of strength, makes a vigorous asfault, which so terrified the besieged, that they offer'd to surrender on condition of having their lives. The Emperor, to prevent the effusion of blood, agrees to it, and on the 19th of the month Rejeb, is again mafter of fo strong and noble a City. Having taken possession, he leads his forces to Amze, where he surprises and routs part of the Perfian army, and then fends his victorious troops into winter-quarters about Aleppo.

Seizes the Shah's trusfures and 100 r

fubdues the

XLIII. Mean while, he is inform'd by his spies, that the Shab's immense treasures lay weakly guarded in the towns of Ispahan, Kiesban, and Camid (87) Whercupon, allur'd by the hope of spoil, he fends Elkasib Merza with some light armed troops to seize the riches. Mirze by known ways penetrates into these inner parts of Persia. and routing the guards before they knew any thing of his coming, gets possession of the treasures, and destroying the adjacent country with fire and fword, returns to the Emperor laden with spoil fib privately offers part of the prey to the Vizir Azyzalla to be made affociate to the Governor of Babylon, and casily obtains his desire of the covetous Vizir. When he comes to Babylon with the imperial mandate, he repents of having deserted the Persians, sends private letters to the King, begging pardon, and promifing to be for the inture faithful to him even amongst his enemics, and a diligent spy upon the motions of the Turks. His Collegue Mehemed Pasha, who carefully watch'd all his actions, quickly accuses him of this treachery.

#### ANNOTATIONS.

was told that his fons were come with intent to dethrone him. And therefore, fince on account of his reputation, he did not care to imbrue his hands with his own blood, he commanded them to return to their homes; but afterwards, upon a fuller discovery, put Musiasa to death, as will hereafter be related.

(86) Sultan Burban Burban is the fame with what the Greeks call and the Latins, Demonstrations; hence the Turks were wont to

call a demonstrative Syllogism, Debiliburban but turn'd into a proper name, it denotes something strong, and as it were invincible, such kind of names were once frequent among the Turks, but now are almost dius'd.

(87) Ispaban, &cc ] Formerly the Metropolis of the Province of Arak, but now of all Persia. Kiesban, is corruptly call'd in the Maps Cassan, and Cassad, it may be, in modern descriptions is call'd Com.

and receives the Emperor's order, to fend him in irons to the Port. But before the order came to Babylon he was inform'd by some of his friends (whom he had gain'd with Persian money) of what was transacting, and as there was no other way to escape, flies into Giurisstan. This retreat brings to Soliman's remembrance the late treachery of the Georgians, who about a year fince furpris'd the Governor of those patts, Mustapha Pasha, when little expecting such perfidiousness, he had incampd in a narrow place, and cut his whole army in pieces. Wherefore Mehemed Pasha, to revenge this deed, is instantly tent with a good army, who entring Giurjistan, after several battles fought with various fuccess, at last entirely routs all their forces. After the victory, he takes feven of their strongest castles, and razes them to the ground, and then as the scason of the year would not suffer him to make farther progress, he winters his troops in Diarbe-Early in the spring he re enters Giurjistan, and meeting no op- 11 646 position, reduces above twenty towns to the Othman dominion, and A C 154r when he had confirm'd the Province in the Emperor's obedience, and plac'd garrifons in the fortresses, he goes to Constantinople to give an account of his proceedings.

XLIV. His Empire being thus chablish'd in the East, Soliman thinks He takes Teof inlarging his dominion to the West. To this end, he sends Me- H ggo hemed Pasha, Beglerbeg of Rumeli, with the European army to take A C 1552 Temishwar + the strongest City of all Hungary. Accordingly Mehe- + Temeswar. med having made himfelf mafter of the neighboring towns, Bachi\*, Buchgergi\*, Ratzu, and Chenad\* (88), he lays cloic fiege to Temefwar. Mean time an army comes to the relief of the town, which when Meliemed Pasha perceiv'd was superior to his own, he acquaints the Emperor by letter with his danger, defiring a speedy supply of forces. Whereupon Soliman without delay sends his Prime Vizir Mahmud Pathe with the rest of the army to join Mehemed. Thus strengthen'd. he routs the enemies, and then takes the City by florm, and annexes the whole territory of Temefwar, which was almost as large as a Beglerbeglie, to the Othman Empire, and leaves the custody of it to Casim Palba (89) with a good garrison

XLV. Whilft the Othman dominion is thus extended in Europe, The Turks deaffairs are not so prosperous in Asia. Shah Ismail, son of Tomasib, feated by the after the departure of the Mululman army out of his borders, enters the countries subject to the Othmans, and suddenly takes Erdelb and Aglash (90), and miscrably puts to the sword all the Turks he could

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(88) Bachi\* &cc. ] Cities, as it feems, lying between the Danube and Savus, which country is by the Turks call'd Bacha\* ovass.

(89) Cafim ] A famous Turkifb General, afterwards advanc'd to the Vizirihip He founded or inlarg'd Nº. 10.

the new colony at Galata, where are now the Magazines, and therefore call'd it after his name.

(90) Erdish &cc ] Towns on the borders of Shirvan, in Maps corruptly call'd Ergish and Elata.

Hhh

find

find in these towns. Iskender Pasts is sent into the field with good part of the Affatte army to reprefs this boldness Shab Ismail bravely meets him, and joining battle, routs him with the flaughter of the best part of his army. Thus fortune smil'd on the Persians in leffer battles, in order to show them her sting in greater. For inrag'd at this ill news, Soleman severely reprimanding Iskender Pasha for his dishonorable flight, resolves with a more numerous army to humble the Persians flush'd with this victory. But as the scalon of the year was too far advanc'd to carry war into those parts, he sends before the Prime Vizir Mehemed Palba, and commands him to winter with what army he had ready about Tokad (91), and in the year 960, A C 1553 in the month Ramazan, near a place call'd Erkile, he himself joins the Vizir's camp with the rest of his forces. Here he receives certain information, that his fon Muflapha (92) ( whom on the fame suspicion he had last year put under strong custody) was in a plot against his life, and had many complices. Whereupon after finding the thing to be true, he orders his fon to be strangled. After this, when he was come to Aleppo, Ishanger (93) another of his sons departed this life, and the Emperor commands his eldest son Selim to winter with the soices in Marasb.

Soliman takes Revan, and lays waste Per fia H 961

A C 1553

XLVI. Assembling his whole army in the year 961, he enters Shirvan, and fends an Herald to the Shah (94), to tell him he is ready for

# ANNOTATIONS.

(91) Tokad | A City of Natolia not far from Amasia, according to iome, the ancient Eudocia.

(92) Musias ba ] Fourth Son of Soliman, who was faid to excite all his Brothers against their Father The Turks say, Soliman with great policy fuffer'd their attempts to go unpunish'd above a year, in hopes of leading them to repentance, and afterwards perceiving their obstinacy, caus'd only Mustapha to be strangled as Author of the rebellion Ithanger also by some is thought not to die a natural death, but to be porson'd by his Father's command. After these rebellions of his sons, Soliman made a law, that the Sons of the Emperors should not for the future have any Governments, but be detain'd in the royal City; and tho' fome, fince this law are reported to have had Sanjaks, 'tis never so now.

(92) Ibanger ] He is faid to have

(93) Isbanger] He is faid to have been crook'd-back, so that a Globe seem'd to be plac'd on his back, and for that reason to be call'd by Soliman, Ithargir, as much as to tay, Atla or Beater of the World See the preceding note

(94) Shah ] The Triks are forbid by their law, to wage war without acquainting the enemy of their coming. This is done, (they tay,) both that the Othman bravery may not be eclips'd by fubduing their advertaries with fraud and ftratigem, and that the enemy may be call'd to the precepts of the Koran and Mabon ton Faith. Upon a refusal, they think themselves not only innocent of the effusion of blood, but if they die, believe they become in God's fight. Martyrs, and if they conquer, Gazi. However, they do not always fo ftrictly observe this custom, but often interpret the law according to urgent emergencies, nor proclaim war before they have fheath'd the fword in the Bowels of the enemies, as I perceiv'd was lately the case of the Venetians, from whom in four months Sultan Abmed, by his General Ali Pasha, wrested all Peloponnesus. But it is

for battle, and challenges him to meet him in the field, if he day'd trust his fortune to the valour of his men. But the Perfier answering his challenge with neither words nor deeds, he belieges Rever (0,5) the feat of the Persian King, in the month Shaban, takes it in a sew days, and defiroying the royal gardens, palaces, country-houses, sees fire also to the City, the glory of Persia. Then he leads his forces towards Neh jivan (96), and by the conduct of Sultan Husein (97) lays waste all the country between Trbres and Meragre (98), utterly defiroying the cities, towns, and villages with fire and fword Having taken this fevere revenge of the Persians, at the approach of winter he sends his forces into quarters about Amalia.

XLVII The next fpring, before Soliman led forth his army, Shah Mike pence Kuly (99) Sultan comes to him near Arzirum (100), imploring his with the P 1clemency, and delivering himself to his protection. From thence going to Bagdad, he receives ambaffadois from the Perfian King, humbly fuing for peace, which after feveral conferences is at last concluded, and by it the cities Van, Merash (101), and Musul (102) are made the boundaries of the Othman Empire.

XLVIII Whilft the Emperor was thus employ'd in Asia, a certain Routs a coun Impostor appear'd in Dobruje (103) under the name of Sultan Musta. terleit Musta

### ANNOTATIONS.

wrong to blame the Turks for what is the common practice of all Mortals

(05) Revan ] A famous City of Perhit, corruptly written in modern Maps Ervan

(96) Neb jivan] corruptly in Maps Nab Schuan

(97) Hu/in ] He feems to be one of those Perfian fugitives, who frequently at that time submitted to the O'bman dominion For Amadia, which is a Province of Shirvan or Azerin in, is at prefent in subjection to Perha Hence feems to be taken the Hebrew Madian, and Greek, Midian

(98) Meragye ] corruptly in Maps, Marraga

(99) Shah Kuly ] One of the Perfin Chans, who revolted to Soliman, tamous only for Mulick There are full extant most elegant airs of his, composed for instruments, of which there are two faid by the Turkish and Person Musicians to be immitable, namely, Shib Kuli Sakili in Macon Hutem, and hisphpure in way Hyfar, in metre call'd Diviek.

(100) dizirum | Etymologically,

Greeian or European Land. For the Turks are wont to call whatever lies west of Arzirum, with all Asia minor or Anadol, parts of Europe. But Arzirum is the Metropolis of that Armema major, which obeys the Turks, not far from the borders of Media, fix days journey from Trapezond on the Euvine-Sea to the South This is one of the principal Pafbalicks of the Othman Empire, and in given only to Bashas of three horse-tails.

(101) Meraft ] A City of Alia on the River Murafius near the Euphrates between Aleppo and Malatta.

(102) Muful According to fome. the Nineveb of the Antients.

(103) Dobruje] A Country on this fide Mount Hamus, extending along the Danube from Drifta in Walachia to the Mouths of that River. A Champain Country, neither water'd with livers, nor diftinguish'd with woods though at the extremity near Drifta there is a wood, call'd by the Turks, Dels orman, the foolsfo wood. The Inhabitants are originally Turks, and remov'd hither out of Afia, but now are call'd Chitakin, famous for their fingular hospitality. If a Traphs, who getting together about forty dislotte men, had not only cruelly laid waste this, but also all the neighboring provinces. Fur before the impostor, by reason of the distance, could be restrain'd by the Emperor, Bajazet, the Sultan's sixth son, having by an admirable stratagem, drawn him into a snare, takes and sends him in chains to his sather, by which means he eases him of great care, being now about to dispatch Mebemed Pashs with an army to oppose the counteriest Mustaphs.

### ANNOTATIONS.

veller passes through a village, let him be of whatever Nation or Religion, all the House-keepers appear at their doors, and very kindly invite him to come in, and accept of fuch a dinner as God has fent them (for that is their expression.) So the Person, whose invitation the Traveller accepts, entertains him and his horses, if he has not above three, without any reward, for three days with fuch civility and hospitality according to his abilities, that the like is hardly to be found. He fets before him, Honey, Eggs, with which the country abounds, and Bread bak'd under ashes, but very fine. They prepare a little House design'd for the reception of Strangers with Couches in the middle round the fire-place, which the Travellers use as they please Because they have no wood, they burn the dung of Cattle dried in the Sun. They build stone Cottages, but without lime or mortar, fo that the walls feem to be rather a heap of Stones. However to keep out the cold, they dawb the outlide of the walls with dung. They have Wells, by reason of the dryness of the foil, above a hundred fathom + deep. The country produces bred-horfes of great fwiftness, which are reckon'd by the Turks next to the Moldavian. I have often pais'd through this region, because it is in the way from Moldavia to Constantinople, and shall relate what happen'd to me once in my journey. I us'd to be entertain'd by a certain Inhabitant of the Village Alabegino, a Person of great note and riches among them. Coming to this man's house the 22d of July, St. Phacas's day, and feeing all his Labourers,

f of whom he had hir'd above a himdred of the Christians by the year) flanding idle, I ask'd him, why his people were not at work He reply'd, though he was a Mahometan, he never fuffer'd any work to be done on that day. My wonder being more rais'd by these words, I ask'd him the reason of this solemnity, He anfwers with a fmile, " I admire, that " you, who are a Christian, do not know this to be Sr Photas's day" What, fay I, have you to do with St. Phocas My Friend, replies he, fay not fo. That Saint has suffici-ently shown his virtues among us by Miracles. For it is transmitted to us by our Fore-fathers, that our people, ignorant of St Phocas's fanctity, fent their Christian Labourers on this day to gather in the Hirvest, and upon their urging it to be St. Phecas's cay, forc'd them with blows to do as they were order'd Accordingly they obey, though unwillingly, and load the Carts with Corn But as they are returning home, there appears to them a Man, venerable for his age, with a burning Torch in his hand, who leverely threatens the La bourers for profaning his I cflival, and at the fame time fires the Corn in the Carts with his Torch, the flames of which, like lightning, running through the country, confum'd not only the Corn yet flanding, but what was already hous'd. Our Fathers, instructed by this loss, resolv'd to keep this Saint's day as religiously as the Christians, and abstain from all Which refolution being observ'd, we don't remember the like fire has fince happen'd to us.

+ Opymie,

34

XLIX. About this time, a war was kindled again between the Kings Aids the of Spain and France, in which the French King (104) being unfue-fleet elsful, and press'd by his enemies, desires the Emperor to fend a seond fleet to his affifiance. Soliman, not thinking any request of his lly should be denied, sends Carly Eliber (105) with a strong fleet aainst Spain. Eliber finding no opposition at sea, ravages the coasts of Spain with some Islands, and setting fire to what he could not bring way, carries off the inhabitants in bonds. He caus'd by these procedings the Spaniards, dreading his farther progress, to recall their roops and fend them against him, by which means the French army, omnianded by Corbon (106), obtain'd a compleat victory, forty thouand Spaniards being, as it is faid, flain on the ipot.

L. Soliman, incouraged by this fucces, fends another fleet under the Sends another onduct of Pers Ress to Hurminz (107), to ravage the Coasts. who anto Hurminz. according at first, plunder'd all the maritime provinces of that Kingdom, nd laden with ipoils returns towards Constantinople; but whils he was ailing with too great fecurity in the Egyptian sea, he is pursu'd by the nemy's fleet, his scatter'd ships are attack'd, and partly funk, partly taken, specially such as were incumber'd with the spoils. Some few of the ghtest escape, in one of which was Seid als Kapudan, who assembling ie dispers'd ships that had not been in the battle, or had fav'd themelves by flight, re-attacks the enemy's fleet failing back in disorder, and y a strange turn of fortune, gets the advantage, and finks several ships. hus Soliman was attended with good success on sea and land, and

### ANNOTATIONS.

(104) French King] Francis I, who y his continual wars with the Empeor Charles V, afforded Soliman amle room to feize the Kingdom of lungary.

(105) Carly Elibeg ] He feems to ave been an old Admiral, but not 1e Capudan Pasha himself. It may e conjectur'd from the name Carly, nat he was some Renegado Christian. (106) Corbon He seems to be barles Duke of Bourbon, General of 1e Emperor Charles's army, who reolted to him from the French. The urks often use to confound the names f the Christian Generals. But as either the German nor French Annals sention this battle, I take it to be a ction of the French to induce Solian the more readily to affift them. in Artifice I have known them in ly time to use at Constantinople,

(107) Hurmiuz ] This name is by the Turks given to two Countries and Seas, Portugal and the Island Ormuz. (the applica of Ptolemy) and also to the Sea of Portugal, and the Perfian Gulph, because Pearls are found in both, call'd by the Turks, Hiur-miuz. As it is well known, that the Turks had a great fleet for a long time in the Red Sea, call'd by them Babril Kulzum, or more usually Suvid Dengisi, and also that Selim endeavour'd to unite the Red-Sea to the Mediterranean, from which purpose he defifted not, till the Channel he had almost perfected was over-whelm'd with fand, (on these accounts I say) I should think the Persian Gulph was here meant, if it was not faid the fleet return'd towards Constantinople, which could not be done, but by failing all round Africa, a thing never yet perform'd by the Turks.

very often an inconsiderable loss was the forerunner of a great victory For at the same time Toigun Pasha, Beglerbeg of Buda, with his forces took three towns (108) from the Christians, and carried away numberless captives. On the other hand, the Governor of Jizair (109), Salih Pasta, subdu'd Bijane (110) and three other castles in Spain.

ends another eet to aid the H. 963

LI. In the year 963, a fresh occasion of acquiring glory occurrs. Francha Padishabi, when he did not succeed against the Spaniards according to his wish, defires a third fleet to be sent to his affistance. "C 1555. Solman rejoicing that he could break one egg with another, without hurting his own hands, readily grants his request, and fends Capudan Piale Pasha (111) with a great fleet into the Spanish Sca, to join the French. Psale diligently executes his orders, and in conjunction with the French forces takes Missine (112), Rije (112), with Marioca (114), and three leffer neighboring Blands (115), and laying waste all the coasts of Apulia, about autumn returns to Constantinople with rich spoils.

ales new gulations in e State

LII. His Empire being thus establish'd and strengthen'd on every fide, Soliman gives his army some respite, and spends almost ten years in better regulating his civil affairs. His first care was to finish the Fami founded by him three years before, which he does in fo beautiful a manner that next to Sancta Sophia, there is not, it is thought, the like in the whole world, and calls it by his own name Suleimanic (116).

Aittr

### ANNOTATION &

(108) three towns ] I cannot learn

I the

their names, (109) Jizair] or with the article El + jizair, call'd in Maps Algiers, It is subject to the Turks, but uses its own laws, like Tunis. However in time of war they are oblig'd to fend the Sultan fix or eight men of war. If the Sultan is at peace with the Venetians and other Christian States, they are free from all obligations to him, and may always purfue the exercife of Pyracy, like the Knights of Malia among the Christians. A Patha is given them by the Sultan, but he can do nothing arbitrarily as in other places. As for Necessaries, other places. Victuals, and Cloaths, he is largely supplied by the Inhabitants, but befides this, he has no right, nor power of commanding any thing in the Emperor's name. Very often they depole him by their own authority, but to lave the honour of the Othman Court, accuse him to the Sultan of mildemeanours, and petition for a better. The Court rather connives at, than allows these proceedings, but for fear of an open revolt, always condemns the Basha, and declares the Inhabitants of Jizan to be just

(110) Byane Perhaps Nizza, a Caftle in Picdmont, which the French aided by the Turkish torces took about that time.

(111) Piale Paffai A famous Turkifo High Admiral, whose Market-place and Jams are to be feen at Constantinople

(112) Mifine Messina in Suily

(113) Rue Regium Julium in Calabria This, and Messiva by a common mistake of the Turks are plac'd in Spain.

(114) Marsoca ] The Ifland Majorca, the principal of the Balearides.

(115) three leffer ] perhaps Minorca, Yvua, and Formentero, but this is only conjecture.

(116) Sulamanie ] This Temple is on a high hill looking towards the Harbour, and built with so much are and elegance, that no structure deferves to be compar'd with it This

After this, perceiving many things to be perform'd irregularly in the Court and Kingdom, and the confus'd degrees of offices to beget contention and strife among his officers, makes new regulations both civil and military, enjoins them as laws to the whole Musulman Nation, and affigns to every one his rank at Court, in the City, and in the Thus the arms but not the mind of Soliman is at reft, who like a butting goat, retires only to finke his enemies with the greater force. For he had discover'd by his former expeditions, that the German Empire was too powerful to be overthrown with the bare hoofs of horses, and greater preparations and longer time requisite to break down the barriers by which it was defended. Wherefore during thefe ten years, he makes the greatest warlike provisions, replenishes his exhausted treasures, assembles troops from all parts, and now endeavours to execute the design, in which only Mahomet Fatth had gone before him, and which he himfelf had already attempted in vain-

LIII To this end, in the year 974, he goes with a mighty army Dies at the from Constantinople to Adrianople, and dispatching some troops under aust the command of the Prime Vizir Pertev Pasha to seize Giale (117), H 974 follows more flowly with the rest. But though nothing was wanting A C 1566 to this expedition, yet he wanted youth, and old age refus'd to execute his purpofes. Worn out with years, when he comes to Segetwar (118), his body, fatigu'd with so many labours, is first seiz'd with a flow fever, which increasing by degrees, turns to a malignant one. Though the Emperor was grievously tortur'd by it, and there was scarce any hope of recovery, yet invincible, and as it were immortal in his mind. he orders the City to be befieg'd and affaulted. But when, upon the Governor's making a braver defense than was expected, his grief was more increas'd, Soliman oppress'd with publick cares, frequently repeats this icntence. " The City, whose hearth (119) was to be extinguish'd, is " not yet taken!" Afterwards when he perceives death's approach, he lifts up his hands to Heaven, and thus prays. " O God of all the " worlds (120), O Sovereign and Lord of all creatures, I humbly be-

### Annotations.

I have heard affirm'd, not only by Turks, but by Foreigners of several Nations Nor is it any wonder, that the Building should be so elegant, fince it contains not only what the common Marble Quarries, and the Ruins of Troas afforded, but also every thing precious or rare that was found in the antient works of the Greeks, by which they foolishly imagin'd to acquire an immortal name to themselves. Four Towers adorn this Church, two with three Sherife or Galleries, from whence the Ezan is fung, and the others with two.

The President of the adjoining Academy takes place of all others, and from that office rifes to the dignity of Mola,

(117) Giule] So call'd at this day in the Maps.

(118) Segetwar] by the Christians call'd Sigeth.

(119) hearth] A Turkish Phrase denoting utter defolation and destruc-tion. For where the fire is not lighted, there men dwell not.

(120) worlds] The Turks say, that God has created seventeen thousand worlds, but that this will be the last. " feech thy most facred Majesty to have pity upon the Host of the faithful, and vouchsafe to grant they may instantly conquer this City" Whilst he was pouring out this prayer he dies, on the 13th day of Sefer, in the year above-mention'd.

Segrituar 15 taken, and his death conceal'd

LIV. The Prime Vizir immediately informs Selim, who was then at Magnefia, of his father's death, and intreats him to hasten to the army, but conceals the Emperor's decease from all besides, and in his name exhorting the soldiers to take the City, so manages, that the Sultan's death could not be suspected. On the 18th of that month, he orders a general assault, which promoted by an accidental fire (121) in the City, so prosperously succeeds, that though the Garrison made a gallant resistance, they were within few hours subdued by the valour of the Othman soldiery. This day samous for the conquest of this strong fortress, was render'd more illustrious by the news of the taking also of Giule at the same time.

Selem is faluted Emperor LV. Mean while, Selim, on receit of the Vizir's letter, hastens with all speed to the camp, where at his arrival, Soliman's death being declar'd, he is unanimously proclaim'd Emperor. After which, to pay the last duties to his father's remains, he lays his body in a gift chanot, and attended with the whole army, conducts it to Constantinople. When they come near the City, all the Ulema, Estress (122), and Great-men, with a crowd of people, meet the suncral, and accompanying it with the invocation of God's name, Zikr and Testish, and with singing into the City, deposite the body in the Court of the family built by Soliman, and call'd by his name, and perform the Namaz according to the rules of Imam Shast; to which the Emperor himself was not only very much addicted, but always carried with him Imam (123) Nakybut Estref one of the sect. The solemnities being over, the body is committed to the earth, and all the Ecclessisticks and other re-

### ANNOTATIONS

There was once a great dispute about this expression among the learned Turks. Some denied it to be Orthodox, to say God of all the Worlds, when properly he is only God of the Musulmans, and said the name of Governor of the Good and Bad, suits not with his Holmess. Others afferted the contrary, and producing a passage of the Koran, where God is called Lord of all the Worlds, their opinion was approved by the rest.

(121) fire The Turk aforthe this entirely to Soliman's prayers, by means of which, the City was taken, not

by force of arms, but by a remarkable accident, whereby God was pleas'd to glorify the prayers of his Servant.

(122) Estress Men of hoher lives, or conspicuous for some ecclesiastical dignity, from Sheris, Holy. Hence Kudsheris, Jerusalem, Kiabeisheris, Mucca, &c.

(123) Imam ] An 'Equipient Priest, who daily says publick Prayers. He who attends on the Sultan, is in great Honour, and distinguish'd with the Title of Imam Effends.

ligious that were at Confiantmople, are order'd to finish the Telapotic Koran (124) forty times a day for forty days, and by thele prayers to obtain the peace of his foul. Moreover his fon causes to be crefted: before the Jami, a Mobrab (125), and over his grave a large marble, Turbs, which is at this day religiously valited by the Musicimans. For, they are perfusaded that he was a great favorite of Heaven, because he not only lost his life at the slege of Segetwar, and so became Shebid, but was also Gazzi+, two Cities being taken under the conduct of + Conqueror. his relicts, and annex'd to the Othman Empire.

LVI. Thus liv'd and reign'd Soliman a Prince of an heroic and in. Soliman's chavincible mind, of great valour and wildom, and lo patient of the meler hardfhips which ufually attend warlike expeditions, that he almost feem'd to be nourish'd by them. Besides the Turkish language, he ipoke also Persian and Arabic, and in that kind of poetry, by the Persian: call'd Nazm (126), he excell'd all in elegance and wit. His Persian. Hungarian, and naval victories gain'd him a great name, but his reformation of the Courts of Juffice, and his excellent laws, by which the Othman Empire still flourishes, acquir'd him a greater. On this account the name of Canuni was afcrib'd to him by the Turks. He govern'd the Othman Empire one and forty years, and liv'd feventy He had seven sons, Murad, Abdulla, Mehemed, Mustapha, Selim, Bajazes, and Jihangir, who all but Selim his successor, died contrary to the order of nature before their father.

### ANNOTATIONS.

(174) Telavet: Koran The Reading of the whole Koran, which is usually done over the Grave of the deceased, as with us the Pfalter and New Testament are wont to be read.

(125) Mibrab | Signifies both an Altar and the Southern part of a Ja m: Concerning this word the Turks have the following story. A certain Poet being banter'd by his Acquaintance for still loving a Mistreis, now grown pale, bearded, and old, without any abatement of his former palfion, excuses himself with this Diffich Gier Mejebid\* ikyldyje, nola Mibrab terinde, that is, Though the Mojeb (or Temple) is deftroy'd, the Mibrab (or Altar) still remains unhurt. His Enemies upon hearing this Diffich immediately carry the Poet before the Judge, and accuse him of Blasphemy, by explaining the Verses io, as if he had compar'd the wither'd face of his Miftress to a Church, and that part of her Body, which had been the object of his youthful Palfion, to an Altar At which the Judge is so mov'd, that he sentences the Poet to lose his Head

(126) Nasm ] A Poetical Metre often occurring, particularly in the Km an, and for that reason is account ed more elegant than the rest

Cotemporary with SOLIMAN I. reign'd in Europe.

In Germany, SCHARLES V. 1519-58. FERDINAND 1558-63 EDWARD VI. 1546-53. MARY 1553-58 In England, ELIZABETH 1558-1602. CFRANCIS I. 1525-47. HENRY II. 1547-59 FRANCIS IL 1559 60. In France, CHARLES IX. 1560-74. The End of the Reign of SOLIMAN L

Kkk Nº. 10.

The



The REIGN of

# SELIM II. Sirnam'd MEST (1).

Eleventh EMPEROR of the TURKS.

#### CHAP. V. BOOK HI.

Emperor, H 974 + Mars.

Estim faluted I. COLIMAN being dead, Selim only remained, on whom the Empire could devolve, and was then at Amasia as has been A C 1566, faid. Departing from thence in the year 974, on the 9th of the month Rebial evvel, the Planet Merich + ruling that day, he enters Constantinople, and mounts his father's throne. Next day all the Great men of the Empire, according to cultom, appear in mourning (2) at Court, adore the new Emperor, and comfort him on his father's death with excellent speeches.

and receiv'd by the army.

II. Three days after, with a few attendants he departs from Confantinople towards Segetwar. But in the mean time, the Vizir Mehemed Pasta, having taken the City and guarded it with a strong garrison, had sent the army into winter quarters, and was now come as far as Belgrade, the Emperor's death being full a fecret to all (3). Wherefore

### ANNOTATIONS.

(1) Mest ] i. e. Drunken, fo call'd from his being addicted to Wine and Drunkennels, which was his greatest delight. However, though he was extremely given to this vice, he is faid never to omit the usual daily Prayers. There are other Historians, who that fuch a stain might not be cast on so famous an Emperor, deny he us'd to be drunk, but pretend he was feiz'd with a fort of divine Enthuliaim, which, leaft the people should suspect to be Hypocrisy, he

himfelf declar'd to be drunkenness, and fo chose rather to be accounted a Drunkard than an Hypocrite. But fuch Colourings for the Vulgar

(2) mourning] Formerly they us'd the greatest solemnities, and choice of colours at the Turkish Emperor's death, but at present they only mourn three days in red Habits, and that not very strictly, after which they put on

again their usual drefs.
(3) fecret ] Both Christians and Turks unanimously affirm, Selim's death



Schill II Eleventh EMPERORS of the Jurks, in the Year 1568. From an Original in the Teraglic.

.

•

•

Wherefore the soldiers are troubled at Selim's sudden and unexpected arrival, and fearing he might, after the example of his Grandfather of the same name, do some injury to his father, run to their arms. But when they were certain of Soliman's death, they all receive Selim as lawful successor, and pay obeylance to him as to their Sovereign.

III. As foon as all things necessary for his father's funeral were He buries his ready, he returns to the royal City, and after the ecremonics are over, folendid manis again confirm'd in the throne by all orders and degrees, and cele-ner. brates his father's victories with a iplendid triumph. Then he distributes to the Janizaries and Spahs the usual Bakhshish (4) or donative, but presents the Ulema and rest of the Ecclesiasticks, who officiated at his tather's tuneral with filk robes and money.

IV. Mean white, Bent omer (5) Ultan ogli the Arabian, hearing of Hevanquishes Soliman's decease, not only dates to throw off the Othman yoke, but the rebellious also perswading his neighbours to join in the rebellion, invades the 11 975 territories of Bagdad, which he cruelly lays waste. However he did A c 1567.

### ANNOTATIONS.

death was concealed by the Vizir for forty one days, till Sien came to Belgrade. This, a Reader, ignorant of the Turkife Customs, will be apt to deem impossible to be done among fo many thousands of foldiers but those that know the more than Pythagoric filence of the Oilman inner Court, will not call it in question. No man ipeaks there unless order'd, no talking to one another, neither doth any person dare so much as to sneeze or cough, whatever occasion he may have If they have any thing to communicate to one another, 'tis done in the language of the Mutes, by figns They wear no shoes, and walk only on the tips of their toes, and withal fo foftly and carefully, that you can hardly perceive the found of their iteps when they are running. For the least noise is attended with a fevere correction.

(4) Ballifoth or Largels, usually given to the foldiery, on the election of a new Emperor Each Janizary, (and there are forty thouland) receives twenty Dollars, and each of fitteen thousand Spabi, twenty five. Sometimes also at the Sultan's pleafure their daily pay is increased with an Asier, which however is feldom done, but when the Sultan wants to ingratiate himself with the army.

(5) Bent omer ] The fons or posterity of Omer are a Tribe of Arabians wan lering in the defects of Babylon, without fix'd habitations. Sometimes they are subject to the Othman Empire, and out of the produce of their Dates, which are the fole fountain of their riches, pay a good yearly fum of money to the Governor of Babylon. But they frequently rebel and rivage the very Suburbs of Bafre. In Sultan Mustapha's reign, they suddenly furprized the City of Bafre itielf, and continued mafters of it near two years. But afterwards, Daliaban Mujiapha Pasha Governor of Babylon, expell'd them from thence, and crush'd the whole tribe, by killing thirty thou-fand of them, whole heads he pro-duc'd before Capun bafor Batdal Ifmail, fent by the Emperor for that purpole. This victory acquir'd him fo great a reputation, that he was a few days after advanc'd to the dignity of Vizir, but to his destruction, for within three months he was accus'd by the Mufti of rebellion, and though innocent, punish'd with the loss of his head. This cruelty fhortly after gave birth to a conspiracy, which dethron'd Mustapha, and killing the Musti, a thing seldom practised among the Turks, delivered the imperial Diadem to Abmet his brother, the prefent Sultan.

not long go unpunish'd. For Selim, inform'd of these proceedings, instantly orders the Governors of Bagdad, Bafre (b), and Shehreful (7), to join a good body of Janizaries with the forces of those Parts, and go in quest of these plunderers. His commands are speedily executed, and the wandering Arabs in the deferts of Bafre, are attack'd, dispers'd, and routed, and the country reftord to its former tranquillity. Inc same year Selim finishes a bridge (8), begun five years before by his fa ther, not far from Constantinople

V. Mean time, a new war was to be thought of, least the Othman

He attempts in vain to joi Felga.

the Teness and valour should be blunted with idleness. A peace had been but very lately concluded with the Emperor of Germany, nor was there any cause for a rupture. The Persian was the only Prince, against whom the Othman arms could be surn'd, as he feem'd by his continual inchrfions to give just occasion for a war. But Selim was deterr'd from this by the difficulty of the places, as well as by the warlike flores and provisions to be carried thither, for want of which, he had perceiv'd that numerous armics of his Ancestors had miscarried. To remove this A C 1568 obstacle, he sends a body of soldiers over the Euxine Sea to Kufe +; and orders the Chan of Crimes to hire labourers out of all the Tartarian Tribes, and pitch his tents near the river Ezel; in that place, where it is but fix Italian miles from the Territ, and by a Canal to join the two fivers. He hop'd if this delign took effect, to penetrate while ease out of Pontus, through Maille (9), Ters, and Ezel, into the

H 976 † Caffa of Theodolia î Volga el. Rha + Tanau

### ANNOTATION 5.

(6) Bafrs] Balfora, formerly Boftra, in Maps it is commonly plac'd at the Mouth of the Eupbrates, but erroneously. For it lies fix days journey up that river. Curma is fituated at the Mouth of the Euphrates, the most noted Mart of the East, unknown to all the Geographers I have yet met

(7) Shehreful] An Afiatic City and Territory well known. It has a Pafhalic with the honour of three Horse-Tails, but of fo little account among the Turks, that if a Basha be removed from another Pathalic to the Government of Shehreful, he is look'd upon

as fent into banishment.

(8) bridge This bridge is over the Lake Buyuk Chekmeje\*, where it runs into the Propositis at a village of the same name, about two hours distance from Constantinople. It is all built of square stones, and two thoufand paces long, a truly imperial work. Hindai, a famous Poet of that fime, adorn'd the marble interrption

to the Sultan with fome elegant Verses, which, if I rightly remember, are as follows

Bahladi bu jitu olmadan teman Kold again ter genun change Gielde zwi hald Shith Suiter Sein Idi tektur, old barar izini Didi tankhin Hudarof eneri Yapidi ib azic ou too St. h Sci.

1. e He begun this Bridge, bet I or be finished, be took a fiviley of to Parbs of Paradise b, the help of too me? merciful (God) SHAU St 1, 1 SPLIM, God's Shid . . . . . . . finished and coms wated the large Di HIUDAL, at t'u time to's the .... in which Shan Sillin ba . It t Bridge over 100 Water From th. last Distich, by a computation call'd by them Elpa, the lum or 974 year.

(9) Mailie ] So the Prins Miss. 3 was once call'd by the It ks, as I gither from these words of the Hillorian, perhaps a corruption of Atach. But at pretent the Tarks give this

Caspian

Caspian-Sea, and as the Persians had no sheet there, to transport an army into Shirvan, and so without much difficulty subduc all Persia. And this work would have entirely succeeded according to his wish, if the supreme Governour of the world had suffer'd the bounds he had set these rivers to be changed. But the Crimean Chan, who on receit of the Sultan's mandate had instantly repair'd through Aizderchan (10) to the place appointed, had scarce sinish'd a third part of the channel, when the labourers are so insested with constant rains, cold storms, and want of provisions, that many pershing with sickness and hunger, they are forc'd to desist from their enterprize. However with these muschiess, this expedition was attended with one advantage, namely, thirty thousand Nigaian Tartars (11), who had hitherto been under the Russian Empire, turn'd to the Othmans, and departed with their families to habitations assign'd them in Crimea. But Chan Kyrim not succeeding in his undertaking, the Turks return to Constantinople.

VI. About the same time, Muttabir, Sherif of the Kingdom of He quelli a Temen, with some Arabians gain'd to his party, suddenly attacks Mu. Temen rad Pasha, Beglerbeg of Temen, slays him with his whole army, and H 977 so frees Temen from the Turkish yoke. But Selim on news of this re- A C 1569 bellion, burning with indignation to be thus served by one of no account, commands Sinan Pasha (12) Governor of Egypt to join his forces with those of Ozdemir Ogle (13), and revenge their slain bre-

#### ANNOTATIONS.

name to that Gulph of the Black-Sea, which washes Ochacova, the Obvopolis of the Antients. The Maotis is now call'd Azak denizs, the Sea of Azof, and its Bolphorus, formerly, Cimmerius, Gierche Taman Bogas. It was shut up by two Fortresses (after the taking of Azof by the Russians) by Osman Pasha the Turksh High-Admiral. These, if I guess right, were formerly call'd by the Greeks, Nymphowum Cimmerium and Tauricum. (10, Aizderchan] A well known Tartarian Kingdom, now subject to the Russians, commonly call'd Astracan. This word in the Persian Tongue, signifies, the Habitation of Dragons, or the Lord of Dragons, which name was given to the inhabitants for their series and wild nature. But at pre-

the Russians, commonly call'd Astracan. This word in the Persian Tongue, fignifies, the Habitation of Dragons, or the Lord of Dragons, which name was given to the inhabitants for their fierce and wild nature. But at present they are so accustom'd to subjection, that they are not faid to attempt, even when they have an opportunity, the recovery of their former liberty. Thus what the Arms of Alexander the Great could not, the Knutæ and Baiogi of the Russians have effected, and perfectly tam'd the sercences of the Nation. But what No. 10.

will not fear join'd with love produce in the minds of men.

(11) Nigatan These had Habitations assigned them with the Bujak Tartars in Bessarbas, among whom even at this day are reckon'd above eighteen thousand of the Cazanensian Tartars so call'd. I have seen their Brethren in the Russian Empire with no difference of language, looks, and manners. So deeply has nature imprinted on every Nation its peculiar marks, that they cannot be alter'd much less entirely desac'd by the distance of places and change of Climate.

(12) Sinan ] Care must be taken not to confound him with Sinan Pa-sha, who was Prime Vizir to Selim I, and slain in the battle with the Chercassians.

(13) Ozdenur] According to the Etymology, wholly of Iron. He was a very famous Champion, of fo great firength, that the Turks believe he never had, nor never will have, his fellow. He was the Turkifo Samplon. Whether he was Governor of any place before this expedition, I dare not determine.

LII

thren.

thren. These Generals act so diligently in conjunction, that they surprise, rout, and disperse the rebels, and reduce again the whole country to the Othman obedience. But the next year, the joy for this happy success is interrupted by a sudden fire breaking out at Constantinople, which rag'd with such violence seven days, that the whole City was almost laid in asses.

He promises and to the Sa-racen: in Spain H 978

VII. In the year 978, the remains of the Spanish Saracens, who had hatherto been ill treated under the dominion of the Christians, rise in arms, seize Garbie (14), and make Mansur, of the race of Beni Achmer (15), King. They moreover vigorously attack the Spaniards, and vanquish them with great flaughter. But perceiving themselves too weak to result their power, they send ambassadors to Selim, imploring his affistance against the Spaniards, the common enemy of the Musulmans. Selim, whose thoughts were trivial to Cryptus, promises aid, but not till Cryptus was taken exhorts them in the mean time to keep as close together as possible, and only stand on the described and dismisses the ambassadors with noble presents.

luvades Gy-

+ Cypius

VIII. Before these were return'd, he had now sent numerous forces under the Prime Vizir Musiapha Pasha, and Capudan Ali Pasha, to take Kybris †, with orders to the latter to guard the seas, that the invasion might not be interrupted, and to the other, to land the army, and closely besiege all the fortresses. Mustapha begins with the siege of Nicosia (16), and vigorously assaults it. But the situation of the place, and obstinacy of the garrison, bassic the Othman valous that year, and oblige the Vizir to turn the siege into a blockade, and put his soldiers into winter-quarters.

and fubduce it H 979 A C. 1571

IX. But the following year 979, Capudan Ali Passa with a first supply of ships, stores, and forces, under the command of Perties Passa, sails from Constantinople, arrives at Cyprus, renews the stege undertaken in vain the last year, and after battering and undermining the walls, earlies the City by assault, notwithstanding the obstinate desense of the besieged. The downsal of Nicosia draws after it the whole Island, which seeing itself destitute of relief, Magusa; first, and then the rest of the towns strive to gain the Conqueror's elemency by a surrender. About the same time, Kylis Ali Passa (17) Governor of Jizzar

1 Famagusta

### ANNOTATIONS.

) the

(14) Garbie] or with the article Ell Garbie, a noted Kingdom, now subject to the Kings of Portugal, and by the Christians call'd Aigarva. It seems to have received its name from its situation to the western Ocean. For Garbie, with the Arabians, is the Western Coast.

(15) Beni Achmer] One of the Race of the antient Kings of the Saracens, whom Ferdinandus Catholicus

drove out of Spain, of whose fortunes I find nothing either in the Tuikifu or Lustianian Histories

(16) Nuofia] with the Turks, Kybris, to which they feein to have given the name of the whole Island, because this was the first City they subdu'd there.

(17) Kylij] Ali Pasha, sirnam'd, Sword, who in the Suburbs of Confiantinople, call'd Topchane, (Arsenal)

takes Tunez + from the Arabians, and annexes it to the Othman to Tremifia

X. Whilft the bounds of the Othman Empire are thus extended to the The Tartari South, in the North the arms of the Tartars are no less successful. ravage Rujfia Deulet Gieras Chan their Prince, affembling all the Seythian Hords under his dominion, enters Russia, and meeting no opposition, penetrates to the Metropolis (18), ravages the country, carries away, or kills fuch of the inhabitants as had not fav'd themselves by flight; and thus laden with spoil returns to Crimaa.

XI. These victories were follow'd by the greatest blow the Othmans The defeat of ever receiv'd fince the defeat of Ildirim Bajazet, by which fortune the Turk at Legante. show'd, that no Empire, though ever so extensive and firmly establish'd. is out of her reach. Als Pasha the Admiral having taken Cyprus, had left the flower of the army to garrifon the towns, difmi s'd the European foldiers fatigu'd with twelve months toil in raising ramparts and other works, and he himfelf was now returning to Constantinople with the fleet and rest of the forces. Thus tailing in the Mediterranean, he is fuddenly attacked by the enemy's fleet, firengthen'd, as some tay, by the assistance of the Germans and Spaniards Capudan Pasha, though by reason of the fewness (19) of his men he could fearce.

### ANNOTATIONS.

on the banks of the Boff-borus built a large Jami The Turks pretend, he laid the foundations of this fami, without any man's privity, in one night, and run up the walls as high as the lower Windows. Next day, People paffing by, and feeing to fpacious a Building, for which they had not before perceived any preparations, the thing was reported to the Sultan as a miracle The Builder being ask'd by the I-mperor how he could soffibly ratie fuch a structure in one night, aniwer'd, it was not his, but the Emperor's work, because his Gally-Slaves built the whole, and his intention was to demonstrate his own skill and the power of the Othman Empire. For if a private man with the help only of thole that were condemn'd to row in the Gallies, could effect fuch a work, what might be expedied from the united efforts of the Othmans against their enemies? By these words he is faid to gain Sultan Se'im's favour to fuch a degree that he advanc'd him with the honour of three Horse-tails, to be Admiral of the whole Sea, and Governor of Africa. However this be, he is rec-

koned among the Turks next to Chairuddin in Sea-Affairs. For when at Leganto the Turks loft their whole fleet, he in one year render'd their navy both stronger and more nume-

(18) Metropolis] The Turks plainly feem to mean Mofco But the Russian Annals say, the Tariars did not then penetrate so far, but only to Tula, (one hundred and ninety Italian miles from Mosco) which from its multitude of Farriers might justly be call'd Vulcanopolis More-over they relate, that the Tartars by their fudden irruption, furpris'd indeed and kill'd many of the Inhabitants, but presently after near Curf-ca were overtaken by the Russian army, who put them almost all to the fword, and recover'd the fpoils they had gotten.

(19) fewness] The Turks impute this defeat folely to their fleet's being weakly mann'd, and confequently, that the mulritude of thips without foldiers was rather an incumbrance than an advantage But perhaps I am not miltaken in thinking this to be an invention of the Turkish Histo-

fearce have any hopes of victory, yet thinking death preferable to flight, bravely ingages with what forces he had, and by his valour, renders the faccess of the battle many hours doubtful. At last, after repelling the enemy feveral times, he is flain whilft he is discharging fometimes the part of a General, fometimes of a common foldier, and by his death causes victory to incline to his enemics. For the Musulman ships immediately take to slight, and for want of a leader are difpers'd, whereas the enemies, inflam'd with more courage, furionly come on, break the diforder'd wings, and fink and take almost the whole ficet (20).

Relia in hu comfort in the

XII. If any man in his most flourishing state has met with fortune's effliction finds frowns, he may judge of Soliman's grief in this unexpected calamity. He had just receiv'd news of the conquest of Cyprus, and whilst he is waiting the return of his victorious fleet, and preparing a triumph, the few that escap'd, arrive and inform him of the destruction of his whole army. The Emperor, otherwise of an invincible mind, was so firuck with the news, that for three days (21), he neither cat nor drank. nor fuffer'd any one to approach him, praying night and day the God and Protector of the Muluimans to have compassion on his people. and remove the dishonour brought on them by this deseat. At last on

### ANNOTATIONS.

rians, as it is, to my knowledge their usual way, when things have not been crown'd with fuccess, to afcribe it not to the enemy's bravery or their own unactiveness, but to some accident, or the General's imprudence. For it is not credible, that the European part of the Turkyb army, when the Christian fleet had the dominion of the sea, should venture to cross so wide a sea, as that between Cyprus and Greece, either in ships for car-riage or in small vessels.

(20) whole fleet ] Both Turks and Christians vary in their accounts of the number of the Turkish ships. Some fay they had two hundred and feventy, others at least one hundred and seventy, but all agree, that no more than twenty eight escap'd. After this bat-tie, the Venetian Ambassador detain'd at Constantinopie, hearing of this victory, defir'd, it is faid, and obtain'd an audience of the Vizir, by whom at his coming with the greatest parade he was thus accosted: " I am fensi-" ble, Elcbibeg\*, ( Prince Ambaffa-" dor ) you have defir'd this audience with no other intention than " to show the fodulluk (oftentation) " natural to your countrymen, and to fee our depression of mind by " the lofs we have fuffer'd, but be-" fore you give a publick testimony of your folly, I advise you as a " friend to lay afide those vain airs, 44 and confider that though you have " indeed shav'd us pretty close, we " have faw'd off your arms. And " as the beard, when thav'd, grows " again, and even thicker than be-" fore in three or four months, fo " our ficet, unless our woods fail " us, will in a short space become " larger and more numerous, whilst 46 you can't fo much as think of reco " vering your arms, for to I call the " fpacious and famous Kingdom of " Cyprus."

(21) three days] After his example, Abmed III the present Emperor of the Turks, when he fent his Vizir Abmed Pasha against the Russians into Moldama, pray'd, as I hear, forty days and nights, and eat nothing till Sunfet, neither did he leave fasting, till news came of his good fuccels.

the fourth day, he takes up the Koran, and accidentally opens (22) to this pallage In the name (of God) merciful, compassionate. I grieve for the wictury of the EUROPEANS over the Inhabitants of the Earth Gladness shall not be given them any more for victory hereafter Selim admonified by this Oracle, that this defeat had not happen'd to the Ochman Empire without the finger of God, return'd ham thanks for his fatherly correction, and recover'd his Spirits almost quite funk with forrow. This calamity feem'd to be foretold by the tall of the wooden roof (23) of the Temple at Mecce, according to the interpretation of the Wife-men, which, that it might be a more in a Emblem of the Empire, Selim order'd it to be rebuilt with brick.

AIII The next year, Kylig Ali Pasha, who had succeeded Ali Pa- He repairs has sia, as High-Admiral, a man of great valour and an excellent sea-man, vades the 11 pairs the fleet with such expedition, that the following summer he Christians H 980 had two hundred and fifty gallies ready. With these he fails from Confrai tinople, and infests the coasts of the Christians wherever he could A. C 1572 attive. The enemy's fleet appears near Evarin (24), which the Ca. , Sales Palle, delicous to wipe out the late difgrace, vigorously attacks. the the approach of night pairing the combatants, after having fought come time with doubtful fortune, and no great loss on either fide, he ranes. Four days after, the Christian Admirals confult how to furgare the Mutalman fleet, which they hope to effect the more eafily. because the high rocks, surrounding the port of Coron, hinder'd a free pro peet, and afforded an opportunity of concealing the fleet. But And Pafea, being informed by his feours of the enemy's intention, fails out of the harbour and draws up his fleet. When the enemics come, they are jurpris'd to see the Turks, ( whom they suppos'd at anchor) on the open ica, and prepar'd to receive them. However they advance, as if they intended to execute their defign, but perceiving they were like to meet with a rough reception, tack about, and suffer the fleet loaden with spoil to return to Constantinople.

### ANNOTATIONS.

122; opens I Inc Turks believe the Kran divination to be infallible. Wherefore, when they are oppress'd with grief, or doubtful how to manage an affair, they read a + Vulg Su- Sura + or two of the Korea, then they open the Book, as chance directs, and read the traine of the full page. If the words correspond with their thoughts, they become a little merry, and prethe to execute their deligns the contrary, if the passage they open to is nothing to their purpole, they not only grow melancholy, but frequently death from their undertaking, and alter their mind.

Nº. XI.

(23) roof ] I have before observid. that the Temple of Mecca, believ'd by the Turks to be Abrabam's Oratory, is without roof: however there is a fort of roof with an opening in the middle, running upwards from the angles of the walls, which, being of timber before, Sultan Selsm order'd to be rebuilt with stone.

(24) Evarin This must be Navarinum, because there is no other Port in the Morea which may be denoted by that name. But I have elfewhere observed the negligence of the Turks in marking the names of Places and

Generals.

M m m

XIV. This

Nova is rehev'd.

XIV. This year the Othman arms were crown'd with the same success on land. For the Germans, imagining all the forces of that Empire to be defiroy'd in the last year's defeat at sea, and that they might without obstacle recover what they had lost, lay slege to Nova a City of Bosnia. To the relief of this place, the Governors of Bosnia and the adjacent countries haften with united forces, surprise the enemies, intent on the fiege, put them to fout, and in token of victory, fend three hundred captives to Constantinople.

Solim repairs Sancia Sophia

XV. Thus the damages sustain'd by the late descat being amply repair'd, Selim to show his piety and grateful sense of so many divine fayours, takes upon him the care of adorning the facred buildings. In pursuance of this design, he begins this year with repairing the injuries time had done to the Temple of Santta Sophia, raises four Minare or Towers of different shapes (25) at the four corners, and demolishing some private houses near it, founds two Medrese of excellent workmanship

Sends a fleet to Spain

XVI. Whilst Selim is intent upon these works, he remembers his promise to the ambasiadors of the Musulmans in Spain, before his Cyprian expedition, of affifting them against the Christians. Wherefore that he might not feem to break his word, and withal might curb the boldness of the Spaniards, by taking his revenge for the blow given him by the Spanish fleet at Lepanto, sends his Vizir Piale Pasha (26) and High-Admiral with a fleet against the Spaniards. When they arrive at Messina, with intention to beliege it, they destroy the adjacent country with fire and fword. The City would doubtless have been taken, as no army appear'd to relieve it, if nature herfelf had not relifted the Musulman efforts. For when they were in great hopes of success, the fea on a fudden grew fo tempefuous, that unless they would hazard all, the Othman forces were oblig d to retire

Tums is taken by the Spaniards, and re-Turks

XVII. The fleet returning home in this manner, the King of Spain with the forces he had defign'd for the relief of Messina, tails to Africourd by the ca, and furprifes Tunes, kills and makes prifoners all the Mutulmans, then fortifies the City with stronger works, and garrilons it with his own soldiers. The chief blame of this loss seem'd to fall on Piale

#### Annotations.

(25) different shapes ] All the Minare of the Turkish Jami, if two or four, are of the same form. If six, four are the same, and adorn'd with three Sherife, and two which are erected in the Angles of the outer Charem, are lower, with but two Sherifs. Only Sands Sophia has four Towers of different forms. When the Turks are usk'd the reason, their usual answer is, the Temple of Santia Sophia being a structure of immitable Workmanship, the Emperor was

pleas'd it should have different Minare, that it might not in any respect be like other Jami

(26) Piale ] There was another of this name under Sultan Soliman, but whether of the fame family, or call'd fo by chance, I can't fay. The latter feems to me most probable, because, except the royal race, sew or no families are preferv'd by the Turks, besides those of Ibrabim ogli and Kio. pruliogia

Pasha, because he had return'd too securely with the whole sleet, and lett no part of it to guard the African coasts. Wherefore he is dismissed, and Sinan Pasha + the former Vizir put in his room, who in the year 982, is sent by the Emperor with the whole sleet to recover H 982 Tunis. Sinan Pasha having landed his troops, instantly orders the A C 1573 City, and a neighboring fortress, call'd Chalkulvadi (27), to be attack'd, both which, after several assaults, he takes, and facrisces the garrisons to the Ghosts of the Muiulmans, slain by the Christians in Tunis the last year. Then he razes Chulkulvadi to the ground, and repairing the walls of Tunis, leaves there a sufficient garrison

XVIII. About the fame time, fifteen hundred Hungarians come to-Some Hungarians gether and confult how to surprise Segetwar 1. Japher Pasha, Go-Segetwar vernor of Giula, being inform'd of it, lies in ambu'h for them, with 1 Signib at least five hundred Janizaries, and attacking them as they were carelessly marching along, routs them and sends the best of the captives to Constantinople

XIX. About the end of this year, Selim builds a large and most ele-Selim's death, gant Bath (28), in that part of the palace, which looks to the East. Whilst the Mortar yet exhal'd virulent steams, the Emperor first enters the Bath, and is some writers are to be credited, drinks a large dose of wine to expel the noxious vapours, this is follow'd with a light headach, then a giddiness, and at length a fort of Apoplexy, which, on the eleventh day of his distemper, and the 28th of the month Shaban, cairies him out of the world. His son Murad comes to Constantinople the beginning of Ramazan, and is immediately saluted Emperor by all the Great men, who testify their grief for the death of his sather in elegant orations. Sultan Selim, after the usual solemnities, is buried in a Turbè near Sapéta Sophia.

XX Sultan Selim liv'd fifty two, and reign'd eight years five months and character, and nuncteen days. He was a Prince of great valour, but not always to fortunate as to have his defigns crown'd with fuccess, of an invincible mind in all circumstances, in counsels ready and secret (29), a lover of justice and a good name, liberal, so merciful, that nature seem'd to have indu'd him with a gentler disposition than his predeceilors, familiar and facetious in his talk with his domesticks, extreme tond of the learned as well as of mimicks, very constant in his daily

#### ANNOTATIONS.

· 2~) Challvlvadi] It feems to be the itrong Caftle of Goleta at the entrance into the Bay of Tunis

(28) Bath ] This is a very noble firucture, divided into forty rooms, all of marble within, and without of iquare stone. It stands in the middle between the apartments in the Seraglio design'd for the men, and those for the women, so that it immediately

strikes the eye of all that pass the Bosphorus.

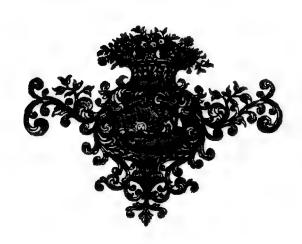
(29) fecret ] A rare quality in a man given to drunkenness. But I should rather chuse to ascribe this secrety to the custom of the Court, whose profound silence I have elsewhere objectively, than to the natural temper of this Emperor.

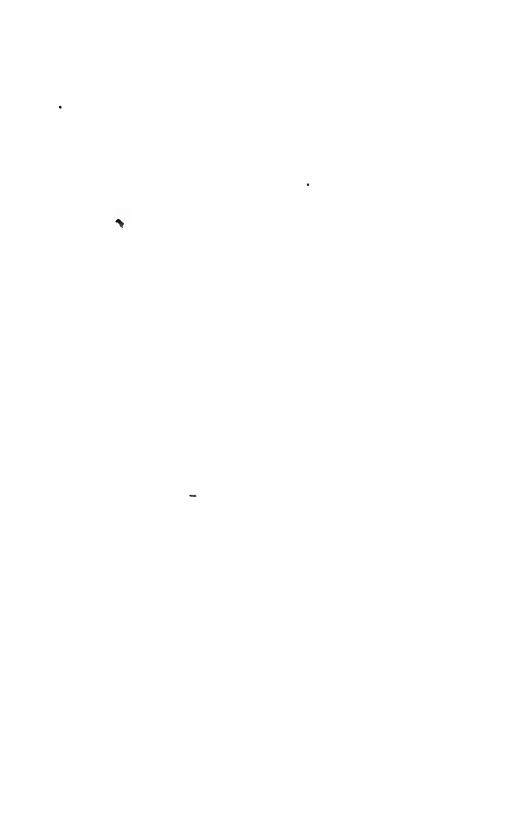
and nightly devotions. However some Historians, who either had a better opportunity of knowing what pass'd in the inner Scraglio, or sought to please their readers with the novelty of things, say, that under pretense of devotion, he gave himself up entirely to wine and lust in the secret apartments of his palace. It is certain, he put on a great show of Religion in publick, and if ar any time his actions seem'd to swerve from the paths of reason, it was ascrib'd rather to divine inspiration than the vice of drunkenness.

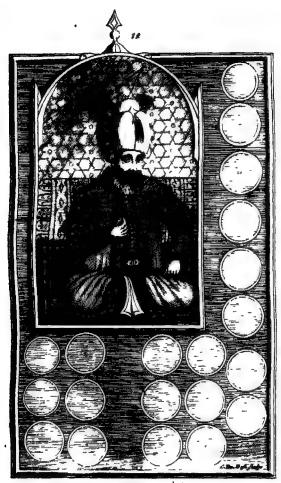
## Cotemporary with SELIM II. reign'd in Europe.

In Germany, MARIMILIAN. 1565-78.
In England, ELIZABETH. 1558-1602.
In France, CHARLES IX. 1560-74.

The End of the Reign of SELIM II.







MURAD III . Twelfth EMPEROR of the Turks in the Year 1576.





The REIGN of

## M U R A D III.

Twelfth EMPEROR of the TURKS.

### BOOK III. CHAP. VI.

I SELIM being remov'd out of this world, his fon Murad, the Murad we third of that name, succeeds to the Empire, in the 3 fft year teeds he for of his age, and of the Hejira 983, and spends the three first summers 14 983 on the arts of peace, settling the publick affairs, and making warlike A C 15-5 preparations.

II Things being thus ready, he refolves in the year 986, to wage Goes to war war with the Persians. He appoints for General Mastapha Pasha, a finant brave warrior, whose conduct had been chiefly signalized in the Crypti- Mastapha, and gives him the forces of Arzirum and Diarbekir. A c 13,78 Mustapha, not to disappoint his Sovereign's expectation, repairs sift the casses on the borders, fortisses the City Kars, almost demolished by several sieges, and builds store-houses there, to the end, want of corn, which had ever obstructed former expeditions, might not occasion new muchicis. After this, he goes and closely besieges Chaldiran\* a strong town of Persia, which after several assaults he at length takes

III Prefently after, he hears that Tokmak chan (1), General of the Vini, aither Persians, was coming with a considerable army to relieve the town, them

### Annotations.

(1) Tokmak] This name fignifies originally a Mallet or Peftle or Rammer, with which stakes are fix'd into the ground, but figuratively is ascrib'd to a man, who presses some affair immoderately or insolently. Hence the common saying Balformuze tokmak gields, the Mallet comes upon our bead, that is, the man is incessantly No. 11.

urging us. And indeed this does not feem to be the name of a family, because no Persian race was ever so call'd, but to be given by the Turks. For it is usual with them, to call not only the Generals of their enemies, but also whole Nations, by names, though not very honorable, yet however in some respect analogous. Thus N n n



against whom he sends the Basha's of Arzirum and Diarbehr with part of his forces. These Generals surprising the enemies, vanquish and put them to slight. The reward of this victory was Tistis, a noted town of Armenia, which is taken immediately after the battle and destroy'd with fire and sword Moseover Mustapha Pasha leads his victorious troops towards Shemalic, but the rains preventing all c peditions, he leaves Ozdemir ogli (2) Othman Pasha and the Beglerbeg of Erzenurrumi (3) to guard the towns he had taken, and returns himself into Europe.

Munevyeber revolts to the Turks.

Tartari.

IV. Mean while, after Tokmak's defeat, when Muslapha was full about Tistes, Munevieher (4), a Christian of noble extraction, who had hitherto been subject to the Persuns, comes and delivers him the keys of the towns under his command, and promises future obe-

### ANNOTATIONS.

Augustus the present King of Poland, when he was yet but Elector of Saxony, and General of the Impenalists in Hungary, was commonly nam'd, Nal Kyran, Horse shoe breaker. They use to call the Jews, Chifud\*, Dogs: the Persians, Kyzilbash, Redheads: the Armenians, Bokbebs\*, Turd-eaters the Georgians, Bilyeiji, Lice-eaters the Scythians |, Liash yein, Carrion-eaters the Indians, Dilenn, Physicians the Arabians, Akyljiz, Mad those that are subject to them, especially the Greeks, Bosnuz fiz coyun, Sheep without Horns. those that live on the Continent, Aiabajı, Waggoners Islanders, Jemiji, Mariners the Albanians, Jigiet 11, Sellers of Lungs the Moldavians, Bogdani nadan, inhuman Bogdani the Walachians, Chingianic\* the Bulga-· rians and Sirbians, Haidud, Robbers the Dobrujans, Chitak\* the Cyngari, Firaunt, Pharaonites the Raguzian, Chafus, Spies, Betrayers: the Bosmans, Potur, Destroyers, Inroaders the Ruffians, Ruft menktus, Perverte the Polanders, Fodul Gaus, boafting, arrogant Infidels the Germans, Gurur Kiafir, proud Blasphemers the Venetians, Balykys, Fishers . the Italians and all the Frank, fireng Hezar reng, of a thousand colours, that is, decentful: the French, Amen, crafty the Dutch, Pennrehi\*, Cheefe-mon-gers: the English, Chokaji\*, Clo-thiers the Spaniards, Tembel, idle. and in this manner they give Nicknames to almost every Nation that comes to their knowledge

(2) Ozdemu (gli] Ltymologically, all of iron. There was, 's I have related) a famous Chammio of this name among the Turbs, of whom no less things are faid than of Hamzo, that is Samifor Buti Ozdemu o is here was so call'd from the fortunde of mind he was endu'd with

(3) Erzeminum | I cont certainly tell what City or Province is month by this name, but it feems to be covered from the Tank, fince that is no fuch Paffielle now in the virial

Turkifb Empire.

(4) Munevalar | He feets to his been one of the George of Governors, for there was at that time to Co-Prince, Lord of feyers' and those fortified Towns Chiling Writers mention him in the life of M ad II and fay M Demen Pasta, a Relation of Mujlapha, to whom after his death the command of the airn's was committed, unlet coost or friendfhip, invited Municipal is to conto him, with intention to have fire him in chains to Confirst a ,! But he knowing Meben I's defign, took with him fifty truffy Comp. more, and when he came to Menemed Pasha, order'd his Attendants on pretense of curiolity to go with him to the Audience, by whole affiftance he cut off the heads of the first that would have feiz'd him, and cfcap'd from the reft, after giving Mebened Passa himself several wounds.

dience

## 12. Murad III.

Book III.

dience to the Othman Empire. He is kindly receiv'd by Mustapha Palha, and after some time turns Mahometan, for which he is rewarded with the Sanjak of Achifea (5), and made Beglerbeg of Tifles lately taken.

V After Mustaphu's departure, the Winter became so severe that Othman Patha the Othman Soldiers not us'd to the cold, daily perish'd in their Camp. defeated by As the whole army was in danger, Ozdemir Ogli Othman Pasha, sends his forces into Winter quarters at fome distance from one another, because there was no City in those desert and ravag'd Parts capable of receiving the whole army. Euris Chan the Persian General, having intelligence of this, unexpectedly falls upon the Othmans thus dispers'd and makes a great flaughter.

22I

VI. Othman Pasha, otherwise an able General, was not a little trou- Who are afterbled at this misfortune, in the fear it would be imputed to his negli- waids routed gence. Wherefore with intention to be reveng'd, or wipe out the difgrace by an honorable death, he affembles his army in the midft of winter, and with doubtful fortune fights the Persians above twenty times in feveral places. At last, the enemies to the number of thirty thousand, incouraged by their late victory, furiously attack Othman under the conduct of Imameuli. The Battle lasted four days, but in the end the Persians, repuls d by the valour of the Othmans, are almost all flain Ozdemir ogli, iccing his aimy weaken'd with fo many ingagements, repairs the wal sof Shemabie, and leaves there Japher Palba. with good part of the army, whilst with the rest he retires into Europe to give an account of what he had done

VII The best part of the Turkish army being thus detain'd in Persia, Mustapha the Chin of the Crim Tartars attempts to throw off the Othman sail yoke. Whereupon Murad orders Mustapha Pasha to go and extingui h the flame in its buth Mustapha readily obeys the imperial order, and marching over mount Caucajus by the streights of Demur Capi, palles the Tanais in boats, imprizes the Chan not fearing any danger from a quarter never yet mavered by man, and cutting off his head, fends it to the Port.

VIII The domestick chamics being thus suppressed, the Prime Vizir The Perhant 15 cent in the year 988 with a great army against the Persians, who seeing sue for peace.

H 948 their whole nation threaten'd with destruction, lay aside their warlike A C 1280. andor, the for peace, and for that purpose fend an ambassador Ibrahim Chan, a man of great fubrilty. He so moves the Vizir (who had now enter d the Persian borders) both by his speeches and presents, that the army was immediately ordered to march back, and the ambaffador tent with recommendatory letters to the Port.

IX. But Murad was not of the fame mind with the Vizir. He Butis repuls'd thought it too carly, the enemy not being yet quite exhaufted, to

### ANNOTATIONS

brant peace, and dishonorable for an army, prepar'd at so great expence, to be induc'd by decentful speeches of peace to waste the time idly. Wherefore he difmiffes the ambaffador with a refufal of his petition, and deprives Sman Paste of the honour and office of Vizir, for taking upon him without his privity so weighty an affair, and advances Ferbad Pasta in his room.

Ferbad's fruit-H 991

X. The new Vizir, in the year 991, with numerous forces enters less expedition the Persian borders, and repairs the walls of Revan which had been into Persia fome time in ruins, but either out of cowardice, or being bribed by A C. 1583, the enemies, he did nothing elfe worthy of memory what is more, he loft Tybris, and after some defeats, retuins in the beginning of winter with his army to Constantinople Murad, thus disappointed in his expectations of this general, deprives him also of the vizuship, and conters it on Ozdemsrogli Othman Pasha, whose heroic valous and mintary prudence had before been display'd in the same war, and sends him, adorned with the enfigns of vizir and generalishmo, to the army

Othman Pafha retakes Tibris.

XI. Othman Palba, that he might the fooner meet the Persians, winters his forces in Castamons, and early in the spring of the veat A C 158c 993, recovers Tybres, taken by the Persians when Ferhad had the command. As he found this city was entirely commanded by a neighbouring hill, he builds there a castle (6) with such expedition, that on the thirtieth day, the walls were in a condition to withfiand the affaults of the enemies,

mbabitants.

and killsall the . XII. Whilf he was employ'd in storing and fortifying this castle, some of the inhabitants of Tybris affront the Janizaries placed there in garrison, in which dispute, when they fall from words to blows, some of the foldiers are wounded, and others killed Othman Pasta, inrogid at this accident, and fearing a mutiny, orders all the inhabitants, except the women and children, to be put to the fword, and their goods to be distributed to the soldiers. After which, peopling the town with new colonies, he places Japher Pasha over it with the title of Vizir

In hi seturn, vanquifies the Perfiant, and dies

XIII The affairs of those parts being fettled, he resolves to return into Europe with the best part of the forces. But in his march, he is met at Sofian (7) by Hamze Mirza (8), the bravest general the Persians then had, with a great army. Both sides fight: obstinately from fun-riling till midnight for their country. Hamse Mirza ran up and down the army one while he charged in the front, another

### ANNOTATIONS.

(6) Castlel I cannot meet with the name, either in the Turkifb or Chri-fian Historians.

(7) Sofian] A well-known province of Perfia. This word originally fignifies Wifeman, being a corruption of the Greek rogot. There is also a metre in mulick call'd Sofian.

(8) Hamze Mirza] He seems to be of Tariarien extraction, and by some accident to come into Perfia For Muza, as I have observed, is with the Tariars the fame as Beg with the Turks, Chan with the Perfians, and with us, Prince,

while rally'd his diforder'd troops in the rear, and exhorting his intent to behave valuantly, performed the duty of a good General both in words and actions. On the contrary, Othman Pasha, by reason of siekness gottes in his march, not being able to manage a horse, rid on a mule, and because he could not, through his indisposition, incourage his men by his deeds, defires them with his voice not to fully the glory of the Othman aims. At length the Persians are forc'd to give ground to the Turks. The night after the victory, Othman not to much exhausted by his distemper, as by the labour of the foregoing day, breathed his last, and so crown'd with martyrdom a life he had render'd illustrious by his exploits.

XIV. By his death the army being defirite of a leader, and feeing sman Police themselves surrounded with enemies, chuse Sinan Pasha (9) for general, repolisitheP and purfue their intended march. But Hamze Mirza tollows them very close, and fince he dat'd not, by reason of his late loss arrack the Othmans in the field, harraffes them with continual skirmishes, lave in ambush at narrow passes, and does them more damage than a defeat. Having thus weaken'd their aimy and affembled more forces, he attacks them at last at Selmas (10), and juriously assaults their camp Here. whilft he is leading on his men, and encouraging them by his example, he falls among the foremost, and by his death, frees the Othmans from great danger. For the Persians, struck with their General's mistortune, inflantly retire, and give the Mululmans an open passage to Far.

XV When the Othman forces, by reason of the imalness of their Feehad Pass number, were thus obliged to quit their conquests, the Persians re-al- highs the P funs with femble their army, and in the year 994 besiege Tybris, where Japher vaninge Pasha commanded. To his relief, Ferhad Pasha (11) is sent with numerous torces, who compels the Persians to rate the siege, builds a A C 15, new castle betwixt Tybris and Revan, and between these, as strong bulwarks, keeps his army four whole years. In the lummer, he fights with the enemies, and that he might be nearer their borders, paffes the winter in Erzirum. At length he penetrates into Giurissian, and subdume the castles of that province, builds two towns, Lurs and Gr. unje. After this, he joins battle with Carebagy (12) Mehemed Chan Ge-

ANNOTATIONS.

(9) Sinan The tame, who for his negligence in Perfia, was (as I have laid, difinified from his office. For it is not unufual with the Turks, to reflore their discarded generals to their former, or even higher posts Hence, while in banishment, they have prefents fent them even by their enemies, in the fear they should, in case of being reftor'd, do them an injury.

as well as to the Maps, but feems however to be in the province of Sophian, fince the Turkift army', furrounded and continually harrafs'd by the Persians, could not probably have marched very far

(11) Ferbad Pasha] A famous Turk-1/h General, who acquir'd great reputation in this war.

(12) Carebagy] Seems to be the na-(10) Selmas A city unknown to me tive country of this General.

Nº. 11.

000

neral

neral of the Persians, puts him to flight, and so disperses the whole Persian army, that the forces of the Red-heads dar'd not from that time appear, or try the chance of war.

Peace is made with the Per-Gani.

XVI. After so many defeats, the Persian, taught by the loss of the provinces of Revan, Ginnje, and Carebeg, that the Othmans were not to be refuted, begins to think in earnest of fuing for peace. Mr. rad not feeming very forward to grant it, he promifes to relinquish all the countries subdued by the Othmans, and send his brother Haidarjan to the invincible Port, as a pledge that no Persian army should eyer enter the Othmen dominions, or make any private or open attempt against that empire. On these conditions sworn on both sides, a peace A C. 1587, is at last concluded, and an end put to so long and bloody a war.

A mutiny at Genflantenopie. H 997.

A. C 1589.

But the troops who had hitherto inlarg'd the bounds of the empire, begin, after the peace, to rage against their own bowels. The Defterdar or High-Treasurer was accused by the Janizaries of having de-Wherefore being flirred up by based the coin, and paid them with it his enemics, they flock together, and threaten to kill him in his palace. The Defterdar being informed by his friends of his imminent danger, flies to the Imperial Palace, and humbly begs Murad's protection against the fury of the foldiers. The rebels hearing this, surround the palace, and infolently require the Treasurer to be delivered to them. On the Emperor's refusal, they are more urgent, guard all the avenues. and threaten destruction and death to the Sultan, no less than to all the great men.

The Janizaries are quell'd and pardon'd.

XVIII. In this diffress, Murad thinking it proper to proceed to extremities, leaft the imperial majefty should fall into contempt, arms all his chamberlains and Baltaji (13), and orders the gates to be opened, and the Janizaries to be attacked as infidels and disobedient, His commands are vigorously executed, and preferring the Emperor's life to their own, they rush like lions on the disorderly Janiza-One hundred and seventeen rebels are kill'd at the first onser, before they could come together, and of the rest, some are dispersed, and some fly to their homes. At last, Sinan Pasha, the Prime Vizit intercedes, and by his speeches pacifies the Emperor's indignation, representing that all were not to be equally punish'd, that the first authors of the mutiny ought indeed to be made examples of, but to punish in the same manner those that were only carried away with the torrent, would be both unfit and disadvantagious to the State. Murad, mov'd by these representations, pardons the rest, and commands only the ring-leaders to be thrown into the sea. The sedition being thus suppress'd, the soldiers humbly return to their obedience.

### ANNOTATION &

Palace, Chasculler, pure and faithful (13) Baltaji For this fervice, they are called to this day in the Imperial Servants. XIX- To



## Book III. 12. Murad III.

Mix. To remove all occasions of future disturbances of this with Marad sends the Vizir Sinan Passa in the year 1002, with a great at more more more my into Hungary, and by him takes some towns. At the approach of H. 1002. winter, he orders the troops to be quarter'd in Runnelea, and in the spinar, H. 1002. Tanik (14) to be invested. This city is also, after a siege of eighteen H 1003. days, added to the Othman dominion, and then the Vizir settling the A C 1595 affairs of those parts, returns to Constantinople.

XX. After having thus vanquished both rebels and enemies, Murad Murad sdeath the same year lest his earthly for a heavenly Kingdom. He lived sifty, and reign'd twenty years, eight months. He had as many sons as he reign'd years, who being all strangled by the command of the eldest, followed their father to immortality (15). All the Turkish Historians I have seen, strangely pass over in slience, the character and manners of this Emperor, contrary to their constant custom.

### Annotations.

(14) Yank] Yavarinum, or Yaurinum, with the Germans, Raab, which the Christian Historians say, was surrendered to the Turks by the treachery of the Count de Hardek.

(15) immortality] The Turks account all their Emperors Holy, and

therefore mention their Avanoi mans (decease) in the most honourable terms, as, "This year the existence of his "Majesty, with the consent of his own desire, departed from the Port of Pride, (world) to everlasting "Possessions."

Cotemporary with MURAD III. reign'd in Europe.

In Germany, RODOLPHUS. 1575-1611.
In England, Elizabeth. 1558-1602.
In France, Henry IV. 1589-1610.

The End of the Reign of MURAD III.





The REIGN of

## MAHOMET III.

Thirteenth EMPEROR of the TURKS.

## BOOK III. CHAP. VII.

**I URAD** dying in the year 1003, on Friday the endinger VI Jemazzul evvel, his Son Mahomet succeeds as well a con-Hungarian war, as to the Empire, and, (as I have faid, for the second ginning of his reign with the blood of his mineteen brother. (

II. By this means having effablish'd his Kingdom, he to be

ikes Egys

thoughts to finish the war in Hungary begun by his father, that he rough . terwards give himfelf up entirely to repofe, of which he was very role, and quietly tafte the pleasures (2) of a crown (3 10 mm. 1 cnemies the mose readily to a peace without any disparagement to it. Othman Majefty, he marches the next year with a great are y mass , C. 1595. Hungary, belieges Egre, fruitlefly attempted by his Predections, and fo harraffes the Garrison with his frequent assaults, that at length, deep, and ing of relief, they furrender the Town.

HI A E

## ANNOTATION 5.

(1) Brothers The Christian Writers fay, he kill'd twenty two brothers, and threw ten of his Father's concubines, that were with child, into the fea. But I chuse to follow here the Turkifb Historians.

(2) pleasures] Foreign Historians agree in this, and fay he was more delighted with fenfuld placures chafame and glory

(3) crown | 1 15 1 to be 0 ftood of the Emperor hands, and of the Empire For is to g as b. liv'd, tho' a peace var ence made, the Turks had conflimed another with the Germans with various faccels



MAHOMET. III
Sherteenth EMPEROR of the TURKS
in the Year 1594
Stem in Original in the Straylor



III. After the taking of Egre, when by reason of the approach of Vanquisher winter, he could make no farther progress, he thinks of returning to Constantinople. Whilst he is on his march, an army of Christians such appear, and so furiously attack the camp of the Orlineus, that the Musulmans, unable to sustain the shock, are forc'd to give ground. The enemies press forward, and penetrate as far as the tents where the royal treasures were kept. But here the Germans breaking open the coffers, and surpris'd at the immense riches, betray the victory for money. For the Sultan, perceiving them intent on the spoil, attacks them first with only his courtiers, and slays upon the very treasures those who now imagin'd the Othmans entirely routed. The rest of the army also admonssh'd by the Emperor's example, rally again, and so bravely charge their enemies, that not a man of those that had enter'd the camp escap'd to tell the news.

IV. After this victory, he comes to Confiantmople in triumph, and Dies. content with what he had acquir'd, makes peace with the Christians, in order to enjoy, what he was naturally inclin'd to, ease and pleasure. So he lives in profound repose till the year 1012, when desirous of an everlasting Kingdom, and weary of the allurements of this world, A. C. 1603. he departs to an eternal palace. He reign'd nine years and two months, but how long he liv'd is not mention'd in history, only it is certain, he died in the vigour of his age. He perform'd but one memorable action, namely, his expedition into Hungary, in which he took Egre, and routed the Christians, from whence he acquir'd the name of Egre.

The End of the Reign of MAHOMET III.





### The REIGN of

## AHMED I.

Fourteenth EMPERGE of the TURKS.

## BOOK W. CHAP. VIII.

Abusi fucceeds. H 1012. A. C. 1603. In the throad being wacant by the death of Mahomet Egre, in fill'd by the four aliented on the 9th of the month Rejeb, in the year 1012, when he was yet fearer fifteen years old, and thus what had never before been done, the reins of the Government were committed to a youth, which gave occasion to the following veric of a certain Poet: "To him alone, of all the fons of Othman, it was " granted to enjoy the Empire before he had been possessed of a Standard (1).

He is disturb'd by two Ravagars.

II. But he demonstrates in the first years of his Reign, that the scepter was not unworthily put into the hands of a youth. His deceased father's love of ease had render'd the Asiatic soldiery, whom the Persian wars had always seept employ'd, so insolent, that they imagin'd it allowable to set upon and spoil not only Travellers but whole provinces and towns: Complaints had in his father's time been frequently brought to Court, and Generals also sent to suppress the rebels, but either allur'd with the hope of prey themselves, or negligent of their duty, they were so far from putting a stop to these proceedings, that the number of plunderers increasing, all Anatolia was miterably ravag'd. Among these the two chief were Calenderogli and Ta-

### ANNOTATIONS.

(1) Standard] that is, before he Standard, the Ensign of Power, to was of mature age For till then, any Person. the Turks never deliver a Sanjak or



A H M E D I
Tourtee nth Emperor of the Turks

in the Year 1603
From an Original in the Scraptio.



vel (2), who made the greatest and most bloody incursions into the Othman dominions, and dar'd even to attack the troops.

III. Sultan Abmed thinking, if these were quell'd, the whole se-They are dition would be casily extinguish'd, and peace restor'd in the east, fends about winter the Prime Vizir Coja Marad Pasha, adorn'd with the imperial Signet, to Aleppe with his guards, with orders to quarter his forces there, and in the spring to lead them, in conjunction with such of the Asiaticks as remain'd faithful, against the ravagers. Murad Palba executes the Emperor's commands with no less bravery than success, vanquisties Calenderogly (3) at last after several bloody conflicts near Marash in the mountains Kioikiesen, disperses his whole army, kills all the common foldiers, and drives him alone without any followers into Arak a province of Persia. Then he turns his arms against Tavel the other ravager, who was coming to the affishance of his companions. But Tavil, without staying for the Mu'ulmans, marches with his forces towards them, and gives them battle, but by the valour of the Janizaries is defeated, and torc'd to fly into Persia,

IV. There he finds Calenderogle, and with him enters into mea- They emfures, detrimental both to friends and foes. By their infligations the with the Perpeace between the Othmans and Persians, hitherto inviolable on both same. sides, is disturb'd, and the Persians, mov'd by the speeches of the rebels, refuse to deliver them up when requir'd. Abmed consider'd this as an indignity, and done in contempt of his government, and therefore resolves to be severely reveng'd.

V. To this end, he fends Murad Pasha the Vizir, (whose conduct Murad Pasha he had before tried in quelling the rebels) with a numerous army from mache a Constantinople towards the Persian borders, but not with the success same he had expected. For as the expedition had been undertaken fomething late, and the march render'd more tedious by the difficulty of the ways, it was near winter when the Vizir came to Tybris, and therefore impossible to effect any thing with his wearied troops in io advanc'd a season. Whereupon he orders part of the forces to winter in Diarbekir.

VI. Early in the spring, resolving to repair by his speed what he Dies, and his had loft by his flowness the last summer, he affembles his army, and to Nash Paprepares to invade the Persian provinces, but just as he is ready to he A C 1604

Annotations.

(2) Tavil ] Tall, it is a firname, fuch as is frequently given by the Turks to their Generals on account of their endowments of body or mind, 21, fasil Ahmed Pasha, Abmed Pasha the Learned, (the same that took Candia.) Shishman Ibrahim Pasha, Ibrabim Pasha the Fat Shaitan Ibrahim Pasha, Ibrahim Pasha the Devil, Seraskier in the last war with the Ger- . Empire to the last extremity.

mans, Elmaz Mebemed Pasha, Mebemed Passa the Adamant, who fell in the battle of Zenia,

(4) Calenderogii ] Son of Calender 2 famous robber, whose exploits are full celebrated in fongs call'd Sharky, He must not be confounded with one of the same name, who under Mabo. met I. almost reduc'd the Othman

march.

1

march, he is feiz'd with a diffemper, and dies shortly after in his tent. H. 1914. His office is conferred on Nasab Pasha (4), who after a year's stay A C. 160s there to as little purpole, leads back the army much weaken'd by fickhels and fatigue to Conflantinople.

Mehmed Pafba

H 1015

VII. At his arrival, he is accused to the Emperor of floth and negbesieges Re- ligence, and on conviction beheaded. Mehmed Pasha is made Prime Vizir in his room, and commanded to profecute the Persian war with more vigour, and that he might be in greater readiness, to winter at Aleppe. From hence he departs in the year 1015 with a very A. C. 1606. numerous army, and entering the Persian borders, lays close siege to Revan, and furiously assaults it forty days: but repuls'd by the bravery of the garrison, he is forc'd at last to raise the siege with great loss,

Is fbrangled, and fucceeded

VIII. Mebined Pass, in his return from this expedition, when he my Held Pe- comes to Erzirum, and intends to fend his forces into winter quarters, is in pursuance of the imperial mandate strangled by Capujs ba-A C. 1606. fbs. His-post is conferr'd on Halis Pasta, a brave and prudent General, who warn'd by the examples of his predecessors, spends the whole winter in providing warlike stores, that he might the next spring act against the enemy without any impediment.

Abmed s death

IX. Thus whilst there was great hope of humbling the pride of Persia, it is blasted by a sudden fever, which, the same year Persia was threaten'd with destruction, namely in 1026, seizes the Emperor. A C 1617 It is at first disregarded as not seeming dangerous, but afterwards so increases every day, that Abmed, glutted with human affairs, leaves the toils of Empire, and flies to Paradifiacal pleasures.

His character-

X. He liv'd twenty nine, and reign'd fourteen years, his three fons Othman, Murad, and Ibrahim, were all feen by posterity on the Turkish throne. Not to mention his other virtues, he excell'd all his predecessors in liberality and magnificence, so that he has been charg'd by some with profuseness. He was very fond of building, witness the Jami (5), Rival, and Neighbour of Sancta Sophia in the Hyppodrome, built with so great care and expense, that to finish it, the treasures of the whole Empire, collected during his father's long repose, scarce fuffic'd. Whilft this work was in hand, the Sultan is faid to visit it every week, and pay the workmen their wages himself.

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(4) Nasub Paska] In the Koran, Benjamin, Joseph's brother is call'd Nasub, and from that time this name began to be common with the Mabometans.

(5) Jame ] This Building in magnificence, though not in largeness, ex-cells Santia Sophia. Beffice the numberiefs offiaments on the outlide of 'the walls, there are above two hundred gold tables hung up on the in-

fide, on which are ingraven the names of the Prophets, with fentences out of the Koran, every one whereof it is faid, coft fifty thousand dollars, being fet each with fixty one Diamonds. It is certain, so much money was expended on this structure, that after it was finish'd, upon an exact calculation, every dram of stone or mortar was found to cost three Aspers.

The End of the Reign of AHMED I.



Othman II,
Seateenth EMPEROR of y TURKS
in the Year 1618
From an Original in the Seraple



MUSTAPH.1 Fefteenth Emperor of y Turks



## The REIGNS of

## MUSTAPHA and OTHMAN II.

## BOOK III. CHAP. IX.

I A HMED being deat, is succeeded in the beginning of the Mustapha sucyear 1027, by his younger brother Muflaj ha (1) But as he ceeds H 1027. govern's the Othman state with little or no care of the publick affairs. A C. 1618. and gave hi nicht up entirch to his lufts, he was in the fourth month of his reign, by the unanymous confent of all the Great men, remov'd from the throne to the pri on of the feven Towers.

II Multapha being thus deposed, Sultan Othman, son of Ahmed, ascended the throne in the eighth year of his age, whom, on account of his youth, they had before thought usfit to wield the scepter, and therefore had pais'd by, though he had more right to the Empire than Mustapha, who was choicn as a contemplative and moffensive man.

III. In this reign appear'd at Constantinople a strange fight, fuch as had A fight in the there never been, nor perhaps ever will be, feen. In the year 1029, Heavens on the 28th of the month Rebiul evvel, was beheld in the heavens a crooked (word five times as long as a (pear, and three foot broad. It extended from East to West, and for a whole month shone with great brightness after sun-set. The astrologers and those that pretended to forctell things to come being consulted, declare it to be a fign of victory and increase of Empire to the Othmans. The same astrologers interpret as a bad omen the frost which happen'd about the same time the next year, and was so great, that the inhabitants of Constantinople faicly went to and from Iskinder on foot.

## ANNOTATIONS.

the greatest things to all their Emperors, except this Mustapha, whom they repretent as exceeding all the rest in vice, as much as his ancestors

(1) Mustapha] The Turks ascribe did him in virtue. He might be call'd the Sard mapolus of the Othmans, if he had flown the like magnanimity in his death with that Prince.

Nº. 11.

Qqq

IX. Othman

IV. Othman in contempt of this prediction undertakes, in the fummer after the hard winter, an expedition against the Poles, recovers Choten (2), which they had taken by affault, sends the Chan of Tartamy with the Tartarian and Turkish forces to ravage the inmost part of Poland, and he himself so surrounds and presses the enemics croops with his own, that they were at last compell'd to sue for peace. peror grants their request, and making a peace on his own conditions. returns about winter laden with spoil and captives to Constant inople.

He is depos'd, and Muflapha reftor'd.

V. But the foldiery unus'd to youthful Government, whilft they live idly at Constantsnople, being stirr'd up by Mustapha's party, taile the next year a furious fedition, most barbarously kill, without any regard to the blood from whence he was fprung, the Emperor, a young man of great hopes, in the fourth year of his reign, and the twelfth of his age, and bury him near his father in the Jams, which he had built. Then they release Mustapha, whom they had before depos'd and shut up in the prison of the seven Towers, and re-establish him on the Throne.

Who for his firingled.

VI. But neither was his reign very long. He had conceal'd, whilf vices a sgain deshround and in prison, not corrected, the vices of his perverse nature, and there is put the foldiers in hopes, that having tafted of the cup of affliction, he would become better, and alter his courie of life and government. In this expectation, when they had replac'd hun on the til one, thinking himself out of fortune's power, he returns to his old vices, plays the tyrant, seeks to destroy his deposers, manifestly negled's the adminuftration of affairs, and acts nothing in words or deeds worthy of memory. When he had thus tyranniz'd, rather than reign d, fitteen months, he is again dethron'd by the Great men, rejecting the dominion of a fool, and with the greatest ignoming put on an ass, an i carried amidft the scoffs and infults of the mob to the prison of the feven Towers, where foon after by the command of his fuccceffor Murad IV. he is strangled.

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(2) Chotin ] A City of Moldavia on the Tyras over-against Caminiec, fortified both by nature and art. The walls in my time were repair'd by the Turks after the battle of Hurafus, with the addition of fome modern

works, so that it may now justly be counted the Bulwark of the wnole Empire against the Russians and Poles But of this more largely in my account of antient and modern Molda-

The End of the Reigns of OTHMAN II, and MUSTAPHA,



Seventeenth Emperor of & Turks.

In the Wear 1622 Throm an Original in the Seraglio



## The REIGN of

# MURAD IV. Sirnam'd GAZI.

## Seventeenth EMPEROR of the TURKS.

#### BOOK III. CHAP. X.

I. C Ultin Murad, whose brave exploits acquir'd him the name of Murad suc-Gazi or the Valiant, was born in 1018, and upon the depo- eeeds H 1032. fing of Multapha, in ceeded to the Othman Empire the 4th of Ziul- A. C. 1622. cade, in the year of the Heftra 1032.

II in the very beginning of his reign he show'd, how much better He vanquishes it was for the Othmans to obey an active young man than a fluggard bel. Abaza, Basha of Erzerum in Musiapha's time, hid dar'd to ravage the Aliatte provinces, and openly oppole his fovereign, and hop'd to procced with impunity, as long as Murad a youth held the reins of the government, but the Emperor, to curb this man's in'olence and hinder the flame from mercafing, in the (cond year of his reign, fends the Prime Vizii Cherkies\* Mehemed Pasha (1) against the rebels with an ar- A C 1623

### Annotations.

(1) Cherkies\*] The only Prime Vizir of Chercaffian' extraction, tho' I veral of that Nation have enjoy'd the highest offices in the Turkish Court. He was a General of the greatest reputation among the Turks, and married Murad's fifter Hatyem, The of whom he was very fond Brother of this man, in the village call'd Octobin, built an elegant Palace, adoin'd with Girdens and Aquaeducis. In process of time, when the lurks in Abmed II's reign faw all Hurgary, Bigrade, and Nfa, fubdu'd by the arms of the Emi eror Lea-

pold, and expected Constantinople or at least Adrianople would be taken, and many, under colour of a pilgrimage to Mecca, had retir'd with what effects they could carry with them, to the remote provinces of Afia, I bought this Palace for twenty five thousand Dolars of Yufuf Effends son of Terfane Emins, Inspector of the Navy, and have left it inlarg'd with feveral buildings and ornaments. I hear it is possess'd now by the present Emperor's daughter, wife of Air Palba the Prime Vi-

† See the Plan of Confrantsnomy ple.

my into Asia, who bravely attacks Abaza Pasha (2) near Caisairie, and descating him after a very bloody and fierce battle, forces him to fly to Erzirum. Perhaps he would have entirely quell'd the rebellion, if he had not after his victory died the same year at Tokad.

He in vain attempts Bogdad by Als Pafta.

III Murad despising Abaza, (whose forces he now imagin'd entirely suppress'd) turns his thoughts to greater undertakings, and sends again a great army into Asia under Chaphyz Als Pasha, Governor of Diarbeker, with orders to join the Asiatic troops, and instantly attack Bagdad. He executes his commission; but after sive months siege is repuls'd by the bravery of the besieg'd with great loss, and forc'd to avoid the injuries of the weather by a peedy return.

Halil Papa made Vizir, belieges AbaIV. For this reason, Chaphyz Als Pasa (3), when he comes to Aleppo, is deprived of his dignity, and the imperial figure committed to Halst Pasta. But neither does this Vizir answer the Emperor's expectations. For being order'd to march against the Persisans, when he comes in the neighbourhood of Erzirum, Abaza Pasta the rebel, who link'd about that place, suspects, that under the colour of a Persisan expedition, an army was leading against him, and returns into Erzirum, which he some time since had made the season arms, and stor'd with provisions and other warlike stores. Halst Pasta taking this for a flight, that he might entirely crush the dispirited, as he thought, enemies, heaves the Persian expedition, marches to Erzirum, and closely besieges the city.

but is defeated by hum.

V. But whilft he hopes to acquire fame with little labour, he procures di grace with infinite trouole. For the City is bravely defended by Abazza, who of all mortals was then unanimously effected the best soldier and wisest General. Not content with repulsing the enemies, he unexpectedly assures, with a small but chosen band, the Othman camp, instantly kills the guards, and strikes the whole army with such terror, that a deteat easily follow'd. Thus numerous forces are vanquish'd by a handful of men, multitudes are slain, and many taken alive, the Vizir himself, after throwing away his arms, hardly escaping with a few attendants.

Chefren Pafha takes Abana and Ernsrum

VI. When this defeat is brought to Murad, he is doubly afflicted, and perceives his own, as well as his Vizir's error; his own, in unfeafonably despiting Abaza, and his vizir's, in relinquishing the more weighty affairs, and turning the arms of the Empire to things of less moment. To remedy both, he displaces Italit Pasha, and appointing

#### Annotations.

(2) Abaza] So call'd from his country Abaza, the inhabitants whereof in manners or language are very like the Chercafians. Hence Captives from Abaza are valued next to thole from Chercafia. Abaza Pafha himfelf was a General of the greatest re-

pute with the Turks, and after his rebellion an example of fidelity.

(3) Chaiby2] Is a firname, usually given by way of honour to those who can say the whole Koran by heart, and is deriv'd from the Arabic word Chylb, Memory, Custody.

Chofreu

Chofree Pafes his Vizir and General, fends him with Supplies to the army wintering in Dearbekir, with orders to extinguish the flame, by attacking Abaza carly in the fpring. Chofreu Pafta, whom the unfortunate example of his Predecessor had render'd more cautious, executes his commission with greater care, assembles all the forces, prepares the largest cannon, and with them so shakes the walls of Erzirum, that the frighted inhabitants deliver up their City with the tebel, the fifth day of the fiege.

VII. The town being taken, Chofren Pasha sends the rebels in Murad par-

chains to the Port. But Murad having before heard of his heroical dominim. exploits, and moreover feeing the man to be of an invincible courage and mind, who had been betray'd into his hands by his own people, thinks it unfit to remove him out of the world, and though he deferv'd a thousand deaths. deprive the Othman Empire of so great an ornament. Wherefore feverely reprimanding him for his rebellion, he promises to forgive him (3), on condition he will wipe out his former crimes by his future actions, and draw that fword against the enemies of the Othmans, which he had hitherto us'd against the Empire. Abaza readily confenting to these unexpected terms, is not only receiv'd by Murad into favour, but also made Beglerbeg of Bosnia, as a proper person to curb the enemies by his valour, in case they should invade the Empire on that fide whill employ'd in the Persian war.

VIII. The civil diffurbances being thus appear'd, in the year 1039, Chofren be-Chofreu Pasha is first with a fresh army against Bagdad. The Vizir fieges Bagdad in vain to remove the obflacles his predecessors had met with, immediately H 1039 goes into Asia, and makes great preparations the whole winter at Mu- A C 1629. ful In the ipring, to cut off all relief from Bagdad, he enters the province of Arak, govern'd under the Persian King by Zernel chan. takes the caffics, defiroys what he can't keep, and entirely quelling the rebellion, closely besieges Bagdad. But fortune did not permit the glory defin'd for the Emperois alone to fall on the General. For the Vizir, though he bravely affaulted the City one and forty days, yet finding he could not prevail, is forc'd to raife the fiege with great lofs.

IX The good fuccess of this expedition was hinder'd chiefly by a thru Patra fieth rebellion rais'd on the borders of Persia. For Ilias Pasha, tebelling, in whom Murad had made Beglerbeg of Erzirum in Abaza's room, as milid it he had succeeded not only in his office, but also in his defire and

### ANNOTATION S.

of forgive This pardon is afcrib'd to him as an unparallell'd inflance of clemency by the Turkifb Historians, who fludy to put the best construction on their Emperor's actions But there are others who fay Abaza furren der'd himfelf to Chofreu Pasha, on condition he should depart out of the

City with his life and honour fafe, and therefore could not be put to death by Murad. For the Turkish Emperors feldom break the faith given to Mahometans, and besides the signal qualities of the rebel form'd to requite mercy.

thirst of dominion, when he finds both the soldiers and inhabitants ready to favour him, resules obedience to the Emperor, hoping to avoid with case the snares Abeza had fallen into. But fortune was not alike to both, and what had turn'd to an increase of honour to Abaza, brings infamy and punishment on the other. For he was ta-H 1041. ken in the year 1041 by Ksuchuk\* (5) Mehmed Pasha, and sent to the A. C. 1631 Port, where in the publick market place he is order'd to lay down his aspiring thoughts with his head

Van belieg'd by the Perfiant, is re-hev'd.

X. The Musulman army being weaken'd by these civil wars, Rustem Chan, General of the Persians, invades the Othman dominions, and ravaging the adjacent country, lays close siege to Van. As the Affatic army was unable to withstand him, and the City in the utmost dultress. Murad, on news of the danger, sends the Beglerbeg of Rume. lia with his European forces to its relief, who routs the Perlians, and delivers the City now on the point of surrendering.

Marad fends an army a-gainst the Poles, and grants them peace.

XI. The Persians being defeated, he resolves to turn his victorious arms against the Poles, and assembling his forces at Adrianople, orders Murtaza Pasta, in conjunction with Jambolad zade (6), whom he had made General of the Rumelian horse, to infest Poland. These Generals pass the Danube near Girgiow (7), a town of Walachia, and incamp on the banks. Whilft they remain here, expecting the Emperor's orders, Polish ambassadors arrive, and humbly sue to Murtana for peace. Murtaza, not daring to transact to weighty an affair without his Sovereign's privity, fends the ambassadors to the Port, by whose intreaties Murad is mov'd to grant a peace on his own terms.

Wine permit-H 1043. A. C 1633

XII. In the year 1043, a new and hitherto unheard of edict is publish'd by the Emperor, by which not only the scilers of wine are permitted to exercise their trade, but also every one allow'd to drink it freely contrary to the Mahometan Law. On the other hand, the Coffee-houses are forbid to be open'd under severe penalties.

Murad goes agamit the Perfiant, and taku Revan.

XIII. Mean while, the care of the Persian war gave him continual uncasiness, because he perceiv'd it impracticable either to establish, or as he intended, to inlarge the Empire, whilft Bagdad, the nobleft City of Asia and Bulwark of the Othman dominions, was in the hands of the Persians. Wherefore as he found, he had gain'd no advantage to the Othman state by his Generals, he resolves to take upon himself the office of General, and furmount by the imperial Majesty the obstacles which had stop'd the progress of so many Vizirs. To this pur-A. C. 1634. pole, in the year 1044, he palles into Afia from his Metropolis with

ANNOTATIONS.

(5) Kruchuk\*] A name ufually given by the Turks to persons of low stature.

(6) Jambolad zade ] Son of Jambolad. He seems to have been of Tarsarian extraction, for this name is peculiar to the Tartars; as Polad Mir-

(7) Girgiow ] An ancient City of Walachia between Silistria and Nicopohs.

a numerous army, and leads his forces full of hopes towards Bagdad. In his march he befieges Revan lately recover'd by the Persians, and presses it so closely, that the garrison, unable to withstand his assaults, on the eighth day surrender themselves and City to his mercy. Whereupon the Governor alone, Emirgian ogls (8), is detain'd and sent to Constantinople. But the next year, after he had staid some time about H. 1045. Tybris, repair'd the adjacent easiles, and strengthen'd them with garri-A. C. 1635. sons, he leads back, about Cassim Giuni+(9), his victorious army to + 0.0. 26 Constantinople.

### ANNOTATIONS.

(8) Emirgium ogli ] Son of Emirgium, a Persian Chan. He was brought a Captive to Constantinople, but by his skill in mulick foon gain'd Murad's favour to such a degree, that he was made one of his Privy Counfellors, and when the Emperor indulg'd himfelf in wine, he was delighted with only him and Beers Mustapha. Very often in his palace, which is still to be feen on the Bosphorus, and from him call'd Imirgiun ogli yalifi ( for Yali is any palace fituated near the fea ) Murad met him and made himself merry with wine, when the Emperor was there drioking wine, a certain noble Greek happen'd to pass by in a boat, and not knowing the Sultan to be in that place, fung with great skill and sweetness a Persian long. Emirgium opening the window, the Greek immediately left off. But Emirgiun desires him in God's name and for Christ's fake to go on with his fong, and bids the rowers ftop the boat. When the fong was ended, he goes down to the Greek, asks him, who he was, that was so perfectly skill'd both in the Persian language and the art of musick. Being told he was a Greek and Murad's Subject, he kisses his hand three times, and difmiffes him with a good present. Then returning to the Emperor, the Greeks, fays he, who now obey your scepter, were once our Lords, and I have this day found they justly enjoy'd that honour. I had indeed heard of their fame in our Historians, but never happen'd to meet with any one of that Nation worthy the character formerly given them. But it has been my fortune to day to know a Greek, whom if

the reft are like, that race was truly deferving as well of our Empire as of your fervice. For though I am fecond to none among our countrymen in mufick, I am fearce worthy to be call'd the feholar of this Greek.

(9) Cassim Grunt By this name the Turks denote St. Demetrius, whom as well as St George (by them call'd Hydyrlez) they tabuloufly affert to have been a Musulman. They celebrate with the eaftern Christians the Festivals of both, namely the 23d of April and the 26th of October. By thefe two days, as by anniversary Poles, the Turks regulate their expeditions after the 23d of April they take the field, and the 26th of Oliober they return from their expedition. After St. George's day, whatever foldier is not at the place of Rendezvous, he is deprived of his pay and prefent, or must undergo iome other punishment, though there can't be a worse punishment than to be diimis'd from the army with difgrace. When they have spent these months in an expedition, the moment St. Demetrius's day appears, no foldier is forc'd to obey the General or the Sultan himself, unless they voluntarily bind themselves to farther duty for the publick fafety. For whoever after St. Demetrius day comes to Ordicadifi, or the Judge of the camp, and demands Cajim figils, that is, a Certificate of having faithfully ferv'd that year to St. Demetrius's day, which cannot be refus'd, he may fafely leave the army without being liable to pain or penalty. For no Turkish foldier, tho all receive pay throughout the year, is oblig'd to duty above fix months.

XIV. But

The Perfians take Van H. 1046.

XIV. But the Persons, who had hitherto skulk'd for fear of the Othman fword, when they hear of Marad's departure, suddenly rush A C 1616 forth with manterous forces and beliege Van, of which Abaza Pafra had been made Governor. The Musuimans make a gallant refiftance, So that for four months the Persians could gain no advantage, though they frequently repeated their affaults, and perhaps the City would have been freed from the danger, if the Governor Abaza Palva. on whom the strength and safety of the place seem'd to depend, had not been fnatch'd out of the world. For dispirited by this accident, the Othmans more faintly defend themselves, whilft the Persians, grown more couragious, furiously renew their assaults, take the City by storm, and facrifice all the Mufulmans to the Ghoffs of their countrymen flam by Murad.

Murad

MV. When the news of this flaughter is brought to Constantinomarches a-gamft the Per-ple, Murad, not expecting any fuch thing after his last year's happy expedition, is fill'd with rage and indignation. The effects whereof are first felt by the Vizir Mehemed Pasha, who for neglecting to fortify the borders, is instantly turn'd out, and his office given to Barram Palha with terrible threats against the Persians. That these menaces might not be in vain, he sends the same year the Vizir before, with some light-armed troops, and following in perion with a greater army into Asia, marches directly to Bagdad.

H 1047

takes Baodud

XVI. When he comes there, ipurr'd on, not so much by his heroscal valour, as by the defire of revenge, attacks the City fo vigoroufly, that for therey days it feem'd to be rather a continual fluighter and butchery than a fight. Fire, fword, and cannons cease not one moment the whole time, to destroy the foldiers on both fides. The affaults are daily renew'd, the Emperor with his feymiter, compells the retiring men to re-charge, and with his own hand kills the Vizit himfelf for appearing too negligent. At length, by the bravery of the Othmans and steddiness of the Emperor, the City is taken, and above thirty thousand Persians (10), who had deliver'd themselves up to the Sultan's

## ANNOTATIONS.

(10) thirty thousand ] The Per fians still mourn with everlasting tears this cruelty of Sultan Murad. For he resolved to spare no Captive, noble or ignoble, but commanded all to be flain to a man. As his order was executing, a certain Musician defires the officers to defer his punishment, and permit him to speak one word at least to the Emperor. Being brought to him, and ask'd what he had to fay, suffer not, (fays he) most gracious Emperor, that with me Shaheuls, the Emperor's Servant, (by which name he was afterwards call'd) the whole art of Musick to perish. For life is not defireable to me as a man, but as a fludent of Mulick, whose hid ten depths I have not yet entirely fathom's, I big a longer time to perfect myfelf in that divine art, which if I can accomplish, I would not exchange it for your Empire. Being order'd to give a Specimen of his skill, he takes up a Shefh-dar, (call'd in Arabic, Zabur, in Greek, Pialterson, ) and with fo fweet a voice and fo much art fings the Tragedy of the taking of Bagdad and Murad's praises, that he drew rears Sultan's power, are flaughter'd in his presence. Thus fell the famous City, to defend which, the Shah of Persia had assembled the slower of his army, and almost his whole pobility, and to take which, Murad had applied the strength of the Othman Empire. This was the last overthrow of the Persians, since which they have not dar'd to be reveng'd, or to lift up their head against the Othman power.

XVII. Bagdad being fubdu'd, Murad spends some days in repairing the breaches, returns and setting the affairs of the province of Arak; then leaving the new Vizir Mus-dies. zapha Pasha to finish what he had begun, winters in Dearbeker, and the next H fpring returns to Constantinople with his guards. Whilst he is there meditating A C an expedition against the Christians, he is suddenly seiz'd with a distemper, which after fifteen days transported him to the regions of eternity in the year 1040, on H. the 15th of the month Sheval, after he had liv'd thirty one, and reign'd ieven-

teen years

XVIII. The Turks relate the manners and domestick affairs of this Emperor Murad in so many Volumes, that perhaps they justly seem sometimes to intermix fables. "Meler I shall briefly infert such things only as are deliver'd by Murad's more accurate historians. By these he is chiefly observed to commit some things contrary both to the imperial honour and the order of nature. They fay he us'd to refort with particular friends to certain pleafant places and gardens without the City, and in a manner unbecoming an Emperor, converse with them, light fires, dress victuals, buy wine from a tavern, and drink it familiarly with his companions. Moreover he married old women of eighty to young men of fitteen or five and twenty, and join'd in matrimony old men and girls in the flower of their youth, with a thousand such like pranks.

XIX. It may be faid in his excuse, that he intended by these things to search His de more accurately into the nature and inclinations of man, and tafte the pleafures new of a private and rural life. But he is much more remarkable for his drunkenness, in which he exceeded all his predecessors that were given to that vice. Led to it by Beers Mustapha (11), he was not content to drink wine in private,

Annotations.

from Murad himfelf, who could not refrain till the Musician had done singing. For his take Murad order'd what captives were yet alive, not only not to be kill'd, but to be fet at liberty. Afterwards Murad carried with him this Mufician to Conftantinople, and greatly efteem'd him. And indeed his Persian musical works, which in Persia seem'd to be buried in the ruins of Bagdad, were reviv'd in Turky. This mufical instrument is much like a harp with fix strings each way, (from whence the name Shefbdar or itaxophion,) and is accounted the chief of musical inftruments, invented as 'tis thought by David, though few at this day know how to play on it

(11) Beers Mustapha ] The Turks unanimoully agree, that this man gave Murad the first occasion of making himself drunk. How this was done is thus related. As Murad was once going about the marketplace in difguice, he accidentally lights upon this Beers Mustapha wallowing in the dirt almost dead drunk. Wondering at

was drunk with wine, he wants to know what fort of liquor that was, of whose effects he was yet ignorant. Mean while, Mustapha gets up, and with opprobrious words bids the Emperor stand off Astonish'd at the man's boldness, Rascal, says he, dost thou bid me, who am Sultan Murad, be gone? And I (answers Mustapba) am Beeri † Musapha, and if thou wilt † drun fell me this City, I will buy it, and then I shall be Sultan Murad, and thou Beeri Mussapha. Murad demanding where he would get the money to purchase such a City, Mussapha replies, Don't trouble thyfelf about that, for what is more, I will buy too the fon of a bond-woman [for the Emperors are all born of captives.] Murad agrees to it, and orders Mustapha to be taken out of the dirt and carried to the Palace. After a few hours, the fumes of the wine being difpers'd, Mustapha comes to his fenfes, fees himfelf lying in a gilded and elegant room, asks those that attended him, what is the meaning of this, am I in a dream, or do I tait Para-

è

lty.

with compell'd even the Musti's and Cadialaskers to drink with him, and also by a publick edict, mention'd before, allow'd wine to be sold and drunk by men of 'all orders and degrees. As he was an immoderate lover of wine, so he was a mortal enemy to opium and tobacco, forbid both on pain of death, and with his own hand kill'd several, whom he found either eating opium, or smoaking or selling tobacco. However one Terraks a smoaker escap'd punishment by his wit. For as he could not help smoaking, he caus'd a deep pit to be dug under his tent, and cover'd with green turf to prevent a discovery. When he was one day in this pit smoaking, the Emperor comes, and inquiring for the man, he is betray'd by his people, and expos'd to the Emperor's view with a pipe in his mouth, who instantly drew his sword in order to kill him Terraks seeing his danger, humourously cries out, Go to, thou son of a bond-woman! Thy edict extends above not under the earth. By this saying he not only sav'd his life, but obtain'd new honours, with the sole license of smoaking tobacco. He is also reported to say to his people by way of advice, If you will be merry, drink wine, and not cat t—rd

XX. From this vice fprung another, no less destructive to Governors than to the state, cruelty. He thirsted after innocent blood, breath'd nothing but slaughter, and seem'd as it were to be noursh'd by it. Very often at midnight he stole out of the women's apartments through the private gates of the palace wish his drawn sword, and running through the streets barestooted with only a loose gown about him, like a madman, kill'd whoever came in his way. Frequently from the windows of the higher rooms, where he us'd to drink and divert himfelf, he shot with arrows such as accidentally pass'd by. In the day time he ran up and down in disguise, and did not return till he had kill'd some unfortunate wretches for little or no cause. So great terror did he strike into the whole City, that no man dar'd even mention his name within his walls. Many weak persons, especially such as us'd to eat opium, fell into a swoon if they did but hear the name of Murad. For such he never spar'd, but either kill'd them all, or forc'd them to drink wine instead of opium. By these means he is said, during the seventeen years of his reign, to kill above sourteen thousand men. ma-

my of whom were generals of the highest rank.

## ANNOTATIONS.

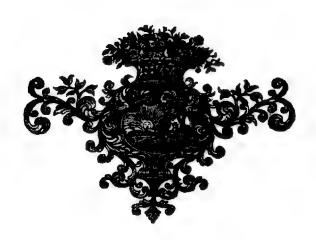
ble fright, as knowing Murad's fierce difposition, but necessity whetting his invencould have some wine to revive his lan-guishing spirits. The Keepers, that the man might not die before he is brought into the Emperor's presence, give him a pot full of wine, which he hides in his bosom. Presently after being sent for by the Emperor, he is commanded to pay so many millions at the price of the City. But he taking the pot out of his bolom, fays, This, O Emperor, is what yesterday would have purchas'd Constantinople. And were you likewise possess'd of these riches, you would think them preferable to the Monarchy of the Universe. Murad asking how that could be? By drinking (fays he) this divine liquor. The Emperor being perfwaded, takes a large draught, which, as he was unus'd to wine, immediately encices him fo drunk, that he fancies the world not able to hold him, conanghty projects, and is fill'd with and gladness, that he imagines the

to it. Afterwards growing giddy, he is feiz'd with fleep, and in a few hours waking with the head-ach, fends for Multaplia in a great passion Mustas ba instantly appears, and perceiving the case, Here (says he) is your remedy, and offers him a cup of wine, by which his head-ach is prefently remov'd, and his former gladness restor'd. When he had done this two or three times, he was by degrees fo addicted to wine, that he was drunk almost every day. Becri Mustapha his Tutor was admitted among the Musabib or Privy Counsellors, and always near the Emperor. At his death the Sultan order'd the whole Court to go into mourning, but caus'd his body to be buried with great pomp in a tavern among the hogsheads After his decease the Emperor declar'd he never enjoy'd one merry day, and whenever Multapha chanc'd to be mention'd, was often feen to burst out into tears, and to figh from the bottom of his heart. In a word, I have not read of fo great favour gain'd by the pre-cepts of virtue, as Multapha acquir'd by the dictates of vice.

XXI. Besides

XXI. Besides these vices, he was adorn'd with great endowments of body and Badown minds fo that he seem'd to be form'd by nature as an instance of a man excelling as well in vices as virtues. All bodely exercises requisite to a foldier were found in him. In the art of shooting with the bow, he had not his equal in the whole Twikish nation, except the famous changion Texcession. There are now two marble pillars flanding fifteen hundred cubits afunder, over which he is faid to shoot an arrow. He was of all the Othmans the most expert horseman, and threw the Firid with such dexterity, that no Tartarian arrow could go fo far or with such exactness. He is reported to have been so swift of foot, that the fleetest Arabian horse could hardly outrun him. Nor did he want fingular endowments of mind. In the first place he was steddy in the conduct of affairs, and defifted not from an undertaking till it was accomplished or frustrated. He was unshaken in all circumstances, so that if his years had been answerable to his greatness of mind, he would without much difficulty have acquir'd the monatchy of the universe. But the wounds with which the sword threaten'd others, were given him by drunkenness, and remov'd him our of the world, of which he was the terror.

The End of the Reign of MURAD IV.





The REIGN of

# IBRAHIM,

Eighteenth EMPEROR of the TURKS.

## BOOK III. CHAP. XI.

Sirabim proclaim'd Empefor H. 1049

A C 1639

Afak taken
from the Coffake

The *Maltel*ê take a *Turisf*ê

ty her into

Herabim proclaim'd Emperor.

I. S Ultan Ibrahim was born in the year of the Heira 1026, and three and twenty years after, his brother Murad being dead, and no other heir reror maining of the Othman race, was with unanimous confent proclaim'd Emperor.

II. His first care after his accession to the throne, was to clear the Black Sea of the Cossak Pyrates, and render the passage safe and open for ships sailing to Constantinople. He perceived this could not be done without great trouble and charge, whilst Asak, situated at the mouth of the Tanass, was in their hands, because he saw that City was convenient for exercising pyracy, and in case of a defeat would afford them a retreat. Wherefore he sends a numerous army to besiege it, and taking it after many assaults, puts all the garrison to the sword.

III. The Pontus Eurenus being thus clear'd, he resolves to do the same in the White Sea. All the Islands therein were now taken by the Othman valour, except Crete (1), which contemn'd the imperial power, and afforded a harbour to pyrates,

ANNOTATIONS.

(1) Cretel I shall insert here the History of this Island as deliver'd by the Turkifb writers, if it were only to show their care in trans-mitting the actions of their countrymen. Kritos, which by a change of some of the letters, is by others corruptly call'd Gerid, is the chief of the Islands in the Mediterranean, and extended from east to west in length two hundred, and in breadth fixty, miles. It feems by nature herfelf to be created for the delight of man. The foil every where fertile, and abounding with all forts of grain. The fragrant fields are full of herbs, good as well for the food of beafts and birds, as for physical uses; among the last, particularly is the herb lftsrated by the antient Physicians. No beatts hurtful to man or animals, as hazes, ferpents, are ever bred here, night from ellewhere can they

live. The first inhabitants of this Island instructed the rest of the world in an elegant way of life. It was the conflant opinion of the worthippers of graven images, that the Prince of the Heathen idols was born at Crete. From the fame fountain flow'd mulick and other arts tending to the delight and polithing of mankind. It had formerly many and very famous Cities, numberless villages and inhabitants, the fortness of the air and temperature of the chmate inviting new colonies from all parts. It was many years subject to the Greeks, afterwards it was conquer'd by the arms of the Mululmans of Spain. For in the year of the Hejira 204, when Hakim, son of Heffam of the family of Umie rul'd at Corduba in Spain, an infurrection is rais'd against him, which increas'd so suddenly, that a crowd of conspirators furrounded Holum's palace and astempted his





I BRAHIM.

Eighteenth Emperor of the Turks

in the Year 1640.



pyrates, who plunder'd the Farkish ships. The frequent complaints brought by his subjects against the Venetians had before induc'd him to conquer this siland, and a late injury offer'd those that were going to Meeca and Egypt afforded him an occasion. Kislar Agasi Sumbul aga, being depriv'd of his office, receives a certificate of his freedom (2), and sails towards Egypt in company with the Cads of Meeca and the Malla of Prusa, Mehemed Espendi. When they come near Crete, they are suddenly attack'd by six Maltese gallies. The Tarks make a brave defense, the Kislar aga, Cads, and commander of the ship fall in the battle, and the rest overpower'd with numbers are taken with their riches by the enemies. The Maltese with their prize immediately go into a harbour of

## Annotations.

life. The King bravely refifts, and after a bloody conflict disperses the rebels, kills many of them, and pardons the rest, on condition they would depart and feek new habitations. The Musulmans being thus expell'd their antient feats with thirty ships iail towards Egypt, and arrive near Alexandria. Whereupon Abdullab fon of Tabir, who then govern'd Egypt under the Perfian, goes from Cairo with a great army, unexpectedly jurprifes and furrounds them. However pitying their condition, he lends them away, with a command to depart out of Egypt and never return again. Being unable to reflift, they obey his orders, and going on board their ships steer directly to Grete. Allur'd by the fruitfulness and pleafantness of the Island, they refolve to fix there, and confult how to feize it. To effect this with the greater alacrity, they burn their ships, that all hopes of retreat might be cut off in case they suffer'd themselves to be bearen. Then they invade the Island, and quickly subdoing it, fortify the castles with new works, and store them with warlike provisions The Greek Emperor Michael, hearing Crete was taken by the Musulmans (or Saracens, ) fends a great fleet against them. The Musulmans are worsted in the first conflict, but suon atter affembling all their forces, attack the camp of the Greeks with fuch vigour, that not a man escapes to carry the news into Greece The Mufulmans acquaint the Emperor with what had happen'd, and withal offer peace, to which the Emperor, when he faw he could not prevail by force, readily confents. The treaty being fettled, Umru Prince of the Mutulmans and his posterity quietly govern the Island eighty Afterwards in the year 284, the Greek Emperor fends his General Nicephorus Phocas to Crete with a numerous army to diflodge the Mufulmans. Phocas having landed his troops, attacks and vanquishes the Musulmans, takes all their towns and fortreffes, and forces those he does not kill to fubrit to the Greek Emperor, who in process of time partly die and partly turn Christians, fo that in some years there ap-

pear'd no foot-steps of the Musulmans. Some time after, Alexius his younger brother circumvents and feizes Isaac Emperor of Constantinople, and murdering him by putting out his eyes, mounts the throne. Not content with one fratricide, he endeavours to dispatch Isaac's son of his own name, that he might have no rival. But the young Prince, warn'd of his imminent danger a few hours before the deed was to be executed, makes his escape and flies to the Venetians. There he stirs up almost all the west to his assistance, obtains a fleet of the Venetians, an army of the French, and thus prepar'd, fails towards Constantinople, in company with the Princes of France and Spain, with whom the Venetians were in friendship. With these he penetrates into the Propontis, and anchors over-against the City near a village call'd at prefent Cadikin The Emperor Alenius, perceiving himself surprised, and unable to raise an army time enough to relift, privately withdraws from Constantinople in the fear of being ferv'd as he had us'd Ifaac. So Alextus, Isaac's fon, feizes the City destitute of a defender, and being confirm'd in the throne, gives the Prince of Spain for his fervices the Island of Crete for ever. In the year of the Heyra 510, the Venetians bought it of his fuccessors with a large furn of money, and held it till Ibrahim's time.

(2) freedom] Kustar Agasi, (that is the Chief Eunuch,) whilst he bears that office over the women in the Seraglio, though great honour is paid him by all, is reckon'd and call'd a slave. But when he is dismis'd from his post, he receives a certificate of his freedom, which he would never desire, unless forc'd, for his authoritis very great in the Othman Court. They are all, when displac'd, sent into Egypt, where they receive from the Emperor as a pension eight thousand Para a day, each of which is three Aspers. Several, whist they are in their office, purchase estates in Egypt, on which they afterwards live very splendidly. This the Court freely allows, because their effects at their death fall to the

Emperor.
Ttt

...

Creese, and giving the Governor some share, are suffer'd to retire with all their captives and booty.

for which Ibrahasms war on the Feuetians.

IV. To let this injury go unpunish'd, secm'd the same thing as to expose the power of the Othman Empire to the contempt of its enemies, on the contrary, to revenge it, afforded a fair opportunity of subduing the so long desir'd Island. Wherefore Ibrahim, incouraged by the advice of his counsellors, breaks the peace with the Venetians, and declares war against them as robbers and protectors of pyrates. To wage this war the more succe'sfully, he prepares an army under the command of Musab Pasba and Murad Aga, Kuikiethudasi or Licurenant General of the Janizaries, and a fleet under the conduct of Capadan Tufuf Palha, whose valour he had tried, whilst he discharg'd the office of swordbearer.

H. 1054 A. C. 1644

He takes Cha-H. 1055

V. The forces thus headed, in the year 1055, on the 4th of the month Rebuil evvel, fail from Constantinople, and the 20th of the following month arrive at Crete. The next day the foldiers being landed, Chante is order'd to be A. C. 1645. closely belieg'd, which after a resistance of fifty four days surrenders to the Mufulman army. The walls are immediately repair'd, and part of the army being left in garrison, the rest with the fleet adorn'd with laurels return to Constantinople. Shortly after, Husern Pasha is sent with fresh forces, and after several battles in this and the following year, fubdues the whole island, except only Candia.

lbrabim's leath and H 105B

VI. Whilst Ibrahim is making fresh and great preparations for the conquest of this City, he is on the 18th of Rejeb, in the year 1058, remov'd out of the world, and crown'd with martyrdom. He left nine ions, Selim and Othman born 1054, Mahomet, Ahmed, Soliman, Murad, Ishanger, born 1056, Bajazet and Orchan born 1058. Of these, Mahomet, Seliman, and Ahmed

came to the throne, the reft were excluded by an untimely death.

His character

3000

2

VII. The manners of this Emperor, as well as those of his predecessor Muran, though at the peril of their heads, are fully described by the Turks. As Murad was wholly addicted to wine, so was Ibrahim to lust. They say, he spent all his time in ienfual pleafures, and when nature was exhausted with the frequent repetition of venereal delights, he endeavour'd to restore it with potions and art. Every Friday, which is the Turkish Sabbath, he dedicated to Vinus, and commanded a beautiful Virgin richly habited to be brought to him by his Mother, Prime Vizir, or some other Great man. He cover'd the walls of his chamber with looking glass, that his love-battles might seem to be acted in several places at once. He order'd his pillows to be stuffed with rich furs, that the bed defin'd for the imperial pleasure might be the more pretious. Nay he put whole fable skins under him, in a notion that his luft would be inflam'd, if his love-toil were render'd more difficult by the glowing of his knees the palace garden call'd Chas, he frequently affembled all the virgins, made them firsp themselves, and himself naked, neighing like a stallion, ran among them, and as it were ravish'd one or other kicking and strugling by his order. Happening once to fee by chance the privy parts of a wild heiter, he fent the shape of them in gold all over the Empire, with orders to make enquiry, whether a woman made just in that manner could be found for his lust. At last, they fay, fuch a one was found and received into the women's apartment. He made a collection of great and voluminous books of pictures, expressing the various ways of contion, whereby he ever invented some new and before unknown posture. Thus the publick treasury, diminish'd by Murad's drunkenness, was quite exhausted by Ibrahim's luxury and lust, and the sinews of the Empire, which were applied by his ancestors to repulse their enemies and inlarge their dominion, were by him us'd to the destruction of his body.

## The End of the Reign of IBRAHIM



MAHOME T'IV

Nineteenth EMPEROR of y Turks,

the Year 1650,





The REIGN of

# M A H O M E T

Nineteenth EMPEROR of the TURKS.

#### воок ІІІ. CHAP. XII.

I. TBRAHIM being crown'd with martyrdom, the Janizaries, in the Majorne lucyear 1058, on the 8th of the month Rejeb, proclaim his fon Maho-ceeds. H. 1059. met (1), then but seven years old, and place him on the throne.

II. In this tender age he gave very fensible proofs of his future greatness, and Transctions of the hopes the Uthmans ought to conceive of him. The treasury, exhausted during his by his father's luxury, being replenish'd by the management of Kioprils Mehe-youngeryears med Pasha (2), and all intestine commotions appeared, he strangles his Grand-

## ANNOTATIONS

(1) Mahomet ] His mother was the daughter of a Greek Priest under Sultan Murad, (before the law by which the children of Christians were collected by way of tribute was abolish'd) brought from the Morea, and on account of her beauty receiv'd into the imperial Seraglio. When the came to be Valide Sultana, the caus'd her mother to be inquir'd after, and being found to live with her in the palace, the remain'd there many years, and could not by any offers be induc'd to turn Mahometan At last, dying in the turn Mabonnetan profession of the Orthodox faith, to which the had always adher'd, her Grandson Sultan Mahomet order'd her to be carried out of the palace, and buried after the manner of the Greek Church by the Patriarch attended with his whole Clergy.

(2) Kioprils ] The founder of the prefent most noble family, among the Turks, of Kioprili ogli, In the beginning of Ma-bomet's reign, by reason of his poverty he liv'd a private and stoical life at Constantinople, in expectation of some even the fmallest Bashalic Indeed he enjoy'd the name and honour of a Basha, but as he had not wherewithal to support his family according to his rank, he feldom appear'd in publick. About that time a Persian ambassador comes to Constantinople to congratulate Mahomet on his accession to the throne. The Sultan gives him a splendid entertainment, and orders every Basha to do the fame. Accordingly he was fo magnificently feasted by the Vizir and other Bashas, that it cost them each at least a hundred Purses. When it came to Kioprili's turn, a certain Jew, who had often supplied his necessities, promises to find him money, and on the day appointed, prepares a splended seast with Comedians and other diversions customary with the Turks. The next day, the Players come for their reward, and as they had made no bargain beforehind, are paid only two hundred Dollars, though they had been presented with sour or five hundred by all the Pashas Whereupon Lascares, Head of the Company, a Greek, throws the money on the ground, declaring he would take nothing of fuch an Oppordoz Pasta, which in Spanish-Hebrew, signifies a vile pitiful fellow. The Jew gathers up the money, and tells Mehemed Palha what had pais'd, who replies, fince I am become so wretched as to be thus grievously affronted by an Infidel, without having it in my power to be reveng'd. I shall within few days either be happy or lose my head. The event answer'd the prediction. Shortly

+ Kagushi He makes

motive party to the schemes of the funkcines, pers many of their assumptices to distill, recovers Emission and Lenthes from the Foursians, takes and beheads the retellines being of disputations from the Foursians, takes and beheads the retellines being the disputation of the first and the view days in taken, and fabricked to the Othman power. With the same success he wages war in Hangart, where in the year 1070, Als Pasta assaults and takes Varadin. In the A C. 1659. year 1074, Vizir Fazzil Abmet Keoprals ogle (3) subducs Vevar. He likewise de-H. 1074 clares war against, and vanquishes Racottas +, (who died of a mortal wound A. C. 1663. receiv'd in the battle,) and overrunning Transylvania, appoints Michael Apaphi Prince of that country under a certain bribute

III. The Emperor of Germany, tetrafied at the progress of the Othmans, sends beste with the German, ambassadors to the Vizir, suing for peace, and promising to relinquish whatever the Tarks were posses'd off. The Vizir not thoroughly understanding the Emperor's instintion, carries the simbashador with him to the Port, who inclining his head, wipes the dust of the sublime threshold with his face (4), and by his intreatics obtains the defir'd peace of twenty years on the Sultan's conditions

IV. The peace being folemnly fworn by the ambaffadors of both Princes, the Renews the Cretat WAT Sultan resolves to renew with more vigour the Cretan war, which on account

#### Annutations.

Shortly after, the Spabi raife a fedition at Gonffahisnople, and murdet the Prime Vizir and all the Palhas, only Medemed Palhas escapes by his obscurity. The sury of the sediment of the s the Selector, with the other Court-officers, feeing no other Patha alive, whom they could advance to the honour of Prime Vizir, fend for old Kloprih, deliver to him as a plain man, the imperial fignet, as a token of his new office, bidding him always remember by whose means he was rais'd from the lowest state to the highest degree of honour. Mehened promises whatever they desired, and at first consults them by letters in all affairs. As they fent back their opinions in writing, Mebenied carefully preferves all the papers, and after fome time privately fending for some of the Generals of the Spahn, shows them the letters, complains of the haughtiness of Kislar agafi, Selictar, and the rest of the Courtofficers, and advices the foldiery not to fuffer the reins of so large an Empire to be in the hands of such men, and to prevent so great a digrace whilst it should be in their power. The Spans, mov'd at the indignity of the thing, flock together again, and petition the Emperor to deliver up to punishment Kislar agasi, Selittar, with their accomplices, as diffurbers of the publick peace, and authors of the former fedition. These being put to death, Mehemed Pa-ba is confirm'd in his post, and by de-grees destroys all the Spahi who had taken arms against the Emperor, so that in years not one of the rebels was left. ther feven years enjoyment of his office, man feiz'd with fickness, and when near who after fome discourie about the

but little account of his past services, unless he would declare whom he thought worthy to fucceed him. The fick Vizir answers, he knew no one more worthy of that dignity than his ion Ahmed, as well for his prudence, as gravity Of fuch weight was the father's recommendation, that the fon immediately after his death, though a young man, was made Prime Vizir.

(3) Kloprili ogli | Son of Kioprili Mehra med Paska, whose story I have just related. He was Prime Vizir feventeen years, and is very famous among the Tarks for learning, prudence, fortitude, and fleddings They certainly ascribe the Cretan victors , chiefly to his invincible mind and his eloquence, in which he is faid to excell all of his age, and confess, if he had not been General of the expedition, Candia could never have been taken He is call'd by the Turkt the Vicar of God's shadow, the light and splendor of the most beautiful and Iweetest Nations, Inspector and Keeper of the true laws, and of good and holy manners, Breaker of the Bells of the firaying and blasphemous Nations, the terrible Leader, most learned, most merciful, &c He was the only Vizir who receiv'd that dignity from his father, and transmitted it as it were by hereditary right to his fon and grandion.

(4) fare ] Thefe and the like pompous expressions are us'd concerning Christian ambaffadors by the Turkish Historians, in honour of their Empire, and in contempt of the Christians. For though an ambaifador, when he comes into the Sultan's prefence, must pull off his sword, and held by two Capus bafts, thrice bow his head, yet he never performs any other marks of

iubmiffion.



of other affairs had hitherto proceeded but flowly. It was begun against the Venetions by his father Ibrahim, who had taken Chamie with the neighboring caftles, and expell'd almost all the antient inhabitants of the island. The only place remaining to the enemies was Candia, where nature and art feem'd to demonfirste what could be produc'd for the defiruction of the affaulters. The Mufulman forces had made frequent attempts, but had ever been repuls'd with lofs: and the possession of the Island was not deem'd fure, as long as a port was open to the enemies to invade it whenever they pleas'd. Mahomet relolves to employ the forces of the whole Empire to remove this rock, on which the Othman fleet had often miscarried, and entrusts the expedition to Abmed Kioprili ogli Pasha, who had signalized his conduct in the late war with the Germans.

V. Wherefore three days after the confirmation of the treaty of peace, he his peach to his Visites and affembles Sheshbul ssam (or chief Musti) with the Vizirs and Generals to con-others. fult about the state of affairs, and commanding silence, is said to make the following (peech . " In order to make them the rule of my actions, I have en-" quir'd into the methods by which my ancestors gain'd, preserv'd, and inlarg'd " this happy and everlafting Empire, and find there were two principal causes " of so many victories, their care of the citizens, and their own invincible " fortitude against their enemics. Whilst to the citizens they extended justice " and clemency, and bravely defended them against all assaults, they not only " acquir'd the love of all their subjects, but also found them ready to assist in all " the viciflitudes of fortune And whilft to the enemies they opposed the sword " of their unconquerable troops, they depriv'd them of courage, and render'd " themselves so formidable, that they frequently oblig'd them to sue for peace. " By these methods they not only re-cstablish'd the sinking Empire, but performd " fuch exploits against the most potent enemies as to posterity, were the proofs on not manifest, would appear almost incredible. They utterly subverted the " power of the Romans to long establish'd in Greece, wrested Egres from the " Chercassians the most warlike Nation of the Tartars, subdued the best part of Hungaria and Persia, struck terror into Germany, and moreover gave laws and a Prince to the hitherto unconquer'd Scythians. By this means, they not " only strengthen'd the bounds of their Empire, but also so weaken'd the Chri-" firans, those enemics of our most holy religion, that there seem'd to be little or no obstacle to their entire conquest. In this happy situation, the Venetian " commonwealth alone, which compar'd with the Othman dominions, scarce " deserves mention, dar'd to despile our power, and sometimes even to infulr us. "To lay nothing of their late injuries to us, their treacherous feizing of Tenedos. " by which and their frequent pyracies on the Afiatir and European coafts. "they have as it were shut up the port of Constantinople, I shall only insist on the chains with which they bind the Musulmans, who by a divine impulse " cross the Mediteranean sea to visit the sacred relicts of our most holy Prophet, " just as if they were to be doom'd to eternal punishment, whilft they are feek-" ing their own eternal falvation, and the happiness promis'd by our Prophet. " If the blood of these martyrs does not inflame your minds, its cries will raise " our forefathers from the dead with all the martyr'd heroes, who will upbraid " you for fuffering the glory and majefty of the Othmes Empire, acquir'd with " so much blood and toil, to be fullied by the wantonness of a few weak rob-Our shame and disgrace will be increased, if we call to mind that " our enemies are expell'd from almost all the islands of the Mediterranean. that Crete too is taken, and only Candes has not been attempted, nor felt the " force of the Othman fword, whose edge penetrates to the very foul of an " enemy If you fay this City is firong, and fortify'd by nature and art, know, " the Othman courage and force are stronger, before which I have seen cassles " lofty as the skies fall to the ground. For this cause, if you are against as-" faulting the city, and despair of success, when it is the refuge of pyrates " and magazine of robbesies, it will be deem'd the same thing as if you " advis'd a peace with the Venetians, and a relignation of the dominion of the " fea, which how dishonorable it would be to the conquerous of the world, Nº. 12. Uuu

"I need not lay. Wherefore, Thou who art our Prime Vizir, Lale Abmed Pefer, flow thy felf the worthy offspring of thy father, take courage, affem-\* ble the troops, and make the necessary preparations for the siege of Candia; " down with that theirer of league-breakers, blunt the edge of the infidel fword, and furmounting the walls by the divine aid and thy own valour, vanquish " the robbers, and expel them the Island. If thou proceedest with due diligence, " doubtless by our most holy Prophet's intercession, the enemies will quickly " be routed, and their den demolish'd. And be affured, thou shalt not only be " highly honour'd by me, but also amply rewarded by God as the publisher of " our law." All that were present, mov'd with the Emperor's speech, unanimoully approve his advice, and promife to advance the delign to the utmost of their power.

The Vizir lands his forces in Crete .

H 1066. A. C. 1655.

VI. The Vizir himself, without delay, takes a view that winter of the ports and magazines, builds store-houses at proper places, fills them with provisions, and with great care prepares every thing requilite for a long stege. In the spring of the year 1066, he assembles all the forces, and on the 5th day of Sheval departs from Confiantmople. The Emperor himself accompanies him to Adrianople, and there after reviewing the army, fends him upon the expedition. Abmed Pasts halts at Stefe to give the foldiers time to refresh themselves after their march, and prepare for their lea-voyage. Then he embarks his forces at Termes (5), and arriving in the port of Chanse, lands his army, places them in winter quarters, and carefully makes what warlike preparations were full wanting.

Belieges Can-

VII. When he thought all things necessary for a long siege were ready, the next year on the 18th day of Zilcade, he fails from Chanie, and arriving near Candia, lands his men without opposition at the village Caulocher, and marks out the place to incamp. On the morrow, the army being drawn up with very great pomp and inconceivable gallantry, he views the places about the City, as well to know where he might best make his assaults, as to terrify the enemies with a show of his forces. On the third day, he assembles all the officers and others, who had long been experienced in warlike affairs, and bids them every one give his opinion of the manner of belieging and affaulting the City. At last it was decreed to undermine the Red Tower, batter the walls, and make the first arrempt upon the City on that side.

florms it, and forces at to fürrender

VIII. Wherefore the fame year, in the latter end of the month Zylbije, the ramparts are thrown up, the City invested, and a siege begun, the like whereof had not been, nor perhaps ever will be, seen. The strength of the whole Othman Empire 18 applied, many years preparations are employ'd, fresh troops supply the place of the flain, the foldiers declining the danger, are compelled by threats and blows to renew the charge. For the belieged there fought the difficulty of the place, and all the brave men of the nations believing in the Meffiab, who were affembled with a resolution to conquer or die. Thus they fought incessantly twenty nine months, being frequently reliev'd with fresh supplies by the French and Venetians. Every inch of ground is gain'd on both fides with the blood of many heroes; when the walls are batter'd down and mounted, new walls are inftantly rais'd by the befleg'd, and by that means the Othmans, who in mounting the breaches, imagin'd to find the reward of their toil, fuddenly beholding new obstacles, are almost reduc'd to despair. At last, the encmy's valour is forc'd to give way to the Othman power and fortune, and what could hardly be effected by arms, the Othmans being now this and spiritless, is elisepreter brought about by Panasot (6) the Terriman + of the Court, who by an artful

### Annotations.

(5) Termes A poor town in Theffaly, on the coast of the Archipelago, call'd by the was also call'd Gippe by antients, and gave name to the Sinus

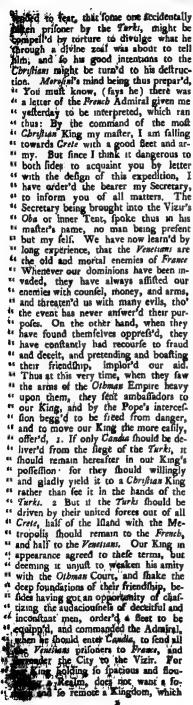
anniel ] Haveyeric-Though the

thing is not related in this manner by any Christian Historian, it will however be worth the while to infert here the account of the taking of Candia, as I had it from thole, who were at that time in the fecres of affairs, The Sultan perceiving the ob-

**fpeech** 

stacles that would occur in the siege of Candia, had order'd the whole army to be told, that not a man of them should appear in his presence alive, unless the City But this, instead of incourawas taken. ging the foldiers, (as it was intended,) had like to have prov'd the destruction of the whole Empire. For the troops, fatigu'd with fo many labours, with the fummer heats and winter colds, when they faw they had made little progress after twenty nine months continual toil, began to murmur, affirming it to be unjust, that the ftrength of the whole Empire should be wasted in the fiege of an impregnable City, undertaken feemingly for no other reason, but the entire destruction of the Janizaries. As the Vizir could not, by reason of the Emperor's order, comply with the intreaties of the foldiers, and raife the fiege, he oblig'd them to their duty, fometimes with threats, fometimes with prefents, promifes, but chiefly he appeared the feditious minds of the foldiery by his eloquence, (in which he excell'd all the Turks of his age) and inspir'd the rest with courage by his words and example. Whilft he was thus furiously assaulting the City, news is brought that the French were coming with a fleet and army to the relief of Candia, and were now above half way. Whereupon the Vi-zir entirely despairs, for he had plac'd his fole hope of success in famine and the want of necessaries to defend the City, from which he not only saw himself failen, but had also to fear a fresh mutiny of the Janizaries, with a thousand other almost unsurmountable difficulties. Whilft he was mufing on these things in his tent, and could not think of any means to remove so great ob-Panasos the Court-Interpreter stacles, comes in, and paying him the usual obey fance, asks, (as he was in great favour with him, the reason of the sadness he saw in his face. Being told, "Lay aside, " lays he, the care that diffurbs you, and " show your self chearful to the foldiers. " For this melancholy becomes not your " noble and invincible mind, nor have we " cause to despair of taking the City. " Nay the stars declare it to be at hand, " provided their influence be affifted by " human policy. If therefore you will " give me leave to act without making " any person privy to our designs, I dare " promise the surrender of the City in a " few days. But hear the means I pro-" pose. The coming of the French fleet, unless reveal'd from heaven, cannot yet " be known to the besieged. For the " City, invested on every fide, is so ftrict-" ly watch'd, that a moufe cannot enter " without our knowledge. And it is my " delign to deceive them by the very thing, " whereby they would free themselves

" from danger. For I have projected to " invite Morofini the Governor to a pri-" vate parley, and admonish him as a " friend, not to truft to the French fleet, 56 because their deligns are worse than " those of the Turks. I shall easily gain " credit, as well by my known profession of the Christian Religion, as by
my seign'd zeal for the welfare of Chri-46 stendom, and hope to inspire him with "the purpose of surrendering the City." The Vizir gives his consent, and commits the affair entirely to the Interpreter's faithfulness and management. Panasot sends his trusty slave Maxud (an Arabian name fignifying defire, such as is generally given to their slaves by the Christians, who have any thing to do in the Othman Court, because the Turks seldom use the names of Christians, without the epithet, Gaur, and Kiafer, Infidel, Blasphemer) with a letter to Morofins the Governor, and feigns a ftrong defire, out of his Christian zeal, to have an opportunity of acquainting him by word of mouth with fome things of the utmost consequence to the Christian affairs. Morofins, a man of great policy, imagining a fnake in the grafs, helitates fome time whether he fhould give him a meeting; at laft, after maturely debating the matter with the Greeks and Venetians in the City, he refolves to hear what he had to fay, and accordingly difmittes the meffenger with the appointment of time and place of meeting. Panasot the next evening, as if he was going to view the centries and guards, which he had us'd to do by the Vizir's order, approaches one of the gates of the City. Morofini in difguife quickly comes too. For fo it was agreed, that the garrifon might not be privy to what should be transacted. When Panasot comes into his prefence, " I am forry, (fays he) and greatly grieve to fee the daily decay of Christians, especially of those both of 46 my Nation and Religion, and on the " other hand, the continual growth of the "Turks, whole infidelity and tyranny threaten'd to the whole world, justly " raise our indignation. No doubt this is, 44 inflicted on Christendom by God's judg-" ment for our own and the fins of our " fathers, but fince we know it to be ufur " al with God to chastise his children, " and afterwards deftroy the instrumenta " of his vengeance, we hope, through the " divine goodness, that will shortly be " the case. Mean while, we must quietly " bear the misfortunes fent us by heaven, " yield to the times, and not relift the dihe thought he had gain'd credit, in order to deceive the Governor more effectually, he binds him by oath not to reveal what he was going to communicate. For he pretended



ec would be a perpetual bone of contenes tion. Wherefore the Vizir has nothing 44 to fear about the arrival of our fleet. " For the Admiral if he enter'd the City, which he hopes would be the next day, will show the King of France's orders under his hand and feal, and declare the whole affair. Thus far the Secretary.
But I, desirous the thing should happen " otherwise, and to the advantage of Chriis stendom and my religion, have rack'd " my invention, and can find no way to 46 avert the danger which threatens all " Christians. If you exclude the French " from the City, they will in conjunction with the Turks act against you as contemners of their aid, and as publick ene-" mies, and so you will not only lose the " City, but also, fince you have no proofs of their treachery, be branded with \*\* eternal infamy among Christians. On the other hand, it you admit the ene-44 mies coming under the colour of friendship, what calamities may befall you and your whole commonwealth, may, "without my rehearfing them, eafily be conjectured. In this City is affembled not only the flower of the Venetian No-" bility, but the best part of the army, 45 and should they be destroy'd or taken 44 presoners, it will not be difficult for " France to overrun all the Venetian domi-\*\* nions. Befides feeing the French do not " account it dishonest to impose upon " and deceive others, I really believe they will prove treacherous as well to the 64 Turks as you, and expelling both from 65 the Island, seize this so ample and re-" nown'd Kingdom, which, when once they are matters of it, I deem it impracticable ever to recover out of their " hands. Since then the City can hold out " no longer, but must necessarily fall into the power either of the French or Turks, I leave you to judge which is most ehgible, to be deliver'd up to French bondage, and with the City lose perhaps the " whole commonwealth, or to surrender Candia to the Turks upon honorable " terms, from whom, when they shall "hereafter be involved in other wars, you is may very easily wrest it again? My zeal for the Christian Religion, and the " fafety of my countrymen, has induc'd me to discover these things to you at the hazard of my life, and the no imall honour "I now enjoy in the Othman Court. It is your business to see what may or ought to be done for the good of your coun-" try." Upon faying these words, Panatet retir'd into the camp. But Morofint, though he had fworn not to reveal what had been told him, that very night however affembles the general officers and other chief men, in whom he most confi-



ded, and laying before them Panaiot's informations, asks what was to be done. They after maturely weighing the thing, unanimously resolve to surrender the City to the Turks, if they could procure honorable terms, and declare it preferable to a long and tedious captivity. Panaut goes the next morning to the Vizir, tells him what he had faid to Morefini, and to take all courage from the already defhearten'd garrison, perswades him to send out of the port that evening with all possible filence, twelve of the largest ships with orders to steer towards Cyprus, but after twenty leagues failing, to return again under French Colours. The Vizir approving this device, orders the ships to fail out in the night with a fair wind, to meet which, when they are returning, as many more are fent out, and as foon as they come in fight, falute each other according to custom, which done, the Squadron un-der French colours, with the other under Turkish, come again into the port. The centinels plac'd in the Watch-Towers, when they fee French colours at a distance, believing the French fleet to be come to their relicf, tell the news to the City, and fill the inhabitants with joy. When they behold a Turkash Squadron going out to meet them, they imagine their entrance into the Port would be disputed, and therefore anxiously wait the issue of the battle. Presently after perceiving both fleets to approach without any hostilities and with mutual falutes, they are all aftonish'd, not knowing on what defign the French acted fo friendly with their enemies. But Morofini and the reft to whom he had communicated what was faid by Panawi, throwing off all doubt, publickly divulge what they had heard; and fince there was no other way to preferve life and liberty, perswade the soldiers and people to turrender affirming it fafer to truft enemies than faithleis allies. So Morofins dispatches that very day two men in a little boat with white wands to the Vizir, defiring him to fend to a certain place between the City and camp fome of his principal officers to meet fome of his, who should offer the terms of turrendering the City. The Vizir confents to his request, and inflantly appoints Ibrabim Basha of Aleppo, Kuikiet budaft Zuulficar Aga, and Basha Teskieren first scribe, Isbak Effendi, with Interpreter Panasos to fettle the affair. They meet the Venetian ambaffadors in tents under the White Tower, who after a long debate promife a furrender on condition that every person, whether soldier, citizen, Greek, or Frank, with his whole family should have liberty to retire to his own country with all his effects. When the Vizii had ratified this in the beginning of the month Jemaziul evvel, in the year 1080, (of Christ 1669,) Morofins departed and No. 12.

left the City, not only deftitute of foldiers but of cirizens, to the Vizir. If thefe things are very differently related by Chrifrom writers, I dare not contradict them, but yet do not fee why this account should be absolutely rejected. He that considers the usual industry of the Venetians to conceal their defigns, and especially the affairs which have prov'd unfortunate, will not wonder, that though they knew the truth, they did not care to divulge it, to the difparagement of their fo much boafted prudence. The report of the coming of a Franch fleet, though it was not fo much as prepar'd, was fufficient to deceive both Turks and Venetians. For the latter, closely invefted, could know nothing of what was transacted elsewhere; and the former, as they have no accounts of foreign transactions, but what come from their ambailadors, a rumour, though falle, might very eafily deceive them. As for me, I have a very credible voucher, namely Maxed himself, Panaist's messenger, who per-form'd faithful service twenty four years in the Court of my Father Constantine Cansemyr, and Brother Antiochus, and at length arriv'd to the dignity of Polleline or Mafter of the Court. I imagin'd it would not be unacceptable to the lovers of History, to infert what I heard from his mouth. As for Panagiotes, he was of fo great credit in the Turkish Court, that no Christian before him ever did, or ever will, it is believ'd, enjoy the like. In giving countels, and removing obstacles upon any great emergencies, he was to the Vizir what Achitophel was to the Hebrews, or Ukffes to the Greeks. For whether he gave his opimon of what was to be done or judg'd of the fuccess of affairs, he was observ'd never to be mistaken. What a twenty four years fierce war, what the effusion of fo many torrents of blood, and even the strength of the whole Othman Empire could not effect, was by his subtle advice and firatagem brought to pass, namely, the conquest of Candia, and Moresim both the braveft and wifeft General, (whose con-duct sufficiently shone in the last war between the Venetians and Turks) perswaded to furrender the City. By these means he acquir'd fuch favour with the Turks, that he even ventur'd to dispute about the law by the imperial mandate before the Prime Vi-ZIT Kioprili Abmed Pasha, with Vanh Effends the most learned of the Turks, and no less skill'd in the Christian than Turkish Law, formerly Tutor to Sultan Mahomet. Since the time of Soliman I, when, as I have related, the preference was given to the Christian Law before the Turkish in a publick disputation by a learned Turk, no man had been permitted to do this, but on the contrary it was made capital and for- $\mathbf{X} \times \mathbf{x}$ 

speech perswades the Governor (7) of the City to surrender on certain conditions the last but strongest fortress, to which the garrison had retir'd. The Vizir, in the beginning of the month Jemaziul evvel, in the year 1080, takes possession A. C 1669 of Candia deferted by the Venetians, creets on the walls the Turkifb Standards. and converting the churches into Jami, orders Ezan and Namaz to be perform'd. By this means a City, renown'd for many ages, the eighth wonder of the world, which nature itself seem'd to have fortified against all affaults, after a war of twenty four years (8), wherein, according to the best and still living Turkifb historians, above two hundred thousand Othmans were kill'd, is annex'd to the Othmanic Empire.

IX. While

## Annotations.

bid by a publick edict. Vanli Effendi, confuted and inrag'd, accuses Panagiotes to the Sultan as a Blasphemer, and sues for his life: but is faid to receive this answer from Mabomet: " Did not I tell thee, thou couldft " not dispute with this infidel? for the fu-\* ture let him alone, for he is necessary " to our Majesty" I think it needless to repeat here the whole dispute, fince it is publickly fold printed at Venue, and may be read in de la Croix's Commentaries on the eastern Church. Besides this, he is still famous among the Turks for his skill in aftrology, and knowledge of futurities. When the Vizir was yet employ'd in the flege of Candia, Panagiotes comes running to him one day, and begs him to leave his tent immediately, for his life would be in imminent danger, if he staid in that place. The Vizir obeys, and leaving his cloak on the cushions which he was fitting upon, goes, though it rain'd very hard, to another tent. He was hardly got there, when a cannon-ball shot from the garrison passes through the Vizir's tent, strikes the place where he sare, pierces the cloak and cufhions, and fo gains credit tu Panagioles's prediction. In the expedition to Camenica he foretold the taking of the City on the 10th day, which all that knew the fituation of the place, thought abfurd. But it was verified by the event. As his life, so was his death, remarkable. For when the Vizir Kioprili Abmed Pasha lay encamp'd in Sakebe, he merrily asks him, why fince all his predictions were answer'd by the event, and none had prov'd false, he could neither foreknow nor foretell any thing of himself? Panagrotes replies: " If the Vizir " would vouchfafe to come to his tent, at the fixth hour of the night, he should behold a strange thing, though not without forrow and grief." The Vizir wondering what it should be, goes about midnight to Panagiotes's tent. In the very entrance he hears the cries and lamentations of the fervants, and coming nearer, finds his beloved Utyfes breathing his last. One of the fervants says, he was enjoin'd by Parties before his death, to defire the Varies for all his services to the Oliman

Court, to grant him the favour to carry his body and bury it at Confiantinople, (an honour granted to the Sultans alone, and denied to every man elfe, even to the Prime Vizir himself , to which the Vizir is faid to answer . " I grieve for P-nagiotes in one " respect only, because, having minded " the Othman affairs more faithfully than " could be required of a Chap'ren, and " also excell'd all the Mutulmans in fideli " ty and policy, he could not be brought " at his death to a due obedience to God " and the Prophet, otherwise he would " have deferv'd to have had his Coffin car-44 ried a whole mile on my own Shoulders. 44 Wherefore, though pernaps for his infi-44 delity he will be finde out of Paradfe, I " think it just, in order to his having iome se seward of his fervices, to grant his laft requeft, and not deprive him of his deof fired burial." He bids therefore his fervants convey the body to Contantinople, and gives them a Chat if et / to the Kaimacan, to order the Conftantinof chit an Patriarch to bury with great pomp the dectated in the place he had appointed in his will Accordingly all the Greeks and Foreigners refiding at Conflantinople being aftembled, the body is carried to an Island in the Propontis, and burnd in the Monaflery of the He's Iron's, which had been repair'd by hun

17 Governor ] This was Irancifeo Moropin, more known by the last Venetian war with the Turks, than to need much to be faid of him here. After he had fubdued the Morea, he was created Dige of

(8) twenty four years] Had this war happen'd in the time of the antient Poets. it would doubtless have been render'd much more famous than the Treatm. For whoever weighs both in a just tialance, will eafily perceive the Cretan battles to be more bloody than the Trojan. Certainly all the time it lasted, there were continual battles, never-ceafing torrents of human blood, not only in Crete, but also in the whole Archipelago, and in all the borders of the Turkish and Venetian dominions Besides the Turks themselves, who carefully con-



IX Whilst the Othman army was yet employed in the siege, Sultan Mahomet, Mahomet takes under the pretente of hunting, departed from Adrianople to Temsbeher (9), that to protection by being near he might both incourage his soldiers and better provide against any emergencies. Here ambassadors from the Sars Campsb Costaks (10) come and humbly offer in the name of their countrymen, themselves and province to the Emperor. Among these was the Hetman himself, Dorosbenko, whom the Sultan graciously receives, presents with a robe, and dismisses adorn'd with a Tug (11), and Alem Sanjak in token of dominion, with a command to put an end to the robberies committed foretimes by the Coffaks, even in the suburbs of Constantinople, to remain faithful to the Othman Empire, and turn their arms, hitherto very often pernicious to the Musulmans, against their enemies. On the other hand, he promises, in case of a war between them and the Poles or Muscovites, to affift them with all his forces, and protect them from all hostilities.

X. When these things were declar'd at his return by Dorosbenko to his peo- Which the ple, it fill'd them with joy, but their neighbours with terror. The Coffaks had King of Pohitherto been of service both to Poland and Russia, as well by their daily ravacing the Othman borders, as because their country, abounding with streights and morafics, was accounted the bulwark of both kingdoms, which being remov'd, they had cause to sear they should suffer from them no less damage than the Mutulman provinces had formerly done. Wherefore the King of Poland, to whom they were before subject, in order to cradicate their due obedience to the Othman Empire, before it could be deeply rooted, first tends 2 gicat army against them, and by the affishance of those that still favour'd him, enters their country, and makes great devaltations

XI These things seem'd to be a sufficient motive to proclaim was against the which amica-Pulifb King, had not the equity of the Sultan thought it requisite to admonsh bly admonsh miled by Mefirst the peace breaker. To this end, he sends by a Chaush, a letter to the King homes, to this effect, " We hear that thou first breakest the peace settled between thy " kingdom and our Majefly, and hitherto religiously observ'd on both sides, by " invading the Coffaks, whom thou knowest to have taken refuge under the " shadow of our wings. We might indeed by the precept of our holy law, in-

## ANNOTATIONS.

ceal their other loffes, confess that in Crete alone were lost above two hundred thoutand of their men, in which computation those are omitted, who are not included in the hit of the foldiers, of whom perhaps a no less number was flam. How many Christians these drew with them to the shades below, may be easily judg'd The Venitians own this war cost them above a hundred millions of gold Crowns.
(9) Tem/bebir ] So Larissa, a noted town

of Thessaly, at present the Metropolis, is call'd by the Turks.

(10) Sari Camifb Cazagy ] Coffaks of the yellow reed. So are call'd those that dwell between the Borystenes and the Tyras, formerly jubject to Poland, now vaffals partly of the Potes, partly of the Ruffians. They have feveral times chang'd their names among the Turks. For after Dorofbenko's fubmission, they were by their Hetman, Doroshenko, call'd Cazagy, and when he revolted to the Ruffians, Sirke Cazagy from Siror also their leader After the first peace with John Sobiests King of Poland, by which they remain'd under the dominion of the Turks, Sultan Mabonet annex'd them to the principality of Moldavia, and order'd Duca, then Prince of Moldavia, to be call'd also Hetman of Ukrania, the town of Nemirow being appointed for his feat. But after the Vienna defeat, when Duca was taken by the Poles, the Turks restor'd, by the peace of Carlowitz, to the Poles all that re-gion with Camenice I have often heard the Turks faying, they have heard Chuthe and Ezan in those places, and therefore God cannot be pleas'd to suffer that country to remain in the power of the Christians, for which reason it ought to be recover'd the very first opportunity.

(11) Jug ] Horse-tail. This was afterwards, when the country was granted to Duca, taken away, because the Vizir, as he faid himfelf, would not adorn an infidel with three Tug, (though Ilieremias Mogila Prince of Moldavia formerly obtain'd that privilege) and so make him equal to himfelf. Howeverthe Sanjak or Standard full remain'd with him as the enligh of his do-

minion.

" flantly declare thee an enemy, and make thee fee what it is to dally with the " appeard iton, but pleying thy weakness, we think proper first to admonsh the to withdraw thy unjust hand from the Coffaks, recall thy troops from " their borders, and beg our pardon. If thou retule to do this, and halt any " thoughts of defending thy inequity by arms, know that our law denounces a-" gainst thee, death, against thy kingdom, devastation, against thy people, bonds: " and the whole world will impute the cause of these calamities entirely to thy " perverie and obfinate mind."

and then invaded by hun

XII. But the Polish King relying on his own strength and the decentful promiles of the Germans, defifts not from his undertaking, and dares to give farther provocation to the Othmans. The Sultan perceiving that a light correction was of no force with an obstinate man, resolves to be reveng'd with fire and sword, and therefore publickly declares war against the treacherous Poles, assembles his forces, and makes all the necessary preparations, with orders also to the Tartars to attend him in the expedition.

Mahan wards Poland, H 1083

XIII. Wherefore on the 8th day of Sefer, in the year 1083, the Empeior himself with a great army goes from Adrianople against the Poles, runs a bridge over the Danube at Sakche (12), passes his forces, and with long marches, going through Moldavia, incamps on the banks of the Tyras near Choim. Then he A. C 1672 orders a strong party to pais over in boats, who in the first assault take Zwani ecz. Being now join'd by the Tartars, headed by their Chan Selim Gierai (13),

he orders a spacious bridge to be built over the Tyras

The Prince of Moldavna depor'd,

XIV. In this work Duca (14) Prince of Moldavia, behaving remissiv, and retarding it some time by refusing number, causes the Emperor greatly to su'pest him. Upon examination, he is discover'd privately to favour the Poles, and to be brib'd by them to delay the building of the bridge. Wherefore he is depos'd, pardon'd as to life, but stript of all his treasures. In his place a Prince call'd Peter is chosen by the Moldavian nobility.

Camentee befleg'd

XV. At last all obstacles being surmounted, he passes the Tyras, and on the 3d day of Rebuil achyr, appears with his army before Cameniec This City lies three hours from the Tyras, strongly fortified both by nature and art, and very difficult to be assaulted It is surrounded by the rapid torrent Smotricz, the banks whereof every where full of scraggy rocks, afford a strong bulwark to the City. Besides these, a castle stands in the middle of the town, environ'd with walls of a great height, and not to be shaken. The Poles depending on these fortifications, and hoping to blunt the first fury of the Othmans with this fiege, appear'd not in the field, only plac'd a ftrong garrifon in the castle, with every thing necessary for a long siege. But the Sultan being incamp'd, calls a Council of all the experienc'd officers, and by their joint opinion orders the City to be invested, trenches to be dug, and assaults to be made from all parts. He commits one fide to the Vizir Abmed Pasha, and the Aga of the Januaries

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(12) Sakebe\*] Formerly Oblucicza, a town on the South bank of the Danube, not far from Galacz in Moldavia. The very old buildings, found here, demonstrate its antiquity. But by whom built, there appears no fign either on the walls or foundations. However it fesms to be the work of the Roman Colonies in Dana, or perhaps of the Roman Colonies in Dacia, or perhaps of the Daci themselves, as are Rusza, Babadagy, Caraja, and other very instant rowns of that region.

(22) Schim Guerai The most famous Chan of the Tartars of the present age, a Prince of equal prudence and bravery.

(14) Duca He was by nation a Greek, of a province of Rumelia, at first the servince.

vant of a Merchant at Jaffs, afterwards made one of his Chamberlains by Prince Bajilius, then rais'd to a Baron by his fon Stephanus, and married to the daughter of Eustathius Prince of Dabiza, lastly by money and friends he obtain'd the principality. He was illiterate, but in managing affairs, of great prudence, and reckon'd among the most excellent of his age. He was thrice Prince of Moldavia, and once of Walachia. At length, in his latter days, inclining more to tyranny than a just go-vernment, he is deliver'd up by the Barons to Polish captivity, and ended his life at Warfaw.

with the European forces and Janisacies; another eache second, Vizir Mufabib Muftapha Pasha, with the Assats forces, and a thatch technic Carmacam Cara Muftapha Pasha, with the Carastaguage and the tell of the troops.

XVI. The generals thus disposed, employelly catery on the finge, and and fored to fo vigorously batter the walls, that in ten days, fisping as they were, surrender they are by the violence of the balls thrown down, and the breaches every where mounted. The garrifon feeing themselves unable to sustain the affault, relinquish the outer walls, and retire into the inner castle. But finding themselves unsafe even there, offer to surrender on condition of life and liberty, which being granted, they depart with their Hetman into Poland, with the melancholy news of their loss. Mehemed, on the 3d of the month Jemaziul evvel, taking possession of the City, turns the larger Churches into Jams, and the feller into Most hs, and repairing the walls, leaves there Halil Pasha with a strong garrijon.

XVII. The confirmation Poland was under for this loss is inex. Troopener prelitible. A fortreis, thought capable of holding out many years, was Lespelis taken in ten days, and less time seem'd to be requir'd to ravage the whole kingdom To confound the enemies the more, the Sultan fends Caplan Mehemed Pasha Covernor of Aleppo, and the Chan of Crim-Tartary, with the light aimed forces to take Leopolis, whilft he himfelt intending to follow with the main body of the army, incamps near Buchach\*. Caplan with his men marches to Leopolis, ravaging the country as he palles, closely belieges the City, and makes leveral

XVIII. In this diffress, when the town was now reduc'd to extre- The Polis inmities, the Poles\_repenting of their proceeding, lend amballadors to for peace the Chan of the Tartars in his camp, who in the name of the King and Kingdom implore his intercellion for them to the Sultan, to incline him to peace, for which they were willing to deliver up forty cight towns and villages in the territory of Cameniec, pay an annual tribute (15) of twenty thousand Rix Dolars, account as friends the Coffaks under Dorosbenko, and never more quarrel with them

XIX. Selim Gieras Chan, having heard the offers of the ambastadors, which is con instantly lends them to the Emperor, who duly weighing the state of cluded affairs, grants a peace on the terms propos'd, and confirms the fame with new writings according to the antient form of treaties between the Poles and Othmans. These being exchanged, he disbands the army the beginning of the winter, and in the month Shaban in the year 1083 returns victorious to Adrianople.

This was the last victory from the year of the Hegira 611 to 1083, H 1083 by which any advantage accrued to the Othman state, or any City A C 1672 of Province was annex'd to the antient bounds of the Empire. There have enfued especially under the reign of Leopold Emperor of Germany, terrible flaughters, fuch as posterity would hardly believe, were

#### Annotations.

(15) tribute ] The Poles themielves do not deny this was promis'd, but was never paid, and belides in

process of time was abolish'd by the peace made at Zuranno,

Nº. 11.

Yyy

they

they not warranted by publick authority, and the strength of the Othman's has been weaken'd by the destruction of several Kingdoms and Envinces; the loss of whole armies, and intestine wars and distensions. All these things which have happen'd to so ample an Empire even in our times, shall with the same faithfulness as the former transactions, be related in the Second Part, in the words of the Turkish Historians

The BND of the HISTORY of the GROWTH of the OTHMAN Empire.



Additions



## Additions and Corrections to Part I.

N. B. (n) stands for Annotations and (b) for the right hand Column where the Page is divided into Columus.

PREFACE, p. v. l. 3. Ruznamche read Ruznameh, Nameh significs (according to D'Herbelot) in the Persian Language, Book, Letter, and is the Title to many Persian and Turkish Writings, as Carman Nameh, Kiar Nameh, Likender Nameh, &c.

ibid. 1. 9. Istrajadaghy read Istranjadaghy.

ibid. 1. 14, and 1. 21. dele, the, it being expressed by the Article for it the End of Effends, which is the same as, the Effends.

ibid p. vii l. 17 Tajuttevarich. This word is in Arabic spelt Tag' altavarikh, i. c. the Crown of Histories or Chromicles being the Title of the Othman History written in elegant Tarkish, by Shad eddin Mohammed Hassan, who died Musti at Constantinople in the year of the Hejira 1008. This History begins with Othman and ends with Selim I. Tag' is a Persian word signifying in general a Cap, and particularly a Crown.

ibid. 1. 44 Nimetullah, or a large Persian Dictionary explain'd in Turkish, drawn up by Khalil Sofi, commonly call'd Baba Nimetullah. The word Nâmat allah signifies the Grace of God.

ibid. 1. 3. b. Shich Saads read Sheikh Saads, a Persian Poct, commonly called Sheikh Moslehedsn Saads AlShirazs, being born in the City Shiraz Capital of Persia, properly so called in the year of the Hessa 571. He was taken prisoner by the Christians in the Holy Land, and redeem'd by a Merchant of Aleppo for ten Gold Crowns, who gave him his Daughter in marriage with an hundred more. But this woman was so great a plague to him, that he could not help discovering it in his Works, especially his Gulistan, which word signifies in the Persian Language, a Garden of Flowers.

ibid. p. viii. b. l. 3, and 4. Vilurmisin read Billiurmisin.

ibid. 1 36. Erzer read Erzerum on the Emphrates, about fixty miles from Trebsfond, a great thorough-fare for the Eastern Caravans

ibid. 1 57. Philippolis read Philippopolis. So p. 33 1. 7, &cc ibid. p ix. 1. 30. Alothman read AliOthman. And so in other places.

ıbıd.

## Additions and Corrections to Part I.

that a ri le feet a leading a late Author has explain'd this pane the Mineriefatt, but it feetes rether to be a corruption of Ernenglich, a City in Ausselfe not fur from the Euphrates, where Maines Isal made his first flay after leaving Machan.

ibid. p. xii. L. b. Affinjak read AliSuljuk.

ibid. p. xiii. 1. 27. Jundegdi read Giundogde

ibid, p. xiii. b. l. Suguebick read Sugmebik\*.

ibid. p. xiv. b. l. 10, &c. Aljeng bizziens read Alijeng bizziens.

Page 1. 1. 4. Alethman, Let it be observed once for all, that this word wherever it occurs must be read AlsOthman. So likewife Alijenghiz.

p. 2. n. b. l. 2. Instead of (from the Arabian into the P. r. fian) read. (from the Perfian into the Arabian) the first reading being a

mistake in the Manuscript.

p. 2, n. b. l. 13. Alissan read Ali Shan.

p. 3. n. b. l. 6. read Lonscerus, a German Professor at Marpurgh

born 1499.

p. 3. n. l. 40, Shah] This word also fignifies the King, at Chafe, a Game we have received from the Persians, who probably had it from the Indians. Hence Shah mat, which we express by Cheek " mate, and the Italians by Scatto Matto

p. 4. n. b. l. 11. read here and elsewhere, Gierai, note g is to be pronounced before e or a as in the English words give, eager

p. 4. n. b. l. 34. read, and the Mouths of the Nile.

p. 4. n. b. l. 35. Azerbejan, Shirvan, and Biladuljebal, aic three diffinct Provinces of Persia. Azerbejan, where it is faid the first Dynasty of the Persian Kings was establish'd, and the fireworship instituted by Zoroaster, contains part of Media, Syria, Armenia major, and its principal Cities are, Tauris, Ardibal Selmas, Nakhshrvan, Merend, &c. The Province of Shirvan part also of Media lies along the western Shore of the Caspian Sea, and is parted from Azerbejan and Daghestan by the Rivers Aras and Cur, that is, the Araxes and Cyrus. The chief ( ties are Baks in the latitude of 39. 30. Shamakhie the Capital, both on the Caspian Sca, and Berdah on the Cur.

p. g. n. l. g. Erzengian, read Adherbigian, for so is Azerbejan called by D' Herbelot, and not, as by missake is here said, Erzen-

p. 5. n. l. 13. Sheg read Sheikh. Recaut uses Sheg instead of Sheikh shid. n. l. 14. Bir or Elber is a different place from Jaber, and hes higher up on the Euphrates.

ibid. n. l. 22. Ebubekir Successor of Mahomet hies buried at Medina, the Ebubekir buried here was Founder of the Tekkie or Convent.

and only a Sheikh.

ibid.



- ibid. n. b. 1. 22. read Abulfaragius. He was Son of a Christian Phyfician, Native of Melitene in Asia minor, Author of an universal History, intitled, Mokhtassar al dual. He lived in the thirteenth Century. Pocock has publish'd the Arabic Text with a Lat. n Translation.
- p. 8. 1. 8. Jundogdi, read, here and elsewhere, Giundogdi.
- ibid. n. l. 18. Jun read Gun.
- p. 9 l. 4, &cc. read Sarnyat.
- P. 10. l. 22. Jungue read Grundues. So p. 15. l. 11, &c
- p. 15. l. 16, &c. read Tengsfbehrs.
- ibid. 1. 24. read Nicomedia, a City of Bithynia
- P. 17. l. 29. read Engejest, and Hekess.
- p. 24. l. 11. Iznigmid ] it is by D' Herbelot writ Iznimid.
- p. 28. 1. 22. read Ayafolonsa.
- p. 30 n. b. 1 10. Empress Valida, read Valide-Empress. Valide Sulsana, 1s the Mother of the reigning Emperor, or as we say, the Queen-Mother, of whose Prerogatives, see the Author's Note in the second Part of this History.
- p. 34. n. b. l. 40. dele the, and in every place where it stands before a word with the Article (f) annex'd to it.
- p. 35. n. l. 18. Sham Beglerbegs, when an (s) is thus added to the End of a word, it shows that the foregoing word answers to our Genitive Case, as Churzem Shahi, that is, the Shah of Churzem. So here Sham Beglerbegs, Beglerbeg of Sham or Damaseus.
- p. 36 n. l. 20. Shich read Sheik.
- p. 38. n. l. 29. read Silabdar.
- p. 38 n. b. l. 32. one hundred, read, a thousand and one.
- p. 39. l. 2. Dervises. This word is writ Dervise, and fignifies in general both in Persian and Turksh, a Poor Man, like Fakir in Arabic. But in particular these two Words mean a Religious, or Monk.
- p. 39. n. b. l. 49. Kupruls read Kioprili, and so in other places. Note, the (s) after the (k) in these and the like words, makes but one Syllable with the following Vowel, and is therefore often omitted.
- p. 40.1. 3. Shieh, this word wherever it occurs must be read Sheikh.
- p. 41. l. 22, &c. Germian, read Giermian.
- p. 42. l. 15. Arnaud, by this name the Turks call Macedonia and Albania. D'Herbelet writes is Arnauth.
- p. 42. n. l. 12. read Lasvilasets. Vilasets significs a Country.
- ibid. l. 14. read Mensuskius.
- p. 44. n. l. 15. Hall, read Court.
- p. 47. l. 13. read Sarasker.
- p. 47. n. b. l. 6. read Beffarabia.
- p.48. l. 17, &c. read Jassij.
- p. 48. n. b. l. 2. dele Semicolon after (him.)
  - Nº. 12.

Z 2 3

### Additions and Corrections to Part I.

p. go. n. l. 16. read Tamani.

p. 52, n. b. l. 3. Myrs read Myfr.

ibid. l. 15. Mehemed read Mahmud.

p. 54. n. l. 18. read Kust caladfi.

p. 60. n. b. l. 35. read Governors.

p. 66. l. 5, &c. read Ksorfbah Muliuk.

p. 68. n. l. 20. Saracen. This Word is by some derived from Shark, which in Arabic, signifies the East.

p. 71. l. 5. read Als Passa. It must be observ'd that the Turkss Letter Be with three points under it, is pronounced like our P, for which reason the word which we usually write Bassa, is always read in Turkss, Passa.

p. 71. l. 12. read succeeding.

p. 73. l. 21. read Seversn.

p. 75. n. l. 24. mans read Romans.

p. 76. n. b. l. 20, 42. read Selámun alesksum.

ibid. l. 21. read Aleikeum effeliam.

ibid. l. 24, &cc. read Gieldinius.

p. 81. n. b. l. 15. after Sword read by.

p. 85, n. 1, 26, read Begierbeglies.

ibid. n. b. l. g. propose, read publish.

p. 88. l. 21. rout read root.

p. 90. n. l. 24. after Side read of.

p. 102. n. b. l. 7. read Mskissned.

p. 106. n. b. l. 26. instead of (commit the care and attendance of the women) read (send the orders of the women to be executed)

p. 107. Trebisond] in the year 1204, the Greek Empire was subdivided into three parts. At Constantinople reign'd, Baldwin Earl of Flanders; at Adrianople, Theodorus Lascaris; and at Trebisond, Alexis Commenus, who had under him Cappadocia, Paphiagonia, and Pontus, with some other Provinces. After eight Successions, David the last Emperor of Trebisond or of Nice, as some call him, was subdued by Mahomet II. as well as Theodorus and his Brother John, at Adrianople. See Atlas Hist.

p. 109. n. 1. 26. Hall read Court.

p. 112. n. b. l. 21. Lotherius, read Lothonus.

p. 113. n. l. 19. read Gseras.

abid. n. b. l. 43. Galga Sultan and Marraddin. These offices are marplained by the Author in Cap. I. of his Second Part.

p. 115. n. l. 3. read Paleologus.

p. 117. n. b. l. 18. Purgatory, call'd Arâf, the Plural of the Arabir word Orf, and both fignify a place between the Mahometan Heaven and Hell. The Musulmans are not agreed about the quality of the persons in this place. But generally they place there such Musulmans, whose good and bad actions are so equal as that they deserve not to enter Paradise nor be east into Hell.

Onc

One of their Punishments is the Sight of the Bleffed, and earnest Defire to be with them, which cannot be till the day of Judgment, when prostrating themselves before the Face of their Creator, that act of Adoration shall cause their good works to outweigh their bad, and then it shall be said to them, "Enter into "Paradise, where your sears and cares shall be at an end." Saadi says of the Aras, that it appears a Hell to the Blessed, and a Paradise to the Damid.

p. 119. n. b. l. 4. read ustun, the Turkssb name of the vowel e or a.

p. 127. n. 34. dele so.

p. 130. l. 28. Myrea, fays D'Herbelet, is a contraction of Emir Zadeh, which in Persian fignifies, Son of a Prince, and was particularly us'd by the Family and Posterity of Tamerlane, and very common at present among the Tartars.

p. 133. n. l. 6. dele the.

p. 135 1.6. Ismail] He was Son of Sheik Haidar, whose Mother was Daughter of Uzuncassan sirst Sultan of the Dynasty of the Turcomans, call'd Baranduriens or White Sheep. Haidar in one of the Titles of Als, and signifies Lion. Hence the Family of Sheik Haidar pretends to derive their Origin from Ali by his second Son Hussan. Haidar being slain in battle by the King of Shirvan, his Family, which was very numerous, was almost wholly destroyed. However Ismail one of his Sons escaped, and afterwards sounded the present Dynasty, which now reigns in Persia, with the Sirname of Sophi. The Persians say Haidar was the first inventor of a red covering for the Head with twelve Folds round a Cap, and caus'd all his people to wear it. It is call'd in Persian, Haidar's Tag or Crown. Hence it is that the Turks call the Persians, Kizylbash or Redheads.

p. 138. n 1 5. Soub, read Sovuk.

p. 139. n. b. i. 1, and 2. dele which.

p 156 l. 35. feiz'd all Egypt Thefe Circuffons reign'd in Egypt about two hundred and citility years in fourteen fuccessions, and were what we corruptly will the Komalues, from Mamluk the Plural of Memaluk, Which in Arabic significs a Slave.

p. 165, l. 12, read Gaza.

p. 167 l. 21 Sherif of Mecca] D'Herbelot fays the Arabias word Sherif fignifies in general Noble, or High in Birth or Dignity, and is a Title given particularly to the Descendents of Mahomes by Alshis Son-in-law and his Daughter Fathima. They are also called Emir and Seid, i. c. Prince and Lord, and distinguished by green Turbans. There have been several Dynastics of these Sherifs in Africa. The Edrissites were Sherifs, and the Race which now reigns at Fez and Morocco bear the name of Sherif. The Sherifs of Mecca and Medina are still less by the Turks with a sort of Sovereign Power.

#### Additions and Corrections to Part I. 272

p. 175. l. 12. read Mastaba.

p. 178. l. 17. read from a Tyrant.

p. 183. n. b. l. 22. dele Comma after (is.)

p. 198. l. 20. Giurjistan, that is, the Country of the Georgians, for flan or sfran fignifies Country, so Kurdiftan, the Country of the Kurdi, &c.

p. 202. n. l. 3. Arabic, tead Arabia.

p. 202. n. l. 32. the, read that.

p. 214. n. l. 3. Jimair ] This name according to D'Herbelet is writ in Arabic, Gezair or Kessair, which he makes to be a corruption of the Latin, Cafarea, and Algiers to be the antient Julia Cafarea, Capital of that part of Mauritania, call'd by the Romans, Cafariensis, to distinguish it from the two other Mauritanian Provinces, namely, Tingitana and Sittfensis.

p. 226. l. 13. Minare or Towers much like the Monument in London.

p. 227. l. g. read Chalkulvadi.

p. 230 n. l. 17. Jemiji read Gsemiji. ibid. l. 21. read Chingiane\*.

Ibid. l. 35. read Peinirji.

p. 233. l. 23. Var, read Van.

p. 244. n. l. 3. or, read and.

p. 247. n. b. l. 36. read Sijeli.

p. 256. in the Margin, read Ragotski.



THE

# HISTORY

OF THE

## OTHMAN EMPIRE.

### PART II.

THE

# HISTORY

OF THE

Decay of the OTHMAN EMPIRE,

FROM THE

Reign of MAHOMET IV.

TO THE

Reign of AHMED III.

BLING THE

History of the Author's own Times.

Written Originally in LATIN,

By DEMETRIUS CANTEMIR, late Prince of Moldavia.

I sanflued into ENGLISH, from the Author's own Manuscript,

By N. TINDAL, M A. Vicar of Great Waltbam in Effex

Adorn'd with the HEADS

Of the TURKISH EMPERORS, Ingraven from Copies taken from ORIGI-NALS in the Grand SEIGNOR'S Palace, by the late SULTAN'S Painter.

### LONDON:

Printed for JAMES, JOHN, and PAUL KNAPTON, at the Crown in Ludgate Street. MDCCXXXV.

Y

يد فلم دفار د



н E

OF THE

Decay of the OTHMAN EMPIRE.

#### PART H.

The REIGN of

### MAHOMET

Nineteenth EMPEROR of the TURKS.

#### BOOK IV. CHAP. L

HE War in Poland had succeeded to Mahomet's wish. In one and the sultan Mahofame Campain the strongest Bulwark of that country had been taken, met returns victorious to the forces of the enemy vanquished, Podolia laid waste, Leopolis reduced to the Advantagle utmost extremity, and the very heart of the kingdom struck with such terror, that the inhabitants thought it not only prudent but even necessary to compound for their lives and fortunes with the loss of their honour, and were obliged to a knowledge the Tartars for their Deliverers, whom they had always found to he their capital enemies. For the Emperor being prevailed upon by the entrearies of the Chan of Crim-Tartary, had granted them peace, while he lay encamped before + Buchach\*, and imagined that the remembrance of the over- + Bucket throws, they had tuffered, and their own weakness, would restrain them from violating their engagements, or making any attempt contrary to the conditions of the peace he had granted them. In this belief, in the month Shaban, as I before observed, he returns to Adrianople, and disbands his army, which had been fatigued with fo many labours and marches.

II. While amidst the rejoycings and appliance of this people, it is properly the Polish Ambassadors, who were to bring the promised tribute of twenty thousand the pace said Rix-Dollars, and to ratify the conditions of peace in the name of the whole made by their King with the kingdom, Salian II. While amidft the rejoycings and applauses of his people, he is expecting The States of

king dand, he is informed, that Develocate + General of the Cossaks had revolted, and with a large body of men, was laying waste the borders of the Otheman Empire, and that his party daily increased. There appeared no great difficulty to extinguish this flame, while things were quiet in Poland, when fresh advice is brought, that the Poles began to repent of the peace, and animated by the promises of the Emperor of Germany and the Pope, were preparing again for war. This report was not long after confirmed by Letters from the High Chancellor of the kingdom to the Vizir Kioprils Abmed Passa, in which he signified, that the States of Poland considered as null and invalid the conditions of peace, to which the King had submitted without their consent, and would rather suffer death; than the infamy of being said to pay a farthing by way of tribuse.

The Virir presses the Ambassador of Peland with threats to stand to their promises.

III. The Emperor hearing this, faw himself deceived by the Poles, and extremely regretted, that he had suffered himself to be prevailed upon by an unscasonable regard to the Koran (1) and the promise of tribute (2), to abandon the war, and order his forces to return, since they would have undergone less hardship in their winter-quarters in Podolia and Moldavia, than in their march home. However being actuated by a spirit of resentment more than sear, he determines to take a severe and memorable revenge for the injury offered him. The Vizir answers the letters of the States of Poland with terrible threats, reproaches them for their perfidiousness, in refusing to observe the conditions of peace, by which the Emperor had been so gracious to save them from immediate destruction, and for daring to declare it to the most powerful Monarch, and by that means incur his indignation. He added, it was in vain for them to pretend the differe of the kingdom, fince what had been done by the king and the Senators of the first rank, must necessarily be agreed to by the rest. Lastly, he advited them immediately to perform what they had promifed, and to divert the Emperor's refentments from themselves by a speedy and just submission, which

#### Annotations.

(1) to the Koran ] The Reader will not perhaps wonder, that a regard to the Koran thould be affigued among the causes of making the peace of Buchach\*, when he is informed that the Turks are excited to a perpetual enmity with the Christians, by no other ground of their Superstition so much as by that mais of Blasphemy. But though they are commanded by the precepts of the Koran to make war upon the Christians, even when there is no other cause for it but the propagation of Mabometifin, yet that law determines the manner in which peace may and ought to be made. For first it permits to make a truce, if the enemy be stronger than the Musulmans, that these may have time to augment their forces, and to heal their wounds, if they have received any. And it commands, that a firm and lafting peace be made, when the enemy embraces Mabonetifus, the enlargement whereof is the fole end of a just war, or promifes to pay an annual tribute. For in fuch a case, he cannot be compelled further to Mahometism, nor be hurt any way unless he revolts. And if any one commits hostilities upon fuch a tributary, he shall

be punished as severely as if he had attacked a Musulman's house or lands. For the Fetuab answers upon that point Anterun mals bizum mals bizum jour gioz gioz, &c. Such a man's substance and riches, are as our substance, his soul as our soul, his eye as our eye, &c.

(2) promife of tribute | I justly assign as another cause of the conclusion of the first Polife war, the promife made by the King of Poland of paying tribute For the Turks aim at nothing more, than to have an enemy bound to pay them a small sum of money, which they may easily call a tribute. That once obtained, they do not want contrivances to increase that fum datly, and reduce it to a real tribute; and fo make countries, that intended only to put themselves under their Protection, entirely fabrest to their dominion Instances of fuch frauds, are not only the Christian Princes of Moldavia and Walachia, but also the Chan of Crem-Tartary, who is himfelf a Mabometan, and of the same religion, whole ancestors enjoyed much larger privileges when they submitted to the Turki, than their Descendants do at present.



if they refus'd to do, he threatens them with a war more fierce than the former,

and with the total destruction of their kingdom.

IV. But when these remonstrances had no effect upon the Poles, the Emperor or orders all the forces possible to be raised in the Empure, and an Army not force into P. inferior to the former, meet at Adrianople early in the forms. All things being least inferior to the former, meet at Adrianople early in the spring. All things being least ready in the month Rebsul achyr of the year 1084, he marches out of the City fends his army with great pomp, against the Poles, flattering hunfels with the hope's of being under the able by one effort to subduc them, weakened as they were by the last year's ill Sabiels to the success, and to annex Poland, now destitute of desence, to his Empire. But the borden Poles had turned even their misfortune to their advantage, and compoled their H. 1084 domestick differences, which had opened the way to the Turkish victories the A C 1673 foregoing year, they affimble all their forces; and before the Emperor could reach them with his army, pass the Tyras at Chotin under the conduct of John Sobieski; thinking it more adviseable to invade their enemies, than to drive them from their own walls.

V. A few days after, the Emperor likewise advances with his army, and finds A ferce bade the place, where he designed to pass over, seiz'd by the enemy. He is surprized at Comin at the boldness of a people lately vanquished, and imagining that they, led by their evil genius to defluction, had thut themselves up between the Tyras and Danube, reminds his own army of their former victories, and the glory of the Othman name, and commands them bravely to attack the enemy. The Poles relolving to wipe out the diffrace they had incurred the last year, draw up their troops, animated by the speeches and example of their General. The two armics ingage, and the battle pioves ficice and bloody, lafting with doubtful fuc-

cess till the evening.

VI. White both fides fight with great ardor, Petreczeicus (3) Plince of Mol- The Prince of davia, and Gregory (4) the Son of Gika (5) Prince of Walachia, defert from Walachia go

#### ANNOTATION S.

the over to the Poles, who obtain the sic-

(3) Petreczeicus ] A Moldavian by birth, and of a noble, though not famous, family, in that province He was raifed to the highest honours by Euftratius Dabiza Prince of Meldavia, fix months after whose death, Ducas being deposed, he obtained the prin-cipality. At Chatte he revolted from the Turks to the Poles, as has been mentioned in this History, which was the cause of the deteat of the Turks. After the victory, not being able with the affiftance of the Poles to preferve his principality, he retired with them into Poland, where he continued till his death, which happened in 1684. Not long after the deteat of the Yurks at renna, he returned into Moldavia, and with the affidance of his Relation Bainfer, Dok Prince Ducas, but upon an irruption of the Taitais was forced to withdraw a second time into Poland, and not without lofs. But the King of Polind granted him the town of Jazlovecz with fome villages, and a yearly pension of one hundred thoufand Zolots, this he enjoyed till his death, and dying without heirs, the fame favour was granted to his widow, till her fecond marriage with a Polander.

(+) Gregory | Prince of Walachia, fon of George Gika, Despot of that country. A man truly great, and adorned with many virtues, had he not fullied them by his treachery to his father. Twice he revolted

No. 13.

from the Turks, and twice was received into favour. The first time was to the Germans, at the battle of St. Gothard, under the Vizir Kioprils Abmed Pafba; and the second, to the Poles at the battle of Chossn. In his last revolt, the Turks endeavoured to fecure him to their obedience by detaining his Wife and Children as hoitages, but, notwithstanding that, he showed a Christian courage in the very heat of the battle, despising all his goods and riches. After the battle, he retired through Poland to the Emperor of Germany, by whom he was created Prince of the Empire, but not receiving there so handsome an allowance as the Emperor's Ministers had made him expect, he resolved to return to Constantinople. To that end he writes a letter to his old friend Panagiotes Nicufius, a perfon then in very great credit at the Othman Port, wherein he gives an account of his ill fate, and entreats him to obtain his pardon from the Sultan Panagiotes writes him an answer, and affures him, he could easily have him restored to the Sultan's favour, if he would but come himself and implore his clemency. Upon the receipt of this letter, Gregory defires the Emperors leave to return, which not being able to obtain, he pretends a defign to spend the remainder of his days in Germany, and embrace the Romilb Religion, if he could but have a difpenfation 4 B

534

The trying out they were betrayed, quit their ranks, and refuse to obey the orthe poles, and at first indeed retreat gradually, but the enemy's troops pressing
upon them with vigor, they quickly take to slight, and abandon not only the
field of battle, but also their cannon, with all their warlike provisions. The
Emperor, (who had remained behind about four hours march,) when he sees
his soldiers slying in disorder, full of indignation, at first endeavours to re-animate them by his speeches, and to lead them back to the battle, then uses threats,
kills some of the foremost run-aways, calls upon the rest, to restect upon the
law which they prosested, and choose rather to die valiantly sighting, than by the
hands of the executioner, and by that means lose the promised crown of martyrdom. At last when he finds, that neither his words nor sword have any effect,
he is forced to save himself also by slight from falling into the hands of the
enemy.

The death of the King of Poland prevents the further progress of the General

VII. The Othman army being thus defeated, there appeared nothing to prevent the Poles from not only recovering what they had loft, but even extending the limits of their kingdom. Camensee, which they found to be a check to their progress, was pressed with a severe famine, which would probably soon force the garrison to abandon that fortress. But all these hopes were suddenly destroyed by the death of Michael King of Poland, which happened shortly after, and which occasioned the Nobles to prosecute their affairs more semisly, being drawn off from the care of the war to the election of a new King.

#### ANNOTATIONS.

pensation from the Pope to marry another wife. This pleasing the Emperor, he gives Gregory not only a fafe-conduct, but also a recommendation to the Pope. With these he comes to Rome, kiffes the Pope's toe, tells him, that though he had a wife alive in confinement among the Turks, yet he could not conquer the lufts of the flesh, and therefore was obliged to marry a second wife whilf his first was alive, and desires a dispensation for that purpose. but promises at the same time, that if his request was granted, he would publickly profess him-felf a member of the Roman Church. The Pope demurred at first, and consulted the Cardinals, what was most expedient for the Church to do; either strictly to observe the rigid law of the Gospel, which forbids Polygamy; or by this indulgence to bring a Schismatical, but otherwise an illustrious, Prince, into the bosom of the Church After long deliberation, the last opinion was preferred to the first, and a licence for marrying a fecond wife was given to Gregory, who thereupon made publick profession of the Catholick Faith. Gregory having thus gained credit, pretends to have received a letter from Vence, wherein he was informed, that there was in that place a young Lady of the noble family of the Justiniani, who would not distant to marry him. Upon showing this letter, he receivad a recommendation from the Pope to the republic of Venice,, and departed for that age. There he spent some months, unpretence of making preparations for

his wedding, and transacting other affairs, but at last changing his dreis, he went on board a Cypriot flap, and fet full for ( n flantinople. Having thus deceived both the Emperor and the Pope, he lay con caled the forme time at Conflating to, in his friend I'. nagates's house, till he had obtain if from the Sulran a full pardon, and an ob's on of all that was path. After which ic mode a public, entry into Conflan up, and of heed not only the enlargement of his wife and of t dren, and the reflitution of all his goods but also a promise of being remoted to his principality within three months died forty days after, either of the piles, or of poiton given as he confessed on his death-bed by Timon a Physician, said to have been bribed by the Cantacurem

(5) Gika] He was an Albanian, born in the village Koprili, from whence originally came the famous family of the Kiefrili ogli. In the time of Stephen, Itrnamed Burduze, 1 e. the Fat, Prince of Moldavia, he was Capia Kiebaia, or Relident at the Othman Port, but, upon Stephen's rebellion, he was appointed his fueceffor. Three years after, he was translated from Vildavia to Walachia, but was afterwards deprived of that dignity by the indirect practices of his fon Gregory, of whom I have already fpoken. For when Gregory refided at Confiantinople, he told the Vizir, that his father was old, and fometimes had not the use of his senses, by which means he got him turned out, and was appointed Prince of Walachia in his room.

V After

VIII. After long deliberation the crown is conferred upon John Sobieski, John Sob great Marshal of the Kingdom, who besides the nobleness of his Family, and his of Palent own personal merus, by his late victory against the Turks, had procured the votes of the States of the kingdom.

IX. This choice was by no means agreeable to the Othman Court, fince he, The Sulman who, when General of a subdued nation, had defeated their victorious army, er preparations being now King of Conquerors, feemed to threaten the vanquished with some forwar against greater calamity. The Emperor therefore prepares a very powerful army to op- the Palar. pole him; and besides the remains of the former slaughter, which he had placed in winter-quarters in Moldavia and Dobruja, he raifes new forces in Afia and Europe, and to the usual number of Janizaries adds twelve thousand Serden Giechdi\* (6), appointing each eleven Aspers a day. In order likewise to enlarge and strengthen his army, he sent his commands to Selim Gieras (7) Chan of Tartary, and directed him to bring with him two men out of every Cazan (8) of the Bujac and Crim Tarters.

X, The

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(6) Serden Giechdi\* ] This name, as to its Etymology, signifies, one that does not value his head, or that has devoted his life and head to the Sultan's fervice. kind of militia is not perpetual, but is raifed, and disbanded, at the Sultan's pleature. For when there is any great expedition in hand, or a fortified place to be belieged, the Sultan orders so many thousand of Serden Girchdi\* to be raised, with the pay of about ten Aspers a day. When this order is notified, as many of the Janizaries as prefir a zeal for religion to their life, are lifted among the Serden Giechdi\*, till the number appointed by the Sultan is made up. And thus if a new Janizary, whose pay is about three Afpers a day, lifts himfelf a-mong the Serden Giechdie, he will receive afterwards thirteen Afpers as long is he lives. Their business is, to be the first either in attacking an enemy's camp, or fealing the walls of a town, without complaining of the danger and difficulty of the place, or thinking any thing too hard. Their affaults are certainly very fierce, because they run into the fire, and against the enemy's fwords, not like men, but like wild beafts void of understanding, and do not defift from their attacks, till they are either recalled or killed. For this reason, when the expedition is over, very few, out or the whole number, come fafe home, but such as escape return to the Oda or Coumber, our of which they had been chofen, and cunnot be compelled to ferve in the same manner a second time. But if they chuse to be Serden Giechdis another year, they have an addition to their thirtecn Aspers a day of ten more, which they enjoy all their lives. If fuch a Serden Gicelidi\* in either grievoully wounded, or loses a hand or leg in battle, so as to be disabled from going to war, he has an allowance of ten Afpers a day, and fometimes more or less according to the Sultan's pleasure,

and with that is fent home under the name of Oturak or Sedentary, enjoying that penfion to his death. Not only the Oturak or wounded persons, but also the veteran Janizaries, who have ferved twenty or thirty years, and are unfit any longer to bear arms, have leave to return home as the Oturak, and are gratified with the same allowance. If these stay at Constantinople, they are fometimes confulted upon important affairs, and their opinion is de-livered to the Sultan by the Aga of the Very often they follow the camp of their own accord, and are not obliged to fight, but only, if a fiege or some expedition is proposed, they are desired to deliver their opinion about it. There are Horse-Serden Gueldi chosen from among the Spabs, in the fame manner, and are difmissed as the Oturak.

(7) Selim Gieras ] Chan of Crim Tartary. a man very famous both in war and peace, a most excellent historian, in the knowledge of military affairs superior to most, and hardly second to any. The Turks themfelves own, that every time they despised or neglected his advice, they ran into shameful errors. Three years before the taking of Cameniec, he was made Chan; twice he was deposed, and as often restored; at last under Sultan Mustafa II. he abdicated the throne, and went in pilgrimage to Mecca, He died at his country-house near Constantinople, and his fons now fucceed one another in the office of Chan. As for the difpute between the families of Choban\* Gurai and Selim Gierai, I have given a full account of it in a former note.

(8) Cazan ] Or more elegantly Cazgan: as to its Etymology, it fignifies a Caldron, or large Kettle, in which several Companions may boyl their victuals together. From whence the families of the Crim and Bujak Tartars are named Canan, each of which may contain about ten fouls, more or lefs.

I. The King of Polant furbedding what was really the cale, that he was to gage with an enemy littinger and better prepared, applies himself to his affairs with no less attention, ratifes troops from all parts, and admonsthes the flaces of his kingdom to affemble all their forces, and confirm the victory, they had gained in the last expedition. But they were deaf to his advice. Flushed with their late victory, they contemn the enemy, and give our that the Othman power, broken by the lofs they had fustained, could scarce recover uself in many years, that the forces already raifed were fufficient, and that the treasures of the kingdom ought not to be fruitlefully confumed. These were the publick pretences of the Nobles, but the true reason was, their fear left the King, whole boldness and heroical virtues were well known, when he found the whole kingdom united under his command, should oppress them, exhausted and weakened with a long war, and make the crown, which had been conferred on him by election, hereditary in his family. Befides they were very loth to obey a person, who but a few days before had been their equal.

he Poles bege Cameec. 'he *Turks* ten to its

H 1085

he Pales bet ftruck th terror. indon the

ie Sultan overs Cheman.

and takes

: rebellious aks offer Turks alnce, but

XI. However the King, to perform the duty of a father of his country, and to overcome the enemy by arts fince he could not by force, through the enery of his countrymen, had fent what foldiers he had ready, to block up Cameniec, and reduced that City to fuch fireights, that the garrifon had scarce provisions enough for a few weeks. But the Emperor being informed of their diffress, assembles his forces with greater speed than before, and about the end of the month Rebind everl, in the year 1085, passes the Danube at Sakse, and marches C. 1674 with such disigence, that ten days after the foremost of his troops appeared about

XII. The Poles, who had fearce expedied the Turks within a month or two, being surprized with the news of the Sultan's approach, and imagining that a body of light-armed men were fent before, dispatch certain persons (9) skilled in the Turkish language to the Othman camp, to observe more exactly the number and Brength of the enemy. When these report that the Emperor and Vizir were incamped with a powerful army not far from Chotin, the Poles, seized with a panic, fly away, and abandon the siege

XIII. The Sultan, who had determined to pais the Treas, being informed that the slege of Camenace was raised, turns his arms to Choten, and recovers that city in a short time. After this, passing the Tyras, he encamps under the walls of Camensee, and supplies the city with provisions and ammunition, which began now to be wanted, and waits some days for the enemy. When he finds no enemy approaching, he takes Human, a town of Podelia, and applies him/clf to fettle the affairs of the province, which he had subdued, thinking it necessary to confirm his present acquisitions, before he made farther progress.

XIV. While, intent on these things, he remains in those parts, Doresbenko. Hetman of the Cossaks, with four thousand of his countrymen, comes uncalled to the affiftance of the Sultan, and offers him his whole army But Mahomet,

either thinking it needless to march so great forces against so inconsiderable an enemy, or suspecting Dorosbenko's integrity, commands him to return home with

#### ANNOTATIONS.

The Murza's count their Subjects by Cazan, and when they are to go upon any expedidiers they are to bring with them out of each Cazan. There are faid to be about feventy thousand of them in Crim-Tartary. But this number is not always the fame, being fometimes more, fometimes lefs. For if the matter of one Cazan marries the heir of another Cazan, both the Cazans are contracted into one. And, on the other

hand, if a Father has more fons than can conveniently live in one house, they part, and each make a Cazan

(9) certain persons ] It is faid that one of these spies was taken and brought to the Sultan; to whom ingenuously confessing the cause of his coming, he was ordered to be carried about the camp, and then fent away with a prefent of twenty gold

his men, alledging for reason, that he had no occasion for the assistance of the

Coffaks against the Poles.

XV. This highly exasperated Dorosbensko, and proved afterwards very detri- Doroshyke mental to the Othman affairs. For there was no other cause of the Cossaks re-volting some years after from the Turkss obedience, and submitting to the Curar this repulse,

of Russia, as will be more amply related in its proper place.

XVI. But the Emperor seeing he could not be secure of the possession of Capele to the meniec, whilst inhabited by Christians, since they might not only inform the Car of Rufenemics of every thing done there, but likewise put them in a way to take the The Sultan city, commands all the inhabitants of the territory of Cameruse to be removed translatant the beyond the Danube, and mount Hamus into the province of Kyrk ekklefie (10), into Thrace and lands to be affigned them. But he divides their country among two thou- He marches fand Spahi's, who were before scated in the territories of Bender, Akkserman, to Aksample. and Kili. The season appointed for warlike expeditions being spent in these asfairs, the Emperor leaves Shiftman Ibrahim Pafba (11) with a firong garrifon at Cameniec, and returns himfelf with the main army to Adrianople in the beginning of the winter.

XVII. There despising now the enemy, of whom he had before been a little At Adviantile afraid, he devotes all the next year to his pleasures, having commanded Shift- he selemnize man Ibrahim Pasha, governor of Camenies, to observe the motions of the Poles the circumstant of the poles from the with some regiments of Janizaries. In the mean while he solemnizes with two sons, and great pomp the circumction of his two fons, Multapha and Ahmed, and the the marrage of his durghnuptials of his daughter, upon which occasion he amasses a greater treasure (12), ter. than the half of the revenue of the whole Empire would amount to.

XVIII. On the other hand the Poles, who had prepared rather to repell the The King of enemy, than come to a battle, imagining the long filence of the Turks to be Poland wages only a stratagem, were cautious of making any attempt, so that except some the Turk

#### ANNOTATION &.

(10) Kyrk ekèlefie] A province and town formerly called resumments son Ansien, the Forty Churches, because there were formerly in it so many Christian Churches. It is distant eight and thirty hours from Constantinople, and twelve from Adrianople At present it has neither walls nor churches, and but very few Christian inhabitants. For it is almost entirely possessed by Jews, trans-planted thither from Podolia by Sultan Mahomet, by whom the same corrupt German is still spoken as in Polans. Their chief produce is butter and cheefe, which is fent to the Jews living at Constantinople, after it has been marked with the Chacham's feal, to denote that it is clean and made by Jewish hands.

(11) Shifhman &c. ] A brave Turkish General against the Poles, and renowned for many actions, but so thick and fat, that he was firnamed Shifbman, 1. e. the Fat. It is faid of him, that he kept a French Surgeon, who opened his belly, and rook out the fat, every year, in the months of June and July, when he could hardly breathe, and was in danger of his life. But, at last, his fat increasing to such a degree, that it could no longer be taken out, he burft like another Judas, fo that his bowels gushed out. Whether this be true, or only a story invented by the Turks, I cannot

fay; but this I know, that it is constantly affirmed by the Turks that were about him. (12) treasure ] Whenever the Sultans folemnise the circumcision of their sons, they dispatch orders to all the Viziri, Basbas, Begs, Sanjaks, Wewodes, and others

that have any office within their dominions, and even to their courtiers, to fend them large prefents. From this no one can be excused; and even those that are appointed to guard the borders of the Empire, tho' they cannot come themselves to the solemnity, are forced to fend prefents by their fervants. If the port is at peace with the Emperor of Germany, and the King of Perfia, the ambaffadors of those courts are also invited, and they cannot appear with-out large presents. That I am not mistaken in faying, that the Sultan amassed then as much treasure, as half the yearly tribute of his whole Empire would amount to, the reader may judge by this one inftance. Out of the fingle principality of Molderia, there were fent him as prefents, twenty thousand dolars, two sablesakins, and two ounce-skins, one hundred cubits of gold and filver cloth, called by the Turks, Sheb merse, two gold crowns let with diamonds. each of which cost sifteen thousand rix-dolars, belides other things of less value.



light akimaithes between the scouts on both sides, there was nothing worth notice done this whole year. But in 1087, as if the definies demanded a debt due 2. 1675, touchim, torrents of human blood are shed with greater profusion The King of Poland, discovering the true resson of the inactivity of the Turks, resolves to their negligence to his advantage. He lifts therefore new foldiers, rather by the hopes of the spoils of the Turks and Moldavians, than by any just and usual pay, and passing by Comeniec, which upon the decease of Shishman Ibrahim Palka; was without a governor, penetrates directly into Moldavia, in or-der, as he declared, to strack the Turks within their own territories. Sultan Mahemet, who charmed with the pleasures and diversions of the preceding year, had laid afide all thoughts of war, and refigned himfelf wholly to luxury and hunting upon the death of Shiftman Ibrahim Pafba, fends Shaitan Ibrahim Pathe (13), invested with the dignity of Seraskier (14), with an army against the Poles, who at his coming offer him battle. But he, as he was a man of great policy, and well skilled in military affairs, at first amuses the King with pretences of peace, renders the enemy more negligent, and then after breaking off the treaty upon fome flight cause, circumvents the Polish army by a thousand arti fices, and renders all their efforts ineffectual, and at last on a ludden invests the King so closely in his camp, that he could neither fend a messenger into his kingdom, nor receive any from thence.

XIX. The King with his whole army would undoubtedly have perished fince he laboured under an extreme want of provision, if divine providence had not permitted the Turks to be deceived by the fame artifices, they them selves had used. For affairs being reduced to the most desperate situation, the King of Poland lends some persons into the Turkssb camp, to try whether the former treaty of peace might be renewed. Ibrahim Pasba would scarce have confented to their defires, if he had not discovered, that there was a mutiny just breaking out in his own camp. The Janizaries, who were uncasy at the quick marches, they had made to reduce the King to those straits, threw out sedition expressions not only against their General, but also against the Emperor himself and publickly declared it great injustice to be obliged to contend with the ene mies and feafons, whilft the Sultan diverted himfelf with hunting wild beaffs (15)

#### ANNOTATIONS

(12) Shaitan &c. ] A very famous man among the Turks, called Shattan, i. e. Devil, by his foldiers, on account of his cunning, and skill in military affairs. After he had defeated the Poles at Zoranna, and made a peace with them, he was at his return to Constantinople, named Melek, 1 c. Angel by Sultan Mabomet IV. but he ftill retained in the army the old name of Shaitan. The Vizir Cara Ibrahim Pasha made him, after the defeat of the Turks at Vienna, Serafkier (or General) against the Germans, in which command, he put in great danger the German striny, that was then belieging Vivarium, but having been defeated at Strigonium, and being accused of carelesaness and bribery, he was put to death.

(14) Seratkier] vulgarly, Balbing, the Head or General of the whole army. A beruskier may be chosen from among the has of two or three Hopfe-Tails. But if ile of two Toy, or Herje-Talls, is Seraftier, Can be no Ballas in the fame away he must either be Seraskier, or the muck fend a third The to the first

Any Basha that is once made & rafter must indeed communicate his design to the rest of his companions, but he heti the fupreme authority in the execution and can command or forbid whatever h pleases in the camp If the chief Vizir i appointed Seraskier, he can alter all deligr and undertakings, though contrary to th opinion of the rest of the Bashas, and ar bitrarily command, what is, or is not, to be done. When an expedition is at an end the name and power of Serafkier ceases, til another expedition. But this title the Ba the of Silsters always bears, whose busines it is to defend Babadagy and the frontiers o

(15) wild beafts] When the Sultans ar too much addicted to hunting, they alway incur the hatred of their people and fol diers. For the Turks believe, that a mun too intent upon taking birds and wild beaft: can neither govern stielf nor the common wealth, nor hearken to found advice. Th. opinion a grounded upon a common Turi is faying, Kushbazı Cumarbazi ulduren olu cazi, He that kills a lover of birds (which

and rowled in other pleasures; that they, who had been the chief instruments of founding and extending the Empire, were now put under the command of a Seraskier, and treated as if unworthy to fight under the conduct of the Emperor, or Vizit, according to the antient and usual custom. On the other hand the Chan (18) of Crim Tartary, perceiving he lost more than he gained by this war," did not ccase to perswade the Seraskier to peace, representing that the conditions, which would now be offered by the King of Poland, were not to be flighted, for he did not doubt, the Poles, to rescue themselves from imminent danger, would confent to whatever should be demanded, but it was to be feated, if they were longer pressed, despair would inflame their courage, and cause them to make an irruption, by which if they did not entirely defeat the Othman army, they would at least revenge their own deaths with the slaughter of thousands of their enemics, he added, that the winter was now approaching, and the Othman foldiers, unaccustomed to that season, would afford an easy victory to the enemy. Shaitan Ibrahim Palba being moved by these and other remonstrances, approves the advice, and demands of the King of Poland several nobles to be fent as hostages to his camp. The King fends to the Seraskier fix under the title of anibafladors, and receives the same number from the Turks. Immediately the report of peace was spread through both camps, upon which the Turkish Soldiers imagining, there was nothing to fear, and being pleased with seeing at last an end of their labours, grow remis, and carclessly guard the passes.

XX When the king of Poland less this, he takes with him a felect body of The King his army, leaving the weakest part to guard the camp, privately retires, and unexpectedly attacking some thoulands of Tartars, who had encamped under Molanger, a attack the bilow (17), easily puts them to slight. An account of this misfortune is immediately brought to Ibrahim Pasha, who was then at dinner talking with the ambassaladors. Struck with the news, he severely repreaches the ambassaladors for their treachery and breach of the law of nations, and immediately sends his cavalry to the affistance of the Tartars. These troops, on the 19th of Rejeb in 1087, find the Poles under Zorauna, and full of resentment and revenge such upon them. The battle was long doubtful, with great slaughter on both sides; and would have lasted still longer, it might had not put a stop to their ardons. For the evening coming on, when the Turks perceive nothing could be done on zerount of the daikness, who also strongly entrenched their own camp against the irreptions of the Tartars, sear supplying them with sliength

XXI. The two camps being placed opposite to each other, skirmish for Apercer inventors days without intermission, sometimes the Poles, sometimes the Turks, concludes

#### ANNOTATIONS.

name comprehends also one that is too fond of hunting, ) and a player at dice, is to be reckoned a Hero. This was the occasion of all the calamities that beiel Mahamet, and his son Mustapha II in our times, and the chief reason of their being deposed. For when, notwithstanding the repeated admonitions that were given them, they would not retrain from hunting, the people did not cease to hate and despite them, till they had wrested the scepter from their hands. But such that recreation, have never been censured for it by their subjects.

(16) Chan ] Though the Chan of Crim-Tartary be subject to the Turkish Empire, and has hitherto continued faithflu, yet, for his own advantage, he does not defire that all Poland should be under the Turkish yoke. Not to mention the many presents he privately receives, almost every year, out of Poland, that kingdom may not improperly be called the store-house of the Tartars, in which they can make continual mourfions, and draw very large sums from thence, for the redemption of the great numbers of captives they carry away. But if Poland was tributary, or entirely subject, to the Turkis, the Tartars would be debarred from exercising their usual robberges, and therefore they endeavour to hader it all the ways that can.

(17) Mabbiroul, A town of the Polish U-

'(17) Ministerny A. town of the Polish Ukrania, lying on the eastern side of the Tyrai, twelve hours diffant from Sereca, and

shout the famedrout Gamenice:

being

being worked. At last, after many labours, peace is concluded in the midst of and figned the 6th of Shahan by ambaffadors of both parties. The insents of peace being exchanged, the Polish ambassadors, presented by the Sepasker with bred horses, are difinified; and the Turkish hostages also return to the Othman camp. The Poles, when they come home, furnmoning an affem bly of the States on the 19th of Zinicade the same year, and not withstanding the endeavours of the Emperor of Germany to the contrary, ratify the conditions of the peace, and fend to Constant snople the Palatine of Culm as ambassador extraordinary to the Port. But how prejudicial an unseasonable pride is in the management of publick affairs, appeared in the following inflance.

The abfurd

\$

H. 1088.

XXII. The ambaffador, before he entered the city, demanded by a letter what had never been done, that the Vizir should meet him at the gate of Constantimeple. This being refused, he would not enter the city (18), and retired towards the west to Dand Pasts (19), a village about an Italian mile from Conflantimopie. By these and the like delays, the negotiation is protracted from the 26th of Rejet 1688, to the 16th of Sefer the next year, when the peace II A. C. 1677. at last confirmed in Dand Pasha; and on the first day of the month Rebins eveel, in a publick council the infiruments of it were delivered to the ambaffador, drawn up in such a manner as the Vizir thought proper (20). By these

#### ANNOTATION 8.

(18) the city ] This obstinacy and pride in the ambassador would have put an end to all hopes of peace, had not the Vizir, who was now meditating the Vienna-expedicion, endeavoured by all means to keep every thing quiet on that fide, and for that reason yielded a little to the ambassador, and permitted the Reis Effendi to conclude the peace at Dand Pafba. For, otherwise, the Turks are more ferupulously exact than any other Nation in observing the rites and ceremonies used of old by their Court, and they had rather see the whole world turned upfide down, than that the least point of honour due to them should be omitted.

(19) Daud Pafos ] A place on the westfide of the City, and not above an Italian mile from the walls. There are to be feen frately palaces belonging to the Sultan, fome houses for the courtiers, and stables built of stone, all which are very bandsom edifices. Besides these, there are no other houses, nor any inhabitants, except the Bostandji, who take care of the adjoining garden. name of it feems to be derived either from the founders or from the over-feer of the ftructure. Thenever the Sultan travels from Confessiople to Advanople, he takes up his first quarters there. This Dand Pahe must be distinguished from another Daud Passe Mekiemes, built in the middle of Constantinople by Ildarian Bojazet, whilst the Greek Emperors were yet mafters of that City.

(20) thought proper ] Because it is of great importance to know the particulars this treaty, it will not be amife to fet the down here as they are extent in the Hillory of the war between the Poles and Torte, by Monfieur De la Croin. They are

Being defired by the ambaffador of Poland, to infert some articles among the bleffed capitulations which we have with that kingdom, we have granted, and will, that the contents of them be observed and made publick.

1. If the Lipkenfian Tartars, who live in Poland, are willing to retire into the provinces that are subject to us, they shall have a whole year allowed them to do it s nor shall the Poles in any wife hinder them from moving their children and effects where they please.

2. Whereas all Podolia, according to its antient bounds, is subject to our imperial Majesty, we will, that the Polylo garrisons, which have hitherto possessed Buar and Mcgibes evacuate those places, leaving behind them all the cannon, that was found there when they were taken But if any have been brought thither, fince that time, out of Poland, they may be carried away. The mhabitants of those places, shall either remain there, or depart elfewhere, without any molestation

3. The bounds of Podolia shall be settled by old inhabitants of that province, who are men of approved integrity, and known experience; and the limits they shall appoint, shall for the future be the true and certain bounds of Podolia.

4. When the bounds are thus fettled, all the Polift Noblemen, who have long possessed villages in Podolia, and are willing to ftsy there, shall pay to the Othman port, tribute, tenths, and other customs imposed upon goods. A part of those villages shall be left to them for their maintenance, and they and their posterity shall enjoy it for ever, being confirmed by our privilege articles, the Poles not only renounced all claim to Cameniec, which had been taken by the Turks in the former war, but likewife engaged to give up all authority

#### ANNOTATIONS.

privilege in their dignities, and exempted from the tribute on children, provided they attempt no hostilities.

5. The Churches that are not yet converted into Moschs, shall remain in their possession, and they may, without inter-

ruption, perform divine service after their own way.

6. We will that Ukrama according to its old bounds be yielded to the Coffaks that are subject to us, except the towns of Bi-alocerkiew and Pauolocz, which, out of our special grace, we have granted, with their territory, to the Poles. Further than this let them not extend themselves so much as one inch, nor any way molest our subjects the Coffuks.

7. We shall fend commissioners to determine the bounds of thefe towns, as hath been already ordered with relation to Po-

8. We confirm the religious, who dwell at Jerusalem in time of peace, in their possessions there, which they have enjoyed for a long time, and we charge all perfons not to dare to diffurb them.

 We command our armies of Crim and Bujak Tartars, Coffaks, and Transylvanians, from this day forwards for ever not to enter Poland without our orders, not to plunder it, nor exercise any hostilities therein and if it can be proved, that such a breach of peace hath been committed, those that have received any damage shall

have relititution for the fame

10 At the request of the most sublime Chan of Crim-Tartary, we remit to the Poles the tribute of twenty two thousand dolars, which they have paid us for a long time. Besides this remission, and the towns of Bialocerkieu and Pauolocz, which we have freely granted them, we will, that the bleffed capitulations of Bujak be inviolably observed.

11. The Judges appointed on the borders, shall pass sentence, not only upon the immoveable goods of our subjects, but also upon other affairs of less moment.

- 12. The inhabitants of Camentee, who were expelled after the taking of that fortrefs, shall be at liberty to return into their own country, and of living in Podolia if they chuse it
- 13 And because the inhabitants of Camentee have forfaken their country, for no other reason, but because they have no Churches, one Church shall be restored to those who have remained there, or are willing to return : in like manner we grant one Church to the Christians of the Letin Nº 13.

Communion in the fortress of Buar, and if it is destroyed, it may be rebuilt.

14. The same thing shall also be observed in Yaflovez and Meyibos, after we have chosen such as are to be converted into Moschs

15 The prisoners that have been taken during the war, shall be exchanged on both sides. There shall be but one Basha in Podolia, and the other officers shall not be chosen from among the Lipkensian or any other Tartars.

16 The Lipkenfian Tartars, that are near the frontiers, shall be obliged to remove their habitation further from the borders.

17. If there are in antient treaties any articles contrary to thefe, we annul them, but confirm the rest; and promise, that as long as the King of Poland, with the great men and officers of his kingdom, make no attempt against the fortresses, neighboring cities, towns, villages, and territories under our government; they shall no way be molested or injured by our victorious armies, Bashas and officers, whether Moldavians, Tartars of Dobruje, Alkierman,

Daben, and of the Boristhems.

18. The Poles shall pay the usual tribute to the Chan of Crim-Tartary: And if it is paid according to antient cultom, he shall be obliged on his part to maintain peace, friendship, and correspondence with them, and not to fuffer them to receive any damage or injury The same shall be observed by Sultan Galga, and other Tartarian officers.

19. If any enemy declares war against the King of Poland, the Chan of Tartary shall be obliged to come to his assistance with an army. We will moreover, that in cafe we want any Tartars for our fervice, they pass no other way through Poland, than what they have hitherto used.

20 All prisoners that shall be brought out of Poland, by the Tertars or Molda-vians, after the conclusion of this biessed treaty, we declare to be unastly taken, and we forbid the selling them within our dominions requiring that the fame be observed in Poland with regard to our subjects.

21. If we happen to have war with any infidel King, and our imperial Majefty is pleafed to go in person, or to send a Seraf-heer with our armies, or the Princes of Transylvama, Moldavia, and Walachia; the King of Poland, by reason of the sincere friendship, and strict union and correspondence he has with us, shall give our enemy no affiftance, nor furnish him with men, or money; neither shall he fuffer our enemies to ratfe foldiers in his dominions, nor

publickly 4 D

therity over the Cossats of Podoles as subjects, and resign it to the Othman there; to the Laphensian Tartars (21), who had till then been subject to Podoles, they gave leave to depart; in short, the whole treaty was so worded, as if it was not a king treating with a king, but a lord with his valial However, even this did not cure the pride of the Polss ambassador. For that he might not seem to have brought so magnificent a retinue with him to no purpose, when the peace was consirm'd, and he had received the writings on the emperor's part, he desires and obtains seave of the vizir to make his publick entry.

His offentatson, and the Vigar's fayings upon It XXXIII. In this entry, besides other marks of magnificence, he orders his horses to be shod with silver, and the shoes to be fastened with only two nails, that they

#### ANNOTATIONS.

publickly or privately, give leave to any Palatine or colonel to raile any.

22. The princes or governors of Transistanta, who are also kings of Hungary, being subject to us, and living under our government, because that province has defeended to us by hereditary right from our ancestors; we will that the king of Poland live in a friendly manner with them, on account of their loyalty.

23. But if they should rebell against us, the king of Poland shall, neither directly nor indirectly, give them any assistance. And if any Palatine of Transylvania, Moldavia, and Walachia, or any other rebellious prince should say into Poland, the king shall be obliged to detain him, and send him to the auspicious Port. So shall he be an enemy to

our enemies, and a friend to our friends.

24. If the king of Poland shall continue in amity with our Port of Felicity, we command those princes to observe the same correspondence with Poland, as they have hitherto done.

25. We order, the prifoners taken during the war, and fince the treaty of peace has been on foot, to be released without ranform.

26. We order also, that such prisoners as have been formerly taken, in case they have not embraced the *Mabomesan* Religion, be released, upon repaying the money they were fold for, which their master shall be obliged to declare upon oath.

27. Merchants on both fides shall be free ly allowed to traffick by sea and land, and to come into all our harbours, and elsewhere, only upon paying the customs ap-

pointed in each place.

28 They shall no way be molested or injured: and if any of them does within our dominions, his goods shall frightfully be do.

dominions, his goods shall saithfully be delivered to the master of the caravan, in orter to be conveyed to the relations of the decayled; and we will, that the same be delived with respect to our subjects in Po-

> Too Ambaffadors, with their retinues, there to preferve a correspondence that have free passage through our

dominions, and shall have the necessary at tendants allowed them, and we defire that the same regard be paid to those we shall fend into Poland

30 If Armenian, or other infidel merchants, are willing to pais through Moldavia, in order to trade in our bayly dominions, they shall be obliged to travel through the publick roads, and not through byways and if they are ill-used in the publick roads, we will, that the offender be found out and punished.

31. We will and command, that all the articles contained in this treaty of peace be punctually, exactly, and faithfully observed, may their duration be equal to that of our empire, which is to last as long as the world, to the end this peace and mutual correspondence may be eternal

32. We promise upon our imperial oath, and protest before God the creator of it wen and earth, and by the miracies of Mar rist Mullapha, the great prophet, the fun of two ages, on whom rest the peace of the divine majesty, that we shall transgress none of these articles, nor clog them with any difficulties, but that the peace and umon now made and confirmed, shall last as long as our glorious empire, provided the king of P palatines, generals, and other full nothing contrary to the faid peace union, and honour and value the rigit of peace and friendship. Therefore we command, that credit be given to this noble fignature of ours, and do notify to the whole world, that we will have this treaty to be firm and indiffoluble, according to the tenor. May all the inhabitants and fubjects of Poland enjoy profound peace under the shadow of our protection At Daud Pajha the 16th of the moon Sefer, 1089.

(21) Lipkensian Tartars.] Lipka is the Turkis Name for Lithuania, from who ce the Tartars that live in Lithuania are called Lipca-Tartars. They all profess the Mabometan religion, and tho' they pretend to be derived from the same stock as the Crim-Tartars, yet they are naturally weaker and more infirm than they.



might

might the easier fall off in the streets, which were paved, and strike the Turks with admiration at the riches of Poland. But what he had defigned for his honour, turned to his diffrace. For the vizir, when one of their shoes was brought to him, is reported to have faid, that the infidel had indeed shoes of silver, but a head of brass; since it was incredible, that any person in his senses could be guilty of fuch a ridiculous extravagance as to shoe his horses with silver. The same vizir, when inform'd by the Seraskier, that the ambassador of Poland was coming with seven hundred attendants, and defired provision for so large a retinue, he is faid to have sent word to the Seraskier, to tell the ambassador, that if he meant to use so numerous a band to take Constantinople, his followers were very few; but if he intended to falute the lofty threshold of the sublime port, he had brought too many with him, and was afraid it would be polluted by the kiffes of the Poles, however, that it was not more difficult for the initian to entertain as guests, seven hundred Poles, than to maintain seven thoufand peafants of that nation, condemned to the imperial gallies. But to return from this digression.

XXXIV. Peace being now fettled and confirmed with the Poles, in the same year A was with 1090, a fresh war broke out between the Othman port and the Russians. Derosbenko, Hetman of Sare Camylo Cazagy, (22) as I have observed, had voluntarily submitted, with all his people, to the Othman Port; but afterwards, when he A C. 1679defired to be a partner in the Polish expedition, meeting with a repulse, he refolved to revenge this affront by a revolt. But he found, that unless he called in the affiftance of some more powerful ally, he should be incapable of executing his deligns, and that his efforts for the delivery of his country, would rather involve it deeper in oppression. Having well weighed these affairs, he sends, by private letters, for the officers of the Coffaks, and others, whom he knew to have the greatest influence over the people, and represents to them what he had his therto done for the prefervation of their quiet and liberty, and by what methods he had endeavoured to affert and secure it. " I imagined (says he) that, op-" prefied and contemptuously treated by the Poles, we might find a fure refuge " under the protection of the Turks. They were so remote from our borders. " that there feemed no reason to fear them ; and their name so formidable to " their enemies, that a flip under their colours seemed to be as safe as in the " very harbour To these considerations were added the promises made to us. " fuch as we could fcarce have asked for; namely the enjoyment of our civil " and religious liberties, freedom from tribute, and a large share of the booty which we should gain in their service. That they would perform these promises "I was inclined to believe, chicfly because they seemed the more desirous of " our friendship, as they had more than once found us formidable ene-" mics. But how little fincerity is to be expected among infidels, is fufficiently " evident from what we have feen with our own eyes. When, to demonstrate " my fidelity, I marched in the Poissb war to their affiftance with a good part of " the army : I was not only not received with due honour, but even treated with " contempt, and, like a traytor, commanded to return home. They were jealous " of our being eye witnesses of their conduct, and apprehensive less the fight of " our churches, turned into moschs, contrary to the most solemn engagements, " and the transplanting the inhabitants into barren lands, should open our eyes, " and teach us what we were to expect. When a peace was concluded with the " Poles, they freed us indeed from the yoke of that nation; but so freed us, " that they have laid a heavier on our necks. Hence they voluntarily religned " to the Poles the chief bulwarks of our country, Bialocerkiew and Pawolocz. " Hence they, who at other times upon the flightest injury breathe nothing but " fire and fword, pals over in strange silence, the prohibition of commerce, and

ANNOTATIONS.

(22) Sari Camylo Cazagi.] The Coffats of the yellow reed: which of them are to called, has been shown in a former note.

other Polish arts, by which we are daily exhausted, and the best part of our blood fucked out, that weakened and deprived of our fireight, we may be rendered incapable of making any relistance, whenever they shall think proper to imopole their tyranny upon us. These were the artifices of the Othman Princes, " by which they founded, and immensely enlarged their Empire; to overcome " Christians by Christians, to subdue both, when exhausted by a long war, and " when fubdued, to treat them at first with lenity, and afterwards by degrees " to lay so heavy a yoke on them, that the weight of it may at last stupify the bearers. If any should doubt of this, or imagine I speak out of envy to the " Turks, he will have a convincing proof in the Princes of Moldavia, who were " not hibdued by the Turks with arms, but allured by mild foreches and promiles of liberty to a voluntary submission, and yet are now oppressed with the " same servitude as the rest of the Christians, under the Othman dominion. " Taught by these examples, I too late lament our error; however it is not so " late, but a remedy may be applied to the wound, if you will show your selves er worthy your name and ancestors. But retolution alone is not infficient; " firength is required, in order to defend our religion and country, and to rescue our felves from unjust fervirude, strength, I say, without which, resolution is nothing but a head without a body. Since we are not equal to the burthen of bearing both the Turkish and Polish war, it is necessary for us to desire the " affiftance of our peighbours, but of whom, it is our buffiness to consider. We " have already made fufficient trial of the Poles, and I imagine, none of you will ever think of putting yourselves again under their yoke. The Hungarians " and Germans are more follicitous about their own, than the affairs of their " neighbours. In thort, there remains only the Czar of Russia, to whose father my predecessor Bogdan Kiemielniski (23), many years fince promi ed sideliti, " but we were afterwards obliged by force of arms to abandon our engage-" ments. If the word subjection appears disagreeable to any person, let him

#### ANMOTATIONS.

(23) Bogdanus Kiemielniski ] Hetman of the Coffaks, who was a terror not only to the Poles, but also to the Turks and Tariars. The Turks call him Chmil, and have not yet forgot the ravages he committed on the coasts of the Euxine-Sea. He was flain in a battle with the Poles, in which he disputed the victory with them, to his last breath. He had two fons; George, of whom we shall give an account in the following note; and Timush who married Roxana, daughter of Bafilius Prince of Moldavia. This Bafilius having been driven out of his principality by Stephen firnamed Busduze, retired to his Father-in-law Kiemielniski, who lent him fourteen thousand Cosfaks, under the command of Timush, to recover Moldavia and Soczava. (in which place he had left his wife, fon, and treasures with a good garrifon.) But three days before he came to Socrava, that town had been, through the governor's treachery, delivered to Stephen; who had feized Bafi-Bus's treatures, and feat his wife and fon prisoners to Jasij. Basilius with his Cossaks prepares to besiege the place, but were sensuccessful. For Timus, in contempt of the enemy, pitches his tents under the very wells of the town, and begins drinking wild millet ale very plentifully, as if he had been already mafter of the place,

This being observed by a German gunner, who was in the garrison, he levels a can non at the careless general, and shoots on his leg Timulb dying a few hours aft i of the wound, the Colfaks are struck with fuch a panic, that they raife the fiege, and take to open flight. But few of them eicaped into their country For the Moldaviens, who favoured Stephen, percusing the flight of the Coffaks, puriue them, kill many, and drive more into the Tyrus. This Bogdanus is reported to have been so much addicted to drunkenness, that when Bajilius came to him, he could not for feven days meet with an opportunity of speaking to him, by reason of his being perpetually drunk. At last on the eighth day, sending for Kiemselniski, when he was going to give him an account of his misfortunes, he gave him a large cup full of wine, and told him: Drink this medicine, which cures all the forrows of the heart, and makes a man forget all his misfortunes. Upon which Bahlius turning to his attendants is reported to have faid. I once thought, that the Cossaks were men, and begotten of men but now I see that our common saying is true. The Coffaks have been either turned from bears into men, or bears have been turned from Coffaks into beafts.

" confider that liberty once loft, if it cannot be reffored to its former lastre, will " inquire, not where it may be freed from all, but where it may enjoy the ea-" fielt, conditions. We have nothing to fear as to our churches from a Prince " of the same religion with ourselves, nothing as to our fortunes from a King. " who possesses much more by right, than he can take from us with Minsice. " He is at present master of the best part of our country, and having antasted a " vast treasure during a long peace, he can easily desend us against any enterty "whatfoever.' That we should fly to his protection, we are obliged by justice, " and the fidelity promifed him by our fathers; and induced by the necessity of " our affairs, and the remembrance of his former gentle dominion over us. " Nor is there the leaft doubt, but he will both receive us with open arms as " loft fons, and defend us as the bulwark of his kingdom against our chemies."

XXV. This speech had so great an effect upon the whole assembly, that they The Coffets declared their abhorrence of the treaty made with the Turks, and unanimously Gee determined to submit themselves and their fortunes to the Coar of Russia. Upon this Doroshenko immediately dispatched a trusty person, Theodorus Alexias, into Museovy with letters to the Czer, in which he assures him, that himself and countrymen are forry, that without any regard to their obligations, they had dishonorably subjected their province to the Tarks, but now they report of their conduct, and intreat his Majesty to receive them again under his protection, and detend them against the enemy, and in return they will readily venture their lives and fortunes in the defence of him and the kingdom of Russia Nothing could happen more agreeable to the Czar, fince he found, that by this means not only Ukrama, which was always liable to the incurfions of the Coffaks, was fecured, but likewise his territories extended beyond the Borystheres, and his army increased with above fixty thousand men of approved valour. He returns therefore immediately an aniwer to Dorosbenko suil of civility, in which he commends his design and fidelity to him, pardons the former revolt, exhorts him for the future to atone for the treachery of his countrymen by a firm and constant attachment to the Princes of Ruffia, and on his part promiles

affifiance against all their enemies, whenever there should be occasion.

XXVI This news being brought to Constantinople, not only hastens the peace The Turk of with Poland, but firangely diffurbs the deligns of the Otheran court. The Em- point George Kiemein !! peror faw, that unless he would suffer his own and the Othmen Empire's ho. Herman of nout to be trampled upon, he could not avoid revenging this breach of faith, and the Liffuli proclaiming was against both the Cossaks and the Czar of Russa, under whose protection they had put themselves. On the other hand he forelaw, that the war would prove very difficult, not on account of the Czar's power, (for at that time the Russians were despited by the Turks) but because he found, that his army would fuffer more from the narrowness of the passes, and hunger, and cold, than from the enemy. To avoid therefore the war, if possible, and by policy recover the Coffaks to his obedience, he releases George Kurmbelmishi (24), son of Bogdan, tormerly Herman of the Coffaks, who had been kept close

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(24) George Kiemuini,ki ] The eldest fon of the foresaid Bogdan, who being flain by the Poles, George was advanced by the Cossaks to the post of Heiman, in which he behaved with great reputation for three years, though in wars all the time with the Poles. At the end of these three years, George perceiving that the Coffak forces were daily diminished by their skirmishes with the Poles, and being afraid of falling like his father, a facrifice to the enemy, he refolved to quit his dignity, and embrace a monastic life. For that purpose he changed his name and drefs, and travelled No. 13.

through the deferts of Ukristia, without acquainting any one with his defign, to wards a Monaftery in that province dedicated to the Virgin Mary In his journey, while he was endeavouring to conceal him's felf from his countrymen, he fell among fome parties of wanding Poles, by whom he was stripped, and miferably beater. Our of their hands he was reflued by a body of Testers, who not treating him more kindly, carried him into Crim Testery, and gave him to the Chan. The Chan gueffing by his countenance, that he was not a perfon of fo mean a condition as he pretended, endeavoured



close prisoner in the Seven Towers, and appoints him Hetman in the room of Borghenies, hoping, that the Cossist, as well out of affection to the family of the Kienielnish's, as the remembrance of Bogdan's merits, would readily submit no his son.

He in vain follicits the Coffaks to a revolt. EXVII. George by the Vizir's command immediately sends his friend Stama-tellus to his countrylinen, and informs them by letters, that the Othman port hearing of Deresbonte's revolt, had made him Herman of the Cossaks, in hopes, that they, who had been drawn off by that traytor from their due obedience to the Othman Empire, when they saw their lawful General and Herman would return to their duty, and repent of their proceedings, in which case the Emperor would forgive what was past, and confer new savours upon them. But the Cossaks, who had found the Turkish yoke too heavy to be willing to submit to it again, resolutely reject the Sultan's offers, accuse Stamatellus of imposture, alledging, that their lawful Herman George had been long dead in Turkish, and give out that a stratagem was contriving against them under the name of their deceased Herman.

The Sultan proclaims war against the Coffaks and Ruffians

XXVIII. The Emperor seeing the Cossaks unmoved with words, thinks it necessary to use force, and accordingly sends Shaitan Ibrahim Pasha, Seraskier of Silistria (25), with his whole army to re-instate George in the country of the Cossaks,

#### Annotations.

endeavoured by all means to prevail upon him to embrace the Mahometan superstition. But neither promises nor threats being able to make him renounce the Christian faith, he came to be known by a Coffak, who had formerly ferved his father, but who being taken by the Tartars, had abjured Christia nity, and was raifed to confiderable honours in the Chan's court. Nicelaus or Ali (for that was the renegado's name) fearing, least the favour which the Chan showed to his prisoner, should turn to his own disadvantage, made known George's condition to the Chan. Whereupon the Chan fent George to Conflantinople to the Othman port, where he was immediately after his arrival thrown into the prison of the Seven Towers, and very narrowly watched. After a few years, some French ships happened to anchor under the very walls of the prison. When they were preparing for their return, George having an intimation of it, endeavoured to sicape. Having found a bar of iron in the inner yard of the prison, he forced open the grate of his window But the place being fo high, that he could not leap down without danger, he cut in long pieces the emper, which ferved him instead of a bed, and tying them together like a rope, let himself down; but not having exactly gueffed at the height of the place, the moste he made in falling down, awaked one of the Boltoni, and alarmed the priion. George in the mean time, knowing he should be purfued, takes courage, climba up to the top of the outward wall, and from thence throws himfelf headlong into the fea. But having hurted his head inuch in bis fall, and loung his way if the cirk through his fear, he hid him-

41.043.74

felf between two rocks, which flood above There he was found the next moining half dead, by persons sent after him by the keeper of the prison. And after he had been cruelly beat, he was more closely confined, tyed neck and heels, fettered, and manacled. In this confinement he remained from the year 1070 till 1677, and so accustomed was he to bear misfortunes, that he could then hardly be prevailed upon by persons sent to him for that purpose, to exchange his fetters for the office of Hetman of the Coffaks, which wis offered him After having accepted the Hetmanship, he used all means imaginable to engage the Coffaks to his fide, but in vain for most of them said he was only a pretended ion of Bogdan, and not their own General. Three years after, being fent into Ukrama, to cover workmen that were going to build a fort at the mouth of the Nieper, he was flain in a battle by Circo a captain of some troops of Cossaks

(25) Serafkier of Silifiria All the Biffias who are entrufted with the detence of the northern provinces of the Othman Empire against the Poles, are indeed named Balhas of Silistria, but they have their refidence at Babadagy Silifria is a City on the fouth-fide of the Danube, opposite to Wa-Silifiria is a City on the lachia, well known in our modern maps. It is even to this day called in Greek, spice. and hath a Greek Metropolitan. It contains a few Turkifo inhabitants, great numbers of Christians chiefly Slaves, Bulgarians, and Welachians. But Bahadagy lies nearer the Eurine Sea, about twenty hours from the Danube, directly below Sakzen, called by the ancients Oblucziza. That both thefe places are very antient, we may guess by

Coffaks, with particular orders to endeavour to make himself master of Chebrin \*, the metropolis of the province, and the feat of the Hetman. Ibrahim immediately obeys the orders; and passing the Danube on the 6th of June, in the year of Christ 1678, by long marches goes through Moldevia and Podolsa.

XXIX. When he comes to Chehren\*, he finds fixty thousand Russians and C.s. The Russians should defeat the saks strongly intrenched; is surprized at the unexpected sight, (because by the Tartar. Czar's command all the merchants or others, who were preparing to go into The Turk By Turkey, had been detained at Nisma;) (26) and perceiving, that by reason of the fewness of his troops, (for he had scarce forty thousand men) he could not possibly attack the enemies thus fortified, refolves to wait for the Tartars, who were three days march from his camp. But by the vigilance of the Russians, he was disappointed; for hearing of the approach of the Tartars to join the Turks, the Russians plant themselves in an advantagious post between both, and attack the Tartars as they draw near with fuch vigour, that in a few hours the field of battle is covered with the blood of the enemy. There fell in the action, besides the Chan's ion, eight Mirsas, and above ten thouland common foldiers, the reft are either taken prisoners, or dispersed. The Turks, when they see such a slaughter of their confederates, throw away their arms, with their courage, and in the tear that the Ruhans, clated with their victory, would also fall upon them, fly with such precipitation, that they stop not till they have passed the river Bog. (27.)

XXX This ill fucce is rendered the emperor full more defirous of peace. How. The Sulan ever, to prevent any blemish upon his honour, he sends an ambassador to Russia, of the Czur. not in his own, but in the Chan of Tartary's name, amicably to perfuade the Czai to make peace with the Sultan, to reftore Chehrin \*, which undeniably belongs to the Turks, and to abandon the Coffaks to their own evil genius. for he certainly knows the Sultan would rather wage a twenty years war, whatever should

be the fucceis, than lote one foot of land to which he has a right.

#### ANNOTATIONS.

the structure of the walls, which seems to be Roman, and not Turkifb, whence it is probable, those cities were built by the Romans, to stop the irruptions of the Barbarians and Scylbians Beyond the mountains Change, in the way from Molauria to him if, there appear the ruins of fuch another antient city, about four Italian miles in compat. This last is named by the Turks Rojoksefre, which is a corruption from the Greek word Paggonggoon No historian, as far as I find, mentions it, but the Greeks at Constantinople have a story about the origin of it, which, whether it be true or tille, I dare not determine. They fay, after the irruption of the Bulgarians, an army of Ruffians, or perhaps of Pacinacaor rather a band of Perbenge, pailed ted the Danube, and made frequent incursions into the provinces subject to the Grecian Empire but being conquered by the Gremans, and penned up between the mountains, they laid down their arms, and, embracing the Christian religion, had not only their lives granted them, but also obtained a place to build a town. At last those Rushaus rebel-ling against the Emperor, their town was taken by the Grecians, after a bloody fight, and all without exception put to the fword.

(26) Nifna A mart in that part of Ukrama subject to the Hetman of the Cozaci, fituated in a very large plain, and near the river Wustrow, defended by no

despicable castle. None but Russian soldiers are permitted to live in the castle, but the town is inhabited by merchants of divers nations, Ruljians, Cozaks, and Moldavians. The best part however consists of Greeks, to whom the former Emperors of Ruffia have granted many privileges, in order to encourage trade. They have not only built there two churches, in which divine fervice is performed in their mother-tongue, but have also sounded a Greek school, and a fraternity or fociety, into which some Russian Princes have not thought it beneath them to be admitted. All the broshers are obliged, by the laws of this fociety, to protect those that have once been incorporated into it; to promote their advantage, to affift one another in necessity; and especially, if any one dies, to take care that his goods defcend to his right heirs.

(27) Bog] or Bub, formerly called Hypanis, a river well known, between the Tyras and the Borsstbenes, near the town Uzs, vulgarly Oczakow, named by the Greeks Olbsopoles, discharges its felf into the Euxine Sea. It abounds in Cataracts, and is for that reason unnavigable; tho' it is so deep as not to be fordable in any place. This river must not be confounded with another Bog, a river of Pocutio, which rifeth not far from Lespelus, or Lemburg, and discharges it self

into the Viftula near Warfaw.

fends an effectmal letter to the Sultan.

. But the Ctar of Rules, who was not ignorant by whom the ambullador was really commissioned, sends one of his court under the title of Chauft at least to Configurationale, with letters to the Emperor and Vizir, in which he adviced them not so flatter themselves that he could be imposed upon by the fame artifices as the Poles; fince their example had made him more cautious, and taught him how to deal with them. They should desist therefore from an unjust war, and leave Ukrama undisturbed, to which he had acquired an undoubted right by Bogdan Ksemieluisks's relignation, confirmed lately by Dorosbenhe. But if they determine to profecute the war, they might be affured, he would not agree to a peace till he had recovered the rest of Ukrania, unjustly taken from his ancestors, as far as the Tyras, and Asovia.

The Turk again declare war against the Russians

XXXII. Having read this letter, the Vizir fends for the Mufti, the Caimacan, the Kadiuleskers, and Age of the Janizaries; and enquires what the law and reafon prescribed to be done. Most declare for peace, since there was little hope that any thing of advantage to the Othman interest could be done in these difficult and remote parts. The Vizir Cara Mustapha Pasha, (28) alone opposed these pacifick advices, declaring fo great a flaughter, which the Ruffians had made of the Tartars, ought not to pass unrevenged. The rest assenting out of complaisance to the Vizir, it is determined to renew the war with the utmost vigour, and to raise a more powerful army. Accordingly the Russian ambassador receives an answer, breathing nothing but fire and fword.

The Vizir marches with the army H 1089

**XXXIII.** When the time appointed for the refreshment of the soldiers was expired, about the end of the month Rebiul evvel of the year 1089, the Emperor, attended with the Vizir, marches with his army to Fatar Pazarjik, (29) from A C 1678 whence he orders the Vizir, invested with a full command of the armies, to procced. The Vizir, without any delay, passes through Moldavia by long marches, and in the following month reaches the Bog, where he spends some days in reviewing his army, and expects to be joined by the Tartars and Coffaks, whom

George Kremtelnisks had drawn to his party.

He besieges

XXXIV. After their arrival, he marches with eighty thousand of his own foldiers, thirty thousand Tartars, and four thousand Coffaks, towards Chefrin, \* and on the eighth of the month Jemaziul evvel comes in fight of the city. The Ruffians and Coffaks, who were in garrison at that time, were employed in building a new fort without the city, and perceiving the unexpected approach of the Turkifb army, retire in confusion into the city, and inform their companions of

#### Annotations.

(28) Cara Mustapha.] The same who asterwards became so famous for belieging Vienna. He was descended from an obscure family in Caramama, but being brought up in the court of the two Kioprili's, father and fon, and having ferved both, he was first made Basha of Silistria and Damascus, then admiral, afterwards Caimacan; and at last, upon the death of Kuprili Abmed Pajha, advanced to the dignity of Prime Vizir. He was the most covetous of all the Vizirs that ever were in the Oibman Empire, and that failing rendered several of his defigns unfuccelsful, which otherwise would have been crowned with a good end. He was a man of great capacity, no lefs valiant than wife, warlike, ambittous, and daily invented a thouland artifices to raife new wars against his neighbours. No other reason can be assigned of his fall, but that being too much binded with his riches and power, he would have crected a new Empire in the west. After his death, above

three thousand purses were found in the foundation of his domestick bath, the builders whereof (who were fome Albanian Christians, supervisors of the works for bringing water into the city) he caused to be all put to death, as foon as the work was finished He left one only ton, Ibrabin, who led a miferable life, ull his relation Amucjeogli Hujein Pajha came to be railed to the dignity of Vizir, who remembring the favours he had received from Cin a Muftapha Pasha, did not only send Ivrabin with three Tugs to Aleppo, but restored to him all he had loft, and built him, at his own charge, a magnificent palace at Constantsmople.

(29) Tatar Pazarnk] A pretty large town of Thrace, lying at the bottom of the mountains Chenge, \* towards the north was built by colonies of Afranck Turks, called at present Chitak, and planted by order of the Othman court, round the moun-

tains of Hamus.

the impending danger. The Vizir observing their disorder, inflantly commands a body of men, under the conduct of his Kiehaia, (30) to attack the city, hoping by that means, the garnson would be struck with terror, and obliged to surrender. But though they fought for four hours with great bravery, they are forced to retire from the walls with dishonour, and the loss of their commander and two thousand Januaries. Cara Mustapha Pasha, taught by this this fortune, that all attempts against so strong a fortress are in vain, unless it were invested in form, orders, before his foldiers had pitched their tents, the city to be furrounded, trenches to be dug, ramparts thrown up, and batteries to be planted. But when even this did not fucceed, by reason of the sandy soil, by the advice of a Pole he causes bridges to be made on the other side, where the town was defended by a Morais, and commits the care of that work to Kierhassan Pasha. But this also failed of the delired success.

XXXV. About the fame time the Russian army, under the command of Rome. The Russian army, under the command of Rome. The Russian army, under the command of Rome. danowski, was approaching, and had passed the Burysthenes before the Vizir could have the Turke any intelligence. To obviate their deligns, the Vizir had fent Cara Mehemed Pasha, amy Governor of Aleppe, with great part of his army, and given him leave to fight if an opportunity offered. But as he could not draw the Russians, though superior in number, to a battle, the Vizir fulpecting the matter, that the enemy designed to destroy the Othman army by delay, or to reinforce the garrifon of Chehrin\*, commands Caplan Pasha (31) to encamp with the rest of the army between the city and the enemy. The Russians perceiving all communication with the town was cut off on the 22d of the month Jemazzul achyr, they attack Caplan Pasha's troops with such vigour, that the foremost ranks being broken at the first onser, the rest sly for safety through the midst of the morals. Caplan Pasta, when

XXXVI. At last, the Vizir, perceiving winter was now coming on, in order Chehrin' in either to conquer or retire, causes three mines to be made under the walls of Turke. the castle, and springing them on the 21st of that month, commands his men to furround the city, and to enter the breaches. The garrifon finding, there was no hope of defending the city, fince the walls were demolished, fly out of the

he finds that neither intreaties nor threats have any effect upon his terrified foldiers, and that affairs are desperate, sets fire to the bridges over the morals, to prevent the enemy from puriting and deftroying the whole Othman army,

#### Annotation 8.

(30) Kiebaia] or more elegantly, Ketchu-His office is dabeg the Vizir's deputy the most considerable in the Othman Empire, and his authority very great. For nothing can be done, or ordered, but it must pass through his hands, and be confirmed by his letters And if a Ferman is fent to any Basha without his letter, it is immediately looked upon as counterfeit. For which reason, though he has not so much as one Tug, and is with the Chaushbafbi\* to lead up under the arms to the Vizir fuch Bashas as are to be adorned with three Tugs, yet it is commonly faid of him, the Kiebaia ii a Vizir to me, the Vizir a Sultan, and the Sultan as one of the Musulmans. The Vizir cannot make a Kiebaia without the Sultan's confent, and whenever he is turned out, he must be appointed Basha of fome place with three Tugs, but if he is difmified with two, is looked upon as banished. Besides this Kiebaia, the Vizir and Bashas have another, who only takes care of their Court; and he must not be con-

founded with Ketchudabeg, whom they properly call Ewkietchudafi.

(31) Caplan Pasha] A general of the Turkifb army, celebrated for his bravery in the Polish wars, and of fo great authority among the Turks, that the Vizir, though his mortal enemy, could never destroy him. The name of Caplan scems to have been given him for his courage: for it properly fignifies a Tyger. And though the Turks generally chufe to be called only after the names of the prophets, yet they do not reject the names of the two flercest creatures, Arflan, Lion, and Caplan, Tyger; nay the Sultana-mother calls her fon, notwithstanding he is Emperor, no otherwise than Arflanum, my Lion. For it is an atfront from any one but the Sultan's father, to call him by his proper mame. On the other hand, the name of Padifbah, which u given him by all others, feeming to derogate from a mother's authority over her fon, a middle way has been found out, and allowed only to his mother, namely to call him Lion.

2 May 1 . 4

the calle. However they had before laid a train under the magazine in-powder, by which means feveral thousand of the common foldiers, who Hocked together for plunder, were blown up.

ath armi neman koma.

XXXVII. The next day the Vizir, with the officers of the army, views the city, which had coft fo much labour and blood; and as it appeared very difficult to repair, as well as to defend it, he commands the walls and houses to be levelled with the ground. Then giving his soldiers some days of refreshment, he endeavours to provoke the Russians to a battle; but they being unwilling to duit their trenches, and preparing for their return, he orders Caplan Palles with fome light-armed troops to follow, and attack them in their march, or in the narrow passes. But neither does this avail any thing, because the Russians retiring with close ranks, and defended by a chain of waggons, vigorously repel the attacks of the Tarks. The Vizir himself therefore is obliged for want of provisions to return, and in his march lofes, besides almost all his baggage and Targer cannon, a greater number of men, than had been destroyed at Chehrin\* by the fword or fire of the enemy, to at his return to Advianople in the beginning of the month Ramazan, the army appeared rather to have been defeated, than victorious.

XXXVIII, And indeed the victory at Chebrin\* was so far from inspiring the lands of the foldiers with courage, that they rather confidered those who mentioned the refoldies on se-count of the newing the war in Ukrania not only as enemies, but even as betrayers and fruites experthe remembrance of the death of thirty thousand of their companions, and the fatigues, they had fulfained in their march, was too deeply fixed in their minds, to receive any fatisfaction from having taken the ruins of Chehrin\*, and feen some hundreds of their enemy's heads placed round the Vizir's tent. The Vizir himself finding by experience, how difficult it was to carry on a war in places unknown, barren, and every where full of moralles and rivers, with little booty, and great danger, repented too late, that he opposed the motion for peace, and occasioned the loss of so many thousand men without any advantage

The Vizir attempts to build a new caffie.

XXXIX. He would have defilted from the war, if the perpetual incursions of the Coffaks, who laid waste all the country on the Euxine-sea with impanity, had not prevented his pacific deligns. He refolves therefore to build a town and castle at the mouth of the Borysthenes not far from Oczacow, hoping by that means the flips of the Coffaks might cally be hindered from entitied the Filterine fea, and the Zapprovian Coffaks be obliged by the want of falt to tubmit to the Othman Empire. He commits this affair to Mimar aga (32) for whole defence,

#### ANNOTATIONS

(32) Mimar aga] The chief Architect. His principal business is to overfee all the new buildings in Constantinople and the Subarbs, and take care that they do not ex-need the height allowed. He hath the in-spection of all common builders, usually , called Caife or Chalife; and can punish or fine them, if they bring out any building but a finger's breadth further than they . should into the street, if they make an oblique angle, or build too flightly, even shough the owner should not complain. It is feet for much us what a cubic is, nor understand the last ands the least thing of architecture; for a place of profit, it is given not to est architect, but to him that is most what he pleases, unless he has first ibed the Mimer oga with prefents. For,

though the measure of all buildings be fettled by orders from the Sultan, fo that a Christian's house is to be thirteen, and a Turk's fifteen yard's high, yet as Constanti-nople is mostly built upon hills, the Mimar aga may, if he is well bribed, permit a building to rife to a very confiderable height; namely, by taking the dimension from the brow of the hill, by which means, a houle that will be on the back part according to the stated measure, may, on the forcpart rife to thirty yards, and more. The same method is used, when the Christians have a mind to rebuild their old Churches. For this being allowed them, but under fuch fevere reffrictions, that they can neither add a new stone nor piece of timber to the old materials, the Mimar aga in bribed with a good fum to reckon more ftones and pieces of timber than there re-

### 19. Mahomet IV.

Book IV.

till the work was finished, he sends Caplen Paste with fix regiments of fanizaries.

XL. But this politick design of the Vizir is ruined by a sudden and unex-It is demopected accident. For when the first foundations were scarce laid, Circa, Gene-listed by the ral of the Zaporovian Cossaks, returning from an expedition into Tarbary with the workmet fifteen thousand men, by chance passes by the neighboring parts, and hearing that killed a new fort was building, and not knowing by whom, approaches to view it. When he finds them to be Turks, he furrounds them, and though they defended themselves with great resolution, kills all the workmen and their guards with Kiemielnisks, who had been made Herman of the Coffaks by the Turks, and pitching his camp upon the fpot, immediately fends a messenger to inform the Czar of what had been done, who dispatches orders to Dolboruks, successor of Romadenewsks in the command of the army, to join all his forces as foon as polfible with Circo's, oppose all attempts of the Turks with their united strength and counfels.

XLI. The Vizir being at last convinced by these things, that it was in vain The Twike to exhaust the strength of the Othman Empire in those countries, which might of the war, be employed in other parts to much greater advantage, agrees to a peace with define peace the Rushans, which was extremely defired by both parties. Thus was concluded a war, for the carrying on of which the Othman Emperor wanted neither inclination nor firength, but only an army inured to cold, hunger, and other hardfhips too fevere for mortals. Befides fortune feemed now inclinable to abandon the Othman arms

XLII But all this could not have diverted the Othman court from profecu- Take's breaks ting their first design, if new commotions in Hungary, had not induced them to the leace he incent the turn their arms that way, where they thought the war might be carried on Turk and the with less difficulty, and more advantage. Emeric Tekeli (33) had about this Emperor of German, time revolted from the Emperor of Germany, and in a few months engaged in his rebellion almost all the people in that part of Hungary, which still remained to the Emperor But when he found himielf unable to withstand the imperial

#### ANNOTATIONS

ally are, and fo they make up his number by adding new ones. But when they have any confiderable edifice to build, as a fam: or a palace, they make use of Greek or Armeman Architects. For these last are excellent workmen, whereas the Tarks can ieldom or never arrive at any perfection Which is not owing to their natural stupidity for, by their skill in the Mathematicks and other sciences, they plainly show, that they are, if not superior, yet at least no way inferior in understanding, to other nations, but the reason is, because the more noble Turks, or fuch as have been ennobled on account of their learning and courage, (for nobility is derived among them, not from ancestors, but from good and virtuous actions, as have been oblerved ) though they apply themselves to the Marhematicks, yet abhor all handy-crafts, as mean, and unbecoming their nobility.

(33) Tekeli ] This Prince's actions are fo well known to the Europeans, that I need not relate them here. After having loft his efface in Hungary, he had a daily pension of eighty Leonines from the Turks; and being released from his imprisonment by Ainest Sohman Pasha, he was held in great honour among the Turks all the time

they were engaged in war. Whenever Sultan Muftapha was in the came, he took him along with him for his companion, and generally made use of his counsel. After the conclusion of the peace of Carlowitz, in which it was stipulated, that such perions as were inclined to raife commotions, should be hearkened to by neither party, he was fent away by the fame Sultan to Nicomedia, where he was presented with a country house; and being very much afflicted with the gout, he died foon after in that place He ordered himself to be buried in the fuburbs of Pera, without the Greek's Churchyard, where the Christian ambaffadors and their domefticks are usu-ally buried Whilft I was at Constantinople, I frequently used to converse with him, and have often heard him fay. What can we do, my Brother? It has pleafed God to make us subject to a master, who, by his actions, does very well answer his shield, that is the crefcent. I have found their talfe prophet miftaken in almost every point, yet in this I believe he spoke with a prophetic spirit, when he gave his followers a crefcent for their arms; for that very well denotes their inconftancy.

dente, swithout foreign affiftance, (because the Emperor having made peace with the French, had affembled all his forces to extinguish this flame) he calls in the Turks to his aid, promiting to pay them forty thousand rix-dollars a year by way of tribute, and to assist them with thirty thousand Hungarians, whenever there should be occasion.

XLIII. The Others court long deliberated, whether the affiftance demanded should now be publickly granted to Tekels, or deferred till the twenty years truce made by Kroprils Abmed Pasta in 1075 be expired; and till then, the rebels be only supported in a private manner. The latter opinion was approved by all the Ulema, (34) with the Sultana-Mother, declaring it to be unjust to wage war with a prince, who had given no caute of complaint, but had hitherto firely obferved the conditions of the truce. The Sultan and the Vizir were inclined to the former opinion, alledging, the iron ought to be flruck whilft it was hot, nor would there happen again to fair an opportunity of propagating the Mahometan faith, Hungary, hitherto the firongest bulwark of the Christians, voluntarily offers subjection; Germany, exhausted with the French and Swedssh wars, is scarce able to fustain the first shock of the Othman army; that country being subdued, nothing can prevent the rest of the nations, formerly subject to the Roman Empire, from being reduced to the obedience of the Othman power. The Sultan, that the war might not seem too heavy a burden upon his subjects, declares, he has ready for this design seventy thousand purses in his treasury, a compleat army, and all other necessaries for several expeditions, and promites willingly to employ them all in bringing over the Christians to the Musulman religion, in extending the bounds of the Empire, and defending those who had put themselves under his protection. The Janizaries, instructed by the Vizir, (35) and their officers of his party, demand a war, and publickly declare they had rather die, than fuffer the Emperor of Germany to oppress with impunity the subjects of the Othman Empire. Sultana-Mother, (36) (who had been of a contrary opinion, is gained by the Vizir,

#### ANNOTATION 8.

(34) Ulema ] This is the name used to denote all those who are distinguished with any ecclesiastical degree. What these degrees are, we have shewed in a former note, Part. I. They have a very great authority with the people, because it is believed they do nothing but what has been approved beforehand by the Fetva. And therefore it you fee them join with the army in oppofing any thing, you may affure your felf it will never be done.

(35) by the Vizir ] They who are best acquainted with the counsels of the Othman court at that time, affirm, that none but the Sultan and the Visir Cara Mustapha Palha defired a war with the Emperor of Germany but when the Sultan perceived, his mother and all the Ulema were against it, he ordered the Vizir to bring over the Aga of the Janizaries, and the rest of the Ojak Agalars, by promises and other arts, to his opinion. For this maxim, Cul fefer ifter, The foldiers are for war, is a fufficient reason for declaring a new war. For though the power of the Sulam and Vizir be very great in all affairs, yet if the Januaris and ma join in opposing the Sultan's designs, sechoves him to yield to them, and if he its in his resolution, a sedition unmeely enfues. But if the Janizaries without the Ukms approve of the Sultan's de-

fign, or the Ulema without the Janizaries, the Sultan easily obtains his desires very powerful is the union of the Janizaries and Ulema, that they can even depote the Sultan, and cut off the Vizir, or any other great man, as plainly appeared in the depo-

fing of Sultan Mahomei

(36) Sultana-Mother | Val.de Sultana This name is appropriated to the mother of the reigning Sultan, and the cannot be fo called before her fon is arrived to the imperial dignity, or after his deposition. because none but Mahomet Fatth and Selim yauvuz have happened to mount the throne in their futher's life time. The Sultans have ain, ys treated their mothers with great respect, in compliance with the divine precepts and those of the Koran. They can, not only introduce and change many things at pleafure in the Seraglio, but also the Sultan is forbid by the laws, to lye with any of the women kept there, without his mother's confent. Every day during the feast of Bairam, the Sultana-mother prefents a beautiful Virgin, well educated, richly dreffed, and adorned with precious ftones, for her fon's use; and though the Vizir and the rest of the Bafha's fend, among other things, young Virgins for prefents to the Emperor, yet he touches none of them but what is brought him by his mother. If the Sultan has a mind to

with the hopes, that out of the conquelts her Pathmakirk (37) would be increased to three hundred purses. After her consent, the Musti ailo, who had long concealed his fentiments upon this affair, approves of the Emperor's deligns by a Fetvah. However, the opposite party are not moved by his authority, but publickly defend their opinion, and disperse anonymous libels upon the Divar. advising the people not to consent to an unjust war, undertaken not only contrary to a peace confirmed by oath, but also to the anathema of Sultan Soliman (38).

XLIV. Notwithstanding this, the Vizit confiding in the disposition of his sol- The War is diers and the confent of the Sultan, and being blinded with too great a conceit at last determined upon ot his own power, perists in his design, and determines upon war with the Emperor of Germany

However, some pretences seemed requisite, that the soldiers, Germany

Germany satisfied of the justice of the Othman arms, might engage in the expedition with the greater alacrity.

#### ANNOTATION S.

chuse a concubine unknown to his mother, he may indeed do it without opposition, but he is reckoned to have acted contrary to the rules of the Seraglio, and against his mother's honour Very often the Sultan communicates to his mother the affairs of state, as Sultan Mabimet III known to have done and fometimes the has conferences with the Vizir and Mufti, under a veil, that the may not be feen, and recommends to them faithfulness to her ion. Whenever she is sick, the Hekim-effends, or chief physician, is brought into her bed-chamber, but he speaks to her through a veil hung round her bed, and if he must feel her pulle, it is through a piece of fine linner cast over her arm, for it is reckoned as unlawful for any man to fee the Sultana fick, as in health. Her revenues confift in above a thousand puries, raised out of the provinces of the Empire, and for the collecting of them there is an officer apwhich ma place of great honour. She does what she pleases with her money, some times, in a case of necessity, she lends money to the treasury, and at other times raifes foldiers for the publick fervice, as the mother of the present Abmed III. is reported to have done, during his war with the Muscovites. Of the Sultan's concubines, fome are no more than concubines, and others; are Hajeki. Any one that has but once had the honour of lying with the Sultan, is immediately fet apart from the rest of the young women, and has fervants and eunuchs allowed her; but the cannot have accels to the Sultan, unless fent for. But if the Sultan loves any of those women more than the rest, he can let the crown upon her head, and the is thenceforward called Chafeki Sultana. After having received the crown, the may go in to the Sultan whenever the will, without being fent for. A Kiebaia is also appointed for her, and a regiment of Baltaji, with their leader, who

are to execute the orders given them by the Kiebaia. They have moreover revenues affigned them, according to the Sultan's diferetion; but it must not be under five hundred purics. For which reason, though a Sultan may crown five Chaseki Sultana's, yet many Emperors, as the prefent Abmed III and his brother Mustapha II. for instance, have, upon account of that expence, and of the wars they were en-gaged in, made no Chafeks at all, but been fatisfied with concubines. As to the Sultan's concubines, if they have only daughters, they may be disposed of in marriage by his fuccessor, but do not thereby acquire more honour than those that are barren If a fon is born to them, though he should die as foon as he comes into the world, the mother is removed into E/ki Serai, that is, the old palace, from whence the in never to depart. But those that have a son living, are greatly respected by all, both courtiers and foreigners, because they may come one day to be Valida-Sultana.

(37) Pafbinaklyk This is the usual revenue affigued to the Valide Sultana, and the other Chafeks. The name is derived from Pashmak, a sandal, because those revenues are faid to be granted to buy fandals. In all towns taken by the Tarki, some street is affigned for the Pashmaklyk, as in Constantinople, Pera. Hence it comes, that the Valide-Sultand has a very large Passinaklyk almost throughout the Turks Empire

(38) of Sultan Soliman The Turks in general firmly believe, that Sultan Soliman, after railing the fiege of Vienna, bound all fuccessors with a Lanet, never to lay siege again to that city, or enter its territories in a hostile manner. And for that reason, after the defeat of Cara Mustapha Pasha, they all cried out with one voice, that by a causeless breaking of the truce, and slighting the curses of Soliman, the divine wrath had been drawn down upon the Musulmania and provoked to defitoy their Empire.

XLY. The peace with Poland having indeed been disturbed by the Emperor, afforthe forded a plaufible ground of breaking the truce; but because this had been done unsechand, and not by open hostilities, the Vizir found it necessary to urge some other reason more obvious to the publick. That the occasion might appear to be given by the Emperor, and not by the Sultan, letters are fent, in the Sultan's name, by a courier, tothe Emperor, declaring that Tekels, and the other Nobles of Hungary, had been forced by his oppression to subject their country to the Othman Empire, and had promifed to pay tribute; for which reason the Emperor was required to recall his troops fent against them, and restore what he had taken from them, unless he would be confidered as guilty of an infraction of the peace, and draw upon himfelf the punishment due to his rashness.

The Emperor

XLVI. The Emperor suspecting the case, that the Turks were only seeking an of Germany occasion of war, sends Count Albert Caprara as ambasiador extraordinary to haffador to the Constantinople, and orders him to spare neither persuasions nor bribes that the Port to con truce may be continued, and the war diverted, which Leopold found himself incapable of supporting.

Teksh, by the the Turks takes feveral H. 1093.

XLVII. But the Vizir, without waiting the ambassador's arrival, in the same year 1093, sends Ibrahim Pasha (39) Beglerbeg of Buda with six thousand men to the affishance of Tekeli, and ordered Apaffi, Prince of Transfluanca, to join his forces with the Hungarians. Tekeli, strengthned with these supplies, the same summer takes Cassovia, Eperses, Leutsch, Levent, Lipschet, and Tillek, A. C. 1682. the German garrifons returng with delign to referve themselves for a more favourable opportunity, rather than by a difficult and fruitless opposition expose themselves to captivity.

The Sultun declares *Tekels* King of *Hun-*

XLVIII. The Turks imagining, from these beginnings, the expedition would prove fortunate, keep no farther measures, but, by the Basha of Buda, declare Tekeli King of Hungary, exhort all the Nobles of that Kingdom, who still continue faithful to the Emperor of Germany, to submit to their new Sovereign; and attack the island of Sebutt, though not with the defined success. Mean while, the Vizir amuses the Imperial ambassador with salse hopes of peace, an order to retard the enemies preparations for refiftance.

The Turks of-Pesit

XLIX. At last, when he was informed of the success of Tekeli's arms, he her impossible fends for Caprara, and acquaints him, that the Sultan would grant the Emperor peace on no other conditions, than the restoration of Hungary to the state in which it was in 1067, the payment of an annual tribute of five hundred thoufand florins to the Othman port, the demolition of Leopoldopolis and Gutta; the refignation of Neutraschinta and Ekolt, with the island of Select, and the fortress of Muran, to Tekeli, a general amnessy to the Hungarians, with the

#### Annotations.

(39) Ibrabim Pafha, &cc.] A man so very eminent among the Turks both in war and peace, that he is to be reckoned among the greatest men of his age. The first proof he gave of his virtues, was in the office of *Kubais*, which he discharged under the discharg der the Vizir Kioprili Mebemmed Pasha. From hence being appointed Basha of Alep-po, under Kioprili Abmed Pasha, he was with him at the siege of Candia, and was of great fervice to that Vizir in fettling the articles for the furrender of the castle. When that expedition was over, the Expelians rebel, and he being fent to quell them, not only referres, in a short time, that whole Kingdom to the Othman Empire, and to its fortranquillity, without any blood-shed, red and fifty puries; and so artfully

did he manage the restless tempers of the great men of Egypt, that whereas formerly a Basha could hardly get out of their hands without the loss of his honour, the governors can live there now with more fafety. By these actions he acquired fo great reputation and effeem, that he was promoted to the best government in the whole Othman Empire, namely the Beglerbeglic of Buds. And here what he would have done (had not Cara Mustapha Pasha, blinded with too great an opinion of his own power, rejected good advice) did fufficiently appear from his counsels and defigns, compared with the event. His life hath been very elegantly penned by a Turkifb historian, in which he appears throughout a most perfect and excellent pattern of all virtues.

reflitution

7

restitution of their estates and privileges. When he found these terms were disliked by the Emperor, he immediately proclaims war against him, and orders the horse-tails to be publickly set up before the palace in the month Shevvel, of H 1093.

the year 1093.

c year 1093.

A C 1682.

L. A few days after the Vizir departs with great pomp from Confluentinople, marches from marches from attended with the Mufti, Cadileskiers, and all the other great men, and goes to Continuingle Adrianople, where he had determined to pass the winter, and prepare for the with an army. German expedition. He pitches his camp first about a mile from Constantinople, in a place called Chirpigs \*, Chairs \* (40), in order to give some refreshment to his retinue, that they might the better prepare themselves for the journey.

LI. The same night there happens a violent storm, and such a whirlwind, The unhappy mixed with rain and hail, that scarce a man in the whole camp would venture finds. to flu; and besides the tents of the other Bashas, the pavilions of the Sultan, the Prime Vizir, and the Mufti, were overthrown. Five days after this, when they encamped near Syllebria, under an hill, upon the fea-shore, another storm arises, and so great a torrent of waters rushes from the mountains, that not only the tents, but likewise the baggage, horses, cattle, and the very soldiers themselves, are overwhelmed, or carried away with the stream into the sea. These two accidents, almost under the walls of Constantinople, struck no small terror into the superflutious Turks, accustomed to form a judgment of their suture success from the beginnings.

Lil Those who had before secretly opposed the war, and declared this expe- Throcessions dition unjust, interpreted publickly their calamities to be marks of the divine plaints among

venueance, and God's displeature against the Musulman arms.

LIII But the Sultan delpiles these as vulgar remarks, and unworthy a great mind; The Sultan and having repaired the losses occasioned by the wind and waters, pursues his the Vizir tointended march, and comes to Adrianople about the end of the year 1093; and wards Belhaving, during the winter, supplied what was wanting to his warlike preparations, H 1094. on the 27th of the month Rebulachyr, in 1094, marches from thence with his A C 1683. whole army towards Belgrade, but on the way alters his resolution, and stops at Hesarpe (41), a town about eight homs from Adrianople.

LIV Here, after a fecond review of his forces, he delivers the command of his pointed the army to the Prime Vizir, Cara Muftapha Basha, with Mahomet's standard (42); Vizir his ge-

The Sultan exhorts neml, teturns from Belgrade to Conflantino-

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(40) Chirfiji\*, Chairi\*] A very large meadow without the walls of Constantinople, neur Daud Pasha It is so called, because the Rujian old women are wont to wash their webs of cloth in the stream that runs through the midst of it, and afterwards dry them on the grass

(41) Hesargu] A town on the road to Belgrade from Adrianople, from which last place it lies about eight hours; remarkable for nothing but this stay of Sultan Mabomet at the time of the Vienna expedition.

(42) Mahomei's standard] It is a standard of green silk, long and large, after the form whereof all standards called Sanjak are made. The Christians thought they had taken it at Vienna, but they were millaken. For that flandard was never known to fall into the enemies hands, though those about it have fometimes been almost all killed. Whenever the Sultan or Vizir command in person, this standard is carried into the camp, but never brought out in a battle, being carefully kept in the camp by Nakybul Espret, who, if he fees the victory inclining to the enemies fide, ought first to run away. However, at Vienna, Cara Mustapha Pasha himself took this standard, and would not part with it till quite out of danger. Whether it be Mahomet's own standard, or another made in the fame form, I cannot fay: however this be, that which the Turks have is very antient, and much torn in many places. For which reason it is never all displayed, for fear the wind should tear it in pieces, but being rolled round a spear till the army is marching out of the city, it is carried to the Sultan with the usual ceremony, when they come to their first quarters, the standard is laid up in a gift cheft, in which is alfo the Koran and Mahomet's robe, and being fet on a camel, is carried before the Sultan or Vizir. As for inferiptions and marks, it has none, except Alem, which appears at the top of the spear. 'Tis faid there was formerly written upon it, in black letters, the Salavai, or confession of the Mahometan faith; but these letters have been long effaced by tune.

300

editors him to fight valiantly against the enemies of the Koran, and gain, by his actions in this world, immortal honours, and glory, and paradite fit the next. Having thus settled affairs, he returns to Constantinople, hunting all the way.

The Visir

Lv. After the Sultan's departure, the Vizir passing the Save at Belgrade, leads the army under his command to Essek, when Emeric Tekeli, lately made King of Hangary by the Turks, comes with about three hundred Hungarian Nobles to the Turkis camp, and is received with great respect by the Vizir, and honoured with considerable presents. A few days after, is held a council of the chief officers of the army, summoned by the Prime Vizir, though he had received, by the Sultan's Charisters, full power of acting as he pleased. But his view in this proceeding was, that if any thing should happen unexpected, and contrary to his mind, it might not be imputed to him, but to the authors of the advice; and that he might, by this condescension and modesty, gain the affections of his Bashas, and inspire them with a greater readiness to execute his commands.

Tobeli declares his opinion in the council

LVI. Tekels is also called to this council, and as he was supposed to have a more perfect knowledge of the state of Germany, is ordered to deliver his opinion first (+3), and to declare what part of it ought principally to be attacked, and whether the slege of Vienna should be undertaken this year, or delayed till the next. Wherespon he made the following speech. "To those who engage in great undertakings, most invincible Vizir, three things are absolutely necessary for the execution, money, men, and, above all, prudence, the directress of all actions "With the first, the soldiers are to be encouraged, and foreigners briled, with the second, the enemy is to be routed, and all obstacles removed and by the "last, the too great ardor incident to heroic minds is to be moderated. With-

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(43) his opinion] I well know, most Chriftian writers ascribe the siege of Vienna to Tekeli's counsels; and use such arguments, as may easily induce the reader to give their affent. For where is the improbability. that a rebel, bent upon freeing his country from a foreign yoke, should use any means which he thought tended to the growth of his faction, and the ruin of the lawful Prince; and give his affociates counfels furtable to his deligns. But the authority of many confiderable men, whom I knew, and was intimately acquainted with in the Turkifo court, hinders me from being of that opinion. Belides Ainty Soliman Pafea, who, when Vizir, publickly and evidently demonstrated Tekels's innocence; the principal are Hannader Ibrahim Pafba, at first treasurer to Cara Mustapha Pasha, then Bog of one of the gallies, afterwards ambassador extraordinary from the Othman court to the Emperor of Germany, and at last governor of Belgrade, with three horse-tails. He was present at all the confultations of those times, and if any secret resolution was taken, it was discovered to him by the Vizir, who had a great efteem the him, on account of his quick parts and applies in giving advice. Whifit I lived the to invite him the parts have been to invite him the parts have been and did to make the parts and did to make th when house, and did so gain his goodlever, that he would open his whole mind

to me. I happened once, upon such an occasion, to talk familiarly with him about the fall and death of Cara Mujiajia Pajba, and declared, I could not sufficiently wonder how fo great a man, who had for it ven years discharged the office of Vizir with praife, should so casily hearlen to Tekeli, a rebel, who did not favour one Kingdom more than another, fince probably he simed at nothing more, than, under pretence of friendship and service, to impose upon the Othman court, and incite them against the Germans, on purpose, thit, after they had both exhaufted their ftrength, he might render himself absolute master of Hungary. To whom Ibrabim Pajba replied with a common Turkelle figing, . Fger dinumuz airi ise Allabumuz bir dur ; 1 c 66 Though we have a different law, we have 46 but one and the same God, and there-" fore must speak the truth They who " fay that Tekeli was the adviler of that un-" dertaking, accuse him falsily For my part, ss I know, he not only was against the fiege of Vienna, but advised very different things " (those mentioned by me in the text.) which, if my mafter had followed, he would 66 not have brought fo great a difhonour upon the Othman Empire, nor been deprived of his dignity and life." The same was told me afterwards by Tekels himfelf, who complained, the calumny was invented by Maurecordatus, and the Vizir Cara Ibrabim Pasha provoked by the fame person to imprison him, " out prudence, the greatest treasures and forces have often proved unsuccessful; and " with it, small armies have frequently overthrown extensive kingdoms, as sufficient-" ly appears in the Altothman Empire: and in our present debate we want that " alone, fince the Othman Empire has raifed fo great treasure and forces, that they " feem to surpass even fame, which, upon this occasion, forgetful of herself, " may justly be credited. There are two expeditions proposed to the Othmen " foldiery, both equally glorious, but not equally practicable and advantagious " to the Empire, namely, the siege of Vienna, and the conquest of the whole "Kingdom of Hungary. It I should reject the former, or rather declare it great-" ly detrumental to the Othman interest, I shall perhaps to the generality seem ab-" furd, but not to those who thoroughly understand the situation of the European " affairs, much less to this august and wise council, before whom I now deliver " my fentiments, in obedience to the most invincible Vizir's command. Vienna " is too remote from the borders of your Empire, and though it may not be fo " firong, as to be impenetrable to the Othman valour, yet it will be in vain to expect " to take it at the first assault Before you reach it, you must pass through the ene-" mies country, in many places defended with confiderable caliles, the garrifons " of which will never ceate to annoy you, and, whill they dare not face your " army, will full intercept parties, till they are entirely fubdued. If by the " bravery of the garnion of Vienna, which I prefume will not be weak, the fiege " shall be prolonged, the Othman Empire will be exposed to greater danger, than " any fince the taking of Constantinople, and the establishment of its dominion " in the west. The provisions for such an army for several months cannot possi-" bly be brought at one time; and confequently will be intercepted by the " enemy, who will also plunder your baggage, and, by their fudden incursions, " to weary the army, and reduce it to fuch extremities, that it must either perish " with hunger, or abandon the fiege with great loss and dishonour. But if this " expedition should be attended with better success, and Vienna surrender to " your arms, unless you shall think proper to abandon it of your own accord, " (which I hardly believe you will do) it appears to me, that your Empire will be " involved in a more dangerous war for that city is reckoned the bulwark of " Christendom, and the Christian faith would be thought entirely ruined, if Vienna " remained in your hands. To refeue it therefore from destruction, all the princes " protesting Christianity will, at the first sumour of the siege, undoubtedly unite; " and, forgetting their private quariels, take the most proper measures to stop " the progress of your victories. The King of France is your ally, but not to " far, as to fuffer the Christian religion to be utterly extirpated. He permits the " Emperor of Germany to be preffed, but it is with no other view than to en-" large his own dominions, and prevent that prince from having it in his power " to hurr him He is very far from defiring to have you, who are more power-" ful and opulent, in his neighbourhood. The German princes frequently re-" fuse their Emperor aid, or contribute not so much as they can, lest the Emper-" or should receive too great an accession of power, and make an attempt upon " their liberty. But it they shall see their own dominions exposed to the utmost "danger, they will unite all their forces in their defence, and oppose your designs. " Besides, it they shall find there is no other hope of safety, and their distressed " country cannot be otherwise protected, they will voluntarily submit to the King of " France, and declare him Emperor, and if he join even the remains of the Ger-" mans to his own army, I am afraid he will become more formidable than you You ought therefore to be cautious, left, while you endeavour to " imagine " inppicis a weak enemy, you raise up against you another much more powerful. " and turnish him with arms, without being sensible of it. If you consider these " things, most invincible Vizir, and weigh them in the balance of your pru-" dence, known to the whole world, you will clearly perceive how difficult and " dangerous this expedition is, and will turn your thoughts to some other scene " of action, in which the Othman valour may exert it felf with less hazard and " more advantage That scene is Hungary, a large and fertile Kingdom, which, " after frequently repelling your arms, and, what no other province has done, " obstructing Nº 14. 4 H

bilituding for two ages your victories, now voluntarily submits to your laws, and even earnestly sues for your assistance. The states of this kingdom, for in the most part, follow my banner; the rest, who are still subject to the Emperor of Germany's tyranny, wait only for an opportunity to shew how weary they are of the Games yoke; which opportunity if you grant them, I do not fee what method you can take more advantageous to the Othman Empire. For when all Hingery is once subdued and settled, there will be no obstacle to your re-" duction not only of Vienna, but of all Germany in one campain. That King-" dom will happly you with plenty of provisions, which may be safely conveyed, " when the enemies garrifons are deftroyed; and will prove a perpetual and fure " magazine for expeditions to any quarter. If therefore I may be allowed free-" ly to declare my opinion, I think that nothing can be more beneficial to the \* Othman affairs, than to employ this whole year in subduing and settling the "Kingdom of Hungary, taking the callies, still possessed by the Germans, forti-" fying them, and furnishing them with garrisons and stores for two or three years, so that they may be secure from the enemy and famine; and, withal, in st gaining the affection of the Hungarians, and confirming them in their obedience. If these measures be taken, I am in hopes that next winter I shall have above eighty thousand of my countrymen in my camp. But because it would be needless that so great an army should be fatigued in marches and " fleges, it is my advice, that the Vizir himfelf, if he thinks proper, encamp about " Buda or Belgrade with the greater part of the army, and by his presence restrain the rebels, or those who endeavour to throw off their subjection, march against the enemy, if their troops should appear, and deseat them; if they ictire into the cities and castles, send the Tartars and other light-armed troops " into the neighbouring provinces of Germany, Austria, Moravia, Bohemia, and Silefia, with orders to lay waste these countries, to destroy the standing er corn every where; to carry away, or if that cannot be done, to burn all that " is laid up. By this means the enemy's army will be disperfed without difficulty or danger, and will not be able to fubfift either this or the next year for want " of corn. If this be done, I dare enage, not only Vienna, but likewise the " whole German Empire will be the reward of a fingle campain."

The opinion of the principal Bathas

LVII. Tekels spoke in this manner, and indeed with more freedom than was agreeable to the Vizir, who, too confident of his own power, and meditating greater defigns, could not hearken now to wholfome advice. However, fearing if he fhould openly discover his opinion, he might alienate from him the minds of the Hungarians, not yet sufficiently confirmed; and, by that means, become fuspected by the Turks, he conceals his dislike, and commands the other Bashas to declare their opinions. There were then prefent among the other Bashas two very emment for their warlike conduct and prudence, and of great authority in the Othman camp, Ibrahim Pasha of Buda, and Ahmed Pasha (44), who was Teskerder, or high-treasurer. These partly gueffing the Vizir's opinion, and knowing he would prove an enemy to those who should be against the intended fiege of Vienna; on the other hand, being convinced, by Tekeli's representation, of the danger to which the Othman Empire would be expoted by that expedition, gave ambiguous answers. It ought (say they) to be left to the well-known wisdom of the Vizir, whether the war is to be carried into Hungary or Germany If the establishment of Hungary is thought to deserve a whole year's employment of the army, the Vizir should march no further than Buda, and encamp in the neighbourhood of that city There the army may be divided into three parts, one to guard the camp, and the other two to ravage the adjacent provinces of the enemy, to take the castles of Hungary, and when tasten, fortify them with garrisons and works. There is no danger to be appreficaded from the separation of the army, it being hardly credible, that the enc-

ANNOTATIONS.

he Alersified, who had filled almost all the and officers

mics, both unprepared, and a few years since exhapped by a French was, could raife any forces; and if they could, they would be unable to raife even a fourth part of the Othman army. But if the slege of Vienne is thought of greater importance, it would be prudent not to waste the time in hesieging other places, left to great an army, like Sultan Solamanis, he obliged by the approach of winter to abandon the flege without fuccefs. In a word, the foldiers ought to be led thither instantly, while they are warm and burn with a defice of battle.

LVIII. Cara Mustapha Pasha perceiving even these two Bashas were not en- The Vinit's tirely of his mind, the better to conceal his deligns both from friends and ene-delign conmies, pretends to approve of Tekeli's advice, and orders his army to march to could Tavarin, and fends the Imperial ambaliador, whom he had hitherto detained and amused with hopes of peace, to Bude, that he might not be a wieness and

objerver of proceedings.

LIX. At the same time Selms Grerai, Chan of the Tartars, comes to the Oth- The Tartars man camp with his troops, and is received by the Vizit with great and unufuel join the Turk honours, and presented with an crimin volt, a breast-plate and sword set with

diamonds and other precious stones.

LX Having thus affembled all the forces he expected, he marches towards The Vizir Tavarin, and in the latter end of the month jemazeul achyr, passes the Raab persuades the after the Hungarian soldiers, who were left to guard the ford, had shamefully agree to the abandoned their post (45), and encamps under the very walls of Tavarine. But field of he had scarce begun to open his trenches, and batter the walls, when he is informed by his fcours that the Emperor Leopold was fled from Vienne to Linese; that every thing there was in confusion, the walls were in a ruinous condition, the garrifon weak and leized with terror, the magazines empty of ammunition, the flore houses of provision, and the inhabitants almost dead with fear of the The Vizir, encouraged by this account to profesure his designs, forms another scheme to extort the consent of the other generals. He tries first to gain the Janizaries by various arts, and, by certain persons, promises them, if they would readily undertake or infift upon this expedition, not only greater honours and larger pay, but likewife the plunder of all the treasures of Germany, which were supposed to be laid up at Vsenna. Besides this, he engages the Aga of the Janizaries in his party by many plaulible pretences, and promiles of mountains of gold, by whose means the Kulkiehaia (46), and the rest of the Ojuk Agalars (47), are prevailed upon; to that the Januaries openly complain, the strength of the Othmen Empire is confumed to no purpose in the fiege of an inconfiderable place, and the time walted, in which the rival of Constantinople, and the metropolis of Germany, and or all the Genre, might be jubdued. The Vizir, having gained this point, fends again for the chief Bashas, and informs them of what was faid among the Janizaties, and bids them declare their opinion, whether it be proper to gratify their defires, or to defer that important work to a future expedition.

LXI The Bathas perceiving the Vizir to be wavering, resolutely and unani-The Bathas moully advise against the siege of Vienna, a city (say they) must not be left in and Tokeli en the hands of the enemy, which is not only easy to be taken, but likewise will finde him

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(45) their post ] Some fay, that Count Buddan treacherously gave the Turks a free passinge, but because his crime was never clearly proved, I rather thuse to leave the matter doubtful, than determine any thing about it without foundation.

(46) Kulkubasa] The lieutenant of the whole militia, next to the Aga of the Janizaries, and above him in the Imperial Divan. He hath the lists of the Janizaries, and of all the Turksh foot, and when any regiment of Janizaries is to be

put into garrifons, he is to fend them. He imparts all the affairs of the Janizaries to their Aga, and manages them; and therefore has very great power in that body.

(47) Ojak Agalari] This general name denotes both those who have the command of the whole multia of the Janizanes, as the Kulkiebara, Zagari bashi, Sampsoni bashi, and also the rest of the Buluk Agalari, who have at least one regiment under them,

**Ope** 

to a door to the conquest of all Germany; nor is that to be attempted, from which little advantage, but great danger ought to be expected. Tekels above all sopposed it, because he saw, if the Vieir should besiege Vienna, all his hopes of the kingdom of Hungary would be destroyed; and told the Vizir he would highly prejudice the Othman interest, by perfishing in his design, and neglecting Hungary, the people whereof at the last passage over the Raab, had sufficiently shown their aversion to the German yoke, and their inclination to submit to the Othman conqueror.

The Balbas fubmit to the Vizir's authority, and march towards

LKII. At last the Vizir, when he finds he cannot prevail by his speeches, impatient of delay, produces the Sultan's Chatisberif, by which he was made arbiter of peace or war, and the command of the whole army committed to him with full power. The Bashas, upon the sight of this, are silent, and by an implicit obedience, rather than the real judgment of their minds, promise to execute the commands of their dictator. The council breaking up, the army decamps, and only a small body of troops are lest under the command of Kier Hullein Palba (48) to block up Tavarin, the rest of the forces move with the utmost expedition towards Vienna. In their march they seize the baggage of several imperial officers, which had been detained by the difficulty of the roads kill the troops that convoyed them, and entering the enemy's country, take a great number of prisoners, with whom they appear before Vienna the 18th day of Jemaziul achyr. .

LXIII. The tents being pitched, the trenches opened, and other things necessfary for the slege prepared, the Vizir soon after makes himself master of the outer-works, beats down the walls with his cannon and mines, and affaults the city itself with such vigour, that though the garrison, assisted by the citizens, bravely fought for their religion and country, and disputed every inch of ground, yet very probably, the city would have been soon taken, if the Vizir had continued the fiege as vigorously as he begun it. But the supreme arbiter of fortune pitying the flate of Christendom, unexpectedly intervenes to the affistance of distressed Germany, and to show, he can produce happiness even our of missiortune, fills the mind of the Vizir, who otherwise was a man of great prindence and experience, with fuch abfurd deligns, that he imagines it for his interest to prolong the fiege of the city. The outer-works, as I faid, being calify taken, he was fully perfuaded, he should soon be master of the city, and accordingly writ to the Sultan, that in a short time he would send him the keys.

The treachery of the Vizir towards the Sulun He is ambitious of the

LXIV. These hopes excited his ambition, and being blinded with too great a conceit of his own power, he falls into fuch strange notions, as to imagine himfelf able to throw off the Othman dominion, and feizing the metropolis of Germany, found a Musulman Empire in the west, which should rival that in the Empire of the east, and putting on the Sorgus (49), assume the title of Sultan of Vienna, and

#### Annotations,

(48) Kior Huffein A man very famous among the Turks for his courage and experience. So called, because he was oneeyed, or had a blemish in one of his eyes. For Kior, in the Persian and Turkish languages, fignifies one that is blind, or has but one eye.

(49) Sorguy ] A Crest made of curious feathers, and adorned with precious stones. It is fastned to the Turban, either in token of royal power, or to show that he who tears it, is an officer of the Sultan's Di-Whi. Upon this last account, all the children and Gieduk ogalari are adorned the Sorrey, but of a planner fort. As a set royal power it is worn by the Sulcal and the Survey, and formerly of Buda. The Sulcal and the Sulcal and Sulca

tans heretofore used, on account of the three larger kingdoms under their dominion, namely of Greece, Egypt, and Hungary, to wear three Sorguj, one on the right fide of their Turban, another on the left, and a third in the fore-part, fastened with little chains but after having loft Hungary, they continued to wear the fame Sorguj for the kingdom of Babylon The three Bashas above-mentioned have but one Sorgus on the left-side of the Turban, the Basha of Egypt is, besides, honoured by the inhabitants (but not at court) with the name of Sultan, because in the Arabic language, which is mostly used in Egypt, the word Sultan fignifies Lord or Prince [ Sorguy is to be pronounced, as if writ in English, Sorguge.]

Germany.

Germany. He thought he had nothing to fear from the Sultan, fince all the disciplined troops of the whole Othmes Empire were under his command, and it would be difficult for Sultan Mahomet to bring an army equal in number, not to fay in valour, against him. The Emperor of Germany seemed less formidable to him, whose capitol he hoped to have in his power before the troops expected from Poland could join his forces, which he perswaded himself would be too late from the known flowness of the Polish proceedings. He had brought with him a great treasure, as well his own as the Sultan's, and resolved to increase it with the addition of the riches of the German Princes, which he supposed to be reposited in the city besieged. He knew, the Pashas and other governors of the castles in Hungary, (most of whom were his creatures, and appointed by him during his feven year's Vizirship,) were attached to his interest. and imagined would prove no obfiacle to his advancement. Nothing remained but to gain Ibrahim Pasha, Beglerbeg of Buda, a man of great authority, not only in Hungary, but also with the whole army, and the principal officers of the Janizaries and Spabis. For this purpose by large presents he prevailed upon all those, whom he knew to have any influence in the army; he promised lbrahim Pasha the kingdom of Hungary for ever (Ebeds) (50), to divide all the provinces belonging to it among the Spahis by way of Timar (51), and to fettle the whole army in the cities and lands of Hungary as new colonies, after driving out or inflaving the old possessors. But he reserved for himself under the title of Sultan, all Germany as far as the borders of France, Transplvania, and Poland, which he resolved the next year either to subdue or make tribu-

LXV Let us leave the Vizir, full of these thoughts and designs, in the camp The Emperor before Vienna, and see what measures were taken by the Christians to repell defires the if-

fiftance of the

# Annotations.

(50) Ebeds ] s. e properly for ever, or for a man's whole life. Whence those privileges are denoted by that name, with which the Sultan invests for ever any Vizir, Basha, or Prince and they who are thus diftinguished are named Techsten. Such was that Chaissherif, which, according to the Christian writers, was granted to Cara Mus-tapha Pasha by Sultan Mahomet IV, whereby he was declared not hable to be punished with death. But they do not know, that fuch a Chairshersf is granted by the Sultan to all, even to those who are put to death three days after their promotion to the office of Vizir, with this condition however, Eger ber chiametimuze sadacat ve istuametde olurse, " If thou art faithful and obedient " to us in all and every fervice " Whence it comes to pais, that they are no more fecure as to their honour, goods, or life than others. For the Vizirs are never put to death, but for a real or pretended want of fidelity or obedience due to the Emperor. Such a kind of Chatisberis was given to Constantine Brancovan, of bleffed memory, Prince of Walachia, who after having been advanced to that principality by the contrivance of the Cantacuzens, did not only leffen their power, but also obtained, by means of large fums of money, and other arts, that instrument from Sultan Abmed. But of how little fervice it was to him, appeared by what happened at Constantinople in Nº. 14.

my time. For he was not only deprived of his principality, but also strangled publickly in the market-place, with his four fons, and for no other region, but because he had accepted of the dignity of Prince of the Empire from the Emperor of Germany, and the order of St Andrew from the Czar of Muscovy, and kept a corres-pondence with them by letters about the affairs of state. For, that the affection he pretended to have for the Christians, was not real, he plainly manifested in two expeditions. The first in the year 1690, when he showed the Turks a way over the mountains of Walachia into Transylvania, which had been till then unknown; and by that means was the cause of Heister's being cut in pieces, who relying upon his friendship, had with four thousand Germans encamped at the foot of those mountains, where he thought himself safe. The other was in the year 1711, when after having drawn, by his fair promiles, Peter, Czar of Mufiovy, into Moldavia, he openly refused him provisions and affiftance.

(51) Timar ] Timar Spabi are the Nobles. or the old Spabi, who have, for their ftipend, villages affigned them in the provinces subject to the Empire. And they are obliged, in proportion to the revenues, to carry three flaves at leaft, with them to the wars.

4 I

the

the enemy. While Count Charara was in vain waiting at Conftant mobile for the confirmation of the peace, this Emperor of Germany's ambaliador in Poland much better fucces in his negotiations. The flates of that kingdom were excited either by the common danger, or the Pope's exhortations and promifes, and united in firmly, that having suspended or composed their intestine divisions, they unanimously determined to raise an army, and oppose the enemy of the Crois, before he should be able to compleat the rum of Germany and Poland. An alliance therefore is easily made between the Emperor Leopold and King John Sobieski, and one of the principal articles was, that if the eapital of either nation should be belieged by the enemy, both Princes should march in person with their whole army to its relief.

LXVI. The Emperor being strengthened on that side, declares the next year

The Duke of

Strigonium

general of the Charles Duke of Lorrain General of his army; and as foon as he heard the imperial army. Turks had proclaimed war against him in the usual manner at Constantinople, peneger wy number he orders him to march with what forces he had ready into Hungary, and before the Turks could arrive, make himfelf mafter of some castle in that country, The Duke, to discharge the duwhich might ferve as a bulwark to Germany ties of a prudent and valiant general, first endeavours to seize Gran +, the garrison of which he had been affured was very weak; but finding that feveral thousand of the Turks of Wywar had entered the city, he lets fire to the bridge, by which there was a communication between the two cities, and on the 7th day of the month Jemaziul achyr, invests Wywar on every side They fight for eight days with equal bravery, but not with equal fuccess. For the Duke of Lorrain being informed, that the Vizir was marching with a powerful army from Belgrade against him, though he had great hopes of taking the city in a short time, on the 14th of the same month abandons the siege, reinforces the garrison of Vienna with feveral regiments, and fo encamps with the reft of his army near the city on the confines of Hungary and Austria, that he might provide for the exigencies of both countries, and fafely wait for the forces of Poland and the other Princes.

'I he Emperor of Germany departs from

LXVII. Leopold hearing that Hungary was abandoned by his troops, and the Turks were preparing for the siege of Vienna, and thinking lumich not fecure Fienna to Lin- within the walls, commits the defence of it to Count Statemberg, a man of approved integrity, valour, and prudence, himself retries to Linerum upon the Danube above Vienna, and from thence sends letters to all the neighboring Princes to desire their assistance.

I he avarice of the Vizir ocrun of the whole aimy

LXVIII Mean while the Vizir continues the fiege of Vienna, but not in fuch a manner, as prudence and the art of war, but as his vain imaginations had luggefied to him. For being periwaded, that the city could not cicape talling into his hands, he would not fuffer it to be closely blocked up on all fides, and the Turks fb foldiers to attack the breaches every where with equal vigour, but orders them daily to affault in small parties only, that the garrison, being exhausted with continual watching and loss of their men, might be obliged to furrender the castle When the Janizaries, ignorant of the Vizir's defigns, began publickly to complain of these proceedings, and represented, that through the imprudence of their general, more thousands of the Othman soldiers were destroyed by these skirmishes, than by a general assault of the whole army at once; the Vizir himself unwarily discovers part of his projects, and tells those, who acquainted him with what was faid, that he could not now fatisfy the defires of the foldiers, because he certainly knew, there were great treatures in that city, which it would be improper and contrary to the Sultan's command to give up for plunder. Belides left the foldiers should by chance enter the city, and in the first heat seize upon these treasures, he orders proclamation to be made in the camp, that if any Oth-. (sman troops should pass the walls, they should stop there, and secure themselves with enterent, and not prefume to advance or enter any house, before he should come "all give them fresh orders. Lastly, that he might guard against all inconvesiences, fearing left after the taking of the city, the want of corn should oblige him to change or defer his defigns, he distributes to the foldiers very sparingly

the provisions he had brought with him in greet plenty, alledging, that good part of it was to be referred for the troops to be left in garrifon when the city should be taken. Mean while, all the provisions expected from Hungary were intercepted by the garrifons of Posonium, Tavarm, and Comorra, as Tekels had foretold to the Vizir; upon which account the fiege of Vienna being getarded much longer than was expected, so great a scarcity arises, that, a thing before unknown in the Turkish camp (52), ten drams of bread, and even that without fair, were fold for one rhub (53), and other catables and liquors rose in their

price, in proportion to the bread.

LXIX. The Vizir, to remedy this misfortune, before the famine caused a sedition The Turks, in the army, sends a Basha with twenty thousand men to Tekeli's aid, with orders out to forage, to attack Posonium, because that city was less able than the other fortresses of are defeated Hungary to make relistance, and take care that the provisions and warlike stores by the Impecollected at Bude might be safely brought to the Othman camp. But even this defign, either because it was not prudently concerted, or unseasonably discovered, failed of fuccess. For Charles duke of Lorrain being informed of the Vizir's intentions, sends several regiments under the command of Prince Lewis of Baden, to oppose the attempt of the Turks against Posonium. They first meet with Tekels, and quickly disperse his Hungarian troops, and afterwards attack the Turks, who are struck with such terror at the defeat of the Hungarians, that, besides a thousand killed, and many taken, they leave a thousand waggons loaded with provisions and warlike engines as a booty to the conquerors.

LXX This defeat was not only a prelage, but also no small cause of a greater This occasions calamity, which was ready to fall upon the Othman army. For the Janizaries, plaints in the

### ANNOTATIONS.

(52) camp] The Turks take a most particular care to have their foldiers furnished with a fufficient quantity of provisions. For the Janizaries, before they enter the encmies territories, will have fresh bread every day, and will not vouchfafe, before that time, to touch any that has been twice baked, or baked the day before. And if they should mis having it, or their daily allowance of meat, butter and rice, their leaders can hardly keep them from a mutiny. They provide against a scarcity in the tollowing manner. They chuse a man of approved honesty, and cloathing him with a Lastan, appoint him Mubacy, or steward of the victualling. Him they tell how much provisions are wanted, for how many men, and to many months; and then, fix months before the provisions are to be laid up in the store-houses, they issue out of the treatury a fum of money to buy the victuals, in proportion to the price fixed by the Sultin's order, according to the plenty or fear-city of the year. After that, the Cafab bajhi, or chief butcher, is fent for, and ordered to provide so many sheep and oxen against the ensuing expedition, and the price of them is immediately paid out of the treasury. These two, upon receipt of the money, send Men into Moldavia, Walachia, Dobruja, Bujak, Csim Turtary, and the other provinces of Runelia, to buy up cattle and provisions, which they lay up in the store houses prepared for that purpose; but if they are not there by the time ap-

pointed, the persons whose business it was to fee it done, are to be put to death. When the expedition is begun, the Sultan dispatches orders for affembling horses, oxen and camels out of the provinces, to carry the victuals. On the enemy's borders, where there can be no store-houses, the Mubaeji is commanded to bring provisions into the camp, for so many months as there shall be occasion. Besides these provisions that are gathered by the Mubaeji, the Emperor has also a yearly contribution, named Uszur, and raifed out of the tenths of the whole Empire. The remotest provinces pay it in money, but the nearest fend whear and barley into the camp : for the Turks will not receive or eat any other fort of corn. These provisions here mentioned are for the Janizaries But the Bathas and Spahi are obliged to find their own provisions, and the Sultan furnishes them with nothing but a few carts. For this reafon, they either fend men to buy wheat, or if they and the Mubaen are friends, they defire him by letter to get them the quantity they want; and they pay him for it by their Capukiebasa, which each of them is obliged to have at Constantinople, at the price fixed by the Sultan. By this means, every one providing himfelf with victuals, there can hardly happen a scarcity in the

Turkish camp.

(53) rbub] It is the fourth part of a

Leonine, as Tult is a third.



who that before to vigorously forced the enemy out of their fortifications, when they faw provisions were wanting, and the troops which were to convoy the wagactis (fo long and impatiently expected) routed and deftroyed, begin publickly to exclaim, that they came to fight not against famine, but the enemy; and not content to express their wants in words only, grow negligent in the descharge of their duty, and allow the garrifon, now reduced to the utmost extremity, time and opportunity to refume their courage, and repair their breaches. The obstinacy of the Vizir, and the difficulty of the fiege, had before funk the resolution of the officers and the Bashas; so that they no longer regarded what was most advantagious to their affairs, but executed, like mercenaries, the orders that were given them ; and would have been furprized by the Imperial army, if one of the enemy's coutiers, being taken, had not opened their eyes, and shown them to what danger they were exposed. But this indolence had now taken too deep root in the minds of the foldiers, for them to be rouzed by the prospect of a battle, on which the fortune of the whole Othman Empire depended. On the contrary, fatigued with making trenches and ramparts, they were heard frequently to fay . " O infidel, if " thou wilt not come thy felf, at least show thy Cap; on the fight of which we " shall fly hence in an hour."

The Turks are confounded at the approach of the Poiss.

LXXI. One would have imagined, these expressions were not unusual among the soldiers, exasperated against their general, and have thought they would have discharged the rage, conceived in their camp and trenches, upon the heads of their enemies, if the event had not soon after shown them to be their real sentiments. For upon the approach of the Polis auxiliaries, though it was easy for the Tarks to prevent the junction of the two armies, not a single man would fit to divert this imminent danger. Shortly after, when they were assured the enemy's forces were marching against them, the night before the battle almost a fourth part of the army dispersed themselves, and the rest, whose religion engaged them to remain, showed so little resolution and ardor, that they did not seem willing even to try the fortune of a battle.

The Vizir, immoved with fear, confults with the Pafhas

LXXII. The Bashas themselves are struck with dread at the descrition of their soldiers; the Vizir alone, whom these things ought to have convinced of the vicissitude of human affairs, continues fearless, and imagines nothing insuperable by his power. However, he aftembles the other officers, and asks them, what course they thought should be taken. Ibrahim Pasha, Beglerbeg of Buda, first declares his opinion, and advices the raising of the siege, the marching of the troops against the enemy, the cutting down of the neighbouring woods, and making a rampart with the trees, and fortifying it with cannon, in order to icceive the first and warmest attack; and that afterwards the horse should fall upon the enemy in flank as they retire. This method, if rightly purfued, would, it was to be hoped, gain an easy and speedy victory. He added, the Othman aimy being already weakened by the toils of a long siege, could not be divided, not part of it left in the works without great danger, much less should a passage be open to the enemy as far as the very camp, the extent of which would render the defence of it more difficult to the Othman forces, and the attack more valy to the affailants.

LXXIII. All the Pashas, except a few, approve this advice, and entreat the Vizir not to abuse his authority, nor be the occasion of the greatest detriment to the Othman Empire. The Vizir alone obstinately opposes the admonstrants, and says, "I know not what satal calamity threatens the Othman affairs, that so masses in a persons of eminent prudence should almost all be hurried into perverse and uniform reasonable opinions. You advise the abandoning of Vienna, which we have besieged for three months, and now reduced to such extremities, that it can see scarce hold out so many days. But if you voluntarily suffer it to escape out of your hands, what do you else but willfully resign, without a battle, the wished for victory to a small body of the enemy, which scarce deserve the name of an army, if compared with the innumerable and invincible forces of the Othman Empire? Will not the garrison, if they see our soldiers quitaling their trenches and works, attack them as they retire, repair their walls,

" which we have demolished, recover what we have taken, destroy the ramparts " raifed against them, and render the fiege more difficult to us when we return? " Will not our own foldiers, if after so many labours in vain tustained, so many of their companions killed unrevenged, when they are just ready to seize the wished " for prize, we should lead them farther from it, will they not (I say) fink in et their courage, and fight with less vigour, and, as the proverb expresses it, do " their buliness with only the ends of their fingers? Will not the enemy's army, " when they find the siege raised by us, refuse to try the fortune of a battle, " which in their prefent circumstances they cannot avoid, without hazarding their " all ; and victoriously retire without the loss of a man; and leave us thus de-" luded to engage with much more cruel enemies, for the autumnal rains are ap-" proaching, which formerly obliged Soliman, in other respects an invincible " Emperor, to abandon the fiege? But if it should happen otherwise, and the Ger-" mans, pushed by their evil genius, be induced to fight, which of you will " venture to promife, that the Janizaries, even after a victory, will return to the " fiege, and again enter those trenches, where they have hitherto sustained so er many fatigues, and loft fo many companions? You are fufficiently acquainted " with their obstinacy by their seditions expressions, which deterve indeed to " be punished, but that the present situation of affairs renders it necessary to oper pose the rebels to the enemy, rather than the sword of the executioner. I do a not deny, these turbulent men have greatly abated of their former ardor; to but they will grow still more indolent, if you remove them out of their er trenches, and tacitly command them to despair of taking the city. It may be " eafy to recover what the enemy shall seize during the battle; but consider, it is much caffer to defend what we are already possessed of, than to recover it " The defire of revenge will animate the Janizaries to return to the fiege; but " take care, lest their fury, if the garrison should make a vigorous defence, be not turned against our heads. We are now in a situation, that we must either " live or die. But to overcome, after we have abandoned a city belieged by us 66 fo many months, has the appearance rather of a defeat than a victory. " Sultan daily expects from us an account of our fuccess, and has already " made preparations for a triumph. It the event shall prove contrary, it is " easy to imagine what danger hangs over your heads as well as mine. If you " consider thele things, and weigh them in the balance of prudence, you will peres ceive, it is in vain to lead the army into the field, in vain to fight for victory, " unless the greatest part of the Janizaries be left to defend the works, and carry on the siege. It will terrify the enemies, it they find we are ready in our " camp for battle, and at the same time profecuting the siege as vigorously as " before; it will conceal our weakness; prevent the garrison from attacking our rear; inspire our foldiers with courage; and in short, is the only method by " which we can obtain not only an easy, but a compleat victory'

LXXIV. When the Vizir had ended his speech, the Bashas answer, " There is The Passian nothing to be feared from the garrison, who being equally, if not more ex-" haufted by fickness and labours than the Othman foldiers, will be more folliet citous about the defence of the fortifications still lest them, than the recovery 4 of what they have loft: besides, the trenches and other works are much stronger " than the city, and if one or two regiments are left to defend them, it will be

" more difficult for the garrifon of Vienna to seize them, than for the Janiza-" ries to take the city. The other Janizaries now employed in the trenches, " may be much more advantageously opposed to the enemy, whose army is not " to be contemned, fince it contains not only the forces of almost all Germany, " but also a considerable body of auxiliaries from Poland. It is certain the Jani-" zaries fometimes obstinately refuse to obey the commands of their generals,

" and even threaten their lives; but it is no less certain, they are easily softened " by some little presents, and promises of increasing their pay; nor is it probable,

" that after fo many fatigues, they will leave the reward of them to others,
" when they are just at the end of their labours. The dividing of the battle in " two parts will be more inconvenient to the Othman army, than to the enemy; ss and

The Vizir gives the fanction of his authority to

his opinion

" and there is reason to apprehend the terror, which this method is expected to firike into them, will render the Germans desperate, since the contest is not for one etty, but for the fafety of all Christendom; and so may bring destruction to " the whole Othman army."

LXXV. But neither could these remonstrances divert the Vizir from his purpose, who alledged, the management of this expedition was committed to him by the Sultan, that an account of it would be expected from him, that if any mistortune happened, it would be imputed to him, and not to them, and he could not fuffer it to be faid, he had gone through to many hardfhip, and loft to many men, without any advantage.

Having put his pationers to death, he draw, out his

LXXVI. The Christian army therefore advancing on the 20th day of the mouth Ramazan, Cara Mustapha orders first all the captives, of whom the Tartars had collected almost thirty thousand, to be killed; then he divides his forces, force into the which were not employed in the flege, into three parts. He gives the command of the let wing to Ibrahim Pasta of Buda, and of the light to Cara Mehemed Pasta (54) of Diarbehir The body of the army, with the Aga of the Jani-Paska (54) of Dearbeker zaries and Spahis he referves for himfelf, and orders them at least to fland firm, and repell the first shock of the enemy. The rest of the Januaries he leaves under the command of his Kiehasa in the tienches, to attack the city in the mean time. Though the officers of the army feemed to execute thefe orders with great vigour, the Vizit foon found what Ibrahim Pasha had told him was tine, and now too late repented, that he had not followed his advice

The Janu 1rics quit their trenches

LXXVII. For upon the first charge of the Germans, those who were pr in both wings, quit their ranks, and refuse to obey the orders of their generals. The Jamzaries, who were left in the works, oblerving what was done in the battle, of their own accord abandon the fiege, and remove out of their trenel is under pretence indeed of affifting their companions, who were in diffress, but in reality to withdraw themselves from the danger, the Polish forces foon after coming up, and attacking the body of the army, which was entirely unfupported. The reft of the Janizaries and Spabie with their officers think less of fighting, than flying, and endeavoured to cleape from the danger with the utmost precipitation

The Turks are deteated, and and put to flight

LXXVIII Cara Muftapha Pafra, when he fees his toldiers disperfed on every fide, and the impossibility of renewing the battle, returns also himself to the camp, and finding no man in his tent, laments his ill fortune with a flood of tears, takes up alone the standard of Mahomet, and follows the remains of his army with all pelitule speed. Night coming on, the darkness covers the nightives from the chem, s fword, but does not remove their fears, which had to deeply possested shem, that intensible of the tatigues of the way, they never flop, till they reach their companions, who had been left at the flege of Tavarisk, twenty five German miles from Fienna. Such was the more than panic terror, which the lupreme arbiter or human affaus had filled their minds with, that they, who before were averse to the least labout, and cryed out, they were brought, not to bear fatigues and hunger, but to fight, now in one day and a night traversed on foot, without meat or drink the space of fifty hours.

The Poles hift Turkift camp.

LXXIX. Mean time the Christians, finding the Turks after a short skirmish retreat to their camp, and not knowing what palled there, amagine the Vizir had laid an ambush for them, because they could not possibly believe, that such a numerous army of Turks would turn their backs upon to flight an attack; and therefore, the night encreasing their apprehensions of danger, they resolve to ftop, and to affault the camp the next morning. But when they were informed by their fcours, that the Turks were fled (55), and had relinquished their camp,

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(54) Cara Mebemed] A man of no great fame, but highly in favour with Cara Muftapha Pasha, and for no other reason, but because he never contradicted him, (for he could not bear contradiction) and yielded

a blind obedience to all the Vizir's orders for which deterts, he was, after the death of Ibrahim Pasha, made Beglerbeg of Buda. (55) were fled] Happy in that Christian

general, who fustains the first, second, and

third

the Poles, chiefly induced by the hopes of plunder, enter the camp in the night, and find there, besides an hundred and eighty large cannon and other warlike provisions, a great booty, and victuals enough for several months. While the Christian camp resounds with joy, and not only Germany, but all Europe congratulate the conquerors upon the relief of Vienna, there appears a very different face of things among the Turks, who had escaped from the descat.

LXXX. The Vizir, when he had reached the camp at lavarin, carnefly fludies not to repair his loss, but to turn upon others the danger, to which according to the Turkish custom he was liable. But he perceived it was not possible to execute his purpose, unless he could remove Ibrahim Beglerbeg of Buda, and the reft, who were privy to his countels, fince they might by their authority add great weight to the charge, which would be preferred against him, and discover his defigns against the Othman Empire, and because he thought, he had made them his enemies by his obstinacy. For this purpose he sends on some pretenfe for all those, who had strongly opposed him in the last confusation concerning the fiege of Vienna, and commands the Bash is, when they come, to be strangled, and the other officers of the army to be put to death, giving out, that they, in conjunction with Tekels, had first advited the slege of Vienna, and obliged him in a manner to undertake it, notwithflanding his reluctance; and aiterwards were very flow in obeying his orders, and in the battle were the first that took to flight.

LXXXI. After this he puts a firong garrison into Strigonium and Vywar, He firengthand encamping with the rest of the army under the walls of Buda, makes Cara and hear Mehemed Pasha, who had always implicitly tollowed his opinion, governor of

I.XXXII. In the mean time, the Christians had refreshed themselves a little, and 'the Poles, in resolving to reap in Hungary some other fruits of their victory, besides the re- of the Turker. lief of Vienna, move towards the cast. The Poles claimed the right of marching are in danger in the van, and having routed tome troops of the flying Turks and Tartars, flushed both with the former victory, the greatest share of which they assumed to themselves, and with their such successes proceed unadvisedly, and wander about the country without any order, as if they had now subdued all the Turkish In this manner, on the 16th day of the month Shevval, they happen to meet near Strigonium fix thousand horse, and two thousand Janizaries, whom Bostanii (56) Mustapha Pasba and Halil Pasba had drawn together The Poles

#### ANNOTATIONS.

third onfets of the Turk For at the tnird, or at most the fourth repulse, he will certainly fee them turn their backs, and if he advances against them with a slow pace, which I have observed to be sometimes done by the German, he will perceive them, not only to abandon their camp and cannon, and take to open flight, but also put the whole army in disorder by the confused cry of, Giaur gildi, The Instidel is co-ming Once indeed, namely in the year 1711, in a battle with the Russians, they renewed the attack feven times, but the reason was, that the generals of the Rushan army, not being used to an open fight with them, durft not puriue them when they gave way. For otherwise the Janizaries are not obliged to make above three charges, and if they are repulfed, they abandon their camp, and think of nothing but flight, pulling the Spabs off their horses, and killing such as make any resistance, and so become the worst of enemies to the horse. For which reason, the Turkish horse,

in a flight, and whenever they fee their foot giving way, never come near them, nay avoid them more carefully than the enemies themfelves

(56) Bostans Mustapha ] He was called, in the Othman Court, both Bostamy and Cushchi\* Mustapha having before his office of Bostansi, been Cushibi or Keeper of the Emperor's birds He was taken by the Poles at the buttle of Strigonium, and fix years after redeemed by my father, for a good turn of money, by the Sultan's order, together with Ali Pasha After which he was promoted to the office of Caimacan of Constantinople, and Ali Pasha was made governor of Tripoli in Syria But they did not long enjoy the Sultan's favour, for both died shortly after, Mustajba Pasha whilft he was Caimacan expressed his grati-tude to my father by doing me several good offices. He left a son Capus Pasha a man of learning, affability, and a good character at court

boldly attacking this body, and endeavouring to rout them at the first onset, the Turks, who before had thought rather of flying than fighting, perceiving the Poles to be alone, and separated from the Germons, halt, and oblige them to retreat with greater speed than they came, and not content to have repulsed them, furround and oppress the unwary enemy on every fide. The Poles seemed to be irrecoverably loft, if the German army had not very fealonably came in to their affiftance, when they began to retreat; whereupon the Turks retired, the enemy not daring to pursue them, after they had killed about a thousand men, with the fon of general Tablonowski, and taken several drums and standards.

The Germans in conjunction with the Poles, defeat the Turks a second time at the Danube

LXXXIII. Next day, the Polish and German armies being united, attack the Turks, who had encamp'd about an hour's distance from Barkan, and, after a fierce and sharp battle, deseat them. Whilst they endeavour in their flight to pass the bridge over the Danube, which was not very firmly built, fear increafing their hafte and confusion, their weight breaks it down, before a fourth part can get over; by which means they fall into the river, and are carried away with the rapid stream. The rest sty to Barkan, and, upon the approach of the Germans, immediately deliver up the town and their arms, with both their generals. There fell in the battle about three thousand Turks, the rest were almost all either drowned in the Danube, or taken prisoners, so that out of the whole army, but very few escaped to carry the news of the descat to their companions.

The Imperia-

LXXXIV. After this battle, the generals of the victorious army prepared to him take Gran. beliege Strigonsum, but foon after changed their resolution, being informed that the Vizir had re-affembled an army of eighty thousand men, with intent, by a fresh battle, to wipe out the difference he received at Vienna. The falsity of this rumour being quickly discovered, on the second day of the month Zyleade, they again attack that fortress with so much fury, that the Turks were seized with terror, and the governor Beker Basha, though he had above four thousand men in the city, on the fourth day of the fiege furrenders (57) upon capitulation; a place which had before relifted a much larger army as many months.

Petrockescus. Prince of Melvade: Bajbarabia.

LXXXV. Whilft the castles of Hungary are thus reduced to the obedience of the Christians by the Imperial army; the like is attempted in another quarter, devia, with the Christians by the Imperial army; the like is attempted in another quarter, the Caffah, in tho' not with equal success, by Petreexercus, Prince of Moldavia, who, in the battle of Chehrin, had revolted from the Turks to the Poles After the departure of the King of Poland for the relief of Vienna, he joins the Moldavian forces of his party with Konicky (58), general of the Coffaks, and, passing the Tyras, marches through Moldavia into Bessarabia.

He ravages that country with great enuliv

LXXXVI. When he finds the country without any defence, the Bulak and Crim Tartars being almost all employed in the siege of Vienna, he leaves the Collaks to guard his camp, and marches out with his Moldavian tioops, defirovs the country on all fides, with fuch cruelty, that he spared neither age nor fex; impaled alive, or dashed out the brains of the Tartarian children, whom it would have been better to have carried away, and educated in the Christian faith; he cau'ed the virgins to be ravished, and then killed, the women with-child to be ripped up, and the old men to be put to the most dreadful tortures, to make them discover their riches; in a word, he omitted no method of cruelty and barbarity which had ever been invented in former ages.

# Annotations.

(57) furrenders] Hence one of the poets faid in a kind of prophetical manner: Chikdum shamum capusinden, selam ladum usurgu-ni, Beligradi, Budun: "I went out at the gate of Damaseus (for the government of Damaseus was the first preferment of Cara es Mantapha Palha, author of the Othman " farewel to Strigonium, Belgrade, and " Buda "

(58) Konicky] He was Hetman of the Coffaks between the Tyras and the Borystbenes, who had not yet shaken off the Polish yoke. The Poles had appointed him, after the defection of Dorosbenko and Circo to the Turks and Muscovites.

LXXXVII. White the dividences (19) are thus performing therpus of ancille is at entioners, rather than of foldiers, the Parsars, which had catipad fixing the bar of by the P tic of Vienna, come, and, finding themfolyes inferior to the enterty, at the he see. concealed in the borders; where, being reinforced, they finddenly assack the Moldewiens, disperied over the country, and take a ferere sevenge for the flaughsee of their companions; then they enclose the Coffets, who remained in the camp, on every fide. These, on account of their fewness, not during to engage with the Tinks, defend themselves with a chain of waggons, and proceed slowly to the river Hierafur, hoping they should thus soones thusselves from the attacks of the Tartars, till they reached their own country. But their number daily decreating, and provision failing, they are dispersed by familie and the shows, inther than by the fword of the enemy. In their flight, many are flain by the Take ters, and more taken prifoners, and of the whole army, but a few troops of Coffaks, with Petreczeicus and Konirki, escape with great danger into Paland's nor would they have escaped, if the horses of the Tarters, being quite spent, had not prevented them from continuing the pursuit.

LXXXVIII. Ducas, Prince of Moldenia, underwent a much harder fate. Ducas, Prince At his return from the Vienna expedition, in which (as I faid) he was engaged, taken by the when he fees the flate of Meldevise in confusion, almost all the Nobles having Poles, either revolted to Petrocmeseus, or fled for fafety to the neighbouring countries. and finds Yaffy, his capital, desolate, he retires with a few sollowers to Domnestim. a village in the territory of Putna, in expectation of better times. Here while he is intent upon fettling the affairs of the province, he is fuddenly attacked by Bainski (60), a Moldavian, related to Petreczeicus, and taken, and carried into Poland; where, being closely imprisoned, he not long after dies at

Warsaw.

LXXXIX. In his room the Turks appoint Demotrius Cantaguzenus (61) a Demotrius man indeed or very noble extraction, but weak, and more proper for times of Contember peace than of war; for which reason he was soon after deprived of his dignity, in his room. as will be remembered in its place.

XC Having thus given an account of what passed this year between the two What passed armies in the field, the course of the history requires a narrative of what was trans-during the acted in the mean time at the Othman court. The Sultan, having fent the Vizir upon fiege of Ve the expedition, ranged the plains of Thrace and Greece, and, confiding in the prudence and fortune of his Vizir, diverted himself with hunting about Despot Toiles. and knew nothing of what was doing in the army and flace, but as informed by mellengers from the Vizir. By him being affured that Vienna, now reduced to the last extremity, could hold out but a few days longer, and nothing was to

#### Annotations.

(59) the Moldavians] This was not the fault of all the Moldavians, for all the old and principal Barons, when they found themselves unable to relift Petreczeicus, had retired to the mountains, and into Walschia. but it was done by some of the younger, who, for want of experience, had been allured by the deceitful promifes of Patreczeicus and the Poles, with which they had, though in vain, endeavoured to impose upon the rest.

(60) Bainfki,] A Moldavian by extraction, and a relation of Petreczeicus, after whose death he returned to Moldavia, and was appointed by my father Serdar, that is, general of the army beyond the Pruth.

(61) Demetrius Cantacurenus, The fon of Michael Cantacuzenus, of the Conftantinopolitan family of the Cantacuzen: In his youth he obtained the place of master of

the wardrobe in Walachia, from whence being turned out, for what reason I know not, he was fome years a jeweller at Con-fiantinople: at last, having made a prefent to Sultan Mahomet at the circumcifion of his fons, of a filver Shadievan, or fountain, which kept running twenty-four hours together, he was advanced by him to the principality of Moldavia; and being deprived of it foon after, he was reftored again to the fame dignity, after the impriformant of Ducas At length, being deposed by Arnest Soliman Pasta, Seraskier of Sulftria, for his unskilfulness in melitary affairs, and fent to Conftantinople, he was at his arrival to roughly received by the Caimacan, that the fright brought a Polypus in his neck, of which he died within three days in prison. The Moldaviani rank him among their cruel princes.

4 L



win at he felted from the enemy, who were to terrified by the Othmen's rms, that they which there had not only abandones the fiege of Kyanar basonarile Musulman army approachand the soncessed their forces behind mampater attail finance from the city; the than moved nearer to Confiamemente, and refinished to hunt in the country about inticity, with delign, if he should macive the welcome news, of the taking the metropolis of Germany, he might bean the neighbourhood of his capitals and selebrate his axiumph with the greater pomp and magnificence. But when he board of the defeat of his army with so great a slaughter, he returned with reincleance to Configuration in more to folemnize the trumph, with which he had till then flattened himself, but to assist the state in this distress by his presence, and refrain the feditions, by whom, he knew, the common people might calify he drawn into an infurrection on the prefent occasion.

The Vizir's

XCL Not long after letters are brought to him from the Vizir, escaped to exercise to the Bude, in which was a particular account of the transactions of the whole campain. He seprefented the labours he had fullained to defend and enlarge the Empire, and with what vigour he had endeavoured to subdue so strong and obstinate a city a that the prosperous beginning of the siege had given him great hopes of taking the city, and made him confident, that in adhort time he should be able so offer at to his Majesty, with the whole Empire of the West; but that afterwards he was deprived of those advantages, not by the enemy's arms, but by the arcifices and treachery of his officers; and especially of Ibrahim Pasha, Begleibeg of Bade, who was the first mover of the stege of Vienna; but afterwards changing his opinion, because he either perceived, if the city was taken, the Beglerbeg of Buda would not be so considerable as before, or aspired himself to the dignity of Prime Vizir, not only refused to obey his orders, and opposed all his counsels, but, by his example, encouraged the soldiers and officers to be negligent in their duty. That he had borne all these things, being averse to the death of a man illustrious on fo many accounts in the Othman Empire, but that this unfeafonable elemency had, proved the occasion of the defeat. For, having given him the command of the left wing, at the first charge of the Germans, before the battle could be faid to be begun, he ran away with his troops in diforder and thereby gave the enemy an opportunity of flanking and defeating the reft of the army. That at last, being closely pressed in their retreat by the enemy, . when he had found the Beglerbeg, who obtunately purfued his own as well as the Empire's ruin, could not otherwise be reclaimed, and was apprehensive he would afford the enemies a greater victory than the past, he was forced to deyote him as a victim to the fafety of the flate, and thought it a figual fervice to the Sultan and Empire, to remove a man who had been the cause of so great a misfortune to both. That he had so firm a confidence in the I imperor's justice, that he could not imagine he would impute to his fault or negligence what had been done by means of the disobedience of others.

He defires pardon, and promifes Via the next

XCII. He also defires the Sultan to give him again the command of his armics in the next campain, and leave to recruit his forces, by which means if he did not fubdue all Germany, with Vienna, he would voluntarily fubmit his head to the fword or the bow-firing. With these letters he had sent very nich prefents (62), not only to the Valide-Sultana, but likewise to all the officers of the court.

ANNOTATIONS.

(62) rich prefents,] By thefe, as the ftrongest arguments of his innocence, Cara Mustapha would have cleared himself, and thrown the fault upon others, but in vain. It is faid, upon this occasion, that a Jew, gamed Connorto Anacanogly, who was kept by Care Mustapha, uttered a witty say wery expressive of the pannic the Turks position with. For being asked by gat Buda, whether he had any thing of value to fend as a prefent to the Sultan, he answered, he had nothing at Buda, having left his most valuable effects at Belge ade. The Vizir offered him five hundred lightarmed horse, called Befble, to fetch them, and keep him from being plundered by the wandering bands of Turks or Tartars, the Jew replied, there is no occasion for so many, for three men are sufficient to secure me, because I have a Shapka, or German Cap, the very fight of which is enough to fright the largest bands of plunderers out

court, whom he knew to be in favour with the Emperor, by whose representations the Sultan was to fully perswaded of the Vizir's innoctince, that he not only declared, Ibrabim Pasta and the rest, put to death near Think, to be justly punished, but also confirmed Cara Mustapha Pasta in the Vicinihip,

and the command of his new army.

XCIII. The Vizur receiving these letters takes courage, and laying affect his The Visur fears, wholly applies himself to the augmenting of his forces, and making all being con-the necessary preparations for an early campain. Perhaps he would have freed Samut ter-himself from danger, wiped out the distrace he had received, and receivered his bent attempts to put other former authority, if he had not, out of too great a confidence of his power; pathas to been too halty to re-cliablish it. He had put to death, as I have observed, with death. out the Sultan's knowledge, Ibrahim Pasha, Beglerbeg of Buda, with some others privy to his designs, and the Sultan had approved it by his letters. There still remained some, whom the Vizir had not ventured to punish with the rest, . for fear the great number of executions should raise a suspicion in the Sulran. He afterwards allured them with promifes to hinder their accusing him. However he did not think it prudent to fuffer them to live, fince he would always liave reason to sear, they might be bribed by his enemies to discover what had passed between them. But some pretenses were necessary to be alledged for putting them to death, because all those, who had been the occasion of the Vienna-defeat, had already been executed, and it feemed unjust to call jagain to account persons, who had been acquitted. As he could not find or invent any plausible excules, he privately intimates to the Sultan by letters, that the Aga of the Janizaries, and other Bashas, whom he named, had again showed themselves disobedient to his orders, and made use of his elemency to them, in pardoning their ill conduct at the siege of Vienna, not to correct, but to consirm them-icives in their obstinate resolution to ruin the Empire. His Majesty had indeed granted him the power of punishing whatever officers he found guilty; but he was unwilling to use that power, left his enemies should take occasion from thence to accuse him wrongfully, and therefore defired to know his Majesty's pleafure about them.

XCIV. Though this representation was very plausible, it found the Othman The treachery court to much changed, that the Vizir, inflead of obtaining his defire, was imprudently the occasion of his own ruin. For there was transmitted to the court of the Visit by the other officers, who had been present at the siege of Vienna, a more faith- are detected tul account of the transactions, whereby the artifices and designs of the Vizir Neither had the contents of this last letter been so closely were discovered concealed, but that the patrons of the persons accused, were informed of the danger of their friends, and had an opportunity of using their endeavours to save them. Belides an unhappy mellenger was arrived with the news of the taking of Strigonium +, and the deteat of the Turkish forces at Barean, and acquainted + Gran both the Sultan and the great men, what fatal confequences were likely to attend that misfortune, affirming, the flaughter was much greater than was believed, or

the Vizir defired they should know.

XCV. The Sultan being thus disposed to the Vizir's destruction, is constantly The courters belieged by his enemies; fometimes they relate the seditions expressions of the run of the foldiers and people for delaying Cara Mustapha's punishment; sometimes repre- Vizir fent the necessity of deposing him, though he were innocent, because the change of Vizirs usually proves of great service in times of missortune; sometimes describe the Vizit's treachery and artifices in such lively colours, that at last the Sultan determines to tend Capujilar Kiebajasi + with the Chatisberif into Hun- + : . The gary, to put Cara Mustapha to death.

# Annotations.

heels Whereupon the Vizir is reported to " to flight, fear even the Jews." fay with a figh. Our common faying is

of their wits, and make them take to their very true; " Those whom God has put

XCVI. The



The Kieheid finds the Visit in Behrade intent upon recruiting his arthe and aduling with the Age of the Janishriet, feizes him in his own house, and showing him the Salten's manufact on the ord day of Mubarrem, in the year 1095, orders him, who made no resistance, and affirmed he was crowned with another visit many redson, so be finangled by four executioners, and carries his head to Canhis come to Gentlemple. The Sultan appears in his room Care Erration Passa (63), who
his room to desire been Canadam of Canadaminagle, and delivering the feat of the
Empire, advices him, ther warned by the face of his predecessor, he fround serve
the Octoors Empire, with greater fidelity. But the reason to take a severe revenge of the enemy for the diffrace it had fuffered. But the imprudent conduct of Core Malaba Pala had miled soo many enemies for the Othman Empire now in its decline to contend with. He had conceived to great an opinion of the power of the Taske, that when he reloved upon the expedition to France, he was fo far from drawing off the reft of the Christian Princes from the enemy's interests to his own, that he offered them many injuries, as if he wanted to provoke them to declare war against the Others Empire.

The occasio of the breach of the peace public of Ve-

XCVII. Petro Ciurani, as the Venetaen ambassador or Baili, was arrived at Conflantinople with two men of war and three merchant-ships, and upon his landing had ordered the goods, which he had brought, to be carried to his house. Giamerskehi\* (64) suspecting from the quantity, that the effects belonged to some merchants, and not to the ambassador, visits the ships, and upon examination, finding that a great part of the freight was affigned to merchants, who refused to pay the customs, conficetes them contrary to the rights of ambaffadors, and orders them to be carried into the Sultan's warehouses. The Bash endeavours at fest by perswasion to recover what was taken from him, showing from publick records, that it was the privilege not only of his predecessors, but of all foreign ambassadors, to bring to Canstantinople custom-free whatever merchandize they pleased, as well on the merchant's account, as their own. But at last, when he perceives, words were of no effect, and the will of the Turks was a law, he promises the Geumrukchi\* a large sum of money, and so redeems the shoe, which had been seized. A sew days after, a Venetian nobleman, who had been formerly taken prisoner at sea, makes his escape to the Venetian ships. which were fent to convoy home Merofini the former Baile. But these ships being detained some time on account of the Baile's indisposition, the master of the Veneties is informed, that his flave was on board with intent to escape. Whereupon he petitions the Vizir by an Arzubal (65), that he might be resto-

# ANNOTATIONS

(63) Cara Ibrabim ] This man was at first Kietchudabeg to Cara Mustapha Pasha, and afterwards, when he went upon the Obegriman\* expedition, was made Caimeran. In these posts he behaved in a haughty and turbulent manner, so that both Turks and Christians were displessed at his advancement. But after he was made Vizir, taught perhaps by his predecessor's sad fate, he affected, contrary to his former custom, to make himself popular, and to be very easy of access: And at court, he took particular oure never to be far from the Sultan, and to remove from the courtiers all occafion of flandering him, by which means he would have long remained possessed of his honour, had not fortune showed herfalfact that time an enemy to the Turkyla affairs, and concealing his vertues, exhibit-

Giumrukebi" ] or Giumruk Emsni,

the receiver of the customs, of whom an account has been given in Part I. name feems to be derived from the modern Greek word mopephings, which I take to be a corruption of the Italian word Commerci-

(65) Arzubal] as much as to fay, the opening of the cause. So those petitions are called, that are presented to the Vizir in the Druen about judiciary matters. They must be penned so concisely, though the cause be never so great or intricate, as not to fill up above half an octavo page, for the Vizir's resolution, and the consul-tations and sentence of the Judges must be writ on the other part of the page. For this reason it is not every Turk, though ve-ry learned in other respects, that can draw up an Arzubal; but there are Arzubalchi\* appointed for that purpose, who keep their offices near the Vizir's court, and are always ready to be hired. Whoever has a

red to him. The Bostamis Pasts is sent to examine all the ships; and if the captive be found, to feize and reftore him to his mafter. When the Bostonia Passa comes, the captain of the ship denies he had any fugitive on board, and upon the Bostant's infisting to search, opposes him by force; however numbers have the advantage of courage, the ship is searched, the captive found and carried away, and the failors who had taken arms, are partly killed, and partly left under strict guard in the ship. The Sultan hearing a Venetion ship had presumed in the very port of Constantinople to use arms, detains both the ambassadors, Courans and Morosins, and results to discharge them, till they had paid several puries to redeem the failors, and atone for their crime.

XCVIII. The republic of Venice being informed of what had happened at The Venition Constantinople, as Vienna was at that time besieged, and the event doubtful, take escapes from no notice of the affront, but when they hear of the defeat of the Turks at Vs. Conflantinople enna, they boldly demand fatisfaction, which being refused, they make an alliance with the Emperor of Germany and King of Poland, and proclaim war against the Othman Port. The Venetian ambassador delivers the solemn declaration to the Caimacan, and afterwards changing his habit flies from Constantinople.

XCIX So great and unexpected a blow firuck the Turks with almost mex- This renders preffible terror. Necessity required them to employ their whole strength against the Turk exthe Germans, and Poles, and they faw that no less forces would be able to op-easy, pole the Venetians The Venetian army indeed could not be fo great; but because it was doubtful what course they would take, it was requisite to fortify all the maritime places with juch garrifons, as would be fufficient to form a There was no fleet except fix Sultanas, and those old and leaky, nor any hopes of procuring one foon, because the Hungarian expedition would employ all the money in the treasury.

C For these regions Cara Ibrahim Pasha uses all his endeavours to pacify the The new Vi-Venetians, declares the injuries complained of, were not done by the Sultan's to folien the order, but through the avarice of his predecessor, and promises to restore what releasments of had been feized, if they would defift from the war.

CI. But the Venetians were deat to these flattering promises, and declared, Burm van, for which rea they could not break their alliance with the Christian Princes; that they had hi- ion the Turks therto juffered injuries enough, but now the time of revenging them was come, prepare forces The Vizir feeing the florm which threatned the Othman Empire on every fide, against all their enomies. cannot be discreed, applies his whole care and abilities to support it in the best manner possible. He appoints Shartan Ibrahim Pasha, a man of approved valour, Seraskier againft the Germans, and Aineje (66) Soliman Pafba againft Poland, and orders the high admiral to observe the motions of the Venetians. He himielt continues at Confiant mople under pretence of indipolition, and gives particular directions to the generals, that they should faithfully inform him of the progress of affairs, but acquaint the Sultan only with their good successes, and conceal the bad as carefully as they could.

CII While these things are transacting at Constantinople, the imperial army The Imperiaunder the command of the Duke of Lorrain in the month of Jemazzul achyr grade and Vaof the year 1095, marched into Hungary, and about the end of that month be- cia, and repell

### ANNOTATIONS.

cause to lay before the Vizir, applies to them, nay the very Reis Effendi, or High-Chancellor of the Empire, though a very good fcribe, does not venture to write an Arzubal, but fends an account of his cause to one of the Arzabalabi\* to have it drawn up.

(70) Aineji Soliman ] A Bosnian, born of Christian Parents, but educated in his youth in the Mahometan Religion, and brought up in the court of the Kioprili's. He was fuccessively Talbischi\*, Kiebaia, Seraskier of Baladagy, and at last Prime Vizir. The Nº. 13.

name of Ameji or the Deceiful, was given A. C 1684. him, upon account of the many artifices he used to deceive both friends and enemies, in the fame manner as Ulyffer was ftyled by He had an uncle, a Bosman Archimandrite, a member of the Greek Church, who was in great efteem with John and Peter, Czara of Mufcouy, because he had taken great pains to bring over many in Servis and Bulgaria to their party.

4 M

fieged



Sincel Vicegrade, which in a flow days is taken; for the garnion despairing to queleve the city, had actised into the caffie, where they defend themselves ionger; but when the cannon begin to play, finding no succours appear, on the act of the anough Rejob, they deliver up the castle on conditions to the Duke of Larsain; as they are marching from thence to Vacia, they are met near that city by the Begletbeg of Buds with his troops, who was sent before by the Serudier Shaitan Itrabius Passa, so annuse the Germans, and retard, if possible, their further progress. As soon as he appeared, the impersal troops fall upon him with such sury, that he is obliged to retire with great loss, and leave the country open to their conquests. The enemy being routed, the Impersalists besiege Vacia, and press the city with various engines and continual assaults. Budan Passa marches so the assistance of the besieged, and being reinforced, twice attacks the impersal camp, is twice reputied, and having lost sistem thousand men, returns from whence he came. The governor of Vacia seeing those deseated from whom he expected relief, surpenders the city upon the same conditions, which had been granted to Vicegrade.

The Imperalifs take Pertum, and befiege Buda, but without fuccess.

CIII. These with the neighboring towns being subdued, the Duke of Lorram marches with his army to Buds, and on the 1st of the month Shaban encamps under the very walls. The first attack is upon Pestum, a town opposite to Bude on the other fide the Danube, which being taken in a few hours, the Capital of Hungary itself is closely besieged. While the Germans are intent upon the siege, the Sereckier Shassan Ibrahim Pasha advances with the whole Othman sarmy, and endeavours to break through the lines, with which the Imperialifts had fortified their camp, and at the same time orders a body of Janizaries and Spales to attack the enemy another way, and try whether they could penetrate through their camp, and throw supplies into the garrison. But being repulled as often as they ventured to attack, he delifts, and pitches his tents opposite to the enemy, commanding his men to annoy them with continual skirmishes and incursions, and especially to endeavour to throw in all the succours possible into the city. But all these efforts would not have relieved the city, since the Germens affaulted it with great bravery, and never suffered the enemy in their attacks to retire without loss, if the garrison had not, (whether through accident or treachery, is unknown,) discovered the mines, which were defigned to demodify great part of their walls, suft as the beliegers had determined to turround the city; and removed the gunpowder. For the generals of the imperial army, who had hoped to take the city before the Scraskier should be reinforced, perceiving, they must now begin their work again, call a council of the icst of the officers, and ask their opinion, whether it is proper to continue the fiege or nor. Almost all advise to raise it, because it seem'd too adventurous, at the same time to beliege the city, and contend with a superior army, and it appeared from the enemy's case at the siege of Vienna, how great loss the army may sustain by fuch counsels. Prudence thus moderating their ardor, and the Turks making no opposition, on the 23d of Zyleade, after four months siege, the Germans being weakened, retire from the city with their baggage, having fent their larger cannon before; whereupon the Turks, who had been kept in suspence between hope and fear by that expedition, refume their courage, and enjoy a calm after the appearance of so great a form.

The Imperialifts gain two vactories over the Turks.

CIV. In the mean time Count Lefley, who was fent by the Duke of Lorrain with a party into Sclavonia, had befieged Wirrowit, a confiderable fortress in that country, descated the Tarkifb auxiliaries in two battles, and assaulted the walls with such sury, that the garrison was obliged to surrender the 23d of the month Shabam. About the same time Tokels is routed by the Imperialits at Eperies in Upper Hungary, and his cabinet and baggage are taken by the con-

querors.

CV. While the Seraskier of Hungary is thus engaged with the Germans with countries fortune, and greater loss than advantage, Amejs Soliman Pasha with better



better success fights the Poiss at Babadagy (67), where having allembled his army, he passes the Danube near Sakeza, and hearing the Poiss wedge did not yet appear, thinks it more proper to fettle the affairs of Moddawin and Walachie, than march any farther, fince the present situation of things rendered it more necessary to defend than inlarge the borders of the Empire. These two provinces were at that time governed by the two Cantaenzem's, Moldands by Demetrius, and Walachia by Serban (68). The former being a weak man, and unskilled in warlike affairs, and not having fufficient authority to refram his people in times of confusion, was thought unqualified for the administration of his principality; and the Seraskier was diffident of the latter, because he found he kept a correspondence by letters with the Emperor of Germany, and especially with the Czar of Ruffia.

CVI. He resolves therefore to divest them both of their authority; but being He confirm bribed by Serban with a large sum of money, conceals his treachery, and, time- Principality of gining the danger from those parts was very remote, consirms him in his govern. Walachia, ment. But he deprives Demetrius of his dignity, because the times required a posed Deme-Prince of greater experience; and, with the content of all the Nobles, appoints irini Cantum Constantine Cantemir (73), Scrdar (74) of the Province in his room. But, lest zonii, ad

he famount Canto-MITT ST BOS

### Annotations.

(67) Babadagy ] It is the feat of the Batha of Silistria, who is appointed to defend the northern provinces of the Empire, and under whose jurisdiction are all the countries between Mount Hamus, the Euxine Sea, the Danube, and the Tyras. Babadagy fignifies etymologically the Faiber-Mountain, because, opposite to the town, there is a mountain higher than the rest. There are found in the neighbourhood of this city, eagles called Gsujigien by the Turks and Tartars, which are larger than all other birds, and in fo great plenty, that the bow-makers all over Turky and Tartary are from thence furnished with teathers for their arrows, though there are not above twelve quills and those in their tails that are fit for that use, which are commonly fold for a Leonine. They are reckoned better for that purpose than all others, and a skilful archer does not care to use any other. If a man has feveral arrows in his quiver made with other feathers, and but one amongst them fledged with a quill of one of these eagles, that one remaining untouched, will eat all the rest to the wood. And it seems have been upon account of this strength, that the Tariarian name of Ginjigien was given to that kind of eagles.

(72) Serban,] a magnanimous Prince of the Imperial family of the Cantacuzeni, and full of Christian zeal. After his obtaining the Principality of Walachia, upon the translation of Ducas the Rumelian to Moldavia, he bent all his cares and endeavours to drive entirely out of Europe the Turkish tyranny, which was already brought very low by the Germans. To that end, he had not only fent to Vunna his own brother, George Cantacuzenus, as ambassador to Leopold Emperor of Germany; but also made a close alliance with John and Peter, Czars of Muscovy, by the Bosman Archimandrite

uncle to the Vizir Soliman Pasha, and had obtained a promise from them, that after Constantinople was taken, he, as being descended from the Imperial family, should be declared Emperor of the Graeks. He had moreover made very great preparations, caused thirty-eight cannons to be call, and hired an army of twenty four thousand Servians, Sciavonians, and Hirvati, which he kept affembled in the woods and mountains. The Turks knew it perfectly well, but as they were sufficiently harasted by the German armies, they diffembled their reientment, and durft not attack fo powerful a man, till he had publickly declared against them. But that Christian zeal, which the fear of an enemy's power could not extinguish, became unferviceable and destructive to its author. For Constantine Stolnicus, the brother of Serban, and his fifter's fon, Brancovan, seeing they could not, by any perfualions, divert the Prince from his purpofe, are thought, by an unheard of crime. to have porsoned him at a feast, that they might live peaceably, and without any difturbance in their own effares. He left one fon, Prince George, who lives at present in Transylvama, under the protection of the Emperor of Germany; and four daughters, Smaragda, who died foon after her marriage, Maria, wife of Matthew Balaczan,

Caffandra, whom I married, and Balaffa, (73) Conftantine Cantenur, Sirnamed the Old, Prince of Moldavia eight years. His father, Theodorus Cantemer, being killed by the Bujak Tartars, he retired in his youth into Poland, and ferved for feventeen years in the armies of Uladiflaus and Cafimir, Kings of Poland, where he gave no contemptible proofs of his courage, and was upon that account made a colonel by Cafimir. After the conclusion of the war between Sweden and Poland, he went to



he should be served in his battles with the Poles, as the Sultan was at Chesin. to featre Cantemir's fidelity, he fends his eldeft fon, Antiochus, and four of his principal Barons, as hoftages to Gonffantmople.

The King of CVII. The Seraskier being detained by these affairs longer than he expected, John III, King of Poland, on the twelfth of the month Ramazan, affembles he his forces at Buchaeh \*, and, before any such design was suspected, at the first as-" fault, takes the castie of Quancee, situated on the Tyras, opposite to Chotsu, and about two hours diffant from Cammuec. Then he attempts to build a bridge over the Tyras, to transport his troops, animated by this success, into Moldavia. But when the bridge was just finished, the Seraskier advances with his army, and not only prevents the intended irruption into Moldavia, but likewise passing the Tyras, surprizes the King, and shuts him up in his camp, orders the Tartars to fet fire to the standing corn about them, and to cut off food from the cattle, while he with his forces daily harraftes the Poles, and gives them no time to rest or draw up their army, The King, finding things desperate, escapes first out of the camp with a few attendants, and is foon after followed by the officers. who, having burnt their baggage, and thrown their warlike engines into a lake, lead home the remains of the army, not without great loss.

The faccess

CVIII. The Venetians had much better success against the enemies of the Cross in the Adviatic sea. They begin the war at Morlacchi in Dalmatia, subdue Urane, Obrowaszo, and Scardona, burn Dernis, and take the cassic of Duare by stratagem. The Venetian fleet, commanded by Morofina, who imrendered Candia to the Turks, fails the twenty-fixth of the month Jemaziul activr. and arriving at Leucas, lays close fiege to the city. Bekiraga, governor of the castic, after feventeen days defence, seeing no succours appear, delivers up the city to the Venetians the fixth of the month Ramazan, and passes over with his men into the Continent. The island being subdued, the Venetians lend part

#### Annotations.

George Gicas, Prince of Walachia, and was by him promoted to the office of Chaush \* Spatareft. After George's first revolt to the Germans, being by good fortune parted from him, he retired to Eustathius Dahiza, Prince of Moldavia, who gave him his father's place, namely the government of Kiegieczensian Codri, and shortly after appointed him Verme of Barlad The same places he enjoyed under Prince Ducas, who fucceeded Dabiza, and having stissed the rebellion raised by the Moldavians against Ducas, he was, for his good fervices honoured with the dignity of Great Kluczery, or commissioner of the provisions, and appointed Calauz, or conductor of the Moldavian army, by Sultan Mahomet IV, in the expedition against Cammee. After the depolition of Duces, he policified the fame employment under Petreczecus, and having freed the Sultan's concubines from the attempt made upon them by the Poles, he received great commendations for it from the chief eunuch, and obtained from the Vizir the promise of the principality. Upon the revolt of Petreczecus to the Poles at Chotin, Cantemir was of great fervice to his fucceffor, Demetrius Cantacuzenus, in securing the Moldovians to his interest, and was rewarded for it with the dignity of Serdar, which he to enjoyed under Ducas, after his reentition. But this Prince growing jealous D Proprie

of him, and creating him a great deal of trouble and vexation, he retired into H aluchia to Serbanus Cantacuzenus When Ducas was taken by the Poles, Cantemo returned again into Moldavia, but though he hid obtained a fignal victory against the Poliinares were laid privately and or enly for him by the new Prince, Demetries Cartair. zenus, nay the Seriskier alio, Solman Pafoa, was bribed with thirty purfes to take iway his life for fome feigned caute Being informed of it by the becaskier himfelt, he fled again into Walachia, and having demonstrated the falshood of Demetrius's accusations against him, he was appointed Prince of Moldavia by the Seraskier. He afterwards gave a fresh proof of his valour at the battle of Bosan, and broke through the first, ranks of the Poles, which brought him into great favour at the Othman court. Having enjoyed his Principality eight years wanting three months, he died March 23, 1693, and left two fons, Antiochus and Demetrius, and two daughters, Roxana and Elizabetha.

(74) Serdar,] the general, in Moldavia, of the forces appointed to defend, from the Cosaks and Tartars, the borders that he between the rivers Hierasus and Tyras. He is next in degree to the Hetman, being almost the same as the Heiman Polny amongst the Poles.

οf

of their forces, under the command of Strafolds, into Acariania, a province of Epirus, and oblige Venizine and Seromero to submit. As they are proceeding further, they are met by Seffer Aga with four thousand Turks, who endeavours to stop the progress of their arms; but he being defeated, the inhabitants of the country voluntarily submit to the conqueror, and promise to pay tribute. In the mean while, the rest of the army had passed into the Morea, and so siercely assaulted Perevesa, that on the eighth day of the month Ramazan, Mehemed Effendi, who commanded the garrison, was obliged to deliver up the castle to the Venetians. Besides these successes, there came an account from Tine, an island in the Archipelago, that several Turkss galleys, sent to seize it, had been repulfed with great lois.

CIX. These misfortunes grieved not the Othman court so much, as the raising New expedi of the fiege of Buda, and their success in Poland, gave them joy. For the power furth against of the Venetians did not feem so great, but that it would be easy to recover the enemies their losses, when once the German and Polish armies were repulsed, and the borders of the Empire secured on that side. To this end, Cara Ibrahim Pasha appoints the generals, who had before been to fuccelsful, Scraskiers against the Germans and Poles; and fends only a small army, with a fleet, against the

Venetians

CX. Mean time, the Germans had closely belieged Vywar during the whole The Imperia winter, and so deprived it of provision, that the famine destroyed more of the gar. Vyuar, and rifon than the fwoid had done in a month's flege. The city, thus weakened, on the the Turki first day of Shahan in the year 1096, is assaulted in form, and the slege carried Gran on with such vigour, that the garrison a few days after was obliged to abandon the outer works. Upon the report of this, the Scraskier Sheitan Ibrahim Pa. A C 1685. the haftens to the relief of the city, and finding it dangerous to attack an army so strongly intrenched, has recourse to his usual artifices, and besieges at once Gran and Vicegrade, hoping by this means to draw off the enemy's forces from Vywar. And the fortune of war feem'd indeed to favour him; for in a few days he not only recovered Vicegrade, but to diffress'd Gran, not yet sufficiently repaired fince the last siege, that it seemed in no less danger than Vywar.

CXI But before the Scraskier could finish what he had begun, the Duke of The Imperia-Lorrain leaving fixteen thouland men to continue the fiege of Vywar, marches lift defeat the with the rest of the army against him, and on the 2d of the month Ramazan, by altertagem. advances within fight of the Turksfb camp, The Scraskier feeing the enemy's approach, and imagining he had gain'd his point, immediately abandons the fiege of Gran, and draws up his army so advantageously, that the enemy could not furround, nor attack him in front or flank without great danger. The right wing was defended by the rapid waters of the Danube; the left by a ridge of mountains, which extended for feveral leagues. Behind his army was the road to Buda, which secured it from the want of provision; and the front was covered with wide and difficult morafies, which must be passed by those, who would attack the Othman army. The Scraskier thus fituated continues four days without motion, either by delay to elude the attempts of the enemy, or to destroy them in their passage, if they should venture to attack him. But the Duke of Lorrain perceiving the Seraskier's delign, and confidering that his army could not without extreme danger to all Christendom, be exposed in such places. where they would have nature rather than men to contend with, counterfeits a . flight, founds a retreat, and in the night of the 14th day of the month Ramazan retires with his whole camp. The Turks imagining the Germans were flying in earnest, boldly follow them, and though often repulfed by the Imperialits, continue all night to attack them as they retreat. The Imperialists proceed farther, and leave a space for the enemy, both to pass the morasses, and open their front. At last, when they perceive more are passed over than can return without loss, they halt and so iuriously attack the Turks, who follow them in confusion, that they, who before imagined they should utterly destroy the Christian forces, now retire to their camp with greater precipitation than they came. The Elector of Bavaria. who commanded one of the wings, in order to a more exact observation of N. XV.

the defigns of the Tarks, follows them with his troops in the path, they had made over the moraffes; and the Duke of Lorrass takes the same course on the other side, though neither knew the other's intention. Upon this the Tarks being seized with a panic, notwithstanding all the perswasions and threats of the Seraskier, before they engaged, take to slight in such consusion, that the Janizaries killed and unhorsed their own cavalry to sly with more speed, and a greater number of the Othmans were killed in the slight by their companions than by the enemy. The camp, baggage, treasure, provision, and a great quantity of warlike stores sell a prey to the conquerors.

The Imperialists take Py-

CXII. After the battle, the imperialists return to the siege of Vywar, and on the 19th of the month Ramazan, assault on every side the breaches made by their cannon, and with the loss of a few men take the city. Several thousands of the garisson with the governor are slain, the rest made prisoners, or forced into the river; and the city affords a rich booty.

The Sciafkier attempting polec meets with a repulfe

CXIII. The Turks are struck with such terror at the sudden taking of this fortress, that not only the garrisons of Novigrade and Vicegrade abandon those cities at the report of the Germans approach, but the Seraskier himself, though in other respects a man of invincible courage, and a veteran soldier, sent Ahmed Chelebi\*, one of his officers, twice to the Imperial general, to try whether any peace might be made with the Emperor. But, as the present situation of affairs promised more and greater victories, and the Seraskier seemed to desire peace, in order to divert the danger which threatened him on account of his ill success at Gran, or to amuse the enemy, rather than with a sincere intention, the officer, after two denials, returned to the Seraskier without any thing done.

Va 10118 fuc-

CXIV. While the duke of Lorrain was yet engaged in the flege of Vywar, Count Lefly with a small body of troops had laid waste all Sclavonia, routed the Pasha of Poshega, and on the 12th of the month Ramazan, burnt great part of the bridge over the wide moralles of the Drave, and taken Effec, but not being able to subdue the castle, plundered the town, and abandoned it again. Schulesus had equal success in Lower Hungary; and on the 10th of the month Ramazan after a long fiege obliged Epiries, a city of Tekeli's party, to furrender, and took Tokas with several other castles and towns, which were gairison'd by the rebels. Mercs and Heuster joining their forces had subdued Zolnok, Ibrains, Kalo, little Waradin, St Nicholas's church, and Saraifa. Tekeli's party being every where routed, retire to Callovia, and firongly fortifying that city, determine to wait there for the troops promited by the Turks, and to fuffer the utmost extremities, rather than submit to the Emperor of Germany Caprara, who commanded the troops of Schule, foon after, on the 3d of the month Zylcade, beguns to affault the city, and having dug a trench round it, cannonades the walls.

Telele is taken by flortigem, and put in chain to be tent to Conflantinople

CXV Tekels leeing the danger of his troops, fends frequent messengers to the Pasha of Waradin for his assistance; which the Pasha promites, and desires Tekels to come to him, and advice him, how the city might be best relieved. Tekels, putting too great a considence in him, comes to Waradin with seven thousand of his countrymen. Before he reached the city, he is met by the Pasha, who received him with great honour, and desires him to enter the city with his principal officers, and quarters his soldiers in the neighbourhood, where he provides for them. When Tekels came into the town, he is invited to dinner by the Pasha, which being over, a Turkish officer, attended by several Janizaries enters the room, and shews the Sultan's mandate by which he was commanded to put Tekels in chains, and send him to Constantinople. Tekels, who was come as a guesty not being able, on account of the smalness of his retinue, to make any resistance, is instantly carried away, bound, and kept under a strong guard. His attendants, struck with the novelty and suddenness of the thing, stand motionless, and not knowing what may be their own sate, dare not ask the reason of the even open their mouths.

Takeli was removed, and bid to lay aside his sears, and take upon him the

command of the Hungarian forces, till the Sultan's farther orders, and to shew a due fidelity to the Turks/b empire, assuring himself, that he served a master, who cannot only punish the disobedient and treacherous but also amply reward the faithful.

CXVII. Petrozzi artfully conceals his resentment, and answers the Pasha, He persuades that the he knew not Tekeli's crime, and had believed him a faithful servant of the Hungarians to islicit the Sultan, yet he cannot doubt but the Sultan had a very important, though the imperor unknown reason, to treat him in that manner. However this affair would of Grimany! not shake the fidelity of himself or Hungarians, for though, ever since, they had committed themselves to the Othman protection, Tekels had indeed been their commander, yet they have acknowledged no other fovereign in the world but the Emperor of the Othmans. These assurances he gave the Pasha of his fidelity; but, at his return to the camp with the rest of Tekeli's attendants, he periuaded the Hungarians to a very different conduct. He represented to the officers what had happened at Waradin, and how treacherously Tekels was drawn into the fnare. He adds, " It is in vain to expect the refloration of liberty to " Hungary from men, who know not what liberty is, and have no other rule " of their actions, but the arbitrary will of their governors. For this reason, "God oppoles their deligns, and punishes, not only them, but their allies." For feveral years past, the whole army of the Emperor of Germany, though " diverted by no other wars, had in vain used their utmost efforts in Hungary; " but now, even a small body of Germans, while the rest are engaged with the " Turks beyond the Danube, have, within two years, subdued almost all the "kingdom except Callovia They should therefore consider what would be " most for the interest of themselves and the kingdom, whether to continue in " exile, and not only ice the devastation of their country, but be perpetually " in fear of prisons and chains, or implore the mercy of the Emperor of Ger-" many, and embrace the annelly offered them."

CXVIII. This advice being approved by them all, Petronus with the whole Petronus goes army, goes to Caprara, full engaged in the fiege of Calforna, and promiting fi and offers to delity to the Emperor of Germany in his own and his countrymen's name, joins furrender Cof. his torces to the Emperor's, and orders them to make incursions upon the ene- free to him The inhabitants of Cullovia, hearing this, the obitinacy of the garrison is to much abated, that they immediately fend depuries to the Imperial camp, beg pardon for their crime, and promite future obedience to the Emperor. Their offers being accepted, the deputies return to the city, and represent to the inhabitants the Emperor's clemency. The gairifon being informed of this on the 26th of the month Zylcade, open the gates of the city, take an oath of fidelity, and are placed among the other imperial troops, and after all their labours, gniov fome repote

CXIX But the Poles meet with a very different fate in Moldavia. For the The King of king, taught by the ill success of the last expedition, that nothing could be done sectionally enfor the advantage of Poland in those countries, unless he could engage the inha- deavours to bitants in his interests; during the whole winter, he tries by various arts to gain Prace of Mel-Constantine Cantemer, Prince of Moldavia, and sollicits him by frequent letters down to his and mellengers to revols from the Turks. Cantemer answers the King, " he is interests " not only obliged by the religion he professes; but even prompted by the " ftrongest inclination, to venture his all in subduing the enemy of the cross, " if he could but lee, that by his revolt the least advantage would accrue to " Christendom. But fince the present situation of affairs is such, that probably " his revolt will be rather prejudicial than ferviceable to him, whose part he " should take, he is forced to defer the execution of his intentions to a more " favorable opportunity For fince, not only his own eldest fon, but likewise " the fons of the principal nobles are kept as hostages at Constantinople, he " thinks, though himself should consent, the states of the province cannot be " perfuaded, to fuffer the lofs, not only of their estates, but, what is generally " more grievous, of their children, to abandon their country, and to live in

" exile in a foreign land."

CXX. Sobieski

EXX. Sobierki finding the Prince inflexible to his persuasions, the beginning If the fummer, fends his forces under the command of Potocky and Tablonowski towards Moldavia. Cantemir, informed of this, again advises the generals by letter, " not to enter Moldavia but to take Cameniec, before they attempted to e pais the Tyras, fince it would be of no advantage to them, if they were to " lay waste Moldovie for ten years together, unless they first drew that thorn " out of their side. If they should happen to be descated by the Turks, they " would entirely be cut off from any retreat, as they had sufficiently experien-" ced the last year. And if they obtained any victories, they would not gain " one foot of land more, while the Turks continued possessed of that castle. " By this irruption into Moldavia, they would only expose the wretched inha-" bitants to captivity and torments from the Tarters and Turks. He himself, if " they should pass the Tyras, could not oppose them, and was now obliged by " threats of the severest punishment to repair immediately to the Turksh camp, " and to defend his principality from the enemy to the utmost of his power." CXXI. The generals despiting the Prince's wholsome advice, answer, " they are commanded by their King to endeavour to subdue Moldavia, and therefore cannot change the course prescribed them. The siege of Camentee is s difficult and needless, because the garrison, after the country about them is re-22 duced, cannot defend the walls without bread, upon the want of which they " will abandon the town of their own accord. They fear no defeat from the " Turks, for having so great and disciplin'd an army under their banners, they " suppose themselves safe against the forces of the whole Turkish Empire. They " therefore advise him again to lead his troops to the King's camp, and with united " strength endeavour to drive the enemy of Christ and Christians out of his

It is haughtiy rejected by

" country. If he refused, they are commanded to turn their arms as against the " Turks, so against him, as being their confederate, and to destroy the country " with fire and fword." CXXII. Without waiting further answer, they run a bridge over the Tyras, The Pôles pais yer the river and with their whole army pass into Moldavia. But they had not marched far, when they are met at a village called Boyan by Ainejs Soliman Passa with twenty five thousand Turks, and Selam Geeras Chan with fifty thousand Tartars, who were followed by the Prince of Moldavia with five thouland men. When both

Cantemir perfwades the Se-

rafkier to a

er into

the armies come near each other, they stop, and fortify their camps. CXXIII. The Seraskier and Chan with the rest of the officers, seeing the Poles approach, immediately confult whether they shall attack the enemies, or wait void a battle till they either fall upon the Othman camp, or retreat. As they differ in their opinion, the Prince of Moldavia, defirous of turning every thing as far as polsible to the advantage of the Poles, periwades the Seraskier to remain in his post, fortify his camp, and prevent the enemy from making any farther progress. For a battle is not rashly to be hazarded, when the enemy may be driven from the borders without danger; neither is it fafe at present to engage with the Poler. Their army is numerous, and full of hopes of victory; whilst he himself has but twenty five thousand men, who can actually fight the enemy, since the Tartars will scarce stand the first fire. If any misfortune happened, all Moldavia, and perhaps Bujak, with the provinces about the Danube, will become a prey to the Poles, fince the rest of the Othman forces employed in Hungary, cannot be recalled without the utmost danger to the Empire These missortunes may not only be avoided, but also the enemies subdued without the loss of a fingie man, if he would furround his camp with strong works, and weaken them by continual skirmishes. The Seraskier approves this advice, and strongly fortifies his camp, commanding the Tartars and other light-armed foldiers to move round about the Polish army, and prevent their foraging, and every where burn the herbage.

SEXXIV. Cantemir by a trufty person truly informs the Poles of all that passed in the council, and what was refolved, He tells them likewise his troops were hate on the western bank of the Treas; that they might fear nothing from that quarter, but carefully guard the other parts of their army. The Polish generals

upon this information, resolve first to rout the Moldavians, imagining they should afterwards meet with less opposition from the Turks. To this end, they immediately attack the Moldavian camp, which lay one hour's diffance from the Turks. The Prince feeing them marching full speed towards him, wonders, and thinking them mistaken, imagines they intended to attack some other part of the army. He draws up therefore fifteen hundred of his men, not to engage the Poles, but by their enligns, in which croffes and other marks of Christianity were embroidered, to show themselves to be brethren, and not enemies. When the Poles tee the Moldavians standing in a peaceable posture without preparing for defence, regardless of their admonitions, they fail upon them as if they had been Turks and capital enemies.

CXXV The Prince perceiving the treachery of the Poles, commands all his Threare troops to take arms, and with force to repel force, thought offered by Christians for doubted Immediately the Moldavians are armed, and not only bravely oppose the first Turks body of Poles, confifting of fix thouland men, but allo with such resolution attack the enemies, who retire after their first ardor is spent, that they at last put The nore of arms and muskets foon alirms the lurks, who them to flight. perceiving the Moldavians engaged, fend inveral regiments to their adilitance. The rest of the army unexpectedly attack the Poles in the rear with such tury, that within an hour fix thousand of the Poles are killed, and five thousand Cosfak inclosed and obliged to jurrender. The remaining troops of the Poles, iceing the victory incline to the enemy, endeavour to retreat to their camp, and iecure themselves in their trenches. But before they can execute their design, the Tarters intercept their passage, upon which they take to flight, and leave their camp, and bargage, with all their warlike provisions, a prey to the conquerors.

CXXVI This was the only good fuccels, which happened that fummer to the The Constiant Othman Empire; from all other parts, where the war was carried on, there came the Coron in nothing but inclancholy accounts of the defeat of the Turkish forces, and the loss the Morea of cities and even whole provinces. Seromero, which the last year had submittec to the Venetians, is attacked early in the fpring by the Turks, who as toon as they hear of the approach of the Venetian fleet, retire without fuccels. Afterwards Ceron, on the 23d of the month Rejeb, (the 15th of June) is closely belieged by the Venetians. The Seraskier of Morea, Halil Pasha, with the forces he had ready, inflantly marches to the relief of the city, and fuddenly takes one of the works, built by the Venetians on a nill for their defence, and from thence annoys the camp of the beliegers with his cannon. But the Maktefe, who were appointed to guard that part, before the Seraskier could figure what he had gained, affault his camp with great bravery, and at last after a long and bloody conflict, being re-inforced by the other troops of the Vinetians, force him from his post, and thereby tree the besiegers from great danger. A few days after the Seraskier advances again with more troops, but finding the Venetians strongly fortified, and prepared to repel the assaults of the enemy, after some skirmishes retires. The Venetians perceiving there was no danger from the Turkash army, profecute the fiege with greater ardor, and having demolished the walls on the 10th of the month Ramazan, furround Coren, and after an obstinate detence of the garrifon enter it by florm. The Turks feeing no possibility of faying the city, display the white banner, and promise to surrender, but as this was too late, after all the fortifications of the caffic were taken, they find no mercy, but are all put to the fword.

CXXVII. This caffle being fundued, the Mainotta (75) likewife take up arms The particular against the Turks, and besiege Zarnata, the garrison of which hearing, the Ve the testians

ag nit the

# ANNOTATIONS

(75) Mainotta] The Descendants of the ancient Lacedamonians, who are at this day the bravest People among all the Greeks. Though they are not reckoned to have above twelve thousand soldiers, they never were fubdued, nor made tributary by the Turks; neither could the Venetians ever

Nº. 15.

give them law at pleasure. Their modern name is derived from unit Madness, because they rush in battle upon the enemies, as if they were mad. The country they inhabit, is on all sides surrounded with mountains, which are the chief defence of their province.

4 0 net i ans F 41

notions were sending assistance to the besiegers, before the arrival of those supplies, deliver up the cuty. Shortly after the Venetians, under the command of Degenfield, near Calamita rout the Turks with great slaughter. Whereupon the terrified Othmans abandon Calamita, Passava, and Chielasa, which towns are immediately seized and dismantled by the Venetians. The Venetian army crowned with so many conquests, in their return take from the Turks, Gommenizum, a town of Achasa opposite to Corcyra.

The various fuecels of the wat.

CXXVIII. Mean time Valier had closely besieged Zing in Dalmatia, but the Bashas of Bossia and Ercegovina marching to its relief, he finds himself too weak, and after the loss of a great number of his men, retires from the city. The Turks slush'd with this success, immediately attack Duare, but a few days after are repulsed with greater loss by Valier, who had raised steels forces.

The Vizir is more follicitous about himfelf, than the Ochman interest

CXXIX. When the account of these things was brought to Constantinople, it can hardly be told how it disturbed the minds and counsels of the Othman court, and especially the Prime Vizir Cara Ibrahim Pasha He not only feared the common danger, for the principal forts of Hungary being subdued, and the Othman army defeated, there appeared very little to hinder the Germans from reducing the whole kingdom with the capital; but he also dreaded the fate, which threatned him, and which in publick calamities he well knew to be feldom very favorable to the Vizus. He had retained, and even confirmed his authority by relieving of Buda, and the Sultan was not the least uneasy, that on account of a real or pretended indisposition he continued at home, while the Empire suffered no prejudice in other parts. But he saw that all these subterfuges would be unavailable, and he would be obliged to take upon him the command of the army, perhaps also on account of the ill success of this year be divested of his dignity. There remained but one method used by other Vizits before him (76), which was to destroy all who were eminent in the Empire for

# ANNOTATION S.

(76) before him] Some of the most eminent Vizirs have used this artifice, to put to death fuch persons as were most celebrated for their courage and virtues, namely, that after they were removed, there might be no perion fit to supply their place. The most skilful in this way, was Kioprils Mebemed Pasha, who being raised from a mean fortune to the office of Vizir, did, within the feven years he possessed that dignity, put to death, under various pretences, almost all the old Pashas, that had been brought up under Sultan Murad IV. The chief of them were, Seidingli the Defender of Hungary against the Germans, and Dels Hujein Pasto governor of Dalmassa; two of the most excellent and invincible heroes that ever were in the Othman empire. After Mebemed Pajba had obtained of the Sultan a Chaissberrs for putting the latter to death, he is reported to have fent for him, and to fay with tears in his eyes: " See, my dear brother, what the Sultan " has ordered me to do: I have indeed in spared no pains to incline the Sultan to \*\* mercy, but have found him fo incenfed es against you, that he would not hearken to my prayers and entreaties; wherewoh by divine providence, which it bethen refift." But Husein Pasta Is

faid to make this reply, Bire bei jazu tim sab gibi ademi bogai sin, anden sungra aglarsin. O thou old Wizard, like a crocodile, thou first killest a man, and then weepest over his body Then pulling a golden box out of his bu-form, in which he kept twenty four pieces of bones that had been taken out of his wounds by the Surgeons, he flung them in his face, with these words . Ben bu Vezirate ve Sultaneti deuleti fenum gibi fiberbaz lykile jadi lykile nail olmadum illa den deuletde jadacat ile ve canimun doktul mefyle perda erledum, bundan fangra senum gibi bir giauur bashimi dacha catl idup ata clarimi ananun amine fok i e I was raised to the office of Vizir, and the happiness of dominion, not, like thee, by magick arts, but for my fidelity, and effusion of my blood. Cut therefore my head off, if thou unit, like an insidel, but lay my feet in by mother's pudenda Husein Pasha was formerly Selabdar to Murad IV, and fo highly in favour with him, that he would neither do nor refolve any thing without asking his advice. Among his other compicuous virtues, he was famous for his invincible refolution both in prosperity and adversity, his ready wit, eloquence, and quick repartees. Many excellent actions and fayings of his are recorded, of which I shall mention but a few, that these annotations may not be too prolix. Once, he was ordered in jest by Sultan Murad, to marry out of



26-50 18

their warlike abilities, that in case the Sultan should resolve to deprive him of the imperial feal, there might be none, to whom it could with greater justice be committed.

CXXX. Necessity urging what cruelty suggested, he begins with Shaitan Ibra- The Vizit on him Pasha, who had been Seraskier against the Germans, and accusing him of dearous to negligence in the battle of Gran, and of keeping back the pay due to the fol- felf in his diers, and converting it to his own use, puts him to death. The same fate be- goft by the defluttion of fall others, who could justly or unjustly be charged with any crime. The only the other Paperson, who seemed above the danger of an accusation, was Ameje Soleman than Palba. Seraskier against Poland, who had gained so great an authority in the Othman Empire by his victory in Moldavis, that it was not only dangerous to touch him, but he was likewise declared universally worthy of the Vizirship. The prefent Vizir therefore perceiving, he could not hurt him openly, resolves to destroy him by clandestine methods, and expose him to the German forces, by whose valour he hoped he would lose the glory obtained in the Polish war. Wherefore upon the death of Shastan Ibrahim Pasha, a consultation being held concerning the war in Hungary, he periwades the Sultan to appoint Ameji Soliman Passa general of the army against the Germans, representing, he was beloved by the foldiers, and had great authority with them on account of the last victory, and there could scarce a man be found in the Othman Empire equal, much less fuperior to him in prudence and valour.

CXXXI. The Sultan being periwaded by the Vizir's representation, approves The Vizir his advice, and orders that Soltman Pasha should immediately be recalled our preprings of Moldavia, and the command of the army at prefent be committed to Buickly Serabic, talls Mustapha Pasha (77). Mean time, Tusuf Kızlar aga (78), coming to know moulimieli.

# ANNOTATIONS.

the palace an old woman of seventy years, with a strict injunction not to keep any concubine. He obeys the order, marries the old woman, and lives as well as he could fome days without concubines. At the end of one or two weeks, changing his habit, he walks with the Sultan into the fuburbs kyub enfart, where the ice and frow are kept for the fummer-featon, and both going into the cellar, they begin to drink wine very plentifully. 25 they are drinking, the Sultan afks him, Whether there could possibly be a cooler place any where in July than that ice cellar? Hujun Pajba answers there could. Where, fays the Sultan? The other replies, in that old woman's—I lately married by your order. Whercupon, the Sultan, laughing heartily, declares him free from that marriage. Another time, the Sultan being angry with him, upon fome ocalion, ordered him to be fent to the prison of the Seven Towers, and forgot him for three months during which, he never thaved his head, which is contrary to the cuftom of the courtiers, because they must never appear before the Sultan, without having their heads and beards shaved. In the fourth month Murad remembring him, orders him to be brought to court. When he comes with his long hair and beard, What Devil, fays the Sultan, has turned thee into a prieft, that thou appearest before me with such a grisly head? To which he replied, I should deferve to be called the most foolish of mor-

tals, if I had shaved or taken care of a head, of which I was uncertain whether in was mine, or another's? The Sultan anfwers, Perhaps the noylomness of the prison has so turned thy brains, that thou fanciest another man's head is upon thy shoulders Not at all, fays he, but finding you, who formerly were my friend and benefactor, fo angry with me, I meditated on nothing but Paradife, and forgot I had a head. But if you will be pleased to forgive my offence, and reftore me to favour, I shall be ture the head which stands upon my shoulders is my own, and will shave and take care of it, according to custom.

(77) Buickly Mustapha] That is, having long whiskers, Mustapha Pasha was so called, because his were long He had been Stlabdar to Sultan Mahomet IV, and from that office was advanced first to be Capudan Palba, then Seraskier of Silistria, and at last, for his victory over the Poles, was raifed to the dignity of Vizir; but in that Station did nothing answerable to the expectations conceived of him. He was ditmiffed by Sultan Abmed II for a trifling cause, but without loss of honour, and sent to the government of Damaseus, from whence he was recalled by Sultan Musta-pha II, and made Casmacan, which office he enjoyed at the battle of Zenta. After that defeat, Mustapha offered him again the dignity of Vizir, but he refused to take upon him so harzardous an office,



what she Vizir had proposed to the Sultan, instantly suspects, as he was a man of great policy and well-skilled in court-artifices, that some secret mares lay concealed under this plaufible appearance, because he knew the Vizit to be mortal enemy of Soloman. He therefore informs Soloman Pasta by one of his friends, advising him to beware of the Vizir. Soliman Pasha having received the Suitin's mandate, immediately comes to Constantinople, and before he goes to the Sultan waits on the Vizir, as if he defired to receive his commands, and pretti ds fo ereat a regard and veneration for him, that the Vizir imagining he had caught the fox, as a friend, acquaints him, that the Sultan for his known prudence and courage, had ordered him to be fent for to declare his opinion concerning the re-establishment of the Empire, and the election of a Scraskier of Hungary. When he comes afterwards to the palace, the Sultan highly commending him for his victory over the Poles, and his brave defence of the Empire on that fide, offers him the post of Seraskier of Hungary, adding, he hopes, the remembrance of the victory obtained against the Poles will impire the Othman ioldi is with courage, and cause them to fight with greater gallantry and speech under the conduct of a victorious Scraskier, than of any other commander Passa answers, he owes his life and fortune to the Sultan, and ought not to oppose his commands whatever they are but he cannot help observing, that the difordered state of the publick affairs, and the terror still imprinted on the army by the Vienna-defeat, required the prefence, if not of the Su'tan himself, at least or the Prime Vizir, in the camp, nor is the authority of a Scraskier father or to oblige men to their duty, who feemed more inclined to fly or crutian, i on to fight. The Sultan moved with this speech, flands musting some in the move than being observed by the Kyzlar Aga, who had long been the Vizu's every and Soleman's friend, " Why (fays he) O Emperor, do you heatate " if you rimk " the Seraskier's counfel just and prudent, what hinders you from 1 charactery " applying the remedy to this cyil? Divest of his curnity Cara 1616 1 1 1974. " under whose pretended or real indisposition the Empire languistics, and optionit " this hero both Seraskier and Vizir." The juspicion which the Suran I was before entertained of the Vizir, is increased by these remonstrances of the Armore Aga, and foon grew fo great, that he firmly believes Gara Ibralim Paffia and pretended fickness out of fear; and removing him from his poil, gives it to Soliman Pasha.

Soliman being made Vizir banishes his predecessor, and restores Tekeli, who was acquitted to his former

CXXXII. When Soliman finds he had not only escaped the source of his encmy, but obtained the administration of the whole Othman empire, he immediately feized his predecessor, and finding him accuted of many crisics, banishes him to Rhodes. Then he releases Tekeli, impittoned by Cara Jun in Pati, as I before observed, and by the evidence of Ibrahim Aga, chambered in the Cara Multapha Palba, acquits him of the crime charged upon him. On the other hand, he exposes to the publick, all the villanies of Cara Muslapha, and his permicious designs against the Othman empire, so that Teleli is not only refored to his former honours, but all his furniture, which had been taken the raining and whatever had been plundered by the rapacions foldiers, are returned to find.

# ANNOTATIONS.

and defired the Sultan not to place him a fecond time in that danger, from which, he reckoned it one of the greatest felicities

of his life, to have escaped.

(78) Yusuf Kister Aga At the taking of Cameniec, he was Hafnardar hafhi, or chief treafurer of the women's Seraglio, and that fame year was advanced to the dignity of Kylar He was in fuch efteem with Sultan emet, that the Sultan would do nothing must his privity, and the Vizirs feared more than he did the Vizirs; Ac-

cordingly, he was the chief and only cause of the deposition of the lorar in Paisa, No Kyflar aga, either before or after in n. amaffed fo great treature, or had tuch in-fluence over the Sultan. When he wis cumed out, there were found in his flatiles feven hundred Arabian bred horfes. He had an outer court in the city, and whenever he went there, was furrounded with more officers than the Vizir himielf. After all, he was a man of great prudence, and very ferviceable to his mafter in many respects.





Affairs being thus fettled, the Vizir with great diligence raifes an army, engaging a great number in the service his persuasions and instruence upon the foldiers; and compelling others who preferred ease to glory, by his Chenfer"; and orders all his filver and gold veffels to be turned into money for the expense of the war.

CXXXIII. But before he could bring his forces into the field, the coun-The Imperitry being still covered with snow, part of the Imperial troops, under the com- life befiege mand of Caraffa, on the 18th of the month Rebuil evvel of the year 1007, had are fuffer taken St. Nicholas; and another party, under Merci, had routed several Turk-considerable as regiments, which were convoying provision to Aradam, taken that town, H 1097. and burnt the stores laid up there by the Turks. After several other conflicts, at A C 1686 last, on the 26th of the month Rejeb +, the whole Imperial army besiege Buda, which had in vain been arrempted two years before, and on the 2d of the † 7th of June. month Shahan, make themseives masters of the lower town, with less opposition from the garrison than was expected. This obstacle being surmounted, the walls of the city are affaulted, and the strongest of the forts being demolished by the cannon, on the 21st of the same month +, the breach is fiercely attacked + July 2d. with fuch fuccess, that the besieged are obliged entirely to abandon it. But the workmen, who were to cover the conquerors with a rampart, not coming immediately, not only many of them are killed by the continual fire of the enemy, but the Turks have an opportunity of springing the mines before prepared, which force the Imperialists to retire with great loss.

CXXXIV However, this missfortune did not discourage the Christians, but They braidly rather excited them to a revenge, Whereupon the fourth of the month Rama affault the zant, having demolished several paces of the wall, they renew the assault in + yet 15th. the same place. The contest is long doubtful, and so sierce, that above three thousand imperialists are either killed or, wounded, before they could mount the breach, and it was with great difficulty, that after a conflict of feveral hours, they forced the belieged to abandon the first wall. This progress being made, the batteries are directed against the second wall.

CXXXV. When the greatest part of this wall is also demolished, the Vizir The Vizir Amej: Soliman Pasha arrives with his troops, and finding it in vain to attack marching then, attemps the Imperial camp, refolves, if possible, to firengthen the garrison, and amuse in vain to re the enemy by delays, till he had an opportunity to affault them unexpectedly, lieve the city. when fatigued with the length of the fiege. For this purpose, the 22d of the month Ramazant, he fends four Bashas with eight thousand horse, and two + August 3d thousand Janizaries towards the enemy's camp, with orders to try, whether they could pass between the stations of the Imperialist and Bavarians, and throw in part of the Janizarius at least to the relief of the businged. But the Duke of Lorrain suspecting the intentions of the Turks, sends a body of horse against them, before they reached the camp, which attack the enemy's horse with such vigour, that after a short opposition, they fly, and leave the Januzaries to the mercy of the Imperialifis

CXXXVI On the last day of the month Ramazen +, the Vizir makes ano- He again tree ther attempt, and fends again two thousand Janizaries with several troops of the fortune of horse, to execute his former design. These advance with greater caution, and with the like furprize the advanced guards of the imperialists, and then fall upon the Branden-success burg camp with such sury, that like wild beasts, not like men, they rushed + August 9th. through fire and fword, and at once passed the rampart raised against them. The Brandenburg troops being in this dangerous state, are seasonably relieved by Caprara and Heuster, who inclose the Turks, just ready to enter the city, and make such a slaughter of them, that scarce three hundred, and those almost all wounded, escape into the city.

CXXXVII. Two days after \*, the Imperialist, to show the besieged, how The Turks enlittle they dreaded the Vizir, affault the strongest part of the castle, and after a deavouring to that conflict, having driven out or killed those who defended it, become mast ty, are reputters of it. When they seemed by this means to be very near taking the city, the Vizir, on the 19th of the month Shevel+, for the third time obliges a the little with the vizir, on the 19th of the month Shevel+, for the third time obliges a test. thouland Janizaries, notwithstanding their reluctance, to attempt the relief of the city

will's thousand Spabin, and afteen hundred Tartars. But though they behave with the teme bravery as the former, and even penetrated the trenches of the Imperialitis, they are repulled by the valour of the Christians, and forced to retire with great lofs. The same fate is undergone by the garrison, who, to divide the enemy, and favour the entrance of their friends, had made a fally with . their whole frength, but foon after feeing the misfortune of the reft, retire into the city with great speed and ill success. By these losses the Turkes army is entirely difficurtened, and a report being spread, that when the Imperialists had taken the city, they would attack them in their camp, the best part of the soldiers, norwithfranding the Vizir's intrearies and perfuations, disperse themselves, and return home. The Imperialifts being freed from the danger, which threatened them in their rear, on the 13th of the month Sheval +, make the last acfault upon the city.

Buda taken by the Imperiahits; and the lugly retires

CXXXVIII. Abds Pasta, governor of the city, a man very famous at that time for his warlike abilities, with the remains of the garrifon, makes his last effort in defence of the city, and with fire and fword for feveral hours bravely repels the German army. But he being killed by the Imperialist, the rest of the garrifon begin to lose their courage, and resist the enemy with less vigour last, finding themselves unequal to the Germans, they display the white slag, and in the midft of the fight, promise to surrender the city, and desire quarter. But before the ardor of the Germans can be refirained, a great number of the beficged are killed upon the very walls, so that scarce two thousand are saved by the elemency of the Emperor's generals. Buda being subdued, the Vizir, who, during the affault, had with tears lamented his own and the Empire's fortune, with the reft of his army, flies, rather than retreats, and moreover the garrifons of Hatman, and the other adjacent castles, abandon their stations, and of their own accord, submit to the Emperor.

The Imperishifts divided under the command of Caraffa and Prince of Baden

+ October 5

CXXXIX The Turks upon this account feeming to avoid a battle, the Duke of Lorram divides the imperial forces, and fends part under the command of the Prince of Baden into Lower Hungary, and part under the conduct of Caraffa and Heusler into Upper Hungary. The Prince of Baden with his forces, on the 8th of the month Zylcade, besieges Simonthorn, and in a tew days ob-+ Spirmb 15. liges the Turkift garrison to furrender themselves and castle to his mercy. Then he attacks Kapofwswar, and takes the city, which, because the castle seemed capable of fuffaining a longer fiege than the time would admir, he plunders and abandons. Having staid there some days, and receiving fresh supplies brought him by Scherfenberg, he marches towards Five Churches, and on the 28th of the month Zylcade +, with his foremost troops comes within sight of the city. Whereupon the garrison, imagining the whole army to be advanced, let fire to the town, and retire into the castie. The Prince of Baden, as his foot was still at a distance, orders three hundred chosen horse to dismount, and extinguish the fire, which was done with fuch expedition by the foldiers greedy of plunder, that they refcued the greatest part of the city from the flames. The garrion perceiving that only a light-armed party was advanced, and not the body of the Germans, out of shame and regret for their loss, endeavour by a fally to recover the city, but were forced to retire with loss. However to remove the difgrace incurred by their flight, they resolve to make a brave defence, and sacrifice their lives rather than furrender the caftle, and this they declare to the enemy by displaying one black and fix red banners upon a turret of the castle. But atter their strongest works were demolished by the cannon, the prospect of immediate death inspires rhem with gentler resolutions, so they not only take down their banners, but fend deputies to the Prince of Baden, offering to deliver up the castle upon condition of having leave to depart with their lives and arms. But this being refused by the Germans, they are obliged to surrender at mercy, and redeem their lives with their liberty. So, the gates of the castle being opened on the 3d of the month Zilbije +, the Pasha himself with seven Begs, and the whole garrison are made prisoners, and sent to Stiria. The Prince of Baden having taken this city, sends part of his army under the command of Scherfenagainst Sicles, and with the rest marches towards Darda. Scherfenberg on

the 7th of the month Zylhije & comes to Sieles, and taking the city in the first of Odeber 14. affault, offers honorable conditions to the Turks for the furrender of the callie. into which they had retired But on their refufal, he batters the walls, and in various affaults preffes them with fuch vigour, that on the 12th of that month they display the white flag, and there being no other way to escape death, surrender themselves prisoners

CXL. From thence Scherfenberg is recalled to Dards by the Prince of Baden, The Yorks who hearing some Tarkift troops were still about the Drave, had determined to port of the attack and defeat them. But the Tarks, upon the bare report of his approach, Germans approach fly with such precipitation, that they not only leave Effek open to the Germans, Prince of Pa but burn down great part of the bridge to prevent the enemy's puriting them, des profecute The Prince of Baden finding they had escaped him, orders the remainder of the his victory. bridge, and the other bridges built by the Turks over the Drave, to be burnt.\* In his return he affaults with greater fotce Kapofwswar, which had before been attempted in vain, and to prefies the governor, terrified by the fate of the neighboring garrifons, that before the caffle was reduced to extremities, on the 22d of Zylhije + it was furrendered to the Germans upon honorable terms.

CXLI. Mean time the other part of the imperial army commanded by Caraffa Caraffa himand Heafler, had marched to Segedin, and closely belieged that city. While Ca-ter hom ich raffa is intent on the fiege, he receives an account, that two thousand Turks, using Signalin with a firing band of Tartars, had encamped near Schinta, a town fix hours distant from Segedin, and were designed to reinforce the garrison of that city. Against these he lends Veteran with several regiments, who attacks and routs th. Tartars, and takes their camp with above five thousand horses. Soon after the Tartars return to the battle, imagining the enemy was employed in plundering the camp, and confequently would afford them an easy victory, but being

+ 090bes 20,

repuiled by the outmost guards, immediately retire.

CXLII After their defeat, the Vizir himself suddenly appears with his army, Veteran defeat having joined to his forces the Tartars, he had intercepted in their flight. Ve- hunself sqrteran, though he has no certain information of the enemy's strength, thinks pro-diminurienders per to continue in his station, lest he should by a retreat discourage his soldiers, to him. and drawing them up, undauntedly expects the enemies The Turks make the first attack, and fight with fuch fury, that for two hours it appeared doubtful to which fide the victory would incline. But at last they are repulsed by the valour of the Germans, and retire to a hill, where they are covered by their can-Veteran immediately follows, and formounting all obflacles, drives them also from that post, after they had lost in both battles above two thousand Janizanics, and as many Tartars Segedin was the reward of this victory, for the garrifon exhausted by continual fatigues, when they see the victorious army return to their camp, with fo many heads of their friends, deliver up that fortress to the Germans on the 5th of the month Zylbije +.

CXLIII. This was the state of affairs in Hungary. But in Poland most part The Emperor of the year is spent in negotiations. For the Emperor of Germany had invited of Germany in the Care the Czars of Russia, John and Peter, into the alliance against the common ene of Russia toenmy of Christendom; and while the rest were employed in Hangary and the sine common the southern parts of Europe, to invade Crim Tartary, and prevent the junction enemy of the Tartars with the Tarks. The Czars answered, they were ready to declare war against the enemy of the Cross, if any method could be taken to secure them from the fear of a rupture with Poland For as they had only a truce, and not a firm peace with that Kingdom, they should be universally blamed, if, before they were fafe from one enemy, they should create another.

1 0 Teber 12.

CXLIV. Upon this account, the Emperor was extremely follicitous to pro- A firm peace cure a good understanding between these two nations, and engage them to discharge their mutual refentments upon the enemy; and at last after many endea- Russian and vours, he obtained of the Poles, that they should renounce all claim to Kievia Police and Smolenfer, which had been for several ages the ground of sharp contests be-

<sup>•</sup> This bridge is fail by Dr Brown to be five miles long and feventeen paces broad, reaching from the Draws to Darda. The Emperor Ælau's name is full to be read in a Latin infeription on a git. bo anticat is this place.

tween these nations, and sign the articles of peace on the 20th of the month  $y_c$ -maximil evoil+ of the year 1097.

† April 3
H 1097.

A C 1686
The King of Poland (ends an ambaffador to Cantemir Prince of Maldovia, to engage him in an allunce.

CXLV. The King of Poland, John Sobieski, encouraged by this new affiftance, refolves upon another expedition into Moldavia, and to attack that province, as the chief bulwark of the Turkish Empire against Poland. But before he took the field, he determines again to try to engage the Moldavians in a treaty against the Turks. For this purpose he sends privately his confessor in disguise, as ambassador to Confiantine Cantemir Prince of Moldavia, to perswade him to join with the Poles against the Turks, and offer him liberty, and confirmation of his principality, and a perpetual alliance. When the ambassador comes to the Prince, he opens what he had in commission, and uses his utmost efforts to engage him in the treaty. " It is now (fays he) the third year, fince the King my " master, heard with the utmost satisfaction that Cantemer was appointed Prince " of Moldavia by the Turks, and has conceived the greatest hopes, that he will " exert against the Turks the great abilities, of which he has formerly given " proofs in Poland under King Casimir against the Swedes, and will affert the " liberty of a people oppressed under the Turkish tyranny. For this reason his " majesty imputes to his generals the misfortune, which happened last year to his " army at the Tyras, and withal ascribes it to the Prince's prudence, that he had " under the pretence of fidelity induced the Turks to a greater confidence in him, " and not exposed himself and his subjects to Turkish bonds, when after the Im-" perialists were repulsed from Buda, it appeared uncertain, which side was most " likely to be superior. But now the face of affairs is changed, and the " Turks will be so oppressed by the number of their enemies, that they will scarce " be able to think of Moldavia. For the Czars of Ruffia are ready to invade " Crim-Tartary with five hundred thousand men, and keep the Tartars em-" ployed, the Imperialists also will pass the Danube, and joining the Polish forces at Adrianople, endeavour to subdue Constantinople. But since the King cannot in his passage leave Moldavia behind him in the hands of the enemy, " he thinks it his duty to admonish a Christian Prince and his old friend, not to " oppose the Christian arms any longer, but immediately join his forces to the " Polish army, and command his subjects to receive the Poles, not as enemies, but as deliverers, and bring all forts of provisions into their camp. The King on his part will promife, not to injure the inhabitants any way, but to purchase whatever is brought at a proper price, nor to fuffer even a grain of barley to " be taken from any man by force; and whoever shall be found to do the least " injury to a Moldavian, shall be put to death without mercy."

The Prince of Moldavia juftly excults himself from making an alliance

CXLVI. The Prince, in answer, says to the ambassador, "His inclination " to serve the interests of Christendom has appeared sufficiently to the king, both " from what has passed between him and the King's generals the last year, and from his conversations with him. He has never omitted any thing he thought " advantageous to the Christians, nor ever would for the future, whatever the " consequences might be, but it was neither in his power, nor would be of any " use to the Poles to join forces, or to make an open alliance with them this " year. His eldest son, with those of some nobles, were kept at Constantinople " as hostages, who would suffer the severest torments, if the Turks should en-" tertain the least suspicion of his fidelity. He had in his camp but five thou-" fand Moldavians who, if joined to the Polish army, would be no great ac-" ceffion of strength, nor render the Turks much weaker. But if he continued " in the Turkifb camp, it would be in his power, not only to prevent any dan-" gerous resolution against the Poles, but likewise to inform the King every day " or even every hour of the defigns of the Seraskier and Sultan of the Tartars, " which fervices would be of much more importance than fo flight an affiftance. Besides, though for sear of the Turks, he could not by writing, yet by word of mouth, he would command the inhabitants of Moldavia to bring all kinds of provision into the Polish camp, and do every thing else agreeable to the King's defire. But if God should grant success to that expedition, and the Turks and Tartars be defeated, he would use his utmost efforts to procure his " fon's



" fon's escape from Constantinople, or give a large ransom for him as a captive; and if this could not be done, he would facrifice him to the interests of Chris-" tendom and the liberty of his country, and with his whole force invade the

" enemy of Christ and Christians in open war.

CXLVII. The King of Poland having received this answer, in the beginning The King of of the month Sheval, passes the Tyras, and with long marches advances to Jaj. Poland fij, where meeting with no opposition, and finding great flore of corn and wrine Tajly (because the Prince had less Ramands Vornicus at Jassi to get provision for the Cantinus, o King's army) he spends source days in feasing and entertainments, mean time coid joining. the Seraskier Burkly Mustapha Pastra with five and twenty thousand horse, and the Turking eight thousand Janizaries had already passed the Danube, and sent for Nurradin the inlabi-Sultan (79), with thirty thousand Tartars to his camp. Here he is informed, tants from the the King was advanced to Jassi, and that Cantemer had not yet appeared in the danger of Turkth camp, and deeming his absence a revolt, commands Nurradin Sultan with the Tartars to enter Moldavia as an enemy's country, to lay it waste with fire and fword, and make the inhabitants prisoners. Moldavia would undoubtedly have been involved in a most dreadful calamity, if Beg Myrza, one of the Tartarian Myrzas of the Cantemir-family (80), had not interposed, and diverted the Seraskier and Sultan from their purpose by promiting to be furcty for Prince Cantemir, that he should never act contrary to the fidelity due to the Othman empire, or revolt to the enemy, adding, he was affured, the Prince was departed from Joshy, and in three days would arrive at the camp The event justified his words, for the Prince, on the third day before the King's arrival, had left Jaffir, and being come to Falex?, gives liberty to as many of his followers as thought proper to return to the King, and passing the Hierajus, about the end of the mo ith Sheval reaches the Seraskier's camp.

CXI.VIII. During this interval, the King of Poland, tired with his feaftings, advan- The King of ces further, with intent to drive the Turks entirely out of Moldavia, but upon his Poland hav fecond or ampment, observes his soldiers begin to want provisions, because all their erafus at flores had been wasted, during their recess at Jassi, through the negligence of the tacked by the commissaries; and nothing left but a great quantity of fruits for the Poles to eat. To Turks

# ANNOTATIONS.

(79) Nurradin Sultan] There are two offices among the Tartars, that are never given to any but the Chan's ions, descended from the Aujengizian race, and not without the confent of the Othman court, namely, Calga and Nurradin. Calga is as it were the Chan's Lieutenant-general, who never moves out of Crim-Tartary, but with the whole army of the Tartars. Narradin which in the Tartarian language fignifies Will, is the next in degree, and is fent with a certain number of forces, as ten or twenty thousand Tartars, to the affistance of the Turks.

(80) Cantenur-family ] This family was very connent among the Tai tarian Mirzas for nobility and riches. According to tradition, the Cantemirs derive their pedigree from Temur long the great conqueror of Ajia, which feems to be confirmed by the name, for Can Temar figurifies the blood of Tenur, or persons descended from the blood of Tenur. One of the Cantemers rebelled both against the Chan and the Turkish Emperor, and fought for many years with qual fuccels against several Seraskiers, end probably would have obtained his wish'd for liberty, had he not been deceived

Nº. 15.

by a feigned treaty For the Turks feeing, they could not prevail by arms, pretended to make a peace with him, and, complying with his terms, granted him Bender with the neighboring territory, under the title of Beg, with the privilege of two horse tails But having thus amused him, they shortly after put him to death brothers of the deceased submitted again to the Chan, and were placed in the pro-vinces of Akkierman and Kili. His fon Shabbaz Cantemir was also received into favour, but changed his name, and because his father had been Beg, took the firname of Beg-Mirza, which palled to his fons and posterity Whilst my father was Prince of Meldavia, Beg-Mirza, mentioned in the History, used often to come with his five fons into Moldavia, and related the History of his ancestors as he had learned from tra-dition, the only preserver of the *Tartarian* genealogies. He moreover said, he had been informed by his ancestors, that at the time they were most closely pressed by the Chan, one of their family fled to the Prince of Moldavia, and embraced Christie anity; and upon this account he affirmed my Father was he relation.

remedy 4 Q

mady this inconvenience, he passes the Hierasus near Czoczora, imagining that before the Turks advanced, he should seize the richest store-houses of the Bujak Tartars, and refresh his hungry soldiers. The Seraskier being informed, the king had passed the Hierasus, immediately marches with his whole army against frim, and when he was scarce two days distant from Czoczora, discovers him in an open plain, and furrounds him. The Tartars fet fire to the grass, already dried up by the heat of the fun, continually infest the Polish camp in small parties, and either take the *Poles* prisoners as they are foraging, or oblige them to return with empty waggons. The king in despair offers battle to the Seraskier; but he either thinking it hazardous to fight with fixty thousand Poles, or defiring to draw them farther from the borders of Poland, avoids an engagement, and commands his foldiers only to annoy the enemy by continual skirmithes. But the Polish army felt a much more formidable enemy within their bowels, namely famine, which pressed them so dreadfully, that they could not stir from their camp, without leaving three or four hundred dead bodies behind.

CXLIX. The King thus diffressed, endeavours to repass the Hierasius at a place, nd to re. called by the inhabitants Vale Strimba (81). But scarce half the army are over, when the Tartars advance, and fall upon the rest in the rear, kill a great numby in-ps and m. ber, take many prisoners, and force still more into the torrent. The river being different at last passed with great difficulty and loss, the King discharges upon the Moldavians the rejentment which he could not upon the Turks, and gives his foldiers licence (82) to plunder the inhabitants of that province. He himfelf burns two monasteries at Jassi, seizes the sacred vessels, carries away the relicks of St. John of Seczava with many jewels, the monuments of the piety of former princes, and forces away as a prisoner the Metropolitan of Moldevia, who refused to deliver up the facred things. He afterwards comes to the monattery of the Three Hierarchies, where the relicks of St. Parasceua (83) of Epibati are religiously pre-

# ANNOTATIONS.

(81) Vale Strimba ] A place upon the river Hierafus or Pruth, unfortunate to the Christians, and very fortunate to the Infidels. Konicky, general of the Coffaks, had his trenches forced there by the Tariars, and was defeated with great flaughter. John Sobieiki King of Poland, was forced twice to retire out of the fame place, and not without a very confiderable loss: And in my time Peter, Czar of Muscovy, tho' he fought very bravely for three days together, yet concluded there a peace with the infidels upon fuch conditions in he did not much like. There feems to be formething unlucky in the very etymology of the word, for Vale strimbs, in the Moldavian language denotes a perverse or unsuft Valley.

(82) licence] The King endeavoured indeed to clear himfelf of this infamy, and to throw the blame on the hungry foldiers, who had plundered the Moldavians, not only without his knowledge, but contrary to his express orders; and of this he endeavoured to perswade the Prince by letter . But his other violent proceedings in Moldavia, and the imprisonment of the Metropolitan, who refused to deliver to blen, the remains of Sr. John of Saczava, shifty show, that if the soldiers had not the King's orders or permission, yet they were certainly encouraged by his example, to commit robberies and other crimes

(83) Parascena | Parascena, as we learn from the ecclefiaftical menologies, was miltress of the village of Lpibate, which afterwards was pofferfed by the great Apocaucis general of the Emperor Andronicus In the time of Sultan Murad IV. Bafihus Prince of Moldavia, obtained permiffion to remove her bones out of the Patriarchal Church at Constantinople, on account of his great beneficence and fervices to the Church For he had paid out of his income above two hundred and fixty puries, which she owed to Turks and Christians. But as it is unlawful among the Inrks, to carry a dead body above three miles, unless it is that of a Sultan, he spent above three hundred purses in the Othman Court, to obtain leave to remove them, and to have an order from the Sultan for a Capuji bashi to convey them into Moidavia. I he whole Hiftory of this Translation is painted on the South wall of the Church, in which her facred remains are deposited; and among other things, the Capus bashs and his officers are represented in procession before the holy relicks. So much power has money among the Turks, that for the fake of it, they not only permit, but also do things themselves contrary to their superstition.

ferved

ferved, and requires those relicks, with the treasure reposited there, to be delivered to him But the Archi nandrite having heard in what manner the Metropolitan had been treated, shuts the doors of the church, and answers those who were sent by the King, that he had rather be buried in the ruins of the church, than voluntarily deliver up to any mortal fo facred and valuable a treasure. The King, to terrify the obstinate monk, commands the cannon to be brought, and threatens to batter down the doors, and carry away the whole treasure, since he was refused part, when demanded in a friendly manner. But finding the Archimandrite inflexible, either touched with the shame of sacrilege, or prevented by his officers, he foon after departs without gaining his point.

CL. The foldiers, induced by hunger as well as the Kings example, plunder the The whole cities and villages, not sparing any place, religious or prophane, in which they army follows

imagined they could find any thing to fatisfy their appetite or luft.

CLI. But this facrilege foon met its due punishment. For the inhabitants be- God punisher ing dispersed by the cruelty of the Poles and Cossaks, when the troops which fol-the faculty lowed, found the houses empty, they were obliged to cat raw flesh without being falted, and this occasioned a flux among them, which encreased in a few days to fuch a degree in the King's camp, that scarce a night passed, but five hundred Poles or more died. The Prince likewife being informed of the heinous crimes and facrileges committed by the Poles, fends his forces over all the province, furprizes them difperfed, and apprehenfive of no fuch attempt, and takes above four thousand prisoners, of whom some he burns, others he impales or hangs, defervedly nunifying them by different kinds of death.

CLH When the King's army came to Cotnar, the Tartars poison with noxi- The Tartars ous herbs (84) the lake, which waters that city, by which means the men and poston the cattle, who drink of it, are destroyed. The thing being discovered, the King, noxious herbs. not to expose humfelf and his forces to greater danger, avoids the open country, and encamps on the Stretus, which is furrounded with mountains. The Tartars observing this, conclude, his design was to retire into Poland, and as the woods and mountains were difficult to pais by the horie, they return home, laden with

plunder and prifoners.

CLIII The King of Poland, freed from the Tartars (for the Turks had not passed The King in the Hierafus) that he might not appear to have consumed the Pope's money to no purher the easile of pose, in his return takes the castle of Nemez (85), deserted by its inhabitants, though Newez, and not without difficulty, for there remained by chance in the castle, ninetien strong sa-Moldavian hunters, who shutting the gates, and drawing up the bridges, denied chance the King entrance, The King not knowing how inconsiderable the garrison was, The hunters defend themselves, affaults it four days with cannon and bombs and kill about fifty Poles with the mafter of the ordnance. At last, on the fifth day, when they see ten of their companions killed, they surrender the city upon condition, that the garrifon should depart where they pleased. The king seeing only fix hunters come out, carrying three others wounded upon their shoulders, is struck with admiration, resentment, and shame, and first orders them to be hanged; but being put in mind by Yablonowski of his promife of liberty, difmiffes them. He afterwards places two hundred chosen horse in the city, and marches to Soczava, the antient seat of the Princes of Moldavia, and finding it empty of both foldiers and inhabitants, takes and garrisons it.

# ANNOTATIONS.

(84) noxious herbs ] It is a wonderful thing, and incredible to those that have not been eye-witnesses of it, but I have seen it iometimes done by them. The Tartars have a fecret among them, which not above three or four in all Tartary know by tradition, that is, an herb of so strong and poylonous a nature, that it can poylon not only standing water, but even the rapid river Hierajus. They throw it into the river, a good way above the enemy's camp. and till it is carried down with the stream, all men or beafts that drunk of the water immediately die without remedy.

(85) Nemez] A very antient city of Lower Moldavia, fituated upon a high mountain beyond Siretus near a river of the same name, concerning which see more in my description of Moldavia.



† Sept 23.

By these successes of the Poles, the Tartars, who had now carried home former booty, are recalled, and like ravenous wolves run every where, and histreept the Poles, who are at any distance from the army In these excursions of the 16th of the month Zylcade +, they are met by the high treasurer, whom the King had sent before with eight thousand Poles, and descated with great loss. But neither this victory was of any advantage to the Poles For when, by reason of the famine, the army was obliged to live on the fruits of trees, and for that purpose was dispersed more widely in the woods, than was proper, the Tartare frequently attacked them in this diforder, killing fome, and taking others prifoners; and whoever strayed any distance from his troop, might be sure of never

The King abandons the camp, and

The fucceffes of the Vene *tiani* against

cLV. The King perceiving this danger, first abandons the camp, and under the guidance of Turkuleczius, a Moldavian colonel, flics away privately in the night with a few attendants. The reft of the army, whom a more propitious fortune had preferved both from the famine and the enemy's fword, under the conduct of Yablonowski return to the King at Yavarovia about the end of the month Zyli ade.

CLVI. The Venetians had that year much better success. In the beginning of the spring, the Morlachians befiege Ottoch, a city fituated between the two channels of the river Cettin; and taking it by florm, put the whole girrifon to the fword. Capudan Pasha makes the same attempt upon Chrelasa, but on the approach of the Venetian fleet, is obliged to retire. Part of this fleet is fent to block up Condactinople on the fide of the Archipelago towards the Dardanelles, the rest of the slaps attack Old Navarenum; which city being furrendered by the more than the first I viol the fiege, New Navarinum is closely invested. The Seas to leaf to t Jeel Court Koits relief; but before he reached the Venetian works, he ningsmark and the Marquis of Curbon with circle thous we will be referred to and defeated. He foon after raifes three thousand men more our of the not hbouring garrifons, and affembling those who had escaped the former lattle as tempts to relieve the city, but is repulfed with great lot an arm to be a fire bitants of Navarinum, destitute of all hopes, on the 26th of the model Polity

furrender the city to the Venetians.

† June 7 The Venetians take Methone, and defeat the Turks in a hattle at Co-\* June 26 + July 20

\* August 18

CLVII. Three days after Methone is belieged, and contract the month Shaban\*, delivered up by the garrison, terrifically 1 1 decision The Venetians crown their Peloponnefian expedition virtual taking of N arolic of Romania. This city is belieged by Morofine on the 10th of the month Ranazan+, and though it was very strong both by nature and art, in a few days he demolishes the walls with his cannon. On the fixth day of the siege, the Seratkier of the Morea haftens with his troops to the relief of the city, but is met by Koningsmark, and after a short battle defeated. However not being discouraged with this misfortune, and knowing if this city should be subdued by the Venetians, he must answer it with his head, he raises a more numerous army, and on the 9th of the month Sheval\* at break of day attacks the trenches of the Venetians, and before they can recover themselves, takes possession of a hill, from whence he could cannonade the greatest part of the camp. In this exigence Kon ng/mark with the troops under his command, comes to the affiftance of the Fenet. ans, and detained the enemy till Morofini advanced with the rest of the army Turks, though they perceive the Venetians to be superson, fight for seven hours with fuch bravery, as if the whole Othman empire had been it lake, but at lak, by the repeated affaults of the Venetians, are put to hight: Majuatha, governor of the city, feeing the Christians returning to their trenches in triumph, and concluding the forces, from which he expected relief, were deteated, the very fame day displays the signal of surrender, and upon the promise of leave to depart, on the 9th of the month Sheval +, delivers up the carlle to the Venetrans.

CLVIII. In Dalmatia, the Batha of Bolnia early in the fpring henegus Duare; the hearing of the approach of the Venetians, retreats with great loss He makes eral attempts upon the enemy in other places, but is repulsed with slaughter. The Venetians, elated with these successes, on the seventh of the month Shevul+, under the command of Cornaro attack Zing, which Vallier had in vain attempt-

CLIV R

ed the last year, and having demolished the walls with their cannon, on the second day of the fiege take it by storm, and put the whole garrison to the sword. With like success the Morlachians make an expedition towards Conflantinople, and by a stratagem draw a thousand foot and five hundred horse out of the city, where they were garrison'd, then furrounding them, kill a great number at the first attack, and pursued the rest with such vigour, that they entered the city with them promiscuously, and having plundered it, set it on fire.

CLIX. These missortunes alarming the Ulema and the people of Constantinople, The people of they at first utter privately seditious expressions against Sultan Mahomet, but Constantinople afterwards throw them out publickly. The Ulema especially represented to the against the common people, that the treasury being exhausted, myriads of Musulmans slain Sultan, and by the Christians, Hungary and the Morea lost, and the royal city itself threat-ought to be ned with immediate danger, it was too late now to advise the Sultan to leave deposed hunting, and apply himself to the care of the empire, and endeavour to affist it in this diffres. That this could not be imputed to weakness of mind, fince Mabomet had some years since shown, he was not unqualified for the administration of affairs, but to the divine wrath against the Musulmans for the breach of the peace, made by the most wise Vizir Kioprili Ahmed Pasha, which had so infatuated the Sultan, as to imagine, that the bounds of the Othman empire, extended by the labours and blood of fo many Musulmans, could be defended by dogs and falcons. That the indignation of the most high could not be appealed by any other method than removing the objects of it, namely, the Sultan, who was the first author of the unjust war, and all those, who by their advice or Ferva, approved of the violation of the peace.

CLX. The Sultan informed of what was publickly faid in the streets and affern- The Sultan blies, instantly repairs to Conftantinople, diverts the Mufet of his dignity, employs endersous in feveral persons in his interests to represent to the people, that the Sultan was not blame upon the occasion of beginning the war, but the Vizir Cara Mustapha Pasha, and the others. deposed Musti, whose counsels he did not think proper to oppose, as well because they appeared reasonable, as out of regard to their authority. But that Cara Mustapha Pasha had been put to death, and the Musti deprived of his office, on

that account.

CLXI. To give the people a farther proof of his zeal for the interests of the He laysa new empire, he fells the jewels reposited in the treasury, and with the money pays the tax upon the foldiers, and this not being sufficient, he lays a tax upon the Jami Mojebs and priment of every house (86). By these arts, the sedition just ready to break out, is not only the soldiers appealed that year, but the people also are excited to contribute more readily what was wanted for the publick fervice

CLXII. Mean time the Duke of Lorrain marched with the Imperial The Imperial army towards Effek, and having pasted the Drave, designed to attack the Vizir saists descarted who had encamped about Effek. But while the Imperialists were retarded by their camp the difficulty of the ways, Soliman Pasha posted his army so advantageously, that the Duke, instead of venturing to attack him, was obliged to fortify his camp for fear of being affaulted. The Turks and Imperialists being thus encamped near

# ANNOTATIONS.

(86) house.] The Christian European merchants that live in Constantinople, tho' they are very curious in other respects, could never compute how much this tribute brought into the treasury For not any, either Turkifb or Christian house, was exempted, but all paid according to their largeness, or the matter's abilities, from ten to five hundred Leonines. Now there being in the city alone, without the sub-urbs of Pera, Chrisopolis, Ejub, Bektash, and other adjoining villages, above four hundred thousand houses, besides the mar-Nº. 15.

kets, inns, shops, and baths, any one may guess, how much money was raised But when God is pleased to divide, man cannot possibly put together. For though that money was very carefully raifed, and deposited in the treasury, yet, as if there had been some curse attending it, it came to nothing, and could afford no support to the Turkish affairs. So that it is a greater wonder, how fuch an immense fum was contumed without any advantage, than how it was collected.

4 R

each

each other, at first try the fortune of war in skirmishes, then contend with their

+ Tub 18. H. 1098.

† August 1

cannon, which doing much greater execution on the part of the Turks, by reafon of their fituation, the Germans are forced to give way. The Turks taking it for a flight, immediately follow the enemy, who retreat towards the *Danube*, and refolve to give them battle. But while the Vizir proceeds more flowly by reason of his numbers, the Germans encamp at Mobach\*, where refreshing their troops, satigued with a long march and want of provision, they determine to demolish the walls of Zicli and Five Churches, and attempt to Subdue Alba Regalis. With this view they decamp, and on the 30th of the month Ramazan + of the year 1098, march towards Zieli. But they had scarce left their camp, when a great number A. C. 1687. of the enemy's horse appear, and attack them on all sides as they moved slowly. in order to detain the Germans till the Vizir should advance with his whole army. After three days skirmishing, the Vizir comes, and posting himself in a lictle wood, through which the Imperialists must pass, declares publickly to his army, he had received an order from the Sultan to engage the Germans, and promifes great rewards to those, who should distinguish themselves by their valour and heroick actions. The next day, which was the 4th of the month Sheval+ he draws up his army, and observing the front of the Germans to be too wide for the wings to affift each other, commands his troops to annoy the enemy's right wing with continual, but flight attacks, and on the other hand to rush with their whole strength upon the left wing. The Turks vigorously execute their general's orders, and fall upon the left wing of the Imperialists with such surp, that they would undoubtedly have routed it, if the cannon, placed amongst the soldiers, had not retarded the Othmans as they were incautiously moving forward, and killed a great number of them, and by that means extorted from them the victory, of which they almost seemed assured. However, not content to have once tryed the fortune of a battle, they again with more fury, and a larger body attack those, by whom they had been repulsed, and though, by the relistances they met with, they fustain as great a loss as before, they retire to the wood, from whence they were come, in good order, and feemed to retreat, rather than fly. The Duke of Bavaria, who commanded that wing, feeing the Turks twice repulfed by him, and imagining their courage abated, refolves himself to attack the enemy in the wood, and leads his troops thither. But before he can execute his defign, he observes the enemy advancing in a body against him, to repel whom, he orders the cannon to be placed in the front and loaded with small bullets and pieces of iron, which being discharged upon the Turks, did such execution, that they durst not engage the Imperialists, but retired faster than they advanced. The Duke of Bavaria immediately follows them; but he had scarce continued his pursuit an hour, when he is surprized to see the Turkish camp entire, and would have imagined it to be a vision, since it could scarce be conceived how an army routed, and more inclined to fly than fight, should in so thort a time have been perfusded to fortify themselves with so strong a trench, if the cannon placed there had not been discovered by their noise, and warned the Imperialists not rashly to proceed any farther. But the Turkish trenches being demolished by the German cannon, the imperial horse, and afterwards the foot, penetrate into the camp itself, and put to the sword almost all the Janizaries, deserted by their horse. The Vizir perceiving things to be desperate, with a few escapes by flight, and leaves the whole camp, with a great booty, and all the warlike provisions, to the conquerors. The Imperialists immediately pursue him; but because the horse had retreated a great way before, while the Janizaries were yet engaged; they take only fome hundreds of ftraglers, and put most of them to the sword, in revenge of the Christians flain in the battle.

The Vizir efcaping by

CLXIII. The Vizir having escaped by flight, his first care was to defend Essek and Peterwaradin, which very probably the Imperialists would attack after this victory. For this purpose he softens the mutual resentment of the Janizaries and Spabus, reinforces the garraion of Effek with several regiments, and having left fix thousand men to guard the bridge of Peterwaradin, retires to Belgrade.

CLXIV. The Duke of Lorrain seeing these places too well fortified to be the The success of ken in the two months, which still remained of the campain, spreads a report, his in Science that he designed to besiege Temiswar, upon which the Vizir, sollicitous for the ma. defence of that city, fends the greatest part of his army thither. The Vizir being deceived by this stratagem, and the Turkish army in Sclavonia weakened, the Duke of Lorrain orders Dunewald with a party to pais the Drave, and endeayour to drive the enemies of the Crofs out of Sclavonia; and continues himfelf with the main army to observe the motions of the Turks in Hungaria. Dunewald having passed the Drave, lays siege to Burzin on the 2d of the month Zylcade +, and having demolished the walls, prepares to invest it; upon which the + August 29. garriion on the fixth day of the fiege furrender themselves and castle to the mercy of the conqueror This city being taken, he assaults Walpo, which fortress was necessary to be subdued, before the siege of Essek could be undertaken.

CLXV. The governor of the city by a fignal informs the gatrifon of Effek, direct them that the Germans were come, and defires affiftance against them. But the soldiers of Effek, terrified at the unexpected approach of the Imperialists, lay gun-powder under the fortifications of the castle, and prepare to fly with their baggage. Dunewald being informed of this, orders Lodrone with two thousand horse to observe more particularly what is doing at Effek. The garrison seeing him, imagine, the whole German army was advancing, and abandon the city with fuch precipitation, that they not only left behind them the greatest part of their baggage, but forgot to fet fire to the mines they had made under the castle, and filled with gun-powder. Upon this the governor of Walpo thinks it more prudent to give way to the ill fortune of the Othman Empire, and by submission to soften the conquerors, than by a fruitless obstinacy to exasperate them; and therefore furrenders the city to the Imperialists, before it was assaulted.

CLXVI. With equal fucceis Dunewald foon after takes Poshega, the capital of The subdue Sclavoria, and Bellaftin, Patrask, Shirask, Telicham, Walkowar, Erdedi, and fe- with equal veral other castles of that country, which had been abandoned by the Turks, and success /gri restores all Sclavonia to the Christian subjection. The governor likewise of Leo- in besieged poldopolis assaults Areizaga, Ciokaku and Polota, which are surrendered to him At the same time Agria in Upper Hungary is invested by a small body of Imperialifts drawn from the neighboring garrifons, and cut off from any supplies.

CLXVII. The campain of this year is crowned by the Duke of Lorrain with The Duke of the reduction of Transylvania. The Prince of that country, Michael Apaffi, in Loriain, not the beginning of the fuminer had been follicited by the Emperor of Germany to withit anding abandon his alliance with the Turks, and admit the victorious standards of the of possible. Christians into his province, and he had shown himself ready to comply, on con-takes leveral dition the danger from the Turks thould be farther removed from the borders flvania, of Trensylvania. But when about the end of this year the Duke of Lorrain, where he according to their agreement, was preparing to fix his winter quarters in that province, Apath denies him entrance, (being unwilling to submit to that burthen, quarters or with an intention to periwade the Turks it was out of necessity, and not of his own accord, that he furrendered his principality,) and returns the Duke this answer, that his promite of granting winter-quarters was not extended to the whole army, but only to some regiments. But the Duke considering there was no occasion for words, where arms would prevail, enters Transplvania without the Prince's confent, and nezing the principal cities of the country, Cibinium and Claudiopolis, obliges him to submit to the Emperor, and places his foldiers in winter quarters.

CLXVIII. The Ruffians did not meet with the same success against the TarThe Ruffians. For the Czars being incapable, on account of their youth, to command march again their army in person, had sent Basilius Prince of Galliczin with a numerous but Crim Tarian confused army against the Crim-Tartars This general after several days march success without any opposition from the enemy through the deserts, which divide Ruffia from Crim-Tartary, is furrounded by Nuradin Sultan, and cut off from provision and water. This misfortune is soon followed by another still more severe, for a peftilence, occasioned either by the intense heat, or the want of wa-



set in the provided by thousand Russians in a short space. However Nurradin Scales fearing the Russian army, though weakened by this calamity, to oblige which so seturn immediately, pretends to march with his Tartars towards Kiovia; which Galliczin, apprehensive of greater danger, led his forces to the relief of that province, and abandoned the deferts of Crim-Tartary. But this stratages of the Sultan would not have diverted the Prince from entering Crim-Tartary, if he had not been recalled by the letters of Sophia (87), fifter to the Czars, which informed him that the Russian Empire would be exposed to great hazard, unless he returned immediately to the capital.

The Poles befiege Camenies; but at the approach of the Turks retire † August 2.

CLKIK. The Poles, under the command of James Sobiesks the King's eldest son, about the beginning of the month Sheval, take the field, and on the 24th of the same month appear before Camenice, and threaten to besiege the city. But after they had twice or thrice discharged their cannon, and demolished some houses in the city by their bombs, on the fourth day being informed, the Turks with the Bujac-Tartars were advanced to Czuczora in order to relieve the city, they raise the siege. The garrison of Camenice attack them in the rear, as they retire, killing some, and taking others prisoners, with the loss of about sity of their own party. Except this battle, the Polish and Turksh armies performed nothing remarkable this year.

The Venetians take several caties in the Morea

CLXX. With much greater vigour the Venetians carry on the war against the enemies of the cross in the Morea. For landing their forces on the 23d of the month Ramazan at Patros, they march three days after under the command of Count Koning mark against the Seraskier, who encourages his troops to fight by speeches and presents, and drawing them into the field, with his cavalry makes the first charge upon the left wing of the Venetians. But being repulsed with lofs, he directs his whole force against the right wing with such fury, that the Janizaries endeavoured to remove with their fwords the barricadoes which fecured the front of the Venetians. But being every where bravely opposed, he is forced, after receiving a dangerous wound, and losing many of his men with the Pasha of Vallona, to fly with the remains of his army, about two thousand of which are partly flain and partly taken by the Christians, who pursued them, and the rest driven into the mountains. This victory not only confirmed the acquisitions of the Venetians in the Morea, but reduced what till then remained under the Turkish dominion. The garrison of Patras are the first after this victory, who abandon the castle with all their warlike stores and sly Mehemed Paska, who with fix thousand men was commanded to defend the castle of Rumelia. having blown up the walls, foon follows the example of the garrison of Patras. The same is done by Mebemed governor of the castle of the Morea, when he saw the Venetian gallies approaching; and what is still more surprizing, the city Naupactus strongly fortified both by nature and art, sends deputies to the Venetian fleet which was failing thither with offers of a furrender. After the affairs of the conquered cities were fettled, Morofini, general of the Venetian army, affaults Caffel-Fornese and Missira, the governors of which, content with the liberty of departing, deliver up the castles with all the warlike provisions, without the least opposition.

Marofini takes Caracti CLXXI. The only city, which makes any long refistance, was Epidaurus Limeria (88), the garrison of which, confiding in the strength of the place, though extremely annoyed by bombs, defend it with great bravery, But Morojun passing by this place, sails with his steet through the Corintbian bay directly to Corintb, hoping, when that city was subdued, the Turks would not only be cut off from any possibility of returning to the Morea, but it would also be much eater to re-

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(87) letters of Sophia Many are of a different opinion, and blame Galliczin alone for the ill fuccess of this expedition, but I have chosen to relate here, what I know to be true and unquestionable.

(88) Epidaurus Limeria] The fame ns is called by the modern Greeks μονεμβατία, by the Turks Meneuche<sup>6</sup>, and by the Italians Napols di Malvafia. It is the strongest fortreis in all the Morea.

duce

duce the rest of the castles, still held by the Turks. The Scraskier hearing of Morofini's approach, and finding the four thousand men, he had with him, would not be able to contend with the Venetsans, fets fire to the magazines in Corinth, and demolishing the greatest part of the walls, retreats with his soldiers into the mountains of Thebes, and kills very dishonorably all the Greeks he met in his way, alledging, they were the cause of his misfortune But Moresine seeing the flames, and suspecting the case, sends some troops, and extinguishes the fire, before the magazines could be all confumed

CLXXII. Then he fends Count Koning/mark with part of the army to Athens, Koning Image who after a short siege obliges the city to surrender. In this siege, the Venetians takes at your by a bomb fet fire to the gun-powder reposited by the Turks in the celebrated temple antiently dedicated to the unknown God, by which means it was entirely blown up. And thus the Venetians, the most polite people of Italy, destroyed these monuments of antiquity in Constantinople and Athens, which the Barbarians had left untouched, and upon this account, deferved to be represented in the same picture with Heroftratus; though there is this difference, that what the latter did with defign, the Venetians did by accident

CLXXIII In Dalmatia the Turks begin the campain, and under the com- the Turks in mand of Atlaglik Pafka governour of Rohna, on the first day of the month Je-vade Dam maziel evvel, befiege Zyng, which Cornaro had taken the year before, and affault tacet it forty days with great vigour and resolution, but at last, after the loss of a great number of men, upon the approach of the Venetian army, on the 10th of the

following month, are obliged to retire.

CLXXIV Cornaro, on the other hand, with the affiftance of the fleet of the cornect Malteje and the Pope, lays close fiege to the new castle of Dalmatta on the 25th ind tak, the of the month Shevval The Basha of Bojnia hastens to the relief of that city, new cuille and having penetrated through the narrow passes, which were guarded by the Marlachians, on the 8th of the month Zylhije attacks the Vinetian trenches with fuch fury, that he would have beaten the forces, which defended them, if Cornaro, with the rest of his army, and the Maltese auxiliaries had not seasonably supported them, when they began to give way. At his approach the scene In so changed, that the Turks just before conquerors, after a short and bloody fight having loft above eight hundred men, are obliged to fly. The garrifon, though they faw their friends defeated, defend themselves with great bravery, but at last, after the Venetians, on the 21st of the month Zyllinge, had taken the city by storm, on the third day, those, who had oscaped into the cattle, icenig themselves irrecoverably loft, if they made any longer refistance, surrender also the castle

CLXXV. In the mean time there arises in the Turkijh army from a flight cause, The Turkijh a very great sedition, which not only deprived the Sultan of the Imperial digniarmy into a very great sedition, which not only deprived the Sultan of the Imperial digniarmy into a very great sedition, which not only deprived the Sultan of the Imperial digniarmy into a very great sedition. While the Vizir continued at Peterwaradin, being informed, that Agria laboured Vivir under an extreme want of provision, and unless immediately relieved, would be forced to furrender, he commands a thousand Januzaries and several hundred Spahis to much with provision for the supply of that city. They both resuse to obc, his orders, and alledge the Vizir's intention is to defiroy the whole army, which had been through his fault defeated by the Imperialifts. They show their icars and wounds, and horses quite spent, and scarce able to breathe; and when the Vizir renewed his commands in a more positive manner, they reply, they will not move a step from Peterwaradan without him. These beginnings of a sedition are ioon after inflamed by a new incident, the Vizir having attempted the destruction of feveral Bathas, by accuring them to the Sultan of neglecting their duty in the last battle. The Bashas informed of their danger by their friends at court, exasperate the whole army against the Vizir. At the head of these disturbances appears Siavus Pasha (89), who was in the list of the accused sent by the Vizir to the Sultan, a

ANNOTATIONS.

(89) Stavus Passa A man diftinguished rit, and before this action, the mere sport neither by his birth nor by any fort of medition . Nº 15.



The Vizir

desperate,

flantinople

night to Con

man of great courage and haughtiness, and by his persuasion the army demands of the Mzir the payment of two Kyft (90), due to them. The Vizir not having the motion ready, endeavours to fatisfy them with words, and tells them, the Sultan half already fent their pay, which would in a few days be brought to the camp. But they are deaf to these flattering speeches, for, being encouraged by Siavus Pafba, they demand their due with still greater insolence, and command him either to pay them, or relign the Vizirship, since they had a person much more deferving of that dignity, who not only had promifed them their pay, but would command the army with greater fuccess and prudence, than Soliman Pasha.

CLXXVI. When the Vizir fees the army cannot by any methods be appealed, and finding affairs is in fear of his life, he escapes privately out of the camp by night, and flies to Conflantinople, bringing the first news of the rebellion to the Sultan. He lays the whole blame upon Stavus, and accuses him, with some others, of corrupting the army, after having by treachery deprived him of the victory against the Germans,

of which he was almost secure.

He is protected by the cle-ad by the cle-mency of the had conceived too high an opinion of his prudence and courage, easily credits to himself and the Vizir, orders him to conceal himself till he could receive a more certain account of the defigns of the rebels Soliman Pajha, by this instance, convinced of the Sultan's good-will towards him, retires to the house of a certain Greek, named Manolake (91), near the palace, in the street Curicheshme \* (92), where he hides himself for seven and twenty days from the knowledge of every person, but the Sultan and his most faithful friend, the Kislar Aga.

'I he army un der the influ-ence of Starus Pufba, who we at the head of the rebellion, confort gainst the bul

In the name

of the whole

army he accufes the Vaur as a de

ferter

CLXXVIII But Stavus Pasha, finding the Vizir fled, two days after calls a council of the chief conspirators at Belgrade, and engages them in a delign to depose the Sultan, and put several of the great men to death. The rest of the army imagining the Vizir was fled on purpose, that they, being destitute of a general, might either be exposed to the enemy, or obliged humbly to sue for pardon from the Sultan, defire Siavus Pasha to take upon him the office of Prime Vizier. He, in order to gain the Sultan's favour, refuses to accept of the honour, alledging, this dignity could not be conferred by any mortal, except the Sultan alone. That he had hitherto been their protector from the injuries of the Vizir, and would continue so till they should reach Constantinople, and have an opportunity of exhibiting their complaints to the Sultan. That he was not fo unpious, as to prefumeto attempt any thing against an innocent Sultan, whose singular virtues he had always revered; and therefore he would perfuade the foldiers, before they moved a step further, to send a petition to the Sultan, and wait his answer.

CLXXIX. This advice being approved, Stavut Pasha, in the name of the whole army, fends an Arzmabzar (93) to the Sultan, and informs him, that the

## Annotations.

dition he had been Chocadar\* to Cara Kiebaia; and afterwards being raifed to the dignity of Basha, his ambition increased with his good-fortune, and he conspired against the Vizir his great benefactor.

(90) Kyst,] Thee months pay, as Navaka is one day's, and Ulsufe is a month's pay. The Janizaries yearly stipend is commonly divided into four Kyst, and distributed to

them four times a year.
(91) Manolaki, a very rich Greek, who though of mean extraction, and illiterate, was yet a great patron and encourager of learning. He built in Phanarium a very large college, of which I have given an account in the first part of my History.

(92) Curubesome\*, that is, a dry spring. It is the name of a village near the Thracian Bol, borus, or Sea of Marmora, about fix miles from Constantinople The word is written Curikiefme, 1. e a dry Rock, because there is a craggy Rock hangs over the shore. Here is feen a very fine palace, formerly belonging to Serban Cantacuzenus, Prince of Walachia.

(93) Arzmabzar,] It is a petition prefented in the name of a whole province or army to the Sultan or Vizir, for such as is presented by a single person, is called Arzubal, concerning which I have spoken in a former note.



forces

forces of the Aliothman Empire were determined to come to Conflantinople under his command, not to raife a fedition against the Sultan, or attempt any thing against his facred person, but because, after the Vizir's shameful treachery and defertion, they thought it necessary to demand Justice of the Sultan against him, and to refcue themselves from the danger in which they were involved by the Vizir. The Sultan therefore need not fear; but if he be defirous immediately to appeale these commotions, he should fend to the camp the head of the Vizir, as a deferter and traytor, and the pay due to the army, by the Tefterdar and Giumrukchi\*, Hufein Aga (94).

CLXXX. When this letter is brought to Conftantinople, the Sultan is strangely The Sultan in perplexed. Several of his most intimate counsellors persuade him to satisfy the Vizir paves demands of the foldiers, by the death of the Vizir, whether guilty or innocent, the way for in order to secure his own authority. They observe, there are several officers in his own ruin the army superior perhaps in merit to Soliman Pajba, so there is no reason to fear that the death of one man will prove faral to the whole Othman Empire. However, the Sultan's favour to the Vizir, and the opinion which he had conceived of his abilities, prevail with him above all other confiderations. He determines therefore, at all events, to protect him, and returns no other answer to the Arzmabzar of the army, but that money was already fent to pay them, and would very from he distributed. He takes no notice of the Vizir's misconduct, hoping the foldiers, foftened by the fight of money, would lay afide their refentments, which the wint of pay had feemed chiefly to have raifed against the Vizir, and return to their duty. But the foldiers, not content with the money, exclaim, that the Sultan is equally culpables with the Vizir, who is therefore protected, and the juit demands of the army refused; nor can other remedy be applied to the unfortunate thate of the Othman affairs, than deposing the Sultan, and punishing his evil countellors.

CLAXXI. When he hears the rebels, for this purpose, are marching with great The builting speed to Conflantinople, the Sultan, to turn their leader from this rebellion, lends conter the to him, by Silahdar Aga, the feal of the Empire, and Masomer's standard, flat-on sames, tering himitelf that Stavus Palha, having obtained what he wanted, would not who demond be to importunate for Soliman Palha's death, but would rather, by gentle perthe hids of Soliman mill functions, compose the tumults in the army. But Stavus, considering the authomany office. rity conferred upon him would not be lafting, while his enemy, who had so great there in the Sultan's affection, was alive, receives indeed the entigns of the supreme power from Silabdar Aga with strong declarations of submission; but withal informs the Sultan, it was not in his power to pacify the army, till those persons were executed, to whose negligence the calamities hitherto suffer'd, and the ruin of the most flourishing Othman Empire, were unanimously imputed by the fol-

diers, namely, the Vizii, Telterdar, and Giumrukchi \* Bashi. CLXXXII Upon Silabdar Aga's return to Constantinople, the Sultan at last The Sultan

perceiving the defign of this infurrection, and making a virtue of necessity, fa- older the Vicrifices Soliman Pages to the referement of the incented army, and fends his head headed, and to them by a Chauth \*, informing them that the others, whose deaths they had de- the real "u-

## ANNOTATIONS.

(94) Giumrukebi\*, Huje a Aja ] What Giunrukchi\* is, I have before explained. This Husein Aga was one of the richest men among the Tuck, and in great credit and favour with Sultan Mahomet. Scarce a week paffed, but the Sultan dined at his He had a house in the suburb Pera, called Fyndykly, almost opposite to the Emperor's palace, and feveral rooms belonging to it were built over the Bojpborus, at a great expense. Out of the windows of these chambers the Sultan used some

times to fish, and, in fign of favour, fend prefents of what he caught to his courtiers, by his cleamberlains if the present was fent by a chamb rlain, then one purse was given him, but if it was brought by a Silab, or Choadar , tive purses was the least that used to be given by him who received the prefent. This palace is now possessed by the herrs of Hufein Aga, but because an order was made that it should not be inhabited, the greatest part of it lies in ruins.

manded



wante kept in prison by the Caimacan, Kiopreli Mustapha Paska (95), in district extert from them a confession of their accomplices, and where their were concealed.

the Sultan to

XXXIII. Sieves Passa answers the messenger, that the army indeed returnad the Sulun the highest thanks for inflicting a just punishment upon the Vizir; but required also the heads of all those who had been proscribed, and till then would not lay down their arms. He would therefore advise his majesty not to disturb the whole Othman Empire, and draw fome fatal confequence upon himfelf by an unfeasonable elemency. But if the Sultan would follow this faithful advice, he hoped in a fhort time to extinguish the whole rebellion, and lead back the army in peace to Constantinople. The Sultan granted this also to the foldiers; and though he had detained the accused persons in prison with the sole view to rescue them from an unjust death, and afterwards, upon a proper occasion, punish the rebels; yet, that he might not be charged with omitting any thing to appeale the army, he orders, compelled by necessity, the heads of the Telterdan, Grumrukchi\* Bash, and three others, to be struck off, and lending them to bravus Pasha, commands the forces to stop at Adrianople

The rebellious army inveighs ainst Sieves himfelf.

CLXXXIV. Stavus Pasha finding, every thing, which the army had demanded of the Sultan, was complyed with, fincerely endeavours on his part to perform his promifes to the Sultan, and by various arts to detain the toldiers at Adrianople. But they, whose rebellion was more inflamed by the blood of the Vizir and other great men, cannot be diverted either by periwalions or threats from their purpose, but publickly call Stavus Pasta impious, persidious, and treacherous, one, who had undertaken the protection of the army with no other view, than to fieze the Vizirship by any methods right or wrong, and who now having gratified his ambition, was become of the Sultan's party, and ready to expose the foldiers to destruction. Not content with these reproaches, they force him a manner to lead the troops to Conftantinople, threatning, if he would not take upon him the command of the army, they would cut off his head, and choose another general, who would not only compleat their defigns, but depote the bultan himself, and advance in his room Soliman, a Prince eminent for piery and fanctity.

The rebellious Viziria receivhonour by the excuses hunself that he had of the army

CLXXXV. The Sultan therefore receives with great honour the new Vizir, when he came with the army, and admitting him to a conference, thows him what great disturbances the sedition of the army had raised in the whole Oil man empire, and made not only the citizens, but also the Ulema partakers of their is me, and admonishes him, that mindful of his promuses, he would use his others efforts the command to appeale the tumults, and restore the empire to its former tranquility. It this were effected, he would not only entirely forget what the Vizir had done against him, but confer upon him greater favours, than he could prefume to hope or demand Siavus Palba first excuses himself to the Sultan, for having taken upoe I am the command of the army without confulting him. He fays the fedition was not raised by him; but the army was fo highly exasperated by Soliman's mitconduct and obftinacy, that they feemed refolved upon fome desperate design against the lamping When he faw this, he thought it would be very ferviceable to the Sultan and the Othman Empire, to accept the offered command of the army, left the major provinces of the Othmans being destitute of defence should be open to the Girmans, and that those persons might be restrained, who endeavoured to plunder or injure their countrymen. He had fince used his utmost endeavours to appeale the

## ANNOTATION S.

(95) Kseprsl: Mustapha Pasha.] Son of the great Abmed Pajba, a man famous above all the reft of the Turks, for holiness of life, icegrity, prudence, and courage. I think it unnecessary to give a particular account of his great actions, because they occur so often in the History. He left three fons, A-

dullab Pasha, who was Cimucan of Constantinople under Sultan Manapha, Nuuman Pasha, who has been Vizir under the prefent Emperor Ahmed III. and I and Effendi, who is an Ecclefiaftick, and afgires to be a Molab.



commotions



commotions, and had reason to hope, if the Sultan had granted the first petition of the army, he should have been able to extinguish the flame without much difficulty. But he was disappointed in this expectation by the Sultan's fault, in delaying to fatisfy the army's demands, till after the rebellion had taken too deep root in their minds. Indeed, when he had received the Sultan's command, he had tried all possible methods to prevent the soldiers from advancing to the royal city, but could not refift their unanimous refolution, which breathed nothing but fire and fword. However, he would use all means to reffrain the sedition, and not value his own life, provided the Sultan remained on the throne happy and

CLXXXVI. Having confirmed these promises by an oath, he is dismissed by Having Scott the Sultan, and to gain credit to his words, affoon as he is returned to his court, diminifed by he fends for the chief of the rebels, and represents to them, " the Sultan has now the bultan, " paid half their due, and would fend the rest in a sew days; he has, according and endua-tion to the armies desire, put to death the plunderers and betrayers of the empire, pose the sedi-" and omitted nothing to fatisfy their demands. But now it is to be confidered, tion " how the foldiers, meditating a fedition, may be appealed, and induced to return " due thanks to the best of Emperors. He is informed indeed, that some of " the conspirators are plotting to depose the Sultan himself, but he cannot con-" ceive how any man of fense could devise to flagrant an injury to a prince so pi-" ous and merciful, fo illustrious for his victories, the father of his country and " armies, in return for his late favours, not only to the foldiers, but to the whole Oth-" man Empire. It is true, affairs for several years have been managed unsuccessfully " against the Germans and Venetians, not through the ill conduct of the Sultan, " but of the Vizir and the officers of the army and treasury; and the deity being " justly incensed by the unreasonable exactions of these plunderers, could not but " thus chaftife both them and us. But supposing the Sultan himself to be the " occasion of these missortunes, and therefore to be deposed, there cannot be found " any person of the Alistbman race worthy to succeed him. His sons are not of " age, and unequal to the burden of the Empire in the present difficult times: "Both his brothers, especially Soliman, are men accustomed to daily and nightly devotions, but not to the hearing of the complaints of the citizens; are well " skilled in the laws, but not in arms; in a word, are faints, but not foldiers " Their holy prayers offered from their closets may avail more than thousands of " foldiers, but the disorder'd state of the Othman affairs requires not a Monk, " but a vigorous and warlike Emperor, such as the present Sultan must be allowed " to be by all who reflect on his heroic actions, and his administration of the Em-" pire forty years with the highest applause They should therefore divert the " foldiers under their influence from fuch deligns, and not fuffer the burden of " fo great an Empire to be laid on a person unqualified for it." The Vizir probably would have prevailed upon the confpirators, if they had not begun to fuspect his fidelity, when he so earnestly endeavoured to detain the army at Adrianople.

CLXXXVII. Being confirmed in this suspicion by what the Vizir had proposed The lader of to them, they seign, whilst in his presence, a readiness to perform what was required of them; but as foon as they are out of his palace, they meet in Orta Viziguilty of Jami (96), which stands in the antient lodgings of the Janizaries, acquaint their a breach of his oath companions with what they had heard from the Vizir; and publickly declaring he had broken his oath, and was fecretly in the interest of Mahomet, advise the

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(96) Orta fam, a temple in the midst of the Janizaries Chambers in which they meet to fay their prayers, to confult about any matter, or when they are obliged to prelent any request to the Sultan. They often make use of the same place to excite one another to

fedition. And therefore when the Emperors are afraid of a rebellion, they chiefly observe what is doing in the Orta Jami, and if they perceive any commotions there, they endeavour to quell them in time.



gate so take care of shemialves, and execute about designs, before they are cirengineeried by the artifices of the perfidious Vizir.

CLXXXVIII. By this, like fire by oil, the same of fedition is increased. The Janizaries and all the raft of the foldery run armed in great bodies through the Streets, crying out, the Sultan, both unfortunate and indolent, ought to be depoled, and Solimon advanged in his room, who by his prayers would appeale the divine indignation. They are foon after joined by the Ulema, partly of their own accord, and partly out of necessity; whom when the common people behold, every one thinking remisiness at such a time to be criminal, snatch up what weapons are at hand, and repair to the church of Sancta Sophia. There Nakyb (97) and Sheikh (98) offer themselves to the rest as leaders and directors of the intended confultation. But before any thing is proposed, they order, in the name of the whole Mululman Nation, the Casmacan of Constantinople, Kiopreli Mustapha Pasha, to be sent for.

The Sheriy Shukb of S publick-Sultan's deposition.

CLXXXIX. When he, more out of fear of the feditious, than of his own accord, was come to the affembly, the Sherif of Sophia represents to them, in a long speech, how many calamities the Othman Empire had suffered, how many castles and flourishing provinces, subdued by their ancestors with io much labour and effusion of blood, were loft; and how many great misfortunes were still to be expected, if the Othman government should be continued in the hands of fuch an Emperor, who took no care of the army and flate, but only of hawks and hounds, and suffered the treasures, Beytulmalimusulman, out of which the foldiers, who shed their blood for the propagation of the faith, and defence of the honour and bounds of the Empire, ought to be paid, to be devoured and walled by robbers and eunuchs (99). After many other reproaches of this kind. directing his speech to the Caimacan, he puts him in mind of the great services done to the Empire by his ancestors, the two celebrated Vizirs Muhammed and Abmed, and admonshes him, as a diligent imitator of their example, to affift, with his great abilities, the Othman Empire in this exigence, and avert the impending danger.

The Sultan atpreferved by Boltam: Balbs

CXC. As he is going to urge more to this purpose, he is interrupted by a sudtempus to de-den rumult in the church, and a report that Shehzade are in danger For the Sulthen, who are tan, when he was informed the confpirators were met in the church of St Sophia, and having fent for the Caimacan, were contulting to depose him, seeing that, in this desperate case, no other remedy could be applied but the death of his brothers, had fent some of his chamberlains to dispatch them. But Bostans Bashi being acquainted with this affair by some courtiers, bribed by the Sultan's enemies, had furrounded the apartments of Soliman and Ahmed with a regiment of Boltanji's, and having repulsed the Sultan's chamberlains, informed the affembly of the danger the ultan's brothers were in the rebels, fired with this news, again apply themselves to Nakyb and the Sherif of Sophia, and defire them instantly to proclaim the deposition of Mahomet, and declare Soliman Emperor; for there is no occasion for further consultation, since the Sultan's attempt upon the life of his

## ANNOTATIONS

(97) Nakyb,] Properly Nakyb Esbres, the boly Overseer, the Resper of Sanyaki Sherif, that is, of the Holy Standard, of which I have given an account. This Perform which the transfer to the Salver Sanyaki Sa fon is chosen by the Sultan from among the Emirs, or the descendants of Mahomet's lister, and is no way inferior in dignity to the Mufti himself. He alone hath power over all the Emirs, and, without his knowledge, the Sultan cannot strike an Emir, or But, because it e dangerous to entruft any one man long with so much power, the Saltan often

.1

changes them; but when they are once appointed, he cannot take their falary from them, but is obliged to pay it them as long as they live.

(98) Sheskb] I have before faid, that Sheikh in the prelate or head of a temple. Here it is only to be observed, that the Sheikh of Sancia Sophia takes place of all other Sheikhs.

(99) eunuchs] He means the chief Eunuch Yufuf aga, who had to much authority at that time, that he alone feemed to govern the whole Empire.

brothers, though other reasons were wanting, affords a sufficient ground for depoling him. On the other hand, it is to be feated, if the execution of the defign be delayed, their guards may be bribed, and the Mufulman nation, for want of lawful heirs, be obliged against their wills to acknowledge Mahomes

Emperor.

CXGI. The inconfiderate multirude would perhaps by force have depoted the The excellent Sultan, and even attempted his life, if the prudence and authority of the Cat-put Ogli Mamacan, Kroprele Ogli Mustapha Pasha, had not prevented it. For, perceiving saple what desperate resolutions the conspirators had taken, and that they could not by any means be diverted from their purpose, he too that he might not, by an unleasonable opposition, render himself suspected, pretends to approve of their opinion. Having thereby gained the favour of the people, he advites the affembly a not " to proceed in a tumultuous manner, or do any rash thing, which might fix an " indelible infamy even upon their posterity. The Musulman nation has great and inft reasons of complaint against their Emperor, for which it must be own-" ed he deferves to be deposed; but this ought to be done in such a manner, " that both the honour of the Othman family may be preferred, and care taken " that greater tumults may not artie, and utterly destroy the already tottering " Empire. There is no occasion for haste, fince nothing is generally more de-" trimental to publick officers, and there is no fear of the life of Shehzade, " fince they are carefully guarded by Bostant's Baste, but it will be more agree-" able to the Othman honour and custom, to fend Sheikh Sie if and Nakib to " the Sultan, to declare him deposed in the name of the Ulema, toldiery, and " the whole Musidman nation, and defire him, of his own accord, to leave the " palace, and retign the Empire to his brother Soliman"

CXCII This advice being approved, the whole affembly fend Nakyb and They declare Sherkh Sherif with this fatal mediage to the Sultan At first they refu e this of- by thursdepufice, but atterwards, for fear of the enraged multitude, they undertake it, and, ties that he trembling, proceed to execute the commands of the people. When they come was depoted to the Sultan, they first humbly deliver their commission, then ask pardon for their boldness, because the incenfed multitude had forced them, unwilling to take upon them this office, and advite him to submit to the demands of the con-

federated army and people.

CXCIII. Sultan Mahamet having heard the messengers with great tranquility, The heroc fays, " You tell me nothing new or unexpeded, for I have long fince found, Sultan to the " that the common people are corrupted by the Ulema, desirous of a change, rebels. " and engaged by them in their rebellion. I could indeed at the first, if nor " have exampuallied the flame, at leaft have taken away the fuel of it, by banish-" mg you, but, trushing in the contciousness of having afted rightly, I chose ra-" ther to commit the event to God, than to make my felf the arbiter of it. " For, from the feventh year of my age, through a course of fifty years, which " I have governed this Empire, I do not remember I have done any thing un-" just, or contrary to the precepts of the Musulman law, or omitted any thing " which feemed conductive to the propagation of our law among infidels, or the " enlarging the bounds of the Empire. How many intestine commotions from " that time to this last war nave I appealed? how many enemies both at home " and abroad have I defeated? how many noble victories and triumphs over the " infidels have I gained? how many Provinces and Kingdoms have I subjected " to the Othman yoke by my indefatigable labours and industry, and how in-" created the number of Pashalicks. The most warlike inhabitants of Poland. " Transplvania, and Hungary, whose valour has been often telt by our ances-" tor., not without lofs, partly voluntarily, and partly by force, have submitted " to our Empire under my conduct, and promiled to become tributary. The " Venetians, formerly lords of almost all the feas, under my administration have "been expelled the White-Sea; and Candia, the largest, strongest, and most flourishing of islands, subdued. These cities, which seemed to reach almost to " heaven, Cameniec, Candia, Vyvar, partly by my felf, and partly by my ge-" nerals, have I wrested from the Enemy, and with these bulwarks resolved to



grand, from all holide attacks, those very persons, who since elated with their weight gained during a long peace, are determined to dethrone me. By all these " things, when I feem to merit not the curfes of the people, but their applause and prayers for my welfare, I cannot even guels at any other pretence for your and " their impious attempt, except the breach of the peace with the Emperor of Ger-" many before the expiration of the truce, and the four years ill fuccess of the " war under my administration. But if I seem to you to deserve so grievous a " punishment for that fault, you do not perhaps consider, that yourselves first per-44 fuaded me to the war, and the Mufti, the head of your confederacy, by his " Fetvah, pronounced our arms to be just. By what right therefore do you im-" pute to me the ill success occasioned by the indolence of the foldiers, and the " negligence of the generals, and, whilt you are unwilling to acknowledge " your misconduct to be the cause of our misfortunes, accuse your innocent Em-" peror. It is certain, they are not mine, but the peoples crimes, which have " raifed God's indignation against the Musulmans, destroyed so many torces, and " delivered up so many cities and provinces to the enemy. When the divine " wrath might have been appealed by fervent tears, frequent prayers, purity, and " goodness, by your instigation, who ought to have been the teachers and guardians " of the laws, the people contemning the divine precepts, the prophetic ora-" cles, and the honour of the Aliothman name, prefume to diffurb my old age, " to trample upon my reputation, and to bring defiruation upon the whole Em-" pire. To prevent this, what have I not done? what concessions have I not " made to the foldiers) did they demand their pay? I fold all my jewels, and " emptied my treasury, to pay them to a farthing. Did they require the heads of my ministers, who served me and the Empire faithfully; even these I facti-" fixed to their fury. Did they infift that Stavus Pasha, though the partner and " head of their conspiracy, and the first author of the commotions, should be " made Vizir? This also I granted, to cut off all pretence of complaint against er me. Did they defire a man necessitious, and infamous for rapine, and other " crimes, to be appointed Pasha, I submitted to it, though he was destitute of all " virtues. What is the offence therefore by which I have railed the identments " of the people, the army, the Ulema, and all the other orders of the nation, fo " highly against me, that they should entirely forget the former services which " I have done them, and endeavour to remove me, like a worthless man, from " my father's throne. But though I know the people, by your authority, are " too deeply engaged and confirmed in their wicked defign, to be brought to " repent and reform their conduct, yet I know the righteous God will prove " my avenger, and leverely punish the corrupted people for the injury now

The tretine behavious of Duk b

Saltun Mebe-

4

D. .. 1 1700

CXCIV. Nakyb, unmoved with the Sultan's speech, uses still greater in olence towards him, and aniwers, without any fenfe of modelty, that he was not 'ent by the people to hear his apology, but to command him, in the name o the whole Musulman assembly, to quit the throne. If therefore he was desirous to preferve his honour and life, he should, of his own accord, resign the government ro his brother Soliman; but if he opposed the will of the whole city, the affembly would notwithstanding execute their resolutions. Mahomet, hearing this, submits to necessity, and fays to the messengers, " since I see the divine indig-" nation, raised by the sins of the Musulmans, discharged on my head, go and " tell my brother, that God's decree is declared by the mouth of the party " and he is appointed governor of the Alsothman Empire.

CXCV. Sultan Mahomet, having faid this on the third of the month Muharrem, met is deposed of the year 1000, resigns the imperial sceptre; and after this missfortune, for five H 1099 years, a thing very uncommon, lives closely confined in his apartment, and at A C. 1688. 1aR, in the month Yemazzul evvel, of the year 1104, departs out of this world. He lived fifty-two, and reigned forty years, five months, and fixteen days. He left, by different wives, leven fons, two of whom, Mustapha and Ahmed, were

advanced to the Empire : the rest died in their infancy.

CXCVI. He

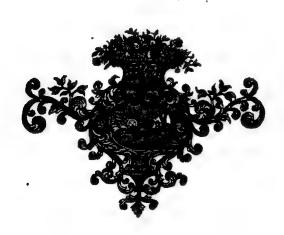
19 Mahome

CKCVI. He was a Prince estiment for table and could be of great clemency, and very happy, except the last pac years. There was the one thing which his enemies could represent him was asset, his immedicate love of hunting in the latter years of his reign, to the hoplest of the care of his Empire. the the bac one thing days He is reported by some to have been pulloned by his boother, Sulvin Almed, at the initigation of the Vizir Arabaji Ali Patha, who defined that retraining reat men should be put to death, and meeting, by Mahomet's advice, with a repulse from Sultan Abmed, fought revenge, and suborned Munejen Bashi (100), to foretell, from the stars, that Mahomet, having deposed his brother, would reascend the throne; by which means he induced Sultan Ahmed to hasten his death by posson. But, besides that it is usual at Constantinople, upon the decease of all the Emperors, to spread among the vulgar a sumour of their being poisoned, it is universally known that Mahomes, before he was deposed, was continually troubled with the gout in his hands and feet; to which was added the hypochondraick diffemper, occasioned by melancholy during his five years confinement, by which all his vital spirits were at last exhausted.

## Annotations.

(100) Munejin Bafos, I the chief Aftrologer. There are four officers in the inner preceptor 2. Hekim Effends, the chief phy-Othman court, that are reckoned to be ecclefiaftics, and if they leave the palace, are to be a Cadiulafker or Mollab of Confiants-

The End of the Reign of MAHOMET IV.







The REIGN of

# SOLIMAN II.

Twentieth Emission of the TURKS.

## BOOK IV. CHAP. II.

Sultan Solimen is obliged to afcend the imperial throne

I. CULTAN Machemes being deposed, Abstract Bufes (1) first goes to Soloman, still confined in his chamber, and, prostraing himself to the ground, pays the obeylance due to the Emperon, and desires him to come forth and ascend the Alasthman throne, recent by his brother's deposition, and offered him by the whole Massaman instint.

Soloman, contrary to the expectation of all, is extremely grieved at this metage, and says, "Why, in the name of the immortal God, do game emperon, and diffuse my tranquillity? Suffer me, I enter you, to pass in peace, in matcell, the few days I have to live, and let my brother rule the Orbinan Empire; for he was born to rule, but I to the study of eternal later Business for he was born to rule, but I to the study of eternal later Business for he was born to rule, but I to the study of eternal later Business for he was born to rule, but I to the study of eternal later Business, so he was born to rule, but I to the study of eternal later Business, so he was born to rule, but I to the study of eternal later Business, so he was born to rule, but I to the study of eternal later Business, so he was born to rule, but I to the study of eternal later Business, so he was born to rule, but I to the study of eternal later Business, so he was born to rule, but I to the study of eternal later Business, so he was born to rule, but I to the study of eternal later Business, so he was born to rule, but I to the study of eternal later Business, so he was born to rule, but I to the study of eternal later Business at sink is amazed at these words, but, recovering himself, continues to passe the Prince, alledging, the Vizits, Ulema, Nobles, and the whole Peacet a fact that Business and the substitute of the substitute at the substitute of the substitute at the substitute of th

## AMEGTATIONS

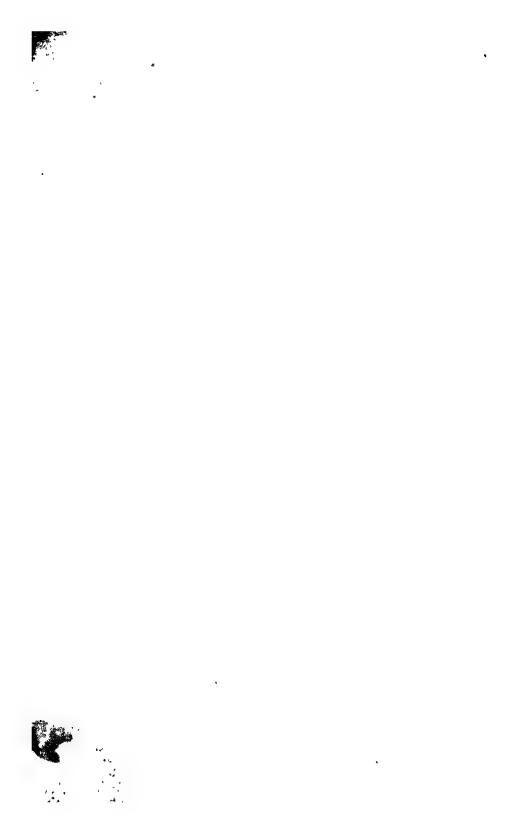
(1) Bostonis Bastil the which of the Bostonis, and Keeper of the Emperor's subsons. There are two of this name in the Gramons. Empire, one at Confantinople, and the other at Adrianople, because the Osmons. Emperors have palaces in both thus cities. And though since the time of Sultan Adsbonat Fatth, the Emperors have chosen Confantinople for the royal feat of the whole Empire, yet they often honour with their presence the former metropolis of the growing Othman dominion. These two Bostonis Bastin's are equal in honour and rank, but not in jurisdiction and sevenues. He at Adrianople has nothing entrusted to his care but the Emperor's palace at Adrianople, and the charge of the Sultan's Sons, when the resides in that place: but the other lastinople has moreover full jurisdictions.

tion over all the fea-coafts, from the mouth of the flames to Mount Aibss. Whenever the Emperor goes in his barge, his business is, either to go before the Sultan in his bost, and clear the way, or else to steer the Sultan's barge. He must know all the sea-coast, and the buildings standing thereon, and be able to answer any questions made him by the Sultan, concerning them or their owners; and as they are almost without number, nobody, but what has been a common Bostans, is qualified to bear that office. When the Sultan comes into his barge, he holds him under the arm, and is for that reason ranked among the Coltuk Vizirs (of which I shall give an account below) and cannot be dismissed from his office but with three Tugs.



Soliman, II.
Twentieth EMPEROR of TURKS,

11 the Year 1687.
From an Original in the Goraglio



" II, I would come forth (continues he) but am affaid of my biolitic." Ay The declared laft Boftamis Bafte, impetiont of delay, feye, " You mail give way, miell refplen-fill ar " dens Emperor, so the entreaties and withes of the Ma/sishan people:" and five of his browith these words forces him, as it were, out of the chamber, and feath him to therthe throne. When he came to the room where the throne used to be placed, he first, not without figns of fear, desires Bojtanji Bajbi and the door-Recepers to cake case, left his brother should be within, since he dreaded to appear in his presence. Being assured his brother was removed to another spartment, he at last mounts the throne, and is saluted Emperor by all the countiers.

III. The ceremony being performed, he immediately leaps from the throne, He share the as from an impure place, and demands Abaff, that is, water to cleanle his hands, an impure head, and feet. This being brought, he defers returning to the throne, and when places at he, the courtiers preis him to it, he puts his finger to his mouth, and enjoins with reluc-them filence (2). At last, notwithstanding his reluctance, he is again seated in the nobles to the throne, and, according to custom, admits the Ulema and Nobles to kis to kis his robe.

IV. He confirms the Vizir, Sievus Paste, in his post, and having presented him the Vizir in with an ermin veft, commands him to discharge the duties of his office faithfully, his post and to the utmost of his power compose the sedition of the army and people.

V. Upon Staves Palba's return to his palace, the Bulek Agains (3) first re- The rebellion verence him as Vizir, but afterwards demand their pay, and a new Bechstes (4), squin breaks

which Visir

## Annotations.

(2) filence] the Turks superstitiously obferve what their new Sultans, when they first mount the throne, say, ask, or command; and even with what action they begin their reign, and from thence guels at the Sultan's inclination, future actions and government, and very often are right in their conjectures. Certainly, as they inferred from Soliman's putting his finger to his mouth, and enjoining filence, that he would perform nothing memorable, fo it accordingly happened.

(3) Buluk Agalam, the commanders of the regiments of the Januzaries, and the fuperior officers that are made from amongst them, as Bashbuluk Basht, Kiebateri, Mahzur Age, Samplonys Balls, Zagaryi, Balbi, and Kulbiebali, are all called by one common name of Buluk Agalars. All the reguments also of the Spahi's are named Buluk, and

their officers Buluk Agalari.

(4) Bach/hi/h. This word denotes a gift bestowed out of mere kindness, but a customary gift, which cannot be reckoned alms. When, upon the death or deposition of their predecessor, the Sultans first mount the throne, they give a Bach/hills to all the choien troops that are at that time at Conftantinopie, except those belonging to the Bastos's, and this is called julus akelosis, the money of the new or of the renewed Empire. There are given to each Janizary twenty Leonines, and to every Spabi twenty-five; and if the payment is refuird or deferred, they may de-mand them as a debt: nay, the foldiers have often given up to the Sultans, when they were in streights, one or two Kys, or three months pay; but I never heard that they ever semitted the julus Bachfold. This was

first introduced into the Othman Empire by Soliman Camini, the author of all the regulations in that flare. It feems indeed, at first fight, to be an injury to the Empire, because the hope of obtaining the Bashforth is a perpetual cause of sedition in the greedy foldiers; and it has already been found by experience, that most of the rebellions and depositions of the Sultans, have been raised and carried on by nothing fo much as this, that the Janizaries, eager for a change in the government, have been, allured by the expectation of this Bachforft, to join in conspiracies with the Sultan's enemies. But whoever shall attentively consider the end of this law, and the legislator's design, will not be able fufficiently to admire his-divine prudence, and confummate knowledge in politics. For being willing to to fettle the Empire, as that it might not be exposed to any injuries from without, nor convultions from within and withal fearing left his fucceffors, blinded with the absolute power they had over their jubjects, should, by pride, tyranny, and other vices, disperse what he had been gathering together; he bound them by fuch a law, as might induce them to preferve the imperial dignity, and at the fame time deter them from evil, for fear of diffurbances, if the love of virtue was not fufficient to engage them thereto. For he forefaw, that necessity would oblige them to take particular care, that nothing unjust or tyrannical should be committed within their dominions, in order to take off from the malecontents, altured by a reward to rebellion, the least occasion of finding fault with any of the Emperor's actions: and, by that means, the fagacious foldiers

fight so be-glycates the foldiers have judge, or the beginning of a new The Vizis lesing mothing remaining but catalogues either in the foreign medic arealisty munico the officers for some time with words, and then sours to Separate the chief authors of the deflurbances from the rest of the icators, under the presence of promoting them, and to fend them to cities at a ear diffence. By this conduct, the hatred conceived by the foldiers against the ligit, when he attempted to confirm Sultan Mahomet in the theone, is revived. And therefore affembling in the Ores Jame, they take arms, and in companies run through the freets, crying out, the Vizir ought to be put to death as an enemy of Sultan Soloman, a deferter, and a violator of his promifes.

VI. The Vizir, hearing of their affembling, and suspecting the case, retired with his officers to his palace, and, shutting the gates, resolved to die fighting. Soon fafter the feditious approach, furround the palace, and cry out for the gates to be opened, since they had something to ampart to the Vizir. Siavus Passa, being assured of their designs, denies them entrance, and, as they attempt to break open the gates, repels them with the arms he had found by chance in the palace, and kills about twenty Januzanes. The foldiers, more enraged by the death of their companions, rush with their whole force upon the gates, and, breaking them open, enter the palace. The Vizir shoots several with arrows from his chamber, which was opposite to the gate his officers, about an hundred in number, with their arms prevent the rebels from ascending, and force them into the Devanchane (5); and when they wanted arrows, with drawn swords they

#### ANNOTATION &.

keeping a watchful eye over the publick corruptions, out of a defire of gain, would give prudent governors to the state, who should be sensible, that, upon the least abuse of their power, they were liable to

be deprived of the fame.

(5) Divanchane, the House of Judgment, or the place where the people's complaints are heard. There is upon the fecond floor of the Vizir's palace a very large space, which has walls on three fides of it; but the fourth side, where stands the stair-case, is supported by pillars; and it is so contrived, that the pleaders may be the better heard, and more light let in; and those who stand upon the stairs hear what is done above. In the middle of the wall, facing the entry, is an arch made, in the upper part whereof is written, in golden letters, the confession of the Mabometan Faith, which I have so often mentioned. Under it is a feat placed for the Vizir, in which he fits after the European manner, with his legs hanging down. On the fouth wall there is a lamp painted, which is a fign of a Mibrah, or altar, towards which the Turks are to turn their faces when they fay their prayers. For the contending parties being often hindered from repairing to a Jami, to fay the Namaz at the usual time, while they are waiting for the iffue of their cause, that fign was invented for their conveniency, that nothing w hinder them, upon the cryer's notice, in faying their prayers, even in the midft the noise that is made in the place. the sorm of judicial proceedings among rks, is in this manner. Four times

every week, namely, on Fridays, Saturdays, Mondays, and Wednesdays, the Vizir is obliged to appear in the Divan, and adminifter justice to the people, unless he be hindered by very important affairs, which feldom happens. But if he is hindered, the Chaush Bashs supplies his place. Sunda s and Tuesdays are fet apart for the Sulran's Divan, or Galibe Divan. Thui fdays are days of rest, from whence they are called datil Giuni The Vizir has for assistants, on Fridays both the Kaziulaskurs, the Anatolian on his left hand, and the Rumelian on his right; the former fitting only as hearer, and the latter as judge: on Saiurdays, Ga ate Mollass, or the judge of Pera on Mon-days, Esub Mollass and Isksuder Mollass on Wednesdays, Istambol Effendiss. Before they come, both the parties are placed by the Chaush \* Bash: in two rows, with a Chaush \* as a guard, and are ordered to wait for the Vizir's coming, holding their Arzubal before them. When the Vizir is come, and has commanded the gold cloth, called Lifekir, on which he writes, to be firead, the first suitor on the left hand gives his petition to his Chaush \* The Chaush \* presents it to the Chaush Bashs, or other of his officers, fuch as are Chaufblar \* Katibi, and Chaufhlar \* emini, and this gives it to Buink Teshkieress, who stands on the Vizir's left fide. The Tefbkieren reads the Arzubal with a loud voice, after which both parties are publickly heard. The reasons being examined on both fides, the affeffors, whoever they are, fland up, and briefly furaming up the whole matter, declare what fentence



floutly defend their mafter. A warm and bloody confide enfired, above an hundred and fifty of the confpirators are killed upon the flairs, and as many wounded; but at last number overcomes valour, and many of the Vizir's party are slain, the rest fly to the top of the house, and from thence throw themselves into the street. His people being dispersed, the Vizir again retires to his chamber, and in the door, with his fword, kills twelve Janizaries; but at last, rather wearied with conquering, than conquered himfelf, he is beat down and killed by the foldiers, who cut his body in pieces, and throw them out of the windows into the firect.

VII. After this, excited by a rage unheard of among the Tarks, they break With mhord into the women's apartment, and, cutting the noics, hands and feet of the Vizir's of crueky they fall upon wife (6) and fifter, drag them naked through the firects, and commit other exe- his work crable crimes upon the flaves and female-fervants. The Vizir's family being de and would fitroyed, they rove, like ravenous wolves, through the city, and kill and plunder of the city, all they meet, as if partners with the Vizir in his guilt. A dreadful face of if they had things appears, and the whole city would have been ruined, if the Ulema, first vented by the authors of the tumult, had not composed it: for they, perceiving the danger, Ulema immediately affemble at the imperial palace, and there display Mabomet's San laks Shersf\*, and, by the cryers, proclaim that all Musulmans, who would not . Holy flanbe effected infidels, should meet under that standard. The citizens and inha-dard bitants of Constantinople first hasten thither; and then the Janizaries, that they might not appear rebels, and regardless of the standard of their prophet, lay down their arms, and submit to it, crying out, they had armed, not against the Sultan, but his perfidious enemy, the Vizir, whom they had punished; and therefore were now ready to do whatever the Sultan should think proper, since they had given him power of life and death over them.

VIII. The tumuit being thus appealed, Coja Ismail Pasha (7) is appointed Coga Ismail Vizir, and the rebels return to their quarters. But this calm lasted not long; Pass made Vizir i but a for a few days after the Sultan commands the Vizir to endeavour to feize pri-fedition again vately the leaders of the rebellion, and put them to death. While the Vizir is breaking out. attempting this with great carneliness, the Janizaries again take arms, and calling of his post. an affembly in Orta Jami, threaten destruction to both the Sultan and Vizir.

## ANNOTATIONS.

ought, according to the divine judgment, to be passed, which, if the Vizir approves of, the Tefhkieress fets his hand in the upper vacant place of the Arzubal, and the Vicir confirms the fentence, by subscribing the word Sah (certain ) But when the Vizir doubts of the justice of it, he hears the cause a second time, and if he finds that the affetfor has wilfully given a wrong judgment, he orders the parties a Hugget, or copy of the sentence, according to his own opinion. But in such a case, the affestors very earnestly maintain the justice of their opinion, as they not only may, but also are obliged to do; because if a judge among the Turks has once been found guilty of injustice, he can neither keep his place, nor ever expect to get another. While these things are doing on the left, the first man on the righthand-row delivers his Arzubal by the forementioned persons to the Kiuchuk a Telbkierest, who first runs it over, that he may nor be at a stand when he comes to read it, and as foon as the cause in hand is dispatched, then he reads it aloud. And thus they proceed till all the causes are heard: Ұ. 16.

nor can the Divan rule till night comes, or there are no more causes to hear. In the same place the Spabs also receive their pay in the Vizir's presence: but the Janizaries have their falary paid them in the Galibe Divan, or the Emperor's court, in puries; and these they carry to the Kulkiebaia, who divides it among the troops, according to

every one's allowance.

(6) Vizir's wife, I fine was the daughter of the great and famous Vizir, Kioprili Ab-med Pasha, and sister of Kioprili Mustapha Pajba, who shortly after retook Belgrade from the Germans. The cruelty exercised on these by the enraged soldiers, turned more to their infamy than the rebellion it felf, and the death of the innocent Vizir.

(7) Coja Ifmail Pafba, ] Old Ismail Pafba. He was at that time Aga of the Janizaries, and that the commotions might be the more easily appealed, and the Januzaries pacified with less trouble, he was made Vizir; but upon their fecond rebellion, he was, at the perfusiion of Kioprili Musiaphs Pafba, delivered up as a facrifice to them, and banished to Rhodes,

4 X

Stab farmer, perceiving the florm would fall upon his head, by the advice of Majoriti Maforpha Pajba, throws the whole blame upon the Vizir (8) spreading descript that the Vizir, by his own authority, without the Sultan's knowledge or command, had made that attempt.

Tekkiurdag by Mufapha Pajba made Vizor in his

Rgen Pafta schole in Ru-melia; ind Giedul Pafta

The Janiza-

ries laying a-

bellious de-figns, defeat

the rebel Greduk,

IX. And to gain credit to his words, he deprives him of his post, and banishes him to Rhades, appointing Tekkenrdaghy Mustapha Pasha Vizir in his room. These slames in the capital spread their fatal effects also into the rest of the

X. In Rumelia, Egen Osman Pasta (9), hearing Mahomet was deposed, and succeeded by Soliman, affembles a considerable body of Spahis, and engages them to fend, with one consent, an Arzabal to the Vizir, and demand the Bachforfor Julus due so them. The Vizir pretending inability, and answering that the payment was to be delayed for some time, they raise what was due to them upon the inhabitants of Rumelia, and under that pretence plunder all Bulgaria as far as Sophia. In Asia, Gieduk Pasha inspires his troops with seditious designs, and being affifted with several thousand Freebooters, threatens to attack Constantinople it felf. Not content with this, having plundered and subdued all the provinces of the Anadol Beglerbegise, he marches his army to Ismid Greehid \* (10), and prepares to besiege Chrysopolas, which he thought would be more easy to take, because the Janizaries seemed more sollicitous about their domestic than foreign encmies, and such as were equal to themselves in guilt.

XI. But the Januaries laying aside their rage, in the night before Chry. fide their re- Jopolis was to be attacked, pals over, and furround the city with trenches,

## ANNOTATIONS.

(8) blame upon the Vizir] That supreme, and fometimes almost unlimited authority over the whole Empire, which the Sultans are wont to grant to the Vizirs, might indeed be attended with very dangerous consequences in other states; but it is the chief, if not the only support of the Othman Empire For, besides that it is in the Sultan's power to cut off the Vizir whenever he pleases, unless his power has got too deep a root by long possession : what chiefly hinders the Vizits from railing commotions is, that they are sensible they never will establish their fortune by the Sultan's deposi-And they can never place fo facred a diadem upon their own heads, by reason of the fingular veneration the Turks have for the Othman race; nor promife to them-felves the perpetual favor of the Sultan's fuccessor, who never will place his confidence in a man that has been treacherous to his predecessor. When troubles arise, this is the only shield whereby the Sultans can defend themselves against the complaints and murmurs of the people, namely, by throwing the whole blame of the ill management of affairs upon the Vizir, and facrificing him to the enraged multitude. That remedy has been feldom known to fail, nay, would never fail, did not the Sultans somethat, out of too great a love for the Vizits, neglect to punish them, and soften the depondented people by other proper and For many considerate persons ak, the Tarks would never have proceed-

ed so far as to depose Sultan Makomet IV. a Prince famous for his long reign and many victories, had he not been too much bent to protect Amy Soliman Pafta, (who had, according to the Turkilb customs, forfeited his head, because the Imperialists had in 1686 taken Buda, whilft he was looking on, and defeated him near Steam, and not put him to death till affurs were in a dri perate condition neither would Multapha have been turned out, had he but delivered Rams Mabemed Pajba and the Mufts, with their fons, into the rebels hands

(9) Egen Ofman Pasha, ] a man noted for his robberies in Apa He was at hift appointed Basha in the neighbourhood of Cardagby, with two horse tails, and when the Olbman Empire was milerably diffrested both within and without, he plundered all the adjacent provinces with the troops under his command, which were reckoned the floutest in all Asia; nay, he threatned to destroy Iskinder, and even the royal city. but at last being reconciled to Sultan Solt man, and having obtained his pardon, he brought with him above a thousand Freebooters against the Germans, and yet he was put to death as foon as he came to Confantinople.

(10) Izmid Guechid\*,] fo is the gulph of Nicomedia called, that reaches from the Propontis to the Euxine Sea. The name of Giechid\*, that is, Passage, was given to it, because the way leading from Asia to Confantinople lies near that gulph,

upon which Gieduk Paste retires with his party, and is soon after deseated by the bravery of the Othman army.

XII. While the whole Aliothman Empire is thus shaken by intestine commoderia and tions, the imperial army subdues the most formidable bulwarks of Hungary, other cines of Agria, the strongest forties of Upper-Hungary, after four months close siege, is rendered to obliged by famine, to furrender to the Imperialists on the 20th of the month Mu- the Imperiaharrem of the year 1099 The same tate befalls Mongat, a castle almost im- H 1000. pregnable in Upper Hungary, which had been some years before not only fortified by Tekeli with a strong garrison and new works, but also made by him the repository of his wite, treasures, and records. He being siezed as I have related. and Cassovia lost, his wife, the heroine of our age, had affembled there what forces the could, and flored the place with plenty of provision, in hopes to defend it till the war should be simshed, or the Turkish army march to her relief,

XIII After the Turkish forces were driven out of the neighbourhood, Count The Impens-Teres in the year 1098, had attempted likewise to subdue their castle, and for taken Mingel, several months assaulted it with cannon and bombs. But finding it ineffectual, tarry away on account of the heroic valour and fingular firmness of that Lady, ( who defer- Tehrif's wife ved commendation, if the had exerted her great qualities in defence of her country) he had blocked up the castle at a distance, and cut off all provision to such a degree, that Tekeli's Princels, conquered rather by famine than the enemy's tword, on the 14th of the month Rebuil ewvel, of the year 1699 , furren-

dred herfelf and the castle to the mercy of the Emperor.

XIV When the accounts of these missoriums are brought to Constantinople, The relief they again inspire the common people and loidiers with feditious purposes. They the Turks athad been in hopes, that fince Sultan Malomet, author of the unjust war was tempted new depo ed, and the government conferred upon Soleman, a Prince, as they imagi-rebulion ned, of great fanctity, that the divine weath would be appealed, and the enemics repelled, who feemed to threaten the inner provinces of the Empire they found themselves deceived in their expectation, they throw libels into the Jumi and Divan, containing reproaches against the Sultan's negligence, and other divices both in profe and verte, by which not only the Vizir and Nobles, but the Sultan lamich was fharply fatyrized. The Vizir very carefully watches these th he anders a guard day and night to pais through the city, prevents nightly ance bucs, in which he knew fuch weapons were generally contrived, and fiezes force persons, who had unwassly attered, in publick, fatvical expections, but not to alit ovi to the flames, he difinified them without punishment

AV. At laft, the Sultan's natural timoroutinets produces what courage could The feature france have done, the best remedy for this evil. For Soliman, prompted by his soliton ap ten, relolves to leave Conflantmople, and withdraw from the authors of the le-seatch fe detron, which defen being approved, under pietence of changing the air, he re-direct, when mos to Adrianople with his nobles and whole court. Indeed the people of would scarce Constantinople seemed to have cause to complain of the ill administration of af- hive had that fairs, though they did not impute it to the proper persons. For how much the trea ury was exhausted, and to how great a necessity that opulent Empire was reduced, evidently appeared from what happened in that journey. For when the Sultan was just ready to depart, the mafter of the horse comes to him, and tells him, there are not in the stables so many horses, mules, and camels, as were neceffary for the whole court. The Sultan, as he was of a mild temper, orders what was wanted to be hired, and the money to be paid by the Tefterdar. He being fent for, and declaring, there was not so much money in the treasury, Soliman commands the gold and filver vessels and jewels to be fold in the publick market, and with the money his necessities to be supplied. Thus with difficulty he departs from Conftantinople upon hired horses and chariots, and by this He goes to means prevents the tedition just ready to break out.

XVI. When he is come to Adrianople, he pretends to apply himself wholly he fends amto the care of the war, but as the law of the Koran and superstitious devotions bassadors to were much more agrecable to him, than arms and foldiers, he fends Zuulficar to define

from whence Effendi pesce.

(11), clerk of the Janizaries, and Alexander Maurocordates (12) interest the Divan, ambaliadors to the Emperor of Germany, under pretence of

ARROTATION &

(12) Zunificar Effendi] A native of Con-Antimople, who was in great reputation at the Others court on account of his learning. Besides his personal virtues, the place of Yengicheri Effendis or Clerk of the Janizaries, which he held, rendered him confiderable at court. That officer's business is, to keep all the lifts of the Janizaries, to give each of them a Testumonium fubscribed with his own hand, to call them all by name to receive their pay, and in fhort to confirm whatever is tranfacted between the Janizaries, by fetting his name thereto, by which means it is incredible what vast riches he can acquire by lawful and unlawful ways. For, besides his Salary, which is pretty large, he re-ceives considerable presents from the Janizary-officers whenever they are promoted, and that oftener happens amongst them than any where elfe, partly by reason of the great number of officers in that body, and also from the frequent changes of the Age of the Janizaries; for it is the cultom every where in Turkey, not to appear before any Clerk without a present. Moreover, when the Janizaries receive their pay, he gives in the Pufula (or Note containing each Janizary's name, which all of them are obliged to have, ) of many that are dead or abient, and by that means gets their pay for himself: Not to mention other ways of inriching himself, in which no people are equal to the Turks for invention. He left one fon, Ofman aga, who after the death of Daltaban, was, by the interest of Maurocordasus, promoted to the place of Kiebaia.

(12) Maurocordaius] A man fo well known to all Europe, that there is no occasion to give a long history of his life. however for the fake of the curious I shall add fomething concerning his pedigree, of which there are only uncertain accounts. In the reign of Murad IV. famous for the taking of Bagdad, there lived at Constantinople, a very rich Greek, known by his regultred name of suspheres, (Scarlates) who was Serges, or purveyor to the court for sheep and oxen. That employment is commonly given to some Greek, because they can more easily buy from the Christi-We, the sheep and oxen that are to supply Sultan's and the Janizaries kitchins. wing by that business raised a very large une, he began to be known, and to fome interest at court, as is very easy a people. There was at that time t enmity between Ballius Prince of and Matthew Prince of Walachia,

each endeavouring to thrust the other out of his respective Principality; but because they were both rich and powerful at court, they hurt only their own treasures. Scarlates was of Bafilius's fide, and making use of his credit with the Vizir and courtiers to Matthew's prejudice, raifed him daily almost insuperable obstacles. Matthew atparty; but all in vain. At last, upon the death of his wife, he demands his only daughter Laxandra in marriage, hoping, that alliance in blood, would eafily do, what money had not been able to effect. Scarlatos giving his confent, Matthew has the Espousals solemnized at Constantinopie, by their Capukiebaia in a splendid manner, and fends fome Barons and Baroneffes to Conftantinople with a grand retinue to fetch the bride. But, a few days after the efpoulals, Loxandra falls ill of the smallpox, which not only spoiled her beauty, but also destroyed one of her eyes. Scarlatos carefully conceals that blemish, and fends his daughter to her spouse with a large portion, bidding her keep herfelt veiled after the Turkish fashion during her journey, and not show her face to any perfon, till after the marriage ceremony was over, hoping, that if that was once per-formed, the Prince would be obliged to keep her for his wife, whether he would or no. She veil'd herfelf in her journey without any fuspicion; but arriving at Targovistium, where she was received into magnificent Lodgings, when the would permit none to come to her, except the maidfervants she had brought from home, the Prince suspecting something in that accreey fo unufual among Christians, asked leave first for himself alone, and then for some of the Baronesses to wait upon her, but he was refused both, the young Lady pretending, her father had laid a firset injunction upon her, and charged her with horrid imprecations, not to show her face to any person as long as she continued a virgm; which injunction included not only men but also women. The Prince, either out of good-nature, or for fear of her father's power, did not press her any further, but only intimated, that he guessed by her being so shy of showing herself, she had some imperfection or blemish in her body: To which the artfully replied, the had all that was requifite in a virgin, but if the Prince repented of his engagement, fhe was ready that very hour to return to her country; for that Scarlates's daughter would never want a husband. The Prince doceived

3

of informing him of his election, but in reality to fettle a peace upon what terms they could procure.

XVII. The

## ANNOTATIONS.

deceived by the young Lady's imart aniwer, immediately made very great preparations for his wedding. She is brought veiled from her lodgings to the palace, and from thence to the Church When the Prince, after the marriage-ceremony, comes into his bed-chamber, and fees that his bride was very ugly, and had loft her right eye, he fends her immediately untouched, or as others fay, two days after, from the palace to her old lodgings, and has her conveyed honorably to her father, with her whole dower, and the wedding prefents, which were full to amount to an hundred and fifty puries. Scarlates took this very hemoully, and fought many ways to be revenged for the contempt of his daughter, but his death prevented his deligns, for a few days after his daughter's return, he is stabled by a Janizary, faid to be bribed by British Prince of Moldavia. After his d ith, Lovindra, who was both a virgin and a widow, remained many years unmarried, though the was very rich. For the Gir h nobles then at Conilanting le, did not acts for riches, but beauty, and cared not to purchife money it the price of fo difa-greeable a mairinge, and those that were of mean extraction the flighted, as being the darghter of one of the most considerable men of his time, and a Prince's (poule. I sere cime at that time to Constantinople, one Parte is Main milatu, a Chain, commoly calle Pintels, who was indeed nohie oy birth, but it luced to that poverty, the he was torced to fill in Conflantino fle the fills, called by the Inch., Hetay II we obecause a till, handforms, and vill of young mon, and born of no inearly and timely in Cho And he had t per and otherwince in that illand, but not lugge, for it is fufficient there to make a man noble, it he has a vineyard and a that a deitended to him from his anceftors, because by reason of the infillness of the It al, no one can cappy large possessions. The mem coming tometimes to Loxandra's north to fell goods, the fell in love with hup, and without confulting any one, refilled to murry him, to tending for a parefu oriett, the was married to him privately at her own house, according to the cerank is of the Church. From this martime we born two tons to Pantels, Alexandr in 1 John John was hardly known to any Front win, both because he was naturally of a weak understanding, and thereto e made no progress in the ciences; and because he had no employment at court, not we engaged in any affirm, he led a priva life; and died in the fame, leaving N '. 16.

two fons Scarlates and Confiantine, not more famous than himself. As for Alexander, he was fent at twelve years of age to Padus, where he applied himself so closely to his studies for fourteen years, that he was not only created Doctor of Phylick and Philosophy, but also was thought worthy, at his return to his own country, to fill the chair of professor of physick and philoso-phy in the patriarchal school. But this bringing him but a small income, he also began to practife physick among the Turks, and acquired so much fame, that he came in a short time to have most of the Great men for his patients And to get to himfelt a greater name, the Turks not knowing his father, he called himfelf, not the grandion, but the fon of the famous Saruji Scarlatos, which the Constantinopolitans, who are little inquisitive in such matters, easily believed, and gave him the name of Skierlet ogli, that is, Scarlatos's fon; from thence he took occasion to bear that name in Europe, as I have observed he does, in the Diploma of the Emperor Leopold, where he is called Alexander of the noble family of Scarlatos. In the mean time Panagiotes Nicussus, chief interpreter of the Othman court, dying, that office was be-flowed by Kioprils Abmed Pasha upon Alexander, on account of his great skill in the oriental languages, and he enjoyed it thirty years with some variety of fortune. For when his great patron Cara Mustapha Pahim Pajba threatned him with death, because he was thought to have disswaded Cara Mustapha from taking Vienna by force of arms, and to being turned out of his place, deprived of his goods, and thrown into priton, he was succeeded by one Sefferaga, a renegado Christian, who had embraced Mahometism. But Cara Ibrahim finding in a few months, that Sefferage was unfit for the place, restored Alexander to his former honour, and gave him an opportunity of amasting more riches, and of growing more in favour at court than before. Under Kuprili Mustapha Pasha, he exposed himself to very great danger by his embally to Vienna, and that would entirely have been the cause of his ruin, had he not by his many promises induced the court of Vienna to retain him, under divers pretences, till the death of Kioprili. When Kioprili was dead, he returned to Constantinople with Zuulficar Effends, and his good fuccels at the treaty of Carlowstz procured him so much esteem at the Othman court, that he was honoured with the new name and title of Mubarrems Efrar, that is, 4 Y



The Visit of L. III. The Visit also, Tekkiurdaghy Mustapha Pasha (13), either out of sear of har spand the Germans, or apprehension left the Sultan, during his absence, should be perfueded by his courtiers to put him to death, declines the command of the army, and appoints Rejeb Pasta (14) Seraskier of Hungary.

The Imperialife beliege Alba Raulis, and take it, with many other crues, + May 8 H. 1099.

XVIII. But before the Turkifb forces took the field, the Impenalifts had blocked up Alba Regalis the whole winter, to that on the nincteenth of the month Rejeb +, of the year 1099, the garrison, compelled by famine, offered the keys to the conqueror. Caraffe had by firatagem affaulted Lippa, and taken the city by florm, and obliged the castle in a few days to surrender, and soon after wrested Solmoz and Logosh from the Turks Caraffa, to whom the command of the whole army was committed during the Elector of Bavaria's abicince, after A C. 1688. having taken Illok and Peterwaraden from the Turks, had fent Walles and Henfler with several regiments towards the Tibiscus, to seize Tiral, a castle upon that river, because, till that was taken, it would be difficult to besiege Belgrade. When they approach the castle, the garrison, prepared indeed for defence, but being vigorously pressed, on the twenty eighth of the month Ramagan, surren-

The Elector of Bavaria Subdues &. wender and

+ July 30

XIX. The neighbouring country being thus fettled, the Imperial army, commanded by the Elector of Bavarea, turn their whole force against Belgrade; but in their way are opposed by the Turks at the isle of Sabats, who endeavour to prevent their passage over the Save, but are repulted by the foren off. troops with great loss. These obstacles being surmounted, the whole aims march to Belgrade, in order to attack the Turks, who had pitched their camp found the city, and fortified it with a trench. But the Scraskici, without will investig approach of the Germans, fets fire to his camp and the lower part of the city and, reinforcing the garrison, retires with the rest of in army to Simandria The Germans seizing what the Turks had left, on the thateenth of the month. Sheval+, lay fiege to the city on all fides, and opening their trench s, p of cute it with the utmost vigour. Mean time, being informed that the Tarks had abandoned Semandria, the capital of Servia, they fund thither a thou and Hun garians, who with ease take the city, definite of desence. At length the Ger-

## ANNOTATION S.

Keeper of Secrets, which he interpreted by the Greek word its required to be flyled after οικλαματροποίΦ by the Princes of Moldavia and Walachia, and other Chiistrans subject to the Othman Empire. He received some disturbance in his old age from Daltaban Mustapha Pasha, who endeavoured to obstruct the peace of Carlowitz, and kill the authors of it, as if, contrary to their orders, they had made fome concessions to the Germans, and especially to the Poles. Daltaban being flain by the Mufti's contrivance, his favourers and adherents were so exasperated at it, that they rais'd a rebellion, and infifted upon having Maurecordatus delivered up to them which Sultan Mustapha would have been forced to do, had not Maurocordatus retired to Sozopolis to his relations. But the confpirators being dispersed by the prudent management of Sultan Abmed, and the rebellion appealed, he returned with his fon to Constantinople in a monk's habit; and being restored by the Sultan to all his honours and riches, lived till we year 1700, towards the end of which he riches two fons, and two daughters,

1 245 t

der upon condition of having leave to depart

Nuclas, John, A exarera, and Helena 11c had a third fon, named Scarlates, who was chief cup bearer of Wair ha, and fon in-law to Conflantine Bran ovan, Prince of Il amenia, but he died before his father, and without iffue, being a very hopeful young min. Nuclas, upon his father's being fent to Carlowitz with the title of Mubariem, erar, was appointed Bashterjiman, or chief interpreter to the court, and after his father's death was created Prince of Mollavia, and is now Despot of Walachia, being highly in favour at court. John was promoted after his brother to the place of chief riterpreter, which he at pretent enjoys, and is the handfomest person of his time.

(13) Telkiurdaghy Mustapha, a native of Rodoftus, called by the Turks, Takkturday raifed from a Janizary to the dignity of Vi zir, but he diftinguished himself by no re-

markable action,

(14) Rejeb Pasha, he belonged formerly to Ainest Soliman, and by him, whilst Vizir, was constituted Chaush \* Bash:, and at last being fent to the Hungarian army with three Tags, and the title of Seraskier, he lost both his army and his life by his excessive Superstition

mans, having demolished the walls of Belgrade, on the eleventh of the month + Ziulcade surround the city, and after a sharp battle of six hours, force the Turkish + Aug. 26. soldiers from the walls, and penetrate into the city. The garrison, in despair, endeavour to retreat into the castie; but so uncautiously, that the Germans briskly pursuing and mixing with them, seize the gate. A siercer battle ensues than the former, and at last the garrison, as 'tis faid, confisting of nine thousand men, are all put to the fword by the Germans.

XX. When the city was taken, the Turkish Ambassadors come and declare The Turkish they are sent both to acquaint the Germans with the election of Sultan Soll-come to the man, and to fettle a peace, defiring fome persons might be named by the Impe-Bleftor of rialis, to whom they might communicate what they had in commission. The Belgrade, Elector of Bavaria answers, he is general of the Emperor's army, and not his countellor, and fent by him to subdue Servia and Bulgaria, and not to make peace it they had any thing to propose to his Imperial Majesty, they must go to Vienna, and open their commission.

XXI The Prince of Raden had no less success with another part of the Im- The Duke of perial army in Bofnia. As he attempted to pass the river Unna, he was op- cen in Bosh poted by a confiderable body of Turks, which having vigoroutly attacked, he not only defeated, but purited them to briskly, that they abandoned Gradifea and Costaniza Proceeding further, he was met at the little city of Brod, on the tenth of the month Ziulcade \*, by the Pasha of Bosma with the whole army, \* Ang 25. who, the same day, was sourced with such loss, that five thouland Turks, with their general, were flain

XXII Mean while, the Venetians carry on the war in other parts with doubt- The various ful success In the Morea, the Scraskier is before them in the campain, and success of the obliges the garrifon of Athens to abandon the city with great loss. The Venetian aimy soon after march to Egribox, and, passing the narrow sea which divides the island from the Continent, lay close fiege to the city; but, by the difagreement of the officers, and the bravery of the belieged, are obliged to retreat Upon which Count Coning smark, the general, eminent for his valour, who had been the infirument of almost all the victories gained by the Venetians in the Morea, fell fick and died

XXIII On the other hand, in Dalmatia, Kain, of which Steaglik, the de-The Venetiars poled Sopha of Bosma, was governor, with several thousand soldiers, is ta-in Dalmatia ken, and the castles of Verlicea, Quonigrad, and Grassach\*, are subdued by the Vinetians

XXIV. In the mean time, the Turkish ambassidors Zuulsicar Effends and Man. The Turkish recordatus were come to Vienna, and being introduced to the Emperor in the coning to name of the Sultan, without any mention of peace, presented the letters Julus Vienna, pro-Name (15), informing him of the election of Soliman to the Othman throne, of articles for hoping the Imperial court would first propose a peace, and so render the nego-place. tiation more easy to them. But when they find nothing mentioned on the Emperor's part with respect to that point, they offer to Leopold two setts of articles tor peace, namely, if a short truce only were defired, all Hungary should contimile in the hands of the Germans, Transplvama be tributary to both Empires, Cuminies, with its walls demolished, be restored to the Poles, and Belgrade to the Turks: but it a peace were more agreeable, some part of Hungary, besides Belgrade, should be restored to the Othman Empire.

XXV. The Emperor having confulted with the ambassadors of the rest of the The Mind contederated princes, returns this answer, that though from the present situation fed by the of affairs he had great hopes not only of recovering Hungary, but also of sub-Emperor. duing the whole Othman Empire, yet he was ready to agree to a peace, provided

## ANNOTATIONS.

(15) Julu: Name, ] fo are the Sultan's let-Pashas, and to the neighbouring Princes of the most sublime new dominion.

with whom he is at peace, to notify his acters commonly called which he fends to the ceffion to the throne. they are properly Pashas, and Begs dignified with the title of called Names julust bumayun, i. e. the letters



the Lingdom of Hungary, with the provinces belonging thereto, Sclavonia, Constia, Bosnia, Servia, Bulgaria, Transfilvania, be refigned to him, Moldavia and Walachia remain free, the exercise of the Roman-Catholick religion be permitted in all parts of the Turkifb Empire, and the Franciscan fryars put in possesfion of the Holy Sepulchre at Jerusalem, and Tekels be delivered up to him. The Poles demand, that the antient boundaries of their kingdom be reflored, and all Crim-Tartary, Moldavia, Walachia, and the whole country extending on both fides of the Borysthenes as far as the Danube religned to them; and to show themselves greater friends to religion than the other confederates, they infift, that all the Christians, who lived under the Turks b government, be exempt from tribute. The Venetiens besides the Morea, and the cities and isles in their possession demand the sea-coast of Negropont from Coreyra to Corenth, and part of Dalmatia, with the demolition of the havens of Dulcigno and Antivari

The King of France diltwades the Sultan from this peace.

XXVI. The ambaffadors immediately inform Soliman by a courier of the anfwer of the Christian Princes, and defire to be directed in what manner to reply And undoubtedly the peace would have been settled, if the most Christian Sun had not animated the waining Moon with his light, and prevented her from being totally darkened by the German arms. For the King of France, who had beheld with a jealous eye the delivery of Germany, and the victories of the Christians in Hungary, when he sees the imperial army had broken down all the fences with which Constantinople was defended, and was very near overturning the Othman Empire, is feized with envy, and though he has no just cause, proclaims war against the Emperor, and draws the German forces from the Danube to the Rhine But that he might not turn the whole burthen of the war from the Turks upon himself, he advices the Sultan by Chateau-Nouveau his ambassador at Constantinople, not to make peace with the Germans, fince the next year he would with a firong army penetrate into the heart of Germany, and endeavour, that both the Padishahi's might in conjunction act against the Germans, and he had now four hundred thousand men ready for that expedition

He promises to divide the Empire of and the Sultan

All pretences W r is renewed, and the rehels deflat ed in Afra

The Turk

XXVII He adds, if the event should answer his wishes, he would reserve to himself Vienna with all Germany, but reftore Hungary to the Sultan. These promifes revive the drooping Turks, and fill them with fuch hopes of fueces German be. promites revive the urooping a root, much that the Sultan neglecting the ambaffadors, whom he had fent to defire peace, thought of nothing but war.

XXVIII. Wherefore he first applies himself to settle affairs at home, and as of peace being foon as he heard, the Germans were retired to winter quarters, fends the greatest laid aside, the part of his army against the two rebels, Egen Ofman Pasha and Greduk Pasha who had almost the whole year disturbed the Othman Empire. They bravely at tack, defeat, and take the ravagers prifoners, and bringing them to Constantinople, deliver the Othman state from this intestine disorder.

XXIX. Moreover to avert the danger, which threatned Greece from the Ve nelian arms, and in some measure secure the southern provinces, he sets Libeof the Mar. reus Geralchars (16) at liberty, who had been confined in the gallies, and ap-

## ANNOTATIONS.

(16) Liberins Geralchari ] He is better known to the Europaans by the name of of Liberaks, which is a corruption of the word Liberius, according to the manner of the Greeks, he was a native of Mania, the Laconia of the antients, from whence he went in his youth, and ferved in the Venestan fleet. Afterwards he fitted out a Pigate thip, and, under various colours, committed feveral robberies at fea for fome Being at last taken by the Turks, is fent to the gallies, where he lived thly for seven years. At the end of the perswaded the Turks, that if they

fet a Christian Prince over the Moreans, they would all in a fhort time revolt from the Venetians, and return to the obedience of their former mafters For this advice he not only obtained his freedom, (the Turks, diffressed and harassed on all sides, being willing to try every thing for their prefervation,) but, with the title of Maniabegi, was honoured with a Sanjak but no Tug, and fent into the Morea. But before he departed from Constantinople, he married Anaftatia of the noble Moldavian family of Bubusestis, and widow of Ducas Prince of Moldavia (who died in his captivity in Popoints him Prince of Mania or the Mannetta, in imitation of the despots of Walachia and Moldavia, though with a lower degree of authority. He was induced to this as well by the success of his arms in Moldavia, which convinced him, that a Christian governor could much more easily keep the subjects of his own religion in obedience, as by the affurances of Liberius, who perswaded him, that all the people of the Morea were alienated from the Venetians, on account of their endeavouring to impose upon them the Roman-Catholick religion. If therefore a Prince of the eaftern church was made governor of the Morea, they would foon be engaged to abandon the Venetians, and submit again to the Othman dominion.

XXX. These affairs being thus settled, Soliman, to terrify the enemy, and The Sultan animate his own men, declares, he will command the army in person against promise to the Germans, and having railed as many troops as possible, marches towards army himself

Servia, as if he meant to beliege Belgrade.

XXXI. But he was scarce come to Sophia, when he is informed, that Seged. Hearing of swar, a city famous for the martyrdom of Soliman I, had been obliged by fa-the approach of the Go. mine to furrender to the Imperialists; and that the German army, which he had mans, he stops imagined was wholly employed against the French, was marching from Belgrade at Sophia against him with great expedition. Whereupon in a fright, he remains at Sophia, and leaves the army to the conduct of the Scraskier Rejeb Pasha, with orders not rashly to hazard a battle, but only prevent the progress of the enemy.

XXXII. The Scraskier, when he is come to the river Morava within fight of The Serukier the enemy, being deceived by his aftrologer (17), who from his observation of being deluded by his aftrological by his aftrolo

the ger, is twice defented by

the Germans

## Annotations.

land) to the great dishonour of Ducas's posterity, by the following stratagem Lihorius having privately betrothed her, publickly demands Anatifia in mirriage, but the refuting, and declaring that it was unbecoming a Prin e's widow to marry a Parzan (for that is the name given to persons condemned to the gallies ) Libertus prefents an Arzubal to the Vizir, deliving that the Patriarch should be obliged by a ferman to celebrate the marriage. She still pretending to be unwilling, begs of the Patriarch, with tears in her eyes, that he, and the chief of the Greek nobility, would intercede with the Vizir, to put a stop to the marriage. The Patriarch complies with her request, but when he comes, attended with almost all the Greek nobility, to her house, the plainly discovers her defigns, faying, that having duly confidered the matter, her modesty would not allow her to come before the Vizir, and therefore the choic rather to marry any husband, than expose her felf to io much infamy, whereupon the company going awiy, the was immediately married by a Priest whom fhe had got ready in her house for that But the, toon after, expuated the difgrace she had brought upon her family, for when her new husband was gone to the Venetians, the put on the veil, and died in the lame fome years after.

(17) his aftrologer j I hough the Turks are forbid all forcery, and other kinds of divination, by the Law of the Koran, which expressly declares, Kiulli munerimum Nº. 16

Kiezzahun, i e. all astrologers are liars; yet they very eafily give credit to their predictence for this superstition, they fancy, that the heavenly bodies are the instruments of divine providence, by which it not only performs every thing, but hath also expresfed by their figures what ought to be done: and moreover, that in the forehead of all persons, the first moment of their conception in their mother's womb, are written, according to the harmony of the heavenly bodies, whatever is to befall them, in characters unknown to mankind. For the reading and explaining of thefe, they boaft of wonderful and ridiculous arts, especially the calculation Reml (invented, fay they, by Pythagoras, whom they call Feijagures) by which from the even or odd number of letters contained in the mother's and child's name, by ebjed, that is, the value of the number, they pretend to foretell things. The Vizir's courts are full of fuch prophets, who never dare to foretell any unhappy events, but in order to preferve the fame they have acquired by their lies, promise nothing bus victories, greater honours, long life, and a lafting enjoyment of the Vizirihip. Chorluly\* Als Pasha alone held those people m the utmost contempt, and one of them, who was provoked at it, having foretold, that he would be deprived of his dignity of Vizir at the end of three months, he confined him in prison the three months and eleven days, and then fent him to the gallies. But under Husein Pasta, the promo-

4 Z

the their promifed him certain victory, bravely attacks the Germans, but is oblid with great loss to retire with the remains of his army to Nilla But even the misfortune could not open the Seraskier's eyes, nor continue him how abfurd it is to trust to the fallacious conjunctions of the stars, and the pretended Interpreters of them. For he had no tooner re-affembled his troops after their flight, and strengthned them with new supplies, but, induced again by the promifes of the fame aftrologer, he takes the field, and engages the Germans, but being quickly defeated, and his whole army almost destroyed, he escapes with a few followers, perceiving too late the vanity of his supertition.

XXXIII. After this victory, the Germans over thin at once all Servin, take

The Imperialifts jubdice almost all Ser-The Sulman returns an anfwer to his shelledors.

Widdin, Niffa, Sheberkios, and destroy Stopia, a city of Bulgaria, by fire XXXIV. Upon the news of these mistortunes, soliman immediately hastens from Sophia to Adrianople, and retuins an aniwer, it i then defened, to his ambassadors at the German court. But he orders them to make no new offer, besides what they had before in commission; and admonifies them to lettle the peace agreeably to the precepts of the Koran, which were more involable to those who receive, than those who give. He directs them therefore to permade the I-mperor, without mentioning the reft of the provinces of Hungary which he had demanded, to restore Belgrade to the Othman Empire, after which they might treat of peace. Maurocordatus, having received the Su'tan's answer, finding that fuch things could not possibly be proposed or demanded, conceals his orders, pretending the Sultan would not give up any thing, except what he had before mentioned; but being afterwards put in mind by his collegue, Zunlficar Effends, that both their lives would be in danger, if they should be found to neglect the Sultan's commands, he communicates the real flate of the offait to the I upctor, and receives such an answer as he expected. For though the Emperor, perceiving that while he was engaged with two enemies, he could not early on the wat against either with success, would gladly have made a truce upon any terms, yet he was obliged to put off the affair to another time, because the Tu. A. Th ambatfadors had not full power of making peace, and he thought it dishoneura le, after fo many victories, to lend ambassadors to Constantinople, as it were, to the for peace, and withal expole himself to the artifices of the Turks, whom he linew to be very fubtle in protracting negotiations.

The Poles are

XXXV. Mean time, the two armies in Poland are quiet, and only they triem felves to each other, being divided by the river Tyras But the Casts of Rive Remain at-tack Crim Tar- fis raise numerous forces, and fend them against the Tartars, under the count of

#### ANNOTATIONS.

ter of the peace of Carlovitz, there was a famous prophet at Con ! intimople, in the court of Mehemned, Reis Effends, who was commonly called Neft Ogl., or the Extle's fon, because his father had been banished by Kieprils Abmed Pasha (for Neh fignifies an exile, or a banished person) I was intimately acquainted with him before and after the death of Rams Palba, and he certainly was the most learned man among the Turks, skilled not only in Arabic, and other parts of learning in use among the Mahometans, but he also understood Laten, which he had learned by means of Meninskius's Turkish Grammar and Lexicon, without the affiffance of a mafter. And it was only by following his counsel, that Ramt Mehemmed Pasha red fo great fame in the Otoman court. sen any difficult matter occurred, it carry his opinion to the Vizir as I know that most persons atcribe lexander Maurocordatus, by reason

of the close friendship between I is a dille Reis Effendi, but that Nej at me was his advifer, bath been acknowledged by all who had an opportunity of born intimately acquainted with Rant's court It was he also who perfunded have the fende to undertake an entraffy, which is it tended to decline, telling him, he would thence reap great honour and advantages, and put a happy conclution to a very dar gerous war Adding, Il i m P fl i voild not long enjoy the Vizit ship after that peace, and, after one fuccessor, Ram, himself would be advanced to that dignity but he advited him not to accept of it, if he wished well to the Sultan, for the Sultan would be in very great peril under his administration. All which was afterwards observed to be sa exactly fulfilled, as if it had been read out of the Leub (the book in which, according to the Mabometan fictions, are written by angels all the actions of mortals)

of Basilius Galliczia. It is said, that three or four hundred thousand men, and

tourteen hundred cannon, were defigned for this expedition.

XXXVI. But all these preparations are rendered useless by the treachery of the But a sedition Ruffians; for while the army was employed in befreging the city Or, common- are obliged to ly called Precep, the Czar's own regiment revolted, and, by drawing into their return, not party many of the most considerable officers, occasion the whole army to return without great home without success. In their retreat they are attacked by the Tartars, and by the perisdioutness of their intestine enemies, suffer a great loss in their rear.

XXXVII. But when the Russians are returned, Peter Alexiowitz, to whom Peter Alexioalone the government of that large Empire was committed by the unanimous the fedition, consent of the people, makes a first enquiry after the feditious; shuts up his and soin fifter, who had been the principal occasion of the rebellion, in the monastery of lita Novodievicz; removes Bafilius Galliczin, as privy to the attempts against the Empire, and, conficating his whole effate, banishes him to Archangle; puts to death eight of the Nobles, who are authors of the sedition; kills, like wild beafts, twelve thousand Streltze's publickly in the market-places and fireets; and having abolished this military order, forms a regular militia, after the manner of other Christian Princes.

XXXVIII In the Morea, the Venetians closely beliege Monembasia, and cut The Venetians off all provision. Liberaks, lately appointed Prince of Mania, endeavouring to numbaju relieve the city, is repulled with loss.

XXXIX About the end of this campain Sultan Soliman, labouring under a The Solim droply, by the advice of his phylicians, returns from Adrianople to Constantino- Confiantinople, where he puts to death the Seraskier of Hungary, Rejeb Pasha, for fighting with the Germans contrary to his orders.

XL. Moreover, he removes the Vizir Tekksurdaghy Mustapha Pasha from his The Vizir be post, as a man unqualified for war and the administration of the state, and con- Kieprilingh is tines him to a private life in Malgara, a little town near Rodostus, advancing advanced in his room Kioprile Mustapha Pasha, who, as I said, was Caimacan of Conflantinople when Sultan Mahomet was depoiled.

XLI The new Vizir, immediately after his advancement, fends for the Mufti, The Vizir the Cadiuleskers, with the rest of the Ulema, and the generals of the army, and calls a general orders the interpreters of the law to give their opinion, whether it was proper to defire peace of the Germans, or recover by force what the confederates had unniftly fuzed The Mufts first declares, it was not contrary to the divine law to The same opinion is espoused define peace even of infidels in times of necessity by the Rumels Cadsulesker, but the Afiatse Cadsulesker, either by the infligation of the Vizir, or because he saw his provinces out of danger, opposes this, and maintains it to be more eligible, that all the Musulmans should perish by the enemy's fword, than to make Emallak with the Graurs, fince no fin could be imagined more hemous than this, by which the honour of the prophet and the Koran would be wounded. The Vizir approves of the speech of Anadol Cadinlesker. " And as often (tays he) as I attentively confider our conduct for feven years " against the Emperor of Germany, I cannot sufficiently wonder at the impru-" dence of our generals, the blindness of our counsellors, and the fearful or per-" verse minds of the interpreters of the law. The Vizirs and Scraskiers, who " have been highly applauded for their wildom, though they knew the war was " to be carried on with the Giaurs, never thought of any thing, but railing as " large armies as possible; the counsellors were only sollicitous about filling the " treatury by any means, and providing the foldiers with money and warlike flores, " as if the Mu/ulmans had no other hopes of victory but in their arms and trea-The *l'lema*, whole office it was to advise them, and correct their mis-" taken conduct, content with their flipends, preferred case to labour, without " any concern whether the Othman state was well administered, or not. On " these accounts, as the Empire could not but be involved in the most dread-" ful calamities, they never thought of removing the fource of them, by re-" forming the vices of the people, but immediately gave the fanction of their " approbation to the proposal of peace, and almost forced it upon the true Mu-

" sulmans.



But when God was more provoked by this infidelity, and debarred a them of peace upon honourable terms, they immediately return to their old " cuftoms, and cast the blame due to the subjects upon the Emperors. Having obtained their ends, at their departure they foretold the foldiers out of the law, " that the Grauss would be driven from our borders; not confidering that the er promise of our prophet, of undoubted success to the Musulmans, depends up-" on certain conditions. There are required, for inflance, a fure confidence in "God, the exercise of good works, purity of mind in the soldiers, who are to " fight against the Graurs, and justice in the rulers towards their subjects. These " virtues being hitherto wanting, what wonder is it that God himfelf should re-" fuse to assist the Musulman forces, and that their valour should be defeated by " the art of the Gienrs. For my part, to demonstrate the truth of what I have " faid, I defire only twelve thousand true followers of the Koran, men pure in " heart and mind. With these I trust not only to fight valuantly against the " numberless forces of the Gsaurs, but likewise, by God's assistance, humble them is in fuch a manner, that they shall be obliged to restore all they have hitherto " taken from us" To this speech the Mufts replies, that the Vizir had indeed with great fagacity traced out the causes of the corruptions, and of the subscquent misfortunes to the Othman Empire, but that they could hardly be corrected by the method he proposed, fince the army wanted spirit, and the treafury money, the finews of war. Befides, all people were in hopes of an approaching peace, raised by the letters lately sent from the ambassadors at Vienna. Upon this, the Vizir asks who were the ambassadors, and what peace they were sent to make? And being informed by the Mufts of the whole state of the assair, he is fired with indignation, and in a long speech shows how much the authors of that embassy, of whom he deemed his predecessor to be the principal, had afted against the good of the Empire. At last, with a loud voice, he cries out, "I count the ambaffadors, and those that sent them, Geaurs, and as such do I " think they will be treated in the divine judgment. For no true Alufulman, " skilled in the precepts of the Koran, could have thrown the Sultan, a prince of " great mildness and simplicity, into so hemous and execrable a crime

It is concluded to continue nies that the Sultan had fent ambaffadors to the Emperor

XLII. The Vizir, thus disposed to war, is urged still more to pursue his dethe war, and figns by the French ambassador, Monsieur Château-Nouveau, who possesses him and the Vizir de- the whole court with such a confidence in the arms of France, that a Galibe Di ven (18) being called, they unanimously determined to projecute the war with

## Annotations.

(18) Galibe Divan, fo is the Emperor's Divan called, which is held every Sunday and Tuefday, under a Cubbe in the large hall of the outer court, named babt bumayun, the fublime Port The Prime Vizir prefides in it, and has on his right hand Rumels, on his left Anadol, Kadulasker, and the Musti, if he is fummoned by a particular order, as also the rest of the Cubbe Vizirs, and lower the Testerdar. The Reis effends, and the other chiefs of the Calemu, fland by . but the military officers, as the Aga of the Janizaries, Spainlar agasi, Siludar agasi, and the rest, sit without the Divan, at the gate Babi bumayun. The Sultan hears, out of a window over the Prime Vizir's head, all that is done. When they first meet, they cause all the suits presented by the plaintiss be read aloud by the Teskieress, and de-their causes: after which the Vizir deto the great men, the Ulema, and the dry, what the Sultan pleases should be d, and requires their opinion about

it. Each having declared his opinion aloud, the Vizir waits upon the Sultan in Arz odaj., which is the first and the last room in court where strangers have admittance, and examines with him alone, (other persons being ordered to walk out) affairs that are of a private nature. After the Vizir, the rest of the affesfors, the Mufit, Cadsulaskers, and the Vizirs, are admitted to the Sultan, and so may also the Aga of the Janizaries, and the other Ojak Agalari. It is the custom for those that enter the Galibe Divan, to wear at that time a particular dress. The Prime Vizir, and the rest of the Cubbe Vizirs, wear a triangular turban, named Caleur, above half a cubit high, folded all round with a very fine linnen cloth, which they call Dsulbend, and adorned on the forehead with a gold border three fingers in breadth, and woven in the cloth in a circular form: the Vizir's robe is of white filk, not flowered, named Uft Caftan, lined with ermins, and having long fleeves hanging behind;

that

the utmost vigour. And that they might not seem to break off the treaty begun at Vienna, without some reason, the Vizir informs the Emperor of Germany's council by letters, that he had heard some persons were come to Vienna under the title of ambassadors from the Port, and had proposed terms of peace in the Sultan's name. but that these were impostors, and had either sorged the letters which they pretended to have from the Sultan, or procured them from the former Vizir, without the Sultan's knowledge. That they should beware therefore of truster them, since such persons neither were nor could be sent by the Otherson

man Emperor.

XLIII. These affairs being thus settled, he prepares for an early campain, and The Viris, applies his whole care to the raising an army, and providing waslike stores. But devients, in finding what the Mufts had faid to be true, that the Mufulmans were feized with heavillains fuch terror, that there was little hope of railing an army capable of oppoling the Germans, that moreover the treasury was exhausted, and the people every-where unwilling to perform their duty, he takes another method of levying forces, which he executes with wonderful art and fuccess. For as the former Vizirs, in their mandates, had required all persons, whose duty it was, to attend the wars, he publishes a Ferman, in a very different strain. He fays in it, this niter he was made Vizir by the Sultan, upon mature confideration, he found it necessary to trust the command of the Othman army against the haughty Germans to none but himfelt; that he would not employ in this expedition any foldiers forced into the fervice, as well knowing the will is of more value with God than the deed, but that he would only put the followers of the Mahometan worthip in mind of the piecepts of God and his propliet, by which every Mufurman is commanded, neither to avoid marryr form, nor defpair of fuccels in the detence of the law, and the extirpation of infidels. That every Mufulman therefore, who thought himfelf obliged by that law, and had refolution to juffer every thing for the faith, should come, and lift himself in his army, but that he, who was doubtful or featful of Martyrdom, or detained by affairs, which he believed would excuse him before God from the fervice, should have the liberty of staying at home, and after purging himtelt from all criminal actions, intercede daily with God for the fuccess of the army Nay, though he should be of the military order, he should not only be exempt from punishment, but enjoy his pay during his absence. By this mandate, both the soldiers and the people of Alia are roused as it were from a protound fleep. For till then whenever they were called to the wars, the greatest part for fear of the punishment threatned to the unwilling, hid themselves, and evaded the enquiry of the Bashas, partly by gifts, and partly by artifice and falle pretences. But when they find

#### ANNOTATIONS.

that of the rest of the Vizirs is the same, only must be made of coloured silk. The Cadiulaskiers wear large Turbans, as big again as the common ones, called Calavel, and a brown garment made of Sof The Tetterdar, Rew effends, and officers of the Calenty, have likewife on their heads large round Turbans, which they call Mujeveze, and wear also brown garments, lined with Ermines, and made of the fame stuff as those of the other Caftans The military officers and Capun balbs use a Mujevejs Turban, and an Uft Caftas made of cloth of gold, and lined with Ermines. Capinlar Kichasafi wears a Caftan, and holding in his hand a filver-rod adorned with a ball of the fame metal, carries the Sultan's orders to the Vizir. The Chaush bash's dress is the fame, and his business is to bring the Plaintiffs into the Divan. The Vizir's officers have on their heads, a Museveze, and and wear an erksan Krurku or a Coat of Ermines, with wide Sleeves. The Kulkiebara an U# Caftan lined with Lynx-skins, and on his head a Cucca adorned on the left fide with a Sorgui of black feathers which also the rest of the O,ak Agalars wear, only they have the Sorgus on the right fide. But when the Sultan orders a general council to be held, to which are admitted all the great men, the officers of every degree, and the eldoft foldiers, then it is called Ajak Divan, the Druan of Feet . because all the assembly fland, or because every one may fix his foot, or remain firm, an his opinion. The feveral opinions are orken and laid, by the Vizir and the reft of the counfellors before the Sultan, to be defoulfed.



therefolves excited by the motive of religion to war against the infidels, and that the anwilling had liberty to remain at home, not only those who received the rety, but others, who had been dismissed the service, partly to avoid the imputation of cowardice, and partly for sear of being counted Geomes, prepare for the campain. Thus what the former Vizurs could not effect by the severest threats, by the Bashas, Capun-bashis, and Chausses, Kioprils Mustapha Pasha accomplishes without any difficulty by one word of the Koran, and raises more numerous forces than any Vizir had done since Cara Mustapha Pasha.

He clears the treasury of money unjustly ruled

XLIV. Having by this method affembled an army, he turns his thoughts to the purging of the treasury of money unjustly raised, and filling it by more honorable means. When he carefully examines the accounts, he finds the state of it no less confused than of other affairs. For the Vizirs and other great men in the time of peace had confumed a great part of it under various pretences, and for bribes had granted to some an exemption from tribute, and laid a greater burthen upon others than they could bear. And afterwards upon the breaking out of the war, the Testerdars had invented various schemes to fill their empty coffers, by which they had reduced the entizens to such necessity, that nothing was heard but the cries of the people calling for the vengeance of God upon their unjust oppressors. The Vizir with great application removes all those abuses restores to the treasury all the mony, which his predecessors, the Bashas, and Secretaries had taken away, establishes new laws for raising tribute, and orders that no person of a different religion should be exempt from tribute, and subjects to the Haras (19) the Greek monks, (who ever since the taking of Constanting-

## ANNOTATIONS.

(19) Harail A fet tribute, which all perfons that are not Mahometans are obliged to pay to the Turkish Emperors This impolition is grounded on the Koran, which injoins, that every person of a different persuasion shall pay yearly, when come to a ripe age, thirteen drams of pure silver, if he has a mind to be a subject to the em pire, and not be obliged to embrace the Mahometan religion. But, in process of time, this fum ideming too small to those blood-suckers, three Rixdollars were set upon each person's head, as a tribute, under the first Emperors of Constantinople, Mahomet II, Bajazet II, Selim I, and Solsman 1 which fum was afterwards lessened, or increased at pleasure, by the following Sulcans; tili Kioprili Muftapha Pafha divided it into three standing payments. Ala, Eviai, and Edne, ordering, that the rich should pay ten Leonines, persons of a middling fortune, fix, and the poorer fort, three; and this appointment is observed to this day. And that they may not feem to their superstitious people to act, in those grievous exactions, contrary to the fore-mentioned law of the Koran, the crafty Musulmans make use of a double pretence to reconcile the injunctions of the court with the precepts of their prophet. First, they have perfuaded the people, that the price of all necessaries were much lower then, and the value of gold and filver e the law of their prophet must be so preted, fince it was ordained for the tage of the Oibman empire, that eve-

ry person which does not profess the Malemetan religion, should pay every year as much money, as is fufficient to buy what might have been purchased at that time for thirteen drams of pure filver Moreover, to cut off all occasion of refutal, they have invented a diffinction between Sheran and Urfen, that is, those things which the Koran has enjoyned to be done according to the divine will, and prescribed as a rule to the judges, and fuch things as are left to the disposal of the sovereign power, to enact and command for the good of the state, and have taught, that the fame obedience is due to both, and that they ought to be performed with the same readiness. For which reason, if a Christian or a Jew asks the Mufti by a Fetuab, how much tribute he is to pay yearly? he will be told, that, according to the law of the Koran, he is to pay but chirteen drams of pure filver But, if relying upon this, he refuses to comply with the other impositions laid upon him, he will immediately be feized, and the fame Mufti will condemn him to die by a Fetuab, for his disobedience to the Sultan's commands. As to the Haras, it is not as formerly, brought directly into the Sultan's treasury, but is let every year to certain persons in the provinces, who for a discount buy up such a number of schedules called Haraj Kiebadi, and, whether they circulate them or no, must pay it into the treasury. But at Constantinople, and in the neighbouring places, as Adrianople &cc. it is collected by a Jiziedar or Haraj bash, who, instead of a falary, has an allowance . ple by a writing' given by the falle prophet Mahames to the Simile inbalks, had enjoyed that exemption +) alledging this privilege of Mahomes to be spuri + See Part 1 ous, or if genuine, it declares the Simastes only, and not all the monks in general, free from tribute. Besides lest the subjects might suffer by an unequal exaction of the tribute, he divides the Herej into three parts; enjoining the richer fort to pay ten Leonines a year, those of a middle rank fix, and the poor only three dolars. All the mony which the superstitious devotion of their ancestors had chose to leave for posterity to the treasuries of the Jami, he brings into the publick treasury, and answers the Mutevels, who call it facrilege, that wealth defigned for religious uses, ought to be employed in religious wars, and it is more conducive to the Musulman interest, to maintain with it the defenders of the holy edifices, than enemies and robbers. He reftores to their former integrity the judicial proceedings, which till then had been almost entirely venal, punishes the judges convicted of corruption with great severity, rescues those who are oppressed by false acculations without respect of persons, and prevents every one from being injured. He orders, that corn and other provisions should not violently be demanded from the subjects (20), but purchased with ready mony at fuch a price, as they should think proper.

XLV. By

## ANNOTATIONS.

lowance of fo many Afpers, our of every schedule he circulates. In these schedules m fet down, not only the name of the perfon to which each is given, but also his religion, stature, shape, hair, eyes, marks of his body, age Ge. that no more than one perion may make use of the same schedule, and so by imposing upon the Haray gatherers, cheat the treasury. Here it will be proper to mention the remarkable way they have to find out when persons are of ripe age. For if any one pretends to be under age, and upon that account exempt from paying tribute, they immediately measure his neck with a thread, and apply that measure to his face, and if it does not reach from the chin to the top of the head, the person is dismissed as under age, but if it answers exactly, or exceeds, they

oblige him to pay.

(20) from the subjects | Such was the justice of Kioprili Mujtapha Pajha, which recommended him both to the Turks, and to all the Corsitians subject to the Osbman Empire And indeed, almost all his actions, as well as his judicial fentences, are evident testimonies of his equity to all perions without any regard to their religion, and of his political wildom; one or two inflances of which it will not be improper to relate. In his first expedition, when he took B lgrade, being encamped near Yagodin, a large village of Bulgaria, and observing it to be almost all desolate, and without inhabitants, he fends for two of the oldest of the countrymen, and asks them the reason why their village was thus deftroyed They affign two causes of it, first, that their temple being burnt, and liberty denied them of building another, most of the inhabitants had withdrawn to other places, fecondly, that the Othman

troops had so often passed through the village several years together, that they had hindered them from reaping their corn, which had brought a famine, and forced the rest to retire. Upon this the Vizir turning to the Reis effendi: " As, says he, a Musulman can " not live where he has not a Jami, fo nei-" ther can a Christian be obliged to dwell " any where without a temple." And immediately gives permission to the inhabitants to build as large a Church as they pleafed and by another Ferman denounces all those guilty of death, who should, erther go out of the road, even a hand's breadth, into the countrymen's fields; or take from them an egg, or a hen. And to try, how much profit that regulation would bring to the state, he orders each inhabitant to give him a hen, for the licence of building a temple and by that means collects fifty three. In his return from his expedition, he orders them to bring him the same present, and finds one hundred and twenty five: from whence he takes occasion to represent to the rest of the Vizirs, what an increase to the Musulmans treasury might be expected from good regulations. At his return to Confrantinople, application is made to him for leave to repair the old temple there, or to build a new one; he readily grants the petitioners their request, from whence fome country people took an opportunity of humbly defiring him to grant them per-million to repair the temple of their village, which was in a rumous condition. He fetting his band to the usual form, orders the Buyurilds Tefkieress to confirm this grant to them by a particular mandate. And when the officer expressed the Ferman in the old form used in that case; namely, that they should repair their temple with the same wood, stones, and

Find the fe sacofines having raifed histifulf a great reputation for prudence, the shience a fedicion might be occasioned against the Sultan by so many tions in affairs, he perswades him to go to Adresnople in the foring from diddies about the beginning of the month Shevel, of the year 1101, he marches A. C. 1689. sourards Belgrade with his whole army, full of the hopes of victory. As he Ballos over mount Herine, sailed by the Turks Kyz derbent (21), he is informod by the feetts, that feveral thousand Germans were coming from Belgrade to flatngthen the garrison at Nella.

The Tartare

! KLVI. To patvent their untering that city, he fends Selim Gieras Chan of scient several the Tartiers with part of the Twitift army, who falling suddenly upon the Germine new within fight of Neffa, after a short battle puts them to flight. The news of this vilkery being carried to the Turkifb camp gives them almost incyprefable juy; and revives the hopes of the Othmans, and thems them that a herd of deer fight more bravely under the conduct of a lion, than a troop of lions mader the command of a timorous deer.

The Visar orthe camp

**ELVII** The Visit hundelf to thank God for the prosperous opening of the demprayers to campain, and to render for the fature the supreme arbiter of all events propincies bemade in the to the Othman arms, orders prayers to be made without intermission des boys to be re- and night at Confiantinople, Advisanople, and in the camp, and finding the moved out of was in the assent a green number of house units for army because in the assent to the camp. was in the army a great number of boys unfit for arms brought by producate persons for detertable tiles, he commands publick proclamation to be made, that whoever had any boys attending upon him under any pietence, should tend them back, and if any fuch boy should be discovered with any petion for the future, he should be put to death without further examination, tince that his a bove all others deprives those polluted with it of the divine blefling, nor conthe thost puse God favour with his presence that camp, where such an impairing is practifed.

## ANNOTATIONS.

Time; Wieprik feverely reproves him for it, and talks him fluped and fenfelels. The This of farprized, and trembing for fear, appeals to the shelen: form, according to which he had drawn up the mandate. The Wizir provoked the more, replies, they truce tools that first made afe of that form, and they are no wifer who have followed whom. For how can wood, after it is roteen, be reflered to its former strength, fo on to be able to support what is ready to full, or Lame, after it has been worn out by time, be fortempered as to be fufficient not only to raise a new building, but also to seeme the greviers against the injuries of the weather. Therefore if we grant our fubjects liberty to repair their temples, we must permit them to do it in the way in which retain thews it is possible to be done. Let them have orders than, to repair their temple as well-as they can; and if it is fo rumous as that it cannot be repaired, let them build's new one; Only, let care be with, that they do not build it with the Distriction and the state of th common faying samong the Greeks, brit wily built must Churches, then

(21) Kyz derbent I that is, the Pafage the Virgm. There are two pullinges over the long ridges of mount He mus towards grade, Kyz derbent, the land 100 which, the Iurki tay, was discovered by a certain virgin, a King's daughter, who was wandring by chance in those mot at ans, and Capuly dericat, the Paffage is the treat. In the castern entrance of this pullage me flill to be feen the ruins of a very ancient and beautiful gate, which many t ke to have been the work of Ir ijan, being eight hours journey from Tatar Pazajik, and twelve from Philippopolis. On the well, those nat row paffes are bounded by the village Dragoman Kios, the last that was conquest ! by the Emperor Leopela's victorious arms But, whilft he was otherwise employed, fome of his troops attempting to puls on the other fide, the inhabitants, who, epo i the approach of the German forces, had le t their habitations and fled into the moun tains, rolled down, from the high rock, wherewith that road is lined on both fide, huge flones, which killed many, and obliged the reft to retire. And for this fer vice to the infidels, they were declared free from all tribute, which privilege they emoy to this day

XLVIII. Thefe

XLVIII. These affairs being settled, he marches the Serviz; still fifth affairly Shebirkei for Sheherkios, a little city better fortified by nature than art. The gartion confift him. ing but of five hundred men, and thefe Haidaks, feeing no fuccours appear, on the fourth day of the fiege creek the flag of peace on their walls, and promile to furrender the castle on condition of being suffered to depart. The Vizir, though displeased that so small a number had detained his army four whole days, to prevent any further delay to the intended progress of his victories, grants their demands, and is admitted into the town by the Haldaks. The fanizaties endeavour to plunder the Haiduks at their departure, but are restrained by the Vizir, who commands them, under a fevere penalty, to fuffer the garrifon to depart without any injury, alledging it is neither honourable nor advantagious to take away the arms of the Grants, since they cannot injure the Musulmans with them. He then admonishes the Hasduks not to go to Nilla, but to retire to some other fortress, because he intended to bestege that city, and if any one of them should be found there when the town was taken, he must not expect to eleape death. The Haiduks however, as foon as they are gone from the Turks, enter Nilla.

XLIX. The Vizir immediately following them, lays close fiege to Niffa, Niffa being tawhich was defended by Count Starenberg with three thousand German foot and ken, the garnions absolute fourteen hundred horie. Though Starenberg made a brave defence, rather with Widdin and a view to protract the time, and give the Imperialists an opportunity to fecure bemandita Belgrade, than with any hopes of faving the place from the Turks, yet they profecute the fiege with fuch vigour, that on the twenty-fifth day the garrifon promile to furrender on condition of having their lives and arms. These terms being obtained, as they are leaving the city, the Janizaries discover some of the Harduks of Shehirkios, though dilguised, and by torture force them to confess that all their companions were mixed with the rest of the German troops. Upon this the Vizit commands the German general to deliver up to him all the Shehirkini Haiduks, and in the light of the garrifon hangs part of them, and condemns the reft to the galleys, and withal, orders Starenberg not to go to Belgrade, fince he was about to beliege that city, and therefore would not have the garrison reminisced, affining him, if he disobeyed his orders, he and ms men should suffer the same sate with the Haiduks, when Belgrade should be taken. The German garrious at Semendria and Widdin, aftonished at these fucceiles of the Turks, without waiting the approach of the Vizir, abandon the cities which they were appointed to guard, and fly to Belgrade. These two cities are immediately leized by a party lent by Kioprili Mustapha Pasha, and again subjected to the Othman dominion

I. Having thus iccured all the country in his rear, he marches his hitherto The Vizir visionious forces to Belgrade, and lays clote fiege to it in the month Zyleade Ha-beinges Belging Belg ving pitched his tents on every fide, he calls a council of the other Basha's, and rakes it by an orders the mondacless shall read the state of the other basha's, and rakes it by an orders them to declare their opinion, whether the city should be immediately affault- unexpected ed with their whole force, or invested by their strong camp, and obliged by want accident of provisions to surrender. All the Basha's advise the latter, alledging, that the city being well fortified by nature and art, and wonderfully (22) ftrengthned with new works, besides the old walls, and defended by a garrison of eight thousand Germans, and as many regiments of Bulgarians and Servians, could not be

#### Annotations.

(22 wonderfully strengthned) This was done by .Indreas Cornaro, a native of Crete, and a Greek by birth and religion, whom tome authors, and among the reft Pietro (. 11 Jone , a fenator of Venuce, have charged with betraying Belgrade, perhaps because he was afterwards in the fervice of the Turks. But it was not willingly that he engaged in the tervice of the infidels, for, after the July of Be've ide, being fent by the general of the Griman army to fortily Peterwara-Nº XVII

dis, if I mustake not, he and his wife were taken in the road thither by the Tariars, and brought to Kioprik Mustapha Pasha; by whom being examined, he at first pretended to be a captain in a regiment of foot, but afterwards being discovered by his mathematical inftruments, and fome plans, to which he had fet his name, he was compelled to new-fortify Belgrade and Temporar: which he certainly performed with fo much art and dexterity, that, had



designation the time fill remaining for warlike expeditions, nor belieged great loss to the Ochman army. That if the German should make a The property and as it incorrectly happens in fach fieges, repulfe the bethe whole army would immediately lole the courage they had hardly re-extend by their preferr incession. But is the Vicin, leaving Belgrade behind him, would with his army pass the Saue, or at least strongly forthy the banks, prevent the enemies from passing, the garrison would that summer, or at least the winter following, be obliged by famine to furrender. But nothing was to he feared from the Imperial army, fince the greatest part of it was employed in the war against France, and the test being abandoned by the Hungarians, would, from the smallness of their number, he more solitettons so detend their own camp, then attack the Otheren. The Vizur, though he was far from being of this mind, yet, that he might not feem to oppose the opinion of the whole army, and if any misfortune thould happen, it might not be imputed to him, gives way to the majority, and determines to follow the advice of the Bashas. Having therefore surrounded the walls of the city for several days, he is into med that the Imperialits were advancing with great expedition to the relief of the city. Alarmed with the news, he discovers his error in complying unicafonably with his officers, and infantly opens the fiege with half of his army, consinting the reft to hinder the impensions from passing the Save But he would probably have failed in his delign, if, upon the eighth day of the here, the tower had not been blown up by means of a bomb, or by treachery, and by its ruins demolished a great part of the walls whereupon the Turks crying out, it is an evident demonstration of God's miraculous affishance, ruth into the breaches, before the Germons could prevent them. The garrien oppose their whole frength in this extreme danger, and for almost an hour bravely result the fierce affault of the Turks; but at last, overpowered with numbers, they are forced to retreat. Great part of them fall, though not unrevenged, by the Furkish sweed; a few, with their general de la Crey, escape in boars to the other fide of the Danabe.

He relieves

LI. Having thus seduced a city, the bulwark of all Hungary, fooner than he Temifwar, which lebour expected, Ksoprels. Mustapha Palba fends to the relief of Tenifwar inc himed under or dred Spahis, to each of whom he had given two hories and as many buffeld treme want of of meal, to be conveyed thither. For the Germans had now invested that city three years, and at first had endeavoured to take it by assault, but acceptage, finding it impracticable, on account of the difficulty of its fituation, cut off all manner of supplies. They had hitherto been opposed by the valous of Cuja jases Pulbs (21), whose authority was so great with the soldiers, that the many pe

## ANNOTATIONS

not God blasted the defigns of the infidels, the taking of those towns by force would have been almost impossible. How well ficilled befides he was in the mathematicks, he plainly showed by turning the river Best through the middle of Tempivar; a work which, as necessary as it was in a place that fuffered extremely every fummer for want of water, had yet been thought very difficult, and hardly possible to any before him. For this important piece of service, he was allowed by the Sultan a parig pention of eight puties, which was M. and even to the day of his

> jafer] He was financed Con, way of distinction from ano-tales, commonly called Kinn. I fault hereafter give an

account. This man was very famous among the Turks for his knowledge in the art of war, has prudence and integrity, and for his many battles fought with the Germans. Having bravely defended Temifwar, he was rewarded with the government of Belgrade, which place he held with great retolution when belieged the second time by the Germans. And by this he acquired to great a reputation, that Sultan Muflapha would hardly do any thing in his last expedition without confulting him nay, he very often preferred his advice to that of the Vi-zir Elmas Mebenmed Pasha, whom he otherwife loved; and he would undoubtedly have succeeded him in the Vizirship, had they not been both cut off at the battle of Zents by a troop of rebellious Jana

rished by famine, yet the reft refused to feed upon the cott and days, which acc effectmed impure animals by the Twis. They were now reduced to fach a nocessity, that when the Spabis arrived with the provisions, the Janizaries seized upon the facks of meal like ravenous wolves, and could not be restrained by the entreaties or threats of the Spabis from plundering what was brought. This occasioned a contest between the two parties, and afterwards a sharp and bloody conflict. A great number of Janizaries, and as many Spakis are killed upon the facks; and the rest with their Pasha are forced by the fury of the Janizaries to take to speedy flight.

LII. The Vizir in the mean time having allowed the foldiers a few days re- The Vizir pose, and repaired the ruins of Belgrade, passes the Danube, and taking Lippe, the Danube, drives the German garrison from Orfova. He then assaults Effek, a city fitua- takes Lippe ted at the conflux of the Drave and Danube, in hopes, that if he subdued it, he should not only secure his acquisitions from the enemy's incursions, but likewife reduce again all Sclavense under the Turksh dominion. But he was forced to abandon this delign by the approach of winter, and the resolution of the

garrison, and especially by the alteration of affairs in Transpluence

LIII. For about the beginning of this year, Michael Apaffi (24) Prince of The Turki de-Transplvants died without issue, and left all his dominions to the Emperor of feat the Imperor of malift in Transport Germany. On the other hand the Tarks had appointed Tekels Prince of Transfilmans, and fylvania, and fent to his affiffance the Seraskier with ten thousand Tarks, the Schill upon Chan of Tartary, and Constantine Brancovan (25) Prince of Walachia. The Applip 45-

confederate pointed Prince

## ANNOTATIONS.

(24) Mubael Apaffi] He was of no great family in Transylvama, son of the chief magistrate of Cibinina, who, in the troubles raised by Ragnizks in the year 1661, when the Emperor of Germany had, after the death of Ragoizks, created Kemeny Yanos Prince of Transylvania, was fet up by the Turks in opposition to him, and promoted to the fame dignity. He was afterwards confirmed in it, as well by the Emperor as the Turks, upon the conclusion of a peace between them, when it was flipulated, that Transilvania should obey and be tributary to both Emperors; which Apaffi putting a different construction upon, as he faw fortune inclining to either fide, lent affiftance accordingly fometimes to one, and iometimes to the other and though, in the beginning of this great and memorable war, he joined Tekeli by order of the Othman court, and fent him forces; yet afterwards, when all Hungary had submitted to the Emperor of Germany, he fided with him, and refused obedience to the Turkish court.

(25) Brancovan] He was known in Eutope by the three names of Cantacuzenus, Brancovan, and Baffaraba, all which he pretended belonged to his family but that this may be the better understood, it is necessary to trace back the order and succession of his family. I know indeed that a whole volume, containing his life and genealogy, was, by his command, penned by fome learned men, whom he kept in pay at a great expence, but as it is uncertain whether that was not stolen by the Barbarians, among the rest of his effects, or whether

it is preferved any where, I think it would be doing an injury to the reader to conceal from him what, as being a neighbour, I had an opportunity of knowing concerning Brancovan's pedigree. There is no certain account of his ancestors beyond his great grandfather David. Though he did not inherit any large possessions from his father, (which is the chief and almost the only mark of Nobility among the Walachians,) though he was not eminent for any virtues, nor had any confiderable post at court, yet Prince Mai'bew thought fir to make an alhance with him, by giving his fifter's grand-daughter, with a large portion, in mar-riage to his fon *Preda*, whom he raifed to the office of chief Vorme, one of the five first places in Walachia. But after Maithew's decease, he was unjustly put to death, and, as some say, hanged by Prince Michna, because he would not join with him in his revolt against the Turks. Preda left one fon, Matthew, firnamed Paps, who, though he had no place at court, yet was very much respected for his father's sake, for his riches, and especially because he married Helena daughter of Conftantine Cantacuzenus, the chief Postelnic. By her, whilst he was at the court of Baron Serban Cantacuzenus, he had Conftantine, who took the firname of Brancovan, from the village of Brancovenius, given to his grandfather Preda by Prince Matthew, as part of his wife's portion; and always joined it to his name in all his subscriptions. I am sensible that another reason has been assigned by some paralites for this appellation, and that they

## The Otheran History.



194

roughthane forces under his conduct penetrare through the mountains of Walachie from Transylvania, and at the foot of these mountains unexpectedly in-

ANNOTATIONS.

derive his pedigree from the ancient Bulgarian family of Brancoviz. But not to men-tion, that though this pedigree were right, yet it cannot be grounded upon any pro-bable foundation, because, till the time of Serban Cantacuzenus, Walachia had neither historians, nor genealogical monuments, and, as I have faid, had no other marks of Nobility but a paternal inheritance, it is fufficient, for the confutation of that fiction, to have showed the true origin of the name. Constantine being raised to the Principality by the forementioned arts of Confiantine Cantacuzenus Stolnicus, to show humfelf the more noble, he used the name of Cantacuzenus in the subscriptions to his letters to foreign Kings and Princes. There lived then at Vienna, George brother of the late Prince Serban Cantacuzenus, who had been fent by him to the Emperor Leopold about some business to him the courtiers, or the Emperor himfelf, show the letters fent to them under the name of Constantine Cantacuzenus, and ask him, who that new Prince of Walachia was, that fuled himfelf Cantacuzenus? George, either vexed that his Nobility should ferve as a cover to another man's ambition, or being unwilling to dilguile the truth, ingenuously conteiles, that he talfely affumed the name of Cantacuzenus, and was only deteended from that tamily by his mother. Not fatisfied with ha ving exposed him at Vienna, he fent word to his own brothers, Conflantine Stolmeus and Michael, who were in Walachia, that the Prince's new name had given occasion to feveral jests at the court of l'ienna, and many of the courtiers had asked him, whether it was the custom in Walachia for a man to affume the name of what noble family he thought fit, or it could be transmitted by the mother? The Cantacuzen, who had raifed the Prince to that dignity for no other end, but to govern the Principality under his name, and engross to themselves all the riches of the Province, upon the receipt of that letter, feverely rebuke the Prince for bringing to great a dishonour upon them and the whole family of the Cantacuzeni, and for pretending to perfons who had from histories an account of almost all the families in the world, to be, what they knew he really was not. The Prince excusing himself, and endeago ground his new name upon his greater vehemence, and threatin the not defit from his attempt, the have him deposed by the cart, and would warn all foreign

Princes by letters, to beware of him as an impostor, who fallely assumed the name of a royal family: that he might derive his paternal ancestors from what family he pleafed, provided he did not meddle with the Cantacuzan name. Constantine Stolnicus put him moreover in mind of the Turkilb table, namely, that a mule being asked, who was his father? replied, his mother was a mare The Prince, beaten from this name, and ashamed to resume that of Brancovan, which he had quitted, called himfelf Baffur abo. which was the name of a very ancient and noble family in Walachia, but long fince extinct in the male-line. And this he also did without foundation For Barbul, the first known by that appellation, upon the Turks invading Baffarabia, fled out of that country into Servia, and thence into IValachia to Prince Heglul, who kindly received him, and raifed him by degrees to the of fice of Ban, the highest in that Province His fon, Lauta, obtained the Principality after the death of Heglid, and was the first that adorned his paternal name with the princely He leit one fon, named A. ige, dignity who also governed Halanna, but it is un certain, whether it was immediately a ter his lather, or whether there was mother between them. He was fucceeded by his ton Silvivan Roffmara, funanted the Great, but he alto died without mile-iffue, leaving only two daughters, Ancusa and Ilirca, cuza had been given in mairiage by Sucretic himself to Petrajio, son of Michai who, feizing the government, and attempting to shake off the Tinkish yoke, was defeated, and forced to fly into Translvania, where he was treacheroufly murdered in his own tent by George Bajia, the Translvanian ge-Petrajeo, the ion of Michai, goes to Vienna with his wife and his fifter Ilinca, to revenge the unjust death of his father, and, having fpent almost all his fortune, dies there before the affair was brought to a conclusion After his death, his widow and fifter came to fo great poverty, that they were forced to earn their livelihood by em-While they were in that milerable condition, Matthew is created Prince of Walachia, who had formerly been chanberlain to Sherban Baffaraba, and was afterwards raifed by him to the dignity of a This Prince, not unminiful of the favours he had received from his mafter. takes his name, styling hunselt Matthew Baffaraba, and as foon as he is informed of the poverty of his daughters, he has them brought out of Germany into Walachia. Aniuza not liking to marry a fecond

close Heusler general of the German troops appointed for the defence of Traisylvania. Heaster finding himself drawn into this danger by the treachery of Brancovan, endeavours to open a passage with his sword, and bravely supports the first onset of the enemy. But in the heat of the battle, the Hungarians, who had engaged their faith to the Germans, revolt from them, and attack the Imperialists in flank, who terrified at this defertion, endeavour to escape by flight, but being inclosed on every side by the enemy are almost all either slain or taken prisoners, and among the latter Heuster himself. Tekels after this victory marches further, and is received by all the inhabitants of the province with great acclamations.

LIV. But before he could establish himself in his principality, the Prince of Tikeli driven Baden, who had intended to relieve Belgrade, hearing that city was loft, marches out of Tranhis forces into Transylvania, and having taken several cities, endeavours to sub Mindma due the rebellious Prince who upon the news of his approach, diffident of his Arength, abandons Cibinium, and retires again into Furky, whence he never af-

terwards ventured to return or to recover the dominions he had loft

LV. In the eleventh month of this year, the king of Poland at last brings al- The king of to his forces into the field, and passing the Tyras, enters Moldavia. But Cante- Poland un mir, Prince of that country, taught by former expeditions how troublesome ting Moldaguests the Poles used to be, under a severe penalty prohibits the inhabitants to roke fell or carry any corn to them Hence famine, that cruel enemy of the negligent, diffresses the army, and obliges the king, who had already passed the Hiterafus at Stephanasts, to fund back some of his troops, to try to procure provisions from other parts. Their forces luddenly aslaulting Soroka, a city on the Treas, and finding it defitute of defence, but full of flores, take it without opposition, and leaving a strong garrison, return with the provisions to the King's

LVI The King relieved by these supplies, marches with his army to Tacobe-Prevented by my, a village five miles from Jassie, but hearing the Scraskier Bayukle Mustapha the Torte and Tortal from

proceeding further, and obliged to re-

## ANNOTATION 8.

iecond time, he allows her a fufficient maintenance, but Ilima, who was fill a virgin, he endows with all her father's linds and villages, and gives her in marriage to Constantine Cantaluziaus, who was then his chamberlain, and from these two is descended the whole family of the Canta cuzent now remaining in Walachia. Besides these daughters, derban had, by a Priest's wife, a natural fon named Constantine, and, after the Priest's death, who passed for his father, he had him brought up and educated at court. This fon, Mailbew kept as his own, during the twenty years he re-mained possessed of the principality, and appointed him his successor by will. Having obtained that dignity, he called himfelf Constantine Buffaraba after the example of his predeceffor, but being shortly after expelled by the Turks, he fled into Poland, where he died without iffue. Thus ended in Serban the true family of Baffaraba, the adfeititious in Matthew, and the spurious in Constantine, the only memory thereof being preferved in the female line of the Cantacuzens, descended from Ilinea daughter of Serban. Brancovan therefore choic to adorn himself with the spoils of that family above all others, because there was no one left that could call him to an account for ulurping

that name; and also because he had a good unn pretence for to doing inamely, his grandfather's marrying Prince Matthew's lifter's grand daughter, which Prince had now ta-ken the name of Bassaraba, out of a good, though not so prudent a zeal for preserving his master's memory. What he did, and what he fuffered, under that name, is too long to have a place here, and too well known to the Europeans to need being mentioned. He had four fons, Conflanstantine, Stephen, Raducanul, and Matthew. who were all destroyed with their father by the tyrant's sword And seven daughters. Stanca, who married Radul, son of Elias Prince of Moldavia, Mary, wife of Con-Innea, wife of Scarlatos, fon of Alexander Maurocordatus; Safta, wife of Creczulefcul, a Walachian nobleman, Ancuza, wife of Nicolas fon of George Roffet, master of the wardrobe to my father; Balassa, wife of Manuel fon of Andronicus a Grecian nobleman; and Zmaragda, married to the fon of Balan a nobleman of Walachia. I have heard, there is one of his male-line alive, namely his grandion Matthew, fon of Conftantime, whom that Prince left heir to the great riches, he had dispersed in the banks of Vienna, Vemce, Holland, and England. 5 C Pasba

Nº 17



Pagin with Navadin Sultan were advancing against him, he resolves to return 19 Poland. But the provisions brought from Soroka being spent, he is again obliged to pass through the mountainous part of the country. In their retreat they are closely followed by the Tartars, who kill a great number of them, as they are gathering fruit in the woods, and take many prisoners. At last the King of Poland, after losing many of his men both by famine and sickness, returns with the rest of the army into Poland. His return would have been very difficult. if the Prince of Meldevie, who was defirous indeed to drive the Poles out of his country, but not entirely to destroy them, had not diverted the Seraskier from a pursuit, by telling him, that the Poles were now returning, and were not far from their borders; and fince it was a maxim of military prudence to build a bridge of gold for a flying enemy, he would advise him not to fatigue the Othmen troops to no purpose, especially when the Poles could do no damage to the inhabitants, who were all fled to the mountains. It is certain, if the Scraskier had advanced with his army, scarce a Pole could have escaped their camp was so greatly distressed by famine, that the horse voluntarily subm " 1 to the Tarsars (26), declaring they had rather be captives, than expire with huiger. The prince after the departure of the Tartars found several Polish noblemen dispersed in the woods in search of food, and having supplied them, dismusted them to their own country

The Venetians take Monembasia

LVII. Amidst all these missortunes of the Christians, the Venetians alone meet with success. Monembasia, which for so many years had solely opposed the Venetians, who were masters of the Morea, having been blocked up for two summers, and cut off from all supplies, in the beginning of the campain is besieged, and soon after obliged by famine to surrender to them

The various fucceffes of the Venetians

LVIII. At fea the Venetsan Admiral Daniel Delphinus attacks Capudan Passa near Mitylene, descats him, and having sunk and taken several of his ships, obliges him to siy. After this victory Cornaro takes Canina and Vallona from the Turks, and subjects them to the Venetians. In Dalmatia, Jin Ali Passa (27)

## ANNOTATIONS.

(26) submitted to the Tartars ] There is hardly an example in history, of an army that was ever so dispersed without fighting, and reduced to so much misery, as the Polife army then was; though the historians of that nation conceal it with much care, and extol their king's triumphs. I my felf faw fome Tartars, who went out to pillage, bringing back each of them feven Poles fettered and being asked, how they could mafter and bind such fierce enemies? they answered me smiling. That it was no greater wonder, than to see in Bujak one Annus leading and guiding feven camels: For the Poles quite enervated with hunger, were now no fiercer than camels, and choic rather to live among the Tartars upon gruel, than to be destroyed either with hunger or the sword. The Tariars not having wherewith to feed all that were brought, fold them almost all for three Toachimics a-piece; among these was a Moldavian seventy years it, named Tamafbaufks, who fifty years went with my father to Cafimir King Foland, and had ipent almost all his life wars. This man being put in mind the firther of his former bravery, when banied him into Poland; and ask-he so shamefully laid down his fuffered himself to be bound by

the Tartars? answered, "You know, most " gracious Prince, how I behaved under Thorumus, and was not afraid then to " meet five Swedes at once. I rom that " time I have lived always in a camp, and 46 have often fought with an enemy, but " never with hunger This misfortune having happened to me now for the first " time in this expedition, and eafily con-" quered me as one not used to it, I left " the camp, and communicating my defign to fome others, we retired into the woods, 66 where we expected to find fruit enough " to appeale our hunger, and to be lafe " from the Tartars: but we were difap-46 pointed. For as we were fitting each on " a feparate tree, and appealing our hunger "with apples and plumbs, we unexpectcelly faw fome Tartars brandsfhing their darts, and aiming at us with their bows , " whereupon being defencelefs, and defpairing to escape, we came down, and fuffered our felves to be bound by them." This man was afterwards redeemed from the Tartars by my father, and fent into Poland, because he was naturalized, and had a village given him in that kingdom, where he had left also a wife and several children.

(27) Jim Alis Passa] Jim among the Turks is the name of certain Devils, formed of a

groffer

Governor of Hercegovine, and assaults Nefiches and Cuzzes, but is defeated by the Venetian army, himself taken prisoner, and his forces dispersed.

LIX. In the mean time the Vizir returns with his victorious army to Adriano. The Vizir reple, and is received with great applicule not only by the Sultan, but also the fluntinople in whole people, who publickly extolled him as their deliverer; but the Sultan la- timmph bouring under a dropfy, and the physicians declaring, the air of Advisorable did not agree with him, the Vizir departs with him to Constantinople, and enters that city with great folemnity and in a triumphant manner. For three days, there were feafts and games, which were given with no less expense, than the rest by the French Embassador, by which he showed the Turks how acceptable the news of the defeat of the Christians was to the most Christian King. The Vizir applies himself to the raising of a new and more powerful army, which he promited to command himfelf, and to profecute the Hungarian war.

LX. He appoints Muftapha Pasha Scraskier against the Poles, and Caplan Als The Seraki Pasha against the Venetians, who circamping at the river Celianus restrains the against the Albanians suft ready to revolt, and recovers Canina and Vallona, taken by the enemy

Venetians the last year, and now described by them.

LXI. In the mean time, he is detained from the Hungarian expedition by Soli-Sulm Soliman's indisposition, because he was unwilling the Sultan should die in his absence, dropiv fearing left one of Mahomet's fons might faceced, and deprive him of the Vizirthip, or his command of the army. At lift, Soliman, exhaulted by an invercrate dioply, dies at Constant mople the twenty fixth of the month Remazen +, + June 11 of the year 1102, having lived fifty two, and reigned three years and nine A C 1091 months.

I.XII Soliman was all along from his childhood a Valerudinarian, of a groß His chandler body, low stature, a pale and bloated face, with eyes like those of an ox, a black oblong beard, with a mixture of grey bails, of a heavy understanding, and eastly moved by the whileers of his chamberlains and of the Coltuk Vizirlers (28).

## Annorations.

groffer fubstance than Shaltan (Satan, ) which they believe to be male and female, and to beget children like men. Hence, by a metaphor, very subtle and sharp per-fons are called Jin, and when they would denote a man that makes an ill use of his parts to the prejudice of another, they are wont to call him Jin a kylli dur, one that has the mind and wit of Devils.

(28) Colink Vizirleri | So are the chief courtiers of the Sultan called, (who have a prospect of being raised on the next vacancy to the post of Vizir or Basha) because they ilone have the privilege of touching the Sultan, when he walks, or gets on horie-back, or of supporting him under the arm. For Colsuk among the Turks fignifies the arm-pit. Among those, are the fix chief officers of the court. The Silabilating a, or Sword-bearer, who bears the Sultan's fword on publick occasions, and carves for him at table. He has the management of the Sultan's whole court, and has to much authority not only there, but also throughout the whole Othman Empire, that even the greatest persons never speak to him without the utmost reverence, and in their letters to him give him the title of Musabib, or Privy Counsellar, though he is not fo called in publick instruments. Sometimes, if the Silabdar is

a man of parts, he gets such an ascendant over the Sultan, that he neither does nor undertakes any thing without his know-ledge or advice; and the Vizirs and other chief officers, receive the Silabdar's letters (though by way of request) just as they do the Saltan's orders, and can hardly refule them any thing they are pleased to ask The next in order, is the Chobadar , who keeps the Sultan's cloak, and pulls off his boots in the Scraglio. Though he is inferior in degree to the Silabdar, yet he formetimes furpasses him in power, and governs the Sultan at pleasure. The third great officer, is the Rekiabdaraga, who holds the Sultan's ftirrup when he mounts his horfe. The fourth, is the chief Dinlbendage, ( for there are three others under him) who puts the Sultan's Turban on. The fifth, is the Imbrikdaraga, whose business it is to bring the Sultan water, when, according to the custom of the Mahametans, he has a mind to wash his hands and head before the usual Namaz. The fixth and last, in the Berber balbs or the Sultan's chief Barber, of whom I have already given an account in (Part I.) Besides these six chief courtiers, the Aga of the Janizaries is also ranked among the Kolsuk Vefirlers, because on Fridays, when the Sultan goes into the Jami, he helps him off his horse, and helps him on again



The none among the Tarkish Sultans was more eminent for fanctity, devotion, and observance of the law (29).

# ANNOTATIONE

salfo the Bostanji Bashi, who has the honour of holding the Sultan under the arm, when he thinks fit to go into his barge and the Buyuk Emirabor, and Chuk Emirabor, the first and second grooms of the stables, who are allowed to help the Sultan on horseback when he has a mind to ride; and the Capujilar Kiebeia, or commander of the Capus Bashi's, Whenever any of these leave the court, unless they happen to be bantshed or put to death, they must be sent as Bashas into the provinces with three Tugs; and upon that account they are called Vezirleri by way of anticipation. The Kystar Aga formerly enjoyed that privilege, but it was afterwards taken from him, because it feemed unbecoming, that one who wanted the marks of manhood should command men. When these great officers quit the court, though they have as much power in their respective Bashalies us others, and are often raifed to the dignity of chief Vizir, yet they are generally despised by the Agavat (those who have raised themselves by other means, namely, by their courage and virtues to the like dignity,) and are by them called Cheleb ", which properly fignifies, in the Turkish language, a herdiman, or a driver of cattle, but when applied to the courtiers, it feems to denote, that those men being destitute of experience in civil and military affairs, are fit for nothing but to drive their foldiers before them like cattle, as they are perfuaded and directed by others. And so common is that figurative expresfion grown, that the word seems to have lost its proper fignification; nor can even a Prime Vizir, who has from a courtier been raifed to that dignity, take it as an affront, or punish any one for asking, in his hearing, whether he is a Cheleb\*, or one of the Agavat? For, it being almost impossible to root out an old custom among that people, the great men in Turky bear the affronts and reproaches of their fellow-citizens with much patience; fo that it is a common thing to hear people in boats, just come out of the Vizir's Divan, railing at and abufing the Vizir, and fometimes the Sultan himself, in the most opprobrious manner, without being called to an account.

(29) observance of the law ] These were the qualifications that raifed this Sultan to his brother's throne, for he had nothing elfe to recommend him to the Turks He had acquired this habit of superstitious zeal for his law, and fame for holinefs, by applying himfelf closely to his fludies, which he had entirely minded during his brother's reign, Maboriet being well pleifed with it, as hoping that it would take from lim all defire of reigning, and that a mind intent upon learning, would contrive no devices to raife himfelf to the thron- And indeed the Turks have had no Sultan, whole hole nefs they to much extol as this man's. They alfo afcribe fome miracles to him. Among the reft, that as foon as he was placed on the throne, he immediately leaped from thence as from an impute place, and wanted to take the Abd fi For that purpose, he went to a ciftern prepared to receive water, but which then had none, 'for, by the ill contrivance of the first builders of aqueducts at Constantinof a, though all the palaces in the city are well furnished with water brought thitlier from the mountains, yet the Seraglio being a high place, they have not been able to convey any thither to this div , whereupon the S la' du perceiving the Sultin's delign, ordered water immediately to be brought, and withat, told ' in. there was no water in the ciftern but the Sultan not regarding what he faid, pronounced the word Bijmillabi, In the name of the mindel God, and by that brought water out of the dry marble, which, as toon as he had ta ken the Abdest, he commanded to disappear, and return again into the marble. But in all other affairs Soliman was to ignorant and stupid, that he knew not even the most common occurrences of life. One day there were brought to his table, among other diffies, fome round fifthes roafted, called by the Turks, Piss, which he eat, taking them for cakes The next div, not finding the like at his table, he asked, why they had not brought him the fame cakes he had the day before? which question he still repeated till the cooks brought him again, by chance, the same mess of fish, and then they knew the way to fatisfy the unexperienced Prince.









AHMET. II.

Threnty First EMPEROR of & TURKS

in the Year 1691 3

From on Original in the Seraglio





The REIGN of

# AHMEDII, Son of IBRAHIM

Twenty-first EMPEROR of the TURKS.

### ĆHAP, III. BOOK IV.

HE death of Soleman, though long expected and wished for, yet filled The contests the Othman court with new and fecret commotions. The Nobles, or the proper with almost all the People, were for placing on the throne Mustapha or Ahmed, the charter of fons of Mahomet, the deposed Sultar s and some few were even for Mahomet " Sultan himself, whom they had deprived of the crown. The choice of any of these was dangerous to the Vizir. For if Mahomet was reflored, he was apprehensive of his life, fince he was thought to be no inconfiderable mattager of the fedition which had deposed him; if either of his sons were chosen, he was afraid left these youths, having been liberally educated in the palace, contrary to the custom of the rest of the Shehzade, and being already instructed in the adminifirstion of the government, might diver him of the Vizitship and absolute consmand of the army.

II. In order therefore to exclude them both from the throne, he resolves to ad Almed the fon of the vance Ahmed, younger brother of Solman, and not superior to him in abilities him, and bio Accordingly, by the authority he had gained among all the people by his fuccesses ther of Solithe last year, he procured Abmed to be universally taluted Sultan the second day at - Sultan

ter his brother Soliman's death.

III But left the malecontents should take occasion from the Sultan's stupidity Th, nev Sulto raile a fedition, in the beginning of the month Shevel he departs with him tingon to to Adrianople, appointing Amukje Ogli Huseim Pasha (1) Caimacan of Constantinople;

# Annotations.

(1) Amukje Ogli Huseim] A man very famous both among the Turks and Christians for the peace of Carlowitz, that happened in his time Kiofrili Ahmed Pafha had given him the name of Amukje Ogly, hecaufhis father was his uncle. Being first raised by Kupril, he passed through the several offices of Caimacan of Conflantinople, of High-Admiral, or Capudan Pufba, and of governor of Belgrade, to the dignity of chief Vizir; which he obtained upon its becoming vacant by the death of Elmas Mebemined Passa, who was flain at Zenta, with the reft of the officers of the Turkifb army. He was a just, and honest man, but not of Nº 17.

a very quick understanding ; however, not fo flupid or obflinate, as not to fuffer himfelf to be directed and advised by others, particularly by Rami, Reis Fliendi, and Alexander Maurocordatus, which was the reason why his duliness brought no considerable detriment to the state. During his whole administration, he earnestly applied himself to put an end, some way or other, to the long and unhappy war which the Othman Empire was afflicted with, and most religiously to observe the peace he made, in order to gain a breathing time for himtelf and the provinces subject to the Turks. and his endeavors herein proved the cause

fractionie; and afterwards advancing him to the post of Capudan Pasha, prefers brabaji Ali (2) Pasha to his place. At Adrianople he applies himself entirely to opeparations for war, which he had been prevented from doing before by the indisposition of the Sultan.

The wonderful dexterity of the Vizir in raising an IV. But the methods used by former Vizirs to increase the army, he, by a rare example among the Turks, is forced to employ for the lessening of it. For the Musulmans, encouraged with the success of the Belgrade-expedition, voluntarily come from all parts in such numbers, that there never was before seen so numerous an army in the Othman camp. The Vizir perceiving this, orders the Bashas not to bring more forces into the field than had been appointed, since the Musulmans being to fight against the Giaurs, had no occasion for a great army; and on the other hand, it was justly to be feared, less before they reached Buda, as they were to pass through a long trast of the enemy's country, they might suffer some inconvenience for want of provision, it their troops should be too much increased.

The foldiers inlift themfiles of their own accord The Vizir exposed to the envy of the court.

V. But the foldiers, regardless of this order, flock together in still greater numbers, declaring they would not eat of the Suitan's bread, nor were engaged by the hope of pay, but out of zeal for the Mahometan law to enter into the service, and therefore would be content with their wallet, and place their whole happiness in either becoming Gars (3) under so successful a Musuam general, or being crowned with Shehadet. The Vizir's fame thus greatly increasing, envy, the perpetual attendant upon ment, could not but east her darts at him from the court, her favourite residence. Kyslar Agas, and other officers of the inner palace, were uneasy that the savour and interest they used to enjoy with the Sultan and people, were transferred from them to Kroprili Ogli, and that they were despited by the populace, who had before highly revered them, and considered as persons entirely uscless and infignificant. They all conspire therefore the Vizir's destruction, and abusing the stupidity of their master, fill his mind with suspections against Kioprili.

The Vivir accuied falfely to the Sultin

VI. Kystar Agasi particularly pretending the utmost fidelity, informs the Sultan that the Vizir was contriving to depose him, and had drawn the Janizaries so far into his interests, that they had promised, as soon as he should decamp from

# ANNOTATIONS.

of his difgrace, of which having given a large account in the history, it would be needless to repeat it here. He was so great a lover of a spiritous liquor (Crematum) that he could not live without it; and where he got that habit, I know not. It was extracted from wine by a Christian of Aleppo, whom he kept in his house as a physician, and was fo ftrong, that one drop would burn a man's throat. That he might be the more at liberty to drink it, he had made the Sultan believe he was lame in his feet, and therefore was obliged to take phyfick every night; for which reason he had obtained leave, whatever bufiness happened, not to be fent for to court after the ninth hour of the day, and by that means was at liberty to indulge himfelf till midnight, if he pleafed. After he was deprived of the dignity of Vizir, being stung with the remorfe of a Mufulman's confcience, he refolved to undergo that kind of penance thich is called Teste, and to abstain from the legion; but, a few days after he had to do fo, he felt a very sharp pain and his whole body swel-

led as if he had a tympany. The physicians promised to cure him, if he would but make use again of his old liquor, but he chose rather to die, than, after penance, to return to his former course, and so he died at his country-house near Chorles, thirty sive days after he was deposed from his office of Vizir, and was buried in a Tushi at Constantinopie, which he had made in his life time for his burial

(2) Arabaji Ali] He was shortly after honoured with the dignity of Prime Vizir, but neither before nor after did any thing memorable, and within a few morths was turned out. The Turk, sirnamed him Arabaji, either because he or his lather had been a waggon maker, or driver of the merchants waggons (those fort of people being called Arabaji by the Constantinopolitans) or because of his stupidty, and understanding, sitter for an Arabaji, than a prime minister.

(3) Gazi The Turk, have this notion, that every Musulman, killed in battle by an enemy, has all his fins forgiven him. but this I have already explained in (Part I)

Adrianople,

Adreanople, to falute Mustapha, son of Mahamet, Sultan. That he had discovered this by means of his Secretary (4), who had an intimate friendship with some of the officers of the Januzanes, and that he thought himself obliged to give this information to the Sultan, fince the danger, though concealed, appeared to be very great and imminent. The Sultan, perswaded by this speech, asks him, what the thought was to be done? The accuser taking this opportunity, fays, " If you would establish your self in the throne, and remove the " cause of the seditious, send Baltastlar Kiebaiasi (5) to the Vizir, and command him to come to you, as if you wanted to ask him some question. When " he is in your palace, you may treat him as you think proper."

VII. While Kyllar agasi is speciously suggesting these things to the Sultan, The Vizir in-Dilliz Mahomet aga a mute (6), holds the curtain of the door, and discover-formed of by a mute ing by the motions of their lips and hands, that they are concerting to depole the Vizir, haftens immediately from the Sultan's chamber to the Vizir, and gives him by figns an exact account of the whole affair. Before he had concluded his story, Baltajelar Keehatasi comes to the Vizir in haste, and tells him the Sultan

would have him come instantly to the palace.

VIII. The Vizir finding the mute's account true, immediately orders a horse The Vizir deto be ready for him, and Baltaşılar Ksehasasi to go before, telling him, he fen going to would presently follow. When he is gone, the Vizir privately sends for the Ja- and makes nizar-Aga, and some other Ojak Agalars, whom he knew to be his friends, someon of the and addresses himself to them in this manner. "Be not surprized, Brethren, that Janzanes " I have fent for you at an unulual time and in fuch halte. The importance of " the affair required this expedition, fince it threatens destruction not only to you

## Annotations.

(4) Secretary ] Namely Sari yazıjı Secretary to Kyslar aga, Karakullak aga, a very ingenious man, and privy to all his mafter's affairs, mortal enemy to Kioprili, though he was a person of no great dignity, was yet highly honoured by all the great men in the Othman Empire, on account of Kyflar agasi's credit at court, through which he could do many things. This officer's business is, to keep an account of the revenues of the Jams built by the Sultans, to pay the Baltaji, the maid-fervants in the Seraglio, and the other officers under Kyflar agaj, their wages; and to transmit to the Sultan, by the Kyslar aga, lists of them, written with his own hand, out of all which things he gets as great an income as the fathe presence of the Sultan or Vizir, he must always have his ink-pot hanging at his giidle, and cannot appear without it, which the Janizar Effendi is obliged also to wear

(a) Bultaniar Kachurafi ] The chief officer of the Regiment of the Baltaji m subject in other respects to Kyllan agifi, and, in the absence of Kapijilar Kiebaiali, whenever the Vizir is to be fent for to court, he is dispatched by Kyslar agafi to that purpose. But if he is otherwife employed, the Vizir must be sent for by the Ilallekt aga the fecond officer of the Baltage, or by the Kofbbekchi\* the third officer in the fame Regiment

(6) a mute ] There are many dumb and deaf persons kept in the Sultan's palace, whose only business is to hold up the curtain before the door of the room, where the Sultan is talking in private with the Vizir, Kyslar aga, or any other of his great men, and to take care that no body comes I find, that most of the Europeans, who give an account of the Othman court. affirm, that these persons are often employed to put those privately to death, whom the Sultan has a mind to dispatch; but I cannot fo much as guess what has occasioned this mistake. For it never was heard in Constantinople, that Mutes, Dwarfs, and Buffoons, who are all upon the fame foot in the palace, were ever employed about any ferious business, or fent any where, but out of a jeft. Nature having denied these per-fons the use of speech and of hearing, has, to supply that defect, endowed them with fo quick an apprehension, that they can, by the motion of the lips and gestures of persons speaking, understand what they are laying. Belides, they have invented a way of talking by figns, which agreeing with that more than Pythagorean filence in the Sultan's court, there is, for that reason, hardly any courtier but what understands it. The Sultan himself must know it too. because he can use no other when he has any orders to give to his mutes, or has a mind to talk with them for diversion.



while the lock even to disc whole Campire. You know, Brethen, yourselves, what "Make the track to the full aimed, that for the preference only, but the reeffabenene of the Oroman Empire, and how fauthful my services have been, while commendation of them belongs to others, and not to my felf. You inhore been eye-witnesses of the great danger we were exposed to at that times woman I, though unspilling, took upon me the post of Vizir. The European of provinces, which for two ages had not feen any enemy, were subdued by the " Gormans; and the Grass hushed with their successes in their second campain " refolved to arrack Advanople, and even Conflantinople itself. The streights of " the Hemus, the bulwark of those cities, were possessed by them as far as " Dragomen Kies, Sophia the capital of Bulgarea was burnt, and all parts as far as " Tarathagarish through the negligence of my predecessor laid open to the ra-" vage and devastation of the Germans. We suffered still greater columnics " within our own walls. The treatury was filled with paper, not mony, the " subjects reduced to extreme poverty by the exactions of the Tefterdars, all " the people Gruck with dread of the enemy; the magazines and flore houses " every where empty; in fhort, all was full of confusion and madne's. But un-" der my conduct, and through the affiftance of Almighty God, in one cam-" pain the Othman forces have driven the haughty Germans, who improfessly " rejected the terms of peace offered more imprudently by my prediccillors, be-" youd the Danube; recovered Belgrade, Nissa, Semendria, Widdin, and many " other places sanctified by the prayers of the Mahometans, restored them to " their former splendors subjected all Ardal to its former prince, descated Heuset ler a general of known valour, with his whole army, and to complear the " victory, taken him pilloner; in fhort, have so weakened the enemy, that we may " infallibly promise our selves this year the conquest of Buda, the capital of Ilury ary. " For we have God, the author of victory, now appealed and propinous to our " arms, who was averfeto our predecchors, and whose affishance last year we expe-" rienced in a miraculous manner. We have a numerous army, icady to excute " our commands, and what is of the greatest moment, full of the hopes of con-= quest. While our foreign enemies are unable to contend with this aimy, comefic enemies arife within our walls, and actuated either by a ipinit of entry " common to courtiers, or led by an evil genius to interrupt the progress of " the Othman victories, endeavour to betray us and the whole fliength of the " Empire to the enemy. For this purpose they labour above all things to e remove us from the army, perswading the Sultan, that the Vizit and Janiza-" ries are plorting to depose him. By these artifices they have induced the Sul " tan, a Prince of great goodness, but unskilled in the administration of the " Empire, and who knows not how to return any other answer to what is pro-" posed to him, but Khosh, Khosh, to resolve not only to deprive me of mi post, but likewise to punish you all with the utmost severny. To acquaint " you with this, and exhort you to take proper measures in this dangerous cal-" gence for the good of the state, I have called the prefent council i am not " indeed so vain as to imagine no person besides my self capable of supporting " the Othman Empire in its diffress, nor do I regret diminution of my honour, " as being ready to expose my life it felf for the advantage of the publick " as I forciee, that upon my removal, one of our haughty courties will fuecced " me, and am apprehensive he will disturb the successful progress of the Otliman " affairs, and reduce them to a worse situation than ever, I was willing to re-" mind you, that after my removal or death, which I wish for, that I may not " fee the approaching ruin of the Empire, you will take upon you the care of " the state, which the Emperor is incapable of, and fecure it from injury. For If I scruple to make any selistance to my Sultan's commands; and therefore have determined to morrow with your consent to relign to him the seal of the Emofte, and defire leave to go to Meeca. May God direct you by his spirit to e right way, and protect you in your battles against the Giaurs with his allverful right hand."

The

IX. The Janizar-aga and the rest of the officers, upon hearing the Vizir's The officers speech, shew the utmost resentment, call the Sultan stuped, imprudent, simple, ries promise and cry out, he is swayed by his courtiers like boughs shaken by the wind; ad-with an oath ding, if the Sultan should persist in his design, they had rather depose him than sidelity to the Kioprile ogli, the defender of the law, the reflorer of the Othman Empire, and the invincible general; they promise to shed their blood in desence even of a fingle Hair of his head, binding themselves by oath, never to suffer any other general during his life, and to execute his commands with the utmost alacrity

X. The Vizir, who had fent for the officers with no other view, than to dif- The Vizir pocover how they were affected towards him, finding he might trust to their fideli- his not apty, sends an answer the same day by a Talchysb (7), that he had intended to come pearing when to the palace according to his Majesty's command, but while he was mounting fint for his horse, he was informed that the soldiers having received some injury from the courtiers were raifing a fedition, upon which he thought that danger of fuch importance, that he imagined he might fafely defer his obedience to the Sultan's command, in order to put a stop to it. To this end he had fent for the officers of the army, and what course should be taken for appealing the commo-

tion, he would acquaint his Majesty with on the morrow.

XI. Next day he informs the Sultan by another Talchysh, that he had used By two letters his utmost efforts to extinguish the latent flame among the soldiers; but found he prevails upon the bulthem to inflexible and prefumptuous as to refuse to return to their duty, till in to banch Kyllar agasi is dismissed, and his Secretary delivered up to a tryal. He intreats the Kylar therefore his Majefly, that now when the army was ready for the expedition, hid fallely acand himfelf full of hopes of fuccess, he would not by an unfeatonable indul- ented him, gence to his officers flop the progress of victory, and expose himself to great his becreiving danger This letter being brought to the Sultan, Killar agafi, who now per- to be hanged crived his designs were betrayed to the Vizir, desires the Sultan to sacrifice him, though a faithful feivant, to the good of the Empire. But the Sultan refusing, as being too fond of the cunning deceiver, the Vizir fends a third Talchysb, and obliges the Sultan, for fear of worfe confequences, to do as he had defired, and banish Kyllar agast into Egypt, the Vizir orders the Secretary, when brought to him, to be immediately hanged in his habit, with a filver ink-pot at his girdle.

XII Being thus confirmed in his polt, to cut off all opportunity from the o- kopeleteing ther officers of making the like attempts against him, on the third day he removes his post of Vithe army out of Adrianople, and encamping near the city, prepares every thing air, kids the

necellary to: the campain.

XIII. Here an ambassador from King William III. of England comes to him, He receives and offers his mafter as a mediator for fettling a peace. The Vizir receives him with great envilry the English ani-

ANNOTATIONS.

(7) Talcby/b ] A word properly fignifying a relation or account. This is the name given in the Olbman court to the letters, fent by the Vizir to the Sultan about any publick affairs The Sultan feldom rejects them, and if he doth not comply with the Vizir's defires therein contained, the honour and dignity of the Vizir are reckon-The Talcby/b ed to be in great danger must be written by the Reis effends or High Chancellor, and then wrapped up in a very thin cloth called Iulbend, and tied up with a fine filken thread, fealed with the Sultan's feal, which the Vizir carries with him as a badge of his dignity. Being thus prepared, it is delivered to the Talkbyshebi\*, an officer of very great confideration at court, aniwering to the propendapies under

the Grecian Emperors. When the Tal- pence, but kby/bcbi\* has got the letters, he doth not his forces imhide them in his bosom or elsewhere, unless mediately to it is to keep them from the wet, but holds Belgradi them in his hand, and carries them thus to the palace as fast as he can, where when he comes, he delivers them to the Kyllar aga, by whom they are carried to the Sul-The Talkbyfocht waits in the outer court, till the Chatifherif or the Sultan's answer to the Vizir's letters is brought him by the Kyllar aga, which he carries to the Vizir, in the fame manner as the Talchyfb. But very often the Sultan fends the Chatisherif to the Vizir by Baltaniar Kichaiasi, Haffekt aga, or Rofbbekcht, whom I have before described.

the city brillidor, veho propules

with areat honour, and declares himfelf ready to agree to a peace upon honorable terms; but in reality intended only to amuse the Germans, and in the mean time make himfelf master of Buda.

The Vizir calling a gen al council. against the enemy

XIV. To this end having reached Belgrade with his army, he is informed that the Imperialists, under the command of Lewis Prince of Badin, had tadetermines to ken the field, and were already advanced to Peterwaradin. Upon this he impass the sow mediately calls a council of his officers, and requiring their several opinions. with the confent of the reft, determines to march against the Germans, and at tack them wherever they should be found, and if they resuled to fight, to follow them to Bude. He inftantly commands his foldiers to decamp, and paffing the Save, advances near Peterwaradin. The general of the imperial army hearing of the Vizir's approach, pitches his camp near Illankamen on the banks of the Danube, and strongly fortifies it.

He comes to I flankamen within fight of the enemy, and cuts off feveral of the German troops

XV. The Vizir foon after comes up, and places his troops to the right of the Imperial camp, in order to intercept their return At the same time five thoufand Imperialists, which the Prince of Baden had fent for to his affiliance, hap pen to be marching with full speed towards his camp; but are intercepted by the Vizir, who incloses them, and by numbers overpowers them, though they fought with great bravery, in the fight of the Imperial army, killing tome, and taking the rest presoners, to that not one of the whole party escaped.

The Imperia-lifts troubled at this, engage the Turks m a

XVI. This loss exhibits to the rest of the German army a dicadful image of their imminent danger, and takes away their former resolution of attacking the enemy. The general himfelf likewife too late perceives his error in fuffering himself to be shut up in so narrow a space, where he could not open his troops, nor defend them from the enemy's cannon. There being no other way therefore of extricating himfelt out of this dangerous fituation, he relolves to force a passage with the sword. While he was meditating this delign, the Turks shifted by their late victory, with fully rather than ardour ruth upon the German camp, as if they would defired the whole army at one effort. The battle continues fix hours doubtful, with equal courage, but unequal fireigth,

The fucces of a long time fundue la

XVII. The Germans now turning delpair into retolution, pass the Turkish the battle for trenches, and the Turks out of shame for the lots of the victory march'd out of their hands, drive the Germans back into their works, which they likewise penetrate, both fides being in their turns conquerors and conquered

At last, upon the death of the Vizir the enemy gains the victory

XVIII At last, when the victory seems to incline to the Turks, the Vizir, to confound by his presence those, who still resisted, with his own troop attacks the right wing of the Germans, where he saw the greatest opposition. But in the heat of the battle being wounded in the temples by a musket ball, he fails from his horse, and by his death transfers the victory already obtained to the Germans For his chamberlains confounded at the unexpected fall of their mafter, as ioon as they fee him proftrate on the ground, call their companions and the other officers present to take up his corpie, during which the Tubulehana (8) ceases to found. This occasions great confusion among the Turkish troops now The horse seized with a panic, and abandoning the foot, fly first, and are foon followed by the Janizarius

The Imperiatheir camp.

XIX. The Germans, who were fighting not with the hopes of victory, but lits open a that they might not die unrevenged, feeing the unexpected fight of the enemies, paffige to the advances though flowly, that the Janizaries might have time and opportunity to enemy, who advances though flowly, that the Janizaries might have time and opportunity to fly, and take retreat, and not be forced by being prefied to return to the battle, which, their

### ANNOTATIONS.

(8) Tabulchana ] Warlike mulick, of phich an account has already been given (Part I.) This mufick in a battle is lys to be near the Vizir, and to contiplaying, in order to inspire the com-

batants with courage. And if it happens to cease, the Janizaries will immediately think it an omen of deteat, and be hardly reftrained from flight.

ftrength

ftrength being spent (9), they could not have sustained. The rest of the foot perceiving the Janizaries to fly, leave their cannon and camp, and follow them with the utmost precipitation. The Germans having made themselves masters of their booty, feek nothing more, and allow their foldiers some days to refresh There fell in the battle twenty-eight thou and Turks, and of the Germans (belides the forementioned five regiments, inclosed and cut off by the Turks) not above three thousand.

XX. However, when Leopold was informed of the victory, he is report. The faying of ed to say, that he should be unwilling to conquer often upon such terms, Leopald, fince he could scarce recover the loss of eight regiments of Germans in three years; whereas the Turks could supply even the loss of eighty thousand men

in eighty days

XXI After this victory, the Prince of Baden recovers Lippa, taken by the The Prince of Turks the last year, and clotely besieges Waradm. The Turks army, on the lippa, and beother hand, flop their flight at Belgrade, and make Hali Pasha their Scraskier.

ANII. During these transactions at the Save, the Poles in the last month of this The Poles preyear pals the Tyras, and pretend an expedition into Bassarabia, but pressed with want tend rather of provisions, at the rumour of the approach of Busukli Mustapha Pasha, the than perform an expedition Seraskier, they retire, and without any remarkable exploit return home.

XXIII. The war between the Venetians and Turks is carried on by artifice ra- his thei than aims. The latter became masters of Garbusa, a castle in Candia, al- ficer botray. most impregnable, by the treachery of a Spanish officer (10), who was in the Garbusa to the garrison. Turks

ficges Peterinto Buffara-

### ANNOTATIONS.

(9) being fpent] I faw my felf a Janizary at Constantinople after this battle, whose turban, folded round with damask filk, falling from his head in the flight, was found by a German foldier The German, upon his endeavouring to recover it, freely gives it him, faying in the Turkish language, " My life, " here is your turban, as you are a foldier, " if I am so too, we are brethren," The January was fo well pleafed with the German's civility, that, upon receiving his turban, he made him a prefent of a musket, faying, "there would be no further occa-"fion for it among brethren."

(10) Spanish officer] Alcysus by name He faid that his wife had been ravished by the governor of Grabuja, and as he could not be revenged for that injury any other way, he and his enfign Joseph formed the pernicious design of delivering up the castle to the Turks, which they foon found an opportunity of putting in execution. In recompense, the Turks gave him the license of felling what he would at Conjiantinople, and allowed him and the enfign a daily fala-1y, and to twenty five foldiers who were concerned in the treachery, they promifed two Lean nes a day The Turks thood indeed to their agreement at first, and not only granted them their stipulated ialaries, but alto many other honours and privileges; perhaps with a view of alluring other garrifons to imitate their example. But when they faw the bait did not take, they reduced their falary at first to ten crowns, then to two, and at last quite took it away, so that they were forced to keep an eating-

house for their livelihood. Aloysius had often promifed the Othman court, that if they would trust him with one ship of war, he would burn the whole Venetian fleet with an artificial fire But being defired to make a trial of his skill at Constantinople, he refused to discover his fecret before the time, however, he showed privately some irons and other instruments, whereby he maintained he could dart the fire at fuch a diftance. But the Turks not being fatisfied with it, and thinking iome treachery lay under it, would never believe him, nor trust him with the command of a ship. At last, the year before the peace of Carlowuz, he went, through the persuasion of the French am bassador, to Adesanople, where the Sultan then relided, to make there a trial of that fire, but being rejected by the Vizir Amukje Ogli Huseim, as a mad-man, he returned to Constantinople without fuccess. At last, being accused before the Vizir, by the Jeus of Ortakies, of many murders daily committed in his house, and being convicted of the fame, he was banished to Trebisond, where he died. His enfign Joseph fell foon after into a very grievous diftemper, fo that he was given over by all the physicians; for his body was covered with horrible running fores, extremely painful, and which in-creafed every day. While he lay in that miferable condition, there came to him the Abbot of a monastery in Mauromolum, and promises him he should be cured by the miraculous affiftance of the Virgin Mary, if he would but forfake the Popifo schism, and declare himfelf a member of the Orthodox

All Pales fucceeds in the post of Vizir.

garrient. They attempt the same at Sada and Spinalonga; but the Venetians, alarmed by their late misfortune, watch these fortresses more narrowly, and punish the conspirators with death.

KKIV. In the mean time, Sultan Abmed being informed of the death of Kioprile Multapha Pasha, promotes to the Vizirship Arabase Als Pasha, Caimacan of Constantinople, a man inferior to many in abilities, but to none in wickedness.

Peace mentioned, but diverted by the French ambaffador. XXV. As foon as he is appointed Vizir, he revives the talk of peace at Conflantinople, and lends a favorable car to the ambasiadors of the foreign Christian Princes, especially Paget (11), the English, and Colliere (12), the Dutch ambasiador, who were sent for that purpose to the Othman Port. But these hopes are soon disturbed by the management of the French ambasiador, who, by large presents of gold and silver, persuades the Vizir and other great men, that war was more conducive to the Othman interest than peace. This negotiation receives still more weight from the letters of Maurocordatus, in which he informs the Vizir, that Germany was so distressed and exhausted of men and money, that very probably the Emperor could not support the burden of the war above a year or two longer.

The Visir is deprived of his post on account of his avarice and cruelty

Als Pafea, the new Vizir,

thinks of peace@but his good in-

tentions are diverted by

the amballa-

don, who re-

turned from

Vienna.

XXVI. The Vizir, moved by these considerations, immediately cuts off all hopes of peace, and applies himself wholly to renew the war, pursuing such measures, as that he might at once supply the exigencies of the treasury, and remove men of superior parts to himself, who were suspected by him. Accordingly he puts to death many eminent persons of the first rank by the hands of the executioner, under various pretences, and consistates their estates. Not content with this, he orders the Janizaries and common soldiers, distinguished for their bravery, to be thrown privately by night into the sea, that there might be no person living who should be esteemed more worthy of the Vizirship than himself. This cruelty being frequently complained of to the court, and those persons whose lives were spared by accident, or the Vizir's ignostance, representing to the Sultan, that by this means all the defenders of the Othman Empire would be destroyed, Ahmed at last, after six months, removes him from his post, and having stripped him of his wealth unjustly acquired, advances Tarpospelin\*

Als Passa (13), governor of Damaseus, in his room.

XXVII. The new Vizir having concerted measures for setting a peace with the Christians, the ambassadors who had been sent sour years before to Vienna.

# ANNOTATIONS.

Church. The fick man accepting of the condition, causes himself to be carried in his bed to the Mauromolensian monastery, and prayers being said over him night and day, he was restored to his health in twenty-four hours; whereupon, publickly abjuring, in the great church at Coastantinople, the errors of Popery, he became a member of the Greek Church.

(11) Paget] of a noble family in England, and ambassador from that Kingdom to the Othman Port. He left a very good name behind him among the Turks; for he was soo only very learned, and well skilled in the Greek and Turks languages, and other leftaces, but was also a very prudent man, with perfectly understood the way of obtainment thing from the Turks.

thing from the Turks.

Colliere) being born at Smyrna, where was conful, he not only learned the functions of an ambaffador, the himfelf perfect mafter of the thinks of languages: for which rea-

fon, he is reckoned the wifeft and most civil of all the ambassadors among the Turks, and as he ireely entertains at his house the courtiers, that are extremely greedy of wine, there is nothing fo fecret in the Vizir's court, but what he can fift from them by that means, The Staurodrome, where he dwelt at first, being burnt down, he bought the palace of the famous Vizir Aineji Soliman Pasta, on the Bofphorus, in the village Kuriksesmen ; but he received orders from Choruly \* Als Pasha, not to live there, who alledged it was unbecoming that a Mujulman's, nay, a Vizir's palace, thould be possessed by Giauri, and a place fanctified by fo many Namaz and prayers, be polluted with wine and fwine's fleth.

(13) Tarpofochi Ali.] Tarpus is a fort of cap worn by the Turkif women. This Vizir feems to have been a maker of such caps in his youth, and from thence to have received his name.

3

return home; and being bribed, it is faid, by the ambassador of his most Chriftian Majesty, put an end to all his pacifick intentions, and excite the Turks to continue the war with the Emperor. For they relate, that Germany being distressed and exhausted of all its strength, longed for peace; that the Emperor was obliged to fend the greatest part of his army against the French, and could not raile new supplies, not only for want of money, the sinews of war, but because he was above an hundred millions in debt. That besides these missortunes, God had fent a dearth upon Hungary and Germany, which had reduced, both those Kingdoms to such distress, that the principal Bulwarks of Hungary, . through which they had passed, namely, Buda and Effek, much more the lesser caffles, wanted both men and provisions. These representations were not to false, as agreeable to the court.

XXVIII The Vizit therefore laying afide all pacifick measures, applies him. The reason of felt who ly to renew the war, enrolls new Janizaries, whose number had been preputations extremely leffened by the tword of the Germans, and the cruelty of Arabaji for the war All Pasha, and orders, under a severe penalty, the other Pashas to be ready at

a certain time with their troops.

XXIX. But as the foldiers, terrified by the late defeat, could not be affembled He fends the with fuch expedition, he lends the Scraskier with what forces were ready to fore, and or wards the boilders of Hungary, with orders to avoid a battle with the Germans, der him to and only to guard the boundaries of the Empire from the incursions of the ene fanity war my, and relieve the cities of Hungary full in the hands of the Turks, if they But Waradin should be attacked. The Seraskier kept indeed the German troops at a distance in furnidered to Hieffer. from Belgrade and the Save, the latter, sensible of their weakness, not being very definous of an engagement, but he could not prevent Heufler, who had been lately fet at liberty, from obliging Waradin, blocked up the last year, to been lately let at liberty, from obliging waraam, blocked up his him your, turned a for went of provisions on the twenty-first + of the month Ramazon, + Mar 25 H 1103 or the year 1103

XXX About the same time the Sciaskier of Babadagy, Daltaban Mustapha The Turks be Pafia, in conjunction with Arap Pafia, governor of Trebizond, marches into flege Sombia Muldaria, and patting the Dambe about the end of the month Zyleade, pro- in distants without fur cec's directly to Orherus Having fent for the Prince of Moldavia, and about see t vent, thou and Tartars, under the command of Shehbaz Gieras Sultan, procee & armit Soroka, but in the march near Orberus, a town of Moldavia, being 15.21 d with a bloody flux, which held him several days, he gives the Poles time to fortify the city, which was to be befreged, and to reinforce the garrifon. The enemy al'o, who was before negligent, takes this opportunity to firengthen Soroka with a rampait and new works, and fend four hundred Coffacks to its rehet. The Scraskier, though he perceived the fiege by this delay to be more diffigult, as foon as he is recovered, that he might not perform to long a march to no purpole, profecutes his delign, and on the fourth day appears before the city. The garnion are at first terrified at his approach, but atterwards, seeing their walls could not be demolished by the enemy's cannon, who had brought but feven small pieces and two mortars, resume their courage, and, not content with defending themselves within their walls, frequently fally out, attacking the trenches of the Turks by night, and defiroying great numbers of them. The Scraskier, finding this method unfucceisful, endeavours to undermine the walls; but in vain, they being built upon a rock. At last the winter approaches, and having loft near three thouland men, after thirty days fiege, he is obliged to retire.

XXXI At the end of the campain the Chan of Crim Tartary, Kier Sefa Gie- The Chan of rai (14), by the advice of the Seraskier, sends Dervish Shaban Aga, one of his tempts to di-

### ANNOTATIONS.

one of the family of Chohan \* Gieras, (men- ing deposed, the Empire of Tartary returns ceis, tiored in Part I B. 2) that arrived to ed again to the legitimate Gieral's, who the dignity of Chan of Tartary, which he have possessed it to this time. Nº. 17

(14) Kior Sefa Gierai] This was the only did not enjoy above a year. After his be- without inc-

5 F officers

vide the Kingdom of Poland from the Confederates, but



officers to the King of Poland, to perfunde him to make peace with the Othcourts offering, that if he would abandon his alliance with the Emperor, to reflore to him Caminiec, with all Podolia and Ukrania. But the Poles, who had conceived new hopes from the ill success of the Turks against Soroka, of fubduing all Moldavia, pay no regard to the Chan's advice, and diffuls his mellenger.

The Venetic

XXXII. The same year the Venetians having entirely subdued the Morea, rebeliege Come folive to turn their arms against Candla, and, transporting their whole army to in Candy, but the Turks informed of their obliged to re- that island, besiege Canea with great vigour; but the Turks, informed of their tire with loss design by a French ship, had put so strong a garrison into that city, that the Venetians, who thought to surprize it, are not only repulsed with great slaughter. but, after a fiege of fifty days, obliged to retire with the loss of many of their men, and to confess the Turks conquerors, who had been faved by the favour of the most Christian King.

The different Turks and Ve-

XXXIII. With equal success Soliman Pasha, governor of Arnaud, attacks success of the and defeats the Montenegrini meditating a rebellion, and recovering Zuffa and Panduriza, reduces them to submission. The Scraskier of the Morea, flushed the Comment. with these successes, makes several incursions upon the Venetians; but attempting to feize Naupatium, is repulsed with great loss. In Dalmatia, the Palita of Hercegovina endeavours, by Alibeg, to recover Gracovum, but in vain the Turks engaged in the fiege, are juddenly attacked by the Venetians, who

defeat and put them to flight, and take the general prisoner.

Twin-form born to the Sultan H. 1104. A C. 1693.

XXXIV. The campain being ended, in the year 1104 the Sultan, at Constantimople, has twins born to him, namely, Selim and Ibrahim. As this had never happened to any Sultan before, the Turks, confidering it as a prefage of their future inecess, devote eight whole days throughout the Empire to rejoicings, every where both day and night celebrating the Donanna, and other sports usual upon fuch occasions.

The Vizir Ali is refucceeded by

to a fedition

break out.

ust ready to

XXXV. Amidst these rejoicings of the people, the Vizir, Tarposticlis \* Ali Pasha, endeavours to renew the negotiations of peace, which had been interrupted; but being reprehended by the Mufts, the Sultan declaring it done with-Musiopha Pa- out his command or knowledge, he is deprived of his dignity, as a betrayer of the law and the Empire-

XXXVI. His fuecessor, Buiukli Mustapha, endeavouring to put a slop to the The new VIzir pun a flop depredations of several Nobles, which the negligence of the former Vizirs had fuffered to pass with impunity, occasioned some of the offenders to sorm a secret conspiracy against him, and others to murmur openly. But the assemblies of the seditious being disturbed by Junizar Agas, the Vizir's friend, and the leaders being partly put to death, and partly banished, the city is restored to its former tranquillity, and the Vizir applies himfelf to make preparations for the campain.

XXXVII. While he is thus employed, and had now encamped without the The wonderful conduct of city, the Sheek of Prufa, Mifre Effends (16), erects his standard at Prufa, and lifts

## ANNOTATIONS.

(15) Donanna] So the Turks call their public rejoicings for having gained a victory, or taken a fortified place from the enemy. Whenever these are enjoined, the merchants are commanded to keep their shops open ight and day, and to adorn them with er most valuable goods. Upon such ocens, no kind of plays or divertions are rhidden, nay, people are allowed to wine publickly, and those that get and are at other times punishable wizer-Age, can neither be punished called afterwards to an account. the mean time keep patrolling

about the city, but their business is only to take care to prevent quarrels, riots, murders, and thefes, for they cannot meddle or interfere with any thing that tends only to mirth and diversion.

(16) Mifri Effendi ] A man in great renown among the Turks for his fanctity though many think he was too great a favourer of the Christian Religion This suspection is confirmed by several divine Poems, which he published, and ordered to be fung in the fami; some parts of which, supposed by many to relate to the mystery of the incarnation, I have translated lifts above three thousand Musulman volunteers under the title of Devoises without pay or allowance of provision, merely in the name of God, and in confidence

# Annotations.

translated word for word from the Turks/b language, and thought it worth while to miert them here.

"I am he, that am acquainted with the fecrets of human learning,

"I reckon up the treasures of justice, and

am the life of the World,

"Within me is included every hidden thing, and the mystery of hidden things,

"With me is the mystery intrusted, and I am the rich possessor thereof

"I have feen the divine beauty much more plainly than others,

Wherefore when I fee that spectacle, I am ravished with joy

Whatever is in Earth and in Heaven, is fubject to me,

" I am the most excellent seal of things visible and invisible.

"I have given my only substance for all creatures,

I am always with Jefus, and with him to do always agree.

I am that Myri," [this word fignifies Carro the Metropolis of Egypt, as also the whole province of Egypt itself, from whence the author took his striname, ] "who have been King of my body to

"My oracle, though profound, yet in its it icret interpretation contains an eter-

" nai mystery "

He feems to have alluded to the fame in the following I pigram.

"In divine names I have an infinite know"ledge

"At every breath I travel to the heavenly ferences [that is, am wholly taken up with heavenly ferences]

" In the Heaven of my heart there is no umber of the stars. [that is, there

is no numbring of them ]

"In each Zodiae" [that is, in each fign of the Zediae, for the Turkifo word Buridenotes both, ] "I reckon a thou"fand Suns, and a thousand Moons.

"In compartion of these, the knowledge of the Empyreal [Heaven] and of the other Orbs, is despicable.

Since I have also on earth lafting effences, I am asham d to be matter of the Alphabet in the Worlds.

"But yet I highly value that Alphabet, which is little efteemed,

" For in it is joined the agreement of fe" for and My/".

"Therefore my will neither has not wants
"any thing. [that is, I defire nothing
earnestly, and yet want nothing that I
can defire.]

Besides the evident testimonies of Jesu. contained in these verses, what I learned concerning the same Myfre Effends from the mouth of the Patriarch of Constantinople, Callinicus of bleffed memory, is also worth mentioning. When he was Metropolitan of Prusa, Mysi Essendi, who then possessed the dignity of Mollab in the same city, had contracted a close friendship with him, and used frequently to visit him. Coming one day to the Metropolitan, he saw a Greek Book lying upon a Table. And enquiring what book it was, he was told it was the Goipel. Whereupon he faid, "O "Metropolitan, what you have once ob-tained by the grace of God, That keep " as long as you live. For the Gospel, and Christ himself is the word of God." And though all this was whifpered about among the Tarks, yet it could no way hurt his reputation. Nay, when the fore-mentioned verses were presented to the Musti, that he might declare, whether they were orthodox, or contrary to the doctrine of the Koran, he suspended his judgment, and pronounced the following fetval, or fentence, " 'I he interpretation of the meaning of them is known to none but God and My/ra? Which fentence, though pronounced by an infidel, I acknowledge to be true, thinking it extremely difficult to give a full explanation of that man's protound learning. However, after this declaration of the Musis, Mylrs Effends's Poems were made publick, and came to be received by all the Turks as Orthodox But the reading of them is not allowed without fome caution, and to the copies that are fold, the following advertisement is prefixed.

"These Poems and Maxims are composed fed by Mysis Effends of blessed memory, in which though some sayings and expressions are found different from the Musulman Faith, and offend Orthodox is ears, yet these are to be ascribed to his Enthusiasm. By these errors of his Enthusiasm. By these errors of his Enthusiasm he has drawn away some Mussiasm from the right Faith: which coming to the knowledge of the sublime Port, it has ordered the Musti to collect his Sayings and Poems into one Volume, and to examine them. The Mustit, after having read them, has committed them to the slames, and hath passed

3



design of the divine affiftance, and transports them by sea to Rhodostus, and astowards by land to Adreanople. When he is come to the city, he marches with his followers directly to Selm's temple, where finding the people intent upon their Names at noon, he first performs the prayers with great appearance of devotion and zeal, and afterwards makes a speech to the people. He relis them, that hearing a new army was raising against the Germans, he had long confidered what he could do for the service of the Othman interest agreeably to the precepts of the Koran, and had tacitly examined with himfelf what were the causes of the many and great losses sustained by the Othman armies from the Christians. That amidst their reflections it was revealed to him from Heaven, that the cause of it was not the valour of the Germans, nor the fins of the whole nation, but the ill conduct of leventeen great men and governors of the Empire, who being influenced by a Graurse mind, faith, and manners, are timerant, that there is no occasion of a numerous army against the infidely, but of faith in God, purity in heart and works, and justice towards the subjects. And that the people might know to whom they ought to impute the ruin of the I mpire, there had been named to him by the divine revelation those Graury, who were proudly vested with the Musulman turban and habit, the Vizin, the Janua traga, the Casmacan (17), the Tefterdar (18), the Ress Effends, and other the t officers of flate, whom he particularly mentioned. Unlets there are protodeath, no advantage can be hoped against the Germans, but still greater cally, ties, and even the destruction of the whole Empire are to be expected. If I. by the command of God collected a body of Mululman foldiers, few indeed in number, and deflitute of aims, but animated by a divine power, flier then a by the precepts of the Koran, untainted with fin, white and pure with when i he would venture not only to frop an innumerable hoft or inidel, the review to drive them from the borders of the Limpile, Upon the report of this area, not only the common people fond of novelties, but the limitants  $S/a^{r}(s, s)$  if other military officers flock thither in great numbers, and as the Jami, thou in very large, could not contain all the hearers, the optward potenes are also mine', upon the fight of which, the orator animated by a part of zeal, come ice his speech four hours. The Vizir, informed of the affect dreads a fection, to onviate which in time, he fends the Caimeran to the Steek, to define him to come to him. The Caimacan, after a respectful complime a having derivered the areafage, Mifri Effends answers, " I am the servant of Coe, and sent to the ver-" vants of God, to acquaint them with what has been revealed to me from " heaven But I know not what Giaur thy Vizit is, and ice no reason to aban " don my call in obedience to him." The Caimacan perceiving on account of the crowd of people, who flood round and heard him with event attention, he could use no compulsion, returns to the Vizir, and tells him what he had heard and feen, advising him to endeavour immediately to prevent the danger, and difperfe the concourse of people, fince the Shesk's whole esteousie tended only to fedition against the nobles, and probably the Sultan himself. The Vizir lends for Fanizar aga and the other officers figmatized by the Sheik with the name of infidels, representing to them the common danger, and asking what measures they

### ANNOTATIONS.

"this fetvab or fentence, whoever speaks and believes as Mysri Effends, ought to be burnt, except Mysri Effends alone of the control of the c

of for no felvab can be passed upon those sethat are possessed of Eathusiasm."

which have related in the course of the

Caimacan] Namely, Othman Pasha,

a Greesan, born in Grete, who being taken at the fiege of Candia by Kuprili Abmed Passa, and periwaded to embrace Massametism, was raised by several degrees to that dignity. He was a very artful man, and knew how to adapt himself to the times.

(18) Tefterdar] I his dignity I have elfewhere described. He that enjoyed it now, was Kirli Ismail Fflendi, whom the Turks commend to this day for his great skill and

experience in affairs.

think are to be taken in this exigence. Having considered the several opinionsthey unanimously resolve to attempt nothing without the Sultan breakent, but? to use all methods to induce him to oblige the Sheeks to leave the city. They immediately inform the Sultan by a Talchylb, that a certain Sheskin is come to the city attended with a confiderable body of foldiers disguised like Detwies, who is haranguing the people in Selamie, and exciting the inconstant multitude to fedition. For this purpose he is casting out many reproaches against the great officers of state, giving odious appellations to the Sultan himself, charging the Vizir and other Nobles as infidels, and publickly declaring, that the German Othmans are carrying on war against the German Impersalists, and therefore the divine bleffing cannot be expected upon the Othman court. By these and the like falle representations, the Sultan is so enraged, that he commands the rebel to be seized, and fince he could not, as wearing the Tierat, be put to death, to be ba-+ Gree nished with his followers to Prusa. The Vizir rejoicing to have it in his power ban under the Sultan's name to execute his defire, fends again the Casmacan, but attended with Januar agast and a good band of soldiers to Misri Effendi in the Jams. The Casmacan and Januzar-agaft, leaving the Janizaries in the fireet. enter the temple, and in the Sultan's name falute the Sheik, who is full speaking and inform him, that the Sultan hearing of his fanctity and reputation, wishes to enjoy his convertation, and therefore defires him to come instantly to the palace. The Sheak either informed of their deligns, or guefling fome fnake lay concealed in the grais, answers; " You seem to me from the intent, with which you " are come, to be fent by Shestan, and not by the Sultan (19). But I, like " a champion for God, who ought to be indifferent whether he be applauded or " exposed to contempt, will go wherever you will lead me, so that I give no of-" fence to this affembly of Musulmans, or appear unwilling to obey the Sultan's " command However that you may be convinced, I have spoken not of my-" felf, or out of any perverse ends, but by divine inspiration, I declare to you " beforehand, that within a few hours after I am gone, you will receive to-" kens of divine evidence" Having faid this, he leaves the Jami, and mounting the Sultan's chariot which was brought for him, attended with the guards. he passes with great honour through the people flocking from all parts. As soon as he is at iome distance from the populace, he is put into a covered waggon, and immediately conveyed first to Rhodostus, and afterwards to Prusa.

XXXVIII. His superstitious prediction was attended with the event. For two they days after, about noon a great whirlwind and storm arises, and throws down the which tents of almost all the soldiers and principal officers. There happened at that time to be a fire in leveral tents for dressing of dinner, which seizing the tents when overthrown, and suddenly communicating itself to the rest, within the space of an hour consumes above a thousand tents, with the pavisions of the chief officers. The people stand unmoved at this sight, and crying out, God showed his vengeance for the unjust banishment of his servant and winness of truth, result to give any assistance. At last, the soldiers with great difficulty save the rest of the camp from the sames. The Sultan himself struck with terror, sends a respectful letter to the Sheik, and intreats his pardon, consessing hamself deceived by the treachery of his ministers, and defiring him to return to Advisorple, and give his benediction to the army. Messis Essential answers, he had disconvered at first, that he was banished through the fault of the great men, and not of the Sultan himself, and therefore had long since obliterated the romembrance of it, and wholly forgiven the crime, but could not return to Advisorple, be-

### ANNOTATIONS.

(19) by the Sultan ] Sultanden, Sheitanden This faying of his was afterwards interpreted two ways; literally, That the Sultan was firred up by a diabolical fpirit to put to death a man, who reproved him No. 17.

for his vices: And metaphorically, as if Myri Ffendi had faid, They who came to call him were not fent by the Sultan, but directed by the Devil; and tempted by him to commit that crime.



The Vizir out to pais rough Wa The Imperia lifts befo

conferabe, these spirit, which had presupted him to the first journey, would not his a facond.

EXXIX. In the mean time the Vinir, Buinhi Muftapha Pafha, having affembled is whole army, marches from Adviancele to the Danube, from whence he defigns to ine the former sont of Tekels, and penetrate through Walachia into Transitvania. ur before he had palled the Dannbe, the Germans, having taken Gena and Villaafterer, under the command of De la Crey, beliege Belgrade. Upon this the Vizir alters his intention and march, and returns from Diffra, where he had ancanned, sowards Cheme \* Daghlary, and with great danger and difficulty condads his whole army through the firsts of those mountains, scarce wide enough for an unaumed man to pass through. The German general being informed by has from, that the Vizir is attempting to make himself master of Transvivania. he views the outer walls of the city befreged for twenty days, rather like a traveller than a foldier, because either he intended to reduce it by samine, or imagined the Visur would be prevented by the narrow passes from relieving it in time. But finding the Vizir approaching, and now passed the mountains, he profecutes the siege with greater vigour, and in eight days not only demolishes the outer walls by his capmon and mines, but also shakes the inner in such a manner, that he seemed ready to take the city, though defended by sixteen thoufand Otherens, if the Vizir, leaving behind him his baggage and larger cannon, had not on the eighth day advanced to its relielf.

XL, For the Germans pecciving, from the smallness of their number, they could not at the same time carry on the siege, and make a stand against the Vizir. who was about to attack their cases, that they might not inflead of victory receive a defeat, raise the siege, and pass the Save with their whole army. The Vizir, though he had done them no other damage in their retreat, than the taking several waggons and four small cannon, imagining their retreat to be a flight,

informs the Sultan that he had gained a victory over the enemy.

XLI. But not daring to purfue them, or pass the Save to attack their camp, he sends Seiam Gierai, Chan of the Tartars, with his troops into Hungary, with orders to ravage the neighbouring provinces, and cut off the Germans from all opportunity of procuring provisions. The Chan roving about incautiously, is furrounded at Chonad by the Imperialists appointed to guard those parts, under the command of Hofkerchen, and thut up in such a narrow space, that he could not make use of his horse, or find any means of cscape. In this situation, the Tartars must have necessarily submitted to the enemy, or perushed with hunger, if the invincible resolution of Selon had not surmounted all obstacles, and engaged the Tarsars in an attempt not only unusual to the Seythian hords, but never heard of before since the Scythian name had been celebrated in the world. For there being no soom for the cavalry to fight, by his command they all kill their borfes, fall upon the enemy with their fwords, and rush boldly into the thickest ranks of the Germans. So unexpected an attack at first confounds the Germans, but refuming their courage, they inclose them again, now almost escaped, and make fuch a flaughter, that except a few attendants of the Chan, scarce a man was favor.

XLII. Thus the Germans take a bloody revenge upon the Tartars, for the Politi armies to often defeated by them, while Poland at felf continues marchive, and either amused with hopes of peace, offered again by the ambassadors of Selow Gieras, or detersed by former misfortunes, dares not bring an army into the field. The Venetian arms are likewise quiet in Greece. However, in Dahnatia, under the command of Erizzo, governor of Catarrs, they attempt the siege of Chbucht, but are repulsed with considerable loss by the Pasha of Hercegovina;

who, norwithstanding, is soon after deseated by Canegotte.

"XIII The Vizir, Duinkly Maskapha Pasha, returning to Adrianople, while expects to be rewarded for railing the siege of Belgrade, and forcing the the palandon the porders of the Empire, is deprived of his dignity by the mon a flight occasion. For, going out of the city one day to relax his cares, and divert himself with hawking, Coltub Vezirleri, who had

The Vizur raifes the fiege of Belgrade

The Tartari ttempting to losed and deeated by the Germani.

"he Poles conpue quiet pehing m reces, and ake but lit-

e Vizir

long been his enemies, immediately inform the Sultan of its depresenting that the Vizir, laying aside business and the amportant affairs of the state, minded not thing but his pleasures; and by these calumnies make such an impression upon the casy and credulous Sultan, that he instantly takes away the seal of the Empire from the Vizir, and delivers it to Sham Tarabelus Alis Pasba (20). But that he might not feem ungrateful for his fervices done to the Empire, nor mile a sedition among the people, he does not keep him in custody, nor deprive him of his efface, but makes him governor of Demateur, a very rare infrance among the Turks.

XLIV. Alt Passa, sceing the distressed state of the Empire, and despairing of The Visi victory, as foon as he is advanced to the Vizirship, endeavours to make a peace die Passa with the Germans and Poles; but as he resolved to exclude the Venetians, make; and afterwards turn his whole force against them, he does not succeed. For, with that on the one hand, the Emperor would not abandon the confederates, and expose them to danger, and obflinately refused all terms of peace, how plaufible soever, if they were not included a and on the other, the most Christian King's ambafsador, by presents and great promises, had gained both the Nobles and Ulema so firmly to his party, that they unanimously opposed all pacifick measures, and

broke the Vizir's defigns.

XLV. The Vizit, seeing himself by this means disappointed, in the latter end The peace of the year 1105 fends the Seraskier into Hungary, who affaulting Titul, is re- by the fr. pulled with great loss by Caprara, general of the Imperialists. But this victo-ambassade ry of the Germans caused no great detriment to the Turksh Empire; for the Visit the Emperor of Germany, intent upon the war with France, had left but a small maker me army in Hungary, which was obliged to be rather upon the defence, than to Hungary make further progress. The Polish and Russian forces likewise continue to guard their own borders, neither attempting nor performing any thing memorable.

XLVI The Venetrans alone this year push the Turks with vigour, and make an Chia sur attempt which would have gained them the dominion of the sea, if they had Venetiant known how to execute their undertaking with prudence and moderation. Early in the (pring they fend out a fleet, which, upon the invitation of the inhabitants of Chies, devoted to the Roman-Catholic religion (21), attacks that Island with

### Annotation 8.

(20) Sham Tarabelus] Tripoli of Damascus, a city in Palestine, so called by way of di-function from Tripoli in Africa, a noted nest

of Moorish pirates. (21) to the Catholick Religion] A confiderable part of Chios was formerly inhabited by people of the Romift Church, whose ancestors had many ages before the island came under the power of the Turks, transplanted themselves thither from Venice, and other provinces of Italy, and having brought the religion of their country with them, transmitted it down to their latest posterity. They enjoyed not only the free exercise of their religion, and the fame privileges with the rest of the inhabitants, but also had built more Churches, and by the affistance and authority of the amballadors of France, and of Princes devoted to the See of Rome, had obtained from the Othman court more immunities and prerogatives than the rest of the subjects of the same Empire. Afterwards a war arising between the Turks and Venetians, after the Vienna-defeat, the people I am speaking of performed the office of spies to the Republick of Venice, and whatever was done about the Turkifb fleet, either at Constantinople or in the Isles, an account of it was industriously sent by them to the admiral of the enemy's fleet. At last, their spirits were raised upon the con-quest of all the Mares by the Venetians; and they began to think of putting also their Hand under St. Mark's banners. The better to accomplish their designs, though they were already possessed of best part of the Island, they thought at adviseable to found the inclinations of the Greeks, that they might not receive from them an unexpected obstacle to their designs. But not daring openly to disclose their intentions, they do, in private discourse, undervalue the strength of the Turks, and magnify that of the Venetians; faying, there was reafon to fear, that after the fea was cleared of the Turkifo fleet, that Republick would make her felf miltress of all the Islands in the Archipelage. Therefore it would be adviseable, before furnmer, to ingraciate themselves with the Venetians, by fending a letter to their admiral, to entreat him to protect a people of the fame religion with him against foreigners ;



most respect. Silabdar Hasar Passa was then governor, who hearing of the appendix of the Venetsans, had resolved to make a brave defence; but after he noght.

अस्तिकाः

ANNOTATION &

reigners; and, (if it could be) that a Chrifish should appear to the assistance of Christians. This advice was not relashed by the Greeks, both because they suspected the faith of the Venetians, and also believed that they could receive but little protection from the Venetians, who were at so great a dif-tance, against the present power of the Turks. But foreseeing that the Latins would, without their concurrence, attempt fomething in favour of the Venetians, they fent word to Huseim Pasha, who was at that time admiral of the Turks, that they would remain faithful to the Othman court, even to death; but they had many Latins among them, united with the Venetians by confanguinity and religion, for whose fidelity they could not answer. They had in this a double view, namely, if their town was taken by the Venetians, and recovered by the Turks, they might have the excuse ready at hand, that they gave the admiral notice of it; and withal, might not destroy their fellowcitizens, who, if the thing should come to be known by the Turks, would be exposed to the most cruel torments. But before this letter could reach Husem Passa, the Latins, having information of the mat-ter, and thinking there was no time to lose, dispatched a swift frigate to the Venetean admiral, and entreated him by all that was facred, to come as foon as possible to their affistance; that their deligns being now discovered, they were utterly undone, if he made the least delay : and he had no occasion to fear any thing, for the town was quite defenceless, without foldiers, without ammunition, or provisions, and rent by factions, wanted nothing to make it furrender but the fight of an enemy's fleet. Upon the receipt of this message, the Venetian admiral fails to Chios with all expedition, and finds the town, as the Latins had represented, destitute of all things necessary for fuftsining a fiege, attacks it, and obliges it in a few days to furrender. At that time Damad, or Silabdar Haffan Pafba lived there, not as governor, but as a private person, having been sent thither by the Sultan to get a maintenance out of the revenues of the Island, till he could be provided with a Bashalic. This man, finding the general in want of all things made the defence of the place impracticable, asked the Musti, who lived there as an quite, whether a Michilman could, with a fale confcience, de-Me up to the Christians a place that had Midders to defend it, in order to preferve that the good thereby done to

so many Mujulmans, would blot out the fin committed against the law of the Koran, by the delivery of the place, he furrenders the town to the Venetians upon cerrain conditions on the fourth day of the fiege. After the taking of the place, the Tenetians, grown more infolent, equally exercise cruelties upon the Greeks and Turks, and knowing of the message sent by the former to Huseim Pasta, they shut up all their Churches, confiscate the goods of many, forbid the Grecian priefts the exercise of their function and the administration of the facraments, and will fuffer none but Latins to confels dying Greeks, or to baptize infants Grecians use entreaties, tears, and even prefents, and defire only the free use of their churches, and of their religious worthip, but all in vain, they can obtain nothing, and are ordered to frequent the Romifb churches, unless they had a mind to pass for rebels, and despisers of the devine wor ship. But this insolence of the Latins did not long remain unpunished. For, the next year the Venetians being driven out of the island by Medzomoi to, the Latins earnestly defired to be re-admitted into that fraternity from whence they had excluded the Gricks, but, far from obtaining their request, they could hardly avoid the most severe punishments. It is a law in the Othman Empire, that every country that has been but three hours in the enemies polleffion, is taken away from the antient owners, and confricated to the Sultan's treasury, like a new-conquered country, unless the inhabitants rediem it at a fet price. In conformity to this cuftom, a fine of fifteen hundred purfes being fet upon the whole Island, the Greeks, who were quite oppressed with so great a burden, fend a petition to the Sultan, repiefenting, that before Damaseus was conquered by the Musulman arms, they paid tribute to the governors of the Empire, and from that time had never refuled to pay it, nor attempted any thing to the prejudice of the ftate; that they were not the authors of the late calamity, but the Latins, who were united with the Venetians in blood and religion, had betrayed their town to the enemies. Laftly, they pray, that in confideration of their perpetual fidelity to the Othman Empire, the fum laid upon them may be leffened; and, to the end they may live with greater fafety in the Island, that the Latins may be deprived of the privilege of citizens; or, if that could not be, that the Sultan would grant them some desert Island, where, leaving their country, they would willingly go and fettle with their wives and children;

found the Christian inhabitants had deserted him, and were endeavouring to deliver up the city without his confent, as he had but few Turkifb foldiers in the garrison, that he might not be made prisoner himself, surrenders the city to the Venetians; who, to oblige the Pope, shut up the Greek churches; prohibit divine service in the Greek tongue, and other rites used in the Eastern church; induce the inhabitants partly by force, and partly by attifice, to conform to the Roman church; and act in many other things contrary to justice, and the terms of the furrender.

XLVII Having fettled at pleasure the affairs of the city, they resolve to be- They wou fiege Smyrna. But the French, English, and Dutch confuls, meet the Venetians likewife h in their march, and intercede for the city, urging, among other reasons against if they ha the fiege, that almost all the Warehouses at Smyrna were full of the merchandize not been a finded by of their respective nations, which, it they should be lost in the siege by fire, or Chastian plundered by the toldiers, would be required by their masters with interest of sulction the Venetians. Upon this the Venetians, searing the resentments of the other Christian Princes, desist from their design, and return home with their fleet.

XLVIII. In Dalmatia the Venetians under the command of Delfini beliege The succe and take Ciclut, and lubdue Clobuch, in vain attempted the last year. The Se- trees in D raskier, Soliman Pasha, governor of Albania, twice assaults Ciclut, in order to main recover that city, but is as often repulted. For which reason being accused of negligence to the Sultan, he is deprived of his post, and succeeded by Elmas

M. beimned Pasha, governor of Bosnia, lately sent from the Seraglio. XLIV While the Othman arms are thus unfucceisful in all parts of Europe, The trail

a new tedition breaks out in Afia. Emir Mahamet, one of the Princes of the revolt from the sultar afrabs, with leveral thousands of his countrymen, attacks, plunders, and despoils and item the caravan going in pilgrimage to Mecca (22); and afterwards increasing his to leaze M

# ANNOTATIONS.

Children, for they choic rather to live poor-Iv and quetly, than to be in perpetual fears er long their lives and citates Finally, ties add, that it was impossible for them to be lafe in the Island as long as they remained payed with the Little inhabitants, who hall tely betrayed the town to the Ve-I is, and would again affait them to reener the tame In the mean time, Hujem Paylor, who was admiral when Chios was taken by the Lendre in, had been raifed to the dignity of parme Vizir, and he being afked by the Sult in, declared that what the Greeks alledged was true, and mentioned at the time time the information they had former-I given him. The Sale in, hearing the truth c the case, reduces the fine upon the Island to five hundred purfes, but condemns all the Latins to the gallies, and orders all their effects to be distributed among the Greeks. And this rigorous fentence, juftly due to then unheard of crucity, would have actually been put in execution, had it not been for the French ambaffador, who partly by his credit, and parrly by money, got them exempted from the gallies, which yet he could obtain upon no other condition, but that they should publickly renounce the Romish religion, and declare themselves members of the Greek church by which means, there is not at prefent the least fign of a papill in Chius. N. XVIII.

(22) to Mecca] Because the wandring Arabs, who dwell in the deferts between Damascus, Bagdad, and Mecca, used to infest chiefly the road to Messa with their robberies, and to render it dangerous to the fuperstitious pilgrims who went to vilit Mabomet's tomb, the Othman Emperors, after Selum I. conqueror of Egypt, refolved to pay them out of the treasury of the women's Seraglio forty thousand crowns of gold, by way of bounty, under the title of Surre; on pretence as if it was paid them for securing the roads and the fountains, but in reality because they could not otherwife remove fuch troublesome enemies from the Haji's. But the money not being fent for some years on account of the Hungarian war, Sheik Emir Mebemmed, with his tribe, inclosed the pilgrims in a narrow place, and forced them to furrender for want of There was then taken among them the most illustrious Chan of Tartary, Selim Gierai, whom they obliged, by the Arabian Ras, to carry their complaints to the Sultan. and procure the continuance of the usual bounty, and so they dismissed him upon his parole. He stood to his engagement, and never ceased to importune the Othman court, till the arrears of the Surre wers fent to the Arabs; which done, they remained quiet.

aumber, bestoges Meson it self; but, touched with reverence of the place, and the Aread of sacrilege, retires from the city. Shambeglerbeg, attended with the other Bashas of those parts, is sent against him; but the Sheskb deseated them all by a stratagem, and puts them to slight.

Hahan Aband dies. † 7an. 27. H. 1105 A C. 1695. L. The Empire being furrounded with fo many enemies, and almost entirely rained, Sultan Aboved in the year 1106 leaves it +, and resigns his soul to Mahowes, having lived fifty years, and reigned four.

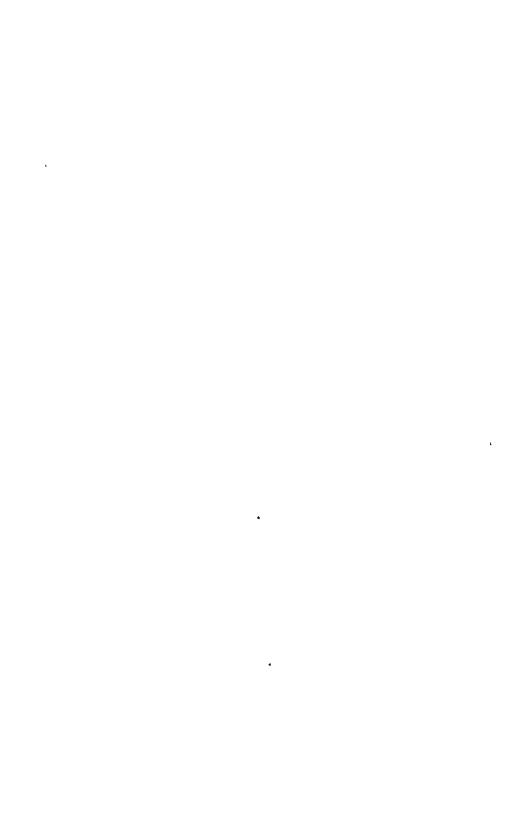
II. In his temper and disposition, he entirely resembled his brother Soliman, but of a little more lively, though not acute genius. He listened to the calumnies of his domestic officers, and upon their instigation, for slight causes often changed the most important affairs. He affected to appear a lover of justice, though by reason of his stupidity, he could not persectly discharge the sunction of a judge, and believed every thing which his friends, bribed by the contending parties, represented to him.

His perfoa.

LII. He had large black eyes, a pale complexion, a round beard, inclining to red, with a mixture of black, a strait and long nose, a middle stature, a prominent belly, occasioned by the dropsy rather than fat. With respect to devotion and zeal for Mahamer's law, he is said to have have been a little inferior to his brother Soliman.

The End of the Reign of AHMED IL









Mustaytha II.)

Invento Second EMPERORO FIURES

in the Year 1696.





The REIGN of

# $M \cup S \cup T \cap A \cap P \cup A$

Twenty-fecond EMPEROR of the TURKS.

#### BOOK IV. CHAP. IV.

I. HE fame thing which had been attempted upon the death of Sultan Soli-Sultan Mig. man by Kioprili Mustapha Pasha, namely, to deprive Mustapha, the Sultan Ma fon of Mahomet IV. of the throne, is attempted, though not with the like fire. met. chile ceis, atter Ahmed's death, by the Vizir, Sham Tarabelus Als Pashe. To gain Emperer this point, he calls a council of the principal officers of state, and persuades them to place Ibrahim, son of the deceased Ahmed, a Prince of three years old, on the throne, alledging, it was unjust to deprive the son of a Sultan, who had died in the imperial honour of the crown due to him, and confer it upon the fon of his brother, who, though a Sultan, had been deposed. These were his publick pretences, but in reality his only reason for defrauding Musiapha of the throne was, that he feared to lose the absolute power he had enjoyed under Ahmed over the flate and army, if a Prince of vigour, and veried in affairs, as Muttapha was, should obtain the crown; and had rather have an infant Sultan for his pupil, in whose name he might do what he pleased, than under an Emperor of ripe age be exposed to perpetual danger. But before he could gain the great men to his opinion, Nezir Aga (1), the Haznadar bafbi, informs Muftapha of the death of his brother, and releasing him from his confinement, calls upon him to assume the Othman sceptre. Mustapha readily agrees to such grateful advice, and while the Vizir is confulting with the Nobles concerning the election of a Sultan, ascends the throne without his knowledge, and is first saluted Emperor by Chalyk \* Ahmed Aga (1), and Cherkies \* Makomet Aga (3). IL They

ANNOTATIONS.

(1) Nezir Aga] At that time the Hazmadai bafbi, or keeper of the treasure deposited in the women's Seraglio. He was, shortly after raised to the dignity of Kyflar Aga, and had so much interest with the Sultan, that the Vizirs were more afraid of him, than he of the Vizirs, and the Sultan himfelf would do nothing of publick con-cern without confulting him. This authority he retained by his great skill the whole reign of Sultan Mustaphs; but after this Prince was deposed, he was in no small danger, because the rebels laid upon him the blame of all that had been done amils by Sultan Mustapha. He had however his

life granted him by Sultan Abmed, and being difmiffed the court, was fent into

(2) Chalyk \* Abmed Age a native of Red Russia, who being taken in the Camimerexpedition, and turning Mahemetan, was admitted into the Sultan's palace, where, in the reign of Sultan Mahomet IV. he was Chohadar's to Mustaphe, then a child. When thu Prince alcended the throne, he was made, first Kinchinke, then Baint, Imrahor; and being discharged from this office, because he would not accept of a Pastalir, he is even now hold in great afterm; and, though but a private perfon, hvm in a splend

its from his he Sultan his post le declares at he will mmand the my himfelf,

via defigned survey naving informed the relt of the courtiers of the election of the new opposite Solidar, all meet to pay their obeyfance to the Emperor, who was extremely action of ceptable to them. The Vizir also, finding his deficient officers, with joy in his countenance haftens with Januar-Agasi, and other great men, to kils the Sultan's robe.

III. Multapha taking no notice of the Vizir's attempts against him, and dething no no-ferring his revenge till another time, confirms him in his post, and presenting r's attempts, him with a robe lined with fables, orders him to take a particular care of the

marms him affairs of the war and flate.

IV. On the third day after his advancement, the Sultan publishes his intention to command the army himself against the Germans; and, not content with the name of Emperor, endeavours to discharge all the duties of a good general. He examines, orders, and disposes every thing, appoints new and large cannon rs the affairs to be cast; procures, and distributes the warlike provisions and military pay; ffate alone. convenes his father's minifiers and officers, dispersed in distant countries, and icwards them with new polls, in which they might distinguish themselves to more advantage; sends for Elmas Mahomet Palha (4), his father's most beloved chamberlain, out of Bosnia, appointing him sirst Neshanji Pasha (5), asterwards Re-

### Annotations.

manner at Confiantinople. The name of Chalik was given him, because he had the fcar of a wound in his face, for that is the appellation given to those that have been maimed or wounded, as chalyk Cholak, who had loft a hand or some fingers. But it is to be observed, that this man must not be confounded with another of the same name, who, in the beginning of the reign of Abmed III, was made Janizar-Aga by the rebels; concerning whom, see more hereafter.

(3) Cherkses\* Mahomet Aga] He was brought away in his youth from Chercaffia " to Conflanimople, among other captives, and educated in the palace. When Chalyk. Abmed Aga was difmiffed from his office, he was made Busuk Imrabor in his room, and thence fent with three Tugs, first to the government of Aleppo, then to that of Jerulalem, and afterwards to fome others. Upon the recovery of the Mores by the Turks, he was made Seraskier of that Kingdom, as he is at present, and is in great reputation at the Othman court for his juffice

and courage.

(4) Elmas Mahomet Pasha] an Asiatuk, or, as some say, a Bolinian by birth, who was in his youth taken into the palace by Sultan Mabomes IV for his great beauty, and firnamed by him Elmas, The Diamond. There was a report, that he served the Sultan a great while in his deteftable lufts; but many, as well Turks as Christians, behere, that there was no other proof of Mauner's being addicted to that vice, than tiving particular names to the handwof Sultan Mahomes, he had feveral a school and at last was fent by Sul-months. with three Tigs to the Pashaestablished. Being railed by Sultan Mus-L 1/284 ...

tapha II, to the dignity of Vizir, he feemed to have the better of the German army in two battles, first, when he obliged Veteran to retreat, and next, when he rendered fruitless the designs of Frederic Augustus, Elector of Saxony, against the camp. At last, at the battle of Zenta, where the Turks were defeated by Prince Eugene, being too eager to engage the Germans, contrary to the opinion of the rest of the wifest of the Bashas, he was slain by the seditious Janizaries as the army was preparing for battle. An ingenious Turkish poet has expressed the time of his death by the following chro-noftick: Nemebe cui founde filde elma, 1 e The German bath cleaned the dram and with lead in which faying, allufion is made both to the common opinion, that lead corrodes diamonds, and also to this other notion, that a diamond cannot be brought to its luftre except it is polified in lead. He was, after all, a discreet, sober, and prudent man, free from coverousness (a rare instance among the Turkish Nobility, a great lover of justice, except when reason of state caused him to supplant or dispatch out of the way rivals, though innocent. He had not indeed so much experience in military affairs as other old Bashas, because he had been brought up in the palace, but what he wanted in education, was supplied by good natural parts, by a wonderful readinels in counfels, and great quickness in executing affairs; so that by common consent, he palfed for no ill general of an army

(5) Nishanji Pasha] He that lets the mark or character of the Sultan's name to all the orders that are made. This is reckoned a very honourable place in the Othman court, especially if it be held by a Basha with three Tugs, who is upon that occasion ranked among the Cubbe-Vizirs, and in the Galibe

# 22. Multapha II.



Rekiab Caimacan (6), and sending him so conduct the Valide Sultata from Constantinople to Adrianople, makes Hassan Passa, his kinsman, governor of Diarbekir, and confers various honours upon those who had served the Empire under his father. By this means he game such a reputation, that not only all the Musulman common people revered him as a sun rising from behind a shick cloud, and promised themselves more auspicious times, but also the soldiers voluntarily came in great numbers, and offered themselves to serve in the campain under so prudent an Emperor.

V. All things being thus ready, and the hearts as well as hands of the fol- Heviewithe diers prepared to renew the war, early in the foring he commands the Vizir to known, a encamp without Adrianople. Three days after, difguifing himfelf, he mixes among put the Vicis the foldiers, impatient to know what was publickly faid of himfelf, the Vizir, to death, and the rest of the great men. And finding from thence, that himself, though fuperior in [many points to his uncles and predecessors, is supposed still to be fubject to the Vizir, and the latter to dispose of every thing at pleasure, without his knowledge or confent, he is more incenfed against the Vizir, and resolves to punish him as he deferved. For this purpose, he carefully examines all the warlike stores, and perceiving the carriages of the larger cannon not to be sufficiently strengthned with iron, at first sharply reprimands the Vizir, who endeavouring to clear himself, and cast the blame upon Topchi \* basti (7), this last is fent for, and being ordered to declare the icason of it, answers, he had defired of the Vizir as much iron as was wanted; but meeting with a repulic, had appointed the carriages to be made as the Vizir thought proper. The Vizir not being able to deny this, the Sultan immediately commands him to be put to death, and his body to be exposed for three days in Sirsh Meidan, under pretence indeed that he had been negligent in executing the Sultan's orders, but in reality, because he had endeavoured to raise young Ibrahim to the throne, to the excusion of Multapha.

VI He is succeeded by Elmas Mehemed Pasha, who had been before made Elmas Mehemed Rasha, a person of a most acute genius, and worthy of the dignity he post med Pasha seried; but not without the murmurs of the old Bashas, who resented that they

should be commanded by a youth unexperienced in affairs.

### ANNOTATIONS.

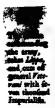
Divin fits with them, by the fide of the chief Vizir, under the place where the Sultan fits to hear whatever affair is in agitation but if this office is possessed by Ekiingly, or one having two Tugs, or by an Effendi, it is not then in so much esteem. All the Sultan's Ferman's, that are fent from the Vizit's chancery into the provinces, and those that are issued out of the Testerdar's officer concerning Malie and Beglyk, must be read to him by Nishami Kassedar Affinite, and then he confirms them, by fetting down on the top the Tura, or character of the Sultan's name, and lays up cothey of them in particular chells. But when any orders are made that do not reach beyond the walls of Conflantinofle, they need not have the Nijh my Pafba's confirmation, but it is sufficient if the Vizir's name is fet to them. The Nifbanji Pafha must be always near the Sultan's person, nor can he go from thence, or be ient any where, un-less he is turned out but when the Vizir goes upon any expedition without the Sultan, he gives him a Nisbanji Effandi in his room to accompany him.

(6) Rekiab Caimacan] When the Vizir is engaged in warlike expeditions, the Sultan always appoints one of the Cubbe Vizirs, or Pasha's that have three Horse-Tails, Rekiab Caimacan, which fignifics a deputy farrupbolder; whose business it is to dispatch all fuch affairs relating to the Sultan, as properly belong to the Vizir to decide, and with the fame authority as the Vizir himfelf, except that he cannot create new Bashas, nor turn out the old, nor put any of them to death, but upon the Vizir's return, his authority ceases. is another Caimacan, namely, that of Constantinople, who is usually appointed when the Sultan and the Vizir are abfent; and of him I have given an account in (Part I)

(7) Topchi\* bashi] overfeer of the cannon and soldiers thereto belonging, with the Kombarasi's, or gunners. And over these alone his authority reaches, but the gun-powder, halls, and the rest of the artillery, are under the jurisdiction and care

of the Jeben baft.

# The Othman Hiftery.



Willistowever, regardless of these murmurs, Sultan Mustapha passes with his anny the Danube near Belgrade, attacks and takes Lappa and Tatul, and demos their walls. While he is thus engaged, he is informed by the parties of Threars fent before, that Veterani, with feven thousand Germans, had marched of Transfevenia, and was eight hours distant from the Imperial army, commanded by Frederic Amenstus (8), Elector of Saxony. To intercept this body, he fends Mahamad Beg Ogli, Beglerbeg of Ramelia with the light-armed forces, and immediately follows with the reft of the army. With great speed he comes the fecond day in fight of the Germans, whom, I suffly doubt, whether I should not call the stoutest and most couragious troops which Germany ever produced; for without any fign of fear, and as if their bodies were invulnerable, they halt. and in a manner challenge to battle the Turks pouring upon them in produgious numbers. Mahmud Beg Ogli, though much superior to the imperialists in strength, not thinking proper to venture an engagement before the Sultan was advanced, orders his troops only to annoy the enemy in flight skirmishes, and prevent their escape. In the mean time, the Sultan comes up with the lanizaries and the rest of the army, and commands the Germans to be fiercely attacked on all fides. On the other hand, the Imperial general having left two regiments to guard the camp, had drawn out but five thousand men into the field, who fustain the shock of the Tarks with such bravery, that the latter, after a short opposition, are obliged to retire. The Sultan, who saw the battle at a distance, perceiving so unexpected a slaughter of his men, is enraged, and advancing, kills several of the run-aways with his own hand, and urges the rest to renew the fight. The Turks, excited by the shame of their repulse, passing by the left wing of the Germans, attack the carriages with which the enemy's camp was fistrounded, and penetrate it, though with a confiderable loss. Upon this Veterens leads back his troops towards the camp, falls upon the plundering enemies, and makes a greater flaughter than before. The Turks again fly without stopping, till met by the Sultan, who first feeing Shahyn Mahomet Pasha, reproaches him in these terms: "He was guilty of a great error, who first called thee Shahyn, " that is, the Falcen, fince thou doft not, like a Falcon with rapacious talons, " firike at thy enemy's head; but, like a Crane, draw after thee a company of " fugitives" Shahyn Mahomet Pasha, touched with these reproaches, joins with Mahmud Beg Ogh in rallying the flying troops, and with a iccolution to conquer or die for their supersistion, they make a third attack upon the Germans. The Januar Aga, on his part, attempts the same, who being also severely reprimanded by the Vizir, affembles the dispersed Janizaries, and leads them back into the field. Thus both sides meet the third time with equal resolution, and fight several hours with great ardour, excited the one side by the hopes of victory. the other hy despair. But the Germans would probably have withstood all these shocks, if Veterani, their general, in the heat of the battle, had not been obliged by a wound to quit his horse, and go into a waggon. For upon fight of this the Imperialists, destitute of a commander, retire, though in such order, that it was doubtful whether they could be faid to fly or retreat. The Sultan, fixing it difficult and dangerous to pursue and drive them to despair, privately orders the Musti, by some means, to keep the Othman army in the camp. He, in obedience to his fovereign's command, declares by a Fetvah, that it is contrary to the precepts of the Koran to pursue too closely a flying enemy; and that he would lose the crown of martyrdom, who should perish in such a case

VIII. And indeed the Sultan had many important reasons for restraining his soldiers from any further engagement. A thousand horse and fifteen hundred

### ANNOTATION &

(8) Frederic Asymptus This Prince is called to this day by the Farks Naal-Kyran, particular names receive horfe-shoe-breaker, on account of his also to whole nat sevent and wonderful strength in his youth: ferved in (Part I.)

for, that it is usual among the Turks to give particular names not only to generals, but also to whole nations, is what I have obferved in (Part I.)

rover the

foot, flain on the enemy's part, had been revenged by the flaughter of the chief officers of the army, Mahmud Beg Ogli, Beglerbeg of Rumelia, Shahyn Mehemed Pasta, Ibrabem Pasta, brother of Coja Jaser Pasta, and others of the first rank, with about ten thousand Turkis common soldiers: the victory it felf too would have feemed very doubtful, it on one hand, the presence and resolution of the Sultan had not brought back the Turks from their flight; and on the other, the misfortune of Veterans disheartned the Germans; and a much greater loss was to be feared, if the remains of the Christian forces, being too closely pressed, should be reduced to despair, and obliged to exert their whole strength in this extreme danger. Content therefore with repulsing this body of Germans, and thereby gaining the reputation of a victory, he neglects the rest of their army, and leads back his forces towards the Danube.

IX In this march, he takes Logush and Caransebes, places destitute of de- In his fence, and demolishing them, returns triumphant through Walachia to Con-

stantinople

X. Frederic Augustus does likewise the same, though without any trophies; Theorem and having rather shown his troops to the enemy, than led them to battle, sends retires

them into winter quarters.

XI. The Poles, either on account of the King's indisposition, or deterred by The I their former losses, do not venture to pass the Tyras, or re enter Moldavia, 1m2- ing ne gining they had done enough in fecuring their conquests, and defending their same borders from the perpetual incursions of the Tartars. For however the Oth- vage t man Empire was pressed in other parts, these scourges of Christendom never dom failed one year to lay waste Podolia and Pocutia, as far as Leopolis, and take the inhabitants prisoners, who confided too much in the Polish arms. The winter was hardly over, when the Chan of Crim-Tartary, Caplan Gierai, affaulted the very suburbs of Leopoles, carried off four small cannon from the gate of the city, was like to have feized general Tablonowski himself, and with above fourteen thousand prisoners returned sate to Crim-Tartary.

XII Peter the first, Czar of Russia, in order to the entire destruction of The this peft, in the beginning of the immer attacks Azac, the strongest bulwark of Russia Crim-Tartary, but his foldiers not being yet uled to fieges, and the garrison making mes i

a flout defence, he is forced to retire without fuccels

XIII The war is much more fortunately carried on this year against the Vene- Medz For the Venetians, flushed with their conquest of Chies, having claimed delease the dominion of the ica, and the Turkish ships not during to appear, frequent netian confultations were held at Constantinople for the refloration of their naval power. In these the name of Medzomorto (9), at that time only the commander

# Annotations.

(9) Medzomorto] an African, born of Moorish parents, who in his youth exercifed piracy in the Mediterranean from the Port of Tums, and by that rendered himfelf very famous. He was at last overpowered in an engagement with the Spamands, and taken by them, when he received fo grit vous a wound, that his life was despaired of, and upon this occasion the name of Medzomorto, or half-dead, was given him, which he retained ever after. For he recovered from that wound, and, after a feventeen years imprisonment, being redeemed by his countrymen, returned to his old trade, and did great damage to the Christians He was afterwards, for his good fervices at Chios, made captain of a galley, and at last commander of the whole Turkish fleet. Being brought to Adrianople, when the Sulvan was going to confer upon him

the honour of admiral, and three Tugs, he particularly defired to have leave to instruct the failors and marine forces in the art of fighting at sea, and bind them to fome certain regulations; and, not to be obliged, on account of the honour of Vizir conferred upon him, to quit his failor's habit both which requests he obtained. The Vizirs often tried to prevail upon him to change his drefs, telling him, that fo mean a habit was unfurtable to his dignity: but he always remained immoveable, and, when they preffed him, used to tell them, that he thought it much more unfuitable for the fleet of so great an Empire to be left a prey to a few fishermen; which disgrace was owing to nothing but this, that the latter minded arms, and the ministers of the other nothing but dress and finery; that, for his part, he made the honour of Vizir,



of a single ship, made a sigure, who being sent for to the council, not only difficuled them from a defensive war, which seemed most adviscable to the majority, but proposes the recovery of Choos as very practicable, promising, to regain it himself, provided four Sultana's were allowed him, with part of the galleys. Amuje Ogli Huserm Pasha, the admiral, treats him with contempt, as a prefumptuous and rash man, and even mixes his reproaches with threats. But the Scraskier, Myfirts (10) Ogli, who had the chief command of the war against the Venetians, having maturely confidered the affair, approves of the scheme, and delivers to Medzomorto the ships and eight galleys, which he wanted. With these Medzomorto sails towards Chios, followed soon after by the whole Turksib fleet, and not only bravely withstands the Venetian fleet appointed for the defence of the haven, but repulies them, and having taken two of their ships. obliges them to fly. The garrison seeing the Turks approach, at first, through confidence of their own firength, contemn them; but afterwards, perceiving their ships driven from the port with lois, their courage entirely fails them: for they had never imagined that the Turkish fleet, so often descated, could be repaired so foon; or that there was any perfon among the enemy who could teach them the art of naval war, wherefore their care and business had been, not to fortify the city, but to flut up the Greek Churches, and commit other things in breach of their faith. Finding therefore that fince their fleet was forced to quit the fea, their walls, exposed on all sides, could not be defended against so numerous an army, they turn their resentments from the Turks upon the Greeks, calling them perficious traytors, and not only resolve to plunder and kill them, but even clearly discover their design. The Greeks seeing themselves in this dangerous fituation, at first endeavour to mitigate the fury of their tyrants by persuasion, and incline them to mercy by ftrong demonstrations of their sidelity, but perceiving the calumnies of their Catholick countrymen to prevail above truth, for want of a better method, privately inform the Scraskier, that they are in great danger, and the Venetians have resolved their destanction, because, struck with a panic, they found none elfe to cast the blame of their approacing mistortune upon. But this very thing proved the occasion of lafety to the Venetians the Seraskier imagining it to be a stratagem of theirs, in older to prevent an unexpected deteat, resolves to examine the affair, before he undertakes the fiege, and so gives the Venetians time to imbark their effects, and after plundering the inhabitants and churches, to escape by means of their ships that were in the harbour.

he Turks at is of Chios,

XIV. On the morrow, the Seraskier discovering the flight of the Venetians, takes the city, and dragging out from their luiking-places, such Venetians, as idoblige the their ships could not contain, puts them to death. He obliges the Chians, who had professed the Roman-Catholiek religion, either to conform to that of the Greeks, or submit to captivity; restores to the Greeks the churches taken from restreligion them, shutting up those of the Roman Catholicks; and thus, not with a divine interpolition, returns upon the Venetians all the acts of tyranny, they had exercised on the Greeks.

he l'entraus

XV. This misfortune was a little alleviated by a victory gained by the Venemax flory tians near Argos, in which four hundred Turks are faid to have been flain. But this was of no great detriment to the Turks, ner of much advantage to the Venetians.

# ANNOTATIONS.

Vizir, bestowed upon him by the Sultan, to confift not in drefs, but in bravery; and would show, how much the most slovenly men excel the best dressed ladies.

Myfirli ogli] A very famous Turkyb (Coja Jafer nentioned above. He fell with the

rest of the Turkish officers, by the hands of the rebellious foldiers, when preparations were making for the battle of Zenta, to the Sultan's great grief He was named Myfirls ogls, either because he was born of Egyptian parents, or of parents that lived in Egypt.

XVI. In

XVI. In Arabia, the rebel Sheikh Emir Mahomet is defeated by the Pilgrims Thereby guarded by Arflan Pasha Governor of Tripole, with some troops, and his toling the Ca lowers are put to flight; thus that intestine and dangerous wound of the Oth van going man empire is healed, though but for a time.

XVII. Sultan Mustapha confidering these victories as fortunate orners of his The Sultar reign, upon his return to Adrianople, folemnizes them with great pomp, and triumphs of account of appoints Medzemerto, by whose conduct he had recovered Chios, Admiral, and victories, a rewards the rest, who had distinguished themselves in this campain, by suitable gives Medic

honours and posts

XVIII Having afterwards issued out his commands through the whole empire fleet for raising a more numerous army, the Turks, animated by their late suc- Emperor's ceffes, lift themselves voluntarily in great numbers. But before he had made the neral being necessary preparations for the campain, Frederic Augustus, Elector of Saxony, Temptare at the end of the year 1107, with the Imperial army belieges Temifware. The marches to Sultan heating of this, immediately leads his army over the Danube, with a thef resolution either to relieve the city, or force the Germans to a battle.

XIX The Germans, on the approach of the Sultan, abandon the siege, rather I'm Impe resolved upon, than begun, and encamp in a proper place, about eight hours dis alife about

tance from the city, where they are determined to wait for the Turks.

XX The Turkish forces soon after come up, and pitch their tents in fight of A. the enemy, though beyond cannon thot, and by the advice of Tekeli, who at which tended upon the Sultan, fortify their camp with strong ramparts, and wife and upon the? deep trenches, a method unufual with the Turks. The first day is spent within 40 camp the camp in confultations, without, in skirmishes between the Hungarian lightarmed troops, and the Turkish advanced guards. The night at last restraining the fully of both, and each party returning to their camp, the Imperial general refolves upon a hold attempt, which would have been very glorious, if crowned with fucce's. There lay between the camps a place full of briars, furrounded with a mar'hy ground, learce an Italian mile broad, but to tinck, that a person unarmed could not pass through it. Here, he orders in the night, tour and twenty different paths to be heretly cut, and at day-break, the army, with as many cannon, to pass through, and attack the Turkesh ramparts. The foldiers execute their orders with great bravery, and having ditchar ed their cannon three or four times, make a vigorous affault upon the Sultan's camp. But unfortunately for the Christians, they happened upon the strongest part of the camp, where the Janizaries and Myfirli were placed. They penetrate indeed their trenches, where they kill a great number of the Janizaries and Egyptians, and by their first onset, strike such a terror into the whole army, that the Sultan himself left his tent, and retired to the faithest part of the camp; but toon after, they are overpowered by the Turkssh troops, and repulsed with great loss

XXI This victory was chiefly gained by the bravery of the Vizir Elmas Ma- The Viz For when the army was thrown into the utmost contusion by brivery in battle the judden irruption of the Germans, he first with his men stopped the foremost of the Germans; now pressing to the Sultan's pavilions, and by his example, incouraged the Janizaries, upon which, the Germans, finding themselves incapable of fuffaining the fury of the Turks, were obliged to return to their own camp, with the lo's of many of their men, and the twenty four cannon they had brought. When the Germans had begun to give way, they were entuely routed by three thousand Bostanss (11), who were advanced to the

### Annotations

(11) Bostanst The first Turkish Emperors, who made it their chief study to have an army inured to labour, and accustomed to hardships, instituted this order, with this view chiefly, that while they exercised themselves in the culture of gardens, they Nº. 18.

might be accustomed to heat, and cold, and other jujuries of the air, and so become fitter to bear the fatigues of war. From these Bostans were chosen the Azarli, or the fursous, who were the lowest kind of foldiery among the Turks, and out of them 5 K

afficuance of the Janizaries, and who, though deligned only for the Sultan's he this danger by Mustapha, and ordered to assist the rest of the army. Howethe Germans did not fall unrevenged. For there were flain in this battle, Weldes Mustapha Pasha, Governor of Temisware, the Vizir's brother, and mamy other Turksfb officers of the first rank, with several thousands of Janizaries and gyptians. Of the Germans, those only were killed, whom the lanizaries had found within the trenches.

Car of takes

76

XXII. The rest of the Imperial army, that they might not publickly own themselves conquered, stand the whole day in order of battle, and immoveably wait the approach of the Turks. But the Sultan, who was particularly careful to animate his foldiers with the name of victory, not thinking proper to try again the hazard of a battle, orders the Mufti, by his Fetvah, to prohibit any farther engagement, and a few days after, marching his army towards the East, puts an end to the campain. The Germans, though very near, would not venture to interrupt the retreat of the Turks, imagining they had done enough in guarding their own borders, fince the French war, in which they were involved,

would not suffer them to extend their conquests. leath of

XXIII. The Poles, belides their usual flowness, have a new pretence for de-Sabish laying their campain this year, on account of the death of their king John Sobiesks, who being exhausted by a long indisposition, died on the 17th of the month Zyleade †, in the year 1107. For being employed in the cabals which always attend the election of a king of that nation, they had not leifure to think of raising an army, much less of making a campain.

XXIV. While the Poles continue inactive, Peter Czar of Russa, having sent

1696.

for persons skilled in the arts of war and gunnery, from Germany, marches again with a larger and better disciplined army to Azac, and assaults the walls with such vigour, that the garrison, of which the Russian sword had lest but four hundred, on the 18th of the month Zelbeje +, furrendered the castle. Their example is foon followed by the garrifon of Lattich, opposite to Azac, who de-

liver up that castle to the Czar upon terms.

XXV. In the mean time the Venetians beliege Dulcineum, a port famous for contras: liged to being the receptacle of the Turkish pyrates, but though they had bravely repulfed Omerbeg Basha of Arnaud from their trenches, they are obliged by the valour of the garrison to raise the siege, and probably they would have received a notable defeat, the Seraskier marching against them with his whole force, if Liberaks, who had been appointed by the Turks Prince of Mansa, had not drawn his countrymen by a stratagem to a revolt from the Othman Port. For the Sc raskier perceiving his forces by this means weakened, and the enemy strengthened, choic rather to retreat, than commit the fafety of all Greece to the hazard of a battle. The Venetians on the other hand content with defending their former acquisitions, proceed no further, but apply themselves to repair Hexamilon in order to secure the Morea.

XXVI. At fea Medzomorto Capudan Passa regulates the ficet agreeably to the maxims of the naval science, in a manner before unknown to the Turks, avoids the battles, in which his predecessors used to engage without regard to the wind or fituation; and perpetually watches the motions of the Venetian fleet. Venetians do the same, and struck with admiration at the conduct of the Ca-

### ANNOTATIONS.

the Janizaries, this being the direct step to that order: But now, when the militia of Janizaries is easily made up out of their own sons, and such as willingly inlift them-dives, the antient manner of chusing them to f the Bellanji is last aside; and they are to no other employment, but to guard district's palace, to drefe his gardens, and

to row his barge. They have a commander named Bostans: bashs, whose dignity and office I have before explained. It never happened but this once, under Sultan Mujtapha II, that they were used as soldiers, to repel the assault of the Germans, when attacking the Turkift camp.

pudan.

pudan, dare not hazard an engagement; so that one observing the others designs,

they perform nothing memorable the whole year.

XXVII. The months proper for military expeditions being passed, Mastapha leads The 5 back his army to Adrianople, and disbanding his forces removes to Configuratinople, triumph to where he enters with such pomp, that if you had considered the magnificence Confiniting only, you would have imagined his victories had been much superior to those of the conquerors of Confiantinople, Hungary, and Egypt. The greatest ornament of this triumph was, the twenty four cannon taken from the Germans this campain, which led the way, and were followed by several noble captives taken in the former battle against Veterans.

XXVIII. On the third day after this publick entry, the Sultan visits the mo- The Sultan nument of Ebi Eyub enfare with great appearance of devotion, and agreeably word, and to the custom of the Turks/b Sultans is girt with a sword by the Sheik of that den great ping. These ceremonies being simished, he applies himself wholly to warlike war to be preparations by land and fea with the utmost expedition, orders fix and thirty made large thips of war to be built, defigning part of them against the Venetians, and part against the Russians, (who fince the taking of Azar had begun to build a flect in the Euxine-sea) with a great number of galleys and galliots; honours Medzomorto the admiral, habited in a mariner's drefs, with three Tugs, and gives him the command of the whole sea and all the islands, and also confers handsome rewards upon the rest of the sea officers, who had distinguished themselves in former expeditions. For the supply of his army he intolls twelve thousand Tamagy Janizaries (12) and eight thousand Levends (13); exercises both the foldiers and courtiets every day in Kiagizchane (14) in the use of muskets, cannon, mortar pieces, darts, jirids, and other arms common among the Turks; and having published a Ferman, orders the whole strength of the Empire to be assembled at Adrianople about Hedrelez +. Thus Conftantinople, which under the preceding Sultans + St Georg regarded nothing but pleasure, and seemed in the midst of war to be dissolved day. in luxury, under Mustapha's administration resounds nothing but arms, and not only prefages, but even promifes utfelf future conquets from what were already

### ANNOTATION 8.

(12) Yamagy Januaries ] This is the name given to those men that are newly lifted among the Janizaries, to make up their number, or that are taken into that order out of other cohorts and it is most commonly done, when they are fent to garriion a town newly taken For in that cafe, if there is occasion, for instance, for fix thousand men, not above two or three Oda's from the Otak are fent, and as they do not amount to above three thousand, the other three thousand taken from the Jebeji's or other new foldiers, under the

title of Yenzicheri\* imagy.

(13) Levendi] This name, which is a corruption of some Italian word, denotes the marine forces, confifting of very difordealy men, hardly obedient to their commanders. Formerly they were very unfkilful, but having been brought under some regulation by Medzomorto, they feem to have loft fome of their fierceness and barbarity. The usual number of them m time of peace is fourteen thousands but in case of a war with the Venetians, or upon fome other occasion, there are new ones

raifed for fix months; as many as the Sultan pleafes, who have an allowance each of twenty five dolars for those six months. There are admitted among them Greeks and other Christians, which is not allowed in any other branch of the Turksfo militia.

(14) Kiagizchane ] The Paper-shop, or bouse, a very pleasant place, not far from the suburbs Equb, near a river of the same name, that runs into the inner port; fo called, because there formerly stood papermills. But those being demolsshed, a foundary was built in their room, where are cast mortars, balls, and other kinds of ammunition. The river that waters that place, has in the bottom of it mud, very good to make bricks and tyles, and in fuch plenty, that it hath afforded materials for the many buildings that have been for for many ages erected in Constantinople. It is encompassed with very large and fine meadows, in which the Sultan's horses are turned out to grass in the spring, about St. George's day, which is also a holiday among the Turks, being called by them Hedrelez.

XXIX. The

The Sultan relying on this confidence, though informed that the French had concluded the war with the Emperor, rejects the peace offered by the Datch and a significant amballadors, boalting he was alone, without the affiftance of the , able not only to reprefs, but subdue the Emperor.

THE XXX At the approach therefore of that pleasant season, which usually invites to to the foldiers into the field, he departs from Conftantinople with the same maintithat touce, with which he had entered it, and marches through Adrianople towards Belgrade. There he again musters his army, and finds, that besides the families and fervants of the Bashas, (a very great number of which always attend a Turkefo camp,) and a multitude of other uscless persons, he had an hundred

and thirty five thousand men in the military lift.

XXXI. To this strong army the Emperor had only opposed forty six thousand Prince Germans under the command of Prince Eugene of Savor, with orders not to the de- attack the Tarks, or engage in a battle without compulsion, and only to guard Peterwaradm and the other fortresses of Hungary situated upon the Danube

XXXII. The Turks having extorted the intelligence of this from the prifoners neil, the by torture, a private confultation is held first at Belgrade between the Vizit and o arrack principal Bashas, and afterwards a Galibe Devan in the presence of the Su'tan with his Here it is determined to leave the Save on the right, and to pass the Danube wer the below Belgrade, and avoiding the Germans, who were encamped near Segidin, to penetrate with the army into Iransylvania. This advice was suggested by Tekeli, who was present in the Turkish camp, and pensaded the Sultan and great officers, that it would be easy to reduce Transvivania, both because the Hungarian rebels, who were now affembled from several paits, to the number of fifty thousand, offered to join their troops, and because the Emperor's General had fent for most of the garrisons in Transfelvania to reinforce his army, and left the cities almost empty, and deflirate of defence.

XXXIII. The Sultan approving this advice, and passing the Danube, orders his army to move towards Temifware, but in his fecond day's much hearing the Germans were advanced to Tstul, he again calls a Galibe Divan, and en quires whether it was proper to purite the resolution of the former Council to invade Transylvania, and leave the enemy behind, or to much against the ene my, and engage them in open field, wherever they flourd be found. The for mer opinion feemed to the majority very hazardous in the pistent fixe or aifairs, fince there was reason to apprehend, that while the Othman torces were engaged in Transylvania, the Germans would beliege Belgrade, and take that city, though firongly fortified and garri oned, if no relief could be brought. The Vizir urged this particularly, and observed, that the Othman troops could not without extreme danger make any attempt, till the enemy's aimy was deteated, On the other hand, if the Germans were once driven out of the field, all Hungary would lie open to the Turkish arms. This advice being recommended to the Sultan by the authority of the giver, they unanimously reloave to attack the enemy; for which purpose the Sultan not only marches his land toices towards Treal, but orders his first in the Danube with his ships of builtien to fail as far as the Tibifess 4. In the mean time the Germans perceiving the approach of the Turks from the high mountain, on which Titul flancs, though their army confifted of but fix thousand horse, determine bravely to resist, and not sell the parfage of the Tabifeus to the enemy without blood

XXXIV. For this purpose the Imperialists fortify the banks of the Triefeus. extending in a plain under the castle with ramparts and cannon, and resolutely twith thow themselves to the enemy in the rear from an eminence. The Sultan toon after approaches, and facing to finall a body as it were provoking him to battle, onders forestal Bashas to pass the river in open boats, (which the Turks use to serry with them in waggons for the forming of a bridge, ) and to an mate his tien, promises fifty gold crowns for every German taken alive, and twenty five the head of every Christian. They obey with great alacrity, not knowing, banks were fortified by the Germans, pass over without any order. The are quiet at first, but when they see several thousand Turks had passed,

ultan

a gene-

tha by

and the enemy's number to increase, they discharge their cannon upon the thickest of them, and mounting their ramparts, attack them sword in hand. The unexpected notice of the caunon had now ftruck the Januzaries with fuch terror, that forgetting they were foldiers, like women they thought of nothing but flight, by which however they could not prevent the flaughter of three shouland of their companions, nor would one have escaped, but that by good fortune the ficet came up just at the very time, and seized the island in the middle of the Tibifeus, by which means the Janizaries first pass over from the lower part of the river, and march in a body against the German ramparts. A second but lighter engagement ensues. For the Germans seeing the Januaries continually increase, and that there was reason to fear, if they persisted to defend the place of battle, they might at last be overpowered with numbers, abandon their ramparts, and retire first to the city, and afterwards, mounting their horses, to Cobila (15). Some hundreds of the Harduks make a little longer stay in the cassle, but in the evening fetting fire to it, follow their companions, After the Germans were gone, the Sultan with the rest of his forces passes the Telsifeus, and in his march the Vizir, to remove the remembrance of the defeat, exposes the dead bodies of about three hundred Germans, having before buried those of the Turks

XXXV. Without staying long there, he marches the same way, where the The third Germans had joined each other, and finding in the plain of Cobils the bridge in which the lett intire by the Germans, (whether through design or haste is uncertain) he turns Sultan resolves his army towards the Danube, and stops at the lower part of the island formed to beliege Waby the Ister opposite to Peterwaradin. Here is held a third confultation, in which it is determined immediately to run a bridge over the Danube, and besiege Peterwaradin, which might be done in two days, and before the Imperia-

lifts could march thither from Segedin.

XXXVI The inhabitants of that city had indeed a bridge intire in the lower Slight kir part of the island, but so strongly guarded, that the Turks army could not come the building near, much less pais over it without great loss. Upon this account they vigo of the bridge routly begin a new bridge, and would have finished it the second day, if some of the garriton of Peterwaradin, who had concealed themselves in that island with four cannon, had not thrown an unexpected obstacle in their way. For when they faw the Turks near the bank, they discharge their cannon upon them, piercing several boars, upon which the bridge was founded, and though upon the coming of the Turkish fleet, they are soon obliged to abandon the island, yet they prevent the furks from finishing their work till the third day, and by that means occasioned them to lote the victory, which seemed already to be in their hands.

XXXVII. For on that day Prince Eugene of Savey, who immediately on no-Pince Eugen tice of the march of the Turks, had prepared for the relief of Peterwaraden, with great ha and left Segedin, with great expedition, arrived at fun fet, and passing by the the relief of camp of the enemy, haftens towards the head of the bridge Shahbaz Gieras Peteraradan Sultan (16), son of Selim Gieras Chan of the Tartars (17), had attempted indeed

# ANNOTATIONS

(15, Cobila ] So the Turks call that large plain, which reaches from the Town of Titul, between the Danube and the Tibifius to Segedin and Peterwaradin

(16) Shabbaz Gierai] He was afterwards. upon the death of his father, Selim Gierai, advanced to the dignity of Chan, under Abmed III Sultan of the Turks; but shortly after preparing to make war against the Chercassans, he was surprized by them in an ambuscade, and slain Of which I have given an account in (Part I.)

Nº. 18.

(17) of the Tartars ] It will not be improper to relate here a remarkable inflance of dexterity and nimbleness performed then by the Tariars. Both armies stood oppofire to one another near Peterwaradin, and neither of them could be informed of the others number, nor had they been able to take any prifoner on either fide. In this exigency, Sultan Mustapha writes a civil letter to Shabbaz Gierai, desiring him to take, some way or other, if it was but one German foldier, prisoner, by whom he 5 L

his fwift progress, and with twelve thousand Tartars had burnt up all the sees far and near; but these obstacles could not repress the ardor of the mens, though they met with no lake, spring, river, or field for the space of mine hours.

learin

XXXVIII. This unexpected arrival of the German army obliges the Turkish officers to consult again, whether it was proper to attack the Germans in such an open plain, before they had fortified their camp, or to wait till they should affault the Othmans in their trenches.

The advice of

XXXIX. The Prime Vizir endeavours to the utmost of his power to perswade the young VI the Sultan to the former opinion, alledging, it was not for the honour of the fortune of a battle, fince the Musulman forces were not brought into the enemy's country, merely to flew themselves to their enemies, and then retire, but to gain the lawrels promifed by the prophet, and recover the provinces unjuffly feized by the infidels. That God, by inspiring the soldiers with an impatience for battle scarce to be restrained, sufficiently declared, that now was the time to defeat the enemy; and if this ardor should be repressed, and the army, caser to fight, be prevented, it was to be feared, this excessive caution would throw the whole army into a permicious languor, or excite in them thoughts of fedition for want of other employment.

It is disappro

XL. This opinion of the Vizir is boldly opposed by Coja Yafer Pasha, a veteran foldier, who had been prefent in almost all the battles of the Turks with the Germans, from whence he had acquired a great experience in war. He vehemently contended, that the army might not be led into the field against the Germans, urging, he had observed, that the Germans, as often as they had fought in an open plain, in which they could at pleasure open their front, advance or retire, had always gained the victory. That they had never before brought so great an army into the field as at present, and formerly had deteated the Othman troops, though much superior in number, when opposing them in the manner prescribed by the Vizir. That they were now come anded by a prudent general of approved valour and conduct in war, who, as he implied, would not provoke the Turks to a battle, unless he had placed his own troops to fuch advantage, as to be in a manner fure of victory. Almost all the l'ishas inclining to this opinion, the Vizir, that Jafer's authority might not pic vail over his, uses all his efforts to engage the Sultan on his side, stiling Jaser Pasha an infidel and traytor, who gave such advice concerning the Othman affairs, as if he was bribed by the enemy to prevent all wholfom counicls, which should be suggested to the Sultan. Jafer Pasha seeing the Vizir's obstinacy could not be furmounted any other way, defires the Sultan to remove the curtain (18), and hear in person what he should speak for the advantage of the Othman intereft. This being granted, Jafer fays, " But if, Brother, you have gained such

# ANNOTATIONS.

might be informed of the state of the enemy's army. This feemed indeed difficult, and almost impossible, because the German army flood then in order of battle, and to make any attempt against it, would have been running one's head against a wall of brass, and writing upon it a memorial of rashness in bloody characters. The Tariarian Prince however willing to comply with the Sultan's defire, calls a council, and orders four hundred chosen men, who willingly undertook to go round the German camp, and to bring away fome of the ene-side, either from among the baggage or the carriages. These dividing themselves ine feveral bodies, attack the German army,

but not without losing many of their men. and would have been obliged to return without fuccess, had not three brothers, who had defired to be of the party, though against their father's will, attacked the rear of the German wing, with fo much dexterity, as to take a man from the midft of his companions, and carry him away bound.
(18) curtain] When, upon an expedition,

a Council is called by the Turks, to which they give the name of Galibe Divan, the Sultan fits indeed in it, but in a particular place, with a Perde, that II a cuitain drawn before him, where he can hear all

that is faid, without being feen.

" high favour with God, that he inspires you with counsels, and afforce you of " the events, you cannot blame me for not knowing or believing it. But if it " shall please his Majesty, let him order me to be bound here, and kept in " irons, and you to attack the enemy in the manner you think proper. If, with-" in an hour or two, you do not betake yourselves to a shameful flight, I will fubmit to suffer as a stinking dog, whatever punishment his Majesty pleases to " inflict upon me. But if (which God forbid) my prediction shall be fulfilled, " may you give an account of your imprudence to God and the Sultan. But whatever shall happen to myselt, I still adhere to my former opinion, and with due fidelity to the Othman empire, advise not to engage the enemy in open " battle, but only to fortify our trenches, and fustain their attacks with our can-" non and foldiers. By this means, though God should not favour us with vic-" tory, I can certainly promise, we shall not be deteated. But if, passing by us. " they shall advance to the head of the bridge, I am of opinion, we ought not to " march against them openly, but surround them with ramparts For thus they will be obliged, by want of provisions, to leave their camp, and attack us in " our works, or pass the Danube, and so give us an opportunity of falling upon " them in their passage, without any hazard."

XLI. The Sultan, though he approved of Jafer's advice, yet adjourns the By the 1dv council till the next day, in order to further deliberation, but commands his fire, the council till the men to keep in their trenches, and those, who of their own accord, had alrea- til and batt dy taken the field, to be beaten back by the Chaulbis\* (19). This not being air deferred fufficient to restrain the ardor of the soldiers, impatient for a battle, the Musti proclaims by a Fetvah, that whoever should fall in that battle, would not only lote the expected crown of Shehader, but also eternally lament their unscasona-

ble boldneis in hell.

XLII Mean while, Prince Eugene had advanced as far as the bridge, and ha- The Virginian ving refreshed his foldiers, almost dead with thirst and heat, with the waters of means to p the Danube, had drawn them up, in which posture remaining all night, the swade the Turkish camp is icized with great tetror, the foldiers, who were restrained from tan to a bat fighting, thinking it to proceed from their general's fear, and to be the worst of omens to the Othman affairs The Vizir perceiving this, and having got a proper occasion of exposing Jafer Pasha, informs the Sultan of the speech and commotions of the foldiers, and makes use of them as an argument how prejudicial the Basha's too great caution had been to the Othman interest, and how fatal it would prove, unless immediately obviated. For that there was no hope, that the enemy could be deprived of forage and provisions, since they had the Danube open, and were masters of all the towns above them, from whence they might be plentifully supplied. That in the mean while, time was loft, fo large an army languished in a truitless idleness, the treasure was exhausted, and the enemy every day firengthned.

XLIII Since his Majesty therefore would not engage the enemy in the field, or to best he adviced to leave them behind, and march towards the Tibifeus, and beliege us Segedin, fince he certainly knew, that this city was not so strongly fortified nor by the Sul garnsoned, as to be able to hold out against the Othman army ten days. That when this town was subdued or destroyed by fire, the whole country between the Ishifeus and the Danube would be reduced to the Turkish obedience, and the neighbouring countries of Hangary might be laid waste by the Tartars and

### ANNOTATIONS.

(19) by the Chaushis\*] There are two forts of Chaushi\* among the Turks. Some, who, in time of peace are employed at Constantinople in the Vizir's Divan, to receive the petitions of the plaintiffs, to carry the Vizir's orders to the Judge, and to put his fentence in execution. The others, called Alas Gbaufbs, are made in time of war, and their office is much the same as that of Aides de Camp, in regular troops. The bufiness of these is to carry, in a battle, the Vizir's orders to the Basha's, to take care that the horse stand in a strait line, to give the fignal of battle, to found the retreat, and the like, in which they are not half lo dextrous as the regular Aides de Camp.



# The Othman History.

Part II.

designed foldiers. That the German army was heavy and so satigued as not to be to follow, much less pursue the Turkish troops; and he could not imagine, that if Segedin was once belieged, the German general would that up his forces in fuch a place, where, if any accident should happen, they must perish for want of sustenance. That they might indeed beliege Belgrade, but there was a garrison of eighteen thousand men in that city, and a stock of provisions sufficient for three years. Besides, the Othman army and fleet were near, and if there should be any urgent occasion, though the enemy should cut off all other passages, supplies might be thrown in by the fleet. That nothing more was required for the fecurity of that city, but the removal of the governor Amucje ogli Huffein Pasha, an infirm and weak man, and the placing in his room, Coja Jaser Pasha, whose abilities in the defence of cities, sufficiently appeared in the siege of Teme fware. The Vizir suggested this change to the Sultan with this particular view, that he might recover his authority in the army, and remove Jafer Pasha from about the Sultan, and afterwards take occasion to put him to death, and by his example, warn the other Bashas not to oppose him too warmly for the future. But the Sultan suspecting the Vizir's design against Jafer Pasha, approves of his advice relating to the fiege of Segedin, but orders Jafer Pasha to continue in the camp, fince his counfels would be of more use in the army, than in the cities,

The Sultan marcher towards Segedin

Turk with

great refolution

The Honga-

armed troops take Jafer

rian light-

XLIV. On the morrow therefore, which was the 5th of the month Jemazial evvel, at day-break, he commands the drums and trumpets to give the figual, and marches the Janizaries and the rest of his forces the same way, by which the Germans had come, toward the Tsbsfeus, and on the first day, having performed nine hours march, pitches his camp near a lake, where the Germans had likewife encamped, but allows these troops, who were desirous of proceeding surther, the liberty of doing fo. On the second day, having left Kiuchuk\* Jafer Pasta (20) at the bridge over the lake with five hundred choicn hor'e, he goes on before day to Zenta, a castle, little known before, on the banks of the Tibiscus, with such expedition, that he seemed to fly, rather than march

Prince Engene XLV. Prince Eugene, the German General, hearing the Tubulchana, and imagining the fignal to be given, and the Turkifb army drawn up, had, in the mean while marshalled his forces, and waited without motion for the enemy till noon, but being informed by the Hungarian scouts, that the Turks had decamped, and were marching to Zenta, taking this to be a flight, he orders the Hungarian horse to march before, and leaving behind, the heavier and weaker part of his army, with only fixteen thousand men, immediately follows the Hungarians.

with more courage than prudence.

XLVI. The Hungarians that night first lighting upon Kinchuk\* Jafer, left to guard the bridge over the lake, find the furks fleeping, and expecting nothing less than the enemy, furround and cut them off, so that of the whole party, only the Pasha's chamberlain escaped by means of the darkness, who immediately flies to the Turkish camp, which had already reached Zenta, and informs the Vizir that the German army was very near, and had destroyed his mafter, with all the troops under his command.

The Vizir makes a falfe

XLVII. The Vizir, to prevent the report of this misfortune from raising new commotions in the camp, immediately beheads the person, who brought the news, to the Sultan and fignifies to the Sultan, that the Hungarian horse in the Emperor's service had appeared in the rear, and surprised Jafer Passa, but were atterwards deteated by the Tartars and other Othman forces. He had scarce told the Sultan this,

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(20) Kiuchuk\* Jafer ] A different person rom the above-mentioned Coja Jafer Pawho was afterwards flain at the battle Genis. Being taken by the Germani, cerely gave them an account of the the whole Othman army, and for

that piece of treachery was fet at liberty after the battle, without ranfom. When he returned to the Sultan, he not only received no punishment for his treachery, but was reftored to his former dignity; However, he died the next year.

when several troops of Turturs, which had accidentally seen the Hungarlan . horse, come, and report in the camp, that the whole German army were pursuing the Othman forces with the utmost speed, and were now very near.

XLVIII Whereupon the Sultan commands his men immediately to halt, and The Sultan those, who were marched before towards Segedin, to return, and a bridge as being info foon as possible to be run over the Tibifeus, which was done in four hours, tary that il the boats brought in waggons, and by the Turks called Dumba, serving for the enemy was foundation. About noon, the Sultan passes over first himself on horseback, pisses the whose stirrup, when the Vizir came according to custom to kiss, he is resulted by Tibifus in him with a ftern countenance; and commanded to take care that the cannon and great terror the whole camp be conveyed fafely over, for if the enemy should take but a fingle waggon, he should for it suffer an infamous death.

XLIX. The Vizir knowing that every thing could scarce be conveyed over in The Vizir two days, and perceiving his ruin inevitable, if he should ever appear before the contribution, at first lends over eight cannon with their ammunition, that he might intention, not feem openly to neglect the Sultan's command, but afterwards flops the reft, contains at allowing the Spahis and Bashas troops to pals, alledging, that the cannon and enemy half name of the army quick to be detained in order to defend the army or the remy or the standard of the best part of the army ought to be detained, in order to defend the camp, it the enemy should attack it in the rear. These therefore continue to pais all night

and the next day till dinner-time.

L. About noon the Vizir is informed that the Germans were advancing, and By in arti but three hours distant from the camp, upon which, that he might not perion speech he without his rivals, he fends for all the Bashas, who had already passed over with other Bash their troops, under pretence of confulting with them, they, being obliged to with him obey the Vizir's order, return on foot with only three Chocadars, the baggage to the Ger on the bridge not allowing a passage for the horse. The Vizir seeing them all assembled, except the Caimacan, Buyukli Mustapha Pasta, says to them, " The " enemics, brethren, are advancing, and are now in fight. We who refused to " fight when we had a convenient place and opportunity, shall now be forced to " do it without those advantages. We have but one happiness left us, the pro-" testion of the Mahometan religion, which declares us Gazi, if we conquer, " and Shehid, it we die valiantly lighting, privileges of inclimable value! Now " as one of these waits for me this day, I thought it unreasonable to defraud " you, my buthren and tellow-toldiers, of fuch a felicity Behold therefore " Paradile open before you, which I command you by the divine injunction to " enter, and enjoy the delights promited by our prophet. But if you refule to obey the law and my orders, my tword (which he thewed) shall deprive you both of the life, which you defire, and the Paradite, which you defpile."

LI. All the Bashas, since they durst not in the middle of the camp oppose The Bast the Vizit, nor could find any method of escape, pretend content and obedience, and solds and retire to their flations in the trenches; where perceiving the circuit of them murmur, too extensive to be conveniently defended by the forces which remained, they obey begin to form a lefter trench within the greater, the foldiers indeed complaining and reproaching the Vizir to his face with their imminent danger, but obeying his orders, fince their own fafety was concerned. While they are thus employed, the German army appears, which the Sultan feeing approach, and cover the whole plain, is inraged, and lending frequent Chatifberifs\* to the Vizir, commands him infrantly to fend over the Janizaries, cannon, and ammunition, and not delay, though all the other carriages should be taken by the enemy. But the Vizir conceals these orders from the Bashas, and answers the bearer, he had rather die fighting valiantly, with his drawn (word, than be shamefully put to death by the Sultan, and flops the Janizaries from pailing The Vizir is assisted in this by the negligence of the herdimen, who feeing the Germans advancing, drive at the same time all the cattle, appointed for drawing so many thousand waggons, into the river above the bridge, by which the waters being intercepted, force the cattle against the bridge, which the fearful animals endeavouring to mount, fink three of the boats, and thus overfer the foundation, so that but one man, and that with difficulty, could pass upon planks laid across 5 M LII. The N°. 18.

Life infantry of the Vizir being thus separated from the Sultan, the Gerstime forces arrive about three hours before night, and without viewing the fortificasions of the Turkish camp, imagining it only guarded by the carriages, fall directly upon the Turks, but are repulsed with considerable loss. The Germans perceiving the camp, contrary to their expectation, fortified by a double trench, and two rows of waggons chained together, and that the Turks on this fide the river were much superior to them in number, desist from their assault, and refolve to attack the enemy another way.

let this me bod being ound dangeous, they ry another.

LIII. The western banks of the Tibiscus are high and scraggy, the space between which, when the river is fwoln by the autumnal or winter raises, is full of water, which in the fummer fubfides, and leave a fandy piece of ground of thirty paces. Prince Eugene orders a trench to be dug here a little below the Turkis camp, and several regiments to pass that way, and fall upon the Turks within, while he attacked them without. And left the Sultan should repair the bridge, and fend supplies to his army, he plants two cannon near the head of the bridge, and quickly demolishes it. The Sultan likewise places sour of the eight cannon, which the Vizir had fent over before the battle, on the bank, and orders Arnaud Abds Ksebaya (21) to fire upon the enemy, but with such confufion, that he had no trench to secure him, and imagined a place covered with reeds, which was before him, would fufficiently protect him from the enemy. But the Germans observing from whence the Turks fired, immediately plant their cannon against them, after the bridge was destroyed, kill several of the engineers, and wounding others, oblige the Turks after one discharge to remove their cannon.

LIV. And indeed every thing feemed to confirm the destruction of the Turks, for the Janizaries themselves having repulsed the enemy from the outer trench, /izir and the eft of the Ba- retire into the inner, which though not finished, they had carried in some meafure from one bank to the other, and declare their resolution to defend it. The Vizir, with the rest of the Bashas, endeavoring to divert their from their purpose, first by entreaties, and afterwards by force, their despair turning into rage, they fall upon their own friends, and destroy all their officers, Vizirs, and Bashas, and

spare none but their Aga, Deli Balta ogli.

The Janiza-ner kill the

The Imperia- LV. In the midst of these contests, part of the German army serve the outer lists from the trench, abandoned by the Turks, and seign to attack the inner, only with intent ramp of the foot to draw the enemy from that fide of the camp, which lay towards the river, hemost to a and by disposing their own men on the bank, render the assault more cary These appearing suddenly at the head of the bridge, the Turkesh forces are struck with great terror, and employ their whole strength in that part, in order to prevent the Germans from entring While both fides fight here with equal refolution, the party of Germans, which was come from the plain, ferze the inner trench, which was negligently guarded, and fall in the rear upon the enemy, fighting at the river. The Turks, inclosed and pressed on all sides, sight bravely, though in confusion, and at last, having in vain attempted a passage for escaping, in the space of three hours, are all flain to a man.

The battle sloody on soth fides

LVI. However, they did not fall unrevenged; for fix thousand of the Germans are Gaid to have perished in that expedition: On the other hand, of the Turks were

### ANNOTATIONS.

(21) Arnaud abdi] This man was an Albaman by birth, and upon that account, had the name of Arnaud given him. He was inferior to none of the Turks in courage and political knowledge. From a Chaush bash, he was raised by Elmas Mehemed Palba, to the dignity of Keebasa; and, after the battle of Zenia, that the reains of the army might not desperse themfalves for want of a commander, and fall nto the enemies hands, all the rest of the 5 Batha's having been flam, he was honoured

by the Sultan himfelf with three Tugs near Temssware, and ordered to conduct the forces to Belgrade and as the manner of having the honour conferred upon him, was fuch as had never happened before to any other Basha (for all the Bashas are created, not by the Sultan himself, but by the Vizir, from whom also they receive the badges of their authority) he obtained upon that account, the name of Padifha chiragy". I hear he is still alive, and enjoys the Pashalic of My/r or Egypt.

slain, as appeared by the lists, sourcess thousand and seventy Janizaries, with their Aga, Deli Balta ogli (22), seventy three Ojak and Balak Agalari, three thousand seven hundred Topchi's and Jebeji's, seven thousand Arnaudi (23), the Vizir Elmas Mabomet Pasha himself, fifteen Bashas honoured with three Horse-tails, the most eminent of whom were Coja Jafer Pasha, Mysirli ogli, samous sor the taking of Chios, Kiose Halil Basha of Diarbekir, Fazil Pasha of Sbercu-li (24), twenty seven Bashas, honoured with two or one Horse-tail, besides a great number of the usual attendants upon the Turkish camps, so that the whole number of slain may be justly computed (25) at above thirty thousand.

LVII. The

#### ANNOTATION 8.

(22) Delt Balti ogh! His father was Janzaraga, and he arrived himfelt to the fame dignity, after having paffed through the feveral posts in the army at last he was, for the sake of his virtues, honoured by the Sultan with three Tigs, though the Vizir, the common enemy of all good and great men, murmured at it. For the Janzaraga has commonly but two horse tails, and if any one has three granted him, it is looked upon, as done in prejudice to the Vizir. The signame of Delt, or the Mid, was given him on account of his excessive boldness, because he rushed like a madman into all dangers.

(23) Arnaudi] Ever fince the suppression of the rebellion of Iskenderbeg in Albania, when almost all the inhabitants of that country were compelled by Sultan Murad II, to embrace Mahometijm, the Sultan have always kept some thousands of them in their camps. They are reckoned, and really are, the braveft and boldeft of all men in war, and ruth upon the enemies with no less resolution, and much more diferetion than the Janizaries and though they are under no regulation, yet have agreed upon fome order among themselves, by which they are kept together, and not disperied, or confounded with others, except when the whole army comes to be routed. They are particularly famous for their skill in shooting at a mark, in which they are so dextrous, that they make nothing of taking an egg or an apple, from off their mother's or wife's head, with a bullet, at two hundred paces diftance.

(24) Fazli Pasha] A man famous among the Turks for his learning and other excelent qualities, whence he had the name of Iazli, it e the Learned He was, for his sine way of writing, raised by Elmas Mebened Pasha, in the first year of his Vizirship, to the dignity of Kiebasa; and afterwards fent with three Tugs to Shebrezulian Pasha-lic. He left a very good name behind him.

(25) justly computed] The Turks were never known to have fought fo stoutly and desperately as in this battle, for not one of them was taken alive. Hence appears the bravery of the conquering army. The victory however would have been very doubtful,

had not the Janizaries themselves slain, just before the battle, their commanders, men renowned for their valour; by whom if they had been headed, it is generally thought, that with their affiftance, they might eafily, either have defeated, or at least repulsed, the Germans, who were much inferior to them. And truly, it has fometimes been found by experience, that when the Turks are hemmed in, and fee no way of escaping, they will fight much more fiercely for life than for victory, and if they have wife commanders upon tuch an occafion, they will not only fight beyond expectation, but even do fuch things as feem to exceed human strength And here I think it may be of ule to give fome direc-tions about the manner of fighting against the Turks, drawn from observations I have made in the expeditions where I have been present, though I well know, that Bulbequius has given a large account of it, and others have written whole volumes about A General then must consider. the lame whether his forces are equal to those of the Turks, if not in number (for that is what the Christian's army can feldom be) yet at leaft in courage, and whether he has good ammunition, and necessary provisions. If he wants these, he must take care of coming even within fight of the Turks. For not only their courage increases, when they perceive the enemy is arraid, or draws back; but they also fight more bravely; and whenever they find, there is no one dares purfue them, even when they fly, they fometimes renew the fight. But if a General knows himself to be a match for them, and is furnished with every thing, let him boldly come and face them, however, let him not hazard an engagement the first day, but remain two or three days in the fame place without motion. For almost all the Turkish foldiers are feized, at the first light of the enemy, with an eager defire of coming to an engagement, so that they rush like lions to a battle, of their own accord, and can hardly be restrained by the Chaushis. but after the second or third day, this immoderate ardor abates, and if they are kept longer without fighting, it grows to cold, that they must be compelled to fight. It is sa-

LVE The only person who escaped, was Mahmud ben ogli (26), Pasha of the Arand fon of that Beglerberg of Rumelia, who fell in the battle with Vetera-This Mahmud being twice wounded, was faved by the strength of his horse, which carried him over the river. I have heard him describing his escape in a very lively manner.

The Sultan bendoni he camp and war in great

He puts Ga pays baffei, who gives

LVIII. After this misfortune, Sultan Mustapha, who was a melancholy, as well as idle spectator of the battle, being seized with a panic, though there was nothing to be feared from the Germans, who, fatigued with so much toil, could not time to Time! repair the bridge in fight of so numerous an army as he had with him, at midnight, without any guide or light, abandons his camp, and directs his course towards Temisware.

LIX. Capus basks, a Venetian by birth, who had apostatized from the Chriflian faith, and assumed the name of Shahin Mahomet, endeavours to correct the him better ad error of the Sultan, and advices him not to leave his camp dishonourably, and hy vice, to death. his flight, give the enemy, who had destroyed but a small part of his army, an entire victory. For there was no reason why he should retire with such precipitation, fince the enemies were not only tired with fo long a march and fo many labours, but had no bridge, nor any other means of passing the river. But the Sultan was possessed by such dreadful apprehensions, that he resected these wholfome advices, and immediately put the author to death, as a disguised Christian, bribed by the Germans to suggest permissions counsels, and continued his flight with as much speed as before.

#### ANNOTATION S.

fer to receive their first onset, than to attack them in their ranks. For when they are attacked, they fight in better order, and defend themselves with more care, besides, the cannon which they always place in their foremost ranks, make a great saughter among those that dare to assault them. But if, on the contrary, you wait their attack, though it be very fierce, and mixed with hideous cries, yet as they are immediately in diforder, and cannot keep their ranks as they run, they are easily repulted by the fire of the muskets. And these are the only instruments for gaming the victory, and for quelling the Othman fury For if they come once to close fighting, they make a terrible flaughter among the Christians, whose twords are not equal to the sharp Turksh scimetars. But when the Christians perceive them giving ground, and find their courage abate, they must not ftand still, for that the enemies will take for a fign of fear, but they must advance flowly towards the enemies camp. And the retreating Janizaries feeing that, will make their whole camp refound with the confused cry of Giaur gieldy, the Infidel is advan-ced; which ditheartens the rest of the army, and is the first step to the enemies getting the victory. The Janizaries however do not immediately yield it, but are obliged by their officers to renew the fight. 'As they are coming on, the Christians must receive them with a continual fire, and drive them back, before they can approach: and if that succeeds, they are hardly brought to make a third onset. They being also repalled the third time, you must

not fland flill, but march cautiously towards their camp. And then this more horrible and fouder outery is heard throughout their camp, Gians bafts, the infide is come, or hath troden on our heels, after which, I have observed, they can never be brought again to renew the charge. For the moment the Janizaries hear it, they leave their trenches and exanon, and mind only to get a horie or a mule from 113 one that comes in their way, by which they may fave themselves. And the civiley, who are well acquainted with the Junzines way, as if placed between two enemies, fly with all igood, and get as for as they can from the foot, for fear of being furrounded, as it generally happens, by the Januaries, and thrown from their hories, But if a Christian General is over-ciutious, and, for fear of an ambush, neglects to purfue them when they give way, the Janizaries immediately grow couragious, and, forgetting their defeat, as if they were victorious, the cry of Guur corear, the Infidel is afraid, is ipicad through their camp, by which means, their last attacks are much fiercer than the first, and they often gain a victory of which the Christians have thought themfelves fecure.

(26) Mahmud ben ogh Beglerbeg of Rumelsa, whose father, of the same name, was killed, three years before, in the battle with Veterans That family has not only a great estate in Rumelia, but is also frequently promoted to Pashalics in that country, and very often, to the dignity of Begleibeg of Rumelia.

LX. The Turks had another more grievous misfortune through the darkness The state of the night, which was so great, that no person could discern the path they cut state were to take, by which means the whole retinue of the Sultan turning too much begger to the right towards the Tibsscus, fall into muddy and marshy ground, from which they were obliged to free themselves, by leaving their horses and baggage with them behind.

LXI. At last, at sun-rise, the Sultan comes to that place, where, the last year The Saita a battle had been fought with the Germans, and performing his morning-devo-allo leaving tions, changes his horse and habit, and unknown to all, flies with the utmost term sund.

speed to Tempware.

LXII. The army advancing about noon near the same place, and perceiving Throccid neither the Sultan, nor any of the great officers with them, are extremely surprised, and this terror is increased by a rumour, the author of which was unknown, among the speed at the same time through the whole army, that the Sultan was taken by Timbs the Hungarians, or betrayed by his own soldiers to the enemy. This report is readily received by those, whose minds were prepared by fear to believe any thing, and occasions them to disperse several ways, and every one anxious for his own statety to think only how to escape the Germans, whom they every moment imagined to be at their heels.

LXIII Aditated with these imaginary fears, at last in the evening they reach Ainmon Terms, and, it is governor of which shuts the gates against them. As they receive spread of no certain the concerning the Sultan, the rumour of his being taken entaken creases. For the governor of that city had been commanded by the Sultan to conceal his arrival by all possible methods, less the Germans hearing of it should

invest him there

Which i

I.XIV. Besides this apprehension, those, who had escaped, are attended with the perpetual companion of a deseat, want of provision; the corn had been left total in their camp, they having been more follicitous to preserve themselves than tunes their food. Some sew had the good fortune to purchase bread at an excessive price. Their beasts of builthen likewise, as well as themselves were ready to die with thirst, and had no water to allay it. For the morass which surrounds Temilware, was almost dried up through the heat of the summer, and if there were any structure puddles to be found, those who were strongest (27) seized them, and excluded the rest.

LXV. The

### ANNOTATIONS.

(27) were ftrongest Whenever I call to mind the iniferable confusion at that time, I cannot help being feized with a fecret There was then no fafety, either from friend or foe, but, on the contrary, the greatest contusion imaginable. Sultan lay hid three days in the town, un-I nown to all but the Pasha, while various reports flew through the whole camp of his bing tiken and betrayed by his fubjects. I he troops that had escaped, wandered up and down without a commander, without a leader, without discipline, and for hunger, plundered every one they met. The great drought that happened that year, having dried up all the waters, the horses were forced, for thirst, to suck up the very mud, and if a man found by chance any standing water, he was obliged to kill or wound many, before he could come to wet his lips, much less to quench his thirst. Having escaped from the battle, I had brought away my tents and whole baggage, and was come with the rest of the forces, to Tempoare, where I had my fur-niture in a vineyard. Here I found by chance, the mouth of a well, covered with earth, over which, having pitched my tent, and got it cleaned to the bottom, it afforded me very fresh and pure water. After my family and horses had drank, I sent the next morning, about break of day, a fervant, with a pitcher of water to the cook, but a foldier meeting him, takes the pitcher from him, drinks the water, and threatens to kill him, unless he would tell where he had found that water. The poor fellow, feeing a naked fword at his breaft, is overcome with fear, and confesses that I had found a well under my tent. The foldier, the moment he had received the information, goes to his companions, tells them what he had heard, whereupon they all come, with a fword in one hand, and a bucket in the other, afking every one they met, where my tent was? So perceiving the thing different, and no longer to be concealed, I ordered my tent to be so N 5 N

LXV. At last, after the Othman army had for three days been like a ship in a fair derivate, without rudder or pilot, the Sultan, finding there was no danger from fair dermans, with a guard of foldiers which he had received from the Pasha of subdiffware, discovers himself to his army, and removes their fears: for all his serces testify their joy upon fight of him, as if he had returned in triumph, and ery out, they regard not their late misfortune, but would take a fevere revenge upon the enemy, fince they were affured of their Sultan's fafety.

LXVI. The Sultan next day leads his troops, now recovered from their despair. Peter, towards Belgrade, and in his march coming to a place called Alibunar (28), is met , vi. by Amueje Ogli Huseim Pasha, governor of Belgrade, for whom he had sent by Mirachor Cherkies \* Mehemed Aga, and as there were present no other Bashas ho-

noured with three Tugs, confers on him the Vizirship.

LXVII. After a short stay at Belgrade, about the end of the month Jemaziul from evvel, of the year 1109, he returns with the remains of his army to Adrianople. This was the fate of the Turkish forces after their defeat. But the Imperialists, 109 after their victory, had continued all night in the place of battle, apprehensive of 1698. some stratagem, usual among the Turks; but the next day passed the Tebricus, and plundered what Tekeli (29) had left in the camp.

LXVIII. After this, being discouraged from the siege of such strong cities as their Temifware and Belgrade, by the feafon being too far advanced, they turned their which arms against Bosnia, took Dobe and Mogle, set fire to Serayo, the capital of the

age m country, and reduced almost the whole province.

LXIX In this diffres, the Turkish forces appointed to guard that country, essul not knowing what other method to take, go to Daltaban Mustapha Pasha (30), one of

#### ANNOTATIONS.

removed, and the well to be opened; and to excuse my felf, told them, that having found there a dead man, I had hid the well, for fear some person pressed by thirst should, not knowing it, taite of the water before it was purged, and thereby pollute his foul. By this innocent he, absolutely necessary at that time, I not only escaped the fury of the Barbarians, but received thanks for the good fervice I had done them

(28) Alibunar] The Fountain of Ali, a place half way between Temifware and Belgrade, where the spies on both sides are wont to refort; for it is very high, and from thence you have a very good prospect of the whole country Tound.

i Pa-

(29) Tekeli] He had accompanied the Sultan in this expedition, and, after the defest, feeing the bridge broken down, and knowing it could not be repaired by the Germans in so short a time, he staid all night in the Turkish camp, where he plundered all that was most valuable; and by that means he got greater riches for himfelf and his family, than he could have done from the Sultan's pension, which was hardly sufficient to maintain him.

(30) Daltaban Mustapha] A man very famous among the Turks for his warlike virtues. In his youth he was a Janizary, and brought in at the court of the great Vizir Kioprili Aband Pajba. His successor, Cara Musiapho Pajba, promoted him to the office of Talkhilo-distribution of fortune, he not only loft his place. would not come again into play, till

Arabayi Ali Pasha was made Vizir, by whom he was created Janizas Aga. That post gave him the first opportunity of making his virtues known to the world, for he took a very great care of the publick tranquillity, severely chastised disorderly persons, and instead of riding on horseback, as his predecessors, he used to change his dicis, and walk on foot night and day about the city (upon which account he had the name of Daltaban, that 18, unflood or barefuoted, given him,) which gave all forts of men a very high opinion of him to that when Buyukly Mustapha was raised to the dignity of Vizir, he thought no one fo fit to fucceed him in his office of Babadagby Seraskier as Daltaban. Whilst he enjoyed this post, he applied himself wholly to clear Moldavia of the Poles, and for that purpole endeavoured to take Soroka, which was their magazine in that country, though he could not execute his delign for want of a fufficient number of men, (for the greatest and best part of the Othman army was sent against the Emperor of Germany) yet he so brave-ly desended the borders of Moldavia, that the Poles could not make any farther progreis, or do any confiderable damage to the Turkilo provinces. He held that employment about four years, in which time he contracted a close friendship with my father, which he not only retained as long as he lived, but also expressed it several ways, after my father's death, to his fons; a thing uncommon amongst Barbarians. When troubles arose in Asia, and the coun-

413

## Book IV.

## 21. Mustapha II.

who then happened to be at Bichkie, a town of Bofnia, and offering him the command of the army, force him to take it upon him. Under his conduct the

#### ANNOTATION 8.

try began to be infelted with robberies, no man appeared fitter to the Vizir to put a stop to them than Daltaban. Being fent therefore to Kiutabia with the dignity of Anadol-Beglerbeg, he not only quelled the seditious in a short time, and restored that province to its former tranquillity, but alin revived amongst them military discipline, which had been entirely laid alide, and augmented very much the Afiatus forces. The envy of his enemies was the cause of his not perishing at the battle of Zenia; for being come that year to Sopbia, the metropolis of Bulgaria, he was by the Vizir accused to the Sultan of having unjustly plundered many persons in Asia, and exacted a large fum of money upon the inhabitants of those countries, without and contrary to the Sultan's order, and of having converted it to his own use. To which Daltaban answered, that it was true, he had received a larger tribute from Asia than his predecessors, but he had not hoarded the money in his own coffers, but applied it in augmenting the forces, and for proof, appealed to all the Afiatic troops Notwithstanding this, the Vizir being afraid, if that hero's noble qualities became more conspicuous in the expedition, he would supplant him in the Vizirship, he was, unheard, deprived of his Pafbalic, and all his riches and employments, and banished to Bichkie, a little town in Bosma. happened about that time to go into the Kiebaia's chancery on some business of my own, where a clerk was ingroffing the mandate for Daltaban's banishment, and chancing to read it over by stealth, as he was an old friend of mine and my father's, I went privately to him, and faithfully told him what I had feen At which, without any emo-tion, he fays " I indeed thank you for " your friendship, and commend you for being mindful of my fervices to your fa-But you need not concern your felf about me, for perhaps the divine Providence will deliver me by this means " from that death and destruction which I " foresee will overtake the Vizir, and the " reft of my enemies." I shall here, for the fake of the curious, give the form of the mandate commonly made use of at the degrading of a Basha. " Thou who art "Mustapha (without any mention of his office or dignity) fince thy crimes and offences are become notorious, thou art entirely guilty of, and condemned to, death; but by means of our mercy, " thou art exempted from capital punishment : however, our fublime mandate is " issued, that thou be deprived of the dig-

" nity of Vizir, and banished to the town " of Biebkie, in the country of Bosnia, &c. Now this very banishment proved the cause of Daltaban's advancement; for the Imperialists having, after the battle of Zenta, carried their arms into Bolma, and conquered the greatest part of that pro-vince; such Turks as remained there, being without a general, and knowing not what to do, apply to Daltaban, and declare him Seraskier, much against his will, and with-out the Sultan's knowledge. Having, after he was invested with that office, taken four and twenty castles from the victorious Germans on both fides the Save, he found it easy to obtain from the Sultan a confirmation of the dignity conferred upon him by the voice of the people Soon after, when the Arabians, having revolted, and taken Bostra, made incursions into Mesopotamia, Daltaban was chosen by the Vizir Amucie Ogli Husein Pasha, to suppress also this danger, and, belides the dignity of Seraskier, had also the government of Bagdad bestowed upon him. When he came thither, with no more than twelve regiments he attacks and defeats an hundred and twenty thousand Arabs; in which battle he is faid to have killed with his own hand four hundred of the enemies After this victory, he recovers Bostra, takes under his protection the Arabian troops who implored his clemency, lays a heavier tribute upon them than they used to pay; and so not only restored the Pashalic of Bagdad to its antient bounds, but also enlarges them, and makes it richer than ever. Whilst he was thus employed, being flandered by Rams ress effends, the Vizir accuses him to the Sultan as a rebel, and favouring the Arabs, and prevails with the Sultan to fend Battal Othman Aga, formerly his master of horse, to Bagdad with a Chatthers, to dispatch him out of the way. When he comes to Daltaban in his camp near Bostra, elated with his late victory, and perceiving that, by reason of the soldiers great affection to him, he could not put the Sultan's orders in execution, he prudently conceals the reafon of his coming, and pretends he was fent by the Sultan for no other end but to fee whether Daltaban's actions were answerable to his fame. Upon that, Daltaban shewing him thirty-two thousand heads of Arabs, "Go, fays he, and tell my mafter, " the Sultan, faithfully what you have feen." Othman Aga, after having examined every thing, returns to Constantinople, and informs the Sultan, how he had found the man whom he had adjudged to death, in

it priume their courage, and not only repress the victorious Germans, them to retreat beyond the Save, and take from them four and twen-

LXX. The

### ANNOTATIONS.

the midft of a victorious army, and therefore could not perform his orders. Then he went on to declare what Daltaban had done for the good of the Othman state, how he had entirely subdued the Arabs, freed Mefopotamia from their incursions, and rendered all the adjacent provinces entirely fafe. After Othman aga's return, Daltaban, knowing the covetouineis of the Mufti, Feizullab effends, as well as his great incereft with the Sultan, fent him by fome of his people a present of fixty thousand gold crowns. The Music guesting, that such a large of fum of money, which came thus unexpectedly to him, was the interpreter or fore runner of fome very confiderable request, sent a trusty messenger to Dalta ban, to know his desires. It he aimed at the dignity of Vizir, that he could eafily obtain it for him from the Sultan, because the present Vizir Ilussein Pasha was very fickly, and had in a great measure lost his character, by reason of his drunkenness. To this Daltaban answers, That he thought indeed, the fervices he had done the Othman Empire deserved some recompence: and knowing he could not rife to the dignity that was offered him, without his protection and affiftance, he therefore defired him to attach to hunfelf a new and ever-faithful vaffal by fo important a favour, that he did not want means of making him amends for the fame, and accordingly had prepared prefents for him much larger than the former. Upon receiving this answer, the Musti, who was already displeased with Hussen Passa, in order to execute his deligns, periwades the Sultan to bring Daliaban nearer the court, by making him Pasha of Kiutabia. When he heard of his being there, he prevails upon the Sultan to depose Huffen Pafba, and to fend Battal Othman aga to Kiutahia with the Vizir's feal to Daltaban. Who upon receiving it, comes without delay to Constantinople. Having staid till the evening without the walls in the powder-magazines, he receives advice, that Huffein Pasha was departed this life, at his country house, about eight hours from Constantinople: So he goes thither, and affile at his funeral, and then comes the next day to Advianople, where he receives the Vizir's robe from the Sultan. On the morrow, he lends for Rams Ress effends and Mauro-

ders were; how far they had been able to go; and upon what conditions the Sultan had ordered them to put an end to the war When Daliaban had heard their report, he fays in a great paffion. "You have in"deed followed your inftructions; but
"furely those instructions were fraudulent-46 ly obtained For the Sultan could ne-" ver have given fuch orders, had he not " been perswaded, the Othman affairs were 55 in fo delperate a condition, as that the \*\* Empire could not be established without a peace upon any terms I suppose he " did not know, what foldiers, what ge-" nerals, what bulwarks, the Othman state 46 had yet to oppose to the enemies he " doubtless had not been informed, how I, " with a handful of men, had wrested of four and twenty castles in Bosina out of " the enemy's hands, at the expense of my blood and what would have been the confequence if the managers of the Turkish affairs had acted as futhfully " every where, may cally be guessed. "For what did the Othman I impire want " to enable it, not only to make head against so weak an enemy, but also to " enlarge its bounds? was it foldiers? ge-" nerals? or money? It was not furely the want of any of thefe, but either the want of brains in your heads, which to be stuffed with straw would have been better, or your treachery that induced you to make fo feandalous a peace with a weak and exhaufted enemy, and perswade a Sultan unacquainted with publick affairs, " to ratify and confirm it by oath. I grant, the Germans, on account of our fins, and encouraged by the lazmes and unskilfulness of the Othman generals, have gained fome victories upon us, and have taken feveral towns that could not be recovered; but why have you furrender-" ed to the Poles, Camemer, a place im pregnable both by nature and art, and by that, have imprudently loft the best part of Sultan Mahomet's conquests? Is this what our law teaches us? Are thefe " the precepts of our prophet? Is the ho-" nour of the Alsothman name preserved " by fuch means? The divine vengeance " will undoubtedly find, in its own time, those who have been so injurious to the " Mufulman affairs, and have without ne-cefficy, delivered to the Infidels, plathe state of the foldiers, of the treafure, and of the towns, both fuch as had been " ces fanctified by fo many Musulmans prayers." So drimifling them, he demands lifts; of the foldiers, of the treafure, yielded

# 22. Mustapha II.

LXX. The Ruffians that fummer fortify Assec and Lucinic with new works. The Ruffield and prepare for a fresh campain, though the enemies give them no epperunity of fresh and experience

a battle, Elector of Samuel cho'ca King of Pa-

#### ANNOTATION &

yielded to the enemies, and fuch as still obeyed the Othman laws; and finds nothing any where that could please him. He publickly blames all the ministers, calls them traitors to the Empire, privately prepares for war, and defigns at first to turn his arms against Poland, as the weakest part; and that he might have some colour of justice, resolves to put to death the authors of the peace, namely, Ram Res Effends, and Maurocordatus, as traytors, who had granted many things to the Infidels, contrary to the Sultan's orders. And the more to firengthen his party, he enquires by letter of the Chan, and great men of Tarlary, whether they gave their confent to the peace made by Isheriet Ogiy, and to his companion, Rams Ress Effends he knew, he faid, and was well fatisfied that both, bribed by the Infidels, had afted treacheroufly, imposed upon the Sultan, and so betrayed rather than promoted the Othman affairs. None were more uneafy at these proceedings of Daltaban, than the two ambassadors above-mentioned, Rams Reis Effinds, and Alexander Maurocordatus; for they plainly iaw, if Daltaban remained in his dignity, they could not avoid punishment; and they were also fensible, there was no hope of a change as long as the Mufti continued Daltaban's friend. After long confidering this matter, as there appeared to them no other method of fafety, they resolve to go and draw the Musti, if possible, from Daltaban's party. cordatus contrives how the matter should be managed, and instructs Rams in what he was to fay, and what arguments to use to move the Musts. Rams follows the politic Skierletogly's directions, and takes an opportunity of representing to the Musti, how he was ordered by the Sultan to make peace with the Germans and Poles, and had, in compliance therewith, used his utmost endeavours to get terms as advantagious as he could for the Othman state, and had granted nothing to the Infidels without an order from the Sultan, and the confent of the Mufti, and of the Vizir, Huseim Pasha. But when he thought he had, by these his endeavours, well deserved of the Othman state, he found, that he had drawn upon himself and his partner, Iskurletogly, the utmost indignation of the new Vizir, Daltaban Mustapha Pasha. He had not only treated them in the most abusive manner, though they were altogether blameless, but had also railed bitterly at all those who had contributed, either by their orders or confent, to the making of that peace: nay, he No. XIX

had gone fo far as to fay publickly, he would purge the honour of the Oibman name from all internal and eatternal Gieurs. Moreover he had, by focret letters, ftirred up the Crim-Tariars, and the other Soyibian Hords, to a rebellion; and the more easily to excite them, had foread among them many lies concerning the ill administration of the state. Since these, and the like attempts of Dalbatan, manifestly tended to the rum and destruction of those who had spared no pains to restore tranquillity to the Othmen Empire, and even to the deposition of the Sultan, they had thought it them duty to inform the Mufti of them, because he was the chief instrument of the peace ; and to beg of him at the same time, not only to take care of himself, but also to vouchfafe to defend and preferve those who acknowledged him their only patron and protector, against that man's outragiousness. The Musti, Ferzullab Effends, perfuaded by this discourse of Roms that his own head was in danger, resolves not to wait the blow, but prevent the enemy, and take him in his own net. But the better to conceal the fnares laid for him, he fends for Cara Mebened Aga, the chief butcher, a very rich man, who had learned by long experience to hide the barbarity of his nature, and by that means had obrained the Multi's daughter in marriage for his fone When he was come, "I have fome things, " (faya he) to communicate to the Vizir, 45 which I would delire you to go and tell 44 him , for I know that there is a great " friendship between you. Ram: Reis Effendi and Iskierletogly have been with me, and have told me many fad things of the Vizir, as if he was contriving to depose 44 the Sultan, and put me to death, and 44 had for that reason publickly ranked 44 me among the Infidels. Now because " he was, upon your intercession, as you well know, raised to the dignity of Vi-" zir through my interest, and therefore " is my Chirug ", or client, I would not " have a flambeau of my own lighting fo " foon extinguished, and the life of a man taken away, whom a few days before I " raifed to the highest dignity the Othman Empire can give. Besides, I am facts fied that Ram: and Interior Ogly, when " they were negotiating a prace, being " bribed by the Graues with large furne of "money, have, of their own heads, yield-44 ed many things to the Germani and Poles, " that might have remained under the Oth-" man dominion; and perfunded the Sulim
and one, by their artial law, that's peace " could the house. In Poland the new King Frederic Augustus, who was before Elector of Samuer, applies himself entirely to warlike preparations, and the gaining of the Mobles, and defers the campain till the next year.

IXXI. Not

#### ANNOTATIONS.

could not possibly be made upon other terms. Wherefore I desire you to acas quaint the Vizir, in my name, that I se will not be influenced by the mifrepre-" fentations of those knaves, to cease to " be his patron; but shall, whenever an 46 opportunity offers, perfuade the Sultan of Vizir, but also to put all his enemies to death." When Daltaban hears this from Mehemed Aga's mouth, he visits the Musti in the night, and pretends to discover his whole mind to him, as to his patron and benefactor. The Mufti, with feigned applause, extols the Vizir's defigns, and promifes to use his utmost endeayours to bring them to perfection, and that Rams, Maurecordains, and their accomplices, be brought to justice. Daltaban, encouraged by these promises, returns home with a chearful countenance, and fending for the Kiebaia Topal Ibrabim-Aga (who was afterwards made governor of Theffalonica) gives him a particular account of what had paffed between the Mufti and him; and adds, at the fame time, he acknowledges the Mufti for his patron, being indebted to him for the Vizirship; yet he cannot bear, he should have so much credit with the Sultan, as to make and unmake Vizirs at pleafure: for as he had bestowed the seal of the Empire upon him, after having depoled Huseim Pasta, so it was in his power to turn him out, and raife another to that dignity. Therefore, as he could find no way to put him out of favour with the Sultan, who had a great veneration for him, there was a necessity of dispatching him out of the way, unknown to the Sultan; for it would be easier to ftruggle with a dead than a living man Accordingly, he proposes this method to put him to death, namely, to invite him to a feaft on a Thursday, when all the courts of justice and the other offices are shut, and to have him strangled at table with a bow-string, by some faithful persons provided for that purpose; then to send for the Janizaries, and cause them to raise a commotion, acquainting the Sultan at the fame time, that they infifted upon having the Mufti's life, and were demanding the heads of Rami, Maurecordatus, and fome others. treacherous Kiebeie approves of the Vizir's project to his face, and commends his deen; but at night he changes his drefs, and ting to the Mufti, tells him his danger. In Mufti, difmitting the Kiehsis with very pomifes, calls for his chariot at the

third hour of the night, goes to the Sultan, and makes known to him what he had learned from the Kiebaia; advises him to put Daltaban to death, that he might not raife fresh commotions in the Empire, and promifes to give a Fetvab for that purpose, and fays withal, that for fear too much hafte in the affair should occasion a fedition among the people, he would find fome specious pretence to have him dispatched out of the way without any noise. The Mufti, at his return home, pretends to have the gout in his feet, that he might be hindered from going to the Vizir's house, and sends a Talkbishebi to desire him to come to him, because he had things of importance to impart to him. Upon the receipt of this meffage, the Vizir goes thither with all speed, thinking a fnare was now laid for his ene-mies. When he comes, "Thank God, 46 fays the Mufti, the Sultan has granted 46 all my requests, and promited that he will put Rams Ress Effends to death, pro-" vided there may be devited fome cause of 46 his punishment. It you will therefore " follow my advice, you will cifily find not only a pretence, but also a just reafon for putting him to death. He must se be removed at a diffance from court, if " we wish our designs to take essed. As this 46 cannot be done any other way, you must offer him, as a reward for his fervices to the Othman Empire, a Vizirship, with 4 three Horse-Tails, and a t. w days after give him fome remote government, and then you will easily find some crime to " render him odious to the Sultan, and to " have him put to death. When he is once " dispatched, you may kill Skierletogly with 46 as much ease as you would a dog in the 46 streets " When he had faid this, he made Daltaban swear not to discover it to any one, not even to his Kiebaia The Vizir, decei ved by these specious falshoods of the Mutti, believed he was really his friend, and thought himself now very safe. Wheretore he asks Rame Effende, at first, as it were in jest, whether he should not be glad to be raifed higher, and enjoy a Pathalic. The other, as he had been inflructed by the Mufti, falls at the Vizir's feet, begs he may not be burdened with that honour; that it was enough for him to be a feribe; and his birth could not give him any pretensions to delire the dignity of Vizir; befides, he was unskilled in the art of governing provinces, and could show his industry and fauthfulness no where but in the chancery. Daltaban, blaming him for faying thefe



these words, tells him at the same time, if he did not comply with the Sultan's order, he would lose all those rewards which he had hitherto deferved by his industry, and could not avoid the Sultan's indignation. Rami Effendi submitting at last, with a seeming unwillingness, Daltaban notifies to the Sulcan by a Talcheft, that Rams Res Effendi intreated the Sultan's clemency to difmis him from the Calem with three Tugs, and prayed that his request might be grant-The Sultan, who was before-hand prepared by the Mufti, eafily confented; adding, that on account of his fervices, he not only gave him three Tugs, but also declared him Caimacan, and one of his counfellors, and required he should be always near the court. Though this was difagreeable to Daltaban, and seemed to deseat all his defigns, yet he obeyed the Sultan's orders, and fending for Rami, invested him with the Vizir's robe, and gave him the name of Cubbe nifbin, or Counfellor This unufual and extraordinary promotion of Rams, rasfed the peoples admiration, for it was well known that Dalbatan diffiked the peace, and fought rather to punish with death, than to confer honours upon, the promoters of it and therefore to tuch as were unacquainted with what had puffed between the Mufti and Duly ibm, in feemed a mystery, that those for whom punishments were thought to have been preparing, should be exalted to the highest honours. This gave occafion to various, and generally disadvantagious reports concerning Daltaban, that he was undone, that his tiddle, (a Turkish faying) was thrown upon the ground, that the Sultan, deluded by the Mutti, and the arts of his creatures, Rams and Iskierletogly, was but a tool to other peoples ambition a that Rame had no other merit for his rifing in fo strange manner from a scribe to a Vizir, but his having fold the honour of the Othman name to the infidels, that finally, this was a certain fign that Daltaban, the most famous hero among the Turks, the brave defender of the Sultan's honour, was to be condemned to death, or at least to banishment, that there might remain no obstacle to their treacherous designs. When Daliaban perceived by these discourses, that the people were on his fide, and disliked the Muiti's proceedings, he was confirmed in his purpole, and refolved to kill the Mufti first, then Rami, and it necessary, to depose even the Sultan. But that he might strike the surer, he sends for the fore-mentioned Cara Mebensed Aga, whom, as being an old friend, he took to be very faithful to him, and enquires of him what the people faid of himfelf, of the Mufti, and of Rams; and whether they approved or not what the Sultan had done for Rami? Cara Mebemed, the better to impose upon

the Vizir, and to discover his deligns, tells him what the people faid; how displeased they were at the honours conferred upon Ram:; and generally believed that the Sultan, infatuated by the Musti, had only the name of Sultan, while the Multi was Sultan in reality, and difposed of all affairs at pleafare and this was not only faid by the common people, but also by Erbabi deulet, that is, the chief of the great men Daltaban, ignorant of the Cafabbafbi's treachery, could not, upon hearing this, forbear uttering these words '' You shall see, my dear Mebemed, what '' will be acted one of these days on this " ftage;" which faying being carried by him to the Mufti, not only confirmed the fuspicions raised in him by the Kichaia's difcourfe, but also i-rved to hasten Dillaban's downfall. In the mean time, Daltaban makes preparations for the Mufti's destruction. He had in his house a certain Dervite, called Mahomet, a Mo'darian by birth, an old and faithful fervant, whom, for his approved fidelity, he had not only raised to the office of Bafbelobadar , but also had entrusted with most of his secrets I o him Daltaban communicates his deligns, ordering him to get a cord rubbed with foap, and when the Mufts should come to wash his hands, to be ready with the rest of the officers to put it round his neck, and ftrangle him. The man undertakes the business, and promises faithfully to perform his will 3 faying, he would not refuse even to die, could he but carry his enemies to hell along with him. Things being thus prepared, he fends Sheikhogli, who had fucceeded Rams in the office of Reis effends, to the Musti, to invite him the next day, which was Thursday, and consequently fice from all public business, to a teast. The from all public bufiness, to a feast. Muft: fent answer, that he was then indeed very lame of the gout, but if his pain abated, he would certainly come the next day. This answer being brought back by Sheikbogle to the Vizir, he orders a fplendid feast to be made, and bids his Agalar to withdraw to their apartments the moment the Mufti came, because he had fome private bufiness with him next morning as foon as it was light he fends his Kiebaia, Topal Ibiabim Aga, to invite the Mufti a fecond time, and to know certainly whether he would come Accordingly he comes to the Mufti, tells him his errand, but privately advises him to take care of himfelf, because there were perions appointed and ready to ftrangle him. Whereupon the Musti says to the Ksebasa, go and tell your mafter that I am much better to day than I was yesterday, and will certainly be with him about noon; but by God's help, I shall find means to avoid his fnares. The treacherous Kiehain comes and

his meter, the Mufit's answers at maddicir being highly pleased, and he had already in his not the chief a to his deligns, propares every thing g the tragody. In the mean while, dinnerwas now come, and no Mufti appeared ; fo that the impatient Daltaban was funding the Rels effends a forond time to inwite him, when the Mufti's Talkificht comes and tells Dalisban, that his mafter was got into his litter to come to him, when he was font for by the Sultan; and as he could not excuse himself upon any pretence, was gone thither; but would fend his eldeft fon, Nakyb effendi, in his room, and there-fore defined him to put off his feast till the next week; and he hoped at that very time to find an opportunity of having him confirmed in the Vizirship, and to contrive a way for the destruction of his enemies. Scarce had the Talkbifbcbi \* brought his mefsage to the Vizir, when Nakyb effends himfelf arrives, and uses the same excuse for his father. Though Daltaban was heartly vexed that the Mufti should thus escape out of his fnares, yet, for fear of unfeafonably discovering his deligns, he receives Nakyb effendi with great honour and magnificence, and, contrary to cultom, meets him as far as the Arzoda, faying, the fon's prefence was a acceptable to him as the father's; that the Sultan's orders were furely to be preferred to all private business, and the honour designed him was not loft, but delayed, fince he had hopes of feeing the Mufti the next Thursday. In the mean time, whilst the fon is feating with Daltaban, the father goes to the Sultan with a mournful drefs and face. After paying obeyfance, he was bid to fit on the schram, or carpet; and the Sultan speaking first, asked him what was the matter that he came with fuch a forrowful countenance, and as if he had been frighted? The Mufti taking occasion to speak, "I have, says he, wery great reason to be forry, my most 44 gracious lord and mafter. A danger hangs over all our heads, which, though fecret, a yet very great, and hardly to be avoided, unless the threatning clouds 44 are dispersed by the breath of your ma-44 jefty, before the lightning falls. " lies heaviest upon my mind is, that I 44 have undefignedly contributed to increase this storm. For hearing of the heroic actions of our present Vizir, while his " ablence or meannels caused his vices to " remain undificovered, I your fervant thought name fitter than him to be entrufted with the administration of the " Othman government: and therefore obof forving that the negligence and drunkengovern the flate, I carnellly recomis this man to you, and did not

cease to intrest you in his behalf till you had adorned him with the enlight of the Vizarship. As soon as he was raised to " that fublime post, he discovered how artfully he had till then concealed the wickeducis of his heart under a specious outfide, and showed himself a professed eneet my to as many as he thought would ob-" ftruct his turbulent projects. I could forgive him, if he had conspired only against me; I should be silent, even se though he is, contrary to all divine and 66 human laws, endeavouring to ftrangle ee me, if my death was to put an end to the calamities he is endeavouring to st bring on the Empire. But I ought to fpcak, when I fee that ungrateful man exciting the Janizaries to a rebellion, inse viting with the same view the Chan of \*\* Tartary into this city; publickly conse demning the peace made with the enemies, calling the makers of it infidels; se breaking treaties that have been confirmed with an oath, and leaving no ftone unturned, at his entrance upon the hose nours you have conferred upon him, to 45 dethrone you, most gracious Emperor, se and to fill your whole dominions with " fresh troubles. Unless you quickly put s a stop to these mischiefs, I am afraid you " will too late repent of your ill timed " clemency."

The Sultan, upon hearing the crafty Feizullab Effendi's speech, moved with anger and fear, asks him how this evil could be prevented? The Musti answered, there was no other cure for it but to dispatch out of the way that villain, the author of all the troubles, and to put another Vizir in his room, who should be for maintaining the peace, and also more faithful and tubmissive to the Sultan; for the head being cut off, the reft of the members would foon be quiet, though in ever fo great agitation and finally, that Rams Pafka, of whose faithfulness and prudence he had sufficient experience, must be taken into the council, The Sultan readily complies with his late tutor's advice, and leaves the whole affair to his management The Mufri, at his return home, fent word that very night to Rams Pasta to change his dress, and come to him, and concert measures with him about killing Daltaban. After fome confultation, they relolve to furprize him in the following manner, namely, to perfuade Daltaban to create Rams Pasha, Bahadaghy Seraskier, and the Mufti to advise the Sultan to subscribe in the Takbyfo\*, which the Vizir would fend him for that purpose; that he had been thinking of the fame thing, because he saw the people and the Janizaries were very much diffatisfied to fee a man raifed from a scribe to a Vizir : and therefore he judged at necessary to remove him

further from court, hoping thereby to put a ftop to the murmurs of the people and foldiery. Pursuant to this refolution, the Musti sends the next day his son Nakab Esfendi to the Vizir, with a second excuse for not having kept his promise, which was owing to the Sultan's fending for him ; and to let him know, that he thought God had thrown, by a fingular Providence, that ob-flacie in his way for he had found an op-portunity of perfuading the Sultan to remove Rams from court, by making him Scraskier of Babadaghy, but that it was neceffiry he should defire the same by a Talcb, for of the Sultan, before he changed his mind, and, according to cultom, make in it an honourable mention of Rami, that he might not suspect any fraud in the case, namely, that his faithful fervices to the Empire rendered him worthy of that dignity, and that he knew none fitter than him to maintain the peace, and watch the motions of the Giaurs. When he had fent this to Daltahin, he acquaints, by a Deskiere, or note, the Sultan, that fuch a thing would be proposed by the Vizir, and desires he would not only give his conient, but also fend for the Vizir, and r pretence of confulting him about fome instructions he wanted to give Rami Pasha The foint is carried on as Diltal in finds a Talthe Mutu directs cby/b to the Sultan, and the Sultan confirms it, by writing over it the usual form (let it be done,) and orders him, by Baltanlar Kiebarah, to come to him. The Vizir obeys, ignorant of the fnares laid for him, (which had he known, he could not only have eafily avoided them, but have raised the same fedition as afterwards wrefted the feepter from the Sultan,) and with the ulud pomp go s to the Sult in Whilst Kyz' wagaji is entring the room haft, according to cultom, there comes out to him Baltaplar Kubarafi from the Sultin, and tells him that the Sultan demanded the teal he was intrufted with Daltalan being a man of an invincible refolution and proof against all the virious turns of fortune, refuses to furrender the badge of his dignity till in had spoken three words with the Sultan, with which if he did not molify him, he would freely lofe not only the feal, but even his head. What his defign might be in defiring fo earneftly to sp ak with the Sultan, was variously conjectured at that time. Some thought he intenied to kill the Sultan with a dagger he wore under his clothes, others declared him innocent of fo desperate a project, and imagin d he had no other intention, than to represent to the Sultan the great danger he was in from the Mufti's and Rami's attempts, and to propose, what he had often faid in private conversation, to recover to the Othman Empire in one or two campains all that was lost through those mens treache-Nº 19.

ry. But so insatuated was the Sultan, by the Musti's artifices, that he not only resulted to hear Daltaban's advice, but also being informed of his delire, he withered him to be ferzed, ftripped, bound at a thief, and immediately put to death at Babs Humayun, and his body thrown to the dogs in Sirikmerdan. The officers about the Sulran immediately execute his orders, feize Daltaban, bind him, and lead him to the place of execution. When he was going to lofe his head, Baltapilar Kiebaiaji comes and asks him in the Sultan's name what he had to fay to him, advising him withal to take the Abdest, and repent of his faults, that he may not perish both foul and body. Daltaban answers, that ever since he could remember, he had not once mounted his horse without having first purified himself with the Abdest, nor suffered so much as one hour to pass without repenting, therefore he did not despair of pardon with God and his prophet; nor would his foul perish, though his body feemed to do fo to infidels. As for what he had to fay to the Sultan, he could impart it to none but him, nor should be now behold without horror such a Sultan's sace, as put those to death that faithfully ferved him, and gave himfelf up wholly to Kyzilbafbi's and wizards; that there remained but one remedy for those corruptions, namely, the divine justice, which, he thought, would after his death teach the Sultan how much he was departed from a found mind, and from the Mufulman faith. When this was told the Sultan, it can hardly be expressed how it filled his mind with doubts. That it was a matter of great importance Daltaban defired to communicite to him, he gueffed, by the undrunted manner in which he fubmitted to his punishment, but, on the other hand, his love to his old preceptor, the Mufti, and the confidence he reposed in him, himdered him from attending to those things. So, to have the more time to confider what to do, he reprieved him, and ordered him to be confined in Caparafi, or the courtprison. When his enemies, the Mufts, and Rami, whom the Sultan had already apjointed Vizir, came to know this, they were ferzed with fresh fears, lest the Sultan should be conquered by Daltaban's firmness, and reftore him to his former liberty The next morning therefore early they both go to the Sultan, tell him, that the sparks of sedition spread by Daltaban were kindling into a flame, that confusion and trouble every where arose; and there was no way of preventing a rebellion, but by pul-Sultan, terrified at the imminent danger, ordered the pripper to be put that very hour to death. When Daltaban heard his fentence, he called for the Abdel, and ha-

List. Not long after the Venetians fend a fleet into the Mediterranean. Mehemed Beg (31), with his galleys, attempts Tinos; but being repulsed by Tirti at Augustolomeo Moro, quies that island again. There are several other slight conflicts Lea, but with doubtful success. The Turkes fleet taking three pyrate-ships, marry them to Confiantinople. On the other hand, as the Turks, after a short dispute, twice seemed to avoid a battle, the Venetians challenge two victories.

LXXII. Such were the events of this campain. The beginning of the next might be justly faid to confirm the Turksfb proverb, "an enemy does never perfectly know the flate of his enemy." Sultan Mustapha, after his return to Constantinople, makes all possible preparations for war; but with a mind

troubled, and foreboding ill fuccess.

The ominous

LXXIII. The Turks, who had before entered voluntarily into the fervice, reages of the are now backward in obeying even the Sultan's command, and inflexible to entreaties or threats. The Sultan, whilft he paffes in difguife through the affemblies of the people, frequently hears these words from the citizens and soldiers " for of the Othmans to defeat the Germans, is a thing beyond our power. God has " publickly testified, he is on the side of the Graurs; he has signified his decree " in that point by fufficient tokens. It is in vain therefore to fined fuch torrents " of Musulman blood, while we are to contend as well against God as man."

Both Princes anxious for the event

LXXIV. The Sultan also knew how necessary peace was to recover the exhausted state of the Empire, and it was the object of his earnest wishes he was prevented from proposing it by his superstition and fear less the enemies should become more elated, and the honour of the Othman Empire diminished. The German Emperor likewise, on his part, was no less impatient for an end of the war; not that he despaired of victory against the Turks, but seared while he was engaged in that war, the King of Spain should die, and the disputes which would arrise concerning his succession, put a stop to the successful progress of his arms: however, he thought it dishonourable to desire peace of a conquered enemy, and of his own accord to offer him the palm The Dutch and English ambaffadors were prefent to mediate a peace, but their offers having been so often rejected, they choic rather first to hear peace desired, than to propose it.

The fagacity of Aprend

LXXV. The chief interpreter of the Othman court, Alexander Maurocordato, perceives the inclination of both parties, and as he was no less fagacious and fond of glory, than devoted to the Othman Empire, resolves to rescue it from destruction, and at the same time to raise himself a great reputation through the

whole Empire.

He is the first

LXXVI. His hopes of this were chiefly grounded on the Vizir Husein Pasta s mild and peaceable disposition. Accordingly, in a visit to him, turning the confeeting peace, versation upon the sitbject of peace, he tells him, that though he had not heard it from any of the ambaffadors, yet, by confidering the prefent fituation of affairs in Christendom, he could certainly affirm, the Emperor was very defirous of

#### ANNOTATIONS.

ving repeated the usual prayers, faid to the executioner: kill, Omfidel Mufulmans, him whom the infidel Giaurs could not kill. Nor would be fuffer himfelf to be blinded, but with his eyes open, and with his usual steddiness, held out his neck, and received the faral blow. Such was the end of Daliaban, the bravest foldier the Othman Empire ever produced; and, a man highly renowned both in war had peace. How much concerned the people were at his court, plainly appeared by the troubles that the best form after. Serviced veries were at his court, plainly appeared by the troubles that the best form after the Esk and other after the service of the servic all which, as it would be too tedious fibe, I shall only mention what fol-

lows? " Come then, my pen, let us fly " this dominion, for peace, honour, and " the law of God, and respect of the Othman " majesty, have already taken their flight."

(31) Kiel Mebemed Beg] There are in the islands many Begs, who have one galley at leaft, wherewith they trade in time of peace, and exercise piracy in time of war. The Big here mentioned, was famous above all the rest, both because he was richer than ordinary, for he kept three galleys at his own charge, and also because he was a Phocensian pirate, very expert in his business. The name of Kiel was given him for having a bald and fourfy head. By the Gracian failors he was called nuclon.

a peace

a peace with the Turks. The Vizir urges, it was not credible the Emperor, flushed with his late victory, and full of hopes, would accept of peace, though of fered, much less desire it. Maurocordato replies, it might seem so indeed, but if a week's space were allowed him to found the ambassadors, he would affuredly promise to procure the Vizir not only the Emperor's consent, but even his re-

quest for a negotiation of peace.

LXXVII. Having cafily obtained leave, Maurocordato waits upon the ambaffa- His prodest dors of the Christian Princes, and represents to them, that he had already receiproceeding ved so many favours from the Emperor of Germany, that he should deserve to with respect be thought highly ungrateful if he did not endeavour to make some return; that he to the nego had often fought an occasion to show his readiness to serve the Emperor, and demon-poses. firste the fidelity due from a Christian, but had never met with so ample an opportunity as now; that he knew the Emperor, from his apprehensions of a French war, was very desirous of a peace; but would not discover it to the Turks, left he should make them suspect the true reason of it, and render them more haughty and assuming in their demands. But if they would confide in him, and grant a power to manage the affair as he thought proper, he would establish a peace upon such terms, as the Emperor might reasonably desire. In the mean time, it was necessary for them to swear upon the Holy Gospel to conceal what he should say to them; otherwise himself and his whole family would be expofed to the utmost danger, since the cruelty of the Turks to those who are suspected of the least unfaithfulness, was sufficiently known to the whole Christs. an world. The embassadors reply, that the Emperor would not perhaps reject honorable conditions of peace, yet he would never ask it of the Turks. But if the interpreter, in his own name, would propose the affair, he would lay a great obligation upon the Emperor. Maurocordato returning to the Vizir, gives him a very different representation, and informs him, he had found by the ambassadors, that the Emperor was not only not averse to peace, but extremely defirous of it, and had requested them by any means to put an end to this destructive war. The Vizir isemed by this speech to be raised from the dead, and embracing the artful framer of lies (32), fays to him, " If you execute this di-" vine work, and restore the wish'd-for tranquillity to our Empire, you may be " affured, you will highly oblige the Sultan, and for ever endear the memory of " your services to the rulers of the Othman state."

LXXVIII. By these artifices of Maurocordato, both the Turks and Christians The media are induced to speak a little more openly concerning the affair of peace, and posses speak both parties think they may do it without the least impeachment of their master's homour, because each deceived by Maurocordato, imagines the first propoterms.

fal came from the enemy.

LXXIX Feriole (33), the French embassador, hearing this affair publickly The France talked of, by various arts, bribes, and promises, endeavours to disturb the ap-ambassador in vain si

b the ap. ambaffador in vain at proaching tempts to break off t negotiation

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(32) framer of lies] Alexander, as a man that had as periodt a knowledge of the eaftern languages and poetry, as of the Othman court, feems herein to have followed the instructions of the famous Persian poet, Sheikh Saadi; especially in that passage in his Guilustan, where he says, "a lie, "which does a [good] work, is better than se truth, which breeds confusion." And indeed he could not have performed any service that would have more obliged both Empires, or procured him greater rewards; so that he may justly be said, to have killed two birds with one stone.

(33) Fersole] While Monsieur de Chateauneuf was ambassador from France to Con-

stantsnople, this Feriol followed the Turkish camp, in order to maintain a private correspondence between the French court and the Vizir's; and when Chateauneus was recalled, he was appointed to succeed him, on account of his being supposed to have acquired, by long use, a perfect knowledge of the manners and customs of the Othmas court. But he behaved in this post quite otherwise than his friends had expected; for, either through his haughtiness and natural obstinacy, or by the treacherous advice of some whom he took for his friends, he not only opposed the Port in many respects, but also demanded several things that never used before to be granted to any

and insuduce a new scene of blood, alledging, that his maker mide a short truce under the name of a peace, and when it was expired, would THE ROLL

ANNOTATIONS.

attachasion, and were contrary to the ufages of the Othman court. In the very beresult gitning of his makaliy, whom he was, accarding so duftern, no have his first audience of the Sultan, he came into the inper room with his fword by his fide. Manrecordate, who affilted at that ceremony as chief interpreter of the court, friendly told him to take off his fword; for it was an uld suftom in the Othman court, not to fuffer any one perion armed to come to the Soloan: but he boldly answered, he had reserved his fword from his King, and would not take it off for any man. The Sultan having notice of it, fends Fersole orders to take off his fword, and if he refused, commands he thould be thrust out of doors. The Capust balbs execute this order, and rudely pulh back Fersole as he is endeavouring to enter. The ambaffador, thus repulled, in a very great passion makes his incorpreters pull off the Castans, which, according to cultom, they had put on in the outer court, and, trampling upon them, goes our of the palace. When the Sultan heard of it, he ordered all the prefents the ambaffador had brought, (and which also he demanded, affirming they had not been fent by the King, his mafter, but were of his own purchating) to be reftored to him, and would never after give him admittance, especially as he constantly refused to come without a fword. This affair highly offended the court, and yet the fault was not fo much in Feriole, as in his predeceffor, Chiseaunouf; who having, at his first audience, worn a little dagger privately under his clorhes, he fet it down in the memoirs of his embasily, that he had audience of the Sultan with his sword by his side. When he was recalled, he received orders from his court to deliver up all his memorials and papers to his fuccessor Feriole, upon reading of them, asked Chateauneuf, before his aleparture, whether that was true? and whether he must also appear himself before the Sultan with his fword? He told him, yes, perhaps because he bore him a grudge. When this deceitful trick of Chateauneus came to be known, Fersele might not only have recovered his reputation for prudence. but also have been reconciled to the Port, had he not foon after, by other as great outrages against the Sultan's authority, too openly discovered his which remper. The silen's barge has a tilt over it of purple. Inedwith the clark of orld lined with cloth of gold, and support-tentiour gilt pillars, saided in the form candiciticks placed in the top with

These ornaments no person in allowed to bear, except the Capudan Paftea, or admiral, and only when he goes to fea (for then he is reckoned as the Deriya Padishabi, or Fmperor of the fea;) and the Vizir himself is permitted to use but a green tilt, supported by ivory pillars, and without candlesticks. But Feriole, insisting upon I know not what privileges and liberties of ambaffadors, got a barge made like the Sulran's; ind when his friends represented to him, that the Sultan would never fuffer it, he fwore a great oath, and faid, he would never come to Constantinople in any other barge. When it first appeared in the harbour at Confrantinople, the Bostania bashi followed it, thinking the Sultan had been fomewhere, without his knowledge, when he came up to it, and found it was not the Sultan's, but the French ambaffador's barge, he took the rowers out, and ordered the Boltanji to break it in pieces on the water. Notwithst inding this, Fertile stood to his word, and having a house at Galata, whenever any urgent bufiness called him to Constantinople, he choice rather to take a long and tedious journey by land, than to cross over a much shorter way by water. The laft diffurbance he raifed at Constantinople, was in the Vivir ship of Calady Abmed Pasha He had ob tained leave from his predeceffor, Silabda Hajan Pafba, to make rejoicings for the birth of the king his mafter's grandion, by firing guns and making bonfiles and had accordingly got a fumptious entertainment ready, and made all other preparations for that folemnity. But the very day the rejoicings were to begin, Silahdar II Pasha was deposed, and Calaily Abmed Past. put in his room hersole, hearing of the change, fends immediately his chief interpreter to the Vizir's house, to procure a confirmation of the former luman, and not being able to obtain it, by reason of the great concourie of nobl s about the new Vizir's door, and loth withal to have all his preparations come to nothing, he refolves to keep the folemnity by virtue of the old Ferman At night, when Calany About Paff : fees the light of the candles, furprized as fuch an unufal thing, done without his knowledge, he fends, in the first heat of his passion, and without enquiring into the matter, the Buftanji bafice to the ambaffador, to command him to put out the candles. Ferrole refusing to obey, the Vizir lends the fame person to him a second time, to advite him in a friendly manner not to lose his honour and his life, shrough his unleafonable obstinacy, for he

would in a few years invade Germany with a greater force than ever. But the Othman court having, by fatal experience, so often found the France promises of no effect, the ambasiador's efforts prove in vain, and he is ordered to be quiet,

and not diffurb the negotiation of peace.

LXXX. But though the report of peace was very agreeable to the Thick, yet they omit nothing which could be devised in the present situation of affairs, to said from the progress of the enemy, and secure their borders. The Salvani, at the Vizer and of the month Zylcade, of the year 1 tog, removes from Confinitionale to arm Adrianople, from whence, on the sirst of the next month, he orders the Vizer A to march with the whole army to Belgrade, white he spends the summer in the village of Akhunar, near Adrianople, expecting the issue of the negotiation of peace.

LXXXI In the mean time both armies, the Imperialists at Peterwaradin, and But the Turks near Belgrade, in hopes of peace, continue without motion, and only dear guard their borders. The same is done by the Russians and Poles. The Venter is a trans have a sight engagement with the Turkssh sheet near Mitriene, and the man latter is put to slight, though not without some loss. In Dalmatta, they at-

#### ANNOTATIONS.

had now a Ferman given him to quiet the troubles with his regiment, without further orders, and if the ambaffador refused to obey, to extinguish the candles by force, To this and destroy all his preparations Feriole replies, " If you will violently in-" fringe the rights of the King, my ma-" fler, and the privileges of ambaffadors, 46 I, who am bound to facrifice my own " life for my mafter's honour, will blow " up this house with gun-powder, and in it my self and those that come to offer " any violence, and will leave the King, " my mafter, to demand fatisfaction for " the injury done me" During this difturbance, Feriole's chief interpreter, one La Fontaine, a man well veried in the affairs of the Othman court, privately puts out the candles that were lighted abroad, not m the order in which they flood, but fome here, and others there, so that they might feem to have been blown out by the wind and the guests perceiving the danger they were in, withdrew by degrees, fo that Feriole was forced to do, for want of company, what he would not do for the Sultan's order, that is, put an end to his re-joicings. But, to lay the truth, bating this obitinacy, Feriole was a man endowed with many virtues, couragious, liberal, an agreeable companion, enly of access, a very ftrenuous affertor of the King, his mafter's honour, and above all fincere, and a most constant triend both in prosperity and adversity, of which I had a very singular proof while I lived at Constantinople, My Bramovan, late Prince of Walachia, had bribed the Vizir, Damad Hasan Passa, with large presents, to banth me to Chias. Having been informed of it by my good friend, Firari Hasan Passa, the Testadar, three days before the Bostanji basto, who

had received orders for that purpose, was to furround my house with his Bojtangi about the third watch of the night, I had fled for refuge into the French ambifiador's house, and was very kindly received by Ferrole The Vizir hearing I was hid there, fent one of his Aga's to the ambifador, to defire him to deliver me up but Feriole told him, "I have no Bugdinbegzade in "my house, and if I had, I would not "give him up, neither would I stain the King, my master's honour, with so foul a crime." But he gave a much sharper answer to the Prince of Walachia's Capukiebasa, that brought him Brancovan's letter, in which he was required not to keep me, who was his enemy, in his house, and screen me from the Vizir's just sentence. He wondered (he faid) with what face Brancovan could ask fuch a thing of him, when he knew that the house he lived in was not his own, but the King, his mafter's; who had so much kindness and compassion for the afflicted, especially for Christians, that he would make no fcruple of concealing and protecting even him against the indignation of the Sultan and Vizirs, if ever he should be turned out of his Principality, that therefore he acted very much against his own interest, in violating the rights and privileges of a house which might, one day, ferve him for a fanctuary. A few years atter Feriole fell into a phrenzy, and was fent to France chained; fome, who pretend to be better acquainted with his fecrets, affirm he was in his fenfes when he returned home. and that his madness was not real, but feigned, by a peculiar order from the French court, because they could find no better excufe for all the diffurbance their ambaffador caused at the Othman Pari, than by faying he was mad: but I have many reasons for not believing that account.

されて 大学の

Separation, on the other hand, endeavours to make hunfelf mafter of Cing, the province; but upon the approach of the Venetians, raises the siege. II. Having spoken enough of war, let us see what passed with regard an peace. Both fides being, as I have faid, inclined to pacific measures, the presiminaries had now been settled at Constantinople; the place for the congues appointed, namely Carloutz, between Belgrade and Peterwaradin, and ambaidoes appointed by all the princes engaged in the war. The Turks chiefe Rams Mehemed Reis Effends, and Alexander Maurocordatus, honoured with the title of Beg and Mabreme Efrar (34); the Emperor, Count Pettingen and Count Schik, his privy-counfellors; the Czar of Russia, Procopius Bogdan wicz, Woznicini; the Poles, Stanislaus Michelowski, Weywood of Posnana; the Venetians (35), Ruzzui; and Paget and Collier, the English and Dutch ambassadors, were to aft as mediators of the peace. They all meet about the end of the year 1110 A. C 1699, at Carlevitz, and pitch their tents on both fides the river Carlovitz.

to take Stales by Aratagem, but are forced to retire without success.

H. 1116. At first there is a dispute sbout prece-

LXXXIII. At first there arises a dispute concerning the place of conference, the sears of the ambassadors, precedency, and the order in which they were to visit each other. The Turks insufed upon the first place, which was claimed by the Emperor's ambassadors, next to whom the Polish plenipotentiary demanded to fit, which was refused by the Russian and all the rest, except the Venetian. who claimed the next feat to the English.

Which is very pradently adjusted by Man-

LXXXIV. This dispute, though it seemed flight at first, grew so high, that all their labour and expence were like to be in vain, if Maurocordatue's prudence had not invented a remedy by which the amballadors, now incented against

#### ANNOTATIONS.

' (34) Mabremi Efrar] 1. e. to whom fecrets are discovered. Maurocordatus invented this new name for his office, which was never used before, nor has been since his death granted to any other. He rendered the fame into Greek, and would fain have been called " itempires and long endeavoured to prevail upon the Princes of Moldavia and Walachia, to give him the title of a inappopulation, most illustrious, in their letters, inftead of the epithet dexirals, or most excellent, which used to be given him, as the chief interpreter of the court; and which, in the patriarchate, and in those princes courts, is not reckoned so honourable as é indupapéral.

(35) Venetians] It will not be improper to insert in this place the famous saying of Rams Ress Effends. For, finding the Venetian ambassador spoke something boastingly, and proved harder and more difficult than the reft in agreeing upon the articles of peace, he turned to him, and faid, Elebibeg , you ought not to be fo unreafonable, nor fo full of your boafts, espe-44 cially before such an affembly of wife am-" baffadors as this, who all know how to " make a compartion between the condi-" tion and strength of the Republick of 46 Venice, and those of the Othman Empire. For you could never have tretched your fingers, (which mature last made very w flort) fo far, had not the fame thing more than the fame thing the fame thing formerly bend two very flout and

st famous wreftlers They meet, and in oret der to contend with more strength, pull off their clothes, and enter the lifts " naked. While they were engaged, a " Yankiefiji, (which is the name given to pickpockets, and fuch piltering rogues) creeping along the ground like a terpent, " Reals away the champion's clothes " laft, when the wreftlers had exhaufted " their strength, and, according to cut-" tom, given each other the kifs of perce, " they turned to their clothes, and per-" ceiving they were stolen by a 2 ank ofig., " were forced to get other garments to co-" ver their nakedness. Not long after, " one of them found the thich dreffed in a se wreftler's habit, walking in the market 46 place, and pretending to be a wreftler, for fear the other should discover his " crime to the people, but the true wreftier told him, the clothes thou hall on are not thine, but mine, for while I was engaged with a strong wrestler, thou didst come like a fly fox and fteal them away, and haft not won them by wreftling " However, some time or other we two " may find an opportunity of encountring " one another, and then thou shalt find " what difference there is between a lion se and a fox, a wrestler and a thief, and I se shall try whether thou hast learned as well to fight as to fteal, but I am afraid, " besides the clothes thou hast taken from se me, thou wilt leave thy skin too.

each other above measure, were mutually recongiled. He proposes that a round building be run up for the place of conference, with as many doors as there are ambaffadors, and each door look towards the country from whence the ame, baffadors feverally came, that the tents be placed in the fame mannes round the building, from whence, on the first day of the congress, each of them should proceed with an equal pace, and enter the house at the same time, and, faluting each other at the entrance, take the feat next to them.

LXXXV. This being approved by all, they hold frequent conferences con-The withedcerning the terms of peace; at last, after many disputes, the peace wished for for peace at last concluded by the whole world, except the French, is concluded on the 20th of the 17a 15 month Rejeb +, of the year 1110, and the infiruments figured by all the ans- H 1110.

bassadors.

LXXXVI. The Emperor made a truce for five and twenty years upon these The orticles of conditions. All Transplvania should be sesigned to him, in the same extent in the peace be which it had been held by the last Prince, Michael Apaff, and his predecessors, tan and the Temestware was to be left to the Sultan; and left that city should be blocked up Emperor. by the adjacent castles, and deprived of provisions, I.ippa, Chonad, Caransebes. Lugos, Herconisia, Bech \*, Bechkerek \*, and Sabbia, were to have their walls demolished, and neither party allowed to rebuild them, that the navigation of the Tibifeus and Maros should be free to the subjects of both Empires, and the country between the Danube and the Tibiscus, called Bachkab \*, remain in the I mperor's hands; that the boundary of the castern part of Hungary, belonging to the Emperor, should be a right line drawn from the mouth of the Muros, torough the banks of the Tibiscus to the mouth of the Bossut, where it falls into the Save, that towards the fouth the Save should part the Turkish from the Imperial boundaries till it receives the Unna, that no new castles, besides Bel grade and Peterwaradin should be credted or fortified any where within their boun larges

LXXXVII The Roffian ambaflador made a truce only for two years, upon the Andre Can

terms of each party policiling what they had taken.

LAXAVIII. The Poles made the same truce as the Emperor, upon these con- And the Poles ditions, that they should have Caminiec, Podolia, and Ukrania, in the same extent as that kingdom had possessed before Sultan Mahomer's first expedition into Poland, reflored to them, and, on the other hand, refign Soczava, Nemoz, and

Soroka, in Moldavia, to the Tarke

LXXXIX The Venetians obtained these conditions, that all the Morea, as And the Venefar as Hexamiles, should belong to them and the Turkish Terra Firma, want. with Naupatium, Prevefa, and the castle of Romania, which had been demolished, should be restored to the Turks, that the bay of Corinth should be common to both, and the Venetians possess. Lencade, with the adjacent islands. The yearly tribute which the several slands in the Archipelago had hitherto paid to the Venetians, was to be abolished; and, on the other hand, the Turks were to declare Zacynth free from tribute. In Dalnatia, Knin, Cing, Cyklut, Verlica, Duare, and Vergoraz, were to be left to the Venetians, and fixed as the boundaries of the dominions of their Republick. The Ragusians were to continue free, and the Venetians were to retain the castles of Castelnuovo and Rifano, with what they possessed in the neighbourhood. Both parties were to be allowed to formy their borders with new fortreiles, or repair those which were decayed, except Naupactum, Prevefa, and the castle of Romania.

XC. These articles being unanimously agreed upon, the Turkish ambassadors The articles return to the Sultan at Adrianople, and, informing him of their proceedings, receive agreed upon, royal rewards for their rervices. Having thus fettled a peace with all his enemies, the ambiffathe Sultan disbands his army, and that iame fummer departs from Adrianople to don return to do iample. Constantinople, in order to regulate the disordered state of the Empire, and by a prudent administration, repair the losses it had sustained.

31. Tibin thence he fends Hattmadar Ibrubim Pajba (36), as ambaliador exwith an Mill Name to the Emperor of Germany, and receives from secure, by the hands of Count Toening, the ratifications of peace figured Having diffrached these affairs, he commits the whole administration of Empire to the Vicir, Husing and to relax his mind, removes with bill court to Kuryshtiran (37), where he endeavours to divert, by hunting, his remet for the loss of so many provinces.

n of the

KCII. Uson this receis after to many toils, the people, and especially the foldiery, grew tinealy, and imagined that the peace, so carnelly wished for, was granted them for no other end, but to watch narrowly and centure the words and actions of their Sultan. Hence they blushed not to say, in their affemblies, that the Sultan was disposed to imitate his father in all things. 1699 For as his father, in the first years of his reign, applied himself to the administration of affairs, and neglected nothing which he thought would enlarge the bounds of the Empire; so Mufapha, in the first five years of his reign, had applied himself wholly to the state, and discharged all the duties of a father of his country, and in this respect imitated the virtues of the other; but that now he was resolved to imitate those vices of which his father, in his advanced age, and after extending the Empire, was guilty, namely, the love of hunting and dogs, though he was yet young, and not so conspicuous for his services to the Othman Empire. For he had not recovered any thing from the enemy, nor during the whole course of the war done any action to deserve the thanks of the publick, except in preventing the enemy from penetrating farther into the heart of the Empire. Since therefore his father, illustrious for fo many victories, was deposed on account of his excessive fondacts for hunting, it was to be feared that an equal, if not a worse sate, would attend his son, who was much inferior to him.

Sultan ves to the re-

Chan of

XCIII. To avoid these reproaches, the Sultan takes a method, often used with fuccess by his predeceffors, namely, to retire to Adrianople. For when he had fent for the Vizir and all the great officers of the Empire to that city, and thereby removed all subject of calumny from the spics upon his conduct, the people are filent, and ceale from their usual fatyr against their governois

XCIV. During his flay at Adrianople, in the month Rejeb +, of the year 1111, ryendes the Sultan is informed by letters from the Chan of Tartary, that the Czai of the peace Ruffia having changed the habit and religious ceremonies of his country, (one was the of which points was true, the other faile) had introduced those of Germany, and the and raised a very large army out of his whole kingdom, disciplined after the German manner; and though he had made a truce at Carlovitz for two years,

cember 1111 1700

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(36) Haznadar Ibrahim] He was at first treasurer and confident of the prime Vizir, Cara Mustapha Pasha, and was on account of that office named Haznadar. After Cara's death, having fincerely discovered his pernicious designs to Ameji Soliman Pasha, he came to be highly in favour with him, and was advanced to very confiderable posts. At last, when a peace was concluded with the Germans, he was fent to Vienna with the character of ambaffador extraordinary, to confirm it, and at his return from thence was appointed governor of Belgrade. He was a prudent man, of a sharp and quick wit, but full of moderation, and very fit to manage ombassies, and other political affairs: undoubtedly he would have arrived to the highest posts in the Othman governmater, had be not been supposed to have

fulled the honour of the Mabonician law, and the Aliothman Empire, by his immoderate love of wine, which he learned at Vienna to addict himself to For, upon this account, Sultan Multaglia would not fuffer him to come to Adrianople, nor give him admittance, but ordered him to remain at his government of Belgrade, which fat fo heavy upon his mind, that in a few months it brought him into a confumpmon, of which he died.

(37) Karysturan] a town between Chorlo\* and Burgaz, near the road from Constantinople to Adrianople. There is still to be feen a very fine palace, built by Sulvan Maho-met IV, for the conveniency of hunting 2 for the adjacent country is very pleasant, and fit for hunting, being full of hares, famous for their great swiftness.

was

# 22. Mustapha II.

Book IV.



was preparing a fleet with utmost expedition, and building new cities and cafties upon the Tanais, Borysthenes, and other rivers; that these proceedings were no fign of peace, but it was rather to be feared, that the latent flame would shortly break out with great fury and danger ; that the Sultan therefore ought to take care, that while he put an end to the war with the Germans in the west, a new Nemehe \* Giaur from the north did not distress the Othman Empire, and bring it into great danger, fince nothing could prevent the Russians from over-running all Crim-Tartary in the first campain, before the Tarks could come to its relief. It was necessary therefore either to have a firm peace, or immediately to declare war, left the enemy should have time and opportunity to strengthen themselves. If the Sultan should happen to doubt of the truth of this report, he should send a trulty officer, who might be an eye-witness of

what was transacted, and might inform the Sultan of all particulars.

XCV. The Sultan, unknown to the Vizir, fends his mafter of horse, Kyblels The Sultan fends a perf Ogle (38), son to the Vizir's fifter, into Crim-Tartary, with orders strictly to exa- to observe t mine the conduct of the Russians, and immediately return, without informing defiguate any person of the occasion of his journey. Kybleli Ogli, having received this command, prepares for his journey, but before his departure, fecretly goes to his uncle, and acquaints him with the Sultan's commission. The Vizir, lest this spark should become a greater slame than what had been extinguished, directs his kinsman, at his return, to come to him before he went to the Sultan, Kyblels Ogls observes his advice, and at his refor instructions what to say turn, before he waits upon the Sultan, goes to the Vizir in difguise, and acquaints him, that the Russians had built a large fleet at two places, namely, at Voronefby and Azac, and were every day increasing it; that they had fortified Taganorok in a jurprizing manner, and that above twenty thousand workmen were perpetually employed in building new fortifications; that the works at Camenzaton, above the Borysthenes, were already finished, and the cataracts of that river opened, and made fit for navigation, that the Tarsars had nothing left fecure beyond the Chersonensus, and were perpetually annoyed by the incursions of the Cofaks, with many other particulars of the like nature, which were true, and withal, seemed to demonstrate the difinclination of the Russians to peace

XCVI The Vizir confidering, that if these things were related to the Sultan, The Vizir, they would occasion a more dreadful war than the former, defires his kinfman to pickning conceal them, and persuade the Sultan, that the Chan of Crim-Tartary's account endeavous was entirely groundless, and a mere fiction, aggravated according to the usual avoid a war way of the Tartars, for they know they are never regarded by the Othmans, except in time of war, and are so accustomed to plunder, that they think they can hardly lublist without it, that the Russians had indeed, during the war, begun (everal castles, but had now discontinued their works, and were desirous of nothing to much as preferving the peace inviolate, and the commerce tree between themselves and the Turks, for which purpose they would soon send an

ambaflador extraordinary to the resplendent Port.

XCVII. Kybleli Ogli, furnished with this fictitions flow, the next day pre- The Chan! tending to be just come from his journey, without having spoken to any per- ing accused ion, goes directly to the Sultan, and tells him exactly what he had been taught, hence to The Sultan, not suspecting his fidelity, is extremely incented against the Chan, Sultan and in a letter severely reprimands him for his falle and injurious account. The Chan, perceiving by this that the Sultan had been deceived by the artifice of Kybleh Ogh, answers by letter, that he never durk presume to offer falsities to his majeffy; but thought that Kyblelt Ogh, bribed by the enemy, had

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(38) Kyblels Ogli] He was fifter's fon to the Vizir Amueje Ogli Hujein Pasha, who loved him to entirely, that, though he was young, he never ceased to importune the Sultan till he had made him Buyuk smrabor. I have already given a larger account of him in the body of the history,

hed him of what he had feen and heard in Crim-Tartary, and peraccused him of falshood, because he had not received such rich prefrom him as he expected; for that the account which he had given his makery in his former lotters was as clear and evident as the light of the fun; ke Kybieli Ogli would not deny what he had feen, if he should be more strictthe and severely examined. KOVIII. This answer of the Chan being delivered by unknown persons to

H 1113

friend being the Sultan, as he was coming out of the Jame, he immediately lends for Kybleli li putto death, Ogh, threatning him with death, if he did not frankly confess the truth Kiblels, and the Vizir in this dangerous fituation, acknowledges that every thing related by the Chan in his former letters was true; but that he had amused his majesty with a different flory, by the persuasion of the Vizir, whose commands he could not resuse on account of the authority of his post, and his relation to him, and humbly begs pardon of his fault. The imposture of both being thus detected, the Sui-A C. 1731 tan at first deprives Kybleli Ogli of his post, and banishes him from Canstantinople; but soon after sending Haseks Aga with a Chatssberss, orders him to be put to death. At the same time he removes Husein Pasta from the office of Vizir, and banished him to a village near Syllebria, reducing him to a private

The Vizirthip vacant

XCXIX. After his removal, the Vizirship, by a very rare example, was vacant forty days, till the arrival of Daltaban Mustapha Pasha governor of Babylon, whom the Sultan had refolved to advance to that office, on account of his subduing the Arabs. During this interval, Silahdar Hujan Pasha, under the title of Vekil, had the administration of affairs.

station, though without meddling with his citate.

Daltaban Ba made Vi-

C. When the new Vizir, Daltaban Mustapha Pasha was come, he takes Mustapha Pa- upon him the post designed for him, and immediately demands a list of all the castles which the Othman Empire was possessed of before and after the last war with the Germans

He i extremely incenfed amade the peace.

CI. Finding by this lift, that a great many towns beyond the Save, which he had taken from the Germans while he was Basha of Bosnia, were restored gainst the am. the first taken from the Germans while he was Bania of Bolina, were renorted bassissions who to them by the peace, he is extremely provoked, declaring those who had made the peace were no less Graurs than the Germans themselves, fince they had given up, without any necessity, so many places reduced to the Othman obedience by his own blood, and had given Cameniec, a city deligned by Sultan Mahomet for the bulwark of the whole Empire, and for a noble monument of the Mahometan religion by the crection of a magnificent Jame, in exchange for three towns of Moldavia filled with Christians.

He defigns to make wir upon the Polis

CII. Not content with reproaching the peace-makers, he refolves to break it, and particularly to declare war against the Poles. He was in great hopes of better success than before, as well from the weakness of that kingdom, which he had fufficiently observed while Seraskier against them, as from the confuled state of Europe upon the death of the King of Spain, on which account new ther the Emperor nor any other of the Christian Princes could affist them

He feeks an occasion of breaking the peace

CIII. But left the superfishious people should think the truce violated by the Othman court, and for that reason tear the event, he carefully examines whither any thing had been done by the Germans which might give a colour to declare war.

He threatens the ambaffadors, under pretence that the precept of to death.

CIV. But finding no pretence to accuse the enemy of a breach of the peace, he declares that the ambassadors of the Othman court had acted contrary to the Koran and the Sultan's command, and given more to the enethe peace was my than their orders would juffify; and for that reason he resolves to put them

CV But perceiving the Mufti's authority would be a great obstacle in this af-He refolves to fair, who had not only approved of the peace by his Fetvah, but likewise was put the Much of fingular parron of the ambassadors, he determines to dispatch him privately, to desth. because he could not publickly do it out of reverence to his office. For this purpole, he pretends a first triendship with him, often visiting him in a familiar manner, and discoursing with him concerning the state of the publick assairs;

at last he invites him to a splendid entertainment, secretly directing some of his chamberlains, that when the water was pouring out for the Musti to walk his

hands, they should of a sudden strangle him with a cord.

CVI. But the very thing which the Vizir had contrived for the defiruction of His defiguethe Musti, by his imprudence, turns to his own ruin. For having discovered the ed, the Musti
secret to his Kiehaia, Ibrahim Aga (39), the latter, to ingratiate himself with escape the
the Musti, immediately goes with the Casab bashi (40), Cara Mehemed Aga (41),
and informs him of the danger to which he was exposed. Upon this the Musti pretending sickness, throws himself upon his bed, and in a faint voice answers the
Vizir, who was come (42) to invite him to the seast, that he was extremely sorry his sudden indisposition should prevent his coming; but he would send his
son, Nakyb Effends, to supply the place of his sick father

CVII When the Vizir was gone, the Musti lends for the Reis Effends, Rams The Mustiage Mehemmed Pasha (43), and Maurocordatus, and acquaints them with the Vizir's constite Vizir to the Sultan design of rebellion.

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(39) Ibralim Aga] After this treachery to his mafter, and his death, he was through the Musti's application, made Basha of Thessalomica, and, on account of his lameness, named To, it Ibrahim Pasha, i e Ibrahim Pasha the Lame. But he did not long enjoy the reward of his perfidiousness, for, a few months after, he fell ill at Thessalomica, and, as 'tis faid, in the midst of hornible torments, perperually calling upon the name of his master, and billowing like a bull, he dismissed his foul to the mansions prepared by Mahomet

(40) Calab halfn] The chief butcher, whose butiness it is to take care that none but found and fresh meat be brought into the shops, and not be fold above the stated price. There is another of the lame name employed in time of war to buy cattle for the army, of whom an account has been

given in a former note.

(41 Cara W. bemi l Aga] He was named Cara on account of the blackness of his complexion, which I have feveral times observed to be a name common among the Turks. He was the richest Turk in his time, fo that he often could lend five hundred or a thoufind purfey, at three days notice, to Conhantine Brancovar, whose great dependant he was whenever he had occasion He met with the tame end, as generally attends all those that have enriched themselves in the Turk service for under Damad Hasan Paiht, being filfely accused, he was turned out of his place, thrown into prilon, and iltipped of all the tiches and treafures he had amiffed

(41) was come] As the Vizir and Musti both hold the high if degree in their respective orders, they never meet without great previous ceremonies, for the Musti, before he goes to visit the Vizir, sends his Talkbysb. (11°, which he has peruliar to himself, as well as the Vizir, to enquire whether he is at home? and to let him know he intends to visit him. The Vizir, on the other hand, sends with his Talkbysh. in the Reis Effendi,

to meet the Mufti as far as his house, who going before, the Multi follows in his chariot, (for ne never rides on horsehack in the city, and but feldom in the country) When he arrives at the Vizir's palace, the Kietchudabeg and Chaufh \* bafhi meet him at the gate, and lead him under the arms as far as the stair-case. The Vizir himself meets him upon the first step, and after the usual felutations, they both go up ftairs, the Vizir going first. The Mufu, in the mean time, with a grave countenance, and with both his hands upon his breaft, bleffes the people on both fides with the customary form used among the Mahometans, Selamun aleixium, 1 c. Peace be with you, at which they bow the head. When they come into the room, they both fit down, the Vizir on the left hand, as the most honourable place, and the Mufti on the right, and conclude the vifit with the fame coremonies

(43) Rums Mebemed] He was born at Constantinople, in the suburbs of Eyub, of parents of mean condition, and there applying himself to learning and poetry, he had the name of Rams conferred upon him by the academy of poetry for it is cuffomary among the mafters of that art, as foon as their scholars are able to make verses, to give them new names, which they retain to their death. When he had finished the course of his studies, fortune having denied him means of rifing higher, he frequented taverns, and as he was very handsom, and had a harmonious voice, and besides underflood mulick, he got a pretty good livelyhood there, confidering his condition He was removed from this way of life by the famous poet, Nabi Effendi, secretary to the Musabib Divan, by whose good instructions he fo improved, that though he had no place at court, because all his friends were dead, yet he passed among the great men for a good writer. At last, Elma. Mehemed. Pafba made him Mukabeleji, and Huiein Pasha appointed him Reis Effends, in which office he displayed his abilities, while he had ' mult

434

The credalous Sultan puts the Vizir to death

Without exa-

varced in his

room 'The Vizur's

death the occation of a dreadful re-

bellion.

cusé s Ra

delign against them. Having maturely confidered the affair, this triumvirate relater to the Sultan, and by a feigned or real acculation of the Vizir, procuse him to be removed from his post, and, if possible, put to death. The Musti tendertakes this province, and the next day waits upon the Sultan, informing him that the Vizir was engaged in some new designs destructive to the whole Othman Hampire; that he had secretly listed a very numerous army, made his dependants officers in it, and ordered them to excite the soldiers to demand publickly the suprire of the peace, and depose the Sultan, if he would not granify the army's desires.

CVIII. The Sultan readily believing what the Musti, for whom he had a great esteem, had fallely charged upon the Vizir, and being extremely incensed against him, orders him to be sent for by Baltaşılar Kiehajası, and severely reproaches him; and when he attempted to excuse himself, commands him to be put to death, advancing in his room Rams Mehemed Pasha, who, from Reis Effends,

a few days before, had been made Cubbe Vizir.

CIX. But from the Vizir's blood, as from a copious fountain, torrents of human blood flowed. The Ulema, catizens and foldiers at Constantinople, hearing what had happened at Adrianople, begin to complain openly as well as privately of the present administration, declaring that all things were now managed with confusion; that the new Vizir, the Musti, and other great officers, were traytors; and that their whole conduct tended to the ruin of the Empire, that for this purpose, they had persuaded the Sultan to put to death Daltaban Mustapha Pasha, one of the greatest heroes of the age, who, supposing he had been guilty of some misconduct, should rather have been banished, that he might on occasion, like a cooped lion, be let loofe upon an enemy. But that they being jealous of this, would not fuffer him to live, who had twice fignalized his warlike abilities against the Germans and Arabs; and by their management, had raised Rams Mehemed Pasta to the Vizirship, a good scribe indeed, and a man of great learning, but unfit for that office; that this was the very reason of persuading the Sultan to leave his capital, the great bulwark of the Empire, refide at Adrianople, and wander in the woods; that Conftantmople was drained, and Adrianople rendered tamous; and whilst the inhabitants of the former, by the ablence of the court and the tyranny of the governors, was reduced to the lowest poverty, the Adrianopolitans, now grown rich and haughty, looked with contempt upon the potterity of to

### ANNOTATIONS.

jointly, with Maurocordatus, the management of the peace. At his return from that embaffy, he came to be in great efteem with the Sultan, and had the com-mendation from him of having well and skilfully discharged his commission. When Daltaban endeavoured to put him to death, he not only fecured himfelf by his own and the Mufti's artifices, but also much bettered his condition with the spoils of his enemy, Being a fecond time fentenced to punishment by the rebels, he faved himfelf by running away, and lay concealed fome time at Constantinople among the women. The re-bellion being quelled, he appeared again in public under the Vizirship of Hasan Pasha, and was first made Basha of Egypt, the richeft Pashalic in the whole Othman Empire, and from thence removed to the government of Cyprus, where those persons are commonly fent whom the court has a mind goodness of his constitution being proof to fend out of the way without blood : but against the badness of the air, the

put him to death However, it was not his fate to die a violent death, for after he had taken the Aldoft, he expired as he was repeating the prayers commonly faid among the Turks, by persons condemned to death The superstitious people, who were of his party, believe that an angel was just from heaven to receive his foul, and had prevented the injuffice of his enemies but it frem s more probable, that he was overpowered and fuffocated with tear, and died of a palpitation of heart, for though he outdid all the Turkish writers in quickness of wit and elegance of expression, yet he was thought to be weak, fearful, and of an effeminare mind. It has been observed, that he was but a mere tool to Maurocordatus, by whole fecret persuasion and advice he did many things, which Maurocordatus, as being a Christian, could not propose in publick. and therefore many things are falfely ascribed to his skill and penetration, which none but a man of Maurocordatus's difcernment and capacity could have invented.

many

many Othman heroes; that to difgrace the city of Confiantinople the more, there was appointed for Casmacan, Kioprils Abdullah Pasha (44), a youth of eighteen years, who, except the glory of his father, had nothing to recommend him but his marriage with the Musti's daughter, as if no bounds could be fixed to the Mufti's will, who had already exceeded the limits of his office, and wanted but little of engroffing, with his family, the whole Othman Empire; that all the best and noblest Mollabsbaps were filled by his young sons, or by those who could purchase them, for his house was become the office of avarice, where justice and ecclesiastical dignities were fold to the rich, and not disposed of to men of integrity and learning. These, and other things, they uttered publickly with great affurance, and gave fufficient marks of their readiness to revolt; but a leader and a proper occasion were wanting: the last is soon given them by the Caimacan, Kioprili Abdullah Pasha himself.

CX For when he, about the end of the month Muharem, of the year 1114, The fedition with the Tefterdar of Istambol, distributed the pay to the Janizaries, the Jebess, long concealwho are next in order to the Janizaries, go three or four times to the gates of breaks out in the Caimacan and Tefterdar, desiring also to be paid; but the Caimacan put to open rebelting them off from day to day, they fend about forty of their companions to H 1114 him, as he is hearing the complaints of the people in the Divan, and by an Arzuhal, humbly beseech him to grant them their pay in their turn. Having A C 1702. read this petition, his youthful blood is fired, and reproaching the Jebejs in very fevere and dishonourable terms, bids them wait, because there was no money in the treasury. They, provoked at this treatment, go out of the Divan; but upon the very stairs return the Caimaican's reproaches with greater sharpness, and fo loud, that the by-standers could hear almost every word. The Caimacan, informed of this, commands the Mubzuri (45), immediately to follow and feize them, and carry them to their chief officer, that they might be put to death: for it is capital among the Turks to contradict or use reproachful terms to any judge, especially to the Casmacan, who is supposed to be the Sultan's vicegerent. The Muhzurs using force, are resisted by the Jebeji, who raise a tumust in the street, and finding themselves over-powered by numbers, in the usual phrase of the foldiers, (yoldash yokmidur? are no companions at hand?] call out for assistance

CXI. The Jebejs, at this cry, flock together from all parts; rescue their The Jebejs fellows from the Muhzurs, drive away the officers of justice, and return trium-first raced the phantly to their quarters. There they give a particular account to the rest of their body of what they had done, heard, faid, and fuffered, adding, it was in vain to wait for their pay, while the distribution was in the hands of a youth, whole brains were turned by his high and undeferved dignity.

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(44) Kioprili Abdullab] The fon of Kiopilli Mujia, ba Pafba, who was flain at the battle of Salancamen in 1691 Having married the Mufti's daughter, he was raifed before the usual time to the office of Cubbe bizir, and afterwards to that of Caimacan of Conflantinopie, which, next to the Prime Vizir, is accounted one of the highest dignities in the Othman Empire but, by his youthful rathness, he did many things amis, and behaved haughtily, which proved the cause, or at least the occasion, of Sultan Mustapha's being depoted. But afterwards, growing wifer with age, he acted with more moderation, and thereby obtained not only pardon for his past faults, but allo was promoted by the present Sultan to the Pashalic

of Schaftia, after having quelled a rebellion. (45) Mubzur] Their name is derived from ibzar, to bring, because their business in to guard the Vizir's palace; to bring the guilty, and if any are to be confined, to keep them till the next Divan. No certain Oda of the Janizaries is fet apart for that business, but if any Chorbaji is raised to Mubzur agalyk, the regiment he commands does the office of the Mubzuri: but if he is made Caimacan of Constantinople in the Sultan's absence, another Ode of Janizaries is chosen for that business. To put malefactors to death, there is a felect body taken out of the Mubzuri, who, from the Falanga, or inftrument they use in beheading, are called Falangan,

Their report is confirmed by Carakasa Mehemed, a man of great boldfond of changes in the government, and the whole affembly exceed to revenge the injury upon the Caimacan. This is readily agreed to teff of the Jebeji, who immediately take arms, and run to the Carmapalace. The Cantacan, informed of this affair, escapes through a backr, and so seves himself, but not the Sultan, nor the Empire, from the

CXIII. For after his escape, the Jebeji running every where in parties, rouse the Januaries and Ulema with the repetition of their former complaints of the ill administration of affairs. The city being filled with tumults, the next day the leaders of the fedition meet in the Atmeiden (46), and refolve either to periffe for defroy the Vizir, Masti, and other oppressors of the people, confirming their

resolution by an oath.

igin Papa sac Carine conforators who declare

CXIV. In this affembly, Firars Hafan Pafba offers to be their leader, and upon the removal of Kioprils Abdullah Pasha, is appointed Casmacan by the conspirators. The Nakib Kiazibi Mehemed Effendi (47), assumes the office of Mutti, and under that title gives the Fetvah. Another person of no note, Dergan Musti and Vi- Ahmed Pasha, who having been recalled from his Pashalic, lived privately at Confiantinople, is made Vizir by the rebels. Kulksehasa Chalyk \* Ahmed Aga, is appointed Janizer Agass, and Diw Ali Aga (48), who had been deprived of

the post of Kulksehaia, is restored to that office.

CXV. By their advice, the conspirators shut the gates of Constantinople, to pre-They order vent any person from informing the Sultan of their designs, suffer no man the gates of the city to be to go out of the city, unless fent by themselves; plunder the magazines of arms kept there, to be employed in war, and arm themselves against the Empire.

The Sulma rebels.

CXVI. The Sultan hearing of this, sends Mustapha Effends (49), the chief secresends an amgreat a rebellion in the royal city, and to promife that the Sultan would grant all their deferes.

He is ill treated by the re-

CXVII. But when he came to the city on the eighth day of the sedition, the guard at the gate force him from his horse, and carry him bound to the Atmeiwhere the chiefs of the rebels had pitched their tents. The people immediarely cry out, he is come as a fpy, and rushing upon him before their leaders could examine him, or refirain their violence, beat him almost to death, and endeavour, by torture, to oblige him to confess what the Sultan was doing at Adrianople. But their outrage, and his own fears, had so taken away his senses

### ANNOTATION S.

(46) Aimeidan The Hippadrome, built by the Emperor Justinian, near St. Sophia, and running along the court of the Jami Sullan Abmed. It is at this day put to its original ule, that is, to air and exercise the Sultan's horfes: but formetumes it ferves for

a rendezvous to rebels.

(47) Ksazibi Mebemed Effendi] He was of the race of the Emurs, and had formerly, under Sultan Mahomes IV, been raised to the dightry of Multi. The name of Kizzibi, that is, Lyar, was given him, because he was thought to be much given to lying; for it is usual among the learned in Turkey, (as they lieve no family-name, and many of them have frequently the fame name) to diffinguish one shoulder by such epithets has there was at the same time another

Mebemed Effends, i. c. Mebemed Effends who was raifed in his old age by but was foon after deposed, because at the burial of the Sultan's fon, instead of Jenaaze Namazi, or the burial-prayers, he had read Beiram Namaz

(48) Drw Als Aga] From a common Janizary, he passed through the several degrees to the dignity of Kulkiehaiafi; but being afterwards turned out, he lived a private life at Conflantinople When the fedition was appeared, Sultan Abmed purfuing all the orlenders, he was the only one that escaped, and fled, as was reported, to Jezasri, (the Alguers of the Europeans,) fo that he could never be found

(49) Muftapha Effendi] He was at firft, under Amueje Ogli Husein Pasha, the Kiuchink Teshkieren, and afterwards the Buyuk Telbkieren. After the rebellion was quelted, he was fent with Taiacadin, or the prefent Sultan's nurse, to Mecca, but perished by shipwreck before he arrived at Alexandria.

and speech, that he could not explain what he was commanded to discover; and being ready to expire, was obliged to be carried to a neighbouring house.

CXVIII. This incenting them more against the Sultan, they prepare an array The robes with great eagerness, and affembling above fifty thouland foldiers on the nineteenth day, leave the city, and encamp first near Dand Palba, resolving, if the water Musulmans at Adrianople should dare to oppose them, utterly to destroy that city, as the rival of the capital. With this resolution, the fixth day after their departure from Constantinople they come to Hapfa, a town not far from Adrianople, and from thence inform the Sultan, that they had not conspired against him, but the evil minufers of the publick affairs, nor taken arms to fight against Musulmans, but merely to oblige those who, with an insidel mind, had fold the security of the Empire to the enemies, to fubmit to tryal before the facred and divine judgment of the Koran. But if the Sultan would use the sword in an affair which ought to be tried in a judicial way, they would repell force with force, and he would be accountable to God for the needless effusion of Musulman blood. They likewise privately warn the inhabitants of Adrianople, not to appear in arms, if they would fave themselves from being plundered, fince they were not come to fight with their brethren, but to judge the betrayers and oppressors of the Othman Empire according to the law of the Koran, and punish them according to their deferts.

CXIX. The Sultan, informed of this by his Chaufhi \*, affembles his European The Sultan troops with the utmost expedition, and orders them to march under the conduct his troops at the Vivie Pani Mahamed Pasts around the colors of the Vizir, Rami Mehemed Palha, against the rebels. For their greater encou- gams the re-ragement the Musti, Ferzallah Effends (50), by his Fetvah, declares the iedi-

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(50) Feizullab Effendi] He was born at Van, on the confines of Perfia, and descended of the Emir race. In the time of Sultan Mahomet IV, when Muderss, or mafter of the Suleimanie-school, he was appointed Shehzade Hoje, or preceptor to Mustapha and Abmed, the Sultan's sons, and after having often changed, contrary to custom, his ecclesiastical employments, was raised to the dignity of Mufts, in which he continued feven years, a thing undeard of among the Turks. He was a man of no great learning, and more crafty than wife. He had fuch an aicendant over the Sultan, which fome imputed to magic, that the Sultan would neither do nor undertake any thing without first confulting him, and could refuse him nothing. He used in his speech the Persian pronunciation, which made the people give him the name of Kyzyl baffar. So covetous was he, that he not only took prefents with both hands, and if none were given him, would ask for some, but also did, for money, give any Fetvab that was defired, right or wrong. He had four ions, who relying on their father's power, committed all kinds of disorders: the eldest, whom he had by the famous Vanle Effendi's daughter, he constituted Nakyb On the other three, though they were but young, he conterred very honourable as well as profitable Mollabships; and, by his too great indulgence to them, drew upon himfelt the indignation not only of the Ulema, but also of the whole people. One of these, who was Mollab of Kudusbers, or

Jerusalem, did, by his arrogance, cause so much uneafinels to Cherkses Mehemed, governor of that city, that he was forced to leave Jerujalem, and retire to Gaza. After his departure, the Mollab being diffurbed in the night with the howling of dogs, and in the day with the buzzing of files, he or-dered the inhabitants to kill all their dogs, and to bring him daily a certain number of dead flies to the court. This being both disagreeable to the people, and also contrary to the law of the Koran, which forbids the killing of dogs, and other domestic creatures, except fuch as are fit for food, they privately fent a deputation to Gaza with an Arzmabzar to their Pasha, to let him know what burdens were impoled upon them. Cherkies \* Mehemed, who certainly excelled all the Barbarians in justice and piety, (if any fuch thing can be faid of Mahometans) not being able to believe that to great a crime should be committed by a Mollab, fends a trufty person to Jerusalem to fee whether it was true. When the man came there, he found the whole city in an uproar, and all the inhabitants, having left their employments, were bufy in catching flies, and stringing them on a long thread, that they might be told with more case: so, going back, he gives his mafter a faithful account of what he had feen and heard. The thing therefore being unquestionably , true, Cherkies , in order to try first to accommodate the matter in an amicable way, exhorts the Mollab by letter not to lay fuch heavy and useless burdens on the Sultan's ſubjects,

ion and Giams, and promifes those who should die fighting valiantly

The summer of the law agreeably to its precepts. And if they endeamed and contemns of the law agreeably to its precepts. And if they endeamed to the summer of the law agreeably to its precepts. And if they endeamed the infinite indignation of God, but likewife the fevereft punishments." The ardor of the Sultan's troops is abated by this speech, which so affects them, that, abandoning the Vizir, they all join the rebels, and saluet them as brethren

CXXI. The Vizir, in this desperate state, slies with two servants in disguise to Varna, and from thence concealing himself, (as some say) among the wo-

The Vizir, abandoned by his troops, escapes in disguise.

#### ANNOTATIONS.

subjects; not to disgrace, by so great a crime, the prophet's laws, for the maintenance whereof he refided at Jerusalem; nor expose both his own and his father's honour to contempt; that he was afraid, if the complaints of the inhabitants came to the Sultan's ears, he would incur his utmost indignation. The Mollab answered, he might indeed alledge the law of the Koran, and lay down moral precepts whilst he lived at Gaza, where he was free from flies, and enjoyed profound quiet whenever he pleafed; but if he was to live at Jerufalem, where the dogs would break his rest in the night, and the flies hinder him in the day, from hearing in court the complaints of the parties, he would be of another mind Cherkies Mehemed Pasha, upon the receipt of this answer, perceiving the man was incorrigible, and not daring, on account of his father's power, to oppose him, he sends the Mufti an account of the whole mat ter, with petitions from the inhabitants of Jerusalem and himself, and the Mollab's letters, and defires him, by his paternal authority, to reffrain his fon's outragious proceedings. But the means by which he fought another's reformation, had like to prove his own ruin. For the Mufti, who, by reason of his unheard-of indulgence to his fons, may justly be called the Turkish Eli, as foon as he had received the letters, falls into a violent passion, not with his fon, but with Cherkies Mebemed, and going directly to the Sultan, loads the innocent governor of Jerusalem with so many calumnies, that the Sultan immediately dispatched a Capus bashs with a Chatsberrs to bring his head. But the Capuji bafbi being a prudent man, and a feeget friend to the Baths, pretends to go, but returns privately to Confiantinople, and going to the Vizir, namely, Amueje Ogli Husein Pasha, communicates to him the order he had received, and asks him what he must do?

Husein Pasha, who had already heard something of Kudsheriss Mollah's ill behaviour, eafily gueffed by whose contrivance that attempt was made upon the life of Cherk e. \* Mehemed, and so goes without delay to Sultan Mustapha, tells him he had heard of fuch an order against Cherkies" Melemed, and that he wondered at it, because he knew him to be a very faithful and honeft man The Sultan thereupon lets the Vizir know what the Mufti had told him, and that, fays he, is the reason why I have fent a Chatsherif to put him to death zir refuted all the Mufti's calumnies, and gave the Sultan a true account of his fon's whole conduct at Jorufalem, whereupon the Sultan taid he was forry he had been drawn in by the mifrepresentations of others, to order lo good a man to be put to death without cause, but he saw no way of recalling the order, because he thought the Capust bafbi was now gone to far, that no messenger sould overtake him. We must try iome way or other, fays the Vizir, Icil through our negligence the guilt of innocent blood fall upon our heads, for I believe that Providence will stop the Cajuja balbs in the way, and afford its an opportunity of recalling him. Having, by this discourse, obtained leave from the Sultan to recall the Chatisherif, he returns home, and orders the Capust bafbs to pais over in the night-time into Asia, and begin his journey, that he might at least appear to have complied with the Sultan's command. muxt day he dispatches another Capup bashi with a Ferman to overtake the other, and bring him back. And thus the Vizir faved the man by a commendable fubrilty, whom the Mufti by a horrible wickedness was refolved to destroy. Many other such villanies were committed by the Mufti's fons, which to relate would be tedious perhaps as well to the reader, as to my felf.

men of a certain Araijizade, goes to Constantinople, and conceals himself for some time in the suburb of Eyab, where he had built himself an house.

CXXII. The rebels, on the other hand, having furmounted this obstacle, en- Theseledet camp under the city, at a place called Solakehelhmesi\* (51), and from thence send Sultan two messengers to the Sultan to demand the Vizir, the Musti, with his sons, and Musulmann Maurocordatus.

CXXIII. The Sultan, who had foreseen this, had given the Mufti, for whom he had to death great efteem, an opportunity two days before of escaping; but sent several Bostoni's The bultan deliven up the to attend him, with delign to stop his flight, if the danger increased. Finding therefore Musti. the rebels more oblinate in their demands, he immediately brings him back to Adrianople by means of the Bostanzi's, and delivers him up with his two sons.

CXXIV The rebels, as foon as they had him in their power, put him to the The rebels pol most exquisite torture; fix nails into his knees, and, by other horrid cruelties, en- him to a cruel deavour to make him discover the immense treasures he was reported to have amassed. Being a man of great spirit, he bears all with lingular patience, and does not utter one word, except in defiring vengeance from God upon so impious Exhausted with so many torments, he is at last put to and ungrateful a people death, and his body (52) thrown into the river, as if he had been an infidel, and unworthy of burial,

CXXV The Sultan perceiving from these circumstances, that the people were The Sultan more example against him than he had imagined, sends to Derojan, Abmed confirm the Pasha (53), appointed Vizir by the rebels, the seal of the Vizirship, and confirms his post the other officers cholen by them in their polls, promiting to grant all their demands. He informs them, that the Vizir and Maurecordatus were fled, and alfures them he would deliver them up as foon as they were taken.

CXXVI But they growing more prefumptuous by the Sultan's indulgence, They fend for concert measures to depose him, for which purpose they fend a letter to Sultan Sultan's bro-Abmed, brother of Multapha, desiring him, if possible, to come to the army, there

and one Chri fuan to be put

### Annotations.

(51) Soluk-hefbmefi \*] The fountain of Solak, in the middle of a field, an Italian mile from Adrianople, on the road to Conflantinople, fo called, either because the builder of it was of the order of the Solaki, or elfe because he had loft a hand

(52) his body] As the laws of the Koran, and the constitutions of the Othman Empire, forbid the putting any Mollab, much less a Musti, to death (for the highest punishment of the whole order of the Ulema, and of the Cadi's, is banishment; the rebels could never have excused the Musti's death, but by declaring he was a Giaur, that is, an Infidel. And to render that pretence the more probable among the people, they would not fufler him to be buried with the rest of the Musulmans, after the Mabometan manner, but procured a Greek priest to put him into the ground. This man got fome persons to drag him along, whilst himself walked before, singing, instead of the burnal hymn, these words, seems as at laft flung it into the river. But before he committed his body to the water, he is reported to have perfumed it with frankin cenie, repeating thele two Turkish veries

Ne Sizinder, ne bizinder, Dosdogru jehennem inder,

Neither yours nor ours, He is gone directly to bell.

Which faying so pleased the Turks, that they not only praifed the man's ingenuity, but also rewarded him for it. (53) Dorojan Abmed] He was formerly

called Damad (son-in-law) Abmed Pasha.

because he had married the fifter of the Vizir, Amueje Ogli Hufein Pafha, and granddaughter of Kioprili Mujtapha Pajha, the handsomest woman in her time, but so lascivious, that the always kept many gallants, especially Franks. But he was afterwards called Dorojan by the rebels, because he was like Dorofbensko, Hetinan of the Cofact, whose history I have related for that Hetman was commonly named Dorolban by the Turks Under the Vizirship of Husein Pasha, he was governor of Amebacht, or Naupactum, but being turned out by Daltaban, he lived a private life at Constantinople. He

was afterwards banished to Naupallum,

where he died of grief in a few months.

He left but one young fon, who, as he was one day playing alone in his garden, fell

into a well, and was drowned.

fince

discussionistrators (crupled to enter the Imperial palace with an armed force if the could come out either with or without his brother's leave, the arm would immediately proclaim him Emperor. Sultan Multapha intercepting th to, continues long in suspence whether he should kill his brother, or volur highly resign the throne to him. Many of his domestic officers advice the fre tricide, alledging the conspirators would be obliged to confirm him in the throne If there were no other heirs to the Empire, but the Sultan abhors such a decc and resolves to commit himself to the divine Providence.

luted Sultan

CXXVII. He goes therefore to his brother, and, embracing him with gies affication, informs him that he was univerfally defired to fill the throne, and fir by his brother, falutes him Sulean. At his departure, he speaks to him as follows Kemen g ber, brother, that while I was on the throne, you enjoyed the utmost liberty. I do " fire you will allow me the fame. Morcover, think that you juffly indeed aften " this throne, as having been possessed by your father and brother; but that the " inframents of your advancement are treacherous rebels, whom, if you fuffe

> " to escape with impunity, they will quickly treat you as they do me at present." CXXVIII Having faid this, he retires to the same chamber in which he has kept his brother, where, fix months after his depolition, having contracted a di stemper through melancholy, he departs to the eternal palaces prepared for hin by Mahomet. He reigned eight years and some months.

Mu character and person

Sultan Mufta pha depoted

> CXXIX. He was a Sultan of great expectations in the beginning of his reign but fortune afterwards blafted them. He was happier in the first years of his km pire than in the latter. He had greater advantages from nature than both hu predecessors; for he was of a mature judgment, great application and sobriety neither prodigal nor avaritious in collecting and distributing the publick monies suft, a good archer and horieman, and very devout in his religion. He gaince great reputation by the peace of Carlovits, which having been in vain wiffice and attempted by his father and uncles, he fettled, by wonderfully reconciling all parties. He was of a moderate fize, his face round, and beautified with red and white; his beard red, thin, and not long; his noic short, and a little turned up; his eyes blue, and his eye-brows thin and yellow. In the fpling he used to have spots break out in his face, which disappeared again in the winter no fon alive, though he had been father of feveral. He was particularly fond of Ibrahim (54), fon of his uncle Ahmed, whom he always carried with him, and was faid to defign for his fucceflor, in cafe he died without iffue

#### ANNOTATION 8.

(54) Ibrahim] He was a hopeful and good-natured Prince After I left Conflat. tmople, I heard he died there.

The End of the Reign of MUSTAPHA II.



## The REIGN of

## AHMED III, Son of MAHOMET IV.

## Twenty-third E M P E R O R of the TURKS.

#### BOOK IV. CHAP. V.

I. SULTAN Multaphe being deposed, his brother Ahmed ascends the Silva dimensione, who confirms in their posts the Vizir, Dorojan Ahmed Pasis, though individual to the silvanda the silvand the Caimacan, Firari Ilasan Pasha, the Jamzar-Aga (1) Chalik \* Abmed, and contras the the rest upon whom the seditious had conterred offices, appoints the Nakyb, then offices whom the rebels had brought with them, Krazibi Mehimed Effendi, Mutti. and by this means crufes the confpirators to lay afide all fulpicion of him, and even to imagine, that by their rebellion they had gained great favour with the new Su'tan.

II. And that he might amuse them the more, and seem to do every thing He concern agreeably to their will, after he had staid at Adrianople but twenty days, he re-measures for turns in September to Constantinople, where he amply distributes the Bachshis them. which is wont to be given to the foldiers in the beginning of a reign. Having thus appealed the fury of the rebels, he concerts measures for punishing them with Silahdar Hafan Pasha (2), his fifter's husband, whom, upon the advancement

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(1) Chalyt Abmed From 1 common Janizary in the reign of Sultan Mustarba, he had paffed through all the degrees of that military order, and had been made Kulkiebasasi, but being afterwards turned out, he lived in a private manner at Con stantinople Upon the breaking out of the rebellion, being chosen fanizar-agasi by the conspirators, he took great care to provide for the fafety of the inhabitants, by a laudable, or rather an admirable prudence. For during the nineteen days Conflantinop'e was thut up, not one of the inhabitants received the leaft damage from fo great a rabble of desperate and outragious fellows The third day after the beginning of the troubles, observing that the merchants and tradefimen, remembring the great loffes they had fuffered in former rebellions, kept within-doors, and durft not come into the market, he strictly commanded, upon fevere penalties, that no one should be afraid, but all keep in their shops, and merchandize as before; and that he would

be answerable for it, that not a man should lofe to much as the value of an egg. He punctually performed what he had pro-mifed, and preferved the inhabitants in fuch lafety, that among so many furious toldiers, that breathed nothing but blood and flaughter, they walked about fafely, as if the feditious had been in another, and not in their own city. He did alfo fomething much more wonderful in his march to Adrianotle, for he kept the confused mob he headed under such a first discipline, that no perion could complain of having had even a fowl stolen, or taken by force, by any of the foldiers, and whether such a thing can easily be effec-ted, even in a regular and well-disciplined army, let knowing persons judge. Upon these accounts, when he was, by the Sultan's order, thrown into the fea of Marmora, almost all Constantinople bewarled his fad

(2) Silabdar [lafan] A native of Mores, who being in his youth taken into the

And the so the part of Testerder, he had made Cainteen, present the historican is less them all at once, now aftempted, and lessing them to maillament, he resolves, upon various pre-

o diferte area into the feveral provinces of the Empire. He therefore first dispatches the leader of the whole rebellion, Carakash Michemed, to Krabe Sherrf with a Caftan and sword, the usual presents of a new Sultan; but orders, that when he is come to Aleppe, he should be put to death by another Capuji bashi. He grants Chalyk \* Abmed, Aga of the Janizaries, the honour of three horse-tails, and on the third day after, under pretence of delivering him the feal of the Vizirship, sends for him in great pomp to the palace, from whence, being expected by all to return with the office of Vizir, he is conveyed through another gate towards the sea, put on board a galley, and ordered to be thrown into the Propontis. A few days after, he deprives the Vizit, Dorajan Abmed Passa, of his post; but it being universally known, that he had not fought that dignity, but been obliged by the rebels to take it upon him, his life is spared, and he is banished to Enibacht.

IV. He is succeeded about the end of October by the Casmacan, Silahdar Halan Pasta, by whose command, within five months, above sourteen thousand private soldiers, who had been privy to and agents in the rebellion, befides Bashas and other officers of the army, are drowned by night in the Bolphorus. Only two persons have the good fortune to escape, Dew Aliaga, the Kulkiehaia, and Firar: Hasan The former, forefeeing the danger, flies in difguife from Constantinople, and never after could be discovered, though carefully sought for. As to the latter, because from his interest with the people, some commotions might arise, if he should be treated with severity, the Sultan sends him out of the city, under the character of Seraskier of Babadaghy, but orders him, in his journey, to go to Sophia with the post of Beglerbeg of Rumelia, and some years after, when the seeds of fedition were extinguished, having drawn him to Constantinople in the Vizirthip of Cherris \* Als Pasta, by the promise of conferring upon him that dignity, the Sultan commands him to be put on board a galley, and thrown into the Propontis.

with a fleet into the Palus Maretis

V. In the mean time Hasan Pasta prefers his clients to the places of those don Passa ient who had been put to death, and appoints Abaza Ofman Passa (3), admiral, commanding

Annotations.

Sultan's palace in Sultan Mabomet's reign, was at length made Silabdar, which title he afterwards retained. Being difmiffed from that office with three Tugs, after the death of Musabib Pasha, he married his widow, the famous Chattje, Sultan Mustapha's fifter, who, through her interest with her brothers, Sultan Mußapha and Sultan Abmed, obtained not only that he should continue almost always in the Rekiab Caimacanship, or some other Pashahe near Constantinople, but also should be daily loaded with new favours She had fo much interest with her brothers, that when her husband was fent to Nicomedia, the got leave to accompany him this ther, though it had never been known before, that a Sultan's daughter or fifter went fo much as half a mile along with her husband out of the city. When he was de-prived of the dignity of Vizir, which was not for any crime but only occafioned by the clamours of the people, who required that Calasly Abmed Palba should be made Vizir, he was fent to the Pashalic

of Egypt, as the richeft in the whole Othman Empire; from whence being tome years after removed to the government of Tripols

in Syria, he died there.

(3) Abaza Ofman a man of great learning and prudence among the Turks Being taken into the palace in the reign of Sultan Mahomet IV, and from thence rifing through the feveral degrees to the dignity of Silandar, he was dismissed by Sultan Abmed III, with three Tugs, and honoured first with the post of Rekiub Caimacan, and afterwards with other Pashalics and offices. Some fay, in order to disparage him, he was born in Georgia, but they are mistaken. for he was of Abaza, a nation near the Chercaffians\*, and, next to these, the most honorable among the Turks. Upon that account, Cherkies \* Abmed Palba, fo often mentioned, viliting him when he had a flight fever, and was complaining of the weakness of his stomach, and want of appetite, told him in a jest, that physick should be left to those who were born and bred where it is used,

commanding him to fail with the whole fleet to the Palas Meetis, and fortify the streights with new castles Gerch \* and Tamen. He executes the order with the utmost diligence, but in his return lost nine galleys, and the rest, very much damaged, are brought back with great difficulty to Constantinople.

VI. At last Silabdar Hafan Pasoa, in the tenth month of his Vizirship, is temoved on account of the people's complaints, and September 14 succeeded by of a facece Calaily Ahmed Pasha (4) a man remarkable for nothing but his luxury and cruelty ed by Co

to the Christian subjects of the Othman Empire.

H 1115. VII. The A. C. 1703

### Annotations.

and that he ought to take nothing but Pasta, which is a very wholfome food made by the Abaza with pounded miller, cleared

of the husks. (4) Calaily Abmed Pasta] He was born at Cafarea in Cappadecia, of Armenian parents, who were Christians; but being in his youth brought to Confiantinople, and abjuring the Christian Religion, he was admatted into the order of the Baltaji; where, concealing his natural victous inclinations under a virtuous outlide, he was made Baltajilar Kiebalasi, and from that office was ient with two Tugs to the Pashalic of Jita, which is the last the Turks have on the Red Sea. After that, he obtained the dignity of Capudan Passa, then was Casmacan of Constantinople, and had other Passalics in the Othman Empire. Though he so behaved in all these employments, as to pass with all wife men for a foolish and ridiculous person, yet because he pretended a mighty zeal against the Christians, and seemed besides to be an observer of justice and equity, he gained among the ignorant and superstitious mob the reputation of a true Musulman. To cause the Christians to be univerfally abhorred, he ordered, whilft Casmacan of Constantinople, that they should all have their cloaths made of a very coarse black cloth, that in the baths they should not wear wooden shoes, as is customary to guard the feet against the heat of the mar-ble, and that they should have little bells fastned to one of their arms, that by the found of them the Mufulmans might be diftinguished from the Giaurs, and fome other the like things But this proving very detrimental to the Jami's, whose Vaft most of the baths are, because, on account of this ignominious distinction, none of the Christians would wash publickly, com-plaints were immediately carried to the Sultan; by which indeed was obtained the removal of Calarly Abmed Pasha, and a revocation of his orders, but they could not hinder the voice of the people, who defired to have him for Vizir. It happened shortly after, as the Sultan was walking in the market-place in difguise, he heard the repeated fighs of the people, lamenting the corruption of manners, and faying, there would be no reformation unless Calauly Abmed were made Vizir. The Sultan, who N°. XX.

knew not the man, gueffed, from the peoples commendations, that he was a value4 ble person; and fearing the sedition which had broke out the year before, and was hardly yet extinguished, should from this spark be re-kindled into a slame, he refolved to yield to the people; and so turning out Hassan Passa without any cause, under pretence that his Kiebaia Ifmail aga had committed fome fault, he fends for this Calasly out of Crete, where he was then Basha, and makes him Vizir. When he came to be placed in this exalted flation, he couldeso longer conceal his failings which he had hitherto difguifed with fo much art, but suffered them to break out in a torrent. The first day of his Vizirship, when he came to his palace with the Vizir's seal, all persons waiting to know what he should first order, (for by that, as much as by the Sultan's first words, do the Turks judge of a Vizir's future administration) he fends for a taylor. When he comes, he bids him make him an under-garment, called Enteri, of cloth of gold, which is not only unusual among the Turks, but also, as I have elsewhere observed, contrary to the laws of the Koran. It being brought him the fame day in the evening, he puts it on, and goes to thow himfelf to his wives and concubines, viewing himfelf on every fide, to fee whether his new garment became him. The women, to please their husband and master, praising the handsomness of the garment, he refolves to go to the Galibe Divan, and prefent himfelf in it before the Sultan. Moreover, that he might, by some new invention, increase the marks of honour used by the Vizirs, and render them more conspicuous, he invented fome new ornaments about the Tiara, which, as I have before observed, the Vizits are wont to wear, ordering the filk which is folded round it, and the golden plate, to be doubled, and drawn in the form of a crofs. Thus, dreffed likea buffoon, he calls the Chaush + bashi, and asks him whether every thing requilite for the procellion was ready. He replies, all is ready without, but many things are still wanting within: The Vizir asking him the reason of so unexpected an answer, he adds, your magnitude has dreffed its felf in fo ridiculous a manner, that if it appears to before the Sultan, it will not only be deprived of its the Sultan having endured his ill conduct three months, and shown the character of the man whom they had so exencitly desired for Vincentoves and handles him to the isle of Goos, advancing Baltaji Mehemed (5) at the end of the year to that post. But sixteen months after, by the

ANNOTATIONS.

dignity, but also the honour of us all be in the utmost danger. For you know your felf, without my faying it, what a hard matter it is to introduce new customs into the court, and how pernicious they generally prove to the authors: but I would have you know, that unless you change your clothes a little, I, nor the reft of your officers will wait upon you to the Sultan. Vizir flands out a good while, and endea-vours to defend the novelty by the autho-rity of his office; but at laft, being over come by the Chaulb \* balbi's firmness, he yields to found advice, and fo goes to the Sultan. The next week after he invites the Sultan to a feast, as is usual for the Vizirs. When the Sultan comes among the officers, standing in two rows according to custom to do him honour, he observes a one-eyed man near the Testerdar, with a haughty look, and asks the Vizir who he was? What, says the Vizir with some surprize, doth not your majesty know this man? The Sultan anfwers, it is impossible for him to know every particular person. But, replies he, this is no Plebeian, but Kior Ali aga, who has a fine Chifulyk\*, (i. e. Farm) near Confrantinople, which yields him fo many geefe, chickens and turkeys every year, that he has not only enough for his own table, but has as many to spare as may be fold for a reat fum; as to his office, he is Bafbbakikuls (which is a place of no great confideration in the Tefferdar's court.) The Sultan took then no notice of the man's filliness, but when he was gone out of the room to give directions about the fealt, turning to Kyslar agasi, " Have you, Ismail " says he, heard what this monster has told " me of this Kior Ali aga? For my part, I "difcovered his folly three days after I made him Vizir; but, that they who fo earnestly defired his promotion to that " dignity, may also be fensible of it, I " will let him wear the badge of the Vizirin thip for fome months, especially as every " thing is now quiet, and he can by his impru-" dence do no considerable damage to the " public affairs." He was an implacable enemy to the Christians, and not only renewed, after he was Vizir, the edict about their wearing of black clothes, which he had made whilst he was Caimacan of Capstantinople, but daily invented new ways of vexing them i and omitted no kind of cruelty towards fuch them as were guilty of any crime . fomethes however he was kind to fome one of

1. 64

them, but it was only out of hatred to fome other, or else it proceeded from his wonted fickleness. Abaza Othman Pasha, (whom he extremely hated, with all those that were wifer than himself, but could not hurt, because they were protected by the Sultan) being Capudan Pasba, or admiral, had taken in the Euxine Sea, and condemned to the gallies, a Raguzaan merchant, who, after having turned bankrupt, had engaged in the service of the Emperor of Russia, and was hiring some Grecian sailors, whom he intended to conduct to Azac. Cataily, in the first days of his Vizirship, visiting, according to the Vizirs custom, the Terjana, or Admiralty, where the Sultan's Paizans are kept, when he came to this man, asked him what was the reason of his being condemned to that punishment? The Ter fana Kiebaia answered, that he was taken by Othman Pasha, with some failors, whom he had affembled for the service of the Russians, and condemned as a fpy to the gallies. Calasly hearing this; "Ah, (fays he) how " miferably have those inconsiderate rascals, "that deserve imprisonment and the most " shameful punishments, profittuted the " honour of the Othman Empire. They " have taken a poor wretched Greek for a 46 fpy, and fent him to the gallies, as if " the fafety of the whole Empire depended " upon the informations fuch men can give "the enemies Take off his chains quick"ly, that with them may perish the re"membrance of this infamy." Then turning to the galley-flave, "Go, fays he to him, all over Constantinople, examine " every thing, and give an account of it to whomsoever thou wilt." And so the poor wretch of a merchant obtained his liberty and life, which he would probably have ended in the Tersana, had he not met with a fenfeless mafter. At last, when the people began to perceive this Vizir's folly, and publickly to call him fool, he was deposed by the Sultan; and because his faults had not proceeded from malice, but want of understanding, his life was not touched, but he was banished to Istankor, (which I have before observed to be the Coos of the ancients, and the native place of Hippocrates) with an allowance of three hundred Afpers a-day, and there he died of grief.
(5) Baltaji Mebemed Pasha] He was in his

(5) Baltan Mebemed Pasha] He was in his youth inrolled among the Baltan, and, for the iweetness of his voice, was simanted Pakehe. Muezin, or the Sweet-singer. Afterwards,

acts of his wife, with whom the Sultan was faid to be deeply in-level house also removed; but fent however with honour to be Basha of Alegon ...

ANNOTATIONS.

in the reign of Sultan Muftapha II, being arrived to the degree of Bicbakchi \* Baltaji, or fenior Baltaji, he was made page to the Sultan's brother, Abmed, who now sways the Othman scepter; and from that post was, by a notable accident, raifed to the highest honours in the Othman Empire. The Valide Sultana, mother to Mustapha and Abmed, had for her Cutuji, or treasurer, a Circassian virgin of fingular beauty, and of an excelcent wit. As Abmed had liberty to walk about the palace, he happens to fee her, and immediately falling in love with her, bribed his mother's Bafb aga, and by letters gained her affection. The Valide Sullana discovering it, fends for the Cutuji, chides her feverely, and threatens her with terrible punishments, she, on the other hand, excuses herfelf with great refolution, and without blushing denies she was in love with Shebzade Effends, or that she had ever talked with him upon unlawful fubjects, if he happened to love her, it was not her fault, but the Prince's, and if she was so ordered, she would avoid even the very light of him. The Valide Sultana, thus repulfed, fends for her fon, and advises him mildly to acknowledge his brother's goodness, in granting him his liberty contrary to the cuftom of his ancestors; and not to deprive himself of that privilege, by falling in love, contrary to the constitutions of the Seragio, before he came to the throne but if ever he should succeed his brother, she would give him not only that virgin, but also many others for his pleafure. Abmed ingenuously owns his paifion to his mother, but fays, whatever might be the event, he could not conquer it. The mother, concerned for her fon's fafety, and perceiving him to be incorrigible, resolves to deprive his flame of its fuel, by marrying the virgin, and putting her out of the Se-For that purpose, she sends for her ragio chief physician, Nub Effends, and after having discoursed with him about several things, at last tells him, that having experienced his faithfulness, the was determined, as a reward of his fervices, to give her treasurer in marriage to his fon. Nub Effends returns the Sultana thanks for fo great a favour, (for the Valide Sultana's Cutuji are generally married to Vizirs with three Horse tails, or to perfons of the like dignity) and upon his return home makes preparations for the wedding. At night the Cutup is fent from the Seraglio to the bridegroom's house with her portion. The Valide Sultana's Baft aga, whom I observed before to have been a pimp, as foon as he faw the preparations for her dismission, runs to Abmed, tells him

that the Chercoffian was going to be fent away, but he knew not whither. Abmed. full of concern, orders his Baltaji Mebemed age to watch where the went. He punctually obeys the order, and perceiving the went into the chief physician's house, he comes running to his master, and tells him what he had seen. Upon that stoned writes a letter to Nub Effendi, to this purpose: "Know that the virgin which is come to your house has touched my heart. Keep " her fafe, and let none belonging to you " meddle with her; if you do otherwise, 55 you shall not escape the fatal destiny that " will overtake you and your family in time" Upon the receipt of this letter Nub Effends thought himself between the anvil and hammer To disobey the Va lide Sultana's orders, was to expose himself to certain ruin, if he complied with them, the Prince's letter threatned him with the utmost danger, though at a distance. To extricate himself out of both these persh, being of a Grecian extraction and wit, for he was a native of Crete, he invented this contrivance to please at once the Sultana and the Prince. Having affembled the guesta that were invited to the wedding, he causes the Nikiab, or marriage-ceremony, to be follemnly performed by the Iman. That being over, when the new-married couple were to be led into the nuptial-chamber, he fpoke to his fon to this purpose. "My fon, we are in great danger, though unknown to all Shebzade Effends is in love with the " virgin which the Valide Sultana has given you for wife, and how great is the vio-" lence of his passion you may guess by this letter. If therefore you desire your to father's bleffing, and the prosperity of our house, abstain from that forbidden ss fruit, and talte not of a dish which is re-" ferved for a Prince's table. Fancy that you have a lifter given you, and not a " wife; kis her in private as your fifter, " in publick call her your wife, but never use her as such. In case lust excites you to difregard my admonitions, know, that you will utterly ruin our family, and bring my curse upon yourself." The son promiles to obey, and the bride giving also her consent, she was left in that room, and the bridegroom went and lay in another. All this was done to privately in the women's apartment, that neither the domesticks, much less Abmed, could have any knowledge of it. Some days after the wedding, the bridegroom was appointed Mollab of Smyrna, whereupon the wives of the Vizir and other Bashas came to with his wife joy

d at to unexbatter to be imfome conuchs, and ers great hophylician, and defires e fame name, and with re, till further orders : on take her into the Sea his wife. But his mopaint it, and adviebeginning of his remained in leveral the laws of the Secon of that place. defined from his re-**Arcis in marriage** s, whom he had the horie: but notery frequently went at was very unefore, had her of up into the Seragthe cause of Mebe-For, flortly after, the our her husband with sim a place that should e fram Constantinople; or her, that was inperor, to be To which the it indeed your nine : however, as a just judge,

is wife, feat-fith to the and then to that of All last he was recalled, to be e with the Vizirthip of the Table in the especially inter their comp. nce with them, upon terms very in co the Orbinals Empire. But this very thing, by which he thought to have highly nerticed the Saltan's favour, proved the cause of his ruin. For the Sultan hearing what great want of provisions the Raffian army laboured under, thought they might have been reduced to fuch fireights, that the Ruffien Emperor himself, with his whole camp, might have been forced to fursender to the Olbman troops; and therefore he imagined that the Vizir, by granting him an unfeatonable, though advantagious peace, had been bribed by the enemy. The Vizir, on the other hand, being informed by his friends that his proceedings at the Hierafus were displeasing to the Sultan, he stayed with the army at Adrianople, putting off, under various pretences, his return to Confantinople, though the Sultan earnestly defired it, till the Sultan's anger might be in fome measure appealed by the Mufti's Silabdar, Als Pasha, the same who was after-wards Vizir, and in 1716 was slain in a battle near Peterwaradin: but this rather increased the Sultan's anger and suspicions against him. For he was afraid lest the Vizir, if he perceived he could not return to Constantinople without fear of punishment, might raife commotions, especially as he had the Sanjak Shersf, and the whole army's affections at command. For that reason, thinking there was no time to lose, in order to prevent all feditions, he privately dispatches Hajekt aga to the commander of the Janizaries, Tufuf aga, with a Chatisherif, wherein he was ordered to take with him the Ojak of the Janizaries, and befet the Vizir's house, and then go in and demand the imperial feal of him, and keep it tell further orders; but to fend, without a moment's delay, the Vizir to Constantingple. 2 uses age having read this order, places the Janizaries round the house, but at such a convenient diffance, as not to give room for suspicion: then he goes in himself, and finds the Vizir playing at chefs with Effends Omer. The Vizir, turning to him falures kien, and defires him to flay pil the game is over, which is so difficult, th must our he had never feen the like. it is over; the Januar-aga corner and, after fome exceller, dispreys the Sulcin's order; to which the Sa

VIII. He is succeeded April 3, 1705, by Cherlely \* Ali Picha Ch. at make of mean buth, but most acute genius, and very sollicmous as maintain pea During

### ANNOTATIORE

the Sultan many things that tended to his justification. Thus the Vizir, deprived a second time of his dignity, was banished first to Lemnos, and then to Rhodes, where, as was commonly reported, he died a natural death. Many, however, fay he was privately put to death there by the Sultan's order; and that the report of his dying a natural death was spread about for this reafon, because he was extremely beloved by the people and foldiery for his great hu-

manity

(6) Chorluly Ais Palba] born in Chorle . a town of Thrace, which is the Tyrilois of the ancients, and from thence named Chorluly, \* His parents being mean and poor, had bound him apprentice in his youth to a barber. Cara Bairam ogle, a Capuji basbi, happens about that time to go from Constantinople to Adrianople, (where Sultan Mabomet IV then relided) and lodges by the way at his father's house, as he generally used to do. Observing the good countenance of the young man, he asks him whether he would follow him, and become an Othmanly, s. s a courtier? The young man embraces the offer, but his parents are against it, on account, as they pretended, of their poverty However, Als goes even against their will with the Capus bashs to Adrianople. Being put to school by him, he made fuch great progress in a short time, that Cara Bairam Ogli thought it more adviseable to bring him into the Sultan's palace, as a (pacious theatre, in which his virtues might thine, and, by being his patron, collarge one day his fortune, rather than keep him in his own house employed in By this means being admitfervile offices ted into Seffer Odasi, he passed in lew years through all the court-offices, so that when Sultan Mustapha II came to the throne, he was one of the inner chamberlains of that order which is called Hafne Odafi. At which time his parts, concealed under the former morose Sultans, or, to speak more properly, now come to maturity, began to display themselves at court. For, Sultan Musia-Jua observing his great dexterity and readiness above all others in giving answers, not only mide him one of his chief favourites, but also imparted to him his fecrets, and began to ask his advice: by which means passing through several posts, he was, in the space of two years, (a thing very uncommon 1, railed to the place of Chocadar agalyk\*, which is the fecond dignity in the Othman court. After he became pof-fessed of this office, he so won the affection of the Sultan, by his prudent behaviour, that Nº. 20.

whatever he asked was granted; and though A. he was inferior to the Silabdar aga in order and dignity, yet he was much superior to him in authority: but when he became Silabdar aga, he not only governed the court as he pleased, which is the proper business of the chief sword-bearer, but he had also such an afcendent over the Sultan, that, unless the Mufti interpoled, he would do nothing without asking his opinion. At last he was difmissed from court by the Sultan with three Tugs, and conflituted Cubbe Vizir, obtaining at the fame time a promife of marriage with the Sultan's daughter that was three years old. He continued in the fame degree of favour during the remainder of Sultan Mustapha's reign; but, after his being deposed, he came to Constantinople with Sultan Abmed, as an unknown person, and shortly after was fent to the Pashalic of Tripoli of Damascus At the end of two years he is recalled to Constantinople, to celebrate his marriage with Sultan Mustapha's daughter, and by his fair speeches so foftens the Sultan, that, under various pre-tences, he put off his departure from day to day, though it was often defired. In this condition he so behaved, as to acquire among the great men the reputation of uncommon prudence, and among the people the commendation of being a just and uncorrupt judge. Indeed, to fatisfy the Sultan's unbounded avarice, he was sometimes forced against his own inclination to oppress the people, and to lay very heavy burdens upon them; but he did even that with fo much art, that neither he nor the Sultan were centured for it. He was defirous of enlarging the bounds of the Empire, but to however as not to expose the state to danger for an inconfiderable advantage, For the fame reason he was averse to war, having fufficiently learned by former battles, of how little fervice fury and numbers are against a disciplined army of Christians. The Rusfians he did not love, nay, he had in times past, endeavoured to hurt them several ways; but he kept fair with them on purpole to divert the war which the King of Sweden was earnestly urging. At last, being accused by the King of Sweden of treachery, and depoted for the reasons mentioned in the history, he was at first permitted by the Sultan to live privately in a palace which he had in the fuburbs Eyub. Being visited there by persons of the first rank, he reflected with too much boldness upon the Sultan, and, among other things, faid he was not forry for having been deprived of the Vizirihip, which he really 5 X considered

This administration, the Octomes Empire succised such guelts as it had traject from now peshaps ever will for again, namely, Charles XII, King of Sweden,

ANNOTATIONS

namédered as a very heavy hunthen; but was only forry for having left his foul for the Sultan's fake, and reduced many rich citizens to the utment powerty, and yet could not content his infatiable avarice. These things she Sulens so interpreted, as if they had been spaken with design to es-cite a rebellion s and what inclined him the more to believe it, was, that during the five years of his Vazirihip, he had castirely gained the affections not only of the foldiery, but also of the whole people. So, three days after, he fends a Capun bafter with a Chaisbers appointing him Basha of Bender; but when he was on he journey, he dispatches another Capus bashs, Nemche Lussifaga, to bring him back, and, after heading him with reproaches, orders him to be bandhed so Mitylene. There he kept him almost a whole year, with design that if the war begun with the Ruffians, should prove unfucceisful, he might entrust him again with the government of affairs, and make use of his prudence to repair the loffes he should suffer. But when the Sultan was fure of good furrers, he required a Fetus of the Musti, declaring that man worthy of punishment, who had deceived his mafar by falis Fears, and thereby hindered him from attacking the enemy, at a time when he had an opportunity of fubduing their whole dominions. The Mufti pronouncing that such an offence deserved death, the Sultan fends a Chatthers to order his head to be cut off, and publickly exposed in the market-place before Babibumayun, or the outer gates of the palace. But I have heard, he often repented afterwards of depriving the Othman Empire of fo great a man, upon fuch a trifling account; for he was really endowed with fuch natural pasts, that if I should say there was none like him in the Othman Empire, nay, even in the whole World in his time, should not exceed the bounds of truth. Though he had not fludied the liberal arts, yet no one could hear him speak without admiring his eloquence, and his exquiste sudgment. Whatever he faid, he immediately proved by just and regular arguments, which a perfect Logician would perhaps have been puzzled to find. Scarce could any thing be proposed even upon the theak very perturently about it; which the more chest at, because he had spent all his life galace, where the courtiers being as that up, neither for nor learn any at enteronies, and fuch like things,

which they are taught by the mafters. If any point of law was proposed, rhough he did not understand Arabic, in which the niecties of the Mahometan processes are recorded, yet he could answer to properly and ingeniously upon every subject, that the most learned Musti must have been silent an his presence. In giving advice, in discovering the defigns of any person, in forcineing the Event of things, he was another Ulyffes; and whenever his counsels were neglected, fatal errors enfued first time Monsieur de Fersol, the French ambassador, came to wait upon him, after the conference was over, and Ferral gone out, I heard the Vizir faying to those about him, Bu Giaur ya deli dur; ya az zemanden /ongra deli olur, i. e. "This Infidel is mad, " or elfe will be fo within a few days, " which, he faid, he gueffed by the fre-" quent motion of his eyes, by the agita-" tion of his body, the levity of his gef-" ture, and his perpetual fighing " his prediction was true, the event showed within a month or two, for he was feized with fo violent a lunacy, that they were forced to bind him with chains; and the physicians having for several days endeavoured in vain to cure him, the French merchants come to the Vizir, and tell him. that their ambassador was out of order, and therefore they defired him to confirm a person of their own body, whom they should chuse to take care of their concerns. But he told them, that the cause of his illness could be nothing but madness; and that it was fo, came foon after to be publickly known in Constantinople. He had a most excellent memory, so that, amidst great variety of business, he could, after three or four years, remember causes that came before him; and, what is more, give a very particular account of them. When he was fitting in the Divan, no one could behold him without admiration; for he was a person of so much quickness and dexterity, that he could attend to three things at once, as if he had divided himfelf into three parts. For the quicker dispatch of business, he ordered two petitions to be read at the fame time by both the Teskiereys, and understood each cause as persectly as if he had heard it three or four times, giving thereupon a fuitable fentence. In the mean time, he hearkned to others that were pleading before the Kadiulaskier, and delivering back the Araubal to him; told him what fentençe he was to give. He was so great a lover of justice, that many affirm he never gave an unjust somence. The Othman EmSweden, and Staniflans, who had been advanced, though unjuffly, to the Crown

of Poland.

IX. For a war arising between the Kings of Sweden and Poland, the Sweden The Kings of gained the advantage, and engaged the Poles, who were before inclined business and engaged the Poles, who were before inclined business. gamed the advantage, and engages the action of the confidence, way timed by the to a change, to deprote their king Augustus, and chair Stanificus, Way timed by the wed of Posnana, in his room. And, not content with this, to desiroy the Sultan. source of the war, he entered Saxon, the King of Poland's native country, raised vast sums of money thence by unheard-of exactions, and by that means obliged Augustus to abdicate the Kingdom of Poland, and acknowledge Staniflaus for King.

X. This enemy being removed from his borders, he marches with his whole The Sweeding army against Peter I. Czar of Russia, who had been Augustus's ally, and threat-imption me ning nothing less than to depose him, at first pretends to penetrate into Rassa, Rassa near Plescow; but afterwards, induced by the promites of Mazeppa, Hetman of

## Annotations.

pire had indeed in former times many not inferior to him for this virtue; but it has not hitherto produced any one equal to him in skilfulness at finding out truth . one in-fiance of which will not, I hope, be tedious to the reader. A Turkifo merchant at Constantimople went, according to custom, to a bath be fore morning-prayer, and at his return from thence, as he was going to the Jami, loft in the fireet his purie out of his bosom with two hundred pieces of gold, called Turali At his coming out of the fami, after prayers were over, hading his bosom lighter, and perceiving he had loft his money, he immediately goes to the cryer, and orders him to cry a purse with such and fuch marks, and io much money in it the owner whereof intreated the person that had found it, for God's sake to return it to him, and he would freely give half the money Fortune had happened to for a reward throw it in the way of a Levend, or Marine, who, when he heard that the owner offered a reward of a hundred Turals was stung with a remorfe of confeience, and chofe rather to get honestly the half of what he had found, than to keep the whole under an appearance of their for if any person hears a thing cried that he has found, and keep it, if it comes to be known, he is, by the law of the Koran adjudged to be guilty of theft. So the man goes to the cryer, owns that he had found what was loft, and that he intended to keep a hundred Turali, according to the bargain, and to restore the other hundred to the right owner. The owner immediately comes, but when he faw that his money was entire, he attempts to recede from his promise; and perceiving he could not do fo without some ground, he invents a lye, pretenting there were in the same purse emerald ear-rings worth seven hundred crowns; and them he demands also from the marine. The man denying it, and calling God, the prophet, and all that was good and facred, to witness, that he had found nothing but the two hundred Turals, he is drawn before a Cads, or inferior judge, and accused of theft. The judge, either out of negligence, or because he was bribed, absolved indeed the marine of theft, but ordered him to go away without a reward, for having loft a thing of that value by his carelessness. The Marine, not only disappointed of his expectation, but also undergoing the foundal of being a thief, represents the whole matter in an Arzubal to the Vizir, who fummons the merchant with the money in dispute, and the cryer, to appear before him in judgment Upon hearing the case, the Vizir first aska the cryer, what it was the merchant had ordered him to make an enquiry after? he ingenuously owned, that it was only the two hundred Turals. The merchant thereupon putting in a word, faid, that he had caused no mention to be made of the emerald earrings, for fear that if the purse had fallen into the hands of an unskilful person, and who knew not the value of Jems, when he should discover what a great treasure he had found, that might be a temptation to him to keep it all. The marine, on the other hand, making oath that he had found nothing in the bag but the money, Ali Pafha paffed the following fentence. "Since the merchant, befides two hundred Turali, has " loft also some emerald ear-rings in the 46 same purse, and since the marine has de-" posed upon oath that he has found nothing but the money, it is plain that the purie and money which the marine has of found were not loft by the merchant, but by fomebody elfe. Let the merchant therefore have his things cried, till some ee perions fearing God, that has found them, " restore them to him; and let the Marine "keep that money by him for the space of forty days, and if no body comes and 44 claims it within that time, then let it be " his." Thus the coverous merchant loft his credit, and half his money; and the marine went away joyfully with both to his faip.

who had offered to furrender to hith his province and forces, bends

ich towards Ukrania.

During this march, Ali Passa, glad of an opportunity of depressing the of Rullia, the most inveterate enemy of the Turks, without any danger of advantage to the Othman Empire, orders Caplan Gierai, Chan of Crim Tarby letters, to confirm Mazeppa in his design by all possible methods, and bromile, that as foon as he heard of the Swedes having entered the country of the Cossaks, he would come to their assistance with a numerous army of Turks and Tarters, and with united forces defiroy their common enemy, but fully reflore the Collaks to their former liberties.

Coffals, jours

XII. Maxeppa, Hetman of the Coffaks, confiding in these promises of the Chan, fends an invitation to the King of Sweden but the King was so long amtifed with the vain affurances of the Vizir and Chan, till on the fifth of the month Jemaziul evvel, of the year 1121, he was defeated by the Czar at Pul-A C. 1709 towa, and fustained an irreparable loss.

The Swedyb army touted olteria. smong the

XIII. After this defeat, the King of Sweden retires to Bender to the Turks. whom he thought to be his confederates. The next year Stanislaus flies to at Patienta, instance the fame place with the Waywood of Kiow, and other Polish Nobles of his party, whom Augustus's return, upon the news of the King of Sweden's de-The King takes fanctuary feat, obliged to leave the Kingdom.

Turks The Turks entertain the Kings with great civility, but retract their promifes

XIV. They are both received with very great honour, but when they defire the affifiance promifed them against their enemies, they are amused by the Vizir with ambiguous answers. For as soon as he heard that the Russians had not only driven the Swedes from their borders with a great flaughter, and taken most of their army prisoners, but likewise subdued Livenia, the strongest bulwark of Sweden, he determines to keep the peace inviolable with the Russians, and to preserve the Othman Empire from all danger.

The Turks confirm the peace with the Czar The King of Sweden charges the

ang a traytor

XV. For this purpose, he confirms the former articles of peace at the request of Tolftoi, the Russian ambassador, notwithstanding the endeavours of the Swedes, Stanislaus, and the French to the contrary.

XVI. At last the King of Sweden, finding the Vizir deaf to his petitions, by his ambassador, Pontatowski, presents privately a remonstrance to the Sultan him-Visit with be, felf, complaining that the Vizir was bribed by the enemy, and a traytor to the Empire, fince he had excited him, by the Chan of Tartary, with many and great promises, to carry on the war, when the Russians were inclined to peace; but now fluts his ears to his petitions, and had made fuch a peace with the common enemy, as the Ruffians themselves could scarce have wished for.

But in the pre tent firuation of affairs can ebtain nothing

XVII. The Sultan, according to custom, sends these letters to the Vizir, and orders him to give an account of what had been hitherto done with the Swedes. The Vizir is extremely incenfed with the Chan and the King of Sweden; but not being able to gratify his refentments against the latter, he discharges his whole fury upon the former. He gives the Sultan fuch an account as he thought proper, full of fallities, laying all the blame upon the treachery of the Chan, by which means he procures him to be deposed, and banished to Tanopolis.

The Turks de termine to confirm the peace with Kuffie, and to oblige the Kings to depari.

XVIII. The Nobles again hold a private confultation, in which it is determined to maintain the peace with Russia, to grant the King leave to return home, and to take care that he might have a fafe passage through Germany. On the other hand, the King receiving this answer, refuses to depart, declaring he would flay and see how affairs would go, since he was sure the next summer the Turks would be engaged in a war with the Russians, though they should endeavour to avoid it; and then the Sultan would perceive too late, he had not fallely charged the Vizir with being a traytor. But the Vizir delpiling thefe remonstrances, perin his opinion, and fends the Chan, Deulet Geeras, into Crim Tartary with honour, ordering him to endeavour by all means to maintain the peace with difficute, and if they should make any attempt to the contrary, to send the

henche Chan came to the Cherfonefus, that he might load his predeceffor, Capian Gierai, he informs the Sultan, that he had not only loft, by his mif-



conduct above thirty thousand Taytars in the expedition in the Charcassians \*, but likewise occasioned the revolt of the Cassaks under Maxeems, to whom he had promised liberty and affishance in the name of the Otherse court. The Sultan having received this account, fends for the Vizir, and eaquires what letters had been fent to the Chan of Tartery concerning his affifting the Swedes. The Vizir denies there had been any, and afficus it to be a fiction of the Chan. The Sultan suspecting what was really the case, fends a trufty messenger privately to Caplan Gieras at Yanopolis, to enquire whether he had writ fuch a letter to Mazeppa Caplan Gierai, not thinking the Vizir's resentments were to be feared, frankly acknowledges the truth, that he had made such promises to the Hetman of the Cossaks, but that it was by the command of the Vizir. The Sultan being informed of this, fends again for the Vizir, charging him with falshood, and, in a passion, says to him, "fuch letters ought not to have been sent during a truce; but when "once sent, ought not to be retracted, nor the King of Sweden deceived, nor " the honour of the Othman Empire and the Musulman faith profituted before Infidels."

XX. He therefore deprives Chorbily \* Als Pasha of the Vizitship, and ad- All therefore vances in his room Ktoprik Ogli Nuuman Pasha (7), a man more eminent from for justice and learning, than for warlike abilities. These were only sparks of Vizir, and indications of that slame, which, from several other causes, soon after Kiopril Nuibroke out.

XXI. For the King of Sweden, upon the removal and banishment of his The King of enemy, Als Pasha, opens more boldly by his ambassador, Poniatowsks, his sustain, oy designs to the Othman court, and perswades them to a war with Russa. thous, engages He alledges, the States of Poland were in league with him and Stanislaus, break the peace and that the Waywood of Krow was universally defired for general of the ar- with the Raymy, that forty, thousand select men were raised by his officers in Pomerania, fiant.

#### ANNOTATIONS.

(7) Kioprils Nuuman A man very famous among the Turks for his justice, learning, and piety, but of no experience either in political or military affairs. for his father, the great and io often com-mended Koprili Multapha Palha, had brought up all his fons more to learning, than to the knowledge of state-affairs. to the end that they should flight courthonours and preferments, which he knew to be attended with great danger, and devoting themselves to an eccclesiastical life, might quietly spend their days tree from the fear of the Ax, or other violent death. In that state they would also have continued, had it not been for their relation, Husein Pasha, who drew them out of it, and, though they were but young, raifed them to the highest dignities in the Othman court. However, this Nauman Pasha being grown up betore Husein Pasha came to the Vizirship, and having been initiated into the pro-found learning of the Arabians, he always retained, even in the midft of his public employments, a love for reading, and the study of the laws; but, by applying himself too closely to his lucubracontracted such a ridiculous fancy, as to

imagine that there was always a fly fitting upon his nofe, which indeed flew away when he scared it, but returned again immediately to the fame place. All the phylicians then in Constantinopie were confulted upon that occasion, and, after they had long used in vain all their endeavours, one Le Duc, a French physician, found means to apply a furtable remedy to the diftemper; for he did not go about, as the rest, to argue with him that it was all a fancy, and there was nothing in it, but when he was brought to the fick man, and asked by him whe-ther he faw she fly that was fitting up-on his nose? he faid he did; and by that prudent diffimulation, induced the difordered person to place the utmost confidence in him. After which, he ordered him feveral innocent julops, under the the name of purging and opening medicines, at last, he drew a knife gently along his note, as if he was going to cot off the fly, and then shewed him a dead fly which he had kept in his hand for that purpose: whereupon Nuuman Pasha immediately cried out, this is the very fly which has fo long plagued me: and thus he was perfectly cured or that whimfical fancy.

said without day difficulty caret Policul, as foot as the Turkish or light utrace the ope fround appear in the confines of Podelia; that the , who were in alliance with the Ruffiane, had been defeated by his gewith fisch lofe, that it was thought they could hardly being an army again the the field for feveral years. He likewise sends the Sulsan a picture of the thic, engraved at Amsterdum, with this inscription:

## Patrus Primus Russe-Graconum Monarcha.

To these were added other accounts brought from the borders of the Empire. that the Ruffing had carried off a great number of Swedes from the villages of Moldevin; that the Cast was building a great fleet in the Tanais, and had "alsoady finished the port of Tagasterus; in short, that every thing threatned was in those parts. These things firangely disturbed the mind of the Sultan. especially that the Russams, who had been before entirely ignorant of naval afthairs, had now gained fuch knowledge therein, that they ventured to fend their ambassadors to Constantinople in ships of war.

he Sultan

XXII. He sends therefore for the Vizir, Kioprils Ogls Nuuman Pasha, and \* reported to have faid to him: " This enemy (meaning the Czar) cannot " correct his extravagant deligns; for I casily guess, from his past actions, that " he, like another Alexander the Great, aspires to the monarchy of the whole " world. This infidel therefore must be chastised, before he be able to annoy as us; otherwise, if no notice be taken of his attempts, it is to be feared when "we are engaged in war with other nations, he will give us a trouble-" some diversion."

The Vizir's newer to the Salesa.

XXIII. To this Number Pasha replies, some missortune is to be dreaded from the growing greatness of the Czar; but fince a peace is established, it ought not to be broke without a just cause. He would fend for the Czar's ambassador, and enquire what were the intentions of his master. But if the Russians should unexpectedly attack the Turks before the expiration of the truce. God would affift the just cause of the Musulmans.

The Vizire

XXIV. The Vizir upon his return, fending for the ambassador, enquires for securie with what purpose the Czar had ordered so many ships and galleys to be built in the Tanais; that if he were delirous of a peace, there was no occasion for a store, fince it was of no use against any other enemy, there being no passage for it into the Cafrien fea, or the ocean. The Czer's ambassador answers, his wither had built no new thips, but only thought proper to finish those which had been begun before the peace, left they should rot; that he would be hostage, that the Caar should not use any hostilities before the truce was expired without urgent necessity.

The Bulma reair from his post for oppo-

XXV. Notwithstanding this was told him by the Vizir, the Sultan resolves so theke war upon the Czar, for which purpose he orders the Vizir to raise money, and lay heavier taxes than usual. The Vizir declares it impossible. and that nothing could be levied upon the subjects but what the law and the prophet himself prescribed; that an army was to be listed according to his directions, which, though inferior in number, yet being hired with that money, would be of much more fervice than a greater body of forces. But if this advice was disagreeable to the Sultan, he defired him to chuse another Vizir, who should be better shilled in the arts of oppressing the people.

m 19 mil . . . .

KXVI. The Sustan guarats his request, and, taking the seal of the Vizirship Roch him, dellvers ir min to Baltaji Mehemed Palba, his mistres's husband, fending Name Take to the government of Eabea. Under the new Vizir, taking propagations are made more openly, and with great application foldiers are raised, and every thing is ready for an early campain.

## 24. Ahmed III.

XXVII. The Venetians, terrified at this, and not knowing the deficition The Sil these preparations, but imagining the Tarks would afteribt the Mores, which having the large presents to the Musti, and other great officers; but the Rayless amballa, non-of w dor depending upon the peace lately made and confirmed, is more negligent spains the in his conduct, thinking it unnecessary to seek that by berbes, which was settled denthe as in his conduct, thinking it unnecessary to seek that by peroca, which was retired by the articles of peace. The Vizir taking this for avaries, in the intenth that could show at 122, holds a council with the Chan of Crite-Tartury, to be confi whom he had fent for, and the rest of the Cabbe Vizirs, about a war with the Czar; the work whom he had fent for, and the rest of the Cabbe Vizirs, about a war with the Czar; the work whom he had fent for, and the rest of the Cabbe Vizirs, about a war with the Czar; the work whom he had fent for, and the rest of the Cabbe Vizirs, about a war with the Czar; the work who was the cabbe vizirs and the cabbe vizirs. a campain is almost unanimously resolved, agreeably to the Sustain's inclination. H. 112.

Orders are immediately sent throughout the Empire to raise men for the enfuing expedition; the Czar's ambaffador is confined in the Seven Towers; all his effects which could be found are conficated, and sentence of death paffed upon him as an impostor, which the Sultan would also have put in execution, if the Vizir had not interposed, and assured him, if he should violate the laws of nations in such a manner, he would fix an indelible mark of infamy upon his reign.

XXVIII. On the other hand, five hundred purses are immediately sent to the He honour King of Sweden, under the pretence of a loan, who is likewise presented with the King of fix and thirty hories, part with, and part without furniture, and other royal gifts, very fings

and he is affured of the protection of the Othman court.

XXIX. In the mean time, the Sultan is informed by Mazeppa and others, that Brance Constantine Brancovan, Prince of Walachia, held a secret correspondence with treachery the Czar; was concerting a revolt from the Othman Empire; and had promifed Management the Czar, if he could penetrate into Moldavia, thirty thouland men, with provisions for many years, and was already made a knight of St. Andrew in confirmation of his alliance. This being supported by the accounts of several other Basha's, the Sultan, before he declared war, resolves to seize this domestic enemy, and cure the Othman Empire of this wound.

XXX. But perceiving it to be very difficult to be executed, on account of that A confults Prince's great power and authority, he orders the Chan of Crim-Tartary to con-depoing h full with the Vizir about it, and inform him what he thought necessary for the interest of the Empire. The Chan persuades the Vizit not to attempt any thing against Brancovan, but to draw him into the share by means of the neighbouring Prince of Moldavia. If the present Prince was improper for that purpose, he knew that Demetrius Cantemir would be more fit, whose sidelity the Sul-

tan had experienced both in peace and wer.

XXXI. The Sultan approves of this advice, and having deposed Nicholaus Demetrate Maurocordate, appoints Cantemir, Prince of Walachia, under the title of that Cantemir of Moldavia, and, prefenting him with a fable well in the month Sheval, of the of Walach year 1122 †, sends him into Moldavia, with orders to feize Brancovan under the tle of that colour of friendship, alliance, or any other pretence which he thought proper, Militaria and fend him alive or dead to Confrantinople; and when he had poffetted himfelf of the 1 the Principality of Walachia, to take upon him the government of it; but that he should appoint another Prince of Moldavia, and refer his choice to the approbation of the court. For the readier and better execution of this defign, he ordered the Chan immediately to grant Cantenur as many thousand Tartars as he should require. On the other hand, the Sulvan promised Cantemir, that the Principality should be Ebeds, and no tribute nor Poststeft demanded while he should continue in Moldavia.

XXXII. These promites being confirmed by a Chatisherif, Cantemir, with the The prom Chan of Tartary, goes to Moldavia, about the end of November; but a few made to Co days after his arrival, he is directed by letters from the Prime Vizir's Kiebaia, by the rese Ofman Age (8) to fend immediately to the Sultan and Vinir the Pifikiefs usually rous court.

#### ANNOTATIONE

(8) Ofman Aga] before the Vizirfhip of Baltaji Mebemed Pafos, he was Gumrukchi\*, or overfeer of the cultoms, and was uni-

Russans,

Prince's entrance into his government, to collect a great quantity of for the Turkift army, finish the bridge with the utmost expedition, Swedes and Coffaks who were with the King of Sweden, in winteris, and march himself with his forces about Hydgreez at Bender, with other almost intolerable burthens.

XXIII. From these first fruits, Cantemir perceiving how little faith was to the expected from the infidels, throws off his attachment to the Turkift inteself, and effeeming it better to suffer with Christ, than wait for the decentful treasures of Egypt, sends a trusty messenger to the Czar, with an offer of him-

felf and his Principality,

The Czar Jafry, the ca

XXXIV. Having mutually exchanged their faith, the Czar fends before out marches with of Poland his general, Bore us Petrovicz Skeremetew, with part of his forces the cas to seize the bridge over the Danube, himself following soon after with the rest of the regiments, and in the month Jemasiul Evvel, of the year 1123, en-H. 1123 camps at the Hierafus, near Cunerora Having joined the Moldavian troops, A. C. 1711 he marches with a few of his officers to Jassi, religiously visiting the churches and monasteries for three days, and waiting for the provisions promifed by the

Prince of Walachia.

Prince of We lecha, bresks promife

XXXV. But having observed that his ambassador endeavoured only to amuse him with empty ceremonies, inflead of discharging what had been promited, and being now affered of his treachery, he is in great doubt whether to proceed, stand his ground, or retire. For famine, a misfortune fatal to the Christians engaged in the war in Moldavia, had now begun to distress the Russian army, because the generals depending upon Brancovan's promises, had brought but twenty days provisions, and the locusts had destroyed all the grass in Moldavia.

The Czar fends part of his army to forege in Wa-lackia

XXXVI Upon this account, the Czar sends General de Roenne and Count Thomas Cantacuzenus into the borders of Walachia with part of the army, to seize by force what Brancovan had refused to grant of his own accord, and therewith to refresh the soldiers. Those troops having passed the mountains of Moldavia, first assault Brails, and after four days siege, oblige the Turkish gar rison to surrender. As they are marching further, in order to penetrate inte Walachia, they are recalled by the Czar's letters, in which they are commanded to restore Brasla to the Turks, and return.

The Czar marches to leize the pafiage over the

. 4,000

XXXVII. For after their departure from the camp, the Czar with his whose army had marched to Czuczora, with defign to seize the bridge over the Da nube before the arrival of the Turks; but when he came to the hill of Rabie he is informed the Vizir with his whole army, reported to be two hundred and ewenty thousand men, had already passed the Danube, and were marching with great expedition towards Falczej.

XXXVIII. Upon this he fends Tacens, the Russian general, with seven thou He fends part fand of his own foldners, five hundred Moldavians, and several hundred Coffak:

of huarmy to prevent the View from to Falczy, to prevent the Turks from passing the river

XXXIX. But before he came to Falezsy, near the village of Barfensy, on th wer, who being castern bank of the Hierasus, he ices the whole anny or the while he surrounded by sars, of which he sends an account to the Czar by a courier. While he surrounded by sars, of which he sends an account to the Czar by a courier. While he surrounded by sars, of which he sends an account to the Czar by a courier. night, without opposition, and furround his troops with their horse. In th

#### ANNOTATIONS

Russians, the Vizir sent him before to paci- and banished, there being no longer ar of party the Sulpan, who received him kindly, left by unicationably discovering his deer railing a fedition,) and made him chief put its long as the Visir continued in his m), 130 m

danger of a rebellion in the army, Ofmi aga was treacherously drawn in by Boston bafts into Kavak, or the castle of the B phorus, and there beheaded by order of t Sultan: for it was thought, that he ben bribed by the Russians, had been the ch adviser of the peace made by the Vizir.

diffre

diffress there comes a Moldevien, with orders from the Czer to retire camp; upon which Tanas throwing his troops into a fquare, success flows and bravely refults the numberless forces of the enemy, whenever they tack him.

XL. When he was not far from the camp, and strongly pressed by the enemy, & Cantemer, Prince of Moldavia, with his troops, marches to his affiliance, and have for three hours withflands fixty thousand Turkish and Turkasian horse, and re-affiliance. pulfing them not without loss, returns to the camp at Stanilests.

XLI. But the Czar finding himfelf in fuch a fituation, that he could not open The Cau rehis ranks, nor march forward on account of the enemy's forces, and the want comp on acof provisions, changes his resolution; and about the second hour of the night count of the of provisions, changes his resolution; and about the leasted the whole camp diadvantage fetting fire to the empty and superfluous carriages, because the whole camp diadvantage out fluorone could not be conveyed away by the foldiers, marches has army back toward the the place. hill of Rabie.

XLII. The Turks, at day-break, seeing the Russian camp abandoned, and ima-The enemy gining them to fly, follow with the utmost speed, and endeavour to flop their them to fly, march with their whole force. But this not succeeding, and perceiving states them that the Russians were advanced about noon to the place designed, they en with great v camp likewife on both fides the river, and annoy the enemy that day with continual but flight skirmishes.

XLIII. The day after the Vizir, with the Janizaries and best part of the ar-The Vizir, my, comes up, and with four hundred and seventy cannon fires upon the ene-the Russia my's camp, after which the Janizaries make a vigorous affault upon the Ruf-camp, affault fiens, which they repeat feven times with great fury. The Ruffiens, though it with great fury. they had but thirty cannon, and were extremely distressed for want of provifions, and especially forage, bravely repel the Janizaries, and oblige them to retire with great lois to their trenches.

XLIV. Having fought thus for three days with doubtful fuccess, at last, on Great hopes the fourth day, contrary to all hope and expectation, a sudden peace shines of peace apforth amidst the storms of war. This is more readily agreed to by the Turks, because their camp resounded with the complaints of the soldiery, and the Janizaries who had escaped refused to return to an engagement, in which they had fustained fo great loss, and had been in the most imminent danger.

XLV. These pacific measures are indeed opposed by the King of Sweden, The King of who the day before came from Bender to the camp, and he uses his utmost ef-voun m vi forts to prevent the peace, but meets with a repulse from the Vizit, who had a m diffurb it greater regard for the Othman interest than the King's.

XLVI. The conditions of peace being agreed upon, the Czar fends Peter Ambifiadow Baron of Shafirow, vice-chancellor of the Russian Empire, and Michael Boriso the articles of vice Sheremeter, captain of the guards, as ambaffadors extraordinary to Constant peace. tenople for the confirmation of the peace.

XLVII. These being sent to the Turkish camp, the next day the Czar marches The Caure his army towards Mohilow, and there passing the Tyras, returns through Poland turns with h

to his capital of Petersburg. XLVIII. In the close of this narration, it will not be improper to add a he- The heroic roical saying of Peter the Great, Emperor of Russia, worthy the imitation of ser the Great all Christian Princes. For when he sent ambassadors to make peace with the Turks, the Vizir's first demand was, that Cantemer, the rebel Prince of Moldavia, should be delivered up to him. The ambassadors acquainting him with this de-

mand, and many of the courtiers perfuading him not to lose so numerous an army for the take of one man, he answered with a truly royal spirit, " That " he could refign all the country as far as Curska to the Turks, fince there " was hope of recovering it again; but could by no means violate his faith, and

" deliver up a Prince, who had abandoned his Principality for his fake, because " It was impossible to repair honour once forfeited." The Turks hearing this,

defifted from their demand, and made peace upon other conditions, to well known, that we think it needless to insert them inthis volume.

# X of the principal Turkish Words explained in the ANNOTATIONS.

, # T					
LI Othman		Ezan		Kiehaia	293
Chan	2	Turbe		Mimar aga	294
Churzen	2	Sanjak	116, 201		296
Shah, &c.	3, 169	Haj, &c.		Valide Sultana, &	296
Tabl Alem, &c.	10	Sunnet		Pashmaklyk	297
Chuthè		Sheh-zade		Kulkichaia	303
Sultan		Gioniulli	120	Ojak Agalari, &.	303
Jami		Ilmi, &c.		Sorguj	304
Medrefe, &c.		Telaveti Koran		Ebedi	30;
Imaret	32	Mirza	130	Timar	305
Lala	34	Zemberekchi * bashi	138	Cushchi *	311
Beglerbeg	35, 35	Yavuz		Arzuhal	316
Namaz, Ga	3.5	Defterdar, Gc.	146, 170	Serdar	320
Mufti, &c.	36	Sunnt	149	Nurradin Sultan	333
Milliman	· 37	Mali Kiane	153	Arzmahzer	342
Agavat, Se.	38	Yuk	153	Kyft	34?
Dervishe, &c.	39	Rafazi		Munejin bashi, &c.	349
Sheikh	40, 164, 346	Burj		Bostanji bashi	350, 401
Yengicheri *	41,403	Chylast, &c.		Buluk Agalari, &c.	34 E
Chelebi *	44	Chatishers		Divan chane, &c.	352
Kubbè	45	Rai		Julus Name	35 <b>9</b>
Sef	45	Kaimacan		Galibe divan	364
Kutrum	./	Terkiereji, Gc.		Flaraj	366
Tekkıur		Kukka		Koltak Vizirları, Ec	375
<b>H</b> rambol		Vayvode		Baltajilar Kichaiasi	379
Mekkieme	52	Chatyb		Talchyth	381
Mola		Alai, &c.		Haznadar bashi	355
Kior			216	Bishanji Pasha	395
Seraje, &c.	• •	Eshrefi		Topchi bashi	397
Aman	72	Bakhfhish		Levend	403
Kumeli	75	Caffirm Gruni		Chaushi *	407
Jırid	90	Killar aga	253	Cafab bafhi	435
Emir	94	Serdan Giechdi.*		Muhzur, &c.	435
Nakib	94, 346	Cazan	279		
Fatih	96	Seraskter	282		
			1		

## Names of the SULTANS.

	0.1 7	and IMmed 137	
Othman I.	7   Selim I.	143   Murad IV.	243
Orchan.	23 Soliman I.	174 Ibrahim,	252
Morad I.	33 Selim IL	218 Mahomet IV.	255
Bajazet I.	46 Murad III.	229 Soliman II.	350
	70 Mahomet III.	236 Ahmed II.	38c
Mahomet I.	79 Ahmed I.	238 Mustapha II.	395
Murad II.	79 24 100		
Mahomet II.	96 Mustapha and Othman,	241 Ahmed III.	438
Bajazet II.	115	1	

## ERRATA.

Line 25. and 364. l. 33. for Chateau-nouveau, read Chateau-neuf, p. 276. delethe note of the page. She is a diminutive in the Tartarian language. Thus Dorosbensko is Dorosbensko.



## The LIFE of

# DEMETRIUS CANTEMIR,

## Prince of MOLDAVIA.

PRINCE Demetrius Cantemir was born Ottober 26, 1673. His father, Constantine Cantemir, was then but Serdar, that is, governor and general of three districts of Moldavia \*.

In the year 1684 his father was made Prince of Moldavia, and the Port demanding one of his sons in hostage, he sent his eldest son, Antiochus, attended with six young Nobles, to Constantinople. Three years after Demetrius Cantermir was ordered by his father to go and relieve his brother. At that time Constantine Brancovan, mortal enemy of the Cantemir family, was Prince of Walachia. Brancovan, on the arrival of Demetrius at Constantinople, in order to destroy his father's credit with the Port, infinitates to the Prime Vizir that Demetrius was not Prince Cantemir's second son, but a youth procured by him to draw his true son, Antiochus, out of the hands of the Turks. Whereupon the Vizir, to examine the affair, sending for Demetrius, the moment he appeared, said, Brancovan has invented the blackest of calumnies; for old Cantemir is very visible in the person of young Demetrius. In a word, Demetrius shined in such a manner in this his sirst appearance before the prime minister of the Othman Empire, and afterwards gave so many proofs of a ripe understanding and a prusent conduct, that he rendered himself a son worthy of

He remained at Constantinople till 1691, when, relieved by his brother Antiochus, he retuined to his father. During his stay at Constantinople, he studied the Turkish language and musick, in which he afterwards excelled to such a degree, that he was the first introducer of musical notes among the Turks, and composed several pieces of musical which are sung to this day with great pleasure.

In the year 1692 Daltaban, the Seraskier, having belieged Soroca, he followed his father to the army, and received a great deal of respect from that Turkish ceneral

The next year his father died on the thirteenth of March. On his deathbed he lent for his ton and nobles, and defired them, before he expired, to chuic a fuccessor. The nobles unanimously declare Demetrius for their Prince. The dying father was delighted with this news, flattering himself that his son's election would be confirmed by the Sultan; but money was more prevalent at the Port than the father's services and the son's meru, so another was appoint-

1684.

1687.

1691,

1692.

1693.

Confunitive Cantemer had four wives, of which the third was mother of our author.

# Las & France CANTEMIE.

The his he was, by the Prime Vizir's order, at the battle of Zen

he was early a columber, he was not in the battle, and, flying with the

recognice with the remains of the nemy to Confrontinople.

Brancouse continuing his enmity to the family, perfectled the two bro the utmost of his power. Demetrius's ment had inflamed his hatred, for his great effects with all the ministers at court. He had not only made himsel of Turkish, but also of Ababic and Persian; and his affability and chears are rendered him the delight of the best company in the metropolis. Briterefore believing Demetrius, was the only person whom he had to see that, spared no pains or money to cause him to be removed from the tractal his by a great sum obtained, though in vain, his enemy's banish Demetrius having notice of it, concealed himself at the house of the not only entertained him and his samily with great civility forty discoursed a revocation of the sentence, and the means of his appearing with more lustre than ever. This was a great mortification to Brancova had some reason for his proceedings: for Demetrius so ardently with Principality of Walachia, that he twice resuled that of Moldavia, however, by his recommendation, was both times given to his Autoschus.

When his brother went first to take possession of his Principality, De accompanied him, and at that time married Cassandra, daughter of Serbi tacumenus, who had been Prince of Walachia. By this marriage, Demeti a daughter in Moldavia, and shortly after was forced to quit that country, burn with his brother, who was deposed, to Constantinople, where he because

father of another daughter and four fons.

During this third residence at Constantinople, Demetrius, having nothing to do, employed himself in building his house, and studying the custous usages of the country. He had many years leisure, for he departed in Constantinople till the year 1710, when Peter the Great, Czar of Musculared war with the Insidels. Upon this monarch's approach with his a wards the borders of Moldavia, the Pors thought proper to appoint Demetrius of that Province, because the present governor, Nicolaus Maurocordatus, a learned man, and in great repute at the Turkish court, was not a six pastime of war, having neither courage nor skill in military affairs. Do was forced to accept of this dignity both by the Vizir and the instinuation Chan of the Tartars, who had intimated to the Port, that he was the on was so far from making the usual presents to the Sultan and the Iurkishers, that he was allowed by the Port twenty purses towards his expens

He was no fooner arrived at Jass, metropolis of Moldavia, but he orders from the Port to build a bridge over the Danube for the passage Tarkofb army; and withal, was commanded by the Vizir to fend him the due to him and the other officers for his advancement to that Principalit metrius was extremely incensed with the last order, and from that mon solved to be revenged of the Vizir, and embrace the present opportunity of

his country from the Turksh yoke.

By good fortune, Peter the Great sent to him at this time a Greek pl named Policals, with very advantagious proposals. Whereupon, as the of a Christian Prince, and the happiness of his own people were concer soon came to an agreement with that Monarch; by which, i. Moldavia, was to be under the protection of Russia. 2. The his people were to swear sidelity to his Czarish Majesty as soon as the was entered Moldavia.

3. The Prince at the same time was to be with the Czar, and act in concert against the Turks. 4. The Pi

<sup>•</sup> It must be observed, that the sons of the Prince of Moldovia and of Walachia, as well as the deposition by the Turks, Massel) are obliged to live at Confinentinople.

# The LIFE of Prince CANTAML

well as his fucceffors, were to enjoy for ever the fovereignty of Mollev under the suspices of the Russian Monarchs. 5. No other person could be to the Principality till the Cantenur family was entirely extinct. These fome other conditions, were ratified by the Czar at Lush in Poland, the ing teenth of April 1711, under the feal of the Empire, and fent by an expects to the Prince. Pursuant to this agreement, Demetrius continued to give the Crar proper advices concerning the forces he was to bring with him, and the methods he was to take in the enterprize.

Mean while, he failed not to go on with the bridge over the Danube, the direction of which, at the charge of the Turks, Moldavia and Walachia finding timber, was wholly committed to him: so that he could easily retard the work, which he did to the utmost of his power, without incurring the least suspicion of corresponding with the Russians, and continually pressed the Czar to hasten his march before the finishing of the bridge. Unfortunately his advices, as of a man whose fidelity was not yet approved, were not readily followed; and the Czar, deceived by the hopes given him by Brancovan, Prince of Walachia, came too late to hinder the Turks passing the Danube. The Czar arrived at Jassy in Tune 1711, where the Nobles and People of Moldavia acknowledged him for lovereign, and, with their Prince, publickly swore fidelity to him. As this expedition is related at large in the history, it suffices to say that the Czar was, for want of necessaries, obliged to make a disadvantagious peace with the Turks; but, to his immortal honour, refused to deliver up Prince Cantemir, though himfelt, family, and army, were in the utmost distress. His minister was ordered to tell the Turks the Prince was not in his camp, he being, during the treaty, that up in the Czarina's coach, which was known only to a servant who brought him his victuals.

The Prince, seeing he could not remain in Moldavia, obtained a patent from the Czar, by which the Czar promised him and the Moldavian Nobles amends for their losses, and a refuge in his dominions. By this instrument (dated at Mogilof, the first of August 1711) he created Demetrius and his Heirs Princes of the Russian Empire, with the title of most serene Highness, and gave him the privilege of being accountable only to the Czar himfelf, and the Moldavians that should retire into Ruffia, to him alone.

Upon this agreement, he removed his family and goods from Jaffy, and followed the Ruffian camp, attended with above a thousand Moldavian Nobles and Officers, who abandoned their country for his fake.

The Prince with his followers retired to Charcof in Ukrania, which was appointed for the habitation of himself and people. He remained there with all his family till 1712, when he removed to Moscow. At his request, the Czar not only divided the lands he had given him in Ukrania among the Moldavian Nobles, but gave him also a thousand farm-houses belonging to the Crown. These lands had ever been in the possession of the Czars, and both for situation and number of inhabitants, are reckoned the best in the Empire. His majesty moreover allowed him a large annual pension, which was paid as long as the Prince lived.

Soon after Demetrius's arrival at Moscow, his wife, Cassandra, continually grieving for the loss of her country and relations in Moldavsa and Walachia, where her own and husband's effects were seized by the Port, fell sick of a sever, and, by the ignorance of the Apothecary, who gave her a too firong purging potton, was fent out of the world, after a few days illness, in the flower of her age, being but thirty years old. She was a woman of great prudence and fense, much gi- May 11, ven to reading, and withal very mindful of her family affairs, and the education 1713. of her children. Her beauty, of which she had a good share, was her least ornsment. She was buried at Moscow in a Greek cloyfter, where the Prince, her husband, had contributed to the building of a fine Church.

The next year Demetrous came to Petersburg with his third son, Serban, but feven years old. The boy, on Easter Day, made a speech in Greek before the Czar, for which the Czar gave him a handsome present, and listed him in his own regiment.

1711.

1713.

de Lase of Prince Cantemin.

to the his serritories, where he stayed till 1716. At that is the History of the Ochmun Empire, begun at Constantinople.

The Properties exercised the power given him by the Czar ever the Mobiles, among whom the villages of Ukransa had been divided.

And To, Democrate exercised the power given him by the Czar over the dealers. Nobles, among whom the villages of Ukrana had been divided. The frequently meeting at entertainments, happened one time to fall out supply, and, drawing their labres, two of them were unfortunately killed, veral wounded. Whereupon complaints were brought to the Prince, who the offenders to appear before him, after a tryal, condemned three to dea fome other to the galleys: but afterwards changed the lengunge of death into corporal punishment, which was executed, and the whole approved by the This perhaps is the only instance in the Russian History of a subject's exercing power of life and death in his own name.

In 1717, the Czar being called home by the troubles excited in his c Demetries returned also to Moscow, where he was often with his Majes even received frequent visits from him. At the Czar's departure to Pette he was ordered to attend him, but his family remained at Moscow, his

daughter, Smaragda, being seized with a phtisick.

When he came to Petersburg, he happened to see, at a publick assembly Nobles held regularly every winter, the third daughter of Prince Trubezis present Field Marshal of the Russian forces, the greatest beauty of her time falling in love with her, demanded her in a few days of her father in mile obtained his request, and married her the beginning of the winter. A line fore the nuptials, he shaved his beard, and changed his Moldavian for the habit. The Czar was pleased to come in person, and conduct him to the swhere the ceremony was to be performed, and led him back to his house, p ing him by the way with a rich sword.

After the nuptial-feaft, which lasted three days, and at which his Majesty the Empress, Princesses of the blood, and all the Nobles at Petersburg, we

fent, he was made a privy-counsellor-

His children had now followed him to Petersburg, except his daughter Sn da, who daily growing worse, died the fourth of July, in her seventeenth But her loss was supplied by a daughter which his second wise bore him the of November, the same year, to whom the Cuar and Czarina stood Godfath Godmother, and named her also Smaragda.

The next year he was ordered to follow the Czar into Persia, with Counsiss and Admiral Apraxin. In this expedition Apraxin commanded the arms Tolston, with Demetrums, had the direction of the civil affairs, these three co

fing his Majesty's council.

He accompanied the Czar to Colomna, a town ninety verst from Moscow, ted at the mouth of the Moscoa, which runs into the Occa. Here he tour family, which followed him by water, and embarking, pursued his journal

Aftracan, where he arrived the fourth of July.

He had but just left Colomma, when he begun to feel a pain in his reins, a light fever, attended now and then with fuch a weakness, that he was force keep his bed three or four days. However, it did not prevent him from eming himself in setting up a Turkish press to print the Czar's declarations of which he had a mind to publish in Persia in that language. The time the which he failed were very proper for this project: so that by the time the arrived at Astracam, every thing was ready for printing the declarations. In gust, Demostrius embarked at Astracam on board a frigate of twenty guns, to so the Case into Persia. The whole army crossed the sea with his Majesty, and sew days aftery arrived at the place where the fort of the holy Cross is since by

As Demetrius was obliged to accompany the Czar by land to Derbent, he his frigure with his baggage and servants to wait for him there. But unhap the westel was thrown by a storm on a sand-bank, and, excepting the crew, confidence lost. Among other things, the Prince lost his cabinet with his paperscionarily a manuscript history from Mahomet the salse Prophet, to Othman

1720.

1721.

The Larre of A

first Tarkijb Sultan ; a work which half and a' go better fate.

The Prince's illness daily increased, and neither himself nor the find out the case. He continued his journey however to Borde interval of ease, visits the famous wall on the mountains of Cancul Professor Bayer has given a particular account in the second value of the Academy at Potersburg.

In his return from Derbent, Demetrins's diftemper was found to be a Die which so weakned him, that he could not mount his horse. Believing a made his will, which he delivered into the Czar's hands, which he appointed his executor and guardian of his children. His three elder form were with him, but his wife, daughter, and youngest son, were left at Affrecient The Czar proceeding to that city, left Policals, the Empres's physician, to take care of him.

Demetrius came in August to Afracan, so wasted, that his friends hardly knew him. The beginning of December he was in such danger, that he believed it neccessary to confess and communicate, expecting death every moment. Admiral Aprazin, Count Tolftos, and Prince George Trubezkei, halfned to take their last leave of him. His wife, children, and family, flood round him in tears, whilst he with uncommon resolution comforted them, recommending them to the three ministers, and exhorting them to mutual love and firm union after his death.

In this extremity, it was remembered that Mr. Englers, a physician in the army, had not been consulted. He was immediately sent for, and by his skill so far conqueted the distemper, that Demetrius had strength to go to the Cathedral of Affrecan on Christmas-Day. Finding himself daily grow fronger, he resolved to leave Astracan, and repair to his lands, for which he obtained the Czar's leave.

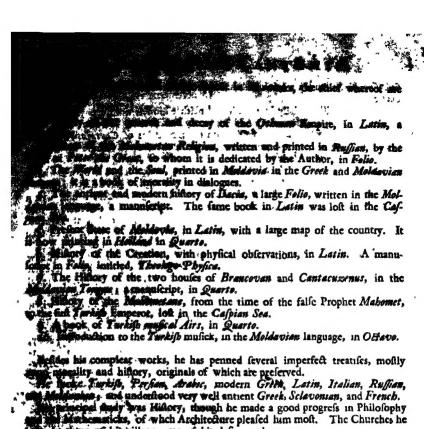
He began his journey in January 1723, which was very tedious, not only on Ja account of the great distance, but also by the returns of his distemper. However, he arrived at last, in March, in pretty good health. He spent his time in the usual diversions of the country, in settling his domestic affairs, and in building a Church, dedicated to St. Demetrius, when his health permitted him. At haft, on the fifteenth of August, he was seized with a flow fever, and his Digheter Iftcreased to such a degree, that he died the twenty-first of the same month, aged forty-nine years, feven months; and five days.

He had by his first wife fix sons and two daughters, and by his second an only daughter. One of his daughters and two fons died in his life-time, and he left behind him two daughters, Maria and Smaragda; and four fons, Matthew, Constantine, Serban, and Antiochus, who are all alive. The last is now Minister Plenipotentiary from the Czarina to King George, and brought with him into England the Latin manuscript of his father's Othman Hultory, from whence the

English Translation was made.

Demetreus was of a middle-fize, rather lean than fat. He had an agreeable countenance, and always spoke with affability, mildness and caution. His custom was to rife at five in the morning, and, smoaking a pipe of tobacco over a dish of coffee after the Turks manner, he retired to his study till dinner, which was constantly at noon. He generally dined upon one dish, his favourite dish being small chicken with forrel. At his meals he always drank water with his wine. Drunkenness was his mortal enemy, for, effect once drinking too much, he was fick a fortnight. He flept a little after distant, and the rest of the day was spent in his study till seven in the evening. Then he saw his family, and suppling at ten, went to bed at twelve. He was obliged to alter his way of living after he had been made Privy-Counsellor by the Czar, and had married a young wife s for the affairs of state, and the charms of a beautiful young spoule, frequently took hum off from his studies.

His father's death, when he was but a youth, his long stay at Confiantiness without employ, and the short continuance of the government of his Principality did not allow him to show his capacity in civil affairs, and his courage in mi tary, though he wanted neither. His whole fedentary life was employed in ca



e of his villages, are of his delign and manner.

ther of the Academy of Berlin, and at the same time the news of inched Petersburg, the Emperor of Germany's Resident received for and a perent creating him Prince of the Roman Empire, which he fent

FINIS.

1100 6